

Understanding Assembly Language

(Reverse Engineering for Beginners)

Why two titles? Read here: [on page xvii](#).

Dennis Yurichev
 <book@beginners.re>



©2013-2020, Dennis Yurichev.

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0) license. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>.

Text version (November 27, 2020).

The latest version (and Russian edition) of this text is accessible at <https://beginners.re/>.

Call for translators!

You may want to help me with translating this work into languages other than English and Russian. Just send me any piece of translated text (no matter how short) and I'll put it into my LaTeX source code.

Do not ask, if you should translate. Just do something. I stopped responding "what should I do" emails.

[Also, read here.](#)

The language statistics is available right here: <https://beginners.re/>.

Speed isn't important, because this is an open-source project, after all. Your name will be mentioned as a project contributor. Korean, Chinese, and Persian languages are reserved by publishers. English and Russian versions I do by myself, but my English is still that horrible, so I'm very grateful for any notes about grammar, etc. Even my Russian is flawed, so I'm grateful for notes about Russian text as well!

So do not hesitate to contact me: <book@beginners.re>.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Abridged contents

1 Code Patterns	1
2 Important fundamentals	564
3 Slightly more advanced examples	592
4 Java	851
5 Finding important/interesting stuff in the code	903
6 OS-specific	947
7 Tools	1020
8 Case studies	1025
9 Examples of reversing proprietary file formats	1191
10 Dynamic binary instrumentation	1265
11 Other things	1276
12 Books/blogs worth reading	1301
13 Communities	1304

Afterword	1306
Appendix	1308
Acronyms Used	1345
Glossary	1352
Index	1355

Contents

1 Code Patterns	1
1.1 The method	1
1.2 Some basics	2
1.2.1 A short introduction to the CPU	2
1.2.2 Numeral Systems	3
1.2.3 Converting From One Radix To Another	4
1.3 An Empty Function	7
1.3.1 x86	8
1.3.2 ARM	8
1.3.3 MIPS	8
1.3.4 Empty Functions in Practice	9
1.4 Returning Values	10
1.4.1 x86	10
1.4.2 ARM	10
1.4.3 MIPS	11
1.5 Hello, world!	11
1.5.1 x86	12
1.5.2 x86-64	19
1.5.3 ARM	24
1.5.4 MIPS	33
1.5.5 Conclusion	39
1.5.6 Exercises	39
1.6 Function prologue and epilogue	39
1.6.1 Recursion	40
1.7 An Empty Function: redux	40
1.8 Returning Values: redux	40
1.9 Stack	40

1.9.1 Why does the stack grow backwards?	41
1.9.2 What is the stack used for?	42
1.9.3 A typical stack layout	50
1.9.4 Noise in stack	50
1.9.5 Exercises	55
1.10 Almost empty function	55
1.11 printf() with several arguments	56
1.11.1 x86	56
1.11.2 ARM	70
1.11.3 MIPS	77
1.11.4 Conclusion	85
1.11.5 By the way	87
1.12 scanf()	87
1.12.1 Simple example	87
1.12.2 The classic mistake	99
1.12.3 Global variables	100
1.12.4 scanf()	111
1.12.5 Exercise	124
1.13 Worth noting: global vs. local variables	125
1.14 Accessing passed arguments	125
1.14.1 x86	125
1.14.2 x64	128
1.14.3 ARM	132
1.14.4 MIPS	136
1.15 More about results returning	137
1.15.1 Attempt to use the result of a function returning void	137
1.15.2 What if we do not use the function result?	139
1.15.3 Returning a structure	139
1.16 Pointers	141
1.16.1 Returning values	141
1.16.2 Swap input values	151
1.17 GOTO operator	152
1.17.1 Dead code	155
1.17.2 Exercise	156
1.18 Conditional jumps	156
1.18.1 Simple example	156
1.18.2 Calculating absolute value	177
1.18.3 Ternary conditional operator	180
1.18.4 Getting minimal and maximal values	184
1.18.5 Conclusion	190
1.18.6 Exercise	192
1.19 Software cracking	192
1.20 Impossible shutdown practical joke (Windows 7)	194
1.21 switch()/case/default	195
1.21.1 Small number of cases	195
1.21.2 A lot of cases	210
1.21.3 When there are several case statements in one block	224
1.21.4 Fall-through	229
1.21.5 Exercises	231

	v
1.22 Loops	231
1.22.1 Simple example	231
1.22.2 Memory blocks copying routine	246
1.22.3 Condition check	249
1.22.4 Conclusion	250
1.22.5 Exercises	252
1.23 More about strings	253
1.23.1 strlen()	253
1.23.2 Boundaries of strings	266
1.24 Replacing arithmetic instructions to other ones	267
1.24.1 Multiplication	267
1.24.2 Division	274
1.24.3 Exercise	275
1.25 Floating-point unit	275
1.25.1 IEEE 754	275
1.25.2 x86	275
1.25.3 ARM, MIPS, x86/x64 SIMD	276
1.25.4 C/C++	276
1.25.5 Simple example	276
1.25.6 Passing floating point numbers via arguments	288
1.25.7 Comparison example	291
1.25.8 Some constants	329
1.25.9 Copying	330
1.25.10 Stack, calculators and reverse Polish notation	330
1.25.11 80 bits?	330
1.25.12 x64	330
1.25.13 Exercises	330
1.26 Arrays	330
1.26.1 Simple example	331
1.26.2 Buffer overflow	340
1.26.3 Buffer overflow protection methods	348
1.26.4 One more word about arrays	353
1.26.5 Array of pointers to strings	354
1.26.6 Multidimensional arrays	363
1.26.7 Pack of strings as a two-dimensional array	373
1.26.8 Conclusion	378
1.26.9 Exercises	378
1.27 Example: a bug in Angband	379
1.28 Manipulating specific bit(s)	382
1.28.1 Specific bit checking	382
1.28.2 Setting and clearing specific bits	387
1.28.3 Shifts	397
1.28.4 Setting and clearing specific bits: FPU ¹ example	397
1.28.5 Counting bits set to 1	403
1.28.6 Conclusion	421
1.28.7 Exercises	424
1.29 Linear congruential generator	424

¹Floating-Point Unit

	vi
1.29.1 x86	425
1.29.2 x64	426
1.29.3 32-bit ARM	427
1.29.4 MIPS	428
1.29.5 Thread-safe version of the example	431
1.30 Structures	431
1.30.1 MSVC: SYSTEMTIME example	431
1.30.2 Let's allocate space for a structure using malloc()	435
1.30.3 UNIX: struct tm	438
1.30.4 Fields packing in structure	451
1.30.5 Nested structures	460
1.30.6 Bit fields in a structure	463
1.30.7 Exercises	472
1.31 The classic <i>struct</i> bug	472
1.32 Unions	473
1.32.1 Pseudo-random number generator example	474
1.32.2 Calculating machine epsilon	478
1.32.3 FSCALE instruction replacement	480
1.32.4 Fast square root calculation	482
1.33 Pointers to functions	483
1.33.1 MSVC	484
1.33.2 GCC	491
1.33.3 Danger of pointers to functions	496
1.34 64-bit values in 32-bit environment	497
1.34.1 Returning of 64-bit value	497
1.34.2 Arguments passing, addition, subtraction	498
1.34.3 Multiplication, division	502
1.34.4 Shifting right	507
1.34.5 Converting 32-bit value into 64-bit one	508
1.35 LARGE_INTEGER structure case	510
1.36 SIMD	513
1.36.1 Vectorization	514
1.36.2 SIMD strlen() implementation	527
1.37 64 bits	531
1.37.1 x86-64	531
1.37.2 ARM	540
1.37.3 Float point numbers	540
1.37.4 64-bit architecture criticism	540
1.38 Working with floating point numbers using SIMD	541
1.38.1 Simple example	541
1.38.2 Passing floating point number via arguments	549
1.38.3 Comparison example	550
1.38.4 Calculating machine epsilon: x64 and SIMD	553
1.38.5 Pseudo-random number generator example revisited	554
1.38.6 Summary	554
1.39 ARM-specific details	555
1.39.1 Number sign (#) before number	555
1.39.2 Addressing modes	555
1.39.3 Loading a constant into a register	556

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.39.4 Relocs in ARM64	559
1.40 MIPS-specific details	561
1.40.1 Loading a 32-bit constant into register	561
1.40.2 Further reading about MIPS	563
2 Important fundamentals	564
2.1 Integral datatypes	564
2.1.1 Bit	564
2.1.2 Nibble AKA nybble	565
2.1.3 Byte	566
2.1.4 Wide char	566
2.1.5 Signed integer vs unsigned	567
2.1.6 Word	567
2.1.7 Address register	569
2.1.8 Numbers	569
2.2 Signed number representations	572
2.2.1 Using IMUL over MUL	574
2.2.2 Couple of additions about two's complement form	575
2.2.3 -1	576
2.3 Integer overflow	576
2.4 AND	577
2.4.1 Checking if a value is on 2^n boundary	577
2.4.2 KOI-8R Cyrillic encoding	578
2.5 AND and OR as subtraction and addition	579
2.5.1 ZX Spectrum ROM text strings	579
2.6 XOR (exclusive OR)	582
2.6.1 Logical difference	582
2.6.2 Everyday speech	582
2.6.3 Encryption	582
2.6.4 RAID ² 4	582
2.6.5 XOR swap algorithm	583
2.6.6 XOR linked list	584
2.6.7 Switching value trick	584
2.6.8 Zobrist hashing / tabulation hashing	585
2.6.9 By the way	586
2.6.10 AND/OR/XOR as MOV	586
2.7 Population count	586
2.8 Endianness	587
2.8.1 Big-endian	587
2.8.2 Little-endian	587
2.8.3 Example	587
2.8.4 Bi-endian	588
2.8.5 Converting data	588
2.9 Memory	589
2.10 CPU	589
2.10.1 Branch predictors	589
2.10.2 Data dependencies	590
2.11 Hash functions	590

²Redundant Array of Independent Disks

2.11.1 How do one-way functions work?	590
3 Slightly more advanced examples	592
3.1 Zero register	592
3.2 Double negation	596
3.3 const correctness	597
3.3.1 Overlapping const strings	599
3.4 strstr() example	600
3.5 qsort() revisited	601
3.6 Temperature converting	601
3.6.1 Integer values	602
3.6.2 Floating-point values	604
3.7 Fibonacci numbers	607
3.7.1 Example #1	607
3.7.2 Example #2	612
3.7.3 Summary	615
3.8 CRC32 calculation example	616
3.9 Network address calculation example	620
3.9.1 calc_network_address()	622
3.9.2 form_IP()	622
3.9.3 print_as_IP()	624
3.9.4 form_netmask() and set_bit()	626
3.9.5 Summary	627
3.10 Loops: several iterators	627
3.10.1 Three iterators	628
3.10.2 Two iterators	628
3.10.3 Intel C++ 2011 case	631
3.11 Duff's device	632
3.11.1 Should one use unrolled loops?	636
3.12 Division using multiplication	636
3.12.1 x86	636
3.12.2 How it works	638
3.12.3 ARM	638
3.12.4 MIPS	640
3.12.5 Exercise	640
3.13 String to number conversion (atoi())	641
3.13.1 Simple example	641
3.13.2 A slightly advanced example	645
3.13.3 Exercise	649
3.14 Inline functions	649
3.14.1 Strings and memory functions	650
3.15 C99 restrict	660
3.16 Branchless <i>abs()</i> function	663
3.16.1 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64	664
3.16.2 Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64	664
3.17 Variadic functions	665
3.17.1 Computing arithmetic mean	665
3.17.2 <i>vprintf()</i> function case	670
3.17.3 Pin case	672

3.17.4 Format string exploit	672
3.18 Strings trimming	673
3.18.1 x64: Optimizing MSVC 2013	675
3.18.2 x64: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1	677
3.18.3 x64: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1	678
3.18.4 ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	679
3.18.5 ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9	681
3.18.6 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)	682
3.18.7 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)	682
3.18.8 MIPS	683
3.19 toupper() function	685
3.19.1 x64	686
3.19.2 ARM	688
3.19.3 Using bit operations	689
3.19.4 Summary	691
3.20 Obfuscation	691
3.20.1 Text strings	691
3.20.2 Executable code	692
3.20.3 Virtual machine / pseudo-code	696
3.20.4 Other things to mention	696
3.20.5 Exercise	696
3.21 C++	697
3.21.1 Classes	697
3.21.2 ostream	718
3.21.3 References	720
3.21.4 STL	721
3.21.5 Memory	766
3.22 Negative array indices	767
3.22.1 Addressing string from the end	767
3.22.2 Addressing some kind of block from the end	768
3.22.3 Arrays started at 1	768
3.23 More about pointers	771
3.23.1 Working with addresses instead of pointers	772
3.23.2 Passing values as pointers; tagged unions	775
3.23.3 Pointers abuse in Windows kernel	776
3.23.4 Null pointers	782
3.23.5 Array as function argument	788
3.23.6 Pointer to a function	789
3.23.7 Pointer to a function: copy protection	790
3.23.8 Pointer to a function: a common bug (or typo)	791
3.23.9 Pointer as object identifier	791
3.23.10 Oracle RDBMS and a simple garbage collector for C/C++	793
3.24 Loop optimizations	794
3.24.1 Weird loop optimization	794
3.24.2 Another loop optimization	796
3.25 More about structures	798
3.25.1 Sometimes a C structure can be used instead of array	798
3.25.2 Unsized array in C structure	800
3.25.3 Version of C structure	801

	x
3.25.4 High-score file in “Block out” game and primitive serialization	804
3.26 memmove() and memcpy()	809
3.26.1 Anti-debugging trick	811
3.27 setjmp/longjmp	811
3.28 Other weird stack hacks	814
3.28.1 Accessing arguments/local variables of caller	814
3.28.2 Returning string	816
3.29 OpenMP	818
3.29.1 MSVC	821
3.29.2 GCC	824
3.30 Signed division using shifts	826
3.31 Another heisenbug	828
3.32 The case of forgotten return	829
3.33 Homework: more about function pointers and unions	834
3.34 Windows 16-bit	836
3.34.1 Example#1	836
3.34.2 Example #2	837
3.34.3 Example #3	837
3.34.4 Example #4	839
3.34.5 Example #5	842
3.34.6 Example #6	846
4 Java	851
4.1 Java	851
4.1.1 Introduction	851
4.1.2 Returning a value	852
4.1.3 Simple calculating functions	858
4.1.4 JVM ³ memory model	861
4.1.5 Simple function calling	861
4.1.6 Calling beep()	864
4.1.7 Linear congruential PRNG ⁴	864
4.1.8 Conditional jumps	866
4.1.9 Passing arguments	869
4.1.10 Bitfields	870
4.1.11 Loops	871
4.1.12 switch()	874
4.1.13 Arrays	875
4.1.14 Strings	886
4.1.15 Exceptions	889
4.1.16 Classes	893
4.1.17 Simple patching	896
4.1.18 Summary	902
5 Finding important/interesting stuff in the code	903
5.1 Identification of executable files	904
5.1.1 Microsoft Visual C++	904
5.1.2 GCC	904

³Java Virtual Machine

⁴Pseudorandom Number Generator

	xi
5.1.3 Intel Fortran	905
5.1.4 Watcom, OpenWatcom	905
5.1.5 Borland	905
5.1.6 Other known DLLs	907
5.2 Communication with outer world (function level)	907
5.3 Communication with the outer world (win32)	907
5.3.1 Often used functions in the Windows API	908
5.3.2 Extending trial period	909
5.3.3 Removing nag dialog box	909
5.3.4 tracer: Intercepting all functions in specific module	909
5.4 Strings	910
5.4.1 Text strings	910
5.4.2 Finding strings in binary	916
5.4.3 Error/debug messages	918
5.4.4 Suspicious magic strings	918
5.5 Calls to assert()	919
5.6 Constants	920
5.6.1 Magic numbers	921
5.6.2 Specific constants	923
5.6.3 Searching for constants	923
5.7 Finding the right instructions	923
5.8 Suspicious code patterns	925
5.8.1 XOR instructions	925
5.8.2 Hand-written assembly code	926
5.9 Using magic numbers while tracing	927
5.10 Loops	927
5.10.1 Some binary file patterns	929
5.10.2 Memory “snapshots” comparing	937
5.11 ISA ⁵ detection	939
5.11.1 Incorrectly disassembled code	939
5.11.2 Correctly disassembled code	945
5.12 Other things	945
5.12.1 General idea	945
5.12.2 Order of functions in binary code	945
5.12.3 Tiny functions	946
5.12.4 C++	946
5.12.5 Crash on purpose	946
6 OS-specific	947
6.1 Arguments passing methods (calling conventions)	947
6.1.1 cdecl	947
6.1.2 stdcall	947
6.1.3 fastcall	949
6.1.4 thiscall	950
6.1.5 x86-64	951
6.1.6 Return values of <i>float</i> and <i>double</i> type	954
6.1.7 Modifying arguments	954
6.1.8 Taking a pointer to function argument	956

⁵Instruction Set Architecture

6.1.9 Python ctypes problem (x86 assembly homework)	958
6.1.10 Cdecl example: a DLL	958
6.2 Thread Local Storage	959
6.2.1 Linear congruential generator revisited	959
6.3 System calls (syscall-s)	965
6.3.1 Linux	966
6.3.2 Windows	966
6.4 Linux	967
6.4.1 Position-independent code	967
6.4.2 LD_PRELOAD hack in Linux	970
6.5 Windows NT	973
6.5.1 CRT (win32)	973
6.5.2 Win32 PE	978
6.5.3 Windows SEH	988
6.5.4 Windows NT: Critical section	1017
7 Tools	1020
7.1 Binary analysis	1020
7.1.1 Disassemblers	1021
7.1.2 Decompilers	1021
7.1.3 Patch comparison/diffing	1021
7.2 Live analysis	1021
7.2.1 Debuggers	1022
7.2.2 Library calls tracing	1022
7.2.3 System calls tracing	1022
7.2.4 Network sniffing	1023
7.2.5 Sysinternals	1023
7.2.6 Valgrind	1023
7.2.7 Emulators	1023
7.3 Other tools	1024
7.3.1 SMT solvers	1024
7.3.2 Calculators	1024
7.4 Do You Think Something Is Missing Here?	1024
8 Case studies	1025
8.1 Mahjong solitaire prank (Windows 7)	1026
8.2 Task manager practical joke (Windows Vista)	1028
8.2.1 Using LEA to load values	1032
8.3 Color Lines game practical joke	1033
8.4 Minesweeper (Windows XP)	1036
8.4.1 Finding grid automatically	1043
8.4.2 Exercises	1044
8.5 Hacking Windows clock	1044
8.6 (Windows 7) Solitaire: practical jokes	1054
8.6.1 51 cards	1054
8.6.2 53 cards	1062
8.7 FreeCell prank (Windows 7)	1063
8.7.1 Part I	1063
8.7.2 Part II: breaking the <i>Select Game</i> submenu	1068

8.8 Dongles	1070
8.8.1 Example #1: MacOS Classic and PowerPC	1070
8.8.2 Example #2: SCO OpenServer	1080
8.8.3 Example #3: MS-DOS	1093
8.9 Encrypted database case #1	1100
8.9.1 Base64 and entropy	1100
8.9.2 Is data compressed?	1102
8.9.3 Is data encrypted?	1103
8.9.4 CryptoPP	1104
8.9.5 Cipher Feedback mode	1107
8.9.6 Initializing Vector	1109
8.9.7 Structure of the buffer	1110
8.9.8 Noise at the end	1113
8.9.9 Conclusion	1114
8.9.10 Post Scriptum: brute-forcing IV ⁶	1114
8.10 Overclocking Cointerra Bitcoin miner	1115
8.11 Breaking simple executable code encryptor	1121
8.11.1 Other ideas to consider	1126
8.12 SAP	1127
8.12.1 About SAP client network traffic compression	1127
8.12.2 SAP 6.0 password checking functions	1142
8.13 Oracle RDBMS	1147
8.13.1 V\$VERSION table in the Oracle RDBMS	1147
8.13.2 X\$KSMLRU table in Oracle RDBMS	1157
8.13.3 V\$TIMER table in Oracle RDBMS	1159
8.14 Handwritten assembly code	1164
8.14.1 EICAR test file	1164
8.15 Demos	1165
8.15.1 10 PRINT CHR\$(205.5+RND(1)); : GOTO 10	1166
8.15.2 Mandelbrot set	1170
8.16 A nasty bug in MSVCRT.DLL	1182
8.17 Other examples	1190
9 Examples of reversing proprietary file formats	1191
9.1 Primitive XOR-encryption	1191
9.1.1 Simplest ever XOR encryption	1191
9.1.2 Norton Guide: simplest possible 1-byte XOR encryption	1193
9.1.3 Simplest possible 4-byte XOR encryption	1196
9.1.4 Simple encryption using XOR mask	1200
9.1.5 Simple encryption using XOR mask, case II	1209
9.1.6 Homework	1216
9.2 Information entropy	1216
9.2.1 Analyzing entropy in Mathematica	1217
9.2.2 Conclusion	1227
9.2.3 Tools	1227
9.2.4 A word about primitive encryption like XORing	1227
9.2.5 More about entropy of executable code	1227
9.2.6 PRNG	1228

⁶Initialization Vector

9.2.7 More examples	1228
9.2.8 Entropy of various files	1228
9.2.9 Making lower level of entropy	1230
9.3 Millenium game save file	1231
9.4 <i>fortune</i> program indexing file	1238
9.4.1 Hacking	1244
9.4.2 The files	1245
9.5 Oracle RDBMS: .SYM-files	1245
9.6 Oracle RDBMS: .MSB-files	1258
9.6.1 Summary	1264
9.7 Exercises	1264
9.8 Further reading	1264
10 Dynamic binary instrumentation	1265
10.1 Using PIN DBI for XOR interception	1265
10.2 Cracking Minesweeper with PIN	1269
10.2.1 Intercepting all rand() calls	1269
10.2.2 Replacing rand() calls with our function	1270
10.2.3 Peeking into placement of mines	1271
10.2.4 Exercise	1274
10.3 Building Pin	1274
10.4 Why “instrumentation”?	1275
11 Other things	1276
11.1 Executable files patching	1276
11.1.1 x86 code	1276
11.2 Function arguments number statistics	1277
11.3 Compiler intrinsic	1278
11.4 Compiler’s anomalies	1278
11.4.1 Oracle RDBMS 11.2 and Intel C++ 10.1	1278
11.4.2 MSVC 6.0	1279
11.4.3 <i>ftol2()</i> in MSVC 2012	1279
11.4.4 Summary	1281
11.5 Itanium	1281
11.6 8086 memory model	1284
11.7 Basic blocks reordering	1286
11.7.1 Profile-guided optimization	1286
11.8 My experience with Hex-Rays 2.2.0	1288
11.8.1 Bugs	1288
11.8.2 Odd peculiarities	1290
11.8.3 Silence	1291
11.8.4 Comma	1293
11.8.5 Data types	1294
11.8.6 Long and messed expressions	1294
11.8.7 De Morgan’s laws and decompilation	1295
11.8.8 My plan	1297
11.8.9 Summary	1297
11.9 Cyclomatic complexity	1297

12 Books/blogs worth reading	1301
12.1 Books and other materials	1301
12.1.1 Reverse Engineering	1301
12.1.2 Windows	1301
12.1.3 C/C++	1302
12.1.4 x86 / x86-64	1302
12.1.5 ARM	1302
12.1.6 Assembly language	1303
12.1.7 Java	1303
12.1.8 UNIX	1303
12.1.9 Programming in general	1303
12.1.10 Cryptography	1303
12.1.11 Something even easier	1303
13 Communities	1304
Afterword	1306
13.1 Questions?	1306
Appendix	1308
.1 x86	1308
.1.1 Terminology	1308
.1.2 General purpose registers	1308
.1.3 FPU registers	1313
.1.4 SIMD registers	1315
.1.5 Debugging registers	1315
.1.6 Instructions	1317
.1.7 npad	1333
.2 ARM	1335
.2.1 Terminology	1335
.2.2 Versions	1335
.2.3 32-bit ARM (AArch32)	1336
.2.4 64-bit ARM (AArch64)	1337
.2.5 Instructions	1338
.3 MIPS	1338
.3.1 Registers	1338
.3.2 Instructions	1339
.4 Some GCC library functions	1340
.5 Some MSVC library functions	1340
.6 Cheatsheets	1341
.6.1 IDA	1341
.6.2 OllyDbg	1341
.6.3 MSVC	1342
.6.4 GCC	1342
.6.5 GDB	1342

Acronyms Used	1345
Glossary	1352
Index	1355

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

Preface

What is with two titles?

The book was named “Reverse Engineering for Beginners” in 2014-2018, but I always suspected this makes readership too narrow.

Infosec people know about “reverse engineering”, but I’ve rarely hear the “assembler” word from them.

Likewise, the “reverse engineering” term is somewhat cryptic to a general audience of programmers, but they know about “assembler”.

In July 2018, as an experiment, I’ve changed the title to “Assembly Language for Beginners” and posted the link to Hacker News website⁷, and the book was received generally well.

So let it be, the book now has two titles.

However, I’ve changed the second title to “Understanding Assembly Language”, because someone had already written “Assembly Language for Beginners” book. Also, people say “for Beginners” sounds a bit sarcastic for a book of ~1000 pages.

The two books differ only by title, filename (UAL-XX.pdf versus RE4B-XX.pdf), URL and a couple of the first pages.

About reverse engineering

There are several popular meanings of the term “[reverse engineering](#)”:

- 1) The reverse engineering of software; researching compiled programs
- 2) The scanning of 3D structures and the subsequent digital manipulation required in order to duplicate them
- 3) Recreating [DBMS](#)⁸ structure

This book is about the first meaning.

Prerequisites

Basic knowledge of the C [PL](#)⁹. Recommended reading: [12.1.3 on page 1302](#).

Exercises and tasks

...can be found at: <http://challenges.re>.

Praise for this book

<https://beginners.re/#praise>.

⁷ <https://news.ycombinator.com/item?id=17549050>

⁸ Database Management Systems

⁹ Programming Language

Universities

The book is recommended at least at these universities: <https://beginners.re/#uni>.

Thanks

For patiently answering all my questions: SkullC0DEr.

For sending me notes about mistakes and inaccuracies: Alexander Lysenko, Federico Ramondino, Mark Wilson, Razikhova Meiramgul Kayratovna, Anatoly Prokofiev, Kostya Begunets, Valentin “netch” Nechayev, Aleksandr Plakhov, Artem Metla, Alexander Yastrebov, Vlad Golovkin¹⁰, Evgeny Proshin, Alexander Myasnikov, Alexey Tretiakov, Oleg Peskov, Zhu Ruijin, Changmin Heo, Vitor Vidal, Stijn Crevits, Jean-Gregoire Foulon¹¹, Ben L., Etienne Khan, Norbert Szetei¹², Marc Remy, Michael Hansen, Derk Barten, The Renaissance¹³, Hugo Chan, Emil Mursalimov, Tanner Hoke, Tan90909090@GitHub, Ole Petter Orhagen, Sourav Punoriyar, Vitor Oliveira, Alexis Ehret, Maxim Shlochiski, Greg Paton, Pierrick Lebourgeois, Abdullah Alomair.

For helping me in other ways: Andrew Zubinski, Arnaud Patard (rtp on #debian-arm IRC), noshadow on #gcc IRC, Aliaksandr Autayeу, Mohsen Mostafa Jokar, Peter Sovietov, Misha “tiphareth” Verbitsky.

For translating the book into Simplified Chinese: Antiy Labs (antiy.cn), Archer.

For translating the book into Korean: Byungho Min.

For translating the book into Dutch: Cedric Sambre (AKA Midas).

For translating the book into Spanish: Diego Boy, Luis Alberto Espinosa Calvo, Fernando Guida, Diogo Mussi, Patricio Galdames, Emiliano Estevarena.

For translating the book into Portuguese: Thales Stevan de A. Gois, Diogo Mussi, Luiz Filipe, Primo David Santini.

For translating the book into Italian: Federico Ramondino¹⁴, Paolo Stivanin¹⁵, twyK, Fabrizio Bertone, Matteo Sticco, Marco Negro¹⁶, bluepulsar.

For translating the book into French: Florent Besnard¹⁷, Marc Remy¹⁸, Baudouin Landais, Téo Dacquet¹⁹, BlueSkeye@GitHub²⁰.

For translating the book into German: Dennis Siekmeier²¹, Julius Angres²², Dirk

¹⁰goto-vlad@github

¹¹<https://github.com/pixjuan>

¹²<https://github.com/73696e65>

¹³<https://github.com/TheRenaissance>

¹⁴<https://github.com/pinkrab>

¹⁵<https://github.com/paolostivanin>

¹⁶<https://github.com/Internaut401>

¹⁷<https://github.com/besnardf>

¹⁸<https://github.com/mremy>

¹⁹<https://github.com/T30rix>

²⁰<https://github.com/BlueSkeye>

²¹<https://github.com/DSiekmeier>

²²<https://github.com/JAngres>

Loser²³, Clemens Tamme, Philipp Schweinzer.

For translating the book into Polish: Kateryna Rozanova, Aleksander Mistewicz, Wiktoria Lewicka, Marcin Sokołowski.

For translating the book into Japanese: shmz@github²⁴, 4ryuJP@github²⁵.

For proofreading: Vladimir Botov, Andrei Brazhuk, Mark “Logxen” Cooper, Yuan Jochen Kang, Mal Malakov, Lewis Porter, Jarle Thorsen, Hong Xie.

Vasil Kolev²⁶ did a great amount of work in proofreading and correcting many mistakes.

Thanks also to all the folks on github.com who have contributed notes and corrections.

Many L^AT_EX packages were used: I would like to thank the authors as well.

Donors

Those who supported me during the time when I wrote significant part of the book:

2 * Oleg Vygovsky (50+100 UAH), Daniel Bilar (\$50), James Truscott (\$4.5), Luis Rocha (\$63), Joris van de Vis (\$127), Richard S Shultz (\$20), Jang Minchang (\$20), Shade Atlas (5 AUD), Yao Xiao (\$10), Paweł Szczur (40 CHF), Justin Simms (\$20), Shawn the R0ck (\$27), Ki Chan Ahn (\$50), Triop AB (100 SEK), Ange Albertini (€10+50), Sergey Lukianov (300 RUR), Ludvig Gislason (200 SEK), Gérard Labadie (€40), Sergey Volchkov (10 AUD), Vankayala Vigneswararao (\$50), Philippe Teuwen (\$4), Martin Haeberli (\$10), Victor Cazacov (€5), Tobias Sturzenegger (10 CHF), Sonny Thai (\$15), Bayna AlZAabi (\$75), Redfive B.V. (€25), Joona Oskari Heikkilä (€5), Marshall Bishop (\$50), Nicolas Werner (€12), Jeremy Brown (\$100), Alexandre Borges (\$25), Vladimir Dikovski (€50), Jiarui Hong (100.00 SEK), Jim Di (500 RUR), Tan Vincent (\$30), Sri Harsha Kandakota (10 AUD), Pillay Harish (10 SGD), Timur Valiev (230 RUR), Carlos Garcia Prado (€10), Salikov Alexander (500 RUR), Oliver Whitehouse (30 GBP), Katy Moe (\$14), Maxim Dyakonov (\$3), Sebastian Aguilera (€20), Hans-Martin Münch (€15), Jarle Thorsen (100 NOK), Vitaly Osipov (\$100), Yuri Romanov (1000 RUR), Aliaksandr Autayeu (€10), Tudor Azoitei (\$40), Z0vsky (€10), Yu Dai (\$10), Anonymous (\$15), Vladislav Chelnokov (\$25), Nenad Noveljic (\$50), Ryan Smith (\$25), Andreas Schommer (€5), Nikolay Gavrilov (\$300), Ernesto Bonev Reynoso (\$30).

Thanks a lot to every donor!

mini-FAQ

Q: Is this book simpler/easier than others?

A: No, it is at about the same level as other books of this subject.

Q: I'm too frightened to start reading this book, there are more than 1000 pages. “...for Beginners” in the name sounds a bit sarcastic.

²³<https://github.com/PolymathMonkey>

²⁴<https://github.com/shmz>

²⁵<https://github.com/4ryuJP>

²⁶<https://vasil.ludost.net/>

A: All sorts of listings are the bulk of the book. The book is indeed for beginners, there is a lot missing (yet).

Q: What are the prerequisites for reading this book?

A: A basic understanding of C/C++ is desirable.

Q: Should I really learn x86/x64/ARM and MIPS at once? Isn't it too much?

A: Starters can read about just x86/x64, while skipping or skimming the ARM and MIPS parts.

Q: Can I buy a Russian or English hard copy/paper book?

A: Unfortunately, no. No publisher got interested in publishing a Russian or English version so far. Meanwhile, you can ask your favorite copy shop to print and bind it. https://yurichev.com/news/20200222_printed_RE4B/.

Q: Is there an epub or mobi version?

A: No. The book is highly dependent on TeX/LaTeX-specific hacks, so converting to HTML (epub/mobi are a set of HTMLs) would not be easy.

Q: Why should one learn assembly language these days?

A: Unless you are an OS²⁷ developer, you probably don't need to code in assembly—the latest compilers (2010s) are much better at performing optimizations than humans²⁸.

Also, the latest CPU²⁹s are very complex devices, and assembly knowledge doesn't really help towards understand their internals.

That being said, there are at least two areas where a good understanding of assembly can be helpful: First and foremost, for security/malware research. It is also a good way to gain a better understanding of your compiled code while debugging. This book is therefore intended for those who want to understand assembly language rather than to code in it, which is why there are many examples of compiler output contained within.

Q: I clicked on a hyperlink inside a PDF-document, how do I go back?

A: In Adobe Acrobat Reader click Alt+LeftArrow. In Evince click “<” button.

Q: May I print this book / use it for teaching?

A: Of course! That's why the book is licensed under the Creative Commons license (CC BY-SA 4.0).

Q: Why is this book free? You've done great job. This is suspicious, as with many other free things.

A: In my own experience, authors of technical literature write mostly for self-advertisement purposes. It's not possible to make any decent money from such work.

Q: How does one get a job in reverse engineering?

²⁷Operating System

²⁸A very good text on this topic: [Agner Fog, *The microarchitecture of Intel, AMD and VIA CPUs*, (2016)]

²⁹Central Processing Unit

A: There are hiring threads that appear from time to time on reddit, devoted to RE³⁰. Try looking there.

A somewhat related hiring thread can be found in the “netsec” subreddit.

Q: Compilers’ versions in the book are outdated already...

A: No need to follow all steps precisely. Use the compilers you already have installed on your OS. Also, there is: [Compiler Explorer](#).

Q: I have a question...

A: Send it to me by email (<book@beginners.re>).

About the Korean translation

In January 2015, the Acorn publishing company (www.acornpub.co.kr) in South Korea did a huge amount of work in translating and publishing this book (as it was in August 2014) into Korean.

It’s available now at [their website](#).

The translator is Byungho Min (twitter/tais9). The cover art was done by the artistic Andy Nechaevsky, a friend of the author: facebook/andydinka. Acorn also holds the copyright to the Korean translation.

So, if you want to have a *real* book on your shelf in Korean and want to support this work, it is now available for purchase.

About the Persian/Farsi translation

In 2016 the book was translated by Mohsen Mostafa Jokar (who is also known to Iranian community for his translation of Radare manual³¹). It is available on the publisher’s website³² (Pendare Pars).

Here is a link to a 40-page excerpt: <https://beginners.re/farsi.pdf>.

National Library of Iran registration information: <http://opac.nlai.ir/opac-prod/bibliographic/4473995>.

About the Chinese translation

In April 2017, translation to Chinese was completed by Chinese PTPress. They are also the Chinese translation copyright holders.

The Chinese version is available for order here: <http://www.epubit.com.cn/book/details/4174>. A partial review and history behind the translation can be found here: <http://www.cptoday.cn/news/detail/3155>.

The principal translator is Archer, to whom the author owes very much. He was extremely meticulous (in a good sense) and reported most of the known mistakes

³⁰ reddit.com/r/ReverseEngineering/

³¹ <http://rada.re/get/radare2book-persian.pdf>

³² <http://goo.gl/2Tzx0H>

and bugs, which is very important in literature such as this book. The author would recommend his services to any other author!

The guys from [Antiy Labs](#) has also helped with translation. [Here is preface](#) written by them.

Chapter 1

Code Patterns

1.1 The method

When the author of this book first started learning C and, later, C++, he used to write small pieces of code, compile them, and then look at the assembly language output. This made it very easy for him to understand what was going on in the code that he had written.¹ He did this so many times that the relationship between the C/C++ code and what the compiler produced was imprinted deeply in his mind. It's now easy for him to imagine instantly a rough outline of a C code's appearance and function. Perhaps this technique could be helpful for others.

By the way, there is a great website where you can do the same, with various compilers, instead of installing them on your box. You can use it as well: <https://godbolt.org/>.

Exercises

When the author of this book studied assembly language, he also often compiled small C functions and then rewrote them gradually to assembly, trying to make their code as short as possible. This probably is not worth doing in real-world scenarios today, because it's hard to compete with the latest compilers in terms of efficiency. It is, however, a very good way to gain a better understanding of assembly. Feel free, therefore, to take any assembly code from this book and try to make it shorter. However, don't forget to test what you have written.

Optimization levels and debug information

Source code can be compiled by different compilers with various optimization levels. A typical compiler has about three such levels, where level zero means that opti-

¹In fact, he still does this when he can't understand what a particular bit of code does. A recent example from the year 2019: `p += p+(i&1)+2;` from the "SAT0W" SAT-solver by D.Knuth.

mization is completely disabled. Optimization can also be targeted towards code size or code speed. A non-optimizing compiler is faster and produces more understandable (albeit verbose) code, whereas an optimizing compiler is slower and tries to produce code that runs faster (but is not necessarily more compact). In addition to optimization levels, a compiler can include some debug information in the resulting file, producing code that is easy to debug. One of the important features of the ‘debug’ code is that it might contain links between each line of the source code and its respective machine code address. Optimizing compilers, on the other hand, tend to produce output where entire lines of source code can be optimized away and thus not even be present in the resulting machine code. Reverse engineers can encounter either version, simply because some developers turn on the compiler’s optimization flags and others do not. Because of this, we’ll try to work on examples of both debug and release versions of the code featured in this book, wherever possible.

Sometimes some pretty ancient compilers are used in this book, in order to get the shortest (or simplest) possible code snippet.

1.2 Some basics

1.2.1 A short introduction to the CPU

The **CPU** is the device that executes the machine code a program consists of.

A short glossary:

Instruction : A primitive **CPU** command. The simplest examples include: moving data between registers, working with memory, primitive arithmetic operations. As a rule, each **CPU** has its own instruction set architecture (**ISA**).

Machine code : Code that the **CPU** directly processes. Each instruction is usually encoded by several bytes.

Assembly language : Mnemonic code and some extensions, like macros, that are intended to make a programmer’s life easier.

CPU register : Each **CPU** has a fixed set of general purpose registers (**GPR**²). ≈ 8 in x86, ≈ 16 in x86-64, and also ≈ 16 in ARM. The easiest way to understand a register is to think of it as an untyped temporary variable. Imagine if you were working with a high-level **PL** and could only use eight 32-bit (or 64-bit) variables. Yet a lot can be done using just these!

One might wonder why there needs to be a difference between machine code and a **PL**. The answer lies in the fact that humans and **CPUs** are not alike—it is much easier for humans to use a high-level **PL** like C/C++, Java, or Python, but it is easier for a **CPU** to use a much lower level of abstraction. Perhaps it would be possible to invent a **CPU** that can execute high-level **PL** code, but it would be many times more complex than the **CPUs** we know of today. In a similar fashion, it is very inconvenient for humans to write in assembly language, due to it being so low-level and difficult

²General Purpose Registers

to write in without making a huge number of annoying mistakes. The program that converts the high-level [PL](#) code into assembly is called a *compiler*. ³.

A couple of words about different **ISAs**

The x86 [ISA](#) has always had variable-length instructions, so when the 64-bit era came, the x64 extensions did not impact the [ISA](#) very significantly. In fact, the x86 [ISA](#) still contains a lot of instructions that first appeared in 16-bit 8086 CPU, yet are still found in the CPUs of today. ARM is a [RISC](#)⁴ [CPU](#) designed with constant-length instructions in mind, which had some advantages in the past. In the very beginning, all ARM instructions were encoded in 4 bytes⁵. This is now referred to as “ARM mode”. Then they realized it wasn’t as frugal as they first imagined. In fact, the most common [CPU](#) instructions⁶ in real world applications can be encoded using less information. They therefore added another [ISA](#), called Thumb, in which each instruction was encoded in just 2 bytes. This is now referred to as “Thumb mode”. However, not *all* ARM instructions can be encoded in just 2 bytes, so the Thumb instruction set is somewhat limited. It is worth noting that code compiled for ARM mode and Thumb mode can coexist within one single program. The ARM creators thought Thumb could be extended, giving rise to Thumb-2, which appeared in ARMv7. Thumb-2 still uses 2-byte instructions, but has some new instructions which have the size of 4 bytes. There is a common misconception that Thumb-2 is a mix of ARM and Thumb. This is incorrect. Rather, Thumb-2 was extended to fully support all processor features so it could compete with ARM mode—a goal that was clearly achieved, as the majority of applications for iPod/iPhone/iPad are compiled for the Thumb-2 instruction set. (Though, admittedly, this is largely due to the fact that Xcode does this by default). Later the 64-bit ARM came out. This [ISA](#) has 4-byte instructions, and lacked the need of any additional Thumb mode. However, the 64-bit requirements affected the [ISA](#), resulting in us now having three ARM instruction sets: ARM mode, Thumb mode (including Thumb-2) and ARM64. These [ISAs](#) intersect partially, but it can be said that they are different [ISAs](#), rather than variations of the same one. Therefore, we will try to add fragments of code in all three ARM [ISAs](#) in this book. There are, by the way, many other [RISC ISAs](#) with fixed length 32-bit instructions, such as MIPS, PowerPC and Alpha AXP.

1.2.2 Numeral Systems

Nowadays octal numbers seem to be used for exactly one purpose—file permissions on POSIX systems—but hexadecimal numbers are widely used to emphasize the bit pattern of a number over its numeric value.

Alan A. A. Donovan, Brian W. Kernighan —
The Go Programming Language

³Old-school Russian literature also uses the term “translator”.

⁴Reduced Instruction Set Computing

⁵Fixed-length instructions are handy because one can calculate the next (or previous) instruction address without effort. This feature will be discussed in the `switch()` operator ([1.21.2 on page 217](#)) section.

⁶e.g. MOV/PUSH/CALL/Jcc

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Humans have become accustomed to a decimal numeral system, probably because almost everyone has 10 fingers. Nevertheless, the number “10” has no significant meaning in science and mathematics. The natural numeral system in digital electronics is binary: 0 is for an absence of current in the wire, and 1 for presence. 10 in binary is 2 in decimal, 100 in binary is 4 in decimal, and so on.

If the numeral system has 10 digits, it has a *radix* (or *base*) of 10. The binary numeral system has a *radix* of 2.

Important things to recall:

- 1) A *number* is a number, while a *digit* is a term from writing systems, and is usually one character
- 2) The value of a number does not change when converted to another radix; only the writing notation for that value has changed (and therefore the way of representing it in [RAM](#)⁷).

1.2.3 Converting From One Radix To Another

Positional notation is used in almost every numerical system. This means that a digit has weight relative to where it is placed inside of the larger number. If 2 is placed at the rightmost place, it's 2, but if it's placed one digit before rightmost, it's 20.

What does 1234 stand for?

$$10^3 \cdot 1 + 10^2 \cdot 2 + 10^1 \cdot 3 + 1 \cdot 4 = 1234 \text{ or } 1000 \cdot 1 + 100 \cdot 2 + 10 \cdot 3 + 4 = 1234$$

It's the same story for binary numbers, but the base is 2 instead of 10. What does 0b101011 stand for?

$$2^5 \cdot 1 + 2^4 \cdot 0 + 2^3 \cdot 1 + 2^2 \cdot 0 + 2^1 \cdot 1 + 2^0 \cdot 1 = 43 \text{ or } 32 \cdot 1 + 16 \cdot 0 + 8 \cdot 1 + 4 \cdot 0 + 2 \cdot 1 + 1 = 43$$

There is such a thing as non-positional notation, such as the Roman numeral system.⁸. Perhaps, humankind switched to positional notation because it's easier to do basic operations (addition, multiplication, etc.) on paper by hand.

Binary numbers can be added, subtracted and so on in the very same as taught in schools, but only 2 digits are available.

Binary numbers are bulky when represented in source code and dumps, so that is where the hexadecimal numeral system can be useful. A hexadecimal radix uses the digits 0..9, and also 6 Latin characters: A..F. Each hexadecimal digit takes 4 bits or 4 binary digits, so it's very easy to convert from binary number to hexadecimal and back, even manually, in one's mind.

hexadecimal	binary	decimal
0	0000	0
1	0001	1
2	0010	2
3	0011	3

⁷Random-Access Memory

⁸About numeric system evolution, see [Donald E. Knuth, *The Art of Computer Programming*, Volume 2, 3rd ed., (1997), 195–213.]

4	0100	4
5	0101	5
6	0110	6
7	0111	7
8	1000	8
9	1001	9
A	1010	10
B	1011	11
C	1100	12
D	1101	13
E	1110	14
F	1111	15

How can one tell which radix is being used in a specific instance?

Decimal numbers are usually written as is, i.e., 1234. Some assemblers allow an identifier on decimal radix numbers, in which the number would be written with a "d" suffix: 1234d.

Binary numbers are sometimes prepended with the "0b" prefix: 0b100110111 ([GCC⁹](#) has a non-standard language extension for this¹⁰). There is also another way: using a "b" suffix, for example: 100110111b. This book tries to use the "0b" prefix consistently throughout the book for binary numbers.

Hexadecimal numbers are prepended with "0x" prefix in C/C++ and other [PLs](#): 0x1234ABCD. Alternatively, they are given a "h" suffix: 1234ABCDh. This is common way of representing them in assemblers and debuggers. In this convention, if the number is started with a Latin (A..F) digit, a 0 is added at the beginning: 0ABCDEFh. There was also convention that was popular in 8-bit home computers era, using \$ prefix, like \$ABCD. The book will try to stick to "0x" prefix throughout the book for hexadecimal numbers.

Should one learn to convert numbers mentally? A table of 1-digit hexadecimal numbers can easily be memorized. As for larger numbers, it's probably not worth tormenting yourself.

Perhaps the most visible hexadecimal numbers are in [URL¹¹s](#). This is the way that non-Latin characters are encoded. For example: <https://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/na%C3%AFvet%C3%A9> is the [URL](#) of Wiktionary article about “naïveté” word.

Octal Radix

Another numeral system heavily used in the past of computer programming is octal. In octal there are 8 digits (0..7), and each is mapped to 3 bits, so it's easy to convert numbers back and forth. It has been superseded by the hexadecimal system almost

⁹GNU Compiler Collection

¹⁰<https://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/gcc/Binary-constants.html>

¹¹Uniform Resource Locator

everywhere, but, surprisingly, there is a *NIX utility, used often by many people, which takes octal numbers as argument: chmod.

As many *NIX users know, chmod argument can be a number of 3 digits. The first digit represents the rights of the owner of the file (read, write and/or execute), the second is the rights for the group to which the file belongs, and the third is for everyone else. Each digit that chmod takes can be represented in binary form:

decimal	binary	meaning
7	111	rwx
6	110	rw-
5	101	r-x
4	100	r--
3	011	-wx
2	010	-w-
1	001	--x
0	000	---

So each bit is mapped to a flag: read/write/execute.

The importance of chmod here is that the whole number in argument can be represented as octal number. Let's take, for example, 644. When you run chmod 644 file, you set read/write permissions for owner, read permissions for group and again, read permissions for everyone else. If we convert the octal number 644 to binary, it would be 110100100, or, in groups of 3 bits, 110 100 100.

Now we see that each triplet describe permissions for owner/group/others: first is rw-, second is r-- and third is r--.

The octal numeral system was also popular on old computers like PDP-8, because word there could be 12, 24 or 36 bits, and these numbers are all divisible by 3, so the octal system was natural in that environment. Nowadays, all popular computers employ word/address sizes of 16, 32 or 64 bits, and these numbers are all divisible by 4, so the hexadecimal system is more natural there.

The octal numeral system is supported by all standard C/C++ compilers. This is a source of confusion sometimes, because octal numbers are encoded with a zero prepended, for example, 0377 is 255. Sometimes, you might make a typo and write "09" instead of 9, and the compiler would report an error. GCC might report something like this:

```
error: invalid digit "9" in octal constant.
```

Also, the octal system is somewhat popular in Java. When the IDA shows Java strings with non-printable characters, they are encoded in the octal system instead of hexadecimal. The JAD Java decompiler behaves the same way.

Divisibility

When you see a decimal number like 120, you can quickly deduce that it's divisible by 10, because the last digit is zero. In the same way, 123400 is divisible by 100,

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

because the two last digits are zeros.

Likewise, the hexadecimal number 0x1230 is divisible by 0x10 (or 16), 0x123000 is divisible by 0x1000 (or 4096), etc.

The binary number 0b1000101000 is divisible by 0b1000 (8), etc.

This property can often be used to quickly realize if an address or a size of some block in memory is padded to some boundary. For example, sections in PE¹² files are almost always started at addresses ending with 3 hexadecimal zeros: 0x41000, 0x10001000, etc. The reason behind this is the fact that almost all PE sections are padded to a boundary of 0x1000 (4096) bytes.

Multi-Precision Arithmetic and Radix

Multi-precision arithmetic can use huge numbers, and each one may be stored in several bytes. For example, RSA keys, both public and private, span up to 4096 bits, and maybe even more.

In [Donald E. Knuth, *The Art of Computer Programming*, Volume 2, 3rd ed., (1997), 265] we find the following idea: when you store a multi-precision number in several bytes, the whole number can be represented as having a radix of $2^8 = 256$, and each digit goes to the corresponding byte. Likewise, if you store a multi-precision number in several 32-bit integer values, each digit goes to each 32-bit slot, and you may think about this number as stored in radix of 2^{32} .

How to Pronounce Non-Decimal Numbers

Numbers in a non-decimal base are usually pronounced by digit by digit: “one-zero-zero-one-one-...”. Words like “ten” and “thousand” are usually not pronounced, to prevent confusion with the decimal base system.

Floating point numbers

To distinguish floating point numbers from integers, they are usually written with “.” at the end, like 0.0, 123.0, etc.

1.3 An Empty Function

The simplest possible function is arguably one that does nothing:

Listing 1.1: C/C++ Code

```
void f()
{
    return;
};
```

Let's compile it!

¹²Portable Executable

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.3.1 x86

Here's what both the GCC and MSVC compilers produce on the x86 platform:

Listing 1.2: Optimizing GCC/MSVC (assembly output)

```
f:
    ret
```

There is just one instruction: RET, which returns execution to the [caller](#).

1.3.2 ARM

Listing 1.3: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode) assembly output

```
f      PROC
          BX      lr
      ENDP
```

The return address is not saved on the local stack in the ARM [ISA](#), but rather in the link register, so the BX LR instruction causes execution to jump to that address—effectively returning execution to the [caller](#).

1.3.3 MIPS

There are two naming conventions used in the world of MIPS when naming registers: by number (from \$0 to \$31) or by pseudo name (\$V0, \$A0, etc.).

The GCC assembly output below lists registers by number:

Listing 1.4: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly output)

```
j      $31
nop
```

...while [IDA](#)¹³ does it by pseudo name:

Listing 1.5: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
j      $ra
nop
```

The first instruction is the jump instruction (J or JR) which returns the execution flow to the [caller](#), jumping to the address in the \$31 (or \$RA) register.

This is the register analogous to [LR](#)¹⁴ in ARM.

The second instruction is [NOP](#)¹⁵, which does nothing. We can ignore it for now.

¹³ Interactive Disassembler and Debugger developed by [Hex-Rays](#)

¹⁴Link Register

¹⁵No Operation

A Note About MIPS Instructions and Register Names

Register and instruction names in the world of MIPS are traditionally written in lowercase. However, for the sake of consistency, this book will stick to using uppercase letters, as it is the convention followed by all the other ISAs featured in this book.

1.3.4 Empty Functions in Practice

Despite the fact empty functions seem useless, they are quite frequent in low-level code.

First of all, they are quite popular in debugging functions, like this one:

Listing 1.6: C/C++ code

```
void dbg_print (const char *fmt, ...)
{
#ifndef _DEBUG
    // open log file
    // write to log file
    // close log file
#endif
};

void some_function()
{
    ...
    ...
    dbg_print ("we did something\n");
    ...
}
```

In a non-debug build (as in a “release”), `_DEBUG` is not defined, so the `dbg_print()` function, despite still being called during execution, will be empty.

Similarly, a popular method of software protection is to make one build for legal customers, and another demo build. A demo build can lack of some important functions, as with this example:

Listing 1.7: C/C++ code

```
void save_file ()
{
#ifndef DEMO
    // a real saving code
#endif
};
```

The `save_file()` function could be called when the user clicks File->Save on the menu. The demo version might be delivered with this menu item disabled, but even if a software cracker would enable it, only an empty function with no useful code will be called.

IDA marks such functions with names like `nullsub_00`, `nullsub_01`, etc.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.4 Returning Values

Another simple function is the one that simply returns a constant value:

Listing 1.8: C/C++ Code

```
int f()
{
    return 123;
};
```

Let's compile it.

1.4.1 x86

Here's what both the GCC and MSVC compilers produce (with optimization) on the x86 platform:

Listing 1.9: Optimizing GCC/MSVC (assembly output)

```
f:
    mov     eax, 123
    ret
```

There are just two instructions: the first places the value 123 into the EAX register, which is used by convention for storing the return value, and the second one is RET, which returns execution to the [caller](#).

The caller will take the result from the EAX register.

1.4.2 ARM

There are a few differences on the ARM platform:

Listing 1.10: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode) ASM Output

```
f      PROC
      MOV      r0,#0x7b ; 123
      BX      lr
      ENDP
```

ARM uses the register R0 for returning the results of functions, so 123 is copied into R0.

It is worth noting that MOV is a misleading name for the instruction in both the x86 and ARM [ISAs](#).

The data is not in fact *moved*, but *copied*.

1.4.3 MIPS

The GCC assembly output below lists registers by number:

Listing 1.11: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly output)

j	\$31	
li	\$2,123	# 0x7b

...while [IDA](#) does it by their pseudo names:

Listing 1.12: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

jr	\$ra	
li	\$v0, 0x7B	

The \$2 (or \$V0) register is used to store the function's return value. LI stands for "Load Immediate" and is the MIPS equivalent to MOV.

The other instruction is the jump instruction (J or JR) which returns the execution flow to the [caller](#).

You might be wondering why the positions of the load instruction (LI) and the jump instruction (J or JR) are swapped. This is due to a [RISC](#) feature called "branch delay slot".

The reason this happens is a quirk in the architecture of some RISC [ISAs](#) and isn't important for our purposes—we must simply keep in mind that in MIPS, the instruction following a jump or branch instruction is executed *before* the jump/branch instruction itself.

As a consequence, branch instructions always swap places with the instruction executed immediately beforehand.

In practice, functions which merely return 1 (*true*) or 0 (*false*) are very frequent.

The smallest ever of the standard UNIX utilities, */bin/true* and */bin/false* return 0 and 1 respectively, as an exit code. (Zero as an exit code usually means success, non-zero means error.)

1.5 Hello, world!

Let's use the famous example from the book [Brian W. Kernighan, Dennis M. Ritchie, *The C Programming Language*, 2ed, (1988)]:

Listing 1.13: C/C++ Code

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf("hello, world\n");
    return 0;
}
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

1.5.1 x86

MSVC

Let's compile it in MSVC 2010:

```
cl 1.cpp /Fa1.asm
```

(The /Fa option instructs the compiler to generate an assembly listing file)

Listing 1.14: MSVC 2010

```
CONST SEGMENT
$SG3830 DB      'hello, world', 0AH, 00H
CONST ENDS
PUBLIC _main
EXTRN _printf:PROC
; Function compile flags: /Odtp
_TEXT SEGMENT
_main PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    OFFSET $SG3830
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main ENDP
_TEXT ENDS
```

MSVC produces assembly listings in Intel-syntax. The differences between Intel-syntax and AT&T-syntax will be discussed in [1.5.1 on page 15](#).

The compiler generated the file, 1.obj, which is to be linked into 1.exe. In our case, the file contains two segments: CONST (for data constants) and _TEXT (for code).

The string hello, world in C/C++ has type const char[][] [Bjarne Stroustrup, *The C++ Programming Language, 4th Edition*, (2013)p176, 7.3.2], but it does not have its own name. The compiler needs to deal with the string somehow, so it defines the internal name \$SG3830 for it.

That is why the example may be rewritten as follows:

```
#include <stdio.h>

const char $SG3830[]="hello, world\n";

int main()
{
    printf($SG3830);
    return 0;
}
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Let's go back to the assembly listing. As we can see, the string is terminated by a zero byte, which is standard for C/C++ strings. More about C/C++ strings: [5.4.1 on page 910](#).

In the code segment, _TEXT, there is only one function so far: `main()`. The function `main()` starts with prologue code and ends with epilogue code (like almost any function) ^{[16](#)}.

After the function prologue we see the call to the `printf()` function:
`CALL _printf`. Before the call, a string address (or a pointer to it) containing our greeting is placed on the stack with the help of the `PUSH` instruction.

When the `printf()` function returns the control to the `main()` function, the string address (or a pointer to it) is still on the stack. Since we do not need it anymore, the `stack pointer` (the `ESP` register) needs to be corrected.

`ADD ESP, 4` means add 4 to the `ESP` register value.

Why 4? Since this is a 32-bit program, we need exactly 4 bytes for address passing through the stack. If it was x64 code we would need 8 bytes. `ADD ESP, 4` is effectively equivalent to `POP register` but without using any register^{[17](#)}.

For the same purpose, some compilers (like the Intel C++ Compiler) may emit `POP ECX` instead of `ADD` (e.g., such a pattern can be observed in the Oracle RDBMS code as it is compiled with the Intel C++ compiler). This instruction has almost the same effect but the `ECX` register contents will be overwritten. The Intel C++ compiler supposedly uses `POP ECX` since this instruction's opcode is shorter than `ADD ESP, x` (1 byte for `POP` against 3 for `ADD`).

Here is an example of using `POP` instead of `ADD` from Oracle RDBMS:

Listing 1.15: Oracle RDBMS 10.2 Linux (app.o file)

<code>.text:0800029A</code>	<code>push</code>	<code>ebx</code>
<code>.text:0800029B</code>	<code>call</code>	<code>qksfroChild</code>
<code>.text:080002A0</code>	<code>pop</code>	<code>ecx</code>

However, MSVC can do the same.

Listing 1.16: MineSweeper from Windows 7 32-bit

<code>.text:0102106F</code>	<code>push</code>	<code>0</code>
<code>.text:01021071</code>	<code>call</code>	<code>ds:time</code>
<code>.text:01021077</code>	<code>pop</code>	<code>ecx</code>

After calling `printf()`, the original C/C++ code contains the statement `return 0` — return 0 as the result of the `main()` function.

In the generated code this is implemented by the instruction `XOR EAX, EAX`.

`XOR` is in fact just “eXclusive OR”^{[18](#)} but the compilers often use it instead of `MOV EAX, 0`—again because it is a slightly shorter opcode (2 bytes for `XOR` against 5 for `MOV`).

¹⁶You can read more about it in the section about function prologues and epilogues ([1.6 on page 39](#)).

¹⁷CPU flags, however, are modified

¹⁸[Wikipedia](#)

Some compilers emit SUB EAX, EAX, which means *SUBtract the value in the EAX from the value in EAX*. That in any case will result in zero.

The last instruction RET returns the control to the [caller](#). Usually, this is C/C++ CRT¹⁹ code which in turn returns control to the [OS](#).

GCC

Now let's try to compile the same C/C++ code in the GCC 4.4.1 compiler in Linux: `gcc 1.c -o 1`. Next, with the assistance of the [IDA](#) disassembler, let's see how the `main()` function was created. [IDA](#), like MSVC, uses Intel-syntax²⁰.

Listing 1.17: code in [IDA](#)

```
main          proc near
var_10        = dword ptr -10h

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and     esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
    sub     esp, 10h
    mov     eax, offset aHelloWorld ; "hello, world\n"
    mov     [esp+10h+var_10], eax
    call    _printf
    mov     eax, 0
    leave
    retn
main          endp
```

The result is almost the same. The address of the hello, world string (stored in the data segment) is loaded in the EAX register first, and then saved onto the stack. In addition, the function prologue has AND ESP, 0FFFFFFF0h —this instruction aligns the ESP register value on a 16-byte boundary. This results in all values in the stack being aligned the same way (The CPU performs better if the values it is dealing with are located in memory at addresses aligned on a 4-byte or 16-byte boundary).

SUB ESP, 10h allocates 16 bytes on the stack. Although, as we can see hereafter, only 4 are necessary here.

This is because the size of the allocated stack is also aligned on a 16-byte boundary.

The string address (or a pointer to the string) is then stored directly onto the stack without using the PUSH instruction. var_10 —is a local variable and is also an argument for printf(). Read about it below.

Then the printf() function is called.

Unlike MSVC, when GCC is compiling without optimization turned on, it emits MOV EAX, 0 instead of a shorter opcode.

¹⁹C Runtime library

²⁰We could also have GCC produce assembly listings in Intel-syntax by applying the options -S -masm=intel.

The last instruction, LEAVE —is the equivalent of the MOV ESP, EBP and POP EBP instruction pair —in other words, this instruction sets the **stack pointer** (ESP) back and restores the EBP register to its initial state. This is necessary since we modified these register values (ESP and EBP) at the beginning of the function (by executing MOV EBP, ESP / AND ESP, ...).

GCC: AT&T syntax

Let's see how this can be represented in assembly language AT&T syntax. This syntax is much more popular in the UNIX-world.

Listing 1.18: let's compile in GCC 4.7.3

```
gcc -S 1_1.c
```

We get this:

Listing 1.19: GCC 4.7.3

```
.file    "1_1.c"
.section .rodata
.LC0:
.string "hello, world\n"
.text
.globl main
.type   main, @function
main:
.LFB0:
.cfi_startproc
pushl %ebp
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 8
.cfi_offset 5, -8
movl %esp, %ebp
.cfi_def_cfa_register 5
andl $-16, %esp
subl $16, %esp
movl $.LC0, (%esp)
call printf
movl $0, %eax
leave
.cfi_restore 5
.cfi_def_cfa 4, 4
ret
.cfi_endproc
.LFE0:
.size   main, .-main
.ident  "GCC: (Ubuntu/Linaro 4.7.3-1ubuntu1) 4.7.3"
.section .note.GNU-stack,"",@progbits
```

The listing contains many macros (the parts that begin with a dot). These are not interesting for us at the moment.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

For now, for the sake of simplicity, we can ignore them (except the `.string` macro which encodes a null-terminated character sequence just like a C-string). Then we'll see this ²¹:

Listing 1.20: GCC 4.7.3

```
.LC0:
    .string "hello, world\n"
main:
    pushl %ebp
    movl %esp, %ebp
    andl $-16, %esp
    subl $16, %esp
    movl $.LC0, (%esp)
    call printf
    movl $0, %eax
    leave
    ret
```

Some of the major differences between Intel and AT&T syntax are:

- Source and destination operands are written in opposite order.
In Intel-syntax: <instruction> <destination operand> <source operand>. In AT&T syntax: <instruction> <source operand> <destination operand>. Here is an easy way to memorize the difference: when you deal with Intel-syntax, you can imagine that there is an equality sign (=) between operands and when you deal with AT&T-syntax imagine there is a right arrow (→) ²².
- AT&T: Before register names, a percent sign must be written (%) and before numbers a dollar sign (\$). Parentheses are used instead of brackets.
- AT&T: A suffix is added to instructions to define the operand size:
 - q — quad (64 bits)
 - l — long (32 bits)
 - w — word (16 bits)
 - b — byte (8 bits)

To go back to the compiled result: it is almost identical to what was displayed by [IDA](#). There is one subtle difference: `0xFFFFFFFF0h` is presented as `$-16`. It's the same thing: 16 in the decimal system is `0x10` in hexadecimal. `-0x10` is equal to `0xFFFFFFFF0` (for a 32-bit data type).

One more thing: the return value is set to 0 by using the usual `MOV`, not `XOR`. `MOV` just loads a value to a register. Its name is a misnomer (as the data is not moved but rather copied). In other architectures, this instruction is named “LOAD” or “STORE” or something similar.

²¹This GCC option can be used to eliminate “unnecessary” macros: `-fno-asynchronous-unwind-tables`

²²By the way, in some C standard functions (e.g., `memcpy()`, `strcpy()`) the arguments are listed in the same way as in Intel-syntax: first the pointer to the destination memory block, and then the pointer to the source memory block.

String patching (Win32)

We can easily find the “hello, world” string in the executable file using Hiew:

```

Hiew: hw_spanish.exe
C:\tmp\hw_spanish.exe      FWO ----- PE+.00000001`40003000 Hiew 8.02
.400025E0: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00
.400025F0: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00
.40003000: 68 65 6C 6C-6F 2C 20 77-6F 72 6C 64-0A 00 00 00 hello, world
.40003010: 01 00 00 00-FE FF FF FF-FF FF FF FF-00 00 00 00 █ ■
.40003020: 32 A2 DF 2D-99 2B 00 00-CD 5D 20 D2-66 D4 FF FF 2d-Ö+ =] ¶fL
.40003030: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00
.40003040: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00

```

Figure 1.1: Hiew

And we can try to translate our message into Spanish:

```

Hiew: hw_spanish.exe
C:\tmp\hw_spanish.exe      FWO EDITMODE PE+ 00000000`0000120D Hiew 8.02
000011E0: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00
000011F0: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00
00001200: 68 6F 6C 61-2C 20 6D 75-6E 64 6F 0A-00 00 00 00 hola, mundo
00001210: 01 00 00 00-FE FF FF FF-FF FF FF FF-00 00 00 00 █ ■
00001220: 32 A2 DF 2D-99 2B 00 00-CD 5D 20 D2-66 D4 FF FF 2d-Ö+ =] ¶fL
00001230: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00
00001240: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00

```

Figure 1.2: Hiew

The Spanish text is one byte shorter than English, so we also added the 0x0A byte at the end (\n) with a zero byte.

It works.

What if we want to insert a longer message? There are some zero bytes after original English text. It's hard to say if they can be overwritten: they may be used somewhere in [CRT](#) code, or maybe not. Anyway, only overwrite them if you really know what you're doing.

String patching (Linux x64)

Let's try to patch a Linux x64 executable using rada.re:

Listing 1.21: rada.re session

```
dennis@bigbox ~/tmp % gcc hw.c
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

dennis@bigbox ~/tmp % radare2 a.out
-- SHALL WE PLAY A GAME?
[0x00400430]> / hello
Searching 5 bytes from 0x00400000 to 0x00601040: 68 65 6c 6c 6f
Searching 5 bytes in [0x400000-0x601040]
hits: 1
0x004005c4 hit0_0 .HHello, world;0.

[0x00400430]> s 0x004005c4

[0x004005c4]> px
- offset - 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F 0123456789ABCDEF
0x004005c4 6865 6c6c 6f2c 2077 6f72 6c64 0000 0000 hello, world....
0x004005d4 011b 033b 3000 0000 0500 0000 1cfe ffff ....;0.....
0x004005e4 7c00 0000 5cfe ffff 4c00 0000 52ff ffff |...\\...L...R...
0x004005f4 a400 0000 6cff ffff c400 0000 dcff ffff ....l.....
0x00400604 0c01 0000 1400 0000 0000 0000 017a 5200 .....zR.
0x00400614 0178 1001 1b0c 0708 9001 0710 1400 0000 .x.....
0x00400624 1c00 0000 08fe ffff 2a00 0000 0000 0000 .....*.....
0x00400634 0000 0000 1400 0000 0000 0000 017a 5200 .....zR.
0x00400644 0178 1001 1b0c 0708 9001 0000 2400 0000 .x.....$...
0x00400654 1c00 0000 98fd ffff 3000 0000 000e 1046 .....0.....F
0x00400664 0e18 4a0f 0b77 0880 003f 1a3b 2a33 2422 ..J..w...?.;*3$""
0x00400674 0000 0000 1c00 0000 4400 0000 a6fe ffff .....D.....
0x00400684 1500 0000 0041 0e10 8602 430d 0650 0c07 .....A....C..P..
0x00400694 0800 0000 4400 0000 6400 0000 a0fe ffff .....D....d.....
0x004006a4 6500 0000 0042 0e10 8f02 420e 188e 0345 e....B....B....E
0x004006b4 0e20 8d04 420e 288c 0548 0e30 8606 480e . ...B.(..H.0..H.

[0x004005c4]> oo+
File a.out reopened in read-write mode

[0x004005c4]> w hola, mundo\x00

[0x004005c4]> q

dennis@bigbox ~/tmp % ./a.out
holo, mundo

```

Here's what's going on: I searched for the "hello" string using the / command, then I set the *cursor* (seek, in rada.re terms) to that address. Then I want to be sure that this is really that place: px dumps bytes there. oo+ switches rada.re to *read-write* mode. w writes an ASCII string at the current seek. Note the \00 at the end—this is a zero byte. q quits.

This is a real story of software cracking

An image processing software, when not registered, added watermarks, like "This image was processed by evaluation version of [software name]", across a picture. We tried at random: we found that string in the executable file and put spaces instead of it. Watermarks disappeared. Technically speaking, they continued to appear. With the help of Qt functions, the watermark was still added to the resulting image. But

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

adding spaces didn't alter the image itself...

Software localization of MS-DOS era

This method was a common way to translate MS-DOS software to Russian language back to 1980's and 1990's. This technique is available even for those who are not aware of machine code and executable file formats. The new string shouldn't be bigger than the old one, because there's a risk of overwriting another value or code there. Russian words and sentences are usually slightly longer than its English counterparts, so that is why *localized* software has a lot of weird acronyms and hardly readable abbreviations.

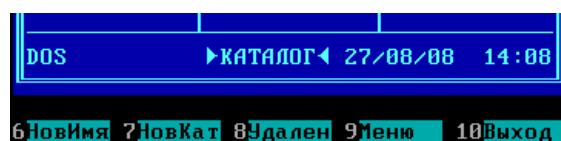


Figure 1.3: *Localized* Norton Commander 5.51

Perhaps this also happened to other languages during that era, in other countries. As for Delphi strings, the string's size must also be corrected, if needed.

1.5.2 x86-64

MSVC: x86-64

Let's also try 64-bit MSVC:

Listing 1.22: MSVC 2012 x64

```
$SG2989 DB      'hello, world', 0AH, 00H

main    PROC
        sub     rsp, 40
        lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2989
        call    printf
        xor    eax, eax
        add    rsp, 40
        ret    0
main    ENDP
```

In x86-64, all registers were extended to 64-bit, and now their names have an R-prefix. In order to use the stack less often (in other words, to access external memory/cache less often), there is a popular way to pass function arguments via registers (*fastcall*) [6.1.3 on page 949](#). I.e., a part of the function's arguments are passed in registers, and the rest—via the stack. In Win64, 4 function arguments are passed in the RCX, RDX, R8, and R9 registers. That is what we see here: a pointer to the string for `printf()` is now passed not in the stack, but rather in the RCX register. The pointers are 64-bit now, so they are passed in the 64-bit registers (which have

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

the R- prefix). However, for backward compatibility, it is still possible to access the 32-bit parts, using the E- prefix. This is how the RAX/EAX/AX/AL register looks like in x86-64:

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RAX ^{x64}							
EAX				AX			
							AH AL

The main() function returns an *int*-typed value, which in C/C++ is still 32-bit, for better backward compatibility and portability, so that is why the EAX register is cleared at the function end (i.e., the 32-bit part of the register) instead of with RAX. There are also 40 bytes allocated in the local stack. This is called the “shadow space”, which we’ll talk about later: [1.14.2 on page 129](#).

GCC: x86-64

Let’s also try GCC in 64-bit Linux:

Listing 1.23: GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
.string "hello, world\n"
main:
    sub    rsp, 8
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "hello, world\n"
    xor    eax, eax ; number of vector registers passed
    call   printf
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 8
    ret
```

Linux, *BSD and Mac OS X also use a method to pass function arguments in registers. [Michael Matz, Jan Hubicka, Andreas Jaeger, Mark Mitchell, *System V Application Binary Interface. AMD64 Architecture Processor Supplement*, (2013)] ²³.

The first 6 arguments are passed in the RDI, RSI, RDX, RCX, R8, and R9 registers, and the rest—via the stack.

So the pointer to the string is passed in EDI (the 32-bit part of the register). Why doesn’t it use the 64-bit part, RDI?

It is important to keep in mind that all MOV instructions in 64-bit mode that write something into the lower 32-bit register part also clear the higher 32-bits (as stated in Intel manuals: [12.1.4 on page 1302](#)).

I.e., the MOV EAX, 011223344h writes a value into RAX correctly, since the higher bits will be cleared.

If we open the compiled object file (.o), we can also see all the instructions’ opcodes ²⁴:

²³Also available as <https://software.intel.com/sites/default/files/article/402129/mpx-linux64-abi.pdf>

²⁴This must be enabled in **Options → Disassembly → Number of opcode bytes**

Listing 1.24: GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
.text:00000000004004D0          main  proc near
.text:00000000004004D0 48 83 EC 08    sub   rsp, 8
.text:00000000004004D4 BF E8 05 40 00  mov   edi, offset format ; "hello,
world\n"
.text:00000000004004D9 31 C0        xor   eax, eax
.text:00000000004004DB E8 D8 FE FF FF  call  _printf
.text:00000000004004E0 31 C0        xor   eax, eax
.text:00000000004004E2 48 83 C4 08    add   rsp, 8
.text:00000000004004E6 C3         retn
.text:00000000004004E6          main  endp
```

As we can see, the instruction that writes into EDI at 0x4004D4 occupies 5 bytes. The same instruction writing a 64-bit value into RDI occupies 7 bytes. Apparently, GCC is trying to save some space. Besides, it can be sure that the data segment containing the string will not be allocated at the addresses higher than 4GiB.

We also see that the EAX register has been cleared before the `printf()` function call. This is done because according to [ABI²⁵](#) standard mentioned above, the number of used vector registers is to be passed in EAX in *NIX systems on x86-64.

Address patching (Win64)

If our example was compiled in MSVC 2013 using /MD switch (meaning a smaller executable due to MSVCR*.DLL file linkage), the `main()` function comes first, and can be easily found:

²⁵Application Binary Interface

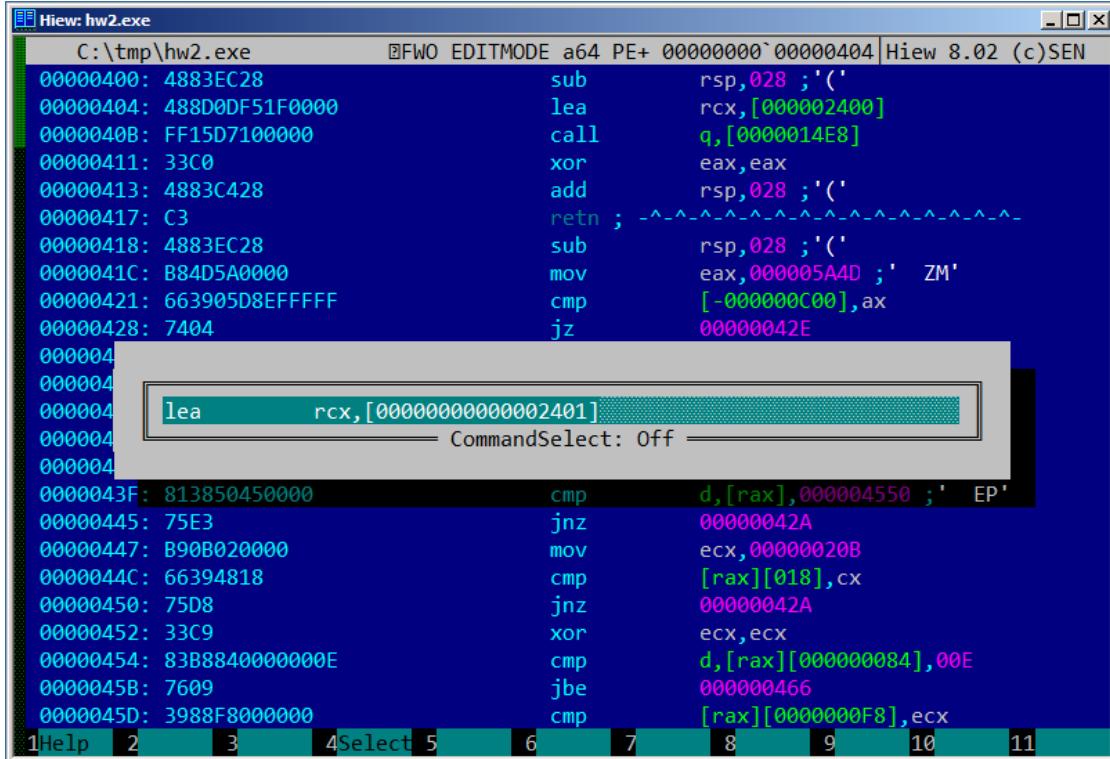


Figure 1.4: Hiew

As an experiment, we can increment address by 1:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

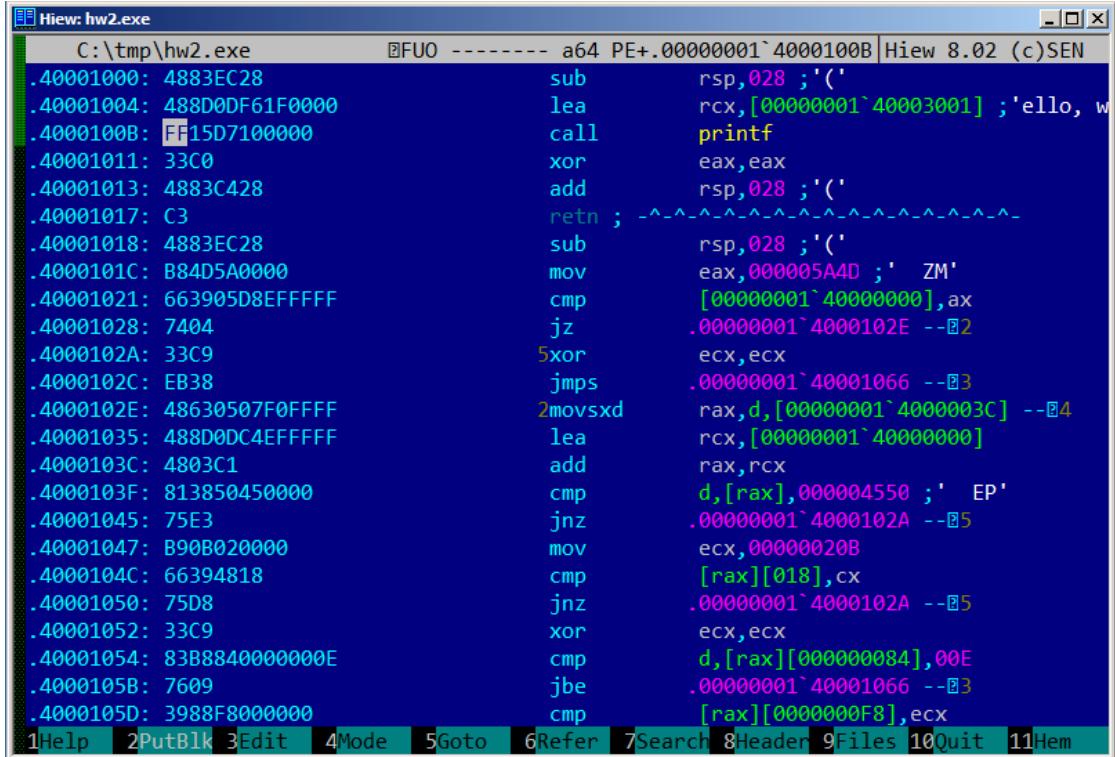


Figure 1.5: Hiew

Hiew shows “ello, world”. And when we run the patched executable, this very string is printed.

Pick another string from binary image (Linux x64)

The binary file I've got when I compile our example using GCC 5.4.0 on Linux x64 box has many other text strings. They are mostly imported function names and library names.

Run objdump to get the contents of all sections of the compiled file:

```
$ objdump -s a.out

a.out:      file format elf64-x86-64

Contents of section .interp:
400238 2f6c6962 36342f6c 642d6c69 6e75782d  /lib64/ld-linux-
400248 7838362d 36342e73 6f2e3200          x86-64.so.2.

Contents of section .note.ABI-tag:
400254 04000000 10000000 01000000 474e5500  .......GNU.
400264 00000000 02000000 06000000 20000000  .....

Contents of section .note.gnu.build-id:
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

400274 04000000 14000000 03000000 474e5500 .....GNU.
400284 fe461178 5bb710b4 bbf2aca8 5ec1ec10 .F.x[.....^...
400294 cf3f7ae4 .?z.

...

```

It's not a problem to pass address of the text string “/lib64/ld-linux-x86-64.so.2” to `printf()`:

```

#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf(0x400238);
    return 0;
}

```

It's hard to believe, but this code prints the aforementioned string.

If you would change the address to `0x400260`, the “GNU” string would be printed. This address is true for my specific GCC version, GNU toolset, etc. On your system, the executable may be slightly different, and all addresses will also be different. Also, adding/removing code to/from this source code will probably shift all addresses back or forward.

1.5.3 ARM

For my experiments with ARM processors, several compilers were used:

- Popular in the embedded area: Keil Release 6/2013.
- Apple Xcode 4.6.3 IDE with the LLVM-GCC 4.2 compiler ^{[26](#)}.
- GCC 4.9 (Linaro) (for ARM64), available as win32-executables at <http://www.linaro.org/projects/armv8/>.

32-bit ARM code is used (including Thumb and Thumb-2 modes) in all cases in this book, if not mentioned otherwise. When we talk about 64-bit ARM here, we call it ARM64.

Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Let's start by compiling our example in Keil:

```
armcc.exe --arm --c90 -O0 1.c
```

The `armcc` compiler produces assembly listings in Intel-syntax, but it has high-level ARM-processor related macros ^{[27](#)}, but it is more important for us to see the instructions “as is” so let's see the compiled result in `IDA`.

²⁶It is indeed so: Apple Xcode 4.6.3 uses open-source GCC as front-end compiler and LLVM code generator

²⁷e.g. ARM mode lacks PUSH/POP instructions

Listing 1.25: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode) IDA

```

.text:00000000          main
.text:00000000 10 40 2D E9    STMFD   SP!, {R4,LR}
.text:00000004 1E 0E 8F E2    ADR     R0, aHelloWorld ; "hello, world"
.text:00000008 15 19 00 EB    BL      __2printf
.text:0000000C 00 00 A0 E3    MOV     R0, #0
.text:00000010 10 80 BD E8    LDMFD   SP!, {R4,PC}

.text:000001EC 68 65 6C 6C+aHelloWorld  DCB "hello, world",0      ; DATA XREF:
main+4

```

In the example, we can easily see each instruction has a size of 4 bytes. Indeed, we compiled our code for ARM mode, not for Thumb.

The very first instruction, `STMFD SP!, {R4,LR}`²⁸, works as an x86 PUSH instruction, writing the values of two registers (R4 and LR) into the stack.

Indeed, in the output listing from the `armcc` compiler, for the sake of simplification, actually shows the `PUSH {r4,lr}` instruction. But that is not quite precise. The PUSH instruction is only available in Thumb mode. So, to make things less confusing, we're doing this in [IDA](#).

This instruction first [decrements](#) the `SP`³⁰ so it points to the place in the stack that is free for new entries, then it saves the values of the R4 and LR registers at the address stored in the modified `SP`.

This instruction (like the PUSH instruction in Thumb mode) is able to save several register values at once which can be very useful. By the way, this has no equivalent in x86. It can also be noted that the `STMFD` instruction is a generalization of the PUSH instruction (extending its features), since it can work with any register, not just with `SP`. In other words, `STMFD` may be used for storing a set of registers at the specified memory address.

The `ADR R0, aHelloWorld` instruction adds or subtracts the value in the `PC`³¹ register to the offset where the `hello, world` string is located. How is the PC register used here, one might ask? This is called “position-independent code”³².

Such code can be executed at a non-fixed address in memory. In other words, this is `PC`-relative addressing. The `ADR` instruction takes into account the difference between the address of this instruction and the address where the string is located. This difference (offset) is always to be the same, no matter at what address our code is loaded by the `OS`. That's why all we need is to add the address of the current instruction (from `PC`) in order to get the absolute memory address of our C-string.

`BL __2printf`³³ instruction calls the `printf()` function. Here's how this instruction works:

- store the address following the `BL` instruction (`0xC`) into the `LR`;

²⁸ [STMFD](#)²⁹

³⁰ [stack pointer](#). SP/ESP/RSP in x86/x64. SP in ARM.

³¹ Program Counter. IP/EIP/RIP in x86/64. PC in ARM.

³² Read more about it in relevant section ([6.4.1 on page 967](#))

³³ Branch with Link

- then pass the control to `printf()` by writing its address into the `PC` register.

When `printf()` finishes its execution it must have information about where it needs to return the control to. That's why each function passes control to the address stored in the `LR` register.

That is a difference between "pure" **RISC**-processors like ARM and **CISC**³⁴-processors like x86, where the return address is usually stored on the stack. Read more about this in next section ([1.9 on page 40](#)).

By the way, an absolute 32-bit address or offset cannot be encoded in the 32-bit `BL` instruction because it only has space for 24 bits. As we may recall, all ARM-mode instructions have a size of 4 bytes (32 bits). Hence, they can only be located on 4-byte boundary addresses. This implies that the last 2 bits of the instruction address (which are always zero bits) may be omitted. In summary, we have 26 bits for offset encoding. This is enough to encode $\text{current_PC} \pm \approx 32M$.

Next, the `MOV R0, #0`³⁵ instruction just writes 0 into the `R0` register. That's because our C-function returns 0 and the return value is to be placed in the `R0` register.

The last instruction `LDMFD SP!, R4, PC`³⁶. It loads values from the stack (or any other memory place) in order to save them into `R4` and `PC`, and increments the `stack pointer SP`. It works like `POP` here.

N.B. The very first instruction `STMFD` saved the `R4` and `LR` registers pair on the stack, but `R4` and `PC` are restored during the `LDMFD` execution.

As we already know, the address of the place where each function must return control to is usually saved in the `LR` register. The very first instruction saves its value in the stack because the same register will be used by our `main()` function when calling `printf()`. In the function's end, this value can be written directly to the `PC` register, thus passing control to where our function has been called.

Since `main()` is usually the primary function in C/C++, the control will be returned to the `OS` loader or to a point in a `CRT`, or something like that.

All that allows omitting the `BX LR` instruction at the end of the function.

`DCB` is an assembly language directive defining an array of bytes or ASCII strings, akin to the `DB` directive in the x86-assembly language.

Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

Let's compile the same example using Keil in Thumb mode:

```
armcc.exe --thumb --c90 -O0 1.c
```

We are getting (in [IDA](#)):

Listing 1.26: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode) + [IDA](#)

<code>.text:00000000</code>	<code>main</code>
-----------------------------	-------------------

³⁴Complex Instruction Set Computing

³⁵Meaning `Moving`

³⁶`LDMFD`³⁷ is an inverse instruction of `STMFD`

```

.text:00000000 10 B5      PUSH   {R4,LR}
.text:00000002 C0 A0      ADR    R0, aHelloWorld ; "hello, world"
.text:00000004 06 F0 2E F9  BL     _2printf
.text:00000008 00 20      MOVS   R0, #0
.text:0000000A 10 BD      POP    {R4,PC}

.text:00000304 68 65 6C 6C+aHelloWorld  DCB "hello, world",0      ; DATA XREF:
main+2

```

We can easily spot the 2-byte (16-bit) opcodes. This is, as was already noted, Thumb. The BL instruction, however, consists of two 16-bit instructions. This is because it is impossible to load an offset for the `printf()` function while using the small space in one 16-bit opcode. Therefore, the first 16-bit instruction loads the higher 10 bits of the offset and the second instruction loads the lower 11 bits of the offset.

As was noted, all instructions in Thumb mode have a size of 2 bytes (or 16 bits). This implies it is impossible for a Thumb-instruction to be at an odd address whatsoever. Given the above, the last address bit may be omitted while encoding instructions.

In summary, the BL Thumb-instruction can encode an address in $current_PC \pm \approx 2M$.

As for the other instructions in the function: PUSH and POP work here just like the described STMFD/LDMFD only the `SP` register is not mentioned explicitly here. ADR works just like in the previous example. MOVS writes 0 into the R0 register in order to return zero.

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Xcode 4.6.3 without optimization turned on produces a lot of redundant code so we'll study optimized output, where the instruction count is as small as possible, setting the compiler switch `-O3`.

Listing 1.27: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

```

__text:000028C4      _hello_world
__text:000028C4 80 40 2D E9  STMFD   SP!, {R7,LR}
__text:000028C8 86 06 01 E3  MOV     R0, #0x1686
__text:000028CC 0D 70 A0 E1  MOV     R7, SP
__text:000028D0 00 00 40 E3  MOVT    R0, #0
__text:000028D4 00 00 8F E0  ADD     R0, PC, R0
__text:000028D8 C3 05 00 EB  BL      _puts
__text:000028DC 00 00 A0 E3  MOV     R0, #0
__text:000028E0 80 80 BD E8  LDMFD   SP!, {R7,PC}

__cstring:00003F62 48 65 6C 6C+aHelloWorld_0  DCB "Hello world!",0

```

The instructions STMFD and LDMFD are already familiar to us.

The MOV instruction just writes the number `0x1686` into the R0 register. This is the offset pointing to the "Hello world!" string.

The R7 register (as it is standardized in [iOS ABI Function Call Guide, (2010)]³⁸) is a

³⁸Also available as <http://developer.apple.com/library/ios/documentation/Xcode/Conceptual/iPhoneOSABIReference/iPhoneOSABIReference.pdf>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

frame pointer. More on that below.

The MOVNT R0, #0 (MOVe Top) instruction writes 0 into higher 16 bits of the register. The issue here is that the generic MOV instruction in ARM mode may write only the lower 16 bits of the register.

Keep in mind, all instruction opcodes in ARM mode are limited in size to 32 bits. Of course, this limitation is not related to moving data between registers. That's why an additional instruction MOVNT exists for writing into the higher bits (from 16 to 31 inclusive). Its usage here, however, is redundant because the MOV R0, #0x1686 instruction above cleared the higher part of the register. This is supposedly a shortcoming of the compiler.

The ADD R0, PC, R0 instruction adds the value in the PC to the value in the R0, to calculate the absolute address of the "Hello world!" string. As we already know, it is "position-independent code" so this correction is essential here.

The BL instruction calls the puts() function instead of printf().

LLVM has replaced the first printf() call with puts(). Indeed: printf() with a sole argument is almost analogous to puts().

Almost, because the two functions are producing the same result only in case the string does not contain printf format identifiers starting with %. In case it does, the effect of these two functions would be different ³⁹.

Why did the compiler replace the printf() with puts()? Presumably because puts() is faster ⁴⁰.

Because it just passes characters to `stdout` without comparing every one of them with the % symbol.

Next, we see the familiar MOV R0, #0 instruction intended to set the R0 register to 0.

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

By default Xcode 4.6.3 generates code for Thumb-2 in this manner:

Listing 1.28: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

```

text:00002B6C          _hello_world
text:00002B6C 80 B5    PUSH      {R7,LR}
text:00002B6E 41 F2 D8 30  MOVW     R0, #0x13D8
text:00002B72 6F 46    MOV       R7, SP
text:00002B74 C0 F2 00 00  MOVT.W   R0, #0
text:00002B78 78 44    ADD      R0, PC
text:00002B7A 01 F0 38 EA  BLX      _puts
text:00002B7E 00 20    MOVS     R0, #0
text:00002B80 80 BD    POP      {R7,PC}

...

```

³⁹It has also to be noted the puts() does not require a '\n' new line symbol at the end of a string, so we do not see it here.

⁴⁰ciselant.de/projects/gcc_printf/gcc_printf.html

```
__cstring:00003E70 48 65 6C 6C 6F 20+aHelloWorld  DCB "Hello world!",0xA,0
```

The BL and BLX instructions in Thumb mode, as we recall, are encoded as a pair of 16-bit instructions. In Thumb-2 these *surrogate* opcodes are extended in such a way so that new instructions may be encoded here as 32-bit instructions.

That is obvious considering that the opcodes of the Thumb-2 instructions always begin with 0xFx or 0Ex.

But in the [IDA](#) listing the opcode bytes are swapped because for ARM processor the instructions are encoded as follows: last byte comes first and after that comes the first one (for Thumb and Thumb-2 modes) or for instructions in ARM mode the fourth byte comes first, then the third, then the second and finally the first (due to different [endianness](#)).

So that is how bytes are located in IDA listings:

- for ARM and ARM64 modes: 4-3-2-1;
- for Thumb mode: 2-1;
- for 16-bit instructions pair in Thumb-2 mode: 2-1-4-3.

So as we can see, the MOVW, MOVT.W and BLX instructions begin with 0xFx.

One of the Thumb-2 instructions is MOVW R0, #0x13D8 —it stores a 16-bit value into the lower part of the R0 register, clearing the higher bits.

Also, MOVT.W R0, #0 works just like MOVT from the previous example only it works in Thumb-2.

Among the other differences, the BLX instruction is used in this case instead of the BL.

The difference is that, besides saving the [RA⁴¹](#) in the LR register and passing control to the puts() function, the processor is also switching from Thumb/Thumb-2 mode to ARM mode (or back).

This instruction is placed here since the instruction to which control is passed looks like (it is encoded in ARM mode):

```
__symbolstub1:00003FEC _puts ; CODE XREF: _hello_world+E
__symbolstub1:00003FEC 44 F0 9F E5 LDR PC, =__imp__puts
```

This is essentially a jump to the place where the address of puts() is written in the imports' section.

So, the observant reader may ask: why not call puts() right at the point in the code where it is needed?

Because it is not very space-efficient.

Almost any program uses external dynamic libraries (like DLL in Windows, .so in *NIX or .dylib in Mac OS X). The dynamic libraries contain frequently used library functions, including the standard C-function puts().

⁴¹Return Address

In an executable binary file (Windows PE .exe, ELF or Mach-O) an import section is present. This is a list of symbols (functions or global variables) imported from external modules along with the names of the modules themselves.

The [OS](#) loader loads all modules it needs and, while enumerating import symbols in the primary module, determines the correct addresses of each symbol.

In our case, `_imp_puts` is a 32-bit variable used by the [OS](#) loader to store the correct address of the function in an external library. Then the LDR instruction just reads the 32-bit value from this variable and writes it into the [PC](#) register, passing control to it.

So, in order to reduce the time the [OS](#) loader needs for completing this procedure, it is good idea to write the address of each symbol only once, to a dedicated place.

Besides, as we have already figured out, it is impossible to load a 32-bit value into a register while using only one instruction without a memory access.

Therefore, the optimal solution is to allocate a separate function working in ARM mode with the sole goal of passing control to the dynamic library and then to jump to this short one-instruction function (the so-called [thunk function](#)) from the Thumb-code.

By the way, in the previous example (compiled for ARM mode) the control is passed by the BL to the same [thunk function](#). The processor mode, however, is not being switched (hence the absence of an “X” in the instruction mnemonic).

More about thunk-functions

Thunk-functions are hard to understand, apparently, because of a misnomer. The simplest way to understand it as adaptors or convertors of one type of jack to another. For example, an adaptor allowing the insertion of a British power plug into an American wall socket, or vice-versa. Thunk functions are also sometimes called *wrappers*.

Here are a couple more descriptions of these functions:

“A piece of coding which provides an address:”, according to P. Z. Ingerman, who invented thunks in 1961 as a way of binding actual parameters to their formal definitions in Algol-60 procedure calls. If a procedure is called with an expression in the place of a formal parameter, the compiler generates a thunk which computes the expression and leaves the address of the result in some standard location.

...

Microsoft and IBM have both defined, in their Intel-based systems, a “16-bit environment” (with bletcherous segment registers and 64K address limits) and a “32-bit environment” (with flat addressing and semi-real memory management). The two environments can both be running on the same computer and OS (thanks to what is called, in the Microsoft world, WOW which stands for Windows On Windows). MS and

IBM have both decided that the process of getting from 16- to 32-bit and vice versa is called a “thunk”; for Windows 95, there is even a tool, THUNK.EXE, called a “thunk compiler”.

(The Jargon File)

Another example we can find in LAPACK library—a “Linear Algebra PACKage” written in FORTRAN. C/C++ developers also want to use LAPACK, but it’s insane to rewrite it to C/C++ and then maintain several versions. So there are short C functions callable from C/C++ environment, which are, in turn, call FORTRAN functions, and do almost anything else:

```
double Blas_Dot_Prod(const LaVectorDouble &dx, const LaVectorDouble &dy)
{
    assert(dx.size()==dy.size());
    integer n = dx.size();
    integer incx = dx.inc(), incy = dy.inc();

    return F77NAME(ddot)(&n, &dx(0), &incx, &dy(0), &incy);
}
```

Also, functions like that are called “wrappers”.

ARM64

GCC

Let’s compile the example using GCC 4.8.1 in ARM64:

Listing 1.29: Non-optimizing GCC 4.8.1 + objdump

```
1 0000000000400590 <main>:
2  400590:   a9bf7bfd      stp    x29, x30, [sp,#-16]!
3  400594:   910003fd      mov    x29, sp
4  400598:   90000000      adrp   x0, 400000 <_init-0x3b8>
5  40059c:   91192000      add    x0, x0, #0x648
6  4005a0:   97fffffa0     bl     400420 <puts@plt>
7  4005a4:   52800000      mov    w0, #0x0 // #0
8  4005a8:   a8c17bfd      ldp    x29, x30, [sp],#16
9  4005ac:   d65f03c0      ret
10
11 ...
12
13 Contents of section .rodata:
14 400640 01000200 00000000 48656c6c 6f210a00 .....Hello!..
```

There are no Thumb and Thumb-2 modes in ARM64, only ARM, so there are 32-bit instructions only. The Register count is doubled: [2.4 on page 1337](#). 64-bit registers have X- prefixes, while its 32-bit parts—W-.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The STP instruction (*Store Pair*) saves two registers in the stack simultaneously: X29 and X30.

Of course, this instruction is able to save this pair at an arbitrary place in memory, but the **SP** register is specified here, so the pair is saved in the stack.

ARM64 registers are 64-bit ones, each has a size of 8 bytes, so one needs 16 bytes for saving two registers.

The exclamation mark (“!”) after the operand means that 16 is to be subtracted from **SP** first, and only then are values from register pair to be written into the stack. This is also called *pre-index*. About the difference between *post-index* and *pre-index* read here: [1.39.2 on page 555](#).

Hence, in terms of the more familiar x86, the first instruction is just an analogue to a pair of PUSH X29 and PUSH X30. X29 is used as **FP**⁴² in ARM64, and X30 as **LR**, so that's why they are saved in the function prologue and restored in the function epilogue.

The second instruction copies **SP** in X29 (or **FP**). This is made so to set up the function stack frame.

ADRP and ADD instructions are used to fill the address of the string “Hello!” into the X0 register, because the first function argument is passed in this register. There are no instructions, whatsoever, in ARM that can store a large number into a register (because the instruction length is limited to 4 bytes, read more about it here: [1.39.3 on page 556](#)). So several instructions must be utilized. The first instruction (ADRP) writes the address of the 4KiB page, where the string is located, into X0, and the second one (ADD) just adds the remainder to the address. More about that in: [1.39.4 on page 559](#).

$0x400000 + 0x648 = 0x400648$, and we see our “Hello!” C-string in the .rodata data segment at this address.

`puts()` is called afterwards using the BL instruction. This was already discussed: [1.5.3 on page 28](#).

MOV writes 0 into W0. W0 is the lower 32 bits of the 64-bit X0 register:

High 32-bit part	low 32-bit part
X0	
	W0

The function result is returned via X0 and `main()` returns 0, so that's how the return result is prepared. But why use the 32-bit part?

Because the *int* data type in ARM64, just like in x86-64, is still 32-bit, for better compatibility.

So if a function returns a 32-bit *int*, only the lower 32 bits of X0 register have to be filled.

In order to verify this, let's change this example slightly and recompile it. Now `main()` returns a 64-bit value:

⁴²Frame Pointer

Listing 1.30: main() returning a value of uint64_t type

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t main()
{
    printf ("Hello!\n");
    return 0;
}
```

The result is the same, but that's how MOV at that line looks like now:

Listing 1.31: Non-optimizing GCC 4.8.1 + objdump

4005a4:	d2800000	mov	x0, #0x0	// #0
---------	----------	-----	----------	-------

LDP (*Load Pair*) then restores the X29 and X30 registers.

There is no exclamation mark after the instruction: this implies that the values are first loaded from the stack, and only then is **SP** increased by 16. This is called *post-index*.

A new instruction appeared in ARM64: RET. It works just as BX LR, only a special *hint* bit is added, informing the **CPU** that this is a return from a function, not just another jump instruction, so it can execute it more optimally.

Due to the simplicity of the function, optimizing GCC generates the very same code.

1.5.4 MIPS

A word about the “global pointer”

One important MIPS concept is the “global pointer”. As we may already know, each MIPS instruction has a size of 32 bits, so it's impossible to embed a 32-bit address into one instruction: a pair has to be used for this (like GCC did in our example for the text string address loading). It's possible, however, to load data from the address in the range of *register* – 32768...*register* + 32767 using one single instruction (because 16 bits of signed offset could be encoded in a single instruction). So we can allocate some register for this purpose and also allocate a 64KiB area of most used data. This allocated register is called a “global pointer” and it points to the middle of the 64KiB area. This area usually contains global variables and addresses of imported functions like printf(), because the GCC developers decided that getting the address of some function must be as fast as a single instruction execution instead of two. In an ELF file this 64KiB area is located partly in sections .sbss (“small BSS⁴³”) for uninitialized data and .sdata (“small data”) for initialized data. This implies that the programmer may choose what data he/she wants to be accessed fast and place it into .sdata/.sbss. Some old-school programmers may recall the MS-DOS memory model 11.6 on page 1284 or the MS-DOS memory managers like XMS/EMS where all memory was divided in 64KiB blocks.

This concept is not unique to MIPS. At least PowerPC uses this technique as well.

⁴³Block Started by Symbol

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Optimizing GCC

Let's consider the following example, which illustrates the “global pointer” concept.

Listing 1.32: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly output)

```

1 $LC0:
2 ; \000 is zero byte in octal base:
3     .ascii "Hello, world!\012\000"
4 main:
5 ; function prologue.
6 ; set the GP:
7     lui    $28,%hi(__gnu_local_gp)
8     addiu $sp,$sp,-32
9     addiu $28,$28,%lo(__gnu_local_gp)
10 ; save the RA to the local stack:
11    sw    $31,28($sp)
12 ; load the address of the puts() function from the GP to $25:
13    lw    $25,%call16(puts)($28)
14 ; load the address of the text string to $4 ($a0):
15    lui    $4,%hi($LC0)
16 ; jump to puts(), saving the return address in the link register:
17    jalr   $25
18    addiu $4,$4,%lo($LC0) ; branch delay slot
19 ; restore the RA:
20    lw    $31,28($sp)
21 ; copy 0 from $zero to $v0:
22    move   $2,$0
23 ; return by jumping to the RA:
24    j     $31
25 ; function epilogue:
26    addiu $sp,$sp,32 ; branch delay slot + free local stack

```

As we see, the \$GP register is set in the function prologue to point to the middle of this area. The **RA** register is also saved in the local stack. `puts()` is also used here instead of `printf()`. The address of the `puts()` function is loaded into \$25 using LW the instruction (“Load Word”). Then the address of the text string is loaded to \$4 using LUI (“Load Upper Immediate”) and ADDIU (“Add Immediate Unsigned Word”) instruction pair. LUI sets the high 16 bits of the register (hence “upper” word in instruction name) and ADDIU adds the lower 16 bits of the address.

ADDIU follows JALR (haven't you forgot *branch delay slots* yet?). The register \$4 is also called \$A0, which is used for passing the first function argument ⁴⁴.

JALR (“Jump and Link Register”) jumps to the address stored in the \$25 register (address of `puts()`) while saving the address of the next instruction (LW) in **RA**. This is very similar to ARM. Oh, and one important thing is that the address saved in **RA** is not the address of the next instruction (because it's in a *delay slot* and is executed before the jump instruction), but the address of the instruction after the next one (after the *delay slot*). Hence, $PC + 8$ is written to **RA** during the execution of JALR, in our case, this is the address of the LW instruction next to ADDIU.

⁴⁴The MIPS registers table is available in appendix [3.1 on page 1338](#)

LW (“Load Word”) at line 20 restores RA from the local stack (this instruction is actually part of the function epilogue).

MOVE at line 22 copies the value from the \$0 (\$ZERO) register to \$2 (\$V0).

MIPS has a *constant* register, which always holds zero. Apparently, the MIPS developers came up with the idea that zero is in fact the busiest constant in the computer programming, so let’s just use the \$0 register every time zero is needed.

Another interesting fact is that MIPS lacks an instruction that transfers data between registers. In fact, MOVE DST, SRC is ADD DST, SRC, \$ZERO ($DST = SRC + 0$), which does the same. Apparently, the MIPS developers wanted to have a compact opcode table. This does not mean an actual addition happens at each MOVE instruction. Most likely, the CPU optimizes these pseudo instructions and the ALU⁴⁵ is never used.

J at line 24 jumps to the address in RA, which is effectively performing a return from the function. ADDIU after J is in fact executed before J (remember *branch delay slots*?) and is part of the function epilogue. Here is also a listing generated by IDA. Each register here has its own pseudo name:

Listing 1.33: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

1 .text:00000000 main:
2 .text:00000000
3 .text:00000000 var_10          = -0x10
4 .text:00000000 var_4           = -4
5 .text:00000000
6 ; function prologue.
7 ; set the GP:
8 .text:00000000               lui    $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
9 .text:00000004               addiu $sp, -0x20
10 .text:00000008               la     $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
11 ; save the RA to the local stack:
12 .text:0000000C              sw    $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
13 ; save the GP to the local stack:
14 ; for some reason, this instruction is missing in the GCC assembly output:
15 .text:00000010              sw    $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
16 ; load the address of the puts() function from the GP to $t9:
17 .text:00000014              lw    $t9, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
18 ; form the address of the text string in $a0:
19 .text:00000018              lui    $a0, ($LC0 >> 16) # "Hello, world!"
20 ; jump to puts(), saving the return address in the link register:
21 .text:0000001C              jalr $t9
22 .text:00000020              la     $a0, ($LC0 & 0xFFFF) # "Hello,
   world!"
23 ; restore the RA:
24 .text:00000024              lw    $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
25 ; copy 0 from $zero to $v0:
26 .text:00000028              move $v0, $zero
27 ; return by jumping to the RA:
28 .text:0000002C              jr    $ra
29 ; function epilogue:
30 .text:00000030              addiu $sp, 0x20

```

⁴⁵Arithmetic Logic Unit

The instruction at line 15 saves the GP value into the local stack, and this instruction is missing mysteriously from the GCC output listing, maybe by a GCC error ⁴⁶. The GP value has to be saved indeed, because each function can use its own 64KiB data window. The register containing the puts() address is called \$T9, because registers prefixed with T- are called “temporaries” and their contents may not be preserved.

Non-optimizing GCC

Non-optimizing GCC is more verbose.

Listing 1.34: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly output)

```

1 $LC0:
2     .ascii  "Hello, world!\012\000"
3 main:
4 ; function prologue.
5 ; save the RA ($31) and FP in the stack:
6     addiu   $sp,$sp,-32
7     sw      $31,28($sp)
8     sw      $fp,24($sp)
9 ; set the FP (stack frame pointer):
10    move    $fp,$sp
11 ; set the GP:
12    lui     $28,%hi(__gnu_local_gp)
13    addiu   $28,$28,%lo(__gnu_local_gp)
14 ; load the address of the text string:
15    lui     $2,%hi($LC0)
16    addiu   $4,$2,%lo($LC0)
17 ; load the address of puts() using the GP:
18    lw      $2,%call16(puts)($28)
19    nop
20 ; call puts():
21    move    $25,$2
22    jalr   $25
23    nop ; branch delay slot
24
25 ; restore the GP from the local stack:
26    lw      $28,16($fp)
27 ; set register $2 ($V0) to zero:
28    move    $2,$0
29 ; function epilogue.
30 ; restore the SP:
31    move    $sp,$fp
32 ; restore the RA:
33    lw      $31,28($sp)
34 ; restore the FP:
35    lw      $fp,24($sp)
36    addiu   $sp,$sp,32
37 ; jump to the RA:
38    j      $31
39    nop ; branch delay slot

```

⁴⁶Apparently, functions generating listings are not so critical to GCC users, so some unfixed cosmetic bugs may still exist.

We see here that register FP is used as a pointer to the stack frame. We also see 3 NOPs. The second and third of which follow the branch instructions. Perhaps the GCC compiler always adds NOPs (because of *branch delay slots*) after branch instructions and then, if optimization is turned on, maybe eliminates them. So in this case they are left here.

Here is also [IDA](#) listing:

Listing 1.35: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5 ([IDA](#))

```

1 .text:00000000 main:
2 .text:00000000
3 .text:00000000 var_10          = -0x10
4 .text:00000000 var_8           = -8
5 .text:00000000 var_4           = -4
6 .text:00000000
7 ; function prologue.
8 ; save the RA and FP in the stack:
9 .text:00000000      addiu   $sp, -0x20
10 .text:00000004      sw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
11 .text:00000008      sw      $fp, 0x20+var_8($sp)
12 ; set the FP (stack frame pointer):
13 .text:0000000C      move    $fp, $sp
14 ; set the GP:
15 .text:00000010      la      $gp, _gnu_local_gp
16 .text:00000018      sw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
17 ; load the address of the text string:
18 .text:0000001C      lui    $v0, (aHelloWorld >> 16) # "Hello,
19     world!"
20 .text:00000020      addiu   $a0, $v0, (aHelloWorld & 0xFFFF) #
21     "Hello, world!"
22 ; load the address of puts() using the GP:
23 .text:00000024      lw      $v0, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
24 .text:00000028      or      $at, $zero ; NOP
25 ; call puts():
26 .text:0000002C      move    $t9, $v0
27 .text:00000030      jalr    $t9
28 .text:00000034      or      $at, $zero ; NOP
29 ; restore the GP from local stack:
30 .text:00000038      lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($fp)
31 ; set register $2 ($V0) to zero:
32 .text:0000003C      move    $v0, $zero
33 ; function epilogue.
34 ; restore the SP:
35 .text:00000040      move    $sp, $fp
36 ; restore the RA:
37 .text:00000044      lw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
38 ; restore the FP:
39 .text:00000048      lw      $fp, 0x20+var_8($sp)
40 .text:0000004C      addiu   $sp, 0x20
41 ; jump to the RA:
42 .text:00000050      jr      $ra
43 .text:00000054      or      $at, $zero ; NOP

```

Interestingly, [IDA](#) recognized the LUI/ADDIU instructions pair and coalesced them

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

into one LA (“Load Address”) pseudo instruction at line 15. We may also see that this pseudo instruction has a size of 8 bytes! This is a pseudo instruction (or *macro*) because it’s not a real MIPS instruction, but rather a handy name for an instruction pair.

Another thing is that IDA doesn’t recognize NOP instructions, so here they are at lines 22, 26 and 41. It is OR \$AT, \$ZERO. Essentially, this instruction applies the OR operation to the contents of the \$AT register with zero, which is, of course, an idle instruction. MIPS, like many other ISAs, doesn’t have a separate NOP instruction.

Role of the stack frame in this example

The address of the text string is passed in the register. Why setup a local stack anyway? The reason for this lies in the fact that the values of registers RA and GP have to be saved somewhere (because printf() is called), and the local stack is used for this purpose. If this was a [leaf function](#), it would have been possible to get rid of the function prologue and epilogue, for example: [1.4.3 on page 11](#).

Optimizing GCC: load it into GDB

Listing 1.36: sample GDB session

```
root@debian-mips:~# gcc hw.c -O3 -o hw
root@debian-mips:~# gdb hw
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.0.1-debian
...
Reading symbols from /root/hw... (no debugging symbols found)...done.
(gdb) b main
Breakpoint 1 at 0x400654
(gdb) run
Starting program: /root/hw

Breakpoint 1, 0x00400654 in main ()
(gdb) set step-mode on
(gdb) disas
Dump of assembler code for function main:
0x00400640 <main+0>: lui      gp,0x42
0x00400644 <main+4>: addiu   sp,sp,-32
0x00400648 <main+8>: addiu   gp,sp,-30624
0x0040064c <main+12>: sw      ra,28(sp)
0x00400650 <main+16>: sw      gp,16(sp)
0x00400654 <main+20>: lw      t9,-32716(gp)
0x00400658 <main+24>: lui      a0,0x40
0x0040065c <main+28>: jalr    t9
0x00400660 <main+32>: addiu   a0,a0,2080
0x00400664 <main+36>: lw      ra,28(sp)
0x00400668 <main+40>: move    v0,zero
0x0040066c <main+44>: jr      ra
0x00400670 <main+48>: addiu   sp,sp,32
End of assembler dump.
(gdb) s
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

0x00400658 in main ()
(gdb) s
0x0040065c in main ()
(gdb) s
0x2ab2de60 in printf () from /lib/libc.so.6
(gdb) x/s $a0
0x400820:      "hello, world"
(gdb)

```

1.5.5 Conclusion

The main difference between x86/ARM and x64/ARM64 code is that the pointer to the string is now 64-bits in length. Indeed, modern CPUs are now 64-bit due to both the reduced cost of memory and the greater demand for it by modern applications. We can add much more memory to our computers than 32-bit pointers are able to address. As such, all pointers are now 64-bit.

1.5.6 Exercises

- <http://challenges.re/48>
- <http://challenges.re/49>

1.6 Function prologue and epilogue

A function prologue is a sequence of instructions at the start of a function. It often looks something like the following code fragment:

```

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
sub     esp, X

```

What these instruction do: save the value of the EBP register on the stack, set the value of the EBP register to the value of the ESP and then allocate space on the stack for local variables.

The value in the EBP stays the same over the period of the function execution and is to be used for local variables and arguments access. For the same purpose one can use ESP, but since it changes over time this approach is not too convenient.

The function epilogue frees the allocated space in the stack, returns the value in the EBP register back to its initial state and returns the control flow to the [caller](#):

```

mov    esp, ebp
pop    ebp
ret    0

```

Function prologues and epilogues are usually detected in disassemblers for function delimitation.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.6.1 Recursion

Epilogues and prologues can negatively affect the recursion performance.

More about recursion in this book: [3.7.3 on page 615](#).

1.7 An Empty Function: redux

Let's back to the empty function example [1.3 on page 7](#). Now that we know about function prologue and epilogue, this is an empty function [1.1 on page 7](#) compiled by non-optimizing GCC:

Listing 1.37: Non-optimizing GCC 8.2 x64 (assembly output)

```
f:
    push    rbp
    mov     rbp, rsp
    nop
    pop     rbp
    ret
```

It's RET, but function prologue and epilogue, probably, wasn't optimized and left as is. NOP is seems another compiler artifact. Anyway, the only effective instruction here is RET. All other instructions can be removed (or optimized).

1.8 Returning Values: redux

Again, when we know about function prologue and epilogue, let's recompile an example returning a value ([1.4 on page 10](#), [1.8 on page 10](#)) using non-optimizing GCC:

Listing 1.38: Non-optimizing GCC 8.2 x64 (assembly output)

```
f:
    push    rbp
    mov     rbp, rsp
    mov     eax, 123
    pop     rbp
    ret
```

Effective instructions here are MOV and RET, others are - prologue and epilogue.

1.9 Stack

The stack is one of the most fundamental data structures in computer science ^{[47](#)}. AKA^{[48](#)} LIFO^{[49](#)}.

⁴⁷ [wikipedia.org/wiki/Call_stack](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Call_stack)

⁴⁸ Also Known As

⁴⁹Last In First Out

Technically, it is just a block of memory in process memory along with the ESP or RSP register in x86 or x64, or the **SP** register in ARM, as a pointer within that block.

The most frequently used stack access instructions are PUSH and POP (in both x86 and ARM Thumb-mode). PUSH subtracts from ESP/RSP/**SP** 4 in 32-bit mode (or 8 in 64-bit mode) and then writes the contents of its sole operand to the memory address pointed by ESP/RSP/**SP**.

POP is the reverse operation: retrieve the data from the memory location that **SP** points to, load it into the instruction operand (often a register) and then add 4 (or 8) to the **stack pointer**.

After stack allocation, the **stack pointer** points at the bottom of the stack. PUSH decreases the **stack pointer** and POP increases it. The bottom of the stack is actually at the beginning of the memory allocated for the stack block. It seems strange, but that's the way it is.

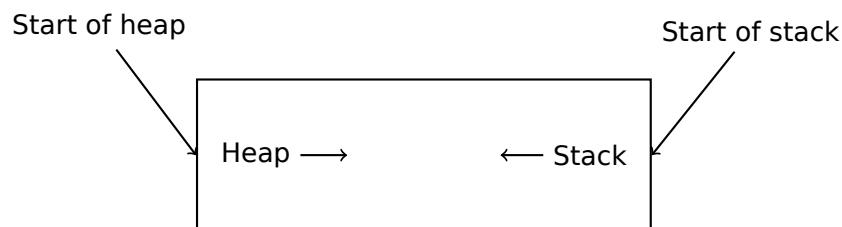
ARM supports both descending and ascending stacks.

For example the **STMFD/LDMFD**, **STMED**⁵⁰/**LDMED**⁵¹ instructions are intended to deal with a descending stack (grows downwards, starting with a high address and progressing to a lower one). The **STMFA**⁵²/**LDMFA**⁵³, **STMEA**⁵⁴/**LDMEA**⁵⁵ instructions are intended to deal with an ascending stack (grows upwards, starting from a low address and progressing to a higher one).

1.9.1 Why does the stack grow backwards?

Intuitively, we might think that the stack grows upwards, i.e. towards higher addresses, like any other data structure.

The reason that the stack grows backward is probably historical. When the computers were big and occupied a whole room, it was easy to divide memory into two parts, one for the **heap** and one for the stack. Of course, it was unknown how big the **heap** and the stack would be during program execution, so this solution was the simplest possible.



In [D. M. Ritchie and K. Thompson, *The UNIX Time Sharing System*, (1974)]⁵⁶ we can read:

⁵⁰Store Multiple Empty Descending (ARM instruction)

⁵¹Load Multiple Empty Descending (ARM instruction)

⁵²Store Multiple Full Ascending (ARM instruction)

⁵³Load Multiple Full Ascending (ARM instruction)

⁵⁴Store Multiple Empty Ascending (ARM instruction)

⁵⁵Load Multiple Empty Ascending (ARM instruction)

⁵⁶Also available as [URL](#)

The user-core part of an image is divided into three logical segments. The program text segment begins at location 0 in the virtual address space. During execution, this segment is write-protected and a single copy of it is shared among all processes executing the same program. At the first 8K byte boundary above the program text segment in the virtual address space begins a nonshared, writable data segment, the size of which may be extended by a system call. Starting at the highest address in the virtual address space is a stack segment, which automatically grows downward as the hardware's stack pointer fluctuates.

This reminds us how some students write two lecture notes using only one notebook: notes for the first lecture are written as usual, and notes for the second one are written from the end of notebook, by flipping it. Notes may meet each other somewhere in between, in case of lack of free space.

1.9.2 What is the stack used for?

Save the function's return address

x86

When calling another function with a CALL instruction, the address of the point exactly after the CALL instruction is saved to the stack and then an unconditional jump to the address in the CALL operand is executed.

The CALL instruction is equivalent to a
PUSH address_after_call / JMP operand instruction pair.

RET fetches a value from the stack and jumps to it —that is equivalent to a POP tmp / JMP tmp instruction pair.

Overflowing the stack is straightforward. Just run eternal recursion:

```
void f()
{
    f();
}
```

MSVC 2008 reports the problem:

```
c:\tmp6>cl ss.cpp /Fass.asm
Microsoft (R) 32-bit C/C++ Optimizing Compiler Version 15.00.21022.08 for x86
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

ss.cpp
c:\tmp6\ss.cpp(4) : warning C4717: 'f' : recursive on all control paths, function will cause runtime stack overflow
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

...but generates the right code anyway:

```
?f@@YAXXZ PROC ; f
; Line 2
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
; Line 3
    call    ?f@@YAXXZ ; f
; Line 4
    pop     ebp
    ret    0
?f@@YAXXZ ENDP ; f
```

...Also if we turn on the compiler optimization (/Ox option) the optimized code will not overflow the stack and will work *correctly*⁵⁷ instead:

```
?f@@YAXXZ PROC ; f
; Line 2
$LL3@f:
; Line 3
    jmp    SHORT $LL3@f
?f@@YAXXZ ENDP ; f
```

GCC 4.4.1 generates similar code in both cases without, however, issuing any warning about the problem.

ARM

ARM programs also use the stack for saving return addresses, but differently. As mentioned in “Hello, world!” ([1.5.3 on page 24](#)), the RA is saved to the LR ([link register](#)). If one needs, however, to call another function and use the LR register one more time, its value has to be saved. Usually it is saved in the function prologue.

Often, we see instructions like PUSH R4-R7,LR along with this instruction in epilogue POP R4-R7,PC—thus register values to be used in the function are saved in the stack, including LR.

Nevertheless, if a function never calls any other function, in RISC terminology it is called a [leaf function](#)⁵⁸. As a consequence, leaf functions do not save the LR register (because they don’t modify it). If such function is small and uses a small number of registers, it may not use the stack at all. Thus, it is possible to call leaf functions without using the stack, which can be faster than on older x86 machines because external RAM is not used for the stack⁵⁹. This can be also useful for situations when memory for the stack is not yet allocated or not available.

⁵⁷irony here

⁵⁸infocenter.arm.com/help/index.jsp?topic=/com.arm.doc.faqs/ka13785.html

⁵⁹Some time ago, on PDP-11 and VAX, the CALL instruction (calling other functions) was expensive; up to 50% of execution time might be spent on it, so it was considered that having a big number of small functions is an [anti-pattern](#) [Eric S. Raymond, *The Art of UNIX Programming*, (2003)Chapter 4, Part II].

Some examples of leaf functions: [1.14.3 on page 133](#), [1.14.3 on page 133](#), [1.282 on page 395](#), [1.298 on page 417](#), [1.28.5 on page 417](#), [1.192 on page 264](#), [1.190 on page 262](#), [1.209 on page 285](#).

Passing function arguments

The most popular way to pass parameters in x86 is called “cdecl”:

```
push arg3
push arg2
push arg1
call f
add esp, 12 ; 4*3=12
```

Callee functions get their arguments via the stack pointer.

Therefore, this is how the argument values are located in the stack before the execution of the `f()` function’s very first instruction:

ESP	return address
ESP+4	argument#1, marked in IDA as <code>arg_0</code>
ESP+8	argument#2, marked in IDA as <code>arg_4</code>
ESP+0xC	argument#3, marked in IDA as <code>arg_8</code>
...	...

For more information on other calling conventions see also section ([6.1 on page 947](#)).

By the way, the **callee** function does not have any information about how many arguments were passed. C functions with a variable number of arguments (like `printf()`) can determine their number using format string specifiers (which begin with the % symbol).

If we write something like:

```
printf("%d %d %d", 1234);
```

`printf()` will print 1234, and then two random numbers⁶⁰, which were lying next to it in the stack.

That’s why it is not very important how we declare the `main()` function: as `main()`, `main(int argc, char *argv[])` or `main(int argc, char *argv[], char *envp[])`.

In fact, the **CRT**-code is calling `main()` roughly as:

```
push envp
push argv
push argc
call main
...
```

If you declare `main()` as `main()` without arguments, they are, nevertheless, still present in the stack, but are not used. If you declare `main()` as `main(int argc,`

⁶⁰Not random in strict sense, but rather unpredictable: [1.9.4 on page 50](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

`char *argv[])`, you will be able to use first two arguments, and the third will remain “invisible” for your function. Even more, it is possible to declare `main(int argc)`, and it will work.

Another related example: [6.1.10](#).

Alternative ways of passing arguments

It is worth noting that nothing obliges programmers to pass arguments through the stack. It is not a requirement. One could implement any other method without using the stack at all.

A somewhat popular way among assembly language newbies is to pass arguments via global variables, like:

Listing 1.39: Assembly code

```
...
    mov    X, 123
    mov    Y, 456
    call   do_something

    ...

X      dd    ?
Y      dd    ?

do_something proc near
    ; take X
    ; take Y
    ; do something
    retn
do_something endp
```

But this method has obvious drawback: `do_something()` function cannot call itself recursively (or via another function), because it has to zap its own arguments. The same story with local variables: if you hold them in global variables, the function couldn’t call itself. And this is also not thread-safe ⁶¹. A method to store such information in stack makes this easier—it can hold as many function arguments and/or values, as much space it has.

[Donald E. Knuth, *The Art of Computer Programming*, Volume 1, 3rd ed., (1997), 189] mentions even weirder schemes particularly convenient on IBM System/360.

MS-DOS had a way of passing all function arguments via registers, for example, this is piece of code for ancient 16-bit MS-DOS prints “Hello, world!”:

```
mov  dx, msg      ; address of message
mov  ah, 9        ; 9 means "print string" function
int  21h         ; DOS "syscall"
```

⁶¹Correctly implemented, each thread would have its own stack with its own arguments/variables.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov ah, 4ch      ; "terminate program" function
int 21h         ; DOS "syscall"

msg db 'Hello, World!\$'

```

This is quite similar to [6.1.3 on page 949](#) method. And also it's very similar to calling syscalls in Linux ([6.3.1 on page 966](#)) and Windows.

If a MS-DOS function is going to return a boolean value (i.e., single bit, usually indicating error state), CF flag was often used.

For example:

```

mov ah, 3ch      ; create file
lea dx, filename
mov cl, 1
int 21h
jc error
mov file_handle, ax
...
error:
...

```

In case of error, CF flag is raised. Otherwise, handle of newly created file is returned via AX.

This method is still used by assembly language programmers. In Windows Research Kernel source code (which is quite similar to Windows 2003) we can find something like this (file *base/ntos/ke/i386/cpu.asm*):

```

public Get386Stepping
Get386Stepping proc

    call MultiplyTest          ; Perform multiplication test
    jnc short G3s00            ; if nc, muttest is ok
    mov ax, 0
    ret

G3s00:
    call Check386B0           ; Check for B0 stepping
    jnc short G3s05            ; if nc, it's B1/later
    mov ax, 100h                ; It is B0/earlier stepping
    ret

G3s05:
    call Check386D1           ; Check for D1 stepping
    jc short G3s10              ; if c, it is NOT D1
    mov ax, 301h                ; It is D1/later stepping
    ret

G3s10:
    mov ax, 101h                ; assume it is B1 stepping
    ret

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    ...
MultiplyTest    proc
    xor    cx,cx          ; 64K times is a nice round number
mlt00: push   cx
    call   Multiply        ; does this chip's multiply work?
    pop    cx
    jc    short mltx      ; if c, No, exit
    loop  mlt00           ; if nc, YES, loop to try again
    clc
mltx:    ret
MultiplyTest    endp

```

Local variable storage

A function could allocate space in the stack for its local variables just by decreasing the [stack pointer](#) towards the stack bottom.

Hence, it's very fast, no matter how many local variables are defined. It is also not a requirement to store local variables in the stack. You could store local variables wherever you like, but traditionally this is how it's done.

x86: alloca() function

It is worth noting the `alloca()` function [62](#). This function works like `malloc()`, but allocates memory directly on the stack. The allocated memory chunk does not have to be freed via a `free()` function call,

since the function epilogue ([1.6 on page 39](#)) returns `ESP` back to its initial state and the allocated memory is just *dropped*. It is worth noting how `alloca()` is implemented. In simple terms, this function just shifts `ESP` downwards toward the stack bottom by the number of bytes you need, making `ESP` pointing to the *allocated* block.

Let's try:

```

#ifndef __GNUC__
#include <alloca.h> // GCC
#else
#include <malloc.h> // MSVC
#endif
#include <stdio.h>

void f()
{
    char *buf=(char*)alloca (600);
#ifdef __GNUC__
    sprintf (buf, 600, "hi! %d, %d, %d\n", 1, 2, 3); // GCC

```

⁶²In MSVC, the function implementation can be found in `alloca16.asm` and `chkstk.asm` in `C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\VC\crt\src\intel`

```

#else
    _snprintf (buf, 600, "hi! %d, %d, %d\n", 1, 2, 3); // MSVC
#endif

    puts (buf);
}

```

`_snprintf()` function works just like `printf()`, but instead of dumping the result into `stdout` (e.g., to terminal or console), it writes it to the `buf` buffer. Function `puts()` copies the contents of `buf` to `stdout`. Of course, these two function calls might be replaced by one `printf()` call, but we have to illustrate small buffer usage.

MSVC

Let's compile (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.40: MSVC 2010

```

...
mov    eax, 600 ; 00000258H
call   __alloca_probe_16
mov    esi, esp

push   3
push   2
push   1
push   OFFSET $SG2672
push   600        ; 00000258H
push   esi
call   __snprintf

push   esi
call   __puts
add    esp, 28

...

```

The sole `alloca()` argument is passed via EAX (instead of pushing it into the stack) ⁶³.

GCC + Intel syntax

GCC 4.4.1 does the same without calling external functions:

⁶³It is because `alloca()` is rather a compiler intrinsic ([11.3 on page 1278](#)) than a normal function. One of the reasons we need a separate function instead of just a couple of instructions in the code, is because the [MSVC⁶⁴](#) `alloca()` implementation also has code which reads from the memory just allocated, in order to let the [OS](#) map physical memory to this [VM⁶⁵](#) region. After the `alloca()` call, ESP points to the block of 600 bytes and we can use it as memory for the `buf` array.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 1.41: GCC 4.7.3

```
.LC0:
    .string "hi! %d, %d, %d\n"
f:
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ebx
    sub     esp, 660
    lea     ebx, [esp+39]
    and    ebx, -16          ; align pointer by 16-byte border
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], ebx      ; s
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+20], 3
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+16], 2
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+12], 1
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+8], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "hi! %d, %d, %d\n"
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+4], 600      ; maxlen
    call    _snprintf
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], ebx      ; s
    call    puts
    mov     ebx, DWORD PTR [ebp-4]
    leave
    ret
```

GCC + AT&T syntax

Let's see the same code, but in AT&T syntax:

Listing 1.42: GCC 4.7.3

```
.LC0:
    .string "hi! %d, %d, %d\n"
f:
    pushl  %ebp
    movl   %esp, %ebp
    pushl  %ebx
    subl   $660, %esp
    leal   39(%esp), %ebx
    andl   $-16, %ebx
    movl   %ebx, (%esp)
    movl   $3, 20(%esp)
    movl   $2, 16(%esp)
    movl   $1, 12(%esp)
    movl   $.LC0, 8(%esp)
    movl   $600, 4(%esp)
    call   _snprintf
    movl   %ebx, (%esp)
    call   puts
    movl   -4(%ebp), %ebx
    leave
    ret
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The code is the same as in the previous listing.

By the way, `movl $3, 20(%esp)` corresponds to `mov DWORD PTR [esp+20], 3` in Intel-syntax. In the AT&T syntax, the register+offset format of addressing memory looks like `offset(%register)`.

(Windows) SEH

[SEH⁶⁶](#) records are also stored on the stack (if they are present). Read more about it: ([6.5.3 on page 988](#)).

Buffer overflow protection

More about it here ([1.26.2 on page 340](#)).

Automatic deallocation of data in stack

Perhaps the reason for storing local variables and SEH records in the stack is that they are freed automatically upon function exit, using just one instruction to correct the stack pointer (it is often ADD). Function arguments, as we could say, are also deallocated automatically at the end of function. In contrast, everything stored in the *heap* must be deallocated explicitly.

1.9.3 A typical stack layout

A typical stack layout in a 32-bit environment at the start of a function, before the first instruction execution looks like this:

...	...
ESP-0xC	local variable#2, marked in IDA as var_8
ESP-8	local variable#1, marked in IDA as var_4
ESP-4	saved value of EBP
ESP	Return Address
ESP+4	argument#1, marked in IDA as arg_0
ESP+8	argument#2, marked in IDA as arg_4
ESP+0xC	argument#3, marked in IDA as arg_8
...	...

1.9.4 Noise in stack

When one says that something seems random, what one usually means in practice is that one cannot see any regularities in it.

Stephen Wolfram, *A New Kind of Science*.

⁶⁶Structured Exception Handling

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Often in this book “noise” or “garbage” values in the stack or memory are mentioned. Where do they come from? These are what has been left there after other functions’ executions. Short example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f1()
{
    int a=1, b=2, c=3;
}

void f2()
{
    int a, b, c;
    printf ("%d, %d, %d\n", a, b, c);
}

int main()
{
    f1();
    f2();
}
```

Compiling ...

Listing 1.43: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

```
$SG2752 DB      '%d, %d, %d', 0aH, 00H

_c$ = -12      ; size = 4
_b$ = -8       ; size = 4
_a$ = -4       ; size = 4
_f1 PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 12
    mov     DWORD PTR _a$[ebp], 1
    mov     DWORD PTR _b$[ebp], 2
    mov     DWORD PTR _c$[ebp], 3
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_f1 ENDP

_c$ = -12      ; size = 4
_b$ = -8       ; size = 4
_a$ = -4       ; size = 4
_f2 PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 12
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push    eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    push    ecx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    push    edx
    push    OFFSET $SG2752 ; '%d, %d, %d'
    call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add    esp, 16
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f2    ENDP

_main  PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    call    _f1
    call    _f2
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

The compiler will grumble a little bit...

```

c:\Polygon\c>cl st.c /Fast.asm /MD
Microsoft (R) 32-bit C/C++ Optimizing Compiler Version 16.00.40219.01 for x86
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

st.c
c:\polygon\c\st.c(11) : warning C4700: uninitialized local variable 'c' used
c:\polygon\c\st.c(11) : warning C4700: uninitialized local variable 'b' used
c:\polygon\c\st.c(11) : warning C4700: uninitialized local variable 'a' used
Microsoft (R) Incremental Linker Version 10.00.40219.01
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

/out:st.exe
st.obj

```

But when we run the compiled program ...

```
c:\Polygon\c>st
1, 2, 3
```

Oh, what a weird thing! We did not set any variables in f2(). These are “ghost” values, which are still in the stack.

Let's load the example into OllyDbg:

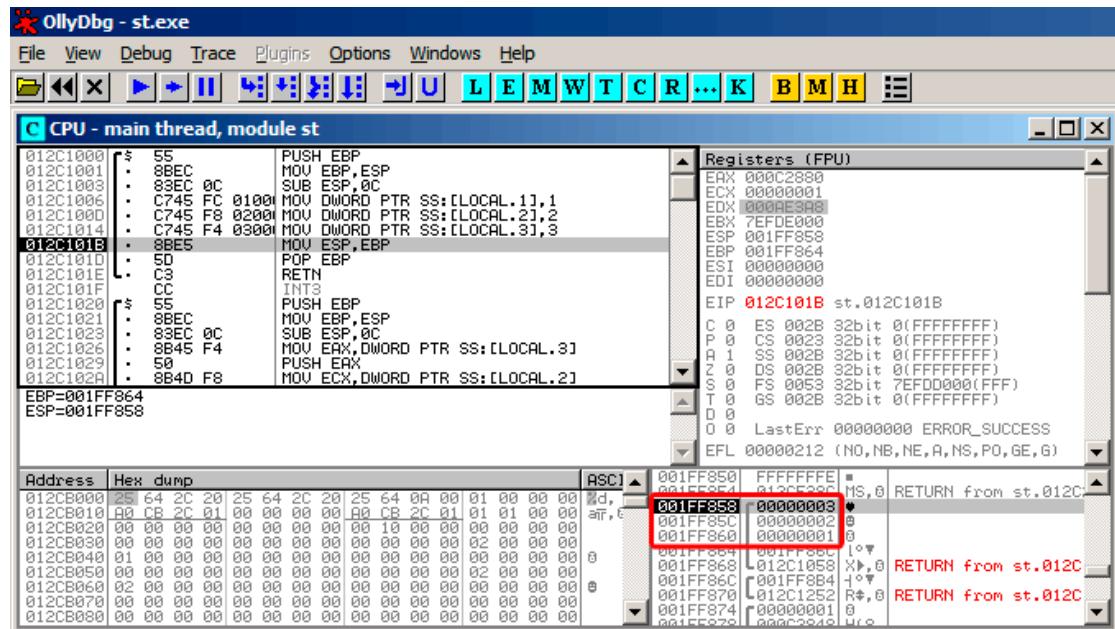


Figure 1.6: OllyDbg: f1()

When `f1()` assigns the variables `a`, `b` and `c`, their values are stored at the address `0x1FF860` and so on.

And when `f2()` executes:

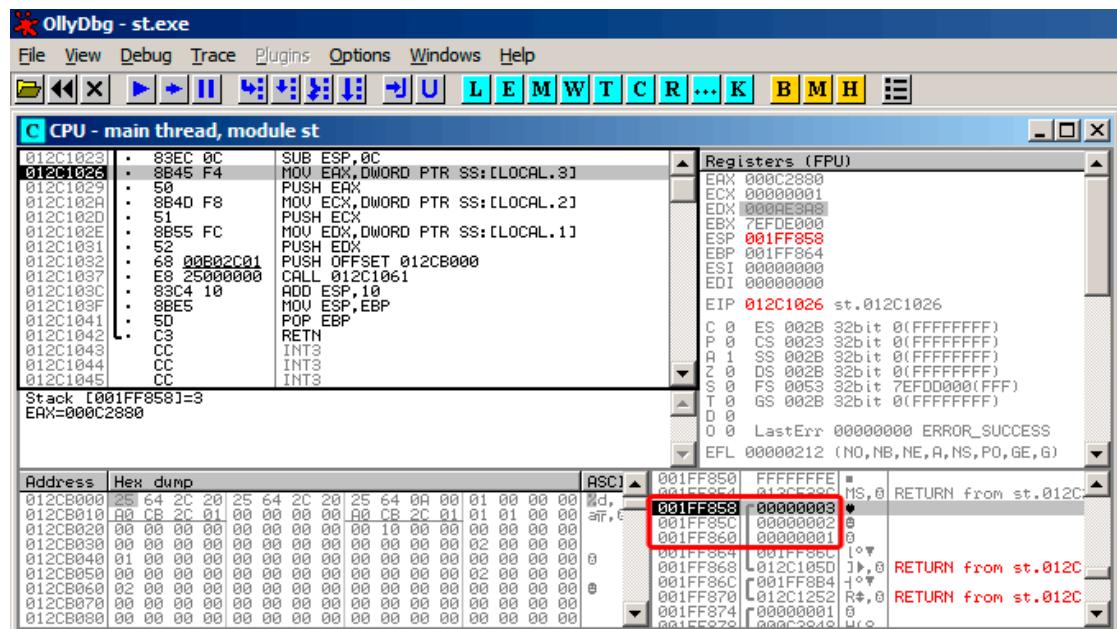


Figure 1.7: OllyDbg: `f2()`

... *a*, *b* and *c* of `f2()` are located at the same addresses! No one has overwritten the values yet, so at that point they are still untouched. So, for this weird situation to occur, several functions have to be called one after another and `SP` has to be the same at each function entry (i.e., they have the same number of arguments). Then the local variables will be located at the same positions in the stack. Summarizing, all values in the stack (and memory cells in general) have values left there from previous function executions. They are not random in the strict sense, but rather have unpredictable values. Is there another option? It would probably be possible to clear portions of the stack before each function execution, but that's too much extra (and unnecessary) work.

MSVC 2013

The example was compiled by MSVC 2010. But the reader of this book made attempt to compile this example in MSVC 2013, ran it, and got all 3 numbers reversed:

```
c:\Polygon\c>st
3, 2, 1
```

Why? I also compiled this example in MSVC 2013 and saw this:

Listing 1.44: MSVC 2013

```
_a$ = -12      ; size = 4
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

_b$ = -8          ; size = 4
_c$ = -4          ; size = 4
_f2    PROC
...
_f2    ENDP

_c$ = -12         ; size = 4
_b$ = -8          ; size = 4
_a$ = -4          ; size = 4
_f1    PROC
...
_f1    ENDP

```

Unlike MSVC 2010, MSVC 2013 allocated a/b/c variables in function f2() in reverse order. And this is completely correct, because C/C++ standards has no rule, in which order local variables must be allocated in the local stack, if at all. The reason of difference is because MSVC 2010 has one way to do it, and MSVC 2013 has supposedly something changed inside of compiler guts, so it behaves slightly different.

1.9.5 Exercises

- <http://challenges.re/51>
- <http://challenges.re/52>

1.10 Almost empty function

This is a real piece of code I found in Boolector⁶⁷:

```

// forward declaration. the function is residing in some other module:
int boolector_main (int argc, char **argv);

// executable
int main (int argc, char **argv)
{
    return boolector_main (argc, argv);
}

```

Why would anyone do so? It's unclear, but we can guess that boolector_main() may be compiled in some kind of DLL or dynamic library, and be called from a test suite. Surely, a test suite can prepare argc/argv variables as CRT would do it.

Interestingly enough, how this compiles:

⁶⁷ <https://boolector.github.io/>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

Listing 1.45: Non-optimizing GCC 8.2 x64 (assembly output)

```
main:
    push    rbp
    mov     rbp, rsp
    sub     rsp, 16
    mov     DWORD PTR -4[rbp], edi
    mov     QWORD PTR -16[rbp], rsi
    mov     rdx, QWORD PTR -16[rbp]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR -4[rbp]
    mov     rsi, rdx
    mov     edi, eax
    call    boolector_main
    leave
    ret
```

We've got here: prologue, unnecessary (not optimized) shuffling of two arguments, CALL, epilogue, RET. But let's see optimizing version:

Listing 1.46: Optimizing GCC 8.2 x64 (assembly output)

```
main:
    jmp    boolector_main
```

As simple as that: stack/registers are untouched and `boolector_main()` has the same arguments set. So all we need to do is pass execution to another address.

This is close to [thunk function](#).

We will see something more advanced later: [1.11.2 on page 71](#), [1.21.1 on page 197](#).

1.11 printf() with several arguments

Now let's extend the *Hello, world!* ([1.5 on page 11](#)) example, replacing `printf()` in the `main()` function body with this:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d", 1, 2, 3);
    return 0;
};
```

1.11.1 x86

x86: 3 integer arguments

MSVC

When we compile it with MSVC 2010 Express we get:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
$SG3830 DB      'a=%d; b=%d; c=%d', 00H

...
push    3
push    2
push    1
push    OFFSET $SG3830
call    _printf
add    esp, 16           ; 000000010H
```

Almost the same, but now we can see the `printf()` arguments are pushed onto the stack in reverse order. The first argument is pushed last.

By the way, variables of `int` type in 32-bit environment have 32-bit width, that is 4 bytes.

So, we have 4 arguments here. $4 \times 4 = 16$ —they occupy exactly 16 bytes in the stack: a 32-bit pointer to a string and 3 numbers of type `int`.

When the [stack pointer](#) (ESP register) has changed back by the `ADD ESP, X` instruction after a function call, often, the number of function arguments could be deduced by simply dividing X by 4.

Of course, this is specific to the `cdecl` calling convention, and only for 32-bit environment.

See also the calling conventions section ([6.1 on page 947](#)).

In certain cases where several functions return right after one another, the compiler could merge multiple “`ADD ESP, X`” instructions into one, after the last call:

```
push a1
push a2
call ...
...
push a1
call ...
...
push a1
push a2
push a3
call ...
add esp, 24
```

Here is a real-world example:

Listing 1.47: x86

```
.text:100113E7  push   3
.text:100113E9  call    sub_100018B0 ; takes one argument (3)
.text:100113EE  call    sub_100019D0 ; takes no arguments at all
.text:100113F3  call    sub_10006A90 ; takes no arguments at all
.text:100113F8  push   1
.text:100113FA  call    sub_100018B0 ; takes one argument (1)
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
| .text:100113FF      add      esp, 8      ; drops two arguments from stack at |
```

MSVC and OllyDbg

Now let's try to load this example in OllyDbg. It is one of the most popular user-land win32 debuggers. We can compile our example in MSVC 2012 with /MD option, which means to link with MSVCR*.DLL, so we can see the imported functions clearly in the debugger.

Then load the executable in OllyDbg. The very first breakpoint is in ntdll.dll, press F9 (run). The second breakpoint is in CRT-code. Now we have to find the main() function.

Find this code by scrolling the code to the very top (MSVC allocates the main() function at the very beginning of the code section):

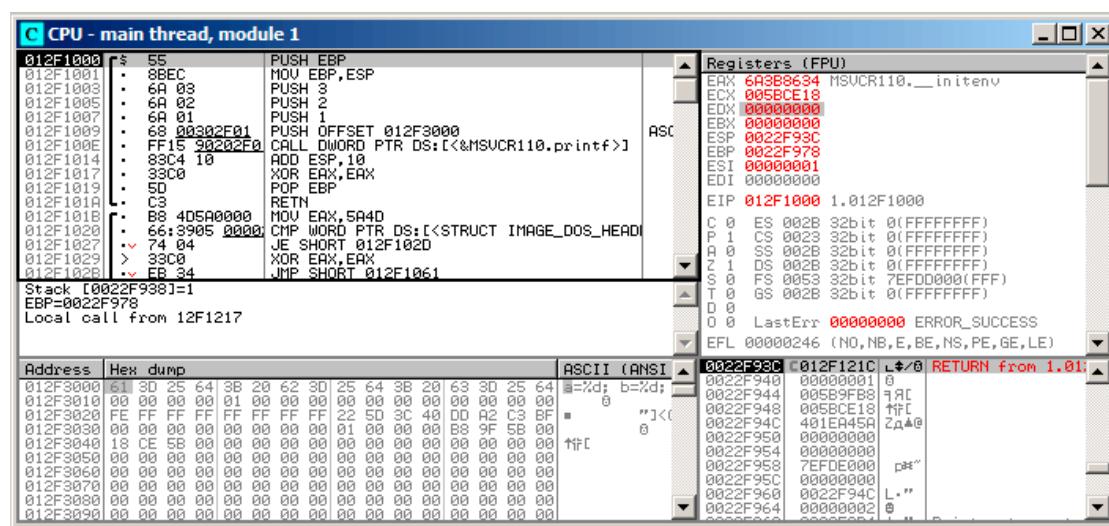


Figure 1.8: OllyDbg: the very start of the main() function

Click on the PUSH EBP instruction, press F2 (set breakpoint) and press F9 (run). We have to perform these actions in order to skip CRT-code, because we aren't really interested in it yet.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Press F8 (step over) 6 times, i.e. skip 6 instructions:

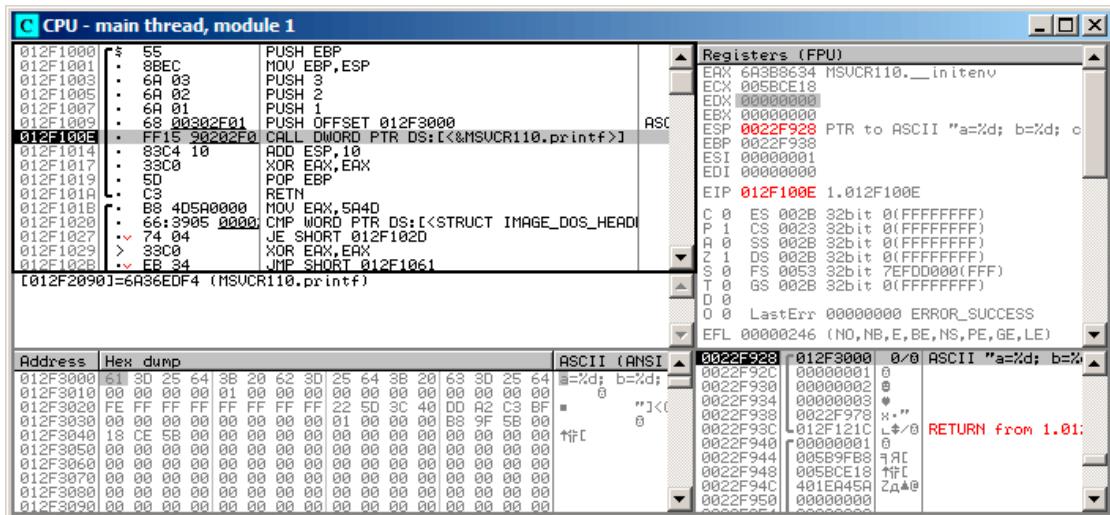


Figure 1.9: OllyDbg: before printf() execution

Now the **PC** points to the CALL printf instruction. OllyDbg, like other debuggers, highlights the value of the registers which were changed. So each time you press F8, EIP changes and its value is displayed in red. ESP changes as well, because the arguments values are pushed into the stack.

Where are the values in the stack? Take a look at the right bottom debugger window:

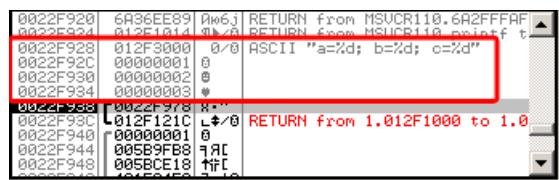


Figure 1.10: OllyDbg: stack after the argument values have been pushed (The red rectangular border was added by the author in a graphics editor)

We can see 3 columns there: address in the stack, value in the stack and some additional OllyDbg comments. OllyDbg can detect pointers to ASCII strings in stack, so it reports the printf() -string here.

It is possible to right-click on the format string, click on "Follow in dump", and the format string will appear in the debugger left-bottom window, which always displays some part of the memory. These memory values can be edited. It is possible to change the format string, in which case the result of our example would be different. It is not very useful in this particular case, but it could be good as an exercise so you start building a feel of how everything works here.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Press F8 (step over).

We see the following output in the console:

```
a=1; b=2; c=3
```

Let's see how the registers and stack state have changed:

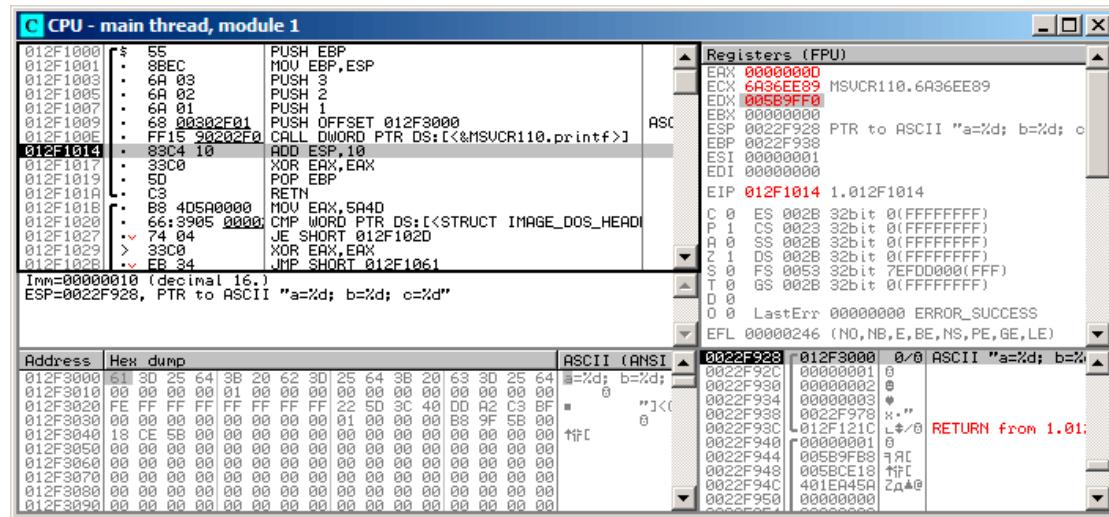


Figure 1.11: OllyDbg after `printf()` execution

Register EAX now contains 0xD (13). That is correct, since `printf()` returns the number of characters printed. The value of EIP has changed: indeed, now it contains the address of the instruction coming after `CALL printf`. ECX and EDX values have changed as well. Apparently, the `printf()` function's hidden machinery used them for its own needs.

A very important fact is that neither the ESP value, nor the stack state have been changed! We clearly see that the format string and corresponding 3 values are still there. This is indeed the *cdecl* calling convention behavior: *callee* does not return ESP back to its previous value. The *caller* is responsible to do so.

Press F8 again to execute ADD ESP, 10 instruction:

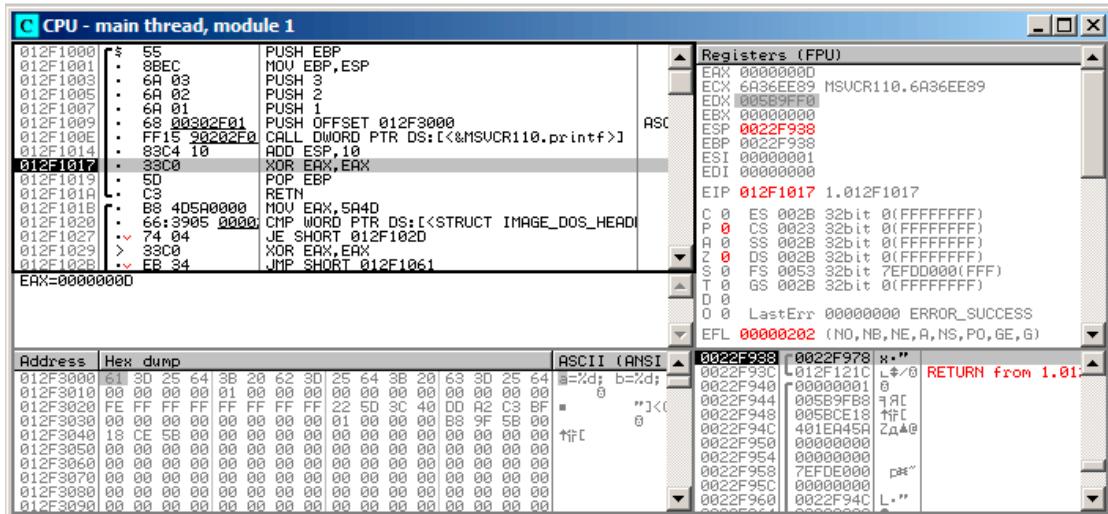


Figure 1.12: OllyDbg: after ADD ESP, 10 instruction execution

ESP has changed, but the values are still in the stack! Yes, of course; no one needs to set these values to zeros or something like that. Everything above the stack pointer (**SP**) is *noise* or *garbage* and has no meaning at all. It would be time consuming to clear the unused stack entries anyway, and no one really needs to.

GCC

Now let's compile the same program in Linux using GCC 4.4.1 and take a look at what we have got in IDA:

```
main          proc near

var_10        = dword ptr -10h
var_C         = dword ptr -0Ch
var_8         = dword ptr -8
var_4         = dword ptr -4

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
sub    esp, 10h
mov     eax, offset aADBD_CD ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
mov     [esp+10h+var_4], 3
mov     [esp+10h+var_8], 2
mov     [esp+10h+var_C], 1
mov     [esp+10h+var_10], eax
call   _printf
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        mov      eax, 0
        leave
        retn
main      endp

```

Its noticeable that the difference between the MSVC code and the GCC code is only in the way the arguments are stored on the stack. Here the GCC is working directly with the stack without the use of PUSH/POP.

GCC and GDB

Let's try this example also in [GDB⁶⁸](#) in Linux.

-g option instructs the compiler to include debug information in the executable file.

```
$ gcc 1.c -g -o 1
```

```

$ gdb 1
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
...
Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/1...done.

```

Listing 1.48: let's set breakpoint on printf()

```
(gdb) b printf
Breakpoint 1 at 0x80482f0
```

Run. We don't have the printf() function source code here, so [GDB](#) can't show it, but may do so.

```

(gdb) run
Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/1

Breakpoint 1, __printf (format=0x80484f0 "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d") at printf.c:29
29      printf.c: No such file or directory.

```

Print 10 stack elements. The most left column contains addresses on the stack.

```
(gdb) x/10w $esp
0xbffff11c: 0x0804844a    0x080484f0    0x00000001    0x00000002
0xbffff12c: 0x00000003    0x08048460    0x00000000    0x00000000
0xbffff13c: 0xb7e29905   0x00000001
```

The very first element is the [RA](#) (0x0804844a). We can verify this by disassembling the memory at this address:

```
(gdb) x/5i 0x0804844a
0x804844a <main+45>: mov    $0x0,%eax
0x804844f <main+50>: leave
0x8048450 <main+51>: ret
```

⁶⁸GNU Debugger

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
0x08048451:    xchg    %ax,%ax
0x08048453:    xchg    %ax,%ax
```

The two XCHG instructions are idle instructions, analogous to [NOPs](#).

The second element (0x080484f0) is the format string address:

```
(gdb) x/s 0x080484f0
0x080484f0:      "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
```

Next 3 elements (1, 2, 3) are the `printf()` arguments. The rest of the elements could be just “garbage” on the stack, but could also be values from other functions, their local variables, etc. We can ignore them for now.

Run “finish”. The command instructs GDB to “execute all instructions until the end of the function”. In this case: execute till the end of `printf()`.

```
(gdb) finish
Run till exit from #0 __printf (format=0x080484f0 "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d") at ↵
  ↳ printf.c:29
main () at 1.c:6
6          return 0;
Value returned is $2 = 13
```

[GDB](#) shows what `printf()` returned in EAX (13). This is the number of characters printed out, just like in the OllyDbg example.

We also see “return 0;” and the information that this expression is in the 1.c file at the line 6. Indeed, the 1.c file is located in the current directory, and [GDB](#) finds the string there. How does [GDB](#) know which C-code line is being currently executed? This is due to the fact that the compiler, while generating debugging information, also saves a table of relations between source code line numbers and instruction addresses. GDB is a source-level debugger, after all.

Let’s examine the registers. 13 in EAX:

```
(gdb) info registers
eax          0xd      13
ecx          0x0      0
edx          0x0      0
ebx 0xb7fc0000      -1208221696
esp 0xbffff120      0xbffff120
ebp 0xbffff138      0xbffff138
esi          0x0      0
edi          0x0      0
eip 0x0804844a <main+45>
...
...
```

Let’s disassemble the current instructions. The arrow points to the instruction to be executed next.

```
(gdb) disas
Dump of assembler code for function main:
0x0804841d <+0>:    push    %ebp
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

0x0804841e <+1>:    mov    %esp,%ebp
0x08048420 <+3>:    and    $0xffffffff0,%esp
0x08048423 <+6>:    sub    $0x10,%esp
0x08048426 <+9>:    movl   $0x3,0xc(%esp)
0x0804842e <+17>:   movl   $0x2,0x8(%esp)
0x08048436 <+25>:   movl   $0x1,0x4(%esp)
0x0804843e <+33>:   movl   $0x80484f0,(%esp)
0x08048445 <+40>:   call   0x80482f0 <printf@plt>
=> 0x0804844a <+45>: mov    $0x0,%eax
0x0804844f <+50>:   leave 
0x08048450 <+51>:   ret    
End of assembler dump.

```

GDB uses AT&T syntax by default. But it is possible to switch to Intel syntax:

```

(gdb) set disassembly-flavor intel
(gdb) disas
Dump of assembler code for function main:
0x0804841d <+0>: push   ebp
0x0804841e <+1>: mov    ebp,esp
0x08048420 <+3>: and    esp,0xffffffff0
0x08048423 <+6>: sub    esp,0x10
0x08048426 <+9>: mov    DWORD PTR [esp+0xc],0x3
0x0804842e <+17>: mov    DWORD PTR [esp+0x8],0x2
0x08048436 <+25>: mov    DWORD PTR [esp+0x4],0x1
0x0804843e <+33>: mov    DWORD PTR [esp],0x80484f0
0x08048445 <+40>: call   0x80482f0 <printf@plt>
=> 0x0804844a <+45>: mov    eax,0x0
0x0804844f <+50>: leave 
0x08048450 <+51>: ret    
End of assembler dump.

```

Execute next line of C/C++ code. GDB shows ending bracket, meaning, it ends the block.

```
(gdb) step
7      };
```

Let's examine the registers after the MOV EAX, 0 instruction execution. Indeed EAX is zero at that point.

```

(gdb) info registers
eax          0x0      0
ecx          0x0      0
edx          0x0      0
ebx          0xb7fc0000 -1208221696
esp          0xbffff120 0xbffff120
ebp          0xbffff138 0xbffff138
esi          0x0      0
edi          0x0      0
eip          0x804844f  0x804844f <main+50>
...

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

x64: 8 integer arguments

To see how other arguments are passed via the stack, let's change our example again by increasing the number of arguments to 9 (`printf()` format string + 8 *int* variables):

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n", 1, 2, 3,
        4, 5, 6, 7, 8);
    return 0;
};
```

MSVC

As it was mentioned earlier, the first 4 arguments has to be passed through the RCX, RDX, R8, R9 registers in Win64, while all the rest—via the stack. That is exactly what we see here. However, the `MOV` instruction, instead of `PUSH`, is used for preparing the stack, so the values are stored to the stack in a straightforward manner.

Listing 1.49: MSVC 2012 x64

```
$SG2923 DB      'a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d', 0aH, 00H

main PROC
    sub    rsp, 88

    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+64], 8
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+56], 7
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+48], 6
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+40], 5
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+32], 4
    mov    r9d, 3
    mov    r8d, 2
    mov    edx, 1
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2923
    call   printf

    ; return 0
    xor    eax, eax

    add    rsp, 88
    ret    0
main ENDP
_TEXT ENDS
END
```

The observant reader may ask why are 8 bytes allocated for *int* values, when 4 is enough? Yes, one has to recall: 8 bytes are allocated for any data type shorter than 64 bits. This is established for the convenience's sake: it makes it easy to calculate

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

the address of arbitrary argument. Besides, they are all located at aligned memory addresses. It is the same in the 32-bit environments: 4 bytes are reserved for all data types.

GCC

The picture is similar for x86-64 *NIX OS-es, except that the first 6 arguments are passed through the RDI, RSI, RDX, RCX, R8, R9 registers. All the rest—via the stack. GCC generates the code storing the string pointer into EDI instead of RDI—we noted that previously: [1.5.2 on page 21](#).

We also noted earlier that the EAX register has been cleared before a `printf()` call: [1.5.2 on page 21](#).

Listing 1.50: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
.LC0:
    .string "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n"

main:
    sub    rsp, 40

    mov    r9d, 5
    mov    r8d, 4
    mov    ecx, 3
    mov    edx, 2
    mov    esi, 1
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    xor    eax, eax ; number of vector registers passed
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+16], 8
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+8], 7
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp], 6
    call   printf

    ; return 0

    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 40
    ret
```

GCC + GDB

Let's try this example in [GDB](#).

```
$ gcc -g 2.c -o 2
```

```
$ gdb 2
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
...
Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/2...done.
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Listing 1.51: let's set the breakpoint to printf(), and run

```
(gdb) b printf
Breakpoint 1 at 0x400410
(gdb) run
Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/2

Breakpoint 1, __printf (format=0x400628 "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d\n"
    ↳ ; g=%d; h=%d\n") at printf.c:29
29     printf.c: No such file or directory.
```

Registers RSI/RDX/RCX/R8/R9 have the expected values. RIP has the address of the very first instruction of the printf() function.

```
(gdb) info registers
rax          0x0      0
rbx          0x0      0
rcx          0x3      3
rdx          0x2      2
rsi          0x1      1
rdi          0x400628 4195880
rbp          0x7fffffffdf60 0x7fffffffdf60
rsp          0x7fffffffdf38 0x7fffffffdf38
r8           0x4      4
r9           0x5      5
r10          0x7fffffffde0 140737488346336
r11          0x7ffff7a65f60 140737348263776
r12          0x400440 4195392
r13          0x7fffffffde040 140737488347200
r14          0x0      0
r15          0x0      0
rip          0x7ffff7a65f60 0x7ffff7a65f60 <__printf>
...
...
```

Listing 1.52: let's inspect the format string

```
(gdb) x/s $rdi
0x400628:      "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n"
```

Let's dump the stack with the x/g command this time—*g* stands for *giant words*, i.e., 64-bit words.

```
(gdb) x/10g $rsp
0x7fffffffdf38: 0x00000000000400576      0x0000000000000006
0x7fffffffdf48: 0x0000000000000007      0x00007fff00000008
0x7fffffffdf58: 0x0000000000000000      0x0000000000000000
0x7fffffffdf68: 0x00007ffff7a33de5      0x0000000000000000
0x7fffffffdf78: 0x00007fffffe048      0x0000000100000000
```

The very first stack element, just like in the previous case, is the [RA](#). 3 values are also passed through the stack: 6, 7, 8. We also see that 8 is passed with the high 32-bits not cleared: 0x00007fff00000008. That's OK, because the values are of *int* type, which is 32-bit. So, the high register or stack element part may contain “random garbage”.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

If you take a look at where the control will return after the `printf()` execution, [GDB](#) will show the entire `main()` function:

```
(gdb) set disassembly-flavor intel
(gdb) disas 0x0000000000400576
Dump of assembler code for function main:
0x000000000040052d <+0>:    push   rbp
0x000000000040052e <+1>:    mov    rbp,rsp
0x0000000000400531 <+4>:    sub    rsp,0x20
0x0000000000400535 <+8>:    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+0x10],0x8
0x000000000040053d <+16>:   mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+0x8],0x7
0x0000000000400545 <+24>:   mov    DWORD PTR [rsp],0x6
0x000000000040054c <+31>:   mov    r9d,0x5
0x0000000000400552 <+37>:   mov    r8d,0x4
0x0000000000400558 <+43>:   mov    ecx,0x3
0x000000000040055d <+48>:   mov    edx,0x2
0x0000000000400562 <+53>:   mov    esi,0x1
0x0000000000400567 <+58>:   mov    edi,0x400628
0x000000000040056c <+63>:   mov    eax,0x0
0x0000000000400571 <+68>:   call   0x400410 <printf@plt>
0x0000000000400576 <+73>:   mov    eax,0x0
0x000000000040057b <+78>:   leave 
0x000000000040057c <+79>:   ret

End of assembler dump.
```

Let's finish executing `printf()`, execute the instruction zeroing EAX, and note that the EAX register has a value of exactly zero. RIP now points to the LEAVE instruction, i.e., the penultimate one in the `main()` function.

```
(gdb) finish
Run till exit from #0  __printf (format=0x400628 "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e%
        ↴ =%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n") at printf.c:29
a=1; b=2; c=3; d=4; e=5; f=6; g=7; h=8
main () at 2.c:6
6          return 0;
Value returned is $1 = 39
(gdb) next
7      };
(gdb) info registers
rax          0x0      0
rbx          0x0      0
rcx          0x26     38
rdx          0x7ffff7dd59f0  140737351866864
rsi          0x7fffffd9      2147483609
rdi          0x0      0
rbp          0x7fffffffdf60  0x7fffffffdf60
rsp          0x7fffffffdf40  0x7fffffffdf40
r8           0x7ffff7dd26a0  140737351853728
r9           0x7ffff7a60134  140737348239668
r10          0x7fffffffdf5b0  140737488344496
r11          0x7ffff7a95900  140737348458752
r12          0x400440 4195392
r13          0x7fffffff040    140737488347200
r14          0x0      0
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

r15	0x0	0
rip	0x40057b	0x40057b <main+78>
...		

1.11.2 ARM

ARM: 3 integer arguments

ARM's traditional scheme for passing arguments (calling convention) behaves as follows: the first 4 arguments are passed through the R0-R3 registers; the remaining arguments via the stack. This resembles the arguments passing scheme in fast-call ([6.1.3 on page 949](#)) or win64 ([6.1.5 on page 951](#)).

32-bit ARM

Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 1.53: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
.text:00000000 main
.text:00000000 10 40 2D E9 STMFD SP!, {R4,LR}
.text:00000004 03 30 A0 E3 MOV R3, #3
.text:00000008 02 20 A0 E3 MOV R2, #2
.text:0000000C 01 10 A0 E3 MOV R1, #1
.text:00000010 08 00 8F E2 ADR R0, aADBDCCD ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
.text:00000014 06 00 00 EB BL _2printf
.text:00000018 00 00 A0 E3 MOV R0, #0 ; return 0
.text:0000001C 10 80 BD E8 LDMFD SP!, {R4,PC}
```

So, the first 4 arguments are passed via the R0-R3 registers in this order: a pointer to the `printf()` format string in R0, then 1 in R1, 2 in R2 and 3 in R3. The instruction at 0x18 writes 0 to R0—this is *return 0* C-statement. There is nothing unusual so far.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 generates the same code.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

Listing 1.54: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```
.text:00000000 main
.text:00000000 10 B5 PUSH {R4,LR}
.text:00000002 03 23 MOVS R3, #3
.text:00000004 02 22 MOVS R2, #2
.text:00000006 01 21 MOVS R1, #1
.text:00000008 02 A0 ADR R0, aADBDCCD ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
.text:0000000A 00 F0 0D F8 BL _2printf
.text:0000000E 00 20 MOVS R0, #0
.text:00000010 10 BD POP {R4,PC}
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

There is no significant difference from the non-optimized code for ARM mode.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode) + let's remove return 0

Let's rework example slightly by removing *return 0*:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    printf("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d", 1, 2, 3);
}
```

The result is somewhat unusual:

Listing 1.55: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
.text:00000014 main
.text:00000014 03 30 A0 E3    MOV      R3, #3
.text:00000018 02 20 A0 E3    MOV      R2, #2
.text:0000001C 01 10 A0 E3    MOV      R1, #1
.text:00000020 1E 0E 8F E2    ADR      R0, aADBD_CD ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d\n"
.text:00000024 CB 18 00 EA    B       _2printf
```

This is the optimized (-O3) version for ARM mode and this time we see B as the last instruction instead of the familiar BL. Another difference between this optimized version and the previous one (compiled without optimization) is the lack of function prologue and epilogue (instructions preserving the R0 and LR registers values). The B instruction just jumps to another address, without any manipulation of the LR register, similar to JMP in x86. Why does it work? Because this code is, in fact, effectively equivalent to the previous. There are two main reasons: 1) neither the stack nor SP (the **stack pointer**) is modified; 2) the call to printf() is the last instruction, so there is nothing going on afterwards. On completion, the printf() function simply returns the control to the address stored in LR. Since the LR currently stores the address of the point from where our function has been called then the control from printf() will be returned to that point. Therefore we do not have to save LR because we do not have necessity to modify LR. And we do not have necessity to modify LR because there are no other function calls except printf(). Furthermore, after this call we do not to do anything else! That is the reason such optimization is possible.

This optimization is often used in functions where the last statement is a call to another function. A similar example is presented here: [1.21.1 on page 198](#).

A somewhat simpler case was described above: [1.10 on page 55](#).

ARM64

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Listing 1.56: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
.LC1:
    .string "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
f2:
; save FP and LR in stack frame:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
; set stack frame (FP=SP):
    add    x29, sp, 0
    adrp   x0, .LC1
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC1
    mov    w1, 1
    mov    w2, 2
    mov    w3, 3
    bl     printf
    mov    w0, 0
; restore FP and LR
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 16
    ret
```

The first instruction STP (*Store Pair*) saves **FP** (X29) and **LR** (X30) in the stack. The second ADD X29, SP, 0 instruction forms the stack frame. It is just writing the value of **SP** into X29.

Next, we see the familiar ADRP/ADD instruction pair, which forms a pointer to the string. *lo12* meaning low 12 bits, i.e., linker will write low 12 bits of LC1 address into the opcode of ADD instruction. 1, 2 and 3 are 32-bit *int* values, so they are loaded into 32-bit register parts ⁶⁹

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9 generates the same code.

ARM: 8 integer arguments

Let's use again the example with 9 arguments from the previous section: [1.11.1 on page 66](#).

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n", 1, 2, 3,
        4, 5, 6, 7, 8);
    return 0;
};
```

⁶⁹Changing 1 to 1L will make it a 64-bit value that would be loaded into 64-bit register. See more about integer constants/literals: [1](#), [2](#).

Optimizing Keil 6/2013: ARM mode

```
.text:00000028          main
.text:00000028
.text:00000028          var_18 = -0x18
.text:00000028          var_14 = -0x14
.text:00000028          var_4  = -4
.text:00000028
.text:00000028  04 E0 2D E5  STR   LR, [SP,#var_4]!
.text:0000002C  14 D0 4D E2  SUB   SP, SP, #0x14
.text:00000030  08 30 A0 E3  MOV    R3, #8
.text:00000034  07 20 A0 E3  MOV    R2, #7
.text:00000038  06 10 A0 E3  MOV    R1, #6
.text:0000003C  05 00 A0 E3  MOV    R0, #5
.text:00000040  04 C0 8D E2  ADD   R12, SP, #0x18+var_14
.text:00000044  0F 00 8C E8  STMIA R12, {R0-R3}
.text:00000048  04 00 A0 E3  MOV    R0, #4
.text:0000004C  00 00 8D E5  STR   R0, [SP,#0x18+var_18]
.text:00000050  03 30 A0 E3  MOV    R3, #3
.text:00000054  02 20 A0 E3  MOV    R2, #2
.text:00000058  01 10 A0 E3  MOV    R1, #1
.text:0000005C  6E 0F 8F E2  ADR   R0, aADBDCDDDEDFGDD ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d;
d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%"...
.text:00000060  BC 18 00 EB  BL    __2printf
.text:00000064  14 D0 8D E2  ADD   SP, SP, #0x14
.text:00000068  04 F0 9D E4  LDR   PC, [SP+4+var_4],#4
```

This code can be divided into several parts:

- Function prologue:

The very first `STR LR, [SP,#var_4]!` instruction saves `LR` on the stack, because we are going to use this register for the `printf()` call. Exclamation mark at the end indicates *pre-index*.

This implies that `SP` is to be decreased by 4 first, and then `LR` will be saved at the address stored in `SP`. This is similar to `PUSH` in x86. Read more about it at: [1.39.2 on page 555](#).

The second `SUB SP, SP, #0x14` instruction decreases `SP` (the `stack pointer`) in order to allocate `0x14` (20) bytes on the stack. Indeed, we have to pass 5 32-bit values via the stack to the `printf()` function, and each one occupies 4 bytes, which is exactly $5 * 4 = 20$. The other 4 32-bit values are to be passed through registers.

- Passing 5, 6, 7 and 8 via the stack: they are stored in the `R0`, `R1`, `R2` and `R3` registers respectively.

Then, the `ADD R12, SP, #0x18+var_14` instruction writes the stack address where these 4 variables are to be stored, into the `R12` register. `var_14` is an assembly macro, equal to `-0x14`, created by `IDA` to conveniently display the code accessing the stack. The `var_?` macros generated by `IDA` reflect local variables in the stack.

So, SP+4 is to be stored into the R12 register.

The next STMIA R12, R0-R3 instruction writes registers R0-R3 contents to the memory pointed by R12. STMIA abbreviates *Store Multiple Increment After*. *Increment After* implies that R12 is to be increased by 4 after each register value is written.

- Passing 4 via the stack: 4 is stored in R0 and then this value, with the help of the
STR R0, [SP,#0x18+var_18] instruction is saved on the stack. var_18 is -0x18, so the offset is to be 0, thus the value from the R0 register (4) is to be written to the address written in **SP**.
- Passing 1, 2 and 3 via registers: The values of the first 3 numbers (a, b, c) (1, 2, 3 respectively) are passed through the R1, R2 and R3 registers right before the printf() call.
- printf() call.
- Function epilogue:

The ADD SP, SP, #0x14 instruction restores the **SP** pointer back to its former value, thus annulling everything what has been stored on the stack. Of course, what has been stored on the stack will stay there, but it will all be rewritten during the execution of subsequent functions.

The LDR PC, [SP+4+var_4],#4 instruction loads the saved **LR** value from the stack into the **PC** register, thus causing the function to exit. There is no exclamation mark—indeed, **PC** is loaded first from the address stored in **SP** ($4 + var_4 = 4 + (-4) = 0$), so this instruction is analogous to LDR PC, [SP],#4, and then **SP** is increased by 4. This is referred as *post-index*⁷⁰. Why does **IDA** display the instruction like that? Because it wants to illustrate the stack layout and the fact that var_4 is allocated for saving the **LR** value in the local stack. This instruction is somewhat similar to POP PC in x86⁷¹.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013: Thumb mode

```
.text:0000001C      printf_main2
.text:0000001C
.text:0000001C      var_18 = -0x18
.text:0000001C      var_14 = -0x14
.text:0000001C      var_8  = -8
.text:0000001C
.text:0000001C  00 B5      PUSH    {LR}
.text:0000001E  08 23      MOVS    R3, #8
.text:00000020  85 B0      SUB     SP, SP, #0x14
.text:00000022  04 93      STR     R3, [SP,#0x18+var_8]
.text:00000024  07 22      MOVS    R2, #7
.text:00000026  06 21      MOVS    R1, #6
.text:00000028  05 20      MOVS    R0, #5
.text:0000002A  01 AB      ADD     R3, SP, #0x18+var_14
```

⁷⁰Read more about it: [1.39.2 on page 555](#).

⁷¹It is impossible to set IP/EIP/RIP value using POP in x86, but anyway, you got the analogy right.

```

.text:0000002C 07 C3      STMIA   R3!, {R0-R2}
.text:0000002E 04 20      MOVS    R0, #4
.text:00000030 00 90      STR     R0, [SP,#0x18+var_18]
.text:00000032 03 23      MOVS    R3, #3
.text:00000034 02 22      MOVS    R2, #2
.text:00000036 01 21      MOVS    R1, #1
.text:00000038 A0 A0      ADR     R0, aADBDCDDDEFDGD ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d;
d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%"...
.text:0000003A 06 F0 D9 F8  BL      __2printf
.text:0000003E
.text:0000003E           loc_3E ; CODE XREF: example13_f+16
.text:0000003E 05 B0      ADD     SP, SP, #0x14
.text:00000040 00 BD      POP    {PC}

```

The output is almost like in the previous example. However, this is Thumb code and the values are packed into stack differently: 8 goes first, then 5, 6, 7, and 4 goes third.

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM): ARM mode

```

__text:0000290C          _printf_main2
__text:0000290C
__text:0000290C          var_1C = -0x1C
__text:0000290C          var_C = -0xC
__text:0000290C
__text:0000290C 80 40 2D E9  STMFD   SP!, {R7,LR}
__text:00002910 0D 70 A0 E1  MOV      R7, SP
__text:00002914 14 D0 4D E2  SUB     SP, SP, #0x14
__text:00002918 70 05 01 E3  MOV     R0, #0x1570
__text:0000291C 07 C0 A0 E3  MOV     R12, #7
__text:00002920 00 00 40 E3  MOVT    R0, #0
__text:00002924 04 20 A0 E3  MOV     R2, #4
__text:00002928 00 00 8F E0  ADD     R0, PC, R0
__text:0000292C 06 30 A0 E3  MOV     R3, #6
__text:00002930 05 10 A0 E3  MOV     R1, #5
__text:00002934 00 20 8D E5  STR     R2, [SP,#0x1C+var_1C]
__text:00002938 0A 10 8D E9  STMFA   SP, {R1,R3,R12}
__text:0000293C 08 90 A0 E3  MOV     R9, #8
__text:00002940 01 10 A0 E3  MOV     R1, #1
__text:00002944 02 20 A0 E3  MOV     R2, #2
__text:00002948 03 30 A0 E3  MOV     R3, #3
__text:0000294C 10 90 8D E5  STR     R9, [SP,#0x1C+var_C]
__text:00002950 A4 05 00 EB  BL      __printf
__text:00002954 07 D0 A0 E1  MOV     SP, R7
__text:00002958 80 80 BD E8  LDMFD  SP!, {R7,PC}

```

Almost the same as what we have already seen, with the exception of STMFA (Store Multiple Full Ascending) instruction, which is a synonym of STMIB (Store Multiple Increment Before) instruction. This instruction increases the value in the [SP](#) register and only then writes the next register value into the memory, rather than performing those two actions in the opposite order.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Another thing that catches the eye is that the instructions are arranged seemingly random. For example, the value in the R0 register is manipulated in three places, at addresses 0x2918, 0x2920 and 0x2928, when it would be possible to do it in one point.

However, the optimizing compiler may have its own reasons on how to order the instructions so to achieve higher efficiency during the execution.

Usually, the processor attempts to simultaneously execute instructions located side-by-side.

For example, instructions like MOVT R0, #0 and ADD R0, PC, R0 cannot be executed simultaneously since they both modify the R0 register. On the other hand, MOVT R0, #0 and MOV R2, #4 instructions can be executed simultaneously since the effects of their execution are not conflicting with each other. Presumably, the compiler tries to generate code in such a manner (wherever it is possible).

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM): Thumb-2 mode

```

__text:00002BA0          _printf_main2
__text:00002BA0
__text:00002BA0          var_1C = -0x1C
__text:00002BA0          var_18 = -0x18
__text:00002BA0          var_C = -0xC
__text:00002BA0
__text:00002BA0 80 B5    PUSH    {R7,LR}
__text:00002BA2 6F 46    MOV     R7, SP
__text:00002BA4 85 B0    SUB    SP, SP, #0x14
__text:00002BA6 41 F2 D8 20  MOVW   R0, #0x12D8
__text:00002BAA 4F F0 07 0C  MOV.W   R12, #7
__text:00002BAE C0 F2 00 00  MOVT.W  R0, #0
__text:00002BB2 04 22    MOVS   R2, #4
__text:00002BB4 78 44    ADD    R0, PC ; char *
__text:00002BB6 06 23    MOVS   R3, #6
__text:00002BB8 05 21    MOVS   R1, #5
__text:00002BBA 0D F1 04 0E  ADD.W  LR, SP, #0x1C+var_18
__text:00002BBE 00 92    STR    R2, [SP,#0x1C+var_1C]
__text:00002BC0 4F F0 08 09  MOV.W  R9, #8
__text:00002BC4 8E E8 0A 10  STMIA.W LR, {R1,R3,R12}
__text:00002BC8 01 21    MOVS   R1, #1
__text:00002BCA 02 22    MOVS   R2, #2
__text:00002BCC 03 23    MOVS   R3, #3
__text:00002BCE CD F8 10 90  STR.W  R9, [SP,#0x1C+var_C]
__text:00002BD2 01 F0 0A EA  BLX    _printf
__text:00002BD6 05 B0    ADD    SP, SP, #0x14
__text:00002BD8 80 BD    POP    {R7,PC}

```

The output is almost the same as in the previous example, with the exception that Thumb/Thumb 2-instructions are used instead.

ARM64

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Listing 1.57: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
.LC2:
    .string "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n"
f3:
; grab more space in stack:
    sub    sp, sp, #32
; save FP and LR in stack frame:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp,16]
; set frame pointer (FP=SP+16):
    add    x29, sp, 16
    adrp   x0, .LC2 ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC2
    mov    w1, 8           ; 9th argument
    str    w1, [sp]        ; store 9th argument in the stack
    mov    w1, 1
    mov    w2, 2
    mov    w3, 3
    mov    w4, 4
    mov    w5, 5
    mov    w6, 6
    mov    w7, 7
    bl     printf
    sub    sp, x29, #16
; restore FP and LR
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp,16]
    add    sp, sp, 32
    ret
```

The first 8 arguments are passed in X- or W-registers: [*Procedure Call Standard for the ARM 64-bit Architecture (AArch64)*, (2013)]⁷². A string pointer requires a 64-bit register, so it's passed in X0. All other values have a *int* 32-bit type, so they are stored in the 32-bit part of the registers (W-). The 9th argument (8) is passed via the stack. Indeed: it's not possible to pass large number of arguments through registers, because the number of registers is limited.

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9 generates the same code.

1.11.3 MIPS

3 integer arguments

Optimizing GCC 4.4.5

The main difference with the “Hello, world!” example is that in this case `printf()` is called instead of `puts()` and 3 more arguments are passed through the registers

⁷²Also available as http://infocenter.arm.com/help/topic/com.arm.doc.ihi0055b/IHI0055B_aapcs64.pdf

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

\$5...\$7 (or \$A1...\$A3). That is why these registers are prefixed with A-, which implies they are used for function arguments passing.

Listing 1.58: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly output)

```
$LC0:
.ascii  "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d\000"
main:
; function prologue:
    lui      $28,%hi(__gnu_local_gp)
    addiu   $sp,$sp,-32
    addiu   $28,$28,%lo(__gnu_local_gp)
    sw      $31,28($sp)
; load address of printf():
    lw       $25,%call16(sprintf)($28)
; load address of the text string and set 1st argument of printf():
    lui      $4,%hi($LC0)
    addiu   $4,$4,%lo($LC0)
; set 2nd argument of printf():
    li       $5,1                      # 0x1
; set 3rd argument of printf():
    li       $6,2                      # 0x2
; call printf():
    jalr    $25
; set 4th argument of printf() (branch delay slot):
    li       $7,3                      # 0x3

; function epilogue:
    lw       $31,28($sp)
; set return value to 0:
    move    $2,$0
; return
    j       $31
    addiu   $sp,$sp,32 ; branch delay slot
```

Listing 1.59: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
.text:00000000 main:
.text:00000000
.text:00000000 var_10          = -0x10
.text:00000000 var_4           = -4
.text:00000000
; function prologue:
.text:00000000          lui      $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
.text:00000004          addiu   $sp, -0x20
.text:00000008          la      $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
.text:0000000C          sw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:00000010          sw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
; load address of printf():
.text:00000014          lw      $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
; load address of the text string and set 1st argument of printf():
.text:00000018          la      $a0, $LC0      # "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
; set 2nd argument of printf():
.text:00000020          li      $a1, 1
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; set 3rd argument of printf():
.text:00000024          li      $a2, 2
; call printf():
.text:00000028          jalr    $t9
; set 4th argument of printf() (branch delay slot):
.text:0000002C          li      $a3, 3
; function epilogue:
.text:00000030          lw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
; set return value to 0:
.text:00000034          move   $v0, $zero
; return
.text:00000038          jr      $ra
.text:0000003C          addiu  $sp, 0x20 ; branch delay slot

```

IDA has coalesced pair of LUI and ADDIU instructions into one LA pseudo instruction. That's why there are no instruction at address 0x1C: because LA occupies 8 bytes.

Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5

Non-optimizing GCC is more verbose:

Listing 1.60: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly output)

```

$LC0:
    .ascii  "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d\000"
main:
; function prologue:
    addiu  $sp,$sp,-32
    sw     $31,28($sp)
    sw     $fp,24($sp)
    move   $fp,$sp
    lui    $28,%hi(__gnu_local_gp)
    addiu  $28,$28,%lo(__gnu_local_gp)
; load address of the text string:
    lui    $2,%hi($LC0)
    addiu  $2,$2,%lo($LC0)
; set 1st argument of printf():
    move   $4,$2
; set 2nd argument of printf():
    li     $5,1                  # 0x1
; set 3rd argument of printf():
    li     $6,2                  # 0x2
; set 4th argument of printf():
    li     $7,3                  # 0x3
; get address of printf():
    lw     $2,%call16(sprintf)($28)
    nop
; call printf():
    move   $25,$2
    jalr  $25
    nop

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; function epilogue:
    lw      $28,16($fp)
; set return value to 0:
    move   $2,$0
    move   $sp,$fp
    lw      $31,28($sp)
    lw      $fp,24($sp)
    addiu  $sp,$sp,32
; return
    j      $31
    nop

```

Listing 1.61: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

.text:00000000 main:
.text:00000000
.text:00000000 var_10          = -0x10
.text:00000000 var_8           = -8
.text:00000000 var_4           = -4
.text:00000000
; function prologue:
.text:00000000          addiu  $sp, -0x20
.text:00000004          sw     $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:00000008          sw     $fp, 0x20+var_8($sp)
.text:0000000C          move   $fp, $sp
.text:00000010          la     $gp, __gnu_local_gp
.text:00000018          sw     $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
; load address of the text string:
.text:0000001C          la     $v0, aADBD_CD      # "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d"
; set 1st argument of printf():
.text:00000024          move   $a0, $v0
; set 2nd argument of printf():
.text:00000028          li     $a1, 1
; set 3rd argument of printf():
.text:0000002C          li     $a2, 2
; set 4th argument of printf():
.text:00000030          li     $a3, 3
; get address of printf():
.text:00000034          lw     $v0, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:00000038          or     $at, $zero
; call printf():
.text:0000003C          move   $t9, $v0
.text:00000040          jalr   $t9
.text:00000044          or     $at, $zero ; NOP
; function epilogue:
.text:00000048          lw     $gp, 0x20+var_10($fp)
; set return value to 0:
.text:0000004C          move   $v0, $zero
.text:00000050          move   $sp, $fp
.text:00000054          lw     $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:00000058          lw     $fp, 0x20+var_8($sp)
.text:0000005C          addiu $sp, 0x20
; return
.text:00000060          jr     $ra

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

.text:00000064	or	\$at, \$zero ; NOP
----------------	----	--------------------

8 integer arguments

Let's use again the example with 9 arguments from the previous section: [1.11.1 on page 66](#).

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\n", 1, 2, 3,
        4, 5, 6, 7, 8);
    return 0;
};
```

Optimizing GCC 4.4.5

Only the first 4 arguments are passed in the \$A0 ...\$A3 registers, the rest are passed via the stack.

This is the O32 calling convention (which is the most common one in the MIPS world). Other calling conventions, or manually written assembly code, may use the registers for different purposes.

SW abbreviates “Store Word” (from register to memory). MIPS lacks instructions for storing a value into memory, so an instruction pair has to be used instead (LI/SW).

Listing 1.62: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly output)

```
$LC0:
    .ascii  "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\012\000"
main:
; function prologue:
    lui      $28,%hi(__gnu_local_gp)
    addiu   $sp,$sp,-56
    addiu   $28,$28,%lo(__gnu_local_gp)
    sw      $31,52($sp)
; pass 5th argument in stack:
    li      $2,4                      # 0x4
    sw      $2,16($sp)
; pass 6th argument in stack:
    li      $2,5                      # 0x5
    sw      $2,20($sp)
; pass 7th argument in stack:
    li      $2,6                      # 0x6
    sw      $2,24($sp)
; pass 8th argument in stack:
    li      $2,7                      # 0x7
    lw      $25,%call16(sprintf)($28)
    sw      $2,28($sp)
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; pass 1st argument in $a0:
    lui      $4,%hi($LC0)
; pass 9th argument in stack:
    li       $2,8                      # 0x8
    sw       $2,32($sp)
    addiu   $4,$4,%lo($LC0)
; pass 2nd argument in $a1:
    li       $5,1                      # 0x1
; pass 3rd argument in $a2:
    li       $6,2                      # 0x2
; call printf():
    jalr   $25
; pass 4th argument in $a3 (branch delay slot):
    li       $7,3                      # 0x3

; function epilogue:
    lw       $31,52($sp)
; set return value to 0:
    move   $2,$0
; return
    j      $31
    addiu $sp,$sp,56 ; branch delay slot

```

Listing 1.63: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

.text:00000000 main:
.text:00000000
.text:00000000 var_28          = -0x28
.text:00000000 var_24          = -0x24
.text:00000000 var_20          = -0x20
.text:00000000 var_1C          = -0x1C
.text:00000000 var_18          = -0x18
.text:00000000 var_10          = -0x10
.text:00000000 var_4           = -4
.text:00000000
; function prologue:
.text:00000000               lui      $gp, (_gnu_local_gp >> 16)
.text:00000004               addiu  $sp, -0x38
.text:00000008               la     $gp, (_gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
.text:0000000C               sw     $ra, 0x38+var_4($sp)
.text:00000010               sw     $gp, 0x38+var_10($sp)
; pass 5th argument in stack:
.text:00000014               li     $v0, 4
.text:00000018               sw     $v0, 0x38+var_28($sp)
; pass 6th argument in stack:
.text:0000001C               li     $v0, 5
.text:00000020               sw     $v0, 0x38+var_24($sp)
; pass 7th argument in stack:
.text:00000024               li     $v0, 6
.text:00000028               sw     $v0, 0x38+var_20($sp)
; pass 8th argument in stack:
.text:0000002C               li     $v0, 7
.text:00000030               lw     $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:00000034               sw     $v0, 0x38+var_1C($sp)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; prepare 1st argument in $a0:
.text:00000038          lui      $a0, ($LC0 >> 16) # "a=%d; b=%d;
    c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%"...
; pass 9th argument in stack:
.text:0000003C          li       $v0, 8
.text:00000040          sw       $v0, 0x38+var_18($sp)
; pass 1st argument in $a0:
.text:00000044          la       $a0, ($LC0 & 0xFFFF) # "a=%d; b=%d;
    c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%"...
; pass 2nd argument in $a1:
.text:00000048          li       $a1, 1
; pass 3rd argument in $a2:
.text:0000004C          li       $a2, 2
; call printf():
.text:00000050          jalr    $t9
; pass 4th argument in $a3 (branch delay slot):
.text:00000054          li       $a3, 3
; function epilogue:
.text:00000058          lw       $ra, 0x38+var_4($sp)
; set return value to 0:
.text:0000005C          move    $v0, $zero
; return
.text:00000060          jr       $ra
.text:00000064          addiu   $sp, 0x38 ; branch delay slot

```

Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5

Non-optimizing GCC is more verbose:

Listing 1.64: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly output)

```

$LC0:
    .ascii  "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%d; h=%d\012\000"
main:
; function prologue:
    addiu   $sp,$sp,-56
    sw      $31,52($sp)
    sw      $fp,48($sp)
    move    $fp,$sp
    lui     $28,%hi(__gnu_local_gp)
    addiu   $28,$28,%lo(__gnu_local_gp)
    lui     $2,%hi($LC0)
    addiu   $2,$2,%lo($LC0)
; pass 5th argument in stack:
    li      $3,4                  # 0x4
    sw      $3,16($sp)
; pass 6th argument in stack:
    li      $3,5                  # 0x5
    sw      $3,20($sp)
; pass 7th argument in stack:
    li      $3,6                  # 0x6
    sw      $3,24($sp)
; pass 8th argument in stack:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        li      $3,7          # 0x7
        sw      $3,28($sp)
; pass 9th argument in stack:
        li      $3,8          # 0x8
        sw      $3,32($sp)
; pass 1st argument in $a0:
        move   $4,$2
; pass 2nd argument in $a1:
        li      $5,1          # 0x1
; pass 3rd argument in $a2:
        li      $6,2          # 0x2
; pass 4th argument in $a3:
        li      $7,3          # 0x3
; call printf():
        lw      $2,%call16(sprintf)($28)
        nop
        move   $25,$2
        jalr   $25
        nop
; function epilogue:
        lw      $28,40($fp)
; set return value to 0:
        move   $2,$0
        move   $sp,$fp
        lw      $31,52($sp)
        lw      $fp,48($sp)
        addiu $sp,$sp,56
; return
        j      $31
        nop

```

Listing 1.65: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

.text:00000000 main:
.text:00000000
.text:00000000 var_28      = -0x28
.text:00000000 var_24      = -0x24
.text:00000000 var_20      = -0x20
.text:00000000 var_1C      = -0x1C
.text:00000000 var_18      = -0x18
.text:00000000 var_10      = -0x10
.text:00000000 var_8       = -8
.text:00000000 var_4       = -4
.text:00000000
; function prologue:
.text:00000000             addiu  $sp, -0x38
.text:00000004             sw     $ra, 0x38+var_4($sp)
.text:00000008             sw     $fp, 0x38+var_8($sp)
.text:0000000C             move   $fp, $sp
.text:00000010             la     $gp, __gnu_local_gp
.text:00000018             sw     $gp, 0x38+var_10($sp)
.text:0000001C             la     $v0, aADBDCDDDEFDGD # "a=%d; b=%d;
c=%d; d=%d; e=%d; f=%d; g=%"...
; pass 5th argument in stack:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:00000024          li    $v1, 4
.text:00000028          sw    $v1, 0x38+var_28($sp)
; pass 6th argument in stack:
.text:0000002C          li    $v1, 5
.text:00000030          sw    $v1, 0x38+var_24($sp)
; pass 7th argument in stack:
.text:00000034          li    $v1, 6
.text:00000038          sw    $v1, 0x38+var_20($sp)
; pass 8th argument in stack:
.text:0000003C          li    $v1, 7
.text:00000040          sw    $v1, 0x38+var_1C($sp)
; pass 9th argument in stack:
.text:00000044          li    $v1, 8
.text:00000048          sw    $v1, 0x38+var_18($sp)
; pass 1st argument in $a0:
.text:0000004C          move   $a0, $v0
; pass 2nd argument in $a1:
.text:00000050          li    $a1, 1
; pass 3rd argument in $a2:
.text:00000054          li    $a2, 2
; pass 4th argument in $a3:
.text:00000058          li    $a3, 3
; call printf():
.text:0000005C          lw    $v0, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:00000060          or    $at, $zero
.text:00000064          move   $t9, $v0
.text:00000068          jalr   $t9
.text:0000006C          or    $at, $zero ; NOP
; function epilogue:
.text:00000070          lw    $gp, 0x38+var_10($fp)
; set return value to 0:
.text:00000074          move   $v0, $zero
.text:00000078          move   $sp, $fp
.text:0000007C          lw    $ra, 0x38+var_4($sp)
.text:00000080          lw    $fp, 0x38+var_8($sp)
.text:00000084          addiu $sp, 0x38
; return
.text:00000088          jr    $ra
.text:0000008C          or    $at, $zero ; NOP

```

1.11.4 Conclusion

Here is a rough skeleton of the function call:

Listing 1.66: x86

```

...
PUSH 3rd argument
PUSH 2nd argument
PUSH 1st argument
CALL function
; modify stack pointer (if needed)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 1.67: x64 (MSVC)

```

MOV RCX, 1st argument
MOV RDX, 2nd argument
MOV R8, 3rd argument
MOV R9, 4th argument
...
PUSH 5th, 6th argument, etc. (if needed)
CALL function
; modify stack pointer (if needed)

```

Listing 1.68: x64 (GCC)

```

MOV RDI, 1st argument
MOV RSI, 2nd argument
MOV RDX, 3rd argument
MOV RCX, 4th argument
MOV R8, 5th argument
MOV R9, 6th argument
...
PUSH 7th, 8th argument, etc. (if needed)
CALL function
; modify stack pointer (if needed)

```

Listing 1.69: ARM

```

MOV R0, 1st argument
MOV R1, 2nd argument
MOV R2, 3rd argument
MOV R3, 4th argument
; pass 5th, 6th argument, etc., in stack (if needed)
BL function
; modify stack pointer (if needed)

```

Listing 1.70: ARM64

```

MOV X0, 1st argument
MOV X1, 2nd argument
MOV X2, 3rd argument
MOV X3, 4th argument
MOV X4, 5th argument
MOV X5, 6th argument
MOV X6, 7th argument
MOV X7, 8th argument
; pass 9th, 10th argument, etc., in stack (if needed)
BL function
; modify stack pointer (if needed)

```

Listing 1.71: MIPS (O32 calling convention)

```

LI $4, 1st argument ; AKA $A0
LI $5, 2nd argument ; AKA $A1
LI $6, 3rd argument ; AKA $A2
LI $7, 4th argument ; AKA $A3

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
; pass 5th, 6th argument, etc., in stack (if needed)
LW temp_reg, address of function
JALR temp_reg
```

1.11.5 By the way

By the way, this difference between the arguments passing in x86, x64, fastcall, ARM and MIPS is a good illustration of the fact that the CPU is oblivious to how the arguments are passed to functions. It is also possible to create a compiler that is able to pass arguments via a special structure without using stack at all.

MIPS \$A0 ...\$A3 registers are labeled this way only for convenience (that is in the O32 calling convention). Programmers may use any other register (well, maybe except \$ZERO) to pass data or use any other calling convention.

The **CPU** is not aware of calling conventions whatsoever.

We may also recall how new coming assembly language programmers passing arguments into other functions: usually via registers, without any explicit order, or even via global variables. Of course, it works fine.

1.12 scanf()

Now let's use `scanf()`.

1.12.1 Simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int x;
    printf ("Enter X:\n");
    scanf ("%d", &x);
    printf ("You entered %d...\n", x);
    return 0;
}
```

It's not clever to use `scanf()` for user interactions nowadays. But we can, however, illustrate passing a pointer to a variable of type *int*.

About pointers

Pointers are one of the fundamental concepts in computer science. Often, passing a large array, structure or object as an argument to another function is too expensive,

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

while passing their address is much cheaper. For example, if you going to print a text string to console, it's much easier to pass its address into OS kernel.

In addition if the `callee` function needs to modify something in the large array or structure received as a parameter and return back the entire structure then the situation is close to absurd. So the simplest thing to do is to pass the address of the array or structure to the `callee` function, and let it change what needs to be changed.

A pointer in C/C++—is simply an address of some memory location.

In x86, the address is represented as a 32-bit number (i.e., it occupies 4 bytes), while in x86-64 it is a 64-bit number (occupying 8 bytes). By the way, that is the reason behind some people's indignation related to switching to x86-64—all pointers in the x64-architecture require twice as much space, including cache memory, which is “expensive” memory.

It is possible to work with untyped pointers only, given some effort; e.g. the standard C function `memcpy()`, that copies a block from one memory location to another, takes 2 pointers of type `void*` as arguments, since it is impossible to predict the type of the data you would like to copy. Data types are not important, only the block size matters.

Pointers are also widely used when a function needs to return more than one value (we are going to get back to this later ([3.23 on page 771](#))).

`scanf()` function—is such a case.

Besides the fact that the function needs to indicate how many values were successfully read, it also needs to return all these values.

In C/C++ the pointer type is only needed for compile-time type checking.

Internally, in the compiled code there is no information about pointer types at all.

x86

MSVC

Here is what we get after compiling with MSVC 2010:

```
CONST SEGMENT
$SG3831    DB      'Enter X:', 0aH, 00H
$SG3832    DB      '%d', 00H
$SG3833    DB      'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H
CONST ENDS
PUBLIC _main
EXTRN _scanf:PROC
EXTRN _printf:PROC
; Function compile flags: /Odtp
_TEXT SEGMENT
_x$ = -4           ; size = 4
_main  PROC
    push   ebp
    mov    ebp, esp
    push   ecx
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push  OFFSET $SG3831 ; 'Enter X:'
call  _printf
add   esp, 4
lea    eax, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]
push  eax
push  OFFSET $SG3832 ; '%d'
call  _scanf
add   esp, 8
mov   ecx, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]
push  ecx
push  OFFSET $SG3833 ; 'You entered %d...'
call  _printf
add   esp, 8

; return 0
xor   eax, eax
mov   esp, ebp
pop   ebp
ret   0
_main ENDP
_TEXT ENDS

```

x is a local variable.

According to the C/C++ standard it must be visible only in this function and not from any other external scope. Traditionally, local variables are stored on the stack. There are probably other ways to allocate them, but in x86 that is the way it is.

The goal of the instruction following the function prologue, PUSH ECX, is not to save the ECX state (notice the absence of corresponding POP ECX at the function's end).

In fact it allocates 4 bytes on the stack for storing the x variable.

x is to be accessed with the assistance of the _x\$ macro (it equals to -4) and the EBP register pointing to the current frame.

Over the span of the function's execution, EBP is pointing to the current [stack frame](#) making it possible to access local variables and function arguments via EBP+offset.

It is also possible to use ESP for the same purpose, although that is not very convenient since it changes frequently. The value of the EBP could be perceived as a *frozen state* of the value in ESP at the start of the function's execution.

Here is a typical [stack frame](#) layout in 32-bit environment:

...	...
EBP-8	local variable #2, marked in IDA as var_8
EBP-4	local variable #1, marked in IDA as var_4
EBP	saved value of EBP
EBP+4	return address
EBP+8	argument#1, marked in IDA as arg_0
EBP+0xC	argument#2, marked in IDA as arg_4
EBP+0x10	argument#3, marked in IDA as arg_8
...	...

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

The `scanf()` function in our example has two arguments.

The first one is a pointer to the string containing `%d` and the second is the address of the `x` variable.

First, the `x` variable's address is loaded into the `EAX` register by the `lea eax, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]` instruction.

LEA stands for *load effective address*, and is often used for forming an address ([.1.6 on page 1319](#)).

We could say that in this case LEA simply stores the sum of the `EBP` register value and the `_x$` macro in the `EAX` register.

This is the same as `lea eax, [ebp-4]`.

So, 4 is being subtracted from the `EBP` register value and the result is loaded in the `EAX` register. Next the `EAX` register value is pushed into the stack and `scanf()` is being called.

`printf()` is being called after that with its first argument — a pointer to the string: You entered `%d...\\n`.

The second argument is prepared with: `mov ecx, [ebp-4]`. The instruction stores the `x` variable value and not its address, in the `ECX` register.

Next the value in the `ECX` is stored on the stack and the last `printf()` is being called.

MSVC + OllyDbg

Let's try this example in OllyDbg. Let's load it and keep pressing F8 (step over) until we reach our executable file instead of ntdll.dll. Scroll up until main() appears.

Click on the first instruction (PUSH EBP), press F2 (set a breakpoint), then F9 (Run). The breakpoint will be triggered when main() begins.

Let's trace to the point where the address of the variable *x* is calculated:

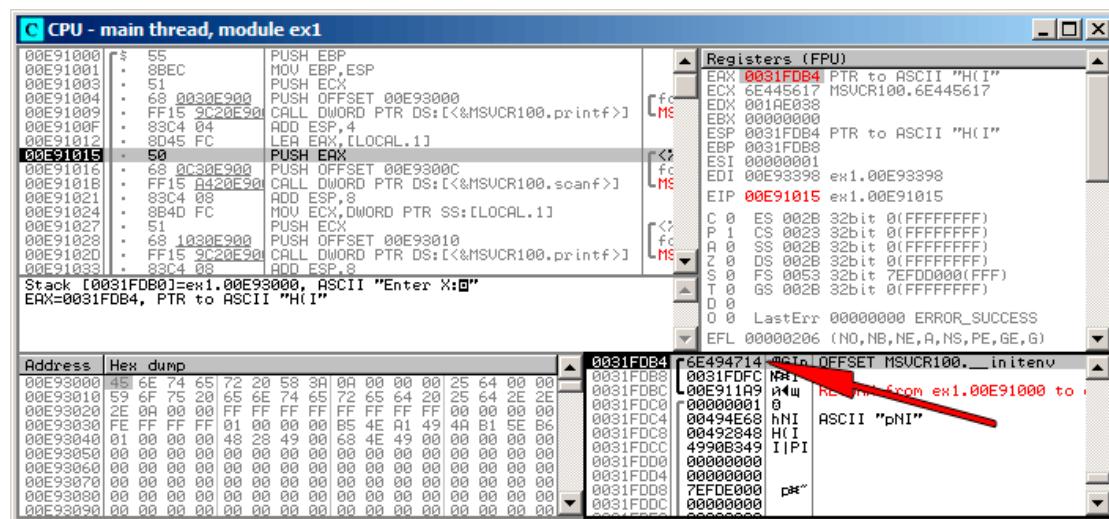


Figure 1.13: OllyDbg: The address of the local variable is calculated

Right-click the EAX in the registers window and then select “Follow in stack”.

This address will appear in the stack window. The red arrow has been added, pointing to the variable in the local stack. At that moment this location contains some garbage (0x6E494714). Now with the help of PUSH instruction the address of this stack element is going to be stored to the same stack on the next position. Let's trace with F8 until the scanf() execution completes. During the scanf() execution, we input, for example, 123, in the console window:

```
Enter X:  
123
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

scanf() completed its execution already:

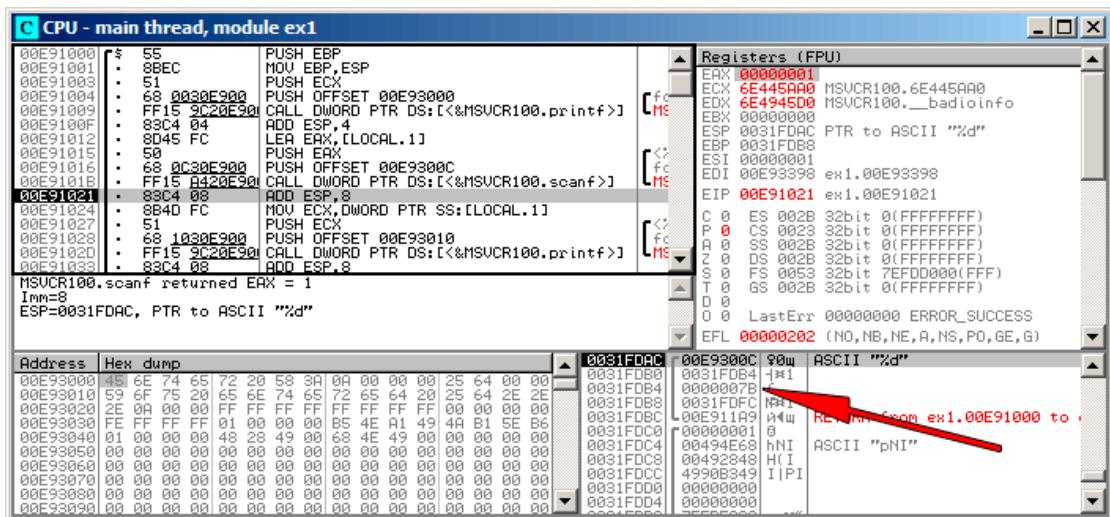


Figure 1.14: OllyDbg: scanf() executed

scanf() returns 1 in EAX, which implies that it has read successfully one value. If we look again at the stack element corresponding to the local variable it now contains 0x7B (123).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Later this value is copied from the stack to the ECX register and passed to `printf()`:

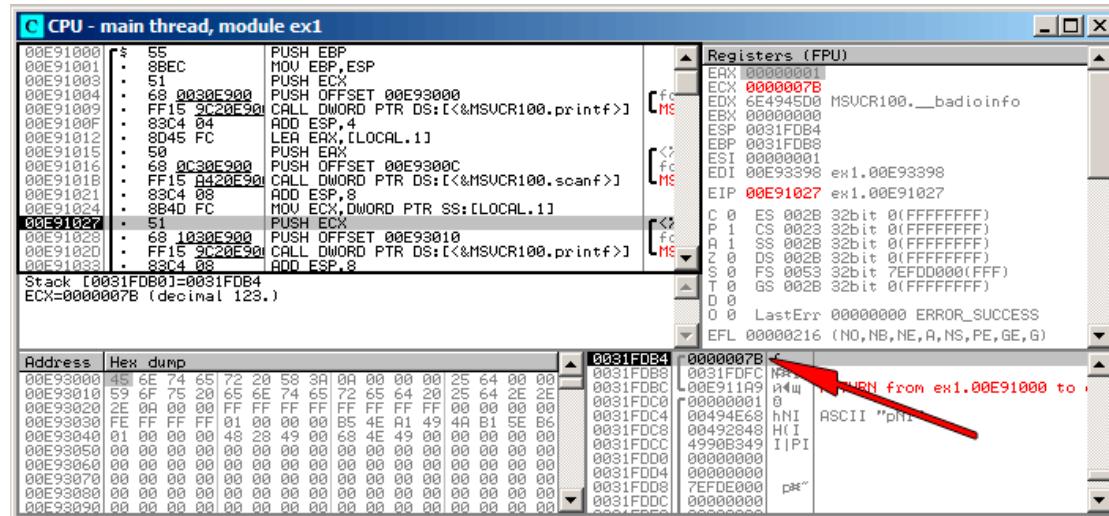


Figure 1.15: OllyDbg: preparing the value for passing to `printf()`

GCC

Let's try to compile this code in GCC 4.4.1 under Linux:

```
main          proc near
var_20        = dword ptr -20h
var_1C        = dword ptr -1Ch
var_4         = dword ptr -4

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
sub    esp, 20h
mov    [esp+20h+var_20], offset aEnterX ; "Enter X:"
call   _puts
mov    eax, offset aD    ; "%d"
lea    edx, [esp+20h+var_4]
mov    [esp+20h+var_1C], edx
mov    [esp+20h+var_20], eax
call   __isoc99_scant
mov    edx, [esp+20h+var_4]
mov    eax, offset aYouEnteredD__ ; "You entered %d...\\n"
mov    [esp+20h+var_1C], edx
mov    [esp+20h+var_20], eax
call   _printf
mov    eax, 0
leave
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

main	ret endp
------	-------------

GCC has replaced the `printf()` call with call to `puts()`. The reason for this was explained in ([1.5.3 on page 28](#)).

As in the MSVC example—the arguments are placed on the stack using the `MOV` instruction.

By the way

This simple example is a demonstration of the fact that the compiler translates a list of expressions in C/C++-block into a sequential list of instructions. There is nothing in between expressions in C/C++, and so in the resulting machine code, there are nothing between, the control flow slips from one expression to the next one.

x64

The picture here is similar with the difference that the registers, rather than the stack, are used for arguments passing.

MSVC

Listing 1.72: MSVC 2012 x64

```
_DATA SEGMENT
$SG1289 DB      'Enter X:', 0aH, 00H
$SG1291 DB      '%d', 00H
$SG1292 DB      'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H
_DATA ENDS

_TEXT SEGMENT
x$ = 32
main PROC
$LN3:
    sub    rsp, 56
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1289 ; 'Enter X:'
    call   printf
    lea    rdx, QWORD PTR x$[rsp]
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1291 ; '%d'
    call   scanf
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR x$[rsp]
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1292 ; 'You entered %d...'
    call   printf

    ; return 0
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 56
    ret    0
main ENDP
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

_TEXT ENDS

GCC

Listing 1.73: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
.LC0:    .string "Enter X:"
.LC1:    .string "%d"
.LC2:    .string "You entered %d...\n"

main:
    sub    rsp, 24
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "Enter X:"
    call   puts
    lea    rsi, [rsp+12]
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1 ; "%d"
    xor    eax, eax
    call   __isoc99_scanf
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR [rsp+12]
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC2 ; "You entered %d...\n"
    xor    eax, eax
    call   printf

; return 0
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 24
    ret
```

ARM

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```
.text:00000042          scanf_main
.text:00000042
.text:00000042          var_8        = -8
.text:00000042
.text:00000042 08 B5      PUSH   {R3,LR}
.text:00000044 A9 A0      ADR    R0, aEnterX ; "Enter X:\n"
.text:00000046 06 F0 D3 F8  BL    _2printf
.text:0000004A 69 46      MOV    R1, SP
.text:0000004C AA A0      ADR    R0, aD ; "%d"
.text:0000004E 06 F0 CD F8  BL    _0scanf
.text:00000052 00 99      LDR    R1, [SP,#8+var_8]
.text:00000054 A9 A0      ADR    R0, aYouEnteredD__ ; "You entered
    %d...\n"
.text:00000056 06 F0 CB F8  BL    _2printf
.text:0000005A 00 20      MOVS  R0, #0
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

.text:0000005C 08 BD	POP	{R3,PC}
----------------------	-----	---------

In order for `scanf()` to be able to read item it needs a parameter—pointer to an *int*. *int* is 32-bit, so we need 4 bytes to store it somewhere in memory, and it fits exactly in a 32-bit register. A place for the local variable *x* is allocated in the stack and IDA has named it *var_8*. It is not necessary, however, to allocate a such since *SP* (stack pointer) is already pointing to that space and it can be used directly.

So, *SP*'s value is copied to the R1 register and, together with the format-string, passed to `scanf()`.

PUSH/POP instructions behaves differently in ARM than in x86 (it's the other way around). They are synonyms to STM/STMDB/LDM/LDMIA instructions. And PUSH instruction first writes a value into the stack, *and then* subtracts *SP* by 4. POP first adds 4 to *SP*, *and then* reads a value from the stack. Hence, after PUSH, *SP* points to an unused space in stack. It is used by `scanf()`, and by `printf()` after.

LDMIA means *Load Multiple Registers Increment address After each transfer*. STMDB means *Store Multiple Registers Decrement address Before each transfer*.

Later, with the help of the LDR instruction, this value is moved from the stack to the R1 register in order to be passed to `printf()`.

ARM64

Listing 1.74: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```

1 .LC0:      .string "Enter X:"
2
3 .LC1:      .string "%d"
4
5 .LC2:      .string "You entered %d...\n"
6
7 scanf_main:
8 ; subtract 32 from SP, then save FP and LR in stack frame:
9     stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
10 ; set stack frame (FP=SP)
11    add    x29, sp, 0
12 ; load pointer to the "Enter X:" string:
13    adrp   x0, .LC0
14    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
15 ; X0=pointer to the "Enter X:" string
16 ; print it:
17    bl     puts
18 ; load pointer to the "%d" string:
19    adrp   x0, .LC1
20    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC1
21 ; find a space in stack frame for "x" variable (X1=FP+28):
22    add    x1, x29, 28
23 ; X1=address of "x" variable
24 ; pass the address to scanf() and call it:
25    bl     __isoc99_scnf
26 ; load 32-bit value from the variable in stack frame:
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

27      ldr    w1, [x29,28]
28 ; W1=x
29 ; load pointer to the "You entered %d...\n" string
30 ; printf() will take text string from X0 and "x" variable from X1 (or W1)
31     adrp   x0, .LC2
32     add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC2
33     bl     printf
34 ; return 0
35     mov    w0, 0
36 ; restore FP and LR, then add 32 to SP:
37     ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32
38     ret

```

There is 32 bytes are allocated for stack frame, which is bigger than it needed. Perhaps some memory aligning issue? The most interesting part is finding space for the *x* variable in the stack frame (line 22). Why 28? Somehow, compiler decided to place this variable at the end of stack frame instead of beginning. The address is passed to `scanf()`, which just stores the user input value in the memory at that address. This is 32-bit value of type *int*. The value is fetched at line 27 and then passed to `printf()`.

MIPS

A place in the local stack is allocated for the *x* variable, and it is to be referred as $\$sp + 24$.

Its address is passed to `scanf()`, and the user input values is loaded using the LW ("Load Word") instruction and then passed to `printf()`.

Listing 1.75: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly output)

```

$LC0:
    .ascii  "Enter X:\000"
$LC1:
    .ascii  "%d\000"
$LC2:
    .ascii  "You entered %d...\012\000"
main:
; function prologue:
    lui    $28,%hi(__gnu_local_gp)
    addiu $sp,$sp,-40
    addiu $28,$28,%lo(__gnu_local_gp)
    sw    $31,36($sp)
; call puts():
    lw    $25,%call16(puts)($28)
    lui   $4,%hi($LC0)
    jalr  $25
    addiu $4,$4,%lo($LC0) ; branch delay slot
; call scanf():
    lw    $28,16($sp)
    lui   $4,%hi($LC1)
    lw    $25,%call16(__isoc99_scanf)($28)
; set 2nd argument of scanf(), $a1=$sp+24:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

addiu $5,$sp,24
jalr $25
addiu $4,$4,%lo($LC1) ; branch delay slot

; call printf():
    lw    $28,16($sp)
; set 2nd argument of printf(),
; load word at address $sp+24:
    lw    $5,24($sp)
    lw    $25,%call16(sprintf)($28)
    lui   $4,%hi($LC2)
    jalr $25
    addiu $4,$4,%lo($LC2) ; branch delay slot

; function epilogue:
    lw    $31,36($sp)
; set return value to 0:
    move $2,$0
; return:
    j    $31
    addiu $sp,$sp,40      ; branch delay slot

```

IDA displays the stack layout as follows:

Listing 1.76: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

.text:00000000 main:
.text:00000000
.text:00000000 var_18    = -0x18
.text:00000000 var_10    = -0x10
.text:00000000 var_4     = -4
.text:00000000
; function prologue:
.text:00000000         lui    $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
.text:00000004         addiu $sp, -0x28
.text:00000008         la    $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
.text:0000000C         sw    $ra, 0x28+var_4($sp)
.text:00000010         sw    $gp, 0x28+var_18($sp)
; call puts():
.text:00000014         lw    $t9, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:00000018         lui   $a0, ($LC0 >> 16) # "Enter X:"
.text:0000001C         jalr $t9
.text:00000020         la    $a0, ($LC0 & 0xFFFF) # "Enter X:" ; branch
               delay slot
; call scanf():
.text:00000024         lw    $gp, 0x28+var_18($sp)
.text:00000028         lui   $a0, ($LC1 >> 16) # "%d"
.text:0000002C         lw    $t9, (__isoc99_scanf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
; set 2nd argument of scanf(), $al=$sp+24:
.text:00000030         addiu $al, $sp, 0x28+var_10
.text:00000034         jalr $t9 ; branch delay slot
.text:00000038         la    $a0, ($LC1 & 0xFFFF) # "%d"
; call printf():
.text:0000003C         lw    $gp, 0x28+var_18($sp)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; set 2nd argument of printf(),
; load word at address $sp+24:
.text:00000040      lw      $a1, 0x28+var_10($sp)
.text:00000044      lw      $t9,  (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:00000048      lui     $a0, ($LC2 >> 16) # "You entered %d...\n"
.text:0000004C      jalr   $t9
.text:00000050      la     $a0, ($LC2 & 0xFFFF) # "You entered %d...\n"
; branch delay slot
; function epilogue:
.text:00000054      lw      $ra, 0x28+var_4($sp)
; set return value to 0:
.text:00000058      move   $v0, $zero
; return:
.text:0000005C      jr     $ra
.text:00000060      addiu $sp, 0x28 ; branch delay slot

```

1.12.2 The classic mistake

It's a very popular mistake (and/or typo) to pass a value of *x* instead of pointer to *x*:

```

#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int x;
    printf ("Enter X:\n");

    scanf ("%d", x); // BUG

    printf ("You entered %d...\n", x);

    return 0;
}

```

So what happens here? *x* is not initialized and contains some random noise from local stack. When `scanf()` called, it takes string from user, parses it into number and tries to write it into *x*, treating it as an address in memory. But there is a random noise, so `scanf()` will try to write at random address. Most likely, the process will crash.

Interestingly enough, some [CRT](#) libraries in debug build, put visually distinctive patterns into memory just allocated, like 0xFFFFFFFF or 0xBADF00D and so on. In this case, *x* may contain 0xFFFFFFFF, and `scanf()` would try to write at address 0xFFFFFFFF. And if you'll notice that something in your process tries to write at address 0xFFFFFFFF, you'll know that uninitialized variable (or pointer) gets used without prior initialization. This is better than as if newly allocated memory is just cleared by zero bytes.

1.12.3 Global variables

What if the `x` variable from the previous example isn't local but a global one? Then it would have been accessible from any point, not only from the function body. Global variables are considered [anti-pattern](#), but for the sake of the experiment, we could do this.

```
#include <stdio.h>

// now x is global variable
int x;

int main()
{
    printf ("Enter X:\n");
    scanf ("%d", &x);
    printf ("You entered %d...\n", x);
    return 0;
}
```

MSVC: x86

```
_DATA      SEGMENT
COMM      _x:DWORD
$SG2456    DB      'Enter X:', 0aH, 00H
$SG2457    DB      '%d', 00H
$SG2458    DB      'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H
_DATA      ENDS
PUBLIC     _main
EXTRN     _scanf:PROC
EXTRN     _printf:PROC
; Function compile flags: /Odtp
_TEXT      SEGMENT
_main      PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    OFFSET $SG2456
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    push    OFFSET _x
    push    OFFSET $SG2457
    call    _scanf
    add    esp, 8
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _x
    push    eax
    push    OFFSET $SG2458
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 8
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    ebp
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    ret    0
_main  ENDP
_TEXT ENDS

```

In this case the `x` variable is defined in the `_DATA` segment and no memory is allocated in the local stack. It is accessed directly, not through the stack. Uninitialized global variables take no space in the executable file (indeed, why one needs to allocate space for variables initially set to zero?), but when someone accesses their address, the [OS](#) will allocate a block of zeros there⁷³.

Now let's explicitly assign a value to the variable:

```
int x=10; // default value
```

We got:

```

_DATA  SEGMENT
_x     DD      0aH
...

```

Here we see a value `0xA` of `DWORD` type (`DD` stands for `DWORD = 32 bit`) for this variable.

If you open the compiled `.exe` in [IDA](#), you can see the `x` variable placed at the beginning of the `_DATA` segment, and after it you can see text strings.

If you open the compiled `.exe` from the previous example in [IDA](#), where the value of `x` hasn't been set, you would see something like this:

Listing 1.77: [IDA](#)

<code>.data:0040FA80 _x</code>	<code>dd ? ; DATA XREF: _main+10</code>
<code>.data:0040FA80</code>	<code>; _main+22</code>
<code>.data:0040FA84 dword_40FA84</code>	<code>dd ? ; DATA XREF: _memset+1E</code>
<code>.data:0040FA84</code>	<code>; unknown_libname_1+28</code>
<code>.data:0040FA88 dword_40FA88</code>	<code>dd ? ; DATA XREF: __sbh_find_block+5</code>
<code>.data:0040FA88</code>	<code>; __sbh_free_block+2BC</code>
<code>.data:0040FA8C ; LPVOID lpMem</code>	<code>dd ? ; DATA XREF: __sbh_find_block+B</code>
<code>.data:0040FA8C lpMem</code>	<code>; __sbh_free_block+2CA</code>
<code>.data:0040FA8C</code>	<code>; __sbh_free_block+2CA</code>
<code>.data:0040FA90 dword_40FA90</code>	<code>dd ? ; DATA XREF: _V6_HeapAlloc+13</code>
<code>.data:0040FA90</code>	<code>; __calloc_impl+72</code>
<code>.data:0040FA94 dword_40FA94</code>	<code>dd ? ; DATA XREF: __sbh_free_block+2FE</code>

`x` is marked with `?` with the rest of the variables that do not need to be initialized. This implies that after loading the `.exe` to the memory, a space for all these variables is to be allocated and filled with zeros [[ISO/IEC 9899:TC3 \(C C99 standard\)](#), (2007)6.7.8p10]. But in the `.exe` file these uninitialized variables do not occupy anything. This is convenient for large arrays, for example.

⁷³That is how a [VM](#) behaves

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

MSVC: x86 + OllyDbg

Things are even simpler here:

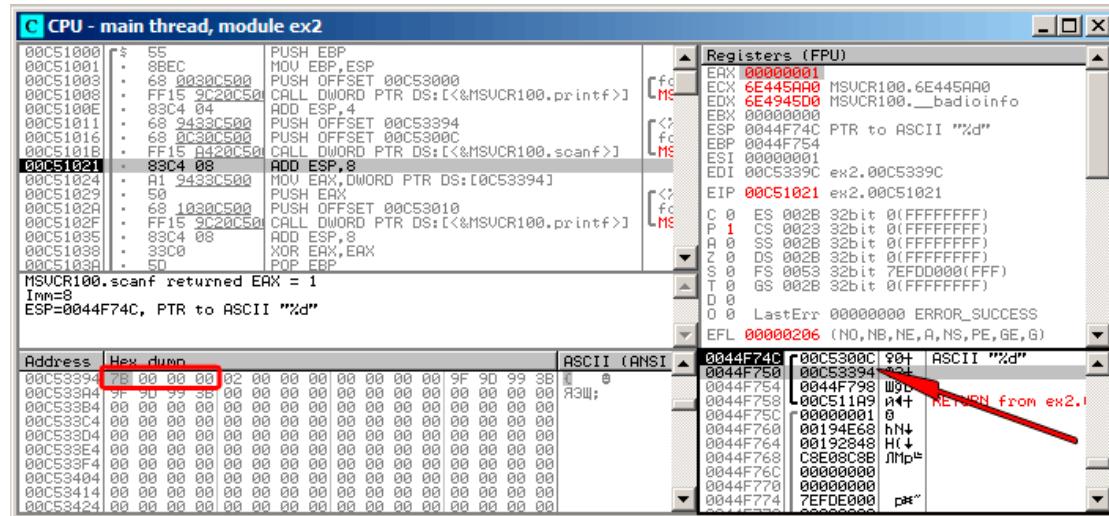


Figure 1.16: OllyDbg: after scanf() execution

The variable is located in the data segment. After the PUSH instruction (pushing the address of *x*) gets executed, the address appears in the stack window. Right-click on that row and select “Follow in dump”. The variable will appear in the memory window on the left. After we have entered 123 in the console, 0x7B appears in the memory window (see the highlighted screenshot regions).

But why is the first byte 7B? Thinking logically, 00 00 00 7B must be there. The cause for this is referred as [endianness](#), and x86 uses *little-endian*. This implies that the lowest byte is written first, and the highest written last. Read more about it at: [2.8 on page 587](#). Back to the example, the 32-bit value is loaded from this memory address into EAX and passed to printf().

The memory address of *x* is 0x00C53394.

In OllyDbg we can review the process memory map (Alt-M) and we can see that this address is inside the .data PE-segment of our program:

Address	Size	Owner	Section	Contains	Type	Access	Initial	Mapped as
00070000	00067000			Heap	Map	R	R	C:\Windows\System32\locale.nls
00190000	00005000				Priv	RW	RW	
00209000	00007000				Priv	RW	Gua:	
0044C000	00001000			Stack of main thread	Priv	RW	Gua:	
0044D000	00003000				Priv	RW	RW	
00590000	00007000				Priv	RW	RW	
00750000	0000C000			Default heap	Priv	RW	RW	
00C50000	00001000	ex2	.text	PE header	Img	R	RWE	Cop
00C51000	00001000	ex2	.rdata	Code	Img	R	E	RWE Cop
00C52000	00001000	ex2	.data	Imports	Img	R	RWE	Cop
00C53000	00001000	ex2		Data	Img	RW	RWE	Cop
00C54000	00001000	ex2		.reloc	Relocations	Img	R	RWE Cop
6E3E0000	00001000	MSUCR100		PE header	Img	R	RWE	Cop
6E3E1000	000B2000	MSUCR100	.text	Code, imports, exports	Img	R	E	RWE Cop
6E493000	00006000	MSUCR100	.data	Data	Img	RW	Cop	
6E499000	00001000	MSUCR100	.rsrc	Resources	Img	R	RWE	Cop
755D0000	00001000	Mod_755D	.reloc	Relocations	Img	R	RWE	Cop
755D1000	00003000			PE header	Img	R	E	RWE Cop
755D4000	00001000				Img	RW	RWE	Cop
755D5000	00003000				Img	R	RWE	Cop
755E0000	00001000	Mod_755E		PE header	Img	R	RWE	Cop
755E1000	00040000				Img	R	E	RWE Cop
7562E000	00005000				Img	RW	Cop	
75633000	00009000				Img	R	RWE	Cop
75640000	00001000	Mod_7564		PE header	Img	R	RWE	Cop
75641000	00038000				Img	R	E	RWE Cop
75673000	00002000				Img	RW	RWE	Cop
75678000	00004000				Img	R	RWE	Cop
76F58000	00010000	kernel32		PE header	Img	R	RWE	Cop
76F60000	00006000	kernel32	.text	Code, imports, exports	Img	R	E	RWE Cop
77030000	00010000	kernel32	.data	Data	Img	RW	Cop	
77040000	00010000	kernel32	.rsrc	Resources	Img	R	RWE	Cop
77050000	00006000	kernel32	.reloc	Relocations	Img	R	RWE	Cop
77810000	00001000	KERNELBASE		PE header	Img	R	RWE	Cop
77811000	00040000	KERNELBASE	.text	Code, imports, exports	Img	R	E	RWE Cop
77851000	00002000	KERNELBASE	.data	Data	Img	RW	RWE	Cop
77853000	00001000	KERNELBASE	.rsrc	Resources	Img	R	RWE	Cop
77854000	00003000	KERNELBASE	.reloc	Relocations	Img	R	RWE	Cop
77B20000	00001000	Mod_77B2		PE header	Img	R	RWE	Cop
77C23000	0002F000				Img	R	RWE	Cop
77C52000	0000C000				Img	RW	Cop	
77C5E000	0006B000				Img	R	RWE	Cop
77D00000	00001000	ntdll		PE header	Img	R	RWE	Cop
77D10000	00006000	ntdll	.text	Code, exports	Img	R	E	RWE Cop
77DF0000	00001000	ntdll	.code	Code	Img	R	E	RWE Cop
77E00000	00009000	ntdll	.data	Data	Img	RW	Cop	RWE Cop

Figure 1.17: OllyDbg: process memory map

GCC: x86

The picture in Linux is near the same, with the difference that the uninitialized variables are located in the _bss segment. In ELF⁷⁴ file this segment has the following attributes:

```
; Segment type: Uninitialized
; Segment permissions: Read/Write
```

If you, however, initialize the variable with some value e.g. 10, it is to be placed in the _data segment, which has the following attributes:

```
; Segment type: Pure data
; Segment permissions: Read/Write
```

MSVC: x64

⁷⁴ Executable and Linkable Format: Executable File format widely used in *NIX systems including Linux

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note: <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 1.78: MSVC 2012 x64

```

_DATA  SEGMENT
COMM   x:DWORD
$SG2924 DB      'Enter X:', 0aH, 00H
$SG2925 DB      '%d', 00H
$SG2926 DB      'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H
_DATA  ENDS

_TEXT  SEGMENT
main   PROC
$LN3:
    sub    rsp, 40

    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2924 ; 'Enter X:'
    call   printf
    lea    rdx, OFFSET FLAT:x
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2925 ; '%d'
    call   scanf
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR x
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2926 ; 'You entered %d...'
    call   printf

; return 0
    xor    eax, eax

    add    rsp, 40
    ret    0
main   ENDP
_TEXT  ENDS

```

The code is almost the same as in x86. Please note that the address of the *x* variable is passed to `scanf()` using a LEA instruction, while the variable's value is passed to the second `printf()` using a MOV instruction. `DWORD PTR`—is a part of the assembly language (no relation to the machine code), indicating that the variable data size is 32-bit and the MOV instruction has to be encoded accordingly.

ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

Listing 1.79: IDA

```

.text:00000000 ; Segment type: Pure code
.text:00000000     AREA .text, CODE
...
.text:00000000 main
.text:00000000     PUSH   {R4,LR}
.text:00000002     ADR    R0, aEnterX ; "Enter X:\n"
.text:00000004     BL     _2printf
.text:00000008     LDR    R1, =x
.text:0000000A     ADR    R0, aD        ; "%d"
.text:0000000C     BL     _0scanf
.text:00000010     LDR    R0, =x
.text:00000012     LDR    R1, [R0]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:00000014      ADR    R0, aYouEnteredD__ ; "You entered %d...\n"
.text:00000016      BL     __2printf
.text:0000001A      MOVS   R0, #0
.text:0000001C      POP    {R4,PC}
...
.text:00000020  aEnterX DCB "Enter X:",0xA,0 ; DATA XREF: main+2
.text:0000002A          DCB    0
.text:0000002B          DCB    0
.text:0000002C  off_2C  DCD x                  ; DATA XREF: main+8
.text:0000002C          ; main+10
.text:00000030  aD      DCB "%d",0           ; DATA XREF: main+A
.text:00000033          DCB    0
.text:00000034  aYouEnteredD__ DCB "You entered %d...",0xA,0 ; DATA XREF:
.main+14
.text:00000047          DCB    0
.text:00000047 ; .text ends
.text:00000047
...
.data:00000048 ; Segment type: Pure data
.data:00000048     AREA .data, DATA
.data:00000048     ; ORG 0x48
.data:00000048     EXPORT x
.data:00000048  x      DCD 0xA             ; DATA XREF: main+8
.data:00000048          ; main+10
.data:00000048 ; .data ends

```

So, the x variable is now global and for this reason located in another segment, namely the data segment (.data). One could ask, why are the text strings located in the code segment (.text) and x is located right here? Because it is a variable and by definition its value could change. Moreover it could possibly change often. While text strings has constant type, they will not be changed, so they are located in the .text segment.

The code segment might sometimes be located in a [ROM⁷⁵](#) chip (keep in mind, we now deal with embedded microelectronics, and memory scarcity is common here), and changeable variables —in [RAM](#).

It is not very economical to store constant variables in RAM when you have ROM.

Furthermore, constant variables in RAM must be initialized, because after powering on, the RAM, obviously, contains random information.

Moving forward, we see a pointer to the x (off_2C) variable in the code segment, and that all operations with the variable occur via this pointer.

That is because the x variable could be located somewhere far from this particular code fragment, so its address must be saved somewhere in close proximity to the code.

The LDR instruction in Thumb mode can only address variables in a range of 1020 bytes from its location,

and in ARM-mode —variables in range of ±4095 bytes.

⁷⁵Read-Only Memory

And so the address of the `x` variable must be located somewhere in close proximity, because there is no guarantee that the linker would be able to accommodate the variable somewhere nearby the code, it may well be even in an external memory chip!

One more thing: if a variable is declared as `const`, the Keil compiler allocates it in the `.constdata` segment.

Perhaps thereafter, the linker could place this segment in ROM too, along with the code segment.

ARM64

Listing 1.80: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```

1      .comm   x,4,4
2      .LC0:
3          .string "Enter X:"
4      .LC1:
5          .string "%d"
6      .LC2:
7          .string "You entered %d...\n"
8 f5:
9 ; save FP and LR in stack frame:
10    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
11 ; set stack frame (FP=SP)
12    add    x29, sp, 0
13 ; load pointer to the "Enter X:" string:
14    adrp   x0, .LC0
15    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
16    bl     puts
17 ; load pointer to the "%d" string:
18    adrp   x0, .LC1
19    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC1
20 ; form address of x global variable:
21    adrp   x1, x
22    add    x1, x1, :lo12:x
23    bl     __isoc99_scanf
24 ; form address of x global variable again:
25    adrp   x0, x
26    add    x0, x0, :lo12:x
27 ; load value from memory at this address:
28    ldr    w1, [x0]
29 ; load pointer to the "You entered %d...\n" string:
30    adrp   x0, .LC2
31    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC2
32    bl     printf
33 ; return 0
34    mov    w0, 0
35 ; restore FP and LR:
36    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 16
37    ret

```

In this case the *x* variable is declared as global and its address is calculated using the ADRP/ADD instruction pair (lines 21 and 25).

MIPS

Uninitialized global variable

So now the *x* variable is global. Let's compile to executable file rather than object file and load it into [IDA](#). IDA displays the *x* variable in the .sбss ELF section (remember the "Global Pointer"? [1.5.4 on page 33](#)), since the variable is not initialized at the start.

Listing 1.81: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
.text:004006C0 main:
.text:004006C0
.text:004006C0 var_10  = -0x10
.text:004006C0 var_4   = -4
.text:004006C0
; function prologue:
.text:004006C0      lui      $gp, 0x42
.text:004006C4      addiu   $sp, -0x20
.text:004006C8      li       $gp, 0x418940
.text:004006CC      sw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:004006D0      sw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
; call puts():
.text:004006D4      la      $t9, puts
.text:004006D8      lui      $a0, 0x40
.text:004006DC      jalr    $t9 ; puts
.text:004006E0      la      $a0, aEnterX      # "Enter X:" ; branch delay
slot
; call scanf():
.text:004006E4      lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
.text:004006E8      lui      $a0, 0x40
.text:004006EC      la      $t9, __isoc99_scanf
; prepare address of x:
.text:004006F0      la      $a1, x
.text:004006F4      jalr    $t9 ; __isoc99_scanf
.text:004006F8      la      $a0, aD          # "%d" ; branch delay slot
; call printf():
.text:004006FC      lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
.text:00400700      lui      $a0, 0x40
; get address of x:
.text:00400704      la      $v0, x
.text:00400708      la      $t9, printf
; load value from "x" variable and pass it to printf() in $a1:
.text:0040070C      lw      $a1, (x - 0x41099C)($v0)
.text:00400710      jalr    $t9 ; printf
.text:00400714      la      $a0, aYouEnteredD__ # "You entered %d...\n"
; branch delay slot
; function epilogue:
.text:00400718      lw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:0040071C      move   $v0, $zero
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
.text:00400720      jr      $ra
.text:00400724      addiu   $sp, 0x20 ; branch delay slot

...
.sbss:0041099C # Segment type: Uninitialized
.sbss:0041099C      .sbss
.sbss:0041099C      .globl x
.sbss:0041099C x:    .space 4
.sbss:0041099C
```

IDA reduces the amount of information, so we'll also do a listing using objdump and comment it:

Listing 1.82: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (objdump)

```
1 004006c0 <main>:
2 ; function prologue:
3 4006c0: 3c1c0042 lui      gp,0x42
4 4006c4: 27bdffe0 addiu   sp,sp,-32
5 4006c8: 279c8940 addiu   gp,gp,-30400
6 4006cc: afbf001c sw      ra,28(sp)
7 4006d0: afbc0010 sw      gp,16(sp)
8 ; call puts():
9 4006d4: 8f998034 lw      t9,-32716(gp)
10 4006d8: 3c040040 lui     a0,0x40
11 4006dc: 0320f809 jalr   t9
12 4006e0: 248408f0 addiu   a0,a0,2288 ; branch delay slot
13 ; call scanf():
14 4006e4: 8fbcc0010 lw      gp,16(sp)
15 4006e8: 3c040040 lui     a0,0x40
16 4006ec: 8f998038 lw      t9,-32712(gp)
17 ; prepare address of x:
18 4006f0: 8f858044 lw      a1,-32700(gp)
19 4006f4: 0320f809 jalr   t9
20 4006f8: 248408fc addiu   a0,a0,2300 ; branch delay slot
21 ; call printf():
22 4006fc: 8fbcc0010 lw      gp,16(sp)
23 400700: 3c040040 lui     a0,0x40
24 ; get address of x:
25 400704: 8f828044 lw      v0,-32700(gp)
26 400708: 8f99803c lw      t9,-32708(gp)
27 ; load value from "x" variable and pass it to printf() in $a1:
28 40070c: 8c450000 lw      a1,0(v0)
29 400710: 0320f809 jalr   t9
30 400714: 24840900 addiu   a0,a0,2304 ; branch delay slot
31 ; function epilogue:
32 400718: 8fbff001c lw      ra,28(sp)
33 40071c: 00001021 move   v0,zero
34 400720: 03e00008 jr      ra
35 400724: 27bd0020 addiu   sp,sp,32 ; branch delay slot
36 ; pack of NOPs used for aligning next function start on 16-byte boundary:
37 400728: 00200825 move   at,at
38 40072c: 00200825 move   at,at
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Now we see the *x* variable address is read from a 64KiB data buffer using GP and adding negative offset to it (line 18). More than that, the addresses of the three external functions which are used in our example (`puts()`, `scanf()`, `printf()`), are also read from the 64KiB global data buffer using GP (lines 9, 16 and 26). GP points to the middle of the buffer, and such offset suggests that all three function's addresses, and also the address of the *x* variable, are all stored somewhere at the beginning of that buffer. That make sense, because our example is tiny.

Another thing worth mentioning is that the function ends with two NOPs (MOVE \$AT,\$AT — an idle instruction), in order to align next function's start on 16-byte boundary.

Initialized global variable

Let's alter our example by giving the *x* variable a default value:

```
int x=10; // default value
```

Now IDA shows that the *x* variable is residing in the .data section:

Listing 1.83: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
.text:004006A0 main:
.text:004006A0
.text:004006A0 var_10 = -0x10
.text:004006A0 var_8 = -8
.text:004006A0 var_4 = -4
.text:004006A0
.text:004006A0     lui      $gp, 0x42
.text:004006A4     addiu   $sp, -0x20
.text:004006A8     li       $gp, 0x418930
.text:004006AC     sw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:004006B0     sw      $s0, 0x20+var_8($sp)
.text:004006B4     sw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
.text:004006B8     la      $t9, puts
.text:004006BC     lui      $a0, 0x40
.text:004006C0     jalr    $t9 ; puts
.text:004006C4     la      $a0, aEnterX      # "Enter X:"
.text:004006C8     lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
; prepare high part of x address:
.text:004006CC     lui      $s0, 0x41
.text:004006D0     la      $t9, __isoc99_scantf
.text:004006D4     lui      $a0, 0x40
; add low part of x address:
.text:004006D8     addiu   $a1, $s0, (x - 0x410000)
; now address of x is in $a1.
.text:004006DC     jalr    $t9 ; __isoc99_scantf
.text:004006E0     la      $a0, aD          # "%d"
.text:004006E4     lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
; get a word from memory:
.text:004006E8     lw      $a1, x
; value of x is now in $a1.
.text:004006EC     la      $t9, printf
.text:004006F0     lui      $a0, 0x40
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:004006F4      jalr   $t9 ; printf
.text:004006F8      la     $a0, aYouEnteredD__ # "You entered %d...\n"
.text:004006FC      lw     $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:00400700      move   $v0, $zero
.text:00400704      lw     $s0, 0x20+var_8($sp)
.text:00400708      jr     $ra
.text:0040070C      addiu $sp, 0x20

...
.data:00410920      .globl x
.data:00410920 x:    .word 0xA

```

Why not `.sdata`? Perhaps that this depends on some GCC option?

Nevertheless, now `x` is in `.data`, which is a general memory area, and we can take a look how to work with variables there.

The variable's address must be formed using a pair of instructions.

In our case those are LUI ("Load Upper Immediate") and ADDIU ("Add Immediate Unsigned Word").

Here is also the objdump listing for close inspection:

Listing 1.84: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (objdump)

```

004006a0 <main>:
4006a0: 3c1c0042 lui      gp,0x42
4006a4: 27bdffe0 addiu   sp,sp,-32
4006a8: 279c8930 addiu   gp,gp,-30416
4006ac: afbf001c sw      ra,28(sp)
4006b0: afb00018 sw      s0,24(sp)
4006b4: afbc0010 sw      gp,16(sp)
4006b8: 8f998034 lw      t9,-32716(gp)
4006bc: 3c040040 lui      a0,0x40
4006c0: 0320f809 jalr   t9
4006c4: 248408d0 addiu   a0,a0,2256
4006c8: 8fb00010 lw      gp,16(sp)
; prepare high part of x address:
4006cc: 3c100041 lui      s0,0x41
4006d0: 8f998038 lw      t9,-32712(gp)
4006d4: 3c040040 lui      a0,0x40
; add low part of x address:
4006d8: 26050920 addiu   a1,s0,2336
; now address of x is in $a1.
4006dc: 0320f809 jalr   t9
4006e0: 248408dc addiu   a0,a0,2268
4006e4: 8fb00010 lw      gp,16(sp)
; high part of x address is still in $s0.
; add low part to it and load a word from memory:
4006e8: 8e050920 lw      a1,2336(s0)
; value of x is now in $a1.
4006ec: 8f99803c lw      t9,-32708(gp)
4006f0: 3c040040 lui      a0,0x40

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

4006f4: 0320f809 jalr    t9
4006f8: 248408e0 addiu   a0,a0,2272
4006fc: 8fbff001c lw      ra,28(sp)
400700: 00001021 move    v0,zero
400704: 8fb00008 lw      $0,24(sp)
400708: 03e00008 jr      ra
40070c: 27bd0020 addiu   sp,sp,32

```

We see that the address is formed using LUI and ADDIU, but the high part of address is still in the \$S0 register, and it is possible to encode the offset in a LW (“Load Word”) instruction, so one single LW is enough to load a value from the variable and pass it to `printf()`.

Registers holding temporary data are prefixed with T-, but here we also see some prefixed with S-, the contents of which must be preserved before use in other functions (i.e., saved somewhere).

That is why the value of \$S0 has been set at address 0x4006cc and has been used again at address 0x4006e8, after the `scanf()` call. The `scanf()` function does not change its value.

1.12.4 `scanf()`

As was noted before, it is slightly old-fashioned to use `scanf()` today. But if we have to, we have to check if `scanf()` finishes correctly without an error.

```

#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int x;
    printf ("Enter X:\n");

    if (scanf ("%d", &x)==1)
        printf ("You entered %d...\n", x);
    else
        printf ("What you entered? Huh?\n");

    return 0;
}

```

By standard, the `scanf()`⁷⁶ function returns the number of fields it has successfully read.

In our case, if everything goes fine and the user enters a number `scanf()` returns 1, or in case of error (or `EOF`⁷⁷) — 0.

Let's add some C code to check the `scanf()` return value and print error message in case of an error.

This works as expected:

⁷⁶`scanf`, `wscanf`: [MSDN](#)

⁷⁷End of File

```
C:\...>ex3.exe
Enter X:
123
You entered 123...

C:\...>ex3.exe
Enter X:
ouch
What you entered? Huh?
```

MSVC: x86

Here is what we get in the assembly output (MSVC 2010):

```
lea      eax, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]
push    eax
push    OFFSET $SG3833 ; '%d', 00H
call    _scanf
add     esp, 8
cmp     eax, 1
jne     SHORT $LN2@main
mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]
push    ecx
push    OFFSET $SG3834 ; 'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H
call    _printf
add     esp, 8
jmp     SHORT $LN1@main
$LN2@main:
push    OFFSET $SG3836 ; 'What you entered? Huh?', 0aH, 00H
call    _printf
add     esp, 4
$LN1@main:
xor    eax, eax
```

The [caller](#) function (`main()`) needs the [callee](#) function (`scanf()`) result, so the [callee](#) returns it in the EAX register.

We check it with the help of the instruction `CMP EAX, 1` (*CoMPare*). In other words, we compare the value in the EAX register with 1.

A JNE conditional jump follows the CMP instruction. JNE stands for *Jump if Not Equal*.

So, if the value in the EAX register is not equal to 1, the [CPU](#) will pass the execution to the address mentioned in the JNE operand, in our case `$LN2@main`. Passing the control to this address results in the [CPU](#) executing `printf()` with the argument `'What you entered? Huh?'`. But if everything is fine, the conditional jump is not taken, and another `printf()` call is to be executed, with two arguments: `'You entered %d...'` and the value of x.

Since in this case the second `printf()` has not to be executed, there is a JMP preceding it (unconditional jump). It passes the control to the point after the second

`printf()` and just before the `XOR EAX, EAX` instruction, which implements return 0.

So, it could be said that comparing a value with another is *usually* implemented by `CMP/Jcc` instruction pair, where *cc* is *condition code*. `CMP` compares two values and sets processor flags⁷⁸. `Jcc` checks those flags and decides to either pass the control to the specified address or not.

This could sound paradoxical, but the `CMP` instruction is in fact `SUB` (subtract). All arithmetic instructions set processor flags, not just `CMP`. If we compare 1 and 1, $1 - 1$ is 0 so the `ZF` flag would be set (meaning that the last result is 0). In no other circumstances `ZF` can be set, except when the operands are equal. `JNE` checks only the `ZF` flag and jumps only if it is not set. `JNE` is in fact a synonym for `JNZ` (*Jump if Not Zero*). Assembler translates both `JNE` and `JNZ` instructions into the same opcode. So, the `CMP` instruction can be replaced with a `SUB` instruction and almost everything will be fine, with the difference that `SUB` alters the value of the first operand. `CMP` is *SUB without saving the result, but affecting flags*.

MSVC: x86: IDA

It is time to run [IDA](#) and try to do something in it. By the way, for beginners it is good idea to use `/MD` option in MSVC, which means that all these standard functions are not be linked with the executable file, but are to be imported from the `MSVCR*.DLL` file instead. Thus it will be easier to see which standard function are used and where.

While analyzing code in [IDA](#), it is very helpful to leave notes for oneself (and others). In instance, analyzing this example, we see that `JNZ` is to be triggered in case of an error. So it is possible to move the cursor to the label, press "n" and rename it to "error". Create another label—into "exit". Here is my result:

```
.text:00401000 _main proc near
.text:00401000
.text:00401000 var_4 = dword ptr -4
.text:00401000 argc  = dword ptr  8
.text:00401000 argv  = dword ptr  0Ch
.text:00401000 envp  = dword ptr  10h
.text:00401000
.text:00401000     push    ebp
.text:00401001     mov     ebp, esp
.text:00401003     push    ecx
.text:00401004     push    offset Format ; "Enter X:\n"
.text:00401009     call    ds:printf
.text:0040100F     add    esp, 4
.text:00401012     lea    eax, [ebp+var_4]
.text:00401015     push    eax
.text:00401016     push    offset aD ; "%d"
.text:0040101B     call    ds:scanf
.text:00401021     add    esp, 8
.text:00401024     cmp    eax, 1
.text:00401027     jnz    short error
.text:00401029     mov    ecx, [ebp+var_4]
```

⁷⁸x86 flags, see also: [wikipedia](#).

```

.text:0040102C      push    ecx
.text:0040102D      push    offset aYou ; "You entered %d...\n"
.text:00401032      call    ds:printf
.text:00401038      add     esp, 8
.text:0040103B      jmp    short exit
.text:0040103D
.text:0040103D error: ; CODE XREF: _main+27
.text:0040103D      push    offset aWhat ; "What you entered? Huh?\n"
.text:00401042      call    ds:printf
.text:00401048      add     esp, 4
.text:0040104B
.text:0040104B exit: ; CODE XREF: _main+3B
.text:0040104B      xor    eax, eax
.text:0040104D      mov    esp, ebp
.text:0040104F      pop    ebp
.text:00401050      retn
.text:00401050 _main endp

```

Now it is slightly easier to understand the code. However, it is not a good idea to comment on every instruction.

You could also hide(collapse) parts of a function in [IDA](#). To do that mark the block, then press Ctrl—"–" on the numerical pad and enter the text to be displayed instead.

Let's hide two blocks and give them names:

```

.text:00401000 _text segment para public 'CODE' use32
.text:00401000      assume cs:_text
.text:00401000      ;org 401000h
.text:00401000 ; ask for X
.text:00401012 ; get X
.text:00401024      cmp    eax, 1
.text:00401027      jnz   short error
.text:00401029 ; print result
.text:0040103B      jmp   short exit
.text:0040103D
.text:0040103D error: ; CODE XREF: _main+27
.text:0040103D      push   offset aWhat ; "What you entered? Huh?\n"
.text:00401042      call   ds:printf
.text:00401048      add    esp, 4
.text:0040104B
.text:0040104B exit: ; CODE XREF: _main+3B
.text:0040104B      xor    eax, eax
.text:0040104D      mov    esp, ebp
.text:0040104F      pop    ebp
.text:00401050      retn
.text:00401050 _main endp

```

To expand previously collapsed parts of the code, use Ctrl "+" on the numerical pad.

By pressing “space”, we can see how IDA represents a function as a graph:

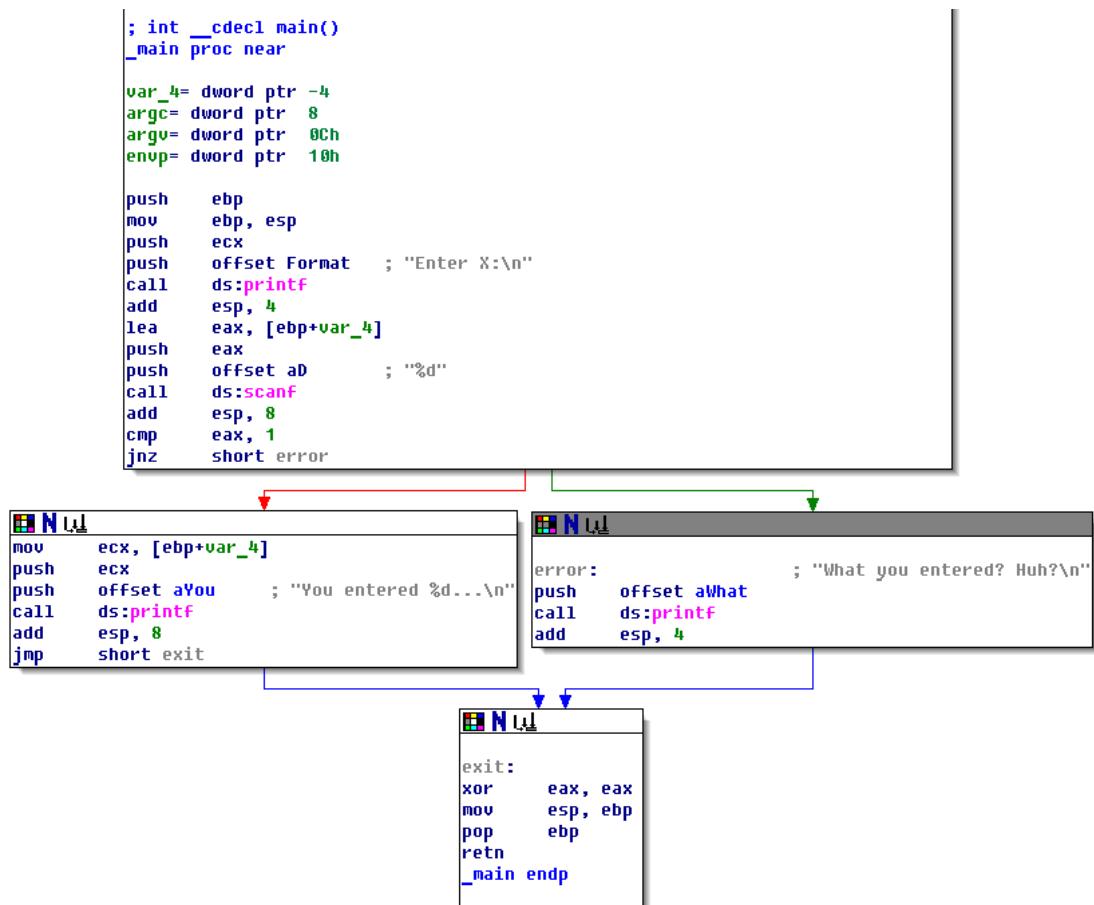


Figure 1.18: Graph mode in IDA

There are two arrows after each conditional jump: green and red. The green arrow points to the block which executes if the jump is triggered, and red if otherwise.

It is possible to fold nodes in this mode and give them names as well ("group nodes"). Let's do it for 3 blocks:

```
; int __cdecl main()
_main proc near

var_4= dword ptr -4
argc= dword ptr 8
argv= dword ptr 0Ch
envp= dword ptr 10h

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
push    ecx
push    offset Format    ; "Enter X:\n"
call    ds:printf
add    esp, 4
lea     eax, [ebp+var_4]
push    eax
push    offset aD          ; "%d"
call    ds:scanf
add    esp, 8
cmp    eax, 1
jnz    short error
```

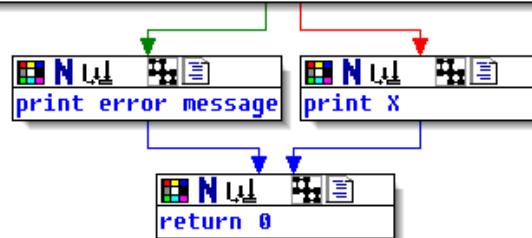


Figure 1.19: Graph mode in IDA with 3 nodes folded

That is very useful. It could be said that a very important part of the reverse engineers' job (and any other researcher as well) is to reduce the amount of information they deal with.

MSVC: x86 + OllyDbg

Let's try to hack our program in OllyDbg, forcing it to think `scanf()` always works without error. When an address of a local variable is passed into `scanf()`, the variable initially contains some random garbage, in this case `0x6E494714`:

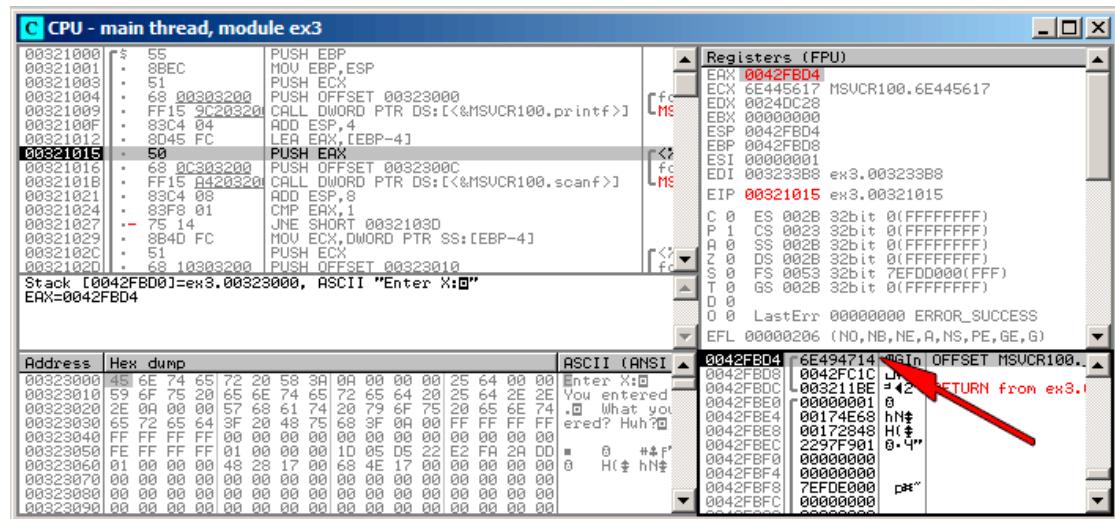


Figure 1.20: OllyDbg: passing variable address into `scanf()`

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

While `scanf()` executes, in the console we enter something that is definitely not a number, like “asdasd”. `scanf()` finishes with 0 in EAX, which indicates that an error has occurred.

We can also check the local variable in the stack and note that it has not changed. Indeed, what would `scanf()` write there? It simply did nothing except returning zero.

Let's try to “hack” our program. Right-click on EAX, Among the options there is “Set to 1”. This is what we need.

We now have 1 in EAX, so the following check is to be executed as intended, and `printf()` will print the value of the variable in the stack.

When we run the program (F9) we can see the following in the console window:

Listing 1.85: console window

```
Enter X:  
asdasd  
You entered 1850296084...
```

Indeed, 1850296084 is a decimal representation of the number in the stack (0x6E494714)!

MSVC: x86 + Hiew

This can also be used as a simple example of executable file patching. We may try to patch the executable so the program would always print the input, no matter what we enter.

Assuming that the executable is compiled against external MSVCR*.DLL (i.e., with /MD option)⁷⁹, we see the main() function at the beginning of the .text section. Let's open the executable in Hiew and find the beginning of the .text section (Enter, F8, F6, Enter, Enter).

We can see this:

```

Hiew: ex3.exe
C:\Polygon\ollydbg\ex3.exe          0F00 ----- a32 PE .00401000|Hie
.00401000: 55                      push    ebp
.00401001: 8BEC                   mov     ebp,esp
.00401003: 51                      push    ecx
.00401004: 6800304000              push    000403000 ;'Enter X:' --@1
.00401009: FF1594204000            call    printf
.0040100F: 83C404                 add    esp,4
.00401012: 8D45FC                 lea    eax,[ebp][-4]
.00401015: 50                      push    eax
.00401016: 680C304000              push    00040300C --@2
.0040101B: FF158C204000            call    scanf
.00401021: 83C408                 add    esp,8
.00401024: 83F801                 cmp    eax,1
.00401027: 7514                   jnz    .00040103D --@3
.00401029: 8B4DFC                 mov    ecx,[ebp][-4]
.0040102C: 51                      push    ecx
.0040102D: 6810304000              push    000403010 ;'You entered %d...'
.00401032: FF1594204000            call    printf
.00401038: 83C408                 add    esp,8
.0040103B: EB0E                   jmps   .00040104B --@5
.0040103D: 6824304000              push    000403024 ;'What you entered?
.00401042: FF1594204000            call    printf
.00401048: 83C404                 add    esp,4
.0040104B: 33C0                   xor    eax, eax
.0040104D: 8BE5                   mov    esp,ebp
.0040104F: 5D                      pop    ebp
.00401050: C3                      retn   ; _^_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_
.00401051: B84D5A0000              mov    eax,000005A4D ;' ZM'

1Global 2FilBlk 3CryBlk 4ReLoad 50rdLdr 6String 7Direct 8Table 91byte 10Leave 11Nak

```

Figure 1.21: Hiew: main() function

Hiew finds **ASCII⁸⁰** strings and displays them, as it does with the imported functions' names.

⁷⁹that's what also called "dynamic linking"

⁸⁰ASCII Zero (null-terminated ASCII string)

Move the cursor to address .00401027 (where the JNZ instruction, we have to bypass, is located), press F3, and then type "9090" (meaning two NOPs):

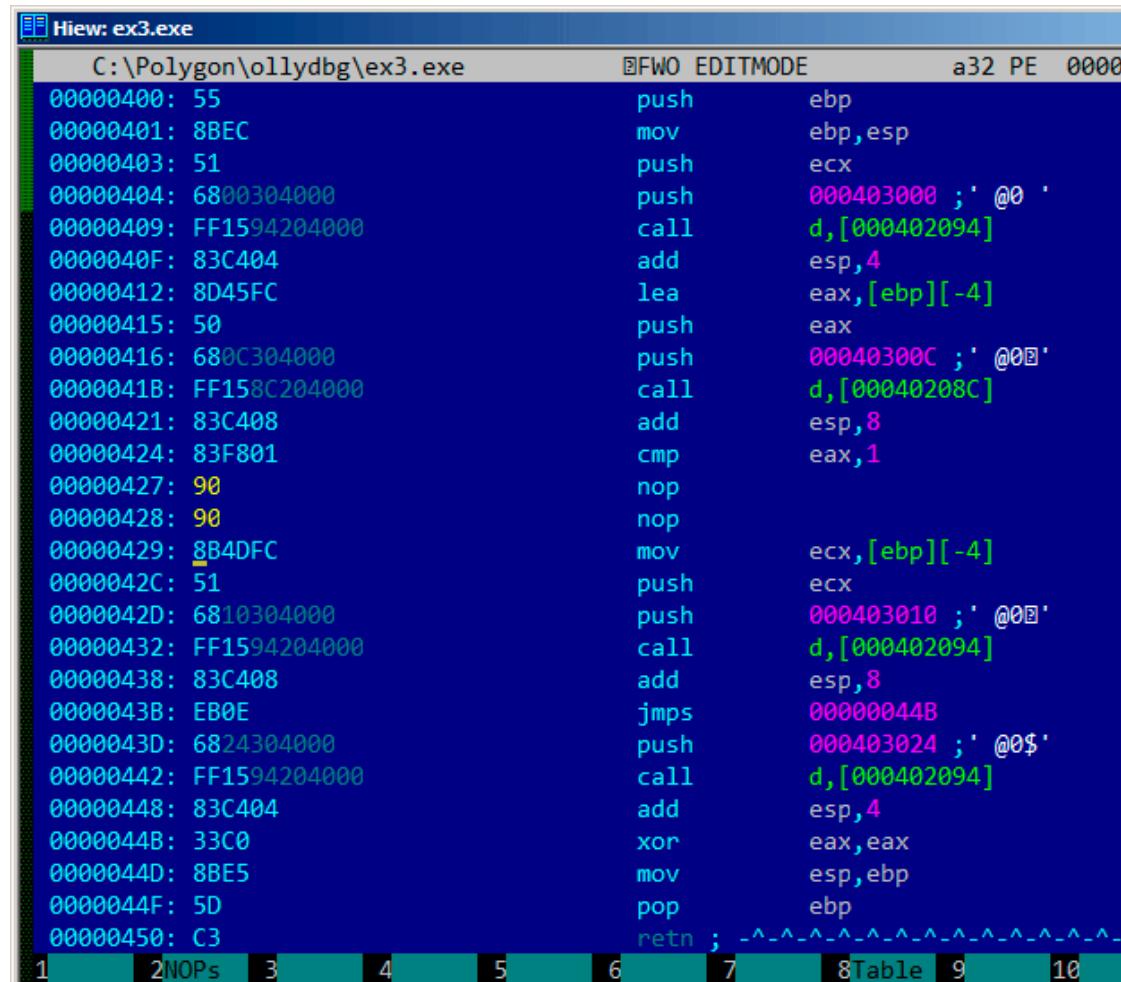


Figure 1.22: Hiew: replacing JNZ with two NOPs

Then press F9 (update). Now the executable is saved to the disk. It will behave as we wanted.

Two NOPs are probably not the most aesthetic approach. Another way to patch this instruction is to write just 0 to the second byte of opcode (jump offset), so that JNZ will always jump to the next instruction.

We could also do the opposite: replace first byte with EB while not touching the second byte ([jump offset](#)). We would get an unconditional jump that is always triggered. In this case the error message would be printed every time, no matter the input.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

MSVC: x64

Since we work here with *int*-typed variables, which are still 32-bit in x86-64, we see how the 32-bit part of the registers (prefixed with E-) are used here as well. While working with pointers, however, 64-bit register parts are used, prefixed with R-.

Listing 1.86: MSVC 2012 x64

```

_DATA  SEGMENT
$SG2924 DB      'Enter X:', 0aH, 00H
$SG2926 DB      '%d', 00H
$SG2927 DB      'You entered %d...', 0aH, 00H
$SG2929 DB      'What you entered? Huh?', 0aH, 00H
_DATA  ENDS

_TEXT  SEGMENT
x$ = 32
main  PROC
$LN5:
    sub    rsp, 56
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2924 ; 'Enter X:'
    call   printf
    lea    rdx, QWORD PTR x$[rsp]
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2926 ; '%d'
    call   scanf
    cmp    eax, 1
    jne    SHORT $LN2@main
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR x$[rsp]
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2927 ; 'You entered %d...'
    call   printf
    jmp    SHORT $LN1@main
$LN2@main:
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2929 ; 'What you entered? Huh?'
$LN1@main:
    ; return 0
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 56
    ret    0
main  ENDP
_TEXT  ENDS
END

```

ARM**ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)**

Listing 1.87: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

var_8  = -8
        PUSH   {R3,LR}
        ADR    R0, aEnterX     ; "Enter X:\n"

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

BL      __2printf
MOV    R1, SP
ADR    R0, aD          ; "%d"
BL      __0scanf
CMP    R0, #1
BEQ    loc_1E
ADR    R0, aWhatYouEntered ; "What you entered? Huh?\n"
BL      __2printf

loc_1A           ; CODE XREF: main+26
    MOVS   R0, #0
    POP    {R3,PC}

loc_1E           ; CODE XREF: main+12
    LDR    R1, [SP,#8+var_8]
    ADR    R0, aYouEnteredD__ ; "You entered %d...\n"
    BL      __2printf
    B      loc_1A

```

The new instructions here are **CMP** and **BEQ**⁸¹.

CMP is analogous to the x86 instruction with the same name, it subtracts one of the arguments from the other and updates the conditional flags if needed.

BEQ jumps to another address if the operands were equal to each other, or, if the result of the last computation has been 0, or if the Z flag is 1. It behaves as **JZ** in x86.

Everything else is simple: the execution flow forks in two branches, then the branches converge at the point where 0 is written into the R0 as a function return value, and then the function ends.

ARM64

Listing 1.88: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```

1 .LC0:
2     .string "Enter X:"
3 .LC1:
4     .string "%d"
5 .LC2:
6     .string "You entered %d...\n"
7 .LC3:
8     .string "What you entered? Huh?"
9 f6:
10 ; save FP and LR in stack frame:
11     stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
12 ; set stack frame (FP=SP)
13     add    x29, sp, 0
14 ; load pointer to the "Enter X:" string:
15     adrp   x0, .LC0

```

⁸¹(PowerPC, ARM) Branch if Equal

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

16      add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
17      bl     puts
18 ; load pointer to the "%d" string:
19      adrp   x0, .LC1
20      add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC1
21 ; calculate address of x variable in the local stack
22      add    x1, x29, 28
23      bl     __isoc99_scanf
24 ; scanf() returned result in W0.
25 ; check it:
26      cmp    w0, 1
27 ; BNE is Branch if Not Equal
28 ; so if W0<>0, jump to L2 will be occurred
29      bne   .L2
30 ; at this moment W0=1, meaning no error
31 ; load x value from the local stack
32      ldr    w1, [x29,28]
33 ; load pointer to the "You entered %d...\n" string:
34      adrp   x0, .LC2
35      add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC2
36      bl     printf
37 ; skip the code, which print the "What you entered? Huh?" string:
38      b     .L3
39 .L2:
40 ; load pointer to the "What you entered? Huh?" string:
41      adrp   x0, .LC3
42      add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC3
43      bl     puts
44 .L3:
45 ; return 0
46      mov    w0, 0
47 ; restore FP and LR:
48      ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32
49      ret

```

Code flow in this case forks with the use of CMP/BNE (Branch if Not Equal) instructions pair.

MIPS

Listing 1.89: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

.text:004006A0 main:
.text:004006A0
.text:004006A0 var_18    = -0x18
.text:004006A0 var_10    = -0x10
.text:004006A0 var_4     = -4
.text:004006A0
.text:004006A0         lui    $gp, 0x42
.text:004006A4         addiu $sp, -0x28
.text:004006A8         li    $gp, 0x418960
.text:004006AC         sw    $ra, 0x28+var_4($sp)
.text:004006B0         sw    $gp, 0x28+var_18($sp)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:004006B4      la    $t9, puts
.text:004006B8      lui   $a0, 0x40
.text:004006BC      jalr $t9 ; puts
.text:004006C0      la    $a0, aEnterX    # "Enter X:"
.text:004006C4      lw    $gp, 0x28+var_18($sp)
.text:004006C8      lui   $a0, 0x40
.text:004006CC      la    $t9, __isoc99_scanf
.text:004006D0      la    $a0, aD          # "%d"
.text:004006D4      jalr $t9 ; __isoc99_scanf
.text:004006D8      addiu $a1, $sp, 0x28+var_10  # branch delay slot
.text:004006DC      li    $v1, 1
.text:004006E0      lw    $gp, 0x28+var_18($sp)
.text:004006E4      beq  $v0, $v1, loc_40070C
.text:004006E8      or   $at, $zero       # branch delay slot, NOP
.text:004006EC      la    $t9, puts
.text:004006F0      lui   $a0, 0x40
.text:004006F4      jalr $t9 ; puts
.text:004006F8      la    $a0, aWhatYouEntered # "What you entered?
        Huh?""
.text:004006FC      lw    $ra, 0x28+var_4($sp)
.text:00400700      move $v0, $zero
.text:00400704      jr   $ra
.text:00400708      addiu $sp, 0x28

.text:0040070C loc_40070C:
.text:0040070C      la    $t9, printf
.text:00400710      lw    $a1, 0x28+var_10($sp)
.text:00400714      lui   $a0, 0x40
.text:00400718      jalr $t9 ; printf
.text:0040071C      la    $a0, aYouEnteredD__ # "You entered
        %d...\n"
.text:00400720      lw    $ra, 0x28+var_4($sp)
.text:00400724      move $v0, $zero
.text:00400728      jr   $ra
.text:0040072C      addiu $sp, 0x28

```

scanf() returns the result of its work in register \$V0. It is checked at address 0x004006E4 by comparing the values in \$V0 with \$V1 (1 has been stored in \$V1 earlier, at 0x004006DC). BEQ stands for “Branch Equal”. If the two values are equal (i.e., success), the execution jumps to address 0x0040070C.

Exercise

As we can see, the JNE/JNZ instruction can be easily replaced by the JE/JZ and vice versa (or BNE by BEQ and vice versa). But then the basic blocks must also be swapped. Try to do this in some of the examples.

1.12.5 Exercise

- <http://challenges.re/53>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.13 Worth noting: global vs. local variables

Now that you know that global variables are filled with zeroes by OS at start ([1.12.3 on page 101](#), [ISO/IEC 9899:TC3 (C C99 standard), (2007)6.7.8p10]), but local variables are not ([1.9.4 on page 50](#)).

Sometimes, you have a global variable that you forgot to initialize and your program relies on the fact that it has zero at start. Then you edit a program and move the global variable into a function to make it local. It wouldn't be zeroed at initialization anymore and this can result in nasty bugs.

1.14 Accessing passed arguments

Now we figured out that the [caller](#) function is passing arguments to the [callee](#) via the stack. But how does the [callee](#) access them?

Listing 1.90: simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

int f ( int a, int b, int c )
{
    return a*b+c;
}

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", f(1, 2, 3));
    return 0;
}
```

1.14.1 x86

MSVC

Here is what we get after compilation (MSVC 2010 Express):

Listing 1.91: MSVC 2010 Express

```
_TEXT  SEGMENT
_a$ = 8           ; size = 4
_b$ = 12          ; size = 4
_c$ = 16          ; size = 4
_f      PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    imul   eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    add    eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f      ENDP
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

_main PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    3 ; 3rd argument
    push    2 ; 2nd argument
    push    1 ; 1st argument
    call    _f
    add    esp, 12
    push    eax
    push    OFFSET $SG2463 ; '%d', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 8
; return 0
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main ENDP

```

What we see is that the `main()` function pushes 3 numbers onto the stack and calls `f(int,int,int)`.

Argument access inside `f()` is organized with the help of macros like:

`_a$ = 8`, in the same way as local variables, but with positive offsets (addressed with *plus*). So, we are addressing the *outer* side of the [stack frame](#) by adding the `_a$` macro to the value in the EBP register.

Then the value of `a` is stored into EAX. After IMUL instruction execution, the value in EAX is a [product](#) of the value in EAX and the content of `_b`.

After that, ADD adds the value in `_c` to EAX.

The value in EAX does not need to be moved: it is already where it must be. On returning to [caller](#), it takes the EAX value and uses it as an argument to `printf()`.

MSVC + OllyDbg

Let's illustrate this in OllyDbg. When we trace to the first instruction in `f()` that uses one of the arguments (first one), we see that EBP is pointing to the [stack frame](#), which is marked with a red rectangle.

The first element of the [stack frame](#) is the saved value of EBP, the second one is [RA](#), the third is the first function argument, then the second and third ones.

To access the first function argument, one needs to add exactly 8 (2 32-bit words) to EBP.

OllyDbg is aware about this, so it has added comments to the stack elements like "RETURN from" and "Arg1 = ...", etc.

N.B.: Function arguments are not members of the function's stack frame, they are rather members of the stack frame of the [caller](#) function.

Hence, OllyDbg marked "Arg" elements as members of another stack frame.

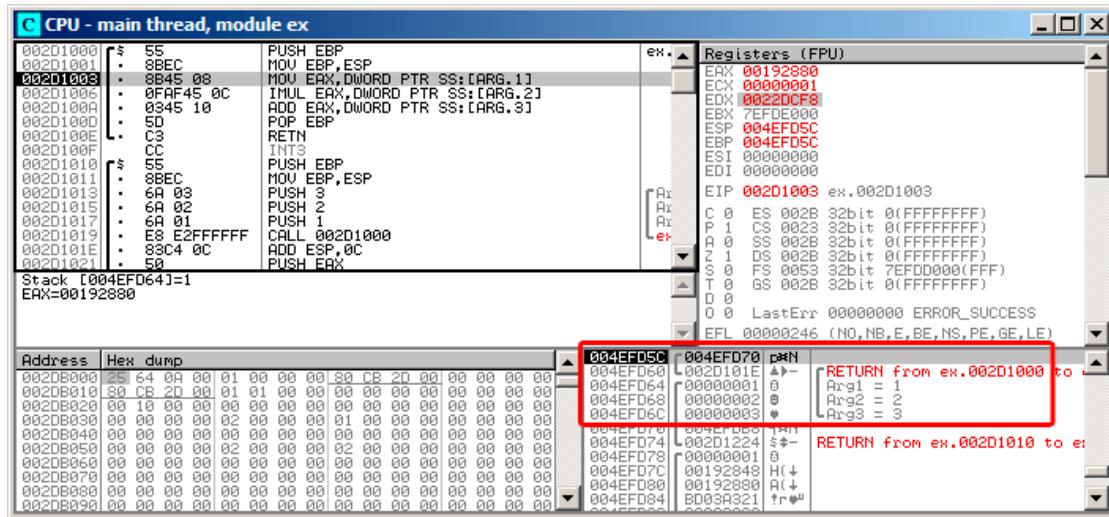


Figure 1.23: OllyDbg: inside of f() function

GCC

Let's compile the same in GCC 4.4.1 and see the results in IDA:

Listing 1.92: GCC 4.4.1

```

public f
f    proc near

arg_0 = dword ptr 8
arg_4 = dword ptr 0Ch
arg_8 = dword ptr 10h

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0] ; 1st argument
    imul   eax, [ebp+arg_4] ; 2nd argument
    add    eax, [ebp+arg_8] ; 3rd argument
    pop    ebp
    retn
f    endp

public main
main  proc near

var_10 = dword ptr -10h
var_C  = dword ptr -0Ch
var_8  = dword ptr -8

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and    esp, 0FFFFFF0h

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

sub    esp, 10h
mov    [esp+10h+var_8], 3 ; 3rd argument
mov    [esp+10h+var_C], 2 ; 2nd argument
mov    [esp+10h+var_10], 1 ; 1st argument
call   f
mov    edx, offset aD ; "%d\n"
mov    [esp+10h+var_C], eax
mov    [esp+10h+var_10], edx
call   _printf
mov    eax, 0
leave
retn
main  endp

```

The result is almost the same with some minor differences discussed earlier.

The [stack pointer](#) is not set back after the two function calls(f and printf), because the penultimate LEAVE ([.1.6 on page 1319](#)) instruction takes care of this at the end.

1.14.2 x64

The story is a bit different in x86-64. Function arguments (first 4 or first 6 of them) are passed in registers i.e. the [callee](#) reads them from registers instead of reading them from the stack.

MSVC

Optimizing MSVC:

Listing 1.93: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

$SG2997 DB      '%d', 0aH, 00H

main  PROC
    sub    rsp, 40
    mov    edx, 2
    lea    r8d, QWORD PTR [rdx+1] ; R8D=3
    lea    ecx, QWORD PTR [rdx-1] ; ECX=1
    call   f
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2997 ; '%d'
    mov    edx, eax
    call   printf
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 40
    ret    0
main  ENDP

f     PROC
    ; ECX - 1st argument
    ; EDX - 2nd argument
    ; R8D - 3rd argument
    imul   ecx, edx
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR [r8+rcx]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

f	ret 0
	ENDP

As we can see, the compact function f() takes all its arguments from the registers.

The LEA instruction here is used for addition, apparently the compiler considered it faster than ADD.

LEA is also used in the main() function to prepare the first and third f() arguments. The compiler must have decided that this would work faster than the usual way of loading values into a register using MOV instruction.

Let's take a look at the non-optimizing MSVC output:

Listing 1.94: MSVC 2012 x64

f	proc near
; shadow space:	
arg_0	= dword ptr 8
arg_8	= dword ptr 10h
arg_10	= dword ptr 18h
; ECX - 1st argument	
; EDX - 2nd argument	
; R8D - 3rd argument	
mov	[rsp+arg_10], r8d
mov	[rsp+arg_8], edx
mov	[rsp+arg_0], ecx
mov	eax, [rsp+arg_0]
imul	eax, [rsp+arg_8]
add	eax, [rsp+arg_10]
retn	
f	endp
main	proc near
sub	rsp, 28h
mov	r8d, 3 ; 3rd argument
mov	edx, 2 ; 2nd argument
mov	ecx, 1 ; 1st argument
call	f
mov	edx, eax
lea	rcx, \$SG2931 ; "%d\n"
call	printf
; return 0	
xor	eax, eax
add	rsp, 28h
retn	
main	endp

It looks somewhat puzzling because all 3 arguments from the registers are saved to the stack for some reason. This is called “shadow space”⁸²: every Win64 function

⁸²[MSDN](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

may (but is not required to) save all 4 register values there. This is done for two reasons: 1) it is too lavish to allocate a whole register (or even 4 registers) for an input argument, so it will be accessed via stack; 2) the debugger is always aware where to find the function arguments at a break⁸³.

So, some large functions can save their input arguments in the “shadow space” if they want to use them during execution, but some small functions (like ours) may not do this.

It is a **caller** responsibility to allocate “shadow space” in the stack.

GCC

Optimizing GCC generates more or less understandable code:

Listing 1.95: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
f:
; EDI - 1st argument
; ESI - 2nd argument
; EDX - 3rd argument
imul    esi, edi
lea     eax, [rdx+rsi]
ret

main:
sub    rsp, 8
mov   edx, 3
mov   esi, 2
mov   edi, 1
call  f
mov   edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "%d\n"
mov   esi, eax
xor   eax, eax ; number of vector registers passed
call  printf
xor   eax, eax
add   rsp, 8
ret
```

Non-optimizing GCC:

Listing 1.96: GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
f:
; EDI - 1st argument
; ESI - 2nd argument
; EDX - 3rd argument
push  rbp
mov   rbp, rsp
mov   DWORD PTR [rbp-4], edi
mov   DWORD PTR [rbp-8], esi
mov   DWORD PTR [rbp-12], edx
mov   eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-4]
```

⁸³[MSDN](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

imul    eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-8]
add     eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-12]
leave
ret

main:
push   rbp
mov    rbp, rsp
mov    edx, 3
mov    esi, 2
mov    edi, 1
call   f
mov    edx, eax
mov    eax, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "%d\n"
mov    esi, edx
mov    rdi, rax
mov    eax, 0 ; number of vector registers passed
call   printf
mov    eax, 0
leave
ret

```

There are no “shadow space” requirements in System V *NIX ([Michael Matz, Jan Hubicka, Andreas Jaeger, Mark Mitchell, *System V Application Binary Interface. AMD64 Architecture Processor Supplement*, (2013)]⁸⁴), but the **callee** may want to save its arguments somewhere in case of registers shortage.

GCC: uint64_t instead of int

Our example works with 32-bit *int*, that is why 32-bit register parts are used (prefixed by E-).

It can be altered slightly in order to use 64-bit values:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t f (uint64_t a, uint64_t b, uint64_t c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%lld\n", f(0x1122334455667788,
                      0x1111111122222222,
                      0x3333333344444444));
    return 0;
};

```

⁸⁴Also available as <https://software.intel.com/sites/default/files/article/402129/mpx-linux64-abi.pdf>

Listing 1.97: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```

f    proc near
    imul    rsi, rdi
    lea     rax, [rdx+rsi]
    retn
f    endp

main  proc near
    sub    rsp, 8
    mov    rdx, 3333333344444444h ; 3rd argument
    mov    rsi, 111111122222222h ; 2nd argument
    mov    rdi, 1122334455667788h ; 1st argument
    call   f
    mov    edi, offset format ; "%lld\n"
    mov    rsi, rax
    xor    eax, eax ; number of vector registers passed
    call   _printf
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 8
    retn
main  endp

```

The code is the same, but this time the *full size* registers (prefixed by R-) are used.

1.14.3 ARM

Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

.text:000000A4 00 30 A0 E1      MOV     R3, R0
.text:000000A8 93 21 20 E0      MLA     R0, R3, R1, R2
.text:000000AC 1E FF 2F E1      BX      LR
...
.text:000000B0                 main
.text:000000B0 10 40 2D E9      STMFD   SP!, {R4,LR}
.text:000000B4 03 20 A0 E3      MOV     R2, #3
.text:000000B8 02 10 A0 E3      MOV     R1, #2
.text:000000BC 01 00 A0 E3      MOV     R0, #1
.text:000000C0 F7 FF FF EB      BL      f
.text:000000C4 00 40 A0 E1      MOV     R4, R0
.text:000000C8 04 10 A0 E1      MOV     R1, R4
.text:000000CC 5A 0F 8F E2      ADR     R0, aD_0          ; "%d\n"
.text:000000D0 E3 18 00 EB      BL      __2printf
.text:000000D4 00 00 A0 E3      MOV     R0, #0
.text:000000D8 10 80 BD E8      LDMFD   SP!, {R4,PC}

```

The `main()` function simply calls two other functions, with three values passed to the first one —`(f())`.

As was noted before, in ARM the first 4 values are usually passed in the first 4 registers (R0-R3).

The `f()` function, as it seems, uses the first 3 registers (R0-R2) as arguments.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The MLA (*Multiply Accumulate*) instruction multiplies its first two operands (R3 and R1), adds the third operand (R2) to the product and stores the result into the zeroth register (R0), via which, by standard, functions return values.

Multiplication and addition at once (*Fused multiply-add*) is a very useful operation. By the way, there was no such instruction in x86 before FMA-instructions appeared in SIMD ⁸⁵.

The very first MOV R3, R0, instruction is, apparently, redundant (a single MLA instruction could be used here instead). The compiler has not optimized it, since this is non-optimizing compilation.

The BX instruction returns the control to the address stored in the LR register and, if necessary, switches the processor mode from Thumb to ARM or vice versa. This can be necessary since, as we can see, function f() is not aware from what kind of code it may be called, ARM or Thumb. Thus, if it gets called from Thumb code, BX is not only returns control to the calling function, but also switches the processor mode to Thumb. Or not switch, if the function has been called from ARM code [ARM(R) Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R edition, (2012)A2.3.2].

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
.text:00000098          f
.text:00000098 91 20 20 E0      MLA      R0, R1, R0, R2
.text:0000009C 1E FF 2F E1      BX       LR
```

And here is the f() function compiled by the Keil compiler in full optimization mode (-O3).

The MOV instruction was optimized out (or reduced) and now MLA uses all input registers and also places the result right into R0, exactly where the calling function will read and use it.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```
.text:0000005E 48 43      MULS    R0, R1
.text:00000060 80 18      ADDS    R0, R0, R2
.text:00000062 70 47      BX     LR
```

The MLA instruction is not available in Thumb mode, so the compiler generates the code doing these two operations (multiplication and addition) separately.

First the MULS instruction multiplies R0 by R1, leaving the result in register R0. The second instruction (ADDS) adds the result and R2 leaving the result in register R0.

ARM64

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

⁸⁵[wikipedia](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Everything here is simple. MADD is just an instruction doing fused multiply/add (similar to the MLA we already saw). All 3 arguments are passed in the 32-bit parts of X-registers. Indeed, the argument types are 32-bit *int*'s. The result is returned in W0.

Listing 1.98: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
f:
    madd    w0, w0, w1, w2
    ret

main:
; save FP and LR to stack frame:
    stp      x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
    mov      w2, 3
    mov      w1, 2
    add      x29, sp, 0
    mov      w0, 1
    bl       f
    mov      w1, w0
    adrp    x0, .LC7
    add      x0, x0, :lo12:.LC7
    bl       printf
; return 0
    mov      w0, 0
; restore FP and LR
    ldp      x29, x30, [sp], 16
    ret

.LC7:
.string "%d\n"
```

Let's also extend all data types to 64-bit `uint64_t` and test:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t f (uint64_t a, uint64_t b, uint64_t c)
{
    return a*b+c;
}

int main()
{
    printf ("%lld\n", f(0x1122334455667788,
                      0x1111111122222222,
                      0x3333333344444444));
    return 0;
}
```

```
f:
    madd    x0, x0, x1, x2
    ret
main:
    mov      x1, 13396
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    adrp    x0, .LC8
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
    movk   x1, 0x27d0, lsl 16
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC8
    movk   x1, 0x122, lsl 32
    add    x29, sp, 0
    movk   x1, 0x58be, lsl 48
    bl     printf
    mov    w0, 0
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 16
    ret

.LC8:
.string "%lld\n"

```

The `f()` function is the same, only the whole 64-bit X-registers are now used. Long 64-bit values are loaded into the registers by parts, this is also described here: [1.39.3 on page 556](#).

Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

The non-optimizing compiler is more redundant:

```

f:
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    str    w0, [sp,12]
    str    w1, [sp,8]
    str    w2, [sp,4]
    ldr    w1, [sp,12]
    ldr    w0, [sp,8]
    mul    w1, w1, w0
    ldr    w0, [sp,4]
    add    w0, w1, w0
    add    sp, sp, 16
    ret

```

The code saves its input arguments in the local stack, in case someone (or something) in this function needs using the `w0...w2` registers. This prevents overwriting the original function arguments, which may be needed again in the future.

This is called *Register Save Area*. [*Procedure Call Standard for the ARM 64-bit Architecture (AArch64)*, (2013)]⁸⁶. The callee, however, is not obliged to save them. This is somewhat similar to “Shadow Space”: [1.14.2 on page 129](#).

Why did the optimizing GCC 4.9 drop this argument saving code? Because it did some additional optimizing work and concluded that the function arguments will not be needed in the future and also that the registers `w0...w2` will not be used.

We also see a MUL/ADD instruction pair instead of single a MADD.

⁸⁶Also available as http://infocenter.arm.com/help/topic/com.arm.doc.ihi0055b/IHI0055B_aapcs64.pdf

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

1.14.4 MIPS

Listing 1.99: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5

```
.text:00000000 f:
; $a0=a
; $a1=b
; $a2=c
.text:00000000      mult    $a1, $a0
.text:00000004      mflo    $v0
.text:00000008      jr      $ra
.text:0000000C      addu    $v0, $a2, $v0      ; branch delay slot
; result is in $v0 upon return
.text:00000010 main:
.text:00000010
.text:00000010 var_10 = -0x10
.text:00000010 var_4  = -4
.text:00000010
.text:00000010      lui     $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
.text:00000014      addiu   $sp, -0x20
.text:00000018      la      $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
.text:0000001C      sw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:00000020      sw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
; set c:
.text:00000024      li      $a2, 3
; set a:
.text:00000028      li      $a0, 1
.text:0000002C      jal     f
; set b:
.text:00000030      li      $a1, 2      ; branch delay slot
; result in $v0 now
.text:00000034      lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
.text:00000038      lui     $a0, ($LC0 >> 16)
.text:0000003C      lw      $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:00000040      la      $a0, ($LC0 & 0xFFFF)
.text:00000044      jalr   $t9
; take result of f() function and pass it
; as a second argument to printf():
.text:00000048      move   $a1, $v0      ; branch delay slot
.text:0000004C      lw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:00000050      move   $v0, $zero
.text:00000054      jr      $ra
.text:00000058      addiu $sp, 0x20 ; branch delay slot
```

The first four function arguments are passed in four registers prefixed by A-.

There are two special registers in MIPS: HI and LO which are filled with the 64-bit result of the multiplication during the execution of the MULT instruction.

These registers are accessible only by using the MFLO and MFHI instructions. MFLO here takes the low-part of the multiplication result and stores it into \$V0. So the high 32-bit part of the multiplication result is dropped (the HI register content is not used). Indeed: we work with 32-bit *int* data types here.

Finally, ADDU (“Add Unsigned”) adds the value of the third argument to the result.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

There are two different addition instructions in MIPS: ADD and ADDU. The difference between them is not related to signedness, but to exceptions. ADD can raise an exception on overflow, which is sometimes useful⁸⁷ and supported in Ada PL, for instance. ADDU does not raise exceptions on overflow.

Since C/C++ does not support this, in our example we see ADDU instead of ADD.

The 32-bit result is left in \$V0.

There is a new instruction for us in `main()`: JAL (“Jump and Link”).

The difference between JAL and JALR is that a relative offset is encoded in the first instruction, while JALR jumps to the absolute address stored in a register (“Jump and Link Register”).

Both `f()` and `main()` functions are located in the same object file, so the relative address of `f()` is known and fixed.

1.15 More about results returning

In x86, the result of function execution is usually returned⁸⁸ in the EAX register. If it is byte type or a character (`char`), then the lowest part of register EAX (AL) is used. If a function returns a *float* number, the FPU register ST(0) is used instead. In ARM, the result is usually returned in the R0 register.

1.15.1 Attempt to use the result of a function returning void

So, what if the `main()` function return value was declared of type `void` and not `int`? The so-called startup-code is calling `main()` roughly as follows:

```
push envp
push argv
push argc
call main
push eax
call exit
```

In other words:

```
exit(main(argc,argv,envp));
```

If you declare `main()` as `void`, nothing is to be returned explicitly (using the `return` statement), then something random, that has been stored in the EAX register at the end of `main()` becomes the sole argument of the `exit()` function. Most likely, there will be a random value, left from your function execution, so the exit code of program is pseudorandom.

We can illustrate this fact. Please note that here the `main()` function has a `void` return type:

⁸⁷<http://blog.regehr.org/archives/1154>

⁸⁸See also: MSDN: Return Values (C++): [MSDN](#)

```
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    printf ("Hello, world!\n");
}
```

Let's compile it in Linux.

GCC 4.8.1 replaced `printf()` with `puts()` (we have seen this before: [1.5.3 on page 28](#)), but that's OK, since `puts()` returns the number of characters printed out, just like `printf()`. Please notice that EAX is not zeroed before `main()`'s end.

This implies that the value of EAX at the end of `main()` contains what `puts()` has left there.

Listing 1.100: GCC 4.8.1

```
.LC0:
    .string "Hello, world!"
main:
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and     esp, -16
    sub     esp, 16
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    call    puts
    leave
    ret
```

Let's write a bash script that shows the exit status:

Listing 1.101: tst.sh

```
#!/bin/sh
./hello_world
echo $?
```

And run it:

```
$ tst.sh
Hello, world!
14
```

14 is the number of characters printed. The number of characters printed *slips* from `printf()` through EAX/RAX into “exit code”.

Another example in the book: [3.32 on page 829](#).

By the way, when we decompile C++ in Hex-Rays, we can often encounter a function which terminated with destructor of some class:

```
...
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

call  ??1CString@@QAE@XZ ; CString:: CString(void)
mov   ecx, [esp+30h+var_C]
pop   edi
pop   ebx
mov   large fs:0, ecx
add   esp, 28h
retn

```

By C++ standard, destructor doesn't return anything, but when Hex-Rays don't know about it, and thinks that both destructor and this function returns *int*, we can see something like that in output:

```

...
    return CString::~CString(&Str);
}

```

1.15.2 What if we do not use the function result?

`printf()` returns the count of characters successfully output, but the result of this function is rarely used in practice.

It is also possible to call a function whose essence is in returning a value, and not use it:

```

int f()
{
    // skip first 3 random values:
    rand();
    rand();
    rand();
    // and use 4th:
    return rand();
}

```

The result of the `rand()` function is left in EAX, in all four cases.

But in the first 3 cases, the value in EAX is just not used.

1.15.3 Returning a structure

Let's go back to the fact that the return value is left in the EAX register.

That is why old C compilers cannot create functions capable of returning something that does not fit in one register (usually *int*), but if one needs it, one have to return information via pointers passed as function's arguments.

So, usually, if a function needs to return several values, it returns only one, and all the rest—via pointers.

Now it has become possible to return, let's say, an entire structure, but that is still not very popular. If a function has to return a large structure, the [caller](#) must allocate

it and pass a pointer to it via the first argument, transparently for the programmer. That is almost the same as to pass a pointer in the first argument manually, but the compiler hides it.

Small example:

```
struct s
{
    int a;
    int b;
    int c;
};

struct s get_some_values (int a)
{
    struct s rt;

    rt.a=a+1;
    rt.b=a+2;
    rt.c=a+3;

    return rt;
};
```

...what we got (MSVC 2010 /0x):

```
$T3853 = 8           ; size = 4
_a$ = 12          ; size = 4
?get_some_values@@YA?AUa@H@Z PROC      ; get_some_values
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR $T3853[esp-4]
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+1]
    mov    DWORD PTR [eax], edx
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+2]
    add    ecx, 3
    mov    DWORD PTR [eax+4], edx
    mov    DWORD PTR [eax+8], ecx
    ret    0
?get_some_values@@YA?AUa@H@Z ENDP      ; get_some_values
```

The macro name for internal passing of pointer to a structure here is \$T3853.

This example can be rewritten using the C99 language extensions:

```
struct s
{
    int a;
    int b;
    int c;
};

struct s get_some_values (int a)
{
    return (struct s){.a=a+1, .b=a+2, .c=a+3};
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
};
```

Listing 1.102: GCC 4.8.1

```
_get_some_values proc near
ptr_to_struct    = dword ptr  4
a                = dword ptr  8

    mov     edx, [esp+a]
    mov     eax, [esp+ptr_to_struct]
    lea     ecx, [edx+1]
    mov     [eax], ecx
    lea     ecx, [edx+2]
    add     edx, 3
    mov     [eax+4], ecx
    mov     [eax+8], edx
    retn

_get_some_values endp
```

As we see, the function is just filling the structure's fields allocated by the caller function, as if a pointer to the structure has been passed. So there are no performance drawbacks.

1.16 Pointers

1.16.1 Returning values

Pointers are often used to return values from functions (recall `scanf()` case ([1.12 on page 87](#))).

For example, when a function needs to return two values.

Global variables example

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f1 (int x, int y, int *sum, int *product)
{
    *sum=x+y;
    *product=x*y;
}

int sum, product;

void main()
{
    f1(123, 456, &sum, &product);
    printf ("sum=%d, product=%d\n", sum, product);
}
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

This compiles to:

Listing 1.103: Optimizing MSVC 2010 (/Ob0)

```

COMM  _product:DWORD
COMM  _sum:DWORD
$SG2803 DB      'sum=%d, product=%d', 0aH, 00H

_x$ = 8          ; size = 4
_y$ = 12         ; size = 4
_sum$ = 16        ; size = 4
_product$ = 20      ; size = 4
_f1    PROC
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _y$[esp-4]
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _x$[esp-4]
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [eax+ecx]
    imul   eax, ecx
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _product$[esp-4]
    push   esi
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR _sum$[esp]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esi], edx
    mov    DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
    pop    esi
    ret    0
_f1    ENDP

_main  PROC
    push  OFFSET _product
    push  OFFSET _sum
    push  456      ; 0000001c8H
    push  123      ; 00000007bH
    call   _f1
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _product
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _sum
    push   eax
    push   ecx
    push   OFFSET $SG2803
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add    esp, 28
    xor    eax, eax
    ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

Let's see this in OllyDbg:

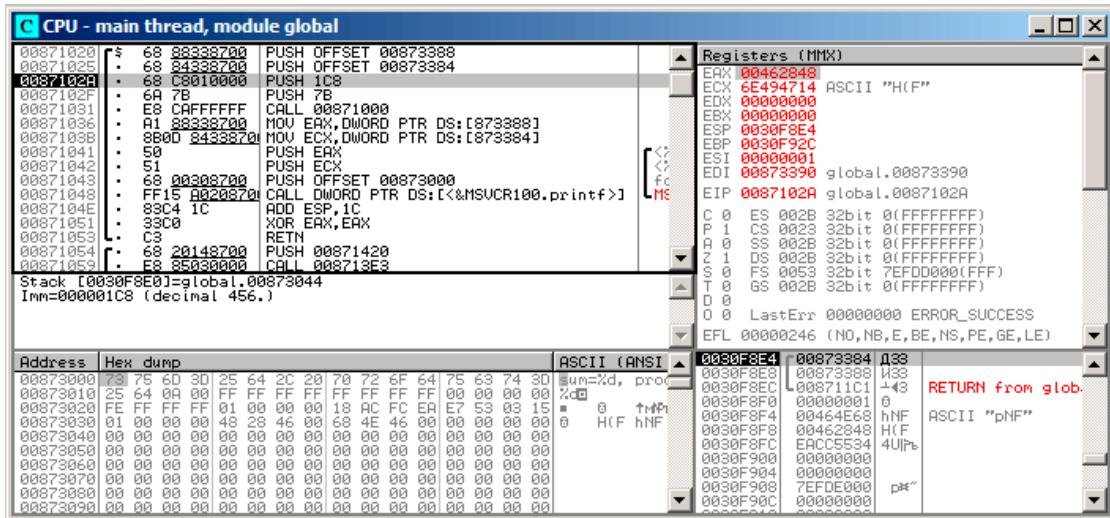


Figure 1.24: OllyDbg: global variables addresses are passed to f1()

First, global variables' addresses are passed to f1(). We can click "Follow in dump" on the stack element, and we can see the place in the data segment allocated for the two variables.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

These variables are zeroed, because non-initialized data (from **BSS**) is cleared before the execution begins, [see ISO/IEC 9899:TC3 (C C99 standard), (2007) 6.7.8.p10].

They reside in the data segment, we can verify this by pressing Alt-M and reviewing the memory map:

Address	Size	Owner	Section	Contains	Type	Access	Initial	Mapped as
00050000	00004000				Map	R	R	
00060000	00001000				Priv	RW	RW	
00070000	00067000				Map	R	R	
00155000	00007000				Priv	RW	Guar	C:\Windows\System32\loc
00300000	00001000				Priv	RW	Guar	
0030E000	00002000				Priv	RW	Guar	
00460000	00005000				Priv	RW	RW	
004A0000	00007000				Priv	RW	RW	
006B0000	0000C000				Priv	RW	RW	
00870000	00001000	global		Stack of main thread	Img	R	RWE	Cop
00871000	00001000	global	.text	Heap	Img	R	E	RWE Cop
00872000	00001000	global	.rdata		Img	R	RWE	Cop
00873000	00001000	global	.data	Default heap	Img	RW	RWE	Cop
00874000	00001000	global	.reloc	PE header	Img	R	RWE	Cop
6E3E0000	00001000	MSUCR100		Code	Img	R	RWE	Cop
6E3E1000	00062000	MSUCR100	.text	Imports	Img	R	RWE	Cop
6E493000	00006000	MSUCR100	.data	Data	Img	RW	Cop	
6E499000	00001000	MSUCR100	.rsrc	Relocations	Img	R	RWE	Cop
6E49A000	00005000	MSUCR100	.reloc	Code, imports, exports	Img	R	E	RWE Cop
755D0000	00001000	Mod_755D		Data	Img	RW	Cop	
755D1000	00003000			Resources	Img	R	RWE	Cop
755D4000	00001000			Relocations	Img	R	RWE	Cop
755D5000	00003000			PE header	Img	R	E	RWE Cop
755E0000	00001000	Mod_755E			Img	RW	RWE	Cop
755E1000	00040000				Img	R	R	Cop
7562E000	00005000				Img	R	E	RWE Cop
75633000	00009000				Img	RW	Cop	RWE Cop
					Img	R	R	Cop

Figure 1.25: OllyDbg: memory map

Let's trace (F7) to the start of f1():

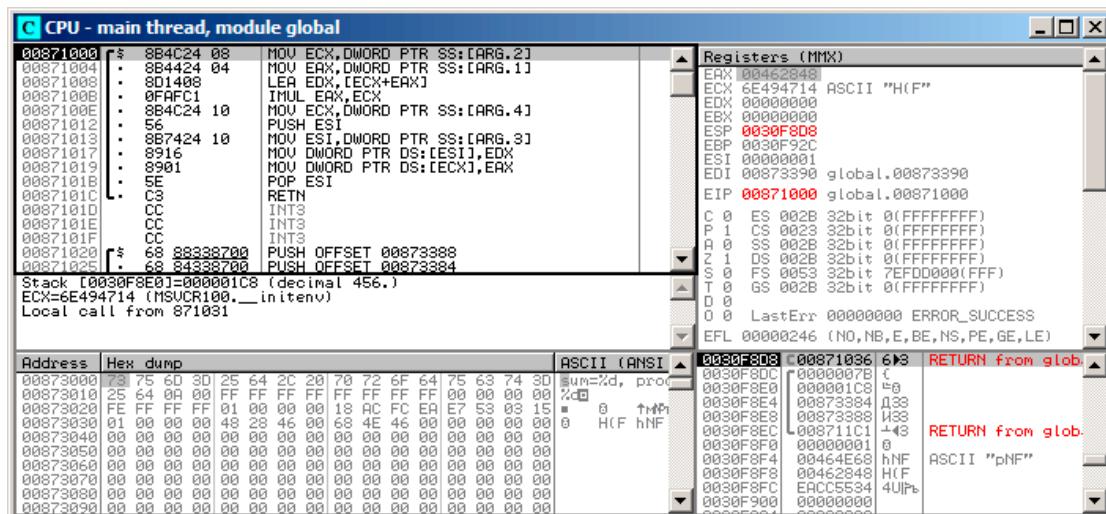


Figure 1.26: OllyDbg: f1() starts

Two values are visible in the stack: 456 (0x1C8) and 123 (0x7B), and also the addresses of the two global variables.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Let's trace until the end of f1(). In the left bottom window we see how the results of the calculation appear in the global variables:

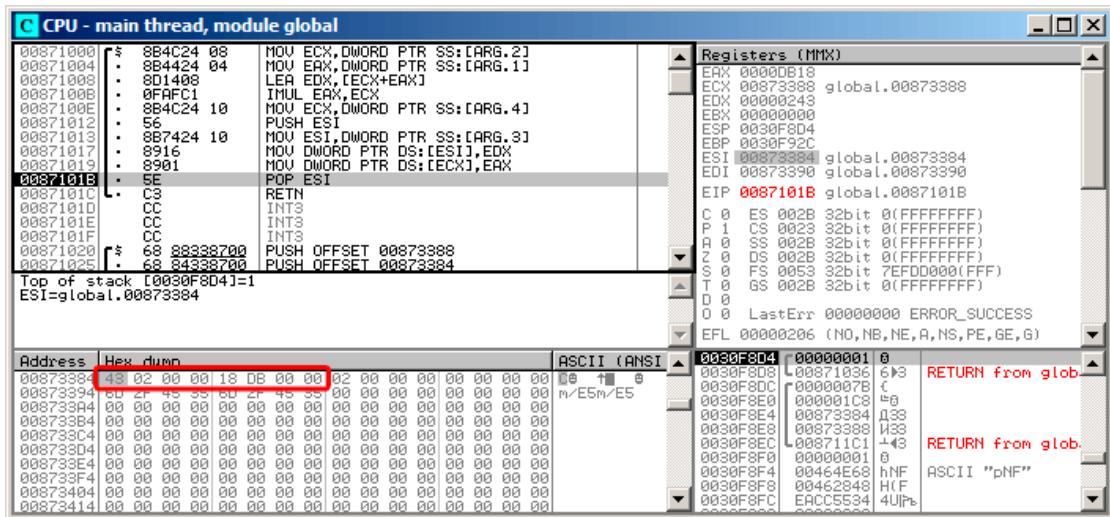


Figure 1.27: OllyDbg: f1() execution completed

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Now the global variables' values are loaded into registers ready for passing to `printf()` (via the stack):

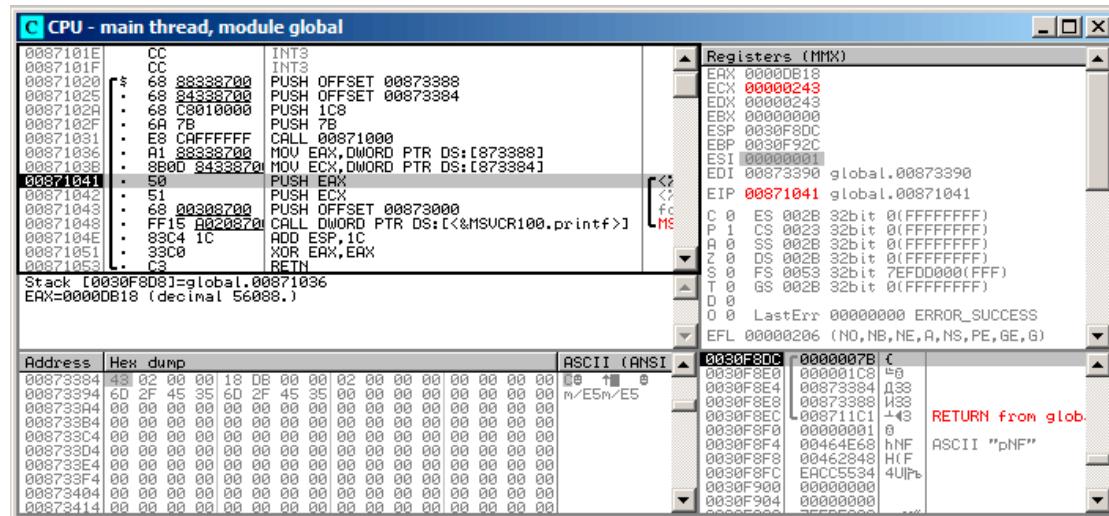


Figure 1.28: OllyDbg: global variables' values are passed into `printf()`

Local variables example

Let's rework our example slightly:

Listing 1.104: now the sum and product variables are local

```
void main()
{
    int sum, product; // now variables are local in this function

    f1(123, 456, &sum, &product);
    printf ("sum=%d, product=%d\n", sum, product);
}
```

`f1()` code will not change. Only the code of `main()` will do:

Listing 1.105: Optimizing MSVC 2010 (/Ob0)

```
_product$ = -8           ; size = 4
_sum$ = -4              ; size = 4
_main    PROC
; Line 10
    sub     esp, 8
; Line 13
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR _product$[esp+8]
    push    eax
    lea     ecx, DWORD PTR _sum$[esp+12]
    push    ecx
    push    456      ; 000001c8H
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
push    123      ; 0000007bH
call    _f1
; Line 14
mov     edx, DWORD PTR _product$[esp+24]
mov     eax, DWORD PTR _sum$[esp+24]
push    edx
push    eax
push    OFFSET $SG2803
call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
; Line 15
xor    eax, eax
add    esp, 36
ret    0
```

Let's look again with OllyDbg. The addresses of the local variables in the stack are 0x2EF854 and 0x2EF858. We see how these are pushed into the stack:

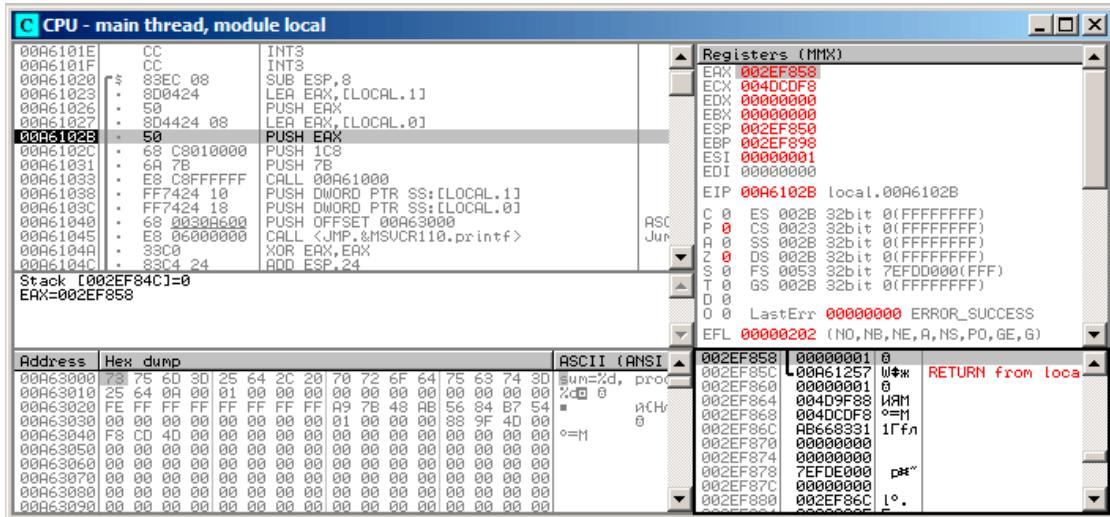


Figure 1.29: OllyDbg: local variables' addresses are pushed into the stack

f1() starts. So far there is only random garbage in the stack at 0x2EF854 and 0x2EF858:

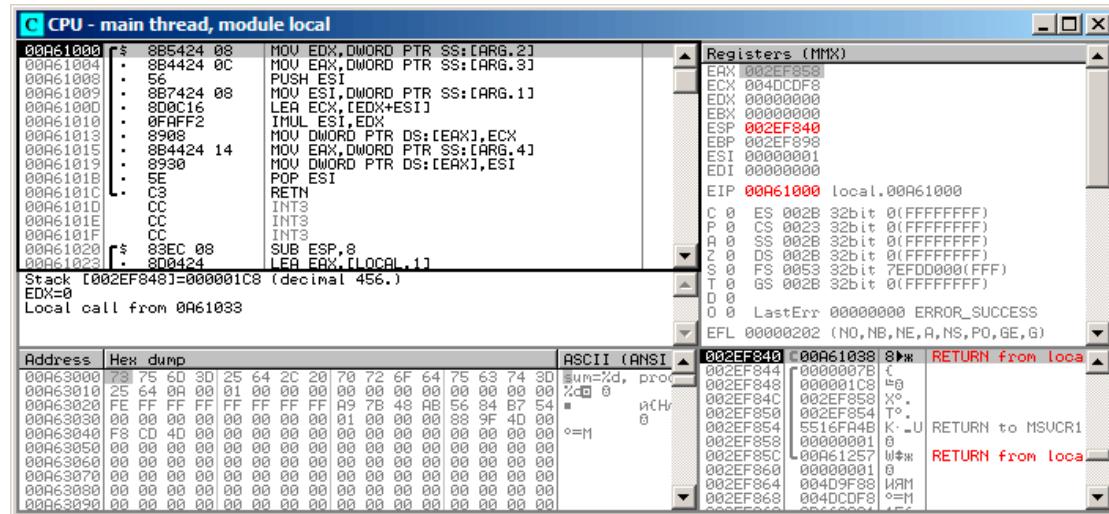


Figure 1.30: OllyDbg: f1() starting

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

f1() completes:

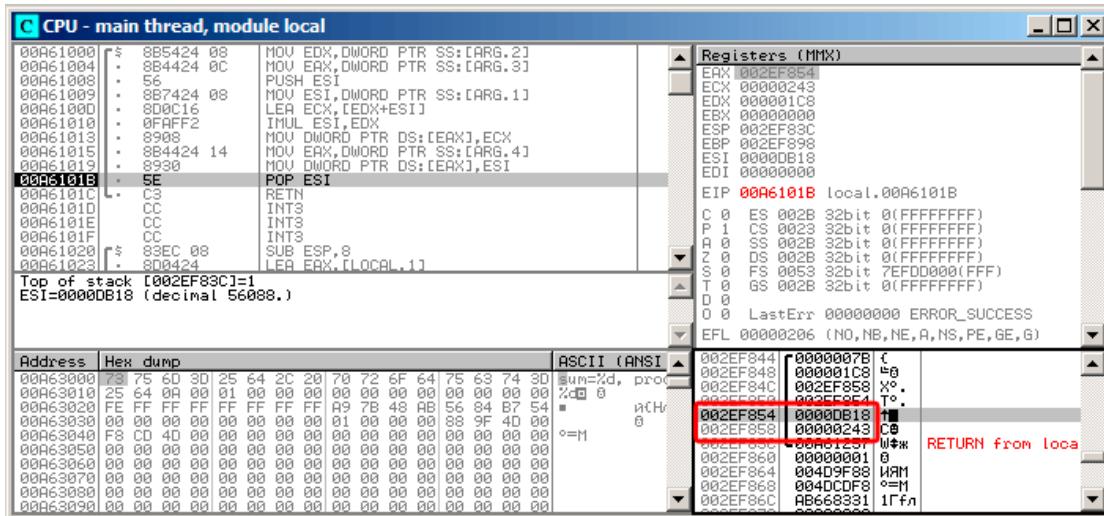


Figure 1.31: OllyDbg: f1() completes execution

We now find 0xDB18 and 0x243 at addresses 0x2EF854 and 0x2EF858. These values are the f1() results.

Conclusion

f1() could return pointers to any place in memory, located anywhere.

This is in essence the usefulness of the pointers.

By the way, C++ references work exactly the same way. Read more about them: ([3.21.3 on page 720](#)).

1.16.2 Swap input values

This will do the job:

```

#include <memory.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void swap_bytes (unsigned char* first, unsigned char* second)
{
    unsigned char tmp1;
    unsigned char tmp2;

    tmp1=*first;
    tmp2=*second;

    *first=tmp2;
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note: <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    *second=tmp1;
};

int main()
{
    // copy string into heap, so we will be able to modify it
    char *s=strdup("string");

    // swap 2nd and 3rd characters
    swap_bytes (s+1, s+2);

    printf ("%s\n", s);
}

```

As we can see, bytes are loaded into lower 8-bit parts of ECX and EBX using MOVZX (so higher parts of these registers will be cleared) and then bytes are written back swapped.

Listing 1.106: Optimizing GCC 5.4

```

swap_bytes:
    push    ebx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
    movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [edx]
    movzx  ebx, BYTE PTR [eax]
    mov    BYTE PTR [edx], bl
    mov    BYTE PTR [eax], cl
    pop    ebx
    ret

```

Addresses of both bytes are taken from arguments and through execution of the function are located in EDX and EAX.

So we use pointers: probably, there is no better way to solve this task without them.

1.17 GOTO operator

The GOTO operator is generally considered as anti-pattern, see [Edgar Dijkstra, *Go To Statement Considered Harmful* (1968)⁸⁹]. Nevertheless, it can be used reasonably, see [Donald E. Knuth, *Structured Programming with go to Statements* (1974)⁹⁰]⁹¹.

Here is a very simple example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    printf ("begin\n");

```

⁸⁹<http://yurichev.com/mirrors/Dijkstra68.pdf>

⁹⁰<http://yurichev.com/mirrors/KnuthStructuredProgrammingGoTo.pdf>

⁹¹[Dennis Yurichev, *C/C++ programming language notes*] also has some examples.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        goto exit;
        printf ("skip me!\n");
exit:
        printf ("end\n");
};

```

Here is what we have got in MSVC 2012:

Listing 1.107: MSVC 2012

```

$SG2934 DB      'begin', 0aH, 00H
$SG2936 DB      'skip me!', 0aH, 00H
$SG2937 DB      'end', 0aH, 00H

_main PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    OFFSET $SG2934 ; 'begin'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    jmp    SHORT $exit$3
    push    OFFSET $SG2936 ; 'skip me!'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
$exit$3:
    push    OFFSET $SG2937 ; 'end'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main ENDP

```

The `goto` statement has been simply replaced by a `JMP` instruction, which has the same effect: unconditional jump to another place. The second `printf()` could be executed only with human intervention, by using a debugger or by patching the code.

This could also be useful as a simple patching exercise. Let's open the resulting executable in Hiew:

Figure 1.32: Hiew

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Place the cursor to address JMP (0x410), press F3 (edit), press zero twice, so the opcode becomes EB 00:

Figure 1.33: Hiew

The second byte of the JMP opcode denotes the relative offset for the jump, 0 means the point right after the current instruction.

So now JMP not skipping the second printf() call.

Press F9 (save) and exit. Now if we run the executable we will see this:

Listing 1.108: Patched executable output

C:\>goto.exe

```
begin  
skip me!  
end
```

The same result could be achieved by replacing the JMP instruction with 2 NOP instructions.

NOP has an opcode of 0x90 and length of 1 byte, so we need 2 instructions as JMP replacement (which is 2 bytes in size).

1.17.1 Dead code

The second `printf()` call is also called “dead code” in compiler terms.

This means that the code will never be executed. So when you compile this example with optimizations, the compiler removes “dead code”, leaving no trace of it:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

Listing 1.109: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```
$SG2981 DB      'begin', 0aH, 00H
$SG2983 DB      'skip me!', 0aH, 00H
$SG2984 DB      'end', 0aH, 00H

_main    PROC
        push    OFFSET $SG2981 ; 'begin'
        call    _printf
        push    OFFSET $SG2984 ; 'end'
$exit$4:
        call    _printf
        add     esp, 8
        xor     eax, eax
        ret     0
_main    ENDP
```

However, the compiler forgot to remove the “skip me!” string.

1.17.2 Exercise

Try to achieve the same result using your favorite compiler and debugger.

1.18 Conditional jumps

1.18.1 Simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f_signed (int a, int b)
{
    if (a>b)
        printf ("a>b\n");
    if (a==b)
        printf ("a==b\n");
    if (a<b)
        printf ("a<b\n");
};

void f_unsigned (unsigned int a, unsigned int b)
{
    if (a>b)
        printf ("a>b\n");
    if (a==b)
        printf ("a==b\n");
    if (a<b)
        printf ("a<b\n");
};

int main()
{
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

f_signed(1, 2);
f_unsigned(1, 2);
return 0;
};

```

x86**x86 + MSVC**

Here is how the `f_signed()` function looks like:

Listing 1.110: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_a$ = 8
_b$ = 12
_f_signed PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jle     SHORT $LN3@f_signed
    push    OFFSET $SG737          ; 'a>b'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
$LN3@f_signed:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp     ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jne     SHORT $LN2@f_signed
    push    OFFSET $SG739          ; 'a==b'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
$LN2@f_signed:
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp     edx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jge     SHORT $LN4@f_signed
    push    OFFSET $SG741          ; 'a<b'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
$LN4@f_signed:
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f_signed ENDP

```

The first instruction, JLE, stands for *Jump if Less or Equal*. In other words, if the second operand is larger or equal to the first one, the control flow will be passed to the address or label specified in the instruction. If this condition does not trigger because the second operand is smaller than the first one, the control flow would not be altered and the first `printf()` would be executed. The second check is JNE: *Jump if Not Equal*. The control flow will not change if the operands are equal.

The third check is JGE: *Jump if Greater or Equal*—jump if the first operand is larger than the second or if they are equal. So, if all three conditional jumps are triggered,

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

none of the `printf()` calls would be executed whatsoever. This is impossible without special intervention. Now let's take a look at the `f_unsigned()` function. The `f_unsigned()` function is the same as `f_signed()`, with the exception that the JBE and JAE instructions are used instead of JLE and JGE, as follows:

Listing 1.111: GCC

```
_a$ = 8    ; size = 4
_b$ = 12   ; size = 4
_f_unsigned PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jbe    SHORT $LN3@f_unsigned
    push    OFFSET $SG2761    ; 'a>b'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
$LN3@f_unsigned:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp     ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jne    SHORT $LN2@f_unsigned
    push    OFFSET $SG2763    ; 'a==b'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
$LN2@f_unsigned:
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cmp     edx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    jae    SHORT $LN4@f_unsigned
    push    OFFSET $SG2765    ; 'a<b'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
$LN4@f_unsigned:
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f_unsigned ENDP
```

As already mentioned, the branch instructions are different: JBE—*Jump if Below or Equal* and JAE—*Jump if Above or Equal*. These instructions (JA/JAE/JB/JBE) differ from JG/JGE/JL/JLE in the fact that they work with unsigned numbers.

See also the section about signed number representations ([2.2 on page 572](#)). That is why if we see JG/JL in use instead of JA/JB or vice-versa, we can be almost sure that the variables are signed or unsigned, respectively. Here is also the `main()` function, where there is nothing much new to us:

Listing 1.112: main()

```
_main  PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    2
    push    1
    call    _f_signed
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
add    esp, 8
push   2
push   1
call   _f_unsigned
add    esp, 8
xor    eax, eax
pop    ebp
ret    0
_main  ENDP
```

x86 + MSVC + OllyDbg

We can see how flags are set by running this example in OllyDbg. Let's begin with `f_unsigned()`, which works with unsigned numbers.

CMP is executed thrice here, but for the same arguments, so the flags are the same each time.

Result of the first comparison:

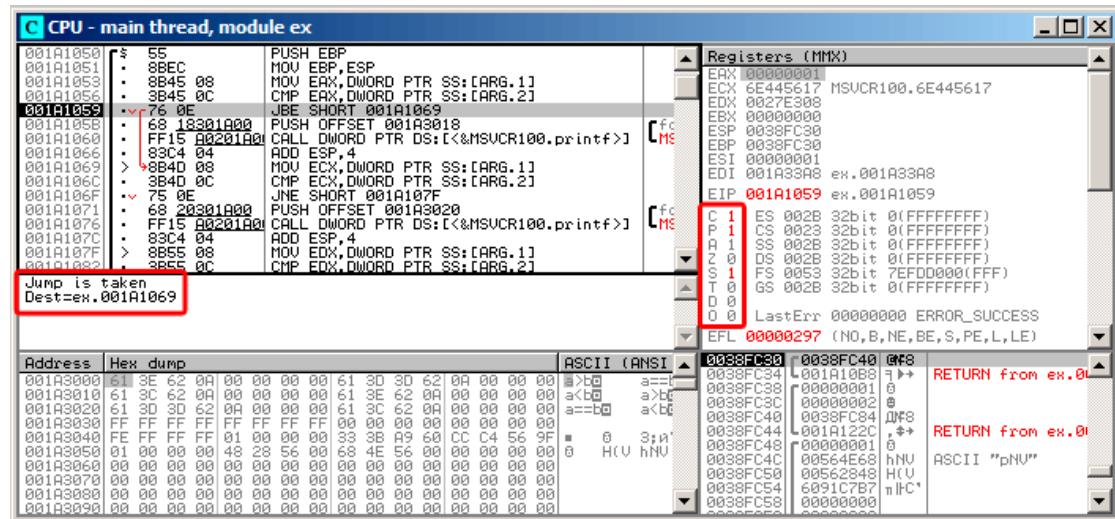


Figure 1.34: OllyDbg: `f_unsigned()`: first conditional jump

So, the flags are: C=1, P=1, A=1, Z=0, S=1, T=0, D=0, O=0.

They are named with one character for brevity in OllyDbg.

OllyDbg gives a hint that the (JBE) jump is to be triggered now. Indeed, if we take a look into Intel manuals ([12.1.4 on page 1302](#)), we can read there that JBE is triggering if CF=1 or ZF=1. The condition is true here, so the jump is triggered.

The next conditional jump:

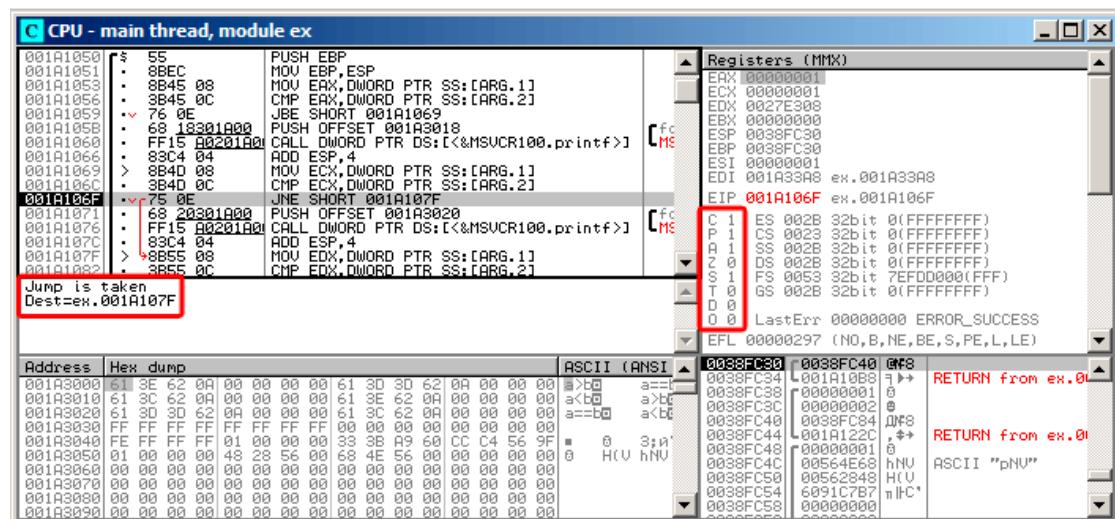


Figure 1.35: OllyDbg: f_unsigned(): second conditional jump

OllyDbg gives a hint that JNZ is to be triggered now. Indeed, JNZ triggering if ZF=0 (zero flag).

The third conditional jump, JNB:

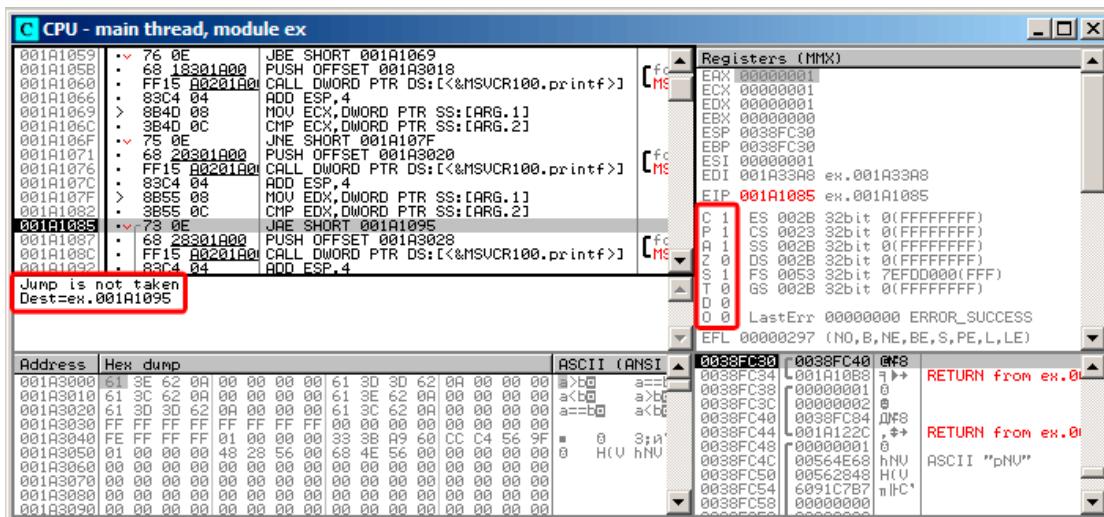


Figure 1.36: OllyDbg: f_unsigned(): third conditional jump

In Intel manuals ([12.1.4 on page 1302](#)) we can see that JNB triggers if CF=0 (carry flag). That is not true in our case, so the third printf() will execute.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Now let's review the `f_signed()` function, which works with signed values, in OllyDbg. Flags are set in the same way: C=1, P=1, A=1, Z=0, S=1, T=0, D=0, O=0. The first conditional jump JLE is to be triggered:

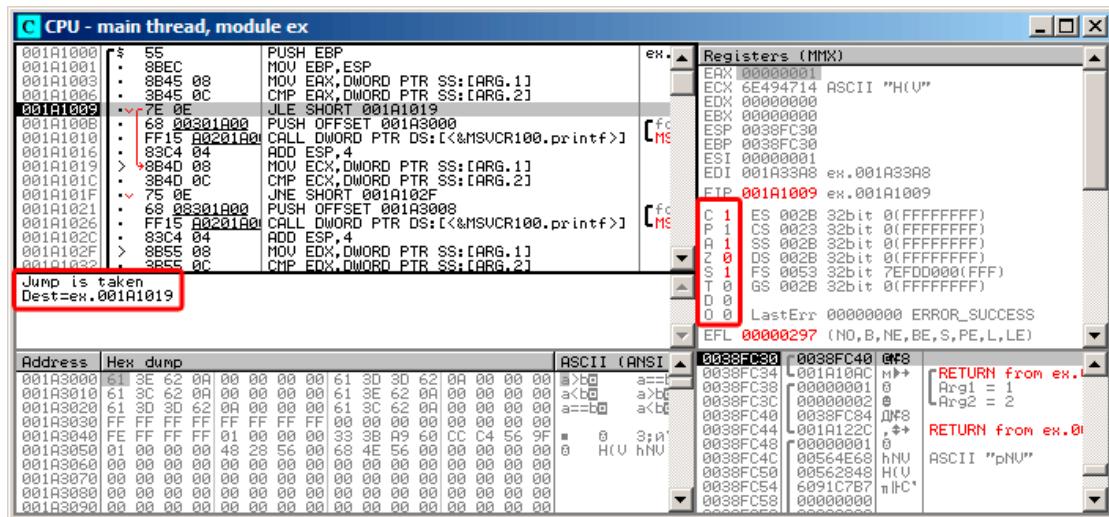


Figure 1.37: OllyDbg: `f_signed()`: first conditional jump

In Intel manuals ([12.1.4 on page 1302](#)) we find that this instruction is triggered if $ZF=1$ or $SF \neq OF$. $SF \neq OF$ in our case, so the jump triggers.

The second JNZ conditional jump triggering: if ZF=0 (zero flag):

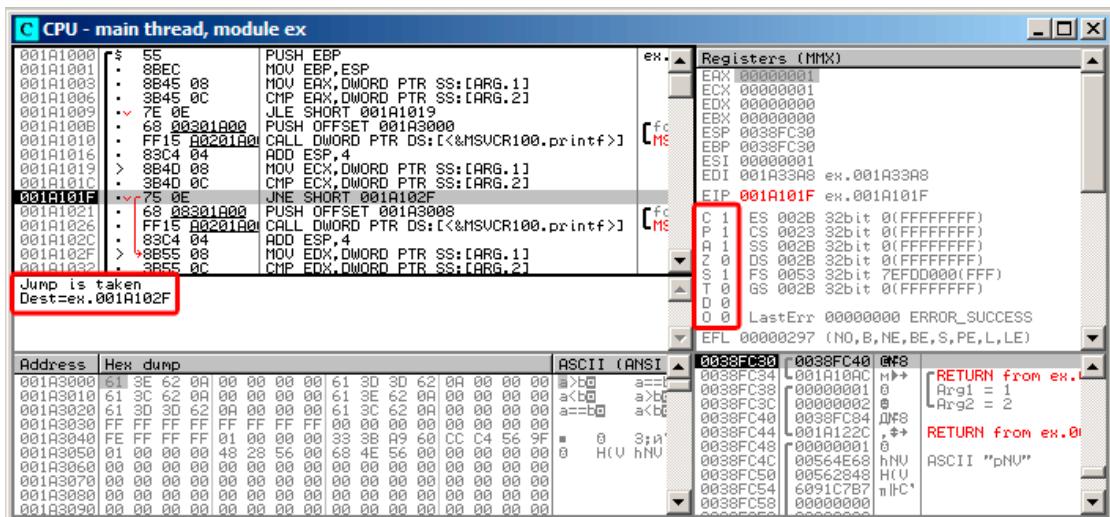


Figure 1.38: OllyDbg: f_signed(): second conditional jump

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The third conditional jump JGE will not trigger because it would only do so if SF=OF, and that is not true in our case:

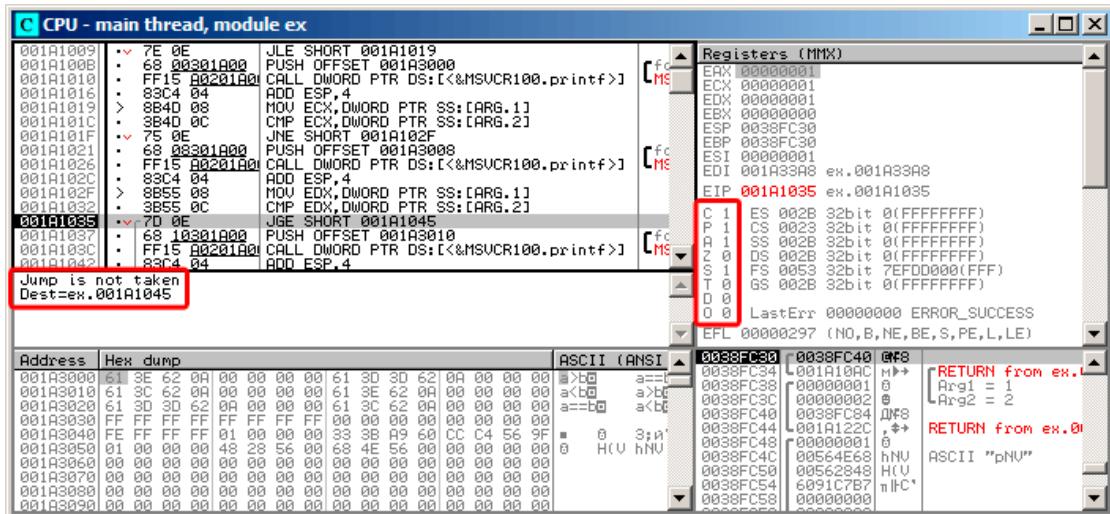
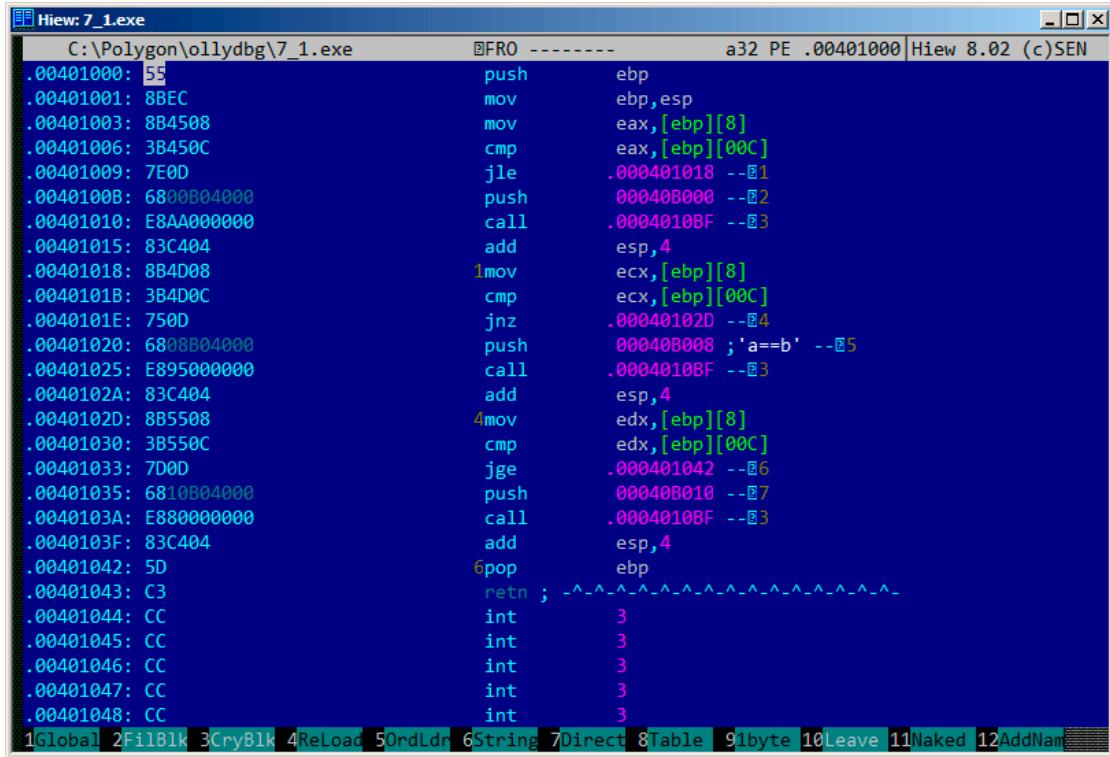


Figure 1.39: OllyDbg: f_signed(): third conditional jump

x86 + MSVC + Hiew

We can try to patch the executable file in a way that the `f_unsigned()` function would always print “`a==b`”, no matter the input values. Here is how it looks in Hiew:



The screenshot shows the Hiew debugger interface with the title "Hiew: 7_1.exe". The assembly code is displayed in the main window, showing the following sequence of instructions:

```

C:\Polygon\ollydbg\7_1.exe      @FRO -----      a32 PE .00401000|Hiew 8.02 (c)SEN
.00401000: 55                  push    ebp
.00401001: 8BEC                mov     ebp,esp
.00401003: 8B4508              mov     eax,[ebp][8]
.00401006: 3B450C              cmp     eax,[ebp][00C]
.00401009: 7E0D                jle    .000401018 --@1
.0040100B: 6800B04000          push    00040B000 --@2
.00401010: E8AA000000          call   .0004010BF --@3
.00401015: 83C404              add    esp,4
.00401018: 8B4D08              mov    ecx,[ebp][8]
.0040101B: 3B4D0C              cmp    ecx,[ebp][00C]
.0040101E: 750D                jnz    .00040102D --@4
.00401020: 6800B04000          push    00040B008 ;'a==b' --@5
.00401025: E895000000          call   .0004010BF --@3
.0040102A: 83C404              add    esp,4
.0040102D: 8B5508              mov    edx,[ebp][8]
.00401030: 3B550C              cmp    edx,[ebp][00C]
.00401033: 7D0D                jge    .000401042 --@6
.00401035: 6810B04000          push    00040B010 --@7
.0040103A: E880000000          call   .0004010BF --@3
.0040103F: 83C404              add    esp,4
.00401042: 5D                  pop    ebp
.00401043: C3                  retn  ; _^_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_
.00401044: CC                  int    3
.00401045: CC                  int    3
.00401046: CC                  int    3
.00401047: CC                  int    3
.00401048: CC                  int    3

```

At the bottom of the assembly window, there is a toolbar with various icons labeled from 1 to 12, corresponding to different file and memory operations.

Figure 1.40: Hiew: `f_unsigned()` function

Essentially, we have to accomplish three tasks:

- force the first jump to always trigger;
- force the second jump to never trigger;
- force the third jump to always trigger.

Thus we can direct the code flow to always pass through the second `printf()`, and output “`a==b`”.

Three instructions (or bytes) has to be patched:

- The first jump becomes `JMP`, but the `jump offset` would remain the same.
- The second jump might be triggered sometimes, but in any case it will jump to the next instruction, because we set the `jump offset` to 0.

In these instructions the [jump offset](#) is added to the address for the next instruction. So if the offset is 0, the jump will transfer the control to the next instruction.

- The third jump we replace with JMP just as we do with the first one, so it will always trigger.

Here is the modified code:

```

Hiew: 7_1.exe
C:\Polygon\ollydbg\7_1.exe      FWO EDITMODE      a32 PE 00000434 Hiew 8.02 (c)SEN
00000400: 55                  push    ebp
00000401: 8BEC                mov     ebp,esp
00000403: 8B4508              mov     eax,[ebp][8]
00000406: 3B450C              cmp     eax,[ebp][00C]
00000409: EB0D                jmps   000000418
0000040B: 6800004000          push   00040B0008 ;' @
00000410: E8AA000000          call   0000004BF
00000415: 83C404              add    esp,4
00000418: 8B4D08              mov    ecx,[ebp][8]
0000041B: 3B4D0C              cmp    ecx,[ebp][00C]
0000041E: 7500                jnz    000000420
00000420: 6800004000          push   00040B0008 ;' @
00000425: E895000000          call   0000004BF
0000042A: 83C404              add    esp,4
0000042D: 8B5508              mov    edx,[ebp][8]
00000430: 3B550C              cmp    edx,[ebp][00C]
00000433: EB0D                jmps   000000442
00000435: 6810004000          push   00040B0010 ;' @
0000043A: E880000000          call   0000004BF
0000043F: 83C404              add    esp,4
00000442: 5D                  pop    ebp
00000443: C3                  retn   ; _^_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_~_
00000444: CC                  int    3
00000445: CC                  int    3
00000446: CC                  int    3
00000447: CC                  int    3
00000448: CC                  int    3

```

Figure 1.41: Hiew: let's modify the `f_unsigned()` function

If we miss to change any of these jumps, then several `printf()` calls may execute, while we want to execute only one.

Non-optimizing GCC

Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.1 produces almost the same code, but with `puts()` ([1.5.3 on page 28](#)) instead of `printf()`.

Optimizing GCC

An observant reader may ask, why execute CMP several times, if the flags has the same values after each execution?

Perhaps optimizing MSVC cannot do this, but optimizing GCC 4.8.1 can go deeper:

Listing 1.113: GCC 4.8.1 `f_signed()`

```
f_signed:
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
        cmp    DWORD PTR [esp+4], eax
        jg     .L6
        je     .L7
        jge    .L1
        mov    DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:.LC2 ; "a<b"
        jmp    puts

.L6:
        mov    DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "a>b"
        jmp    puts

.L1:
        rep    ret

.L7:
        mov    DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:.LC1 ; "a==b"
        jmp    puts

```

We also see JMP puts here instead of CALL puts / RETN.

This kind of trick will have explained later: [1.21.1 on page 197](#).

This type of x86 code is somewhat rare. MSVC 2012 as it seems, can't generate such code. On the other hand, assembly language programmers are fully aware of the fact that Jcc instructions can be stacked.

So if you see such stacking somewhere, it is highly probable that the code was hand-written.

The f_unsigned() function is not that æsthetically short:

Listing 1.114: GCC 4.8.1 f_unsigned()

```

f_unsigned:
        push   esi
        push   ebx
        sub    esp, 20
        mov    esi, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
        mov    ebx, DWORD PTR [esp+36]
        cmp    esi, ebx
        ja    .L13
        cmp    esi, ebx ; this instruction could be removed
        je    .L14
.L10:
        jb    .L15
        add   esp, 20
        pop   ebx
        pop   esi
        ret
.L15:
        mov    DWORD PTR [esp+32], OFFSET FLAT:.LC2 ; "a<b"
        add   esp, 20
        pop   ebx
        pop   esi
        jmp    puts
.L13:
        mov    DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "a>b"

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    call    puts
    cmp     esi, ebx
    jne     .L10
.L14:
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+32], OFFSET FLAT:.LC1 ; "a==b"
    add     esp, 20
    pop    ebx
    pop    esi
    jmp    puts

```

Nevertheless, there are two CMP instructions instead of three.

So optimization algorithms of GCC 4.8.1 are probably not perfect yet.

ARM

32-bit ARM

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 1.115: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

.text:000000B8          EXPORT f_signed
.text:000000B8          f_signed           ; CODE XREF: main+C
.text:000000B8 70 40 2D E9      STMFD   SP!, {R4-R6,LR}
.text:000000BC 01 40 A0 E1      MOV      R4, R1
.text:000000C0 04 00 50 E1      CMP      R0, R4
.text:000000C4 00 50 A0 E1      MOV      R5, R0
.text:000000C8 1A 0E 8F C2      ADRGT   R0, aAB           ; "a>b\n"
.text:000000CC A1 18 00 CB      BLGT    __2printf
.text:000000D0 04 00 55 E1      CMP      R5, R4
.text:000000D4 67 0F 8F 02      ADREQ   R0, aAB_0         ; "a==b\n"
.text:000000D8 9E 18 00 0B      BLEQ    __2printf
.text:000000DC 04 00 55 E1      CMP      R5, R4
.text:000000E0 70 80 BD A8      LDMGEFD SP!, {R4-R6,PC}
.text:000000E4 70 40 BD E8      LDMFD   SP!, {R4-R6,LR}
.text:000000E8 19 0E 8F E2      ADR     R0, aAB_1         ; "a<b\n"
.text:000000EC 99 18 00 EA      B       __2printf
.text:000000EC          ; End of function f_signed

```

Many instructions in ARM mode could be executed only when specific flags are set. E.g. this is often used when comparing numbers.

For instance, the ADD instruction is in fact named ADDAL internally, where AL stands for *ALways*, i.e., execute always. The predicates are encoded in 4 high bits of the 32-bit ARM instructions (*condition field*). The B instruction for unconditional jumping is in fact conditional and encoded just like any other conditional jump, but has AL in the *condition field*, and it implies *execute ALways*, ignoring flags.

The ADRGT instruction works just like ADR but executes only in case the previous CMP instruction founds one of the numbers greater than the another, while comparing the two (*Greater Than*).

The next BLGT instruction behaves exactly as BL and is triggered only if the result of the comparison has been (*Greater Than*). ADRGT writes a pointer to the string `a>b\n` into R0 and BLGT calls `printf()`. Therefore, instructions suffixed with -GT are to execute only in case the value in R0 (which is *a*) is bigger than the value in R4 (which is *b*).

Moving forward we see the ADREQ and BLEQ instructions. They behave just like ADR and BL, but are to be executed only if operands were equal to each other during the last comparison. Another CMP is located before them (because the `printf()` execution may have tampered the flags).

Then we see LDMGEFD, this instruction works just like LDMFD⁹², but is triggered only when one of the values is greater or equal than the other (*Greater or Equal*). The LDMGEFD `SP!, {R4-R6,PC}` instruction acts like a function epilogue, but it will be triggered only if $a \geq b$, and only then the function execution will finish.

But if that condition is not satisfied, i.e., $a < b$, then the control flow will continue to the next

“LDMFD `SP!, {R4-R6,LR}`” instruction, which is one more function epilogue. This instruction restores not only the R4-R6 registers state, but also `LR` instead of `PC`, thus, it does not return from the function. The last two instructions call `printf()` with the string `<a<b\n>` as a sole argument. We already examined an unconditional jump to the `printf()` function instead of function return in `<printf() with several arguments>` section ([1.11.2 on page 71](#)).

`f_unsigned` is similar, only the ADRHI, BLHI, and LDMCSFD instructions are used there, these predicates (*HI = Unsigned higher, CS = Carry Set (greater than or equal)*) are analogous to those examined before, but for unsigned values.

There is not much new in the `main()` function for us:

Listing 1.116: `main()`

```
.text:00000128          EXPORT main
.main
.text:00000128          main
.text:00000128 10 40 2D E9    STMFD   SP!, {R4,LR}
.text:0000012C 02 10 A0 E3    MOV      R1, #2
.text:00000130 01 00 A0 E3    MOV      R0, #1
.text:00000134 DF FF FF EB    BL      f_signed
.text:00000138 02 10 A0 E3    MOV      R1, #2
.text:0000013C 01 00 A0 E3    MOV      R0, #1
.text:00000140 EA FF FF EB    BL      f_unsigned
.text:00000144 00 00 A0 E3    MOV      R0, #0
.text:00000148 10 80 BD E8    LDMFD   SP!, {R4,PC}
.text:00000148          ; End of function main
```

That is how you can get rid of conditional jumps in ARM mode.

Why is this so good? Read here: [2.10.1 on page 589](#).

⁹² [LDMFD](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

There is no such feature in x86, except the CMOVcc instruction, it is the same as MOV, but triggered only when specific flags are set, usually set by CMP.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

Listing 1.117: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```
.text:00000072          f_signed ; CODE XREF: main+6
.text:00000072 70 B5      PUSH    {R4-R6,LR}
.text:00000074 0C 00      MOVS    R4, R1
.text:00000076 05 00      MOVS    R5, R0
.text:00000078 A0 42      CMP     R0, R4
.text:0000007A 02 DD      BLE    loc_82
.text:0000007C A4 A0      ADR    R0, aAB           ; "a>b\n"
.text:0000007E 06 F0 B7 F8  BL     _2printf
.text:00000082
.text:00000082          loc_82 ; CODE XREF: f_signed+8
.text:00000082 A5 42      CMP     R5, R4
.text:00000084 02 D1      BNE    loc_8C
.text:00000086 A4 A0      ADR    R0, aAB_0         ; "a==b\n"
.text:00000088 06 F0 B2 F8  BL     _2printf
.text:0000008C
.text:0000008C          loc_8C ; CODE XREF: f_signed+12
.text:0000008C A5 42      CMP     R5, R4
.text:0000008E 02 DA      BGE    locret_96
.text:00000090 A3 A0      ADR    R0, aAB_1         ; "a<b\n"
.text:00000092 06 F0 AD F8  BL     _2printf
.text:00000096
.text:00000096          locret_96 ; CODE XREF: f_signed+1C
.text:00000096 70 BD      POP    {R4-R6,PC}
.text:00000096          ; End of function f_signed
```

Only B instructions in Thumb mode may be supplemented by *condition codes*, so the Thumb code looks more ordinary.

BLE is a normal conditional jump *Less than or Equal*, BNE—*Not Equal*, BGE—*Greater than or Equal*.

f_unsigned is similar, only other instructions are used while dealing with unsigned values: BLS (*Unsigned lower or same*) and BCS (*Carry Set (Greater than or equal)*).

ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Listing 1.118: f_signed()

```
f_signed:
; W0=a, W1=b
    cmp    w0, w1
    bgt   .L19    ; Branch if Greater Than (a>b)
    beq   .L20    ; Branch if Equal (a==b)
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    bge    .L15      ; Branch if Greater than or Equal (a>=b) (impossible)
here)
    ; a<b
    adrp    x0, .LC11      ; "a<b"
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC11
    b      puts
.L19:
    adrp    x0, .LC9       ; "a>b"
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC9
    b      puts
.L15: ; impossible to get here
    ret
.L20:
    adrp    x0, .LC10      ; "a==b"
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC10
    b      puts

```

Listing 1.119: f_unsigned()

```

f_unsigned:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -48]!
; W0=a, W1=b
    cmp    w0, w1
    add    x29, sp, 0
    str    x19, [sp,16]
    mov    w19, w0
    bhi    .L25      ; Branch if HIgher (a>b)
    cmp    w19, w1
    beq    .L26      ; Branch if Equal (a==b)
.L23:
    bcc    .L27      ; Branch if Carry Clear (if less than) (a<b)
; function epilogue, impossible to be here
    ldr    x19, [sp,16]
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 48
    ret
.L27:
    ldr    x19, [sp,16]
    adrp   x0, .LC11      ; "a<b"
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 48
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC11
    b      puts
.L25:
    adrp    x0, .LC9       ; "a>b"
    str    x1, [x29,40]
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC9
    bl     puts
    ldr    x1, [x29,40]
    cmp    w19, w1
    bne    .L23      ; Branch if Not Equal
.L26:
    ldr    x19, [sp,16]
    adrp   x0, .LC10      ; "a==b"
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 48
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC10

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

b	puts
---	------

The comments were added by the author of this book. What is striking is that the compiler is not aware that some conditions are not possible at all, so there is dead code at some places, which can never be executed.

Exercise

Try to optimize these functions manually for size, removing redundant instructions, without adding new ones.

MIPS

One distinctive MIPS feature is the absence of flags. Apparently, it was done to simplify the analysis of data dependencies.

There are instructions similar to SETcc in x86: SLT (“Set on Less Than”: signed version) and SLTU (unsigned version). These instructions sets destination register value to 1 if the condition is true or to 0 if otherwise.

The destination register is then checked using BEQ (“Branch on Equal”) or BNE (“Branch on Not Equal”) and a jump may occur. So, this instruction pair has to be used in MIPS for comparison and branch. Let’s first start with the signed version of our function:

Listing 1.120: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
.text:00000000 f_signed: # CODE XREF: main+18
.text:00000000
.text:00000000 var_10    = -0x10
.text:00000000 var_8     = -8
.text:00000000 var_4     = -4
.text:00000000 arg_0     = 0
.text:00000000 arg_4     = 4
.text:00000000
.text:00000000      addiu   $sp, -0x20
.text:00000004      sw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:00000008      sw      $fp, 0x20+var_8($sp)
.text:0000000C      move   $fp, $sp
.text:00000010      la      $gp, __gnu_local_gp
.text:00000018      sw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
; store input values into local stack:
.text:0000001C      sw      $a0, 0x20+arg_0($fp)
.text:00000020      sw      $a1, 0x20+arg_4($fp)
; reload them.
.text:00000024      lw      $v1, 0x20+arg_0($fp)
.text:00000028      lw      $v0, 0x20+arg_4($fp)
; $v0=b
; $v1=a
.text:0000002C      or      $at, $zero ; NOP
; this is pseudoinstruction. in fact, "slt $v0,$v0,$v1" is there.
; so $v0 will be set to 1 if $v0<$v1 (b<a) or to 0 if otherwise:
.text:00000030      slt    $v0, $v1
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; jump to loc_5c, if condition is not true.
; this is pseudoinstruction. in fact, "beq $v0,$zero,loc_5c" is there:
.text:00000034      beqz    $v0, loc_5C
; print "a>b" and finish
.text:00000038      or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
.text:0000003C      lui     $v0, (unk_230 >> 16) # "a>b"
.text:00000040      addiu   $a0, $v0, (unk_230 & 0xFFFF) # "a>b"
.text:00000044      lw      $v0, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:00000048      or      $at, $zero ; NOP
.text:0000004C      move    $t9, $v0
.text:00000050      jalr    $t9
.text:00000054      or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
.text:00000058      lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($fp)
.text:0000005C
.text:0000005C loc_5C:                      # CODE XREF: f_signed+34
.text:0000005C      lw      $v1, 0x20+arg_0($fp)
.text:00000060      lw      $v0, 0x20+arg_4($fp)
.text:00000064      or      $at, $zero ; NOP
; check if a==b, jump to loc_90 if its not true:
.text:00000068      bne    $v1, $v0, loc_90
.text:0000006C      or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
; condition is true, so print "a==b" and finish:
.text:00000070      lui     $v0, (aAB >> 16) # "a==b"
.text:00000074      addiu   $a0, $v0, (aAB & 0xFFFF) # "a==b"
.text:00000078      lw      $v0, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:0000007C      or      $at, $zero ; NOP
.text:00000080      move    $t9, $v0
.text:00000084      jalr    $t9
.text:00000088      or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
.text:0000008C      lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($fp)
.text:00000090
.text:00000090 loc_90:                      # CODE XREF: f_signed+68
.text:00000090      lw      $v1, 0x20+arg_0($fp)
.text:00000094      lw      $v0, 0x20+arg_4($fp)
.text:00000098      or      $at, $zero ; NOP
; check if $v1<$v0 (a<b), set $v0 to 1 if condition is true:
.text:0000009C      slt     $v0, $v1, $v0
; if condition is not true (i.e., $v0==0), jump to loc_c8:
.text:000000A0      beqz   $v0, loc_C8
.text:000000A4      or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
; condition is true, print "a<b" and finish
.text:000000A8      lui     $v0, (aAB_0 >> 16) # "a<b"
.text:000000AC      addiu   $a0, $v0, (aAB_0 & 0xFFFF) # "a<b"
.text:000000B0      lw      $v0, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:000000B4      or      $at, $zero ; NOP
.text:000000B8      move    $t9, $v0
.text:000000BC      jalr    $t9
.text:000000C0      or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
.text:000000C4      lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($fp)
.text:000000C8
; all 3 conditions were false, so just finish:
.text:000000C8 loc_C8:                      # CODE XREF:
| f_signed+A0
| .text:000000C8      move    $sp, $fp

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
.text:000000CC    lw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:000000D0    lw      $fp, 0x20+var_8($sp)
.text:000000D4    addiu  $sp, 0x20
.text:000000D8    jr      $ra
.text:000000DC    or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
.text:000000DC # End of function f_signed
```

SLT REG0, REG0, REG1 is reduced by IDA to its shorter form:
 SLT REG0, REG1.

We also see there BEQZ pseudo instruction (“Branch if Equal to Zero”),
 which are in fact BEQ REG, \$ZERO, LABEL.

The unsigned version is just the same, but SLTU (unsigned version, hence “U” in name) is used instead of SLT:

Listing 1.121: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
.text:000000E0 f_unsigned: # CODE XREF: main+28
.text:000000E0
.text:000000E0 var_10 = -0x10
.text:000000E0 var_8  = -8
.text:000000E0 var_4  = -4
.text:000000E0 arg_0  = 0
.text:000000E0 arg_4  = 4
.text:000000E0
.text:000000E0      addiu  $sp, -0x20
.text:000000E4      sw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:000000E8      sw      $fp, 0x20+var_8($sp)
.text:000000EC      move   $fp, $sp
.text:000000F0      la      $gp, __gnu_local_gp
.text:000000F8      sw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
.text:000000FC      sw      $a0, 0x20+arg_0($fp)
.text:00000100      sw      $a1, 0x20+arg_4($fp)
.text:00000104      lw      $v1, 0x20+arg_0($fp)
.text:00000108      lw      $v0, 0x20+arg_4($fp)
.text:0000010C      or      $at, $zero
.text:00000110      sltu   $v0, $v1
.text:00000114      beqz  $v0, loc_13C
.text:00000118      or      $at, $zero
.text:0000011C      lui    $v0, (unk_230 >> 16)
.text:00000120      addiu $a0, $v0, (unk_230 & 0xFFFF)
.text:00000124      lw      $v0, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:00000128      or      $at, $zero
.text:0000012C      move   $t9, $v0
.text:00000130      jalr   $t9
.text:00000134      or      $at, $zero
.text:00000138      lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($fp)
.text:0000013C loc_13C:          # CODE XREF: f_unsigned+34
.text:0000013C      lw      $v1, 0x20+arg_0($fp)
.text:00000140      lw      $v0, 0x20+arg_4($fp)
.text:00000144      or      $at, $zero
.text:00000148      bne   $v1, $v0, loc_170
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:0000014C      or    $at, $zero
.text:00000150      lui   $v0, (aAB >> 16) # "a==b"
.text:00000154      addiu $a0, $v0, (aAB & 0xFFFF) # "a==b"
.text:00000158      lw    $v0, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:0000015C      or    $at, $zero
.text:00000160      move  $t9, $v0
.text:00000164      jalr  $t9
.text:00000168      or    $at, $zero
.text:0000016C      lw    $gp, 0x20+var_10($fp)
.text:00000170
.text:00000170 loc_170:          # CODE XREF: f_unsigned+68
.text:00000170      lw    $v1, 0x20+arg_0($fp)
.text:00000174      lw    $v0, 0x20+arg_4($fp)
.text:00000178      or    $at, $zero
.text:0000017C      sltu $v0, $v1, $v0
.text:00000180      beqz $v0, loc_1A8
.text:00000184      or    $at, $zero
.text:00000188      lui   $v0, (aAB_0 >> 16) # "a<b"
.text:0000018C      addiu $a0, $v0, (aAB_0 & 0xFFFF) # "a<b"
.text:00000190      lw    $v0, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
.text:00000194      or    $at, $zero
.text:00000198      move  $t9, $v0
.text:0000019C      jalr  $t9
.text:000001A0      or    $at, $zero
.text:000001A4      lw    $gp, 0x20+var_10($fp)
.text:000001A8
.text:000001A8 loc_1A8:          # CODE XREF: f_unsigned+A0
.text:000001A8      move  $sp, $fp
.text:000001AC      lw    $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
.text:000001B0      lw    $fp, 0x20+var_8($sp)
.text:000001B4      addiu $sp, 0x20
.text:000001B8      jr    $ra
.text:000001BC      or    $at, $zero
.text:000001BC # End of function f_unsigned

```

1.18.2 Calculating absolute value

A simple function:

```

int my_abs (int i)
{
    if (i<0)
        return -i;
    else
        return i;
}

```

Optimizing MSVC

This is how the code is usually generated:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 1.122: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
i$ = 8
my_abs PROC
; ECX = input
    test    ecx, ecx
; check for sign of input value
; skip NEG instruction if sign is positive
    jns     SHORT $LN2@my_abs
; negate value
    neg     ecx
$LN2@my_abs:
; prepare result in EAX:
    mov     eax, ecx
    ret     0
my_abs ENDP
```

GCC 4.9 does mostly the same.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013: Thumb mode

Listing 1.123: Optimizing Keil 6/2013: Thumb mode

```
my_abs PROC
    CMP      r0,#0
; is input value equal to zero or greater than zero?
; skip RSBS instruction then
    BGE     |L0.6|
; subtract input value from 0:
    RSBS    r0,r0,#0
|L0.6|
    BX      lr
ENDP
```

ARM lacks a negate instruction, so the Keil compiler uses the “Reverse Subtract” instruction, which just subtracts with reversed operands.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013: ARM mode

It is possible to add condition codes to some instructions in ARM mode, so that is what the Keil compiler does:

Listing 1.124: Optimizing Keil 6/2013: ARM mode

```
my_abs PROC
    CMP      r0,#0
; execute "Reverse Subtract" instruction
; only if input value is less than 0:
    RSBLT   r0,r0,#0
    BX      lr
ENDP
```

Now there are no conditional jumps and this is good: [2.10.1 on page 589](#).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

ARM64 has instruction NEG for negating:

Listing 1.125: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```
my_abs:
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    str    w0, [sp,12]
    ldr    w0, [sp,12]
; compare input value with contents of WZR register
; (which always holds zero)
    cmp    w0, w0
    bge    .L2
    ldr    w0, [sp,12]
    neg    w0, w0
    b     .L3
.L2:
    ldr    w0, [sp,12]
.L3:
    add    sp, sp, 16
    ret
```

MIPS

Listing 1.126: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
my_abs:
; jump if $a0<0:
    bltz   $a0, locret_10
; just return input value ($a0) in $v0:
    move   $v0, $a0
    jr    $ra
    or    $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
locret_10:
; negate input value and store it in $v0:
    jr    $ra
; this is pseudoinstruction. in fact, this is "subu $v0,$zero,$a0"
($v0=0-$a0)
    negu   $v0, $a0
```

Here we see a new instruction: BLTZ (“Branch if Less Than Zero”).

There is also the NEGU pseudo instruction, which just does subtraction from zero. The “U” suffix in both SUBU and NEGU implies that no exception to be raised in case of integer overflow.

Branchless version?

You could have also a branchless version of this code. This we will review later: [3.16 on page 663](#).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.18.3 Ternary conditional operator

The ternary conditional operator in C/C++ has the following syntax:

```
expression ? expression : expression
```

Here is an example:

```
const char* f (int a)
{
    return a==10 ? "it is ten" : "it is not ten";
};
```

x86

Old and non-optimizing compilers generate assembly code just as if an `if/else` statement was used:

Listing 1.127: Non-optimizing MSVC 2008

```
$SG746  DB      'it is ten', 00H
$SG747  DB      'it is not ten', 00H

tv65 = -4 ; this will be used as a temporary variable
_a$ = 8
_f      PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
; compare input value with 10
    cmp     DWORD PTR _a$[ebp], 10
; jump to $LN3@f if not equal
    jne     SHORT $LN3@f
; store pointer to the string into temporary variable:
    mov     DWORD PTR tv65[ebp], OFFSET $SG746 ; 'it is ten'
; jump to exit
    jmp     SHORT $LN4@f
$LN3@f:
; store pointer to the string into temporary variable:
    mov     DWORD PTR tv65[ebp], OFFSET $SG747 ; 'it is not ten'
$LN4@f:
; this is exit.
; copy pointer to the string from temporary variable to EAX.
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR tv65[ebp]
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f      ENDP
```

Listing 1.128: Optimizing MSVC 2008

```
$SG792  DB      'it is ten', 00H
$SG793  DB      'it is not ten', 00H
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f      PROC
; compare input value with 10
    cmp     DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], 10
    mov     eax, OFFSET $SG792 ; 'it is ten'
; jump to $LN4@f if equal
    je      SHORT $LN4@f
    mov     eax, OFFSET $SG793 ; 'it is not ten'
$LN4@f:
    ret     0
_f      ENDP

```

Newer compilers are more concise:

Listing 1.129: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

$SG1355 DB      'it is ten', 00H
$SG1356 DB      'it is not ten', 00H

a$ = 8
f      PROC
; load pointers to the both strings
    lea     rdx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1355 ; 'it is ten'
    lea     rax, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1356 ; 'it is not ten'
; compare input value with 10
    cmp     ecx, 10
; if equal, copy value from RDX ("it is ten")
; if not, do nothing. pointer to the string
; "it is not ten" is still in RAX as for now.
    cmove   rax, rdx
    ret     0
f      ENDP

```

Optimizing GCC 4.8 for x86 also uses the CMOVcc instruction, while the non-optimizing GCC 4.8 uses conditional jumps.

ARM

Optimizing Keil for ARM mode also uses the conditional instructions ADRcc:

Listing 1.130: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

f PROC
; compare input value with 10
    CMP     r0,#0xa
; if comparison result is Equal, copy pointer to the "it is ten" string into
; R0
    ADREQ   r0,|L0.16| ; "it is ten"
; if comparison result is Not Equal, copy pointer to the
; "it is not ten" string into R0
    ADRNE   r0,|L0.28| ; "it is not ten"
    BX      lr
ENDP

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
|L0.16|    DCB      "it is ten",0
|L0.28|    DCB      "it is not ten",0
```

Without manual intervention, the two instructions ADREQ and ADRNE cannot be executed in the same run.

Optimizing Keil for Thumb mode needs to use conditional jump instructions, since there are no load instructions that support conditional flags:

Listing 1.131: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```
f PROC
; compare input value with 10
    CMP      r0,#0xa
; jump to |L0.8| if Equal
    BEQ      |L0.8|
    ADR      r0,|L0.12| ; "it is not ten"
    BX       lr
|L0.8|
    ADR      r0,|L0.28| ; "it is ten"
    BX       lr
    ENDP

|L0.12|
    DCB      "it is not ten",0
|L0.28|
    DCB      "it is ten",0
```

ARM64

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9 for ARM64 also uses conditional jumps:

Listing 1.132: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
f:
    cmp      x0, 10
    beq      .L3          ; branch if equal
    adrp    x0, .LC1        ; "it is ten"
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC1
    ret
.L3:
    adrp    x0, .LC0        ; "it is not ten"
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
    ret
.LC0:
    .string "it is ten"
.LC1:
    .string "it is not ten"
```

That is because ARM64 does not have a simple load instruction with conditional flags, like ADRcc in 32-bit ARM mode or CMOVcc in x86.

It has, however, “Conditional SELect” instruction (CSEL)[*ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv8, for ARMv8-A architecture profile*, (2013)p390, C5.5], but GCC 4.9 does not seem to be smart enough to use it in such piece of code.

MIPS

Unfortunately, GCC 4.4.5 for MIPS is not very smart, either:

Listing 1.133: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly output)

```
$LC0:    .ascii  "it is not ten\000"
$LC1:    .ascii  "it is ten\000"
f:
        li      $2,10          # 0xa
; compare $a0 and 10, jump if equal:
        beq    $4,$2,$L2
        nop ; branch delay slot

; leave address of "it is not ten" string in $v0 and return:
        lui    $2,%hi($LC0)
        j     $31
        addiu $2,$2,%lo($LC0)

$L2:
; leave address of "it is ten" string in $v0 and return:
        lui    $2,%hi($LC1)
        j     $31
        addiu $2,$2,%lo($LC1)
```

Let's rewrite it in an if/else way

```
const char* f (int a)
{
    if (a==10)
        return "it is ten";
    else
        return "it is not ten";
};
```

Interestingly, optimizing GCC 4.8 for x86 was also able to use CMOVcc in this case:

Listing 1.134: Optimizing GCC 4.8

```
.LC0:
        .string "it is ten"
.LC1:
        .string "it is not ten"
f:
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
.LFB0:
; compare input value with 10
    cmp     DWORD PTR [esp+4], 10
    mov     edx, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1 ; "it is not ten"
    mov     eax, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "it is ten"
; if comparison result is Not Equal, copy EDX value to EAX
; if not, do nothing
    cmovne eax, edx
    ret
```

Optimizing Keil in ARM mode generates code identical to listing [1.130](#).

But the optimizing MSVC 2012 is not that good (yet).

Conclusion

Why optimizing compilers try to get rid of conditional jumps? Read here about it: [2.10.1 on page 589](#).

1.18.4 Getting minimal and maximal values

32-bit

```
int my_max(int a, int b)
{
    if (a>b)
        return a;
    else
        return b;
};

int my_min(int a, int b)
{
    if (a<b)
        return a;
    else
        return b;
};
```

Listing 1.135: Non-optimizing MSVC 2013

```
_a$ = 8
_b$ = 12
_my_min PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; compare A and B:
    cmp     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
; jump, if A is greater or equal to B:
    jge     SHORT $LN2@my_min
; reload A to EAX if otherwise and jump to exit
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
        jmp    SHORT $LN3@my_min
        jmp    SHORT $LN3@my_min ; this is redundant JMP
$LN2@my_min:
; return B
        mov    eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
$LN3@my_min:
        pop    ebp
        ret    0
_my_min ENDP

_a$ = 8
_b$ = 12
_my_max PROC
        push   ebp
        mov    ebp, esp
        mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; compare A and B:
        cmp    eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
; jump if A is less or equal to B:
        jle    SHORT $LN2@my_max
; reload A to EAX if otherwise and jump to exit
        mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
        jmp    SHORT $LN3@my_max
        jmp    SHORT $LN3@my_max ; this is redundant JMP
$LN2@my_max:
; return B
        mov    eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
$LN3@my_max:
        pop    ebp
        ret    0
_my_max ENDP

```

These two functions differ only in the conditional jump instruction: JGE (“Jump if Greater or Equal”) is used in the first one and JLE (“Jump if Less or Equal”) in the second.

There is one unneeded JMP instruction in each function, which MSVC presumably left by mistake.

Branchless

ARM for Thumb mode reminds us of x86 code:

Listing 1.136: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

my_max PROC
; R0=A
; R1=B
; compare A and B:
    CMP    r0,r1
; branch if A is greater than B:
    BGT    |L0.6|

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; otherwise (A<=B) return R1 (B):
    MOVS      r0,r1
|L0.6|
; return
    BX       lr
    ENDP

my_min PROC
; R0=A
; R1=B
; compare A and B:
    CMP      r0,r1
; branch if A is less than B:
    BLT      |L0.14|
; otherwise (A>=B) return R1 (B):
    MOVS      r0,r1
|L0.14|
; return
    BX       lr
    ENDP

```

The functions differ in the branching instruction: BGT and BLT. It's possible to use conditional suffixes in ARM mode, so the code is shorter.

MOVcc is to be executed only if the condition is met:

Listing 1.137: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

my_max PROC
; R0=A
; R1=B
; compare A and B:
    CMP      r0,r1
; return B instead of A by placing B in R0
; this instruction will trigger only if A<=B (hence, LE - Less or Equal)
; if instruction is not triggered (in case of A>B),
; A is still in R0 register
    MOVLE    r0,r1
    BX       lr
    ENDP

my_min PROC
; R0=A
; R1=B
; compare A and B:
    CMP      r0,r1
; return B instead of A by placing B in R0
; this instruction will trigger only if A>=B (hence, GE - Greater or Equal)
; if instruction is not triggered (in case of A<B),
; A value is still in R0 register
    MOVGE    r0,r1
    BX       lr
    ENDP

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 and optimizing MSVC 2013 can use CMOVcc instruction, which is analogous to MOVcc in ARM:

Listing 1.138: Optimizing MSVC 2013

```
my_max:
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
; EDX=A
; EAX=B
; compare A and B:
    cmp     edx, eax
; if A>=B, load A value into EAX
; the instruction idle if otherwise (if A<B)
    cmovge eax, edx
    ret

my_min:
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
; EDX=A
; EAX=B
; compare A and B:
    cmp     edx, eax
; if A<=B, load A value into EAX
; the instruction idle if otherwise (if A>B)
    cmovle eax, edx
    ret
```

64-bit

```
#include <stdint.h>

int64_t my_max(int64_t a, int64_t b)
{
    if (a>b)
        return a;
    else
        return b;
};

int64_t my_min(int64_t a, int64_t b)
{
    if (a<b)
        return a;
    else
        return b;
};
```

There is some unneeded value shuffling, but the code is comprehensible:

Listing 1.139: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

my_max:
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    str    x0, [sp,8]
    str    x1, [sp]
    ldr    x1, [sp,8]
    ldr    x0, [sp]
    cmp    x1, x0
    ble   .L2
    ldr    x0, [sp,8]
    b     .L3
.L2:
    ldr    x0, [sp]
.L3:
    add    sp, sp, 16
    ret

my_min:
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    str    x0, [sp,8]
    str    x1, [sp]
    ldr    x1, [sp,8]
    ldr    x0, [sp]
    cmp    x1, x0
    bge   .L5
    ldr    x0, [sp,8]
    b     .L6
.L5:
    ldr    x0, [sp]
.L6:
    add    sp, sp, 16
    ret

```

Branchless

No need to load function arguments from the stack, as they are already in the registers:

Listing 1.140: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```

my_max:
; RDI=A
; RSI=B
; compare A and B:
    cmp    rdi, rsi
; prepare B in RAX for return:
    mov    rax, rsi
; if A>=B, put A (RDI) in RAX for return.
; this instruction is idle if otherwise (if A<B), and B is left in RAX
    cmovge rax, rdi
    ret

my_min:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; RDI=A
; RSI=B
; compare A and B:
    cmp    rdi, rsi
; prepare B in RAX for return:
    mov    rax, rsi
; if A<=B, put A (RDI) in RAX for return.
; this instruction is idle if otherwise (if A>B), and B is left in RAX
    cmovle rax, rdi
    ret

```

MSVC 2013 does almost the same.

ARM64 has the CSEL instruction, which works just as M0Vcc in ARM or CM0Vcc in x86, just the name is different: “Conditional SELect”.

Listing 1.141: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```

my_max:
; X0=A
; X1=B
; compare A and B:
    cmp    x0, x1
; select X0 (A) to X0 if X0>=X1 or A>=B (Greater or Equal)
; select X1 (B) to X0 if A<B
    csel   x0, x0, x1, ge
    ret

my_min:
; X0=A
; X1=B
; compare A and B:
    cmp    x0, x1
; select X0 (A) to X0 if X0<=X1 or A<=B (Less or Equal)
; select X1 (B) to X0 if A>B
    csel   x0, x0, x1, le
    ret

```

MIPS

Unfortunately, GCC 4.4.5 for MIPS is not that good:

Listing 1.142: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

my_max:
; set $v1 to 1 if $a1<$a0, or clear otherwise (if $a1>$a0):
    slt    $v1, $a1, $a0
; jump, if $v1 is 0 (or $a1>$a0):
    beqz  $v1, locret_10
; this is branch delay slot
; prepare $a1 in $v0 in case of branch triggered:
    move   $v0, $a1
; no branch triggered, prepare $a0 in $v0:
    move   $v0, $a0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

locret_10:
    jr      $ra
    or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP

; the min() function is same, but input operands
; in SLT instruction are swapped:
my_min:
    slt      $v1, $a0, $a1
    beqz    $v1, locret_28
    move    $v0, $a1
    move    $v0, $a0

locret_28:
    jr      $ra
    or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP

```

Do not forget about the *branch delay slots*: the first MOVE is executed *before* BEQZ, the second MOVE is executed only if the branch hasn't been taken.

1.18.5 Conclusion

x86

Here's the rough skeleton of a conditional jump:

Listing 1.143: x86

```

CMP register, register/value
Jcc true ; cc=condition code
false:
;... some code to be executed if comparison result is false ...
JMP exit
true:
;... some code to be executed if comparison result is true ...
exit:

```

ARM

Listing 1.144: ARM

```

CMP register, register/value
Bcc true ; cc=condition code
false:
;... some code to be executed if comparison result is false ...
JMP exit
true:
;... some code to be executed if comparison result is true ...
exit:

```

MIPS

Listing 1.145: Check for zero

```
BEQZ REG, label
...

```

Listing 1.146: Check for less than zero using pseudoinstruction

```
BLTZ REG, label
...

```

Listing 1.147: Check for equal values

```
BEQ REG1, REG2, label
...

```

Listing 1.148: Check for non-equal values

```
BNE REG1, REG2, label
...

```

Listing 1.149: Check for less than (signed)

```
SLT REG1, REG2, REG3
BEQ REG1, label
...

```

Listing 1.150: Check for less than (unsigned)

```
SLTU REG1, REG2, REG3
BEQ REG1, label
...

```

Branchless

If the body of a condition statement is very short, the conditional move instruction can be used: MOVcc in ARM (in ARM mode), CSEL in ARM64, CMOVcc in x86.

ARM

It's possible to use conditional suffixes in ARM mode for some instructions:

Listing 1.151: ARM (ARM mode)

```
CMP register, register/value
instr1_cc ; some instruction will be executed if condition code is true
instr2_cc ; some other instruction will be executed if other condition code
           is true
...
etc...
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Of course, there is no limit for the number of instructions with conditional code suffixes, as long as the CPU flags are not modified by any of them.

Thumb mode has the IT instruction, allowing to add conditional suffixes to the next four instructions. Read more about it: [1.25.7 on page 324](#).

Listing 1.152: ARM (Thumb mode)

```
CMP register, register/value
ITEEE EQ ; set these suffixes: if-then-else-else
instr1   ; instruction will be executed if condition is true
instr2   ; instruction will be executed if condition is false
instr3   ; instruction will be executed if condition is false
instr4   ; instruction will be executed if condition is false
```

1.18.6 Exercise

(ARM64) Try rewriting the code in listing [1.132](#) by removing all conditional jump instructions and using the CSEL instruction.

1.19 Software cracking

The vast majority of software can be cracked like that — by searching the very place where protection is checked, a dongle ([8.8 on page 1070](#)), license key, serial number, etc.

Often, it looks like:

```
...
call check_protection
jz  all_OK
call message_box_protection_missing
call exit
all_OK:
; proceed
...
```

So if you see a patch (or “crack”), that cracks a software, and that patch replaces 0x74/0x75 (JZ/JNZ) byte(s) by 0xEB (JMP), this is it.

The process of software cracking comes down to a search of that JMP.

There are also cases, when a software checks protection from time to time, this can be a dongle, or a license server can be queried through the Internet. Then you have to look for a function that checks protection. Then to patch it, to put there xor eax, eax / retn, or mov eax, 1 / retn.

It's important to understand that after patching of function beginning, usually, a garbage follows these two instructions. The garbage consists of part of one instruction and the several next instructions.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

This is a real case. The beginning of a function which we want to *replace* by return 1;

Listing 1.153: Before

8BFF	mov	edi,edi
55	push	ebp
8BEC	mov	ebp,esp
81EC68080000	sub	esp,000000868
A110C00001	mov	eax,[00100C010]
33C5	xor	eax,ebp
8945FC	mov	[ebp][-4],eax
53	push	ebx
8B5D08	mov	ebx,[ebp][8]
...		

Listing 1.154: After

B801000000	mov	eax,1
C3	retn	
EC	in	al,dx
68080000A1	push	0A1000008
10C0	adc	al,al
0001	add	[ecx],al
33C5	xor	eax,ebp
8945FC	mov	[ebp][-4],eax
53	push	ebx
8B5D08	mov	ebx,[ebp][8]
...		

Several incorrect instructions appears — IN, PUSH, ADC, ADD, after which, Hiew disassembler (which I just used) synchronized and continued to disassemble all the rest.

This is not important — all these instructions followed RETN will never be executed, unless a direct jump would occur from some place, and that wouldn't be possible in general case.

Also, a global boolean variable can be present, having a flag, was the software registered or not.

```
init_etc proc
...
call check_protection_or_license_file
mov is_demo, eax
...
ret
init_etc endp

...
save_file proc
...
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov  eax, is_demo
cmp  eax, 1
jz   all_OK1

call message_box_it_is_a_demo_no_saving_allowed
retn

:all_OK1
; continue saving file

...
save_proc endp

somewhere_else proc

mov  eax, is_demo
cmp  eax, 1
jz   all_OK

; check if we run for 15 minutes
; exit if it is so
; or show nagging screen

:all_OK2
; continue

somewhere_else endp

```

A beginning of the `check_protection_or_license_file()` function could be patched, so that it will always return 1, or, if this is better by some reason, all JZ/JNZ instructions can be patched as well.

More about patching: [11.1](#).

1.20 Impossible shutdown practical joke (Windows 7)

I don't quite remember how I found the `ExitWindowsEx()` function in Windows 98's (it was late 1990s) `user32.dll` file. Probably, I just spotted its self-describing name. And then I tried to *block* it by patching its beginning by `0xC3` byte (RETN).

The result was funny: Windows 98 cannot be shutted down anymore. Had to press reset button.

These days I tried to do the same in Windows 7, that was created almost 10 years later and based on completely different Windows NT base. Still, `ExitWindowsEx()` function present in `user32.dll` file and serves the same purpose.

First, I turned off *Windows File Protection* by adding this to registry (Windows would silently restore modified system files otherwise):

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
Windows Registry Editor Version 5.00
```

```
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\Winlogon]
"SFCDisable"=dword:fffffff9d
```

Then I renamed c:\windows\system32\user32.dll to user32.dll.bak. I found ExitWindowsEx() export entry using Hiew (IDA can help as well) and put 0xC3 byte here. I restarted by Windows 7 and now it can't be shutdown. "Restart" and "Logoff" buttons don't work anymore.

I don't know if it's funny today or not, but back then, in late 1990s, my friend took patched user32.dll file on a floppy diskette and copied it to all the computers (within his reach, that worked under Windows 98 (almost all)) at his university. No Windows can be shutdown after and his computer science teacher was lurid. (Hopefully he can forgive us if he is reading this right now.)

If you do this, backup everything. The best idea is to run Windows under a virtual machine.

1.21 switch()/case/default

1.21.1 Small number of cases

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f (int a)
{
    switch (a)
    {
        case 0: printf ("zero\n"); break;
        case 1: printf ("one\n"); break;
        case 2: printf ("two\n"); break;
        default: printf ("something unknown\n"); break;
    };
}

int main()
{
    f (2); // test
}
```

x86

Non-optimizing MSVC

Result (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.155: MSVC 2010

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```

tv64 = -4 ; size = 4
_a$ = 8    ; size = 4
_f      PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], eax
    cmp     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 0
    je      SHORT $LN4@f
    cmp     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 1
    je      SHORT $LN3@f
    cmp     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 2
    je      SHORT $LN2@f
    jmp     SHORT $LN1@f
$LN4@f:
    push    OFFSET $SG739 ; 'zero', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    jmp     SHORT $LN7@f
$LN3@f:
    push    OFFSET $SG741 ; 'one', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    jmp     SHORT $LN7@f
$LN2@f:
    push    OFFSET $SG743 ; 'two', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    jmp     SHORT $LN7@f
$LN1@f:
    push    OFFSET $SG745 ; 'something unknown', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
$LN7@f:
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f      ENDP

```

Our function with a few cases in switch() is in fact analogous to this construction:

```

void f (int a)
{
    if (a==0)
        printf ("zero\n");
    else if (a==1)
        printf ("one\n");
    else if (a==2)
        printf ("two\n");
    else
        printf ("something unknown\n");
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

If we work with switch() with a few cases it is impossible to be sure if it was a real switch() in the source code, or just a pack of if() statements.

This implies that switch() is like syntactic sugar for a large number of nested if()s.

There is nothing especially new to us in the generated code, with the exception of the compiler moving input variable *a* to a temporary local variable tv64 ⁹³.

If we compile this in GCC 4.4.1, we'll get almost the same result, even with maximal optimization turned on (-O3 option).

Optimizing MSVC

Now let's turn on optimization in MSVC (/Ox): cl 1.c /Fa1.asm /Ox

Listing 1.156: MSVC

```
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f    PROC
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    sub    eax, 0
    je     SHORT $LN4@f
    sub    eax, 1
    je     SHORT $LN3@f
    sub    eax, 1
    je     SHORT $LN2@f
    mov    DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG791 ; 'something unknown', 0aH,
    00H
    jmp    _printf
$LN2@f:
    mov    DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG789 ; 'two', 0aH, 00H
    jmp    _printf
$LN3@f:
    mov    DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG787 ; 'one', 0aH, 00H
    jmp    _printf
$LN4@f:
    mov    DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG785 ; 'zero', 0aH, 00H
    jmp    _printf
_f    ENDP
```

Here we can see some dirty hacks.

First: the value of *a* is placed in EAX and 0 is subtracted from it. Sounds absurd, but it is done to check if the value in EAX is 0. If yes, the ZF flag is to be set (e.g. subtracting from 0 is 0) and the first conditional jump JE (*Jump if Equal* or synonym JZ —*Jump if Zero*) is to be triggered and control flow is to be passed to the \$LN4@f label, where the 'zero' message is being printed. If the first jump doesn't get triggered, 1 is subtracted from the input value and if at some stage the result is 0, the corresponding jump is to be triggered.

And if no jump gets triggered at all, the control flow passes to printf() with string argument

⁹³Local variables in stack are prefixed with tv—that's how MSVC names internal variables for its needs

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

'something unknown'.

Second: we see something unusual for us: a string pointer is placed into the *a* variable, and then `printf()` is called not via `CALL`, but via `JMP`. There is a simple explanation for that: the `caller` pushes a value to the stack and calls our function via `CALL`. `CALL` itself pushes the return address (`RA`) to the stack and does an unconditional jump to our function address. Our function at any point of execution (since it does not contain any instruction that moves the stack pointer) has the following stack layout:

- `ESP`—points to `RA`
- `ESP+4`—points to the *a* variable

On the other side, when we have to call `printf()` here we need exactly the same stack layout, except for the first `printf()` argument, which needs to point to the string. And that is what our code does.

It replaces the function's first argument with the address of the string and jumps to `printf()`, as if we didn't call our function `f()`, but directly `printf()`. `printf()` prints a string to `stdout` and then executes the `RET` instruction, which `POPs RA` from the stack and control flow is returned not to `f()` but rather to `f()`'s `caller`, bypassing the end of the `f()` function.

All this is possible because `printf()` is called right at the end of the `f()` function in all cases. In some way, it is similar to the `longjmp()`⁹⁴ function. And of course, it is all done for the sake of speed.

A similar case with the ARM compiler is described in “`printf()` with several arguments” section, here ([1.11.2 on page 71](#)).

⁹⁴ [wikipedia](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

OllyDbg

Since this example is tricky, let's trace it in OllyDbg.

OllyDbg can detect such switch() constructs, and it can add some useful comments. EAX is 2 at the beginning, that's the function's input value:

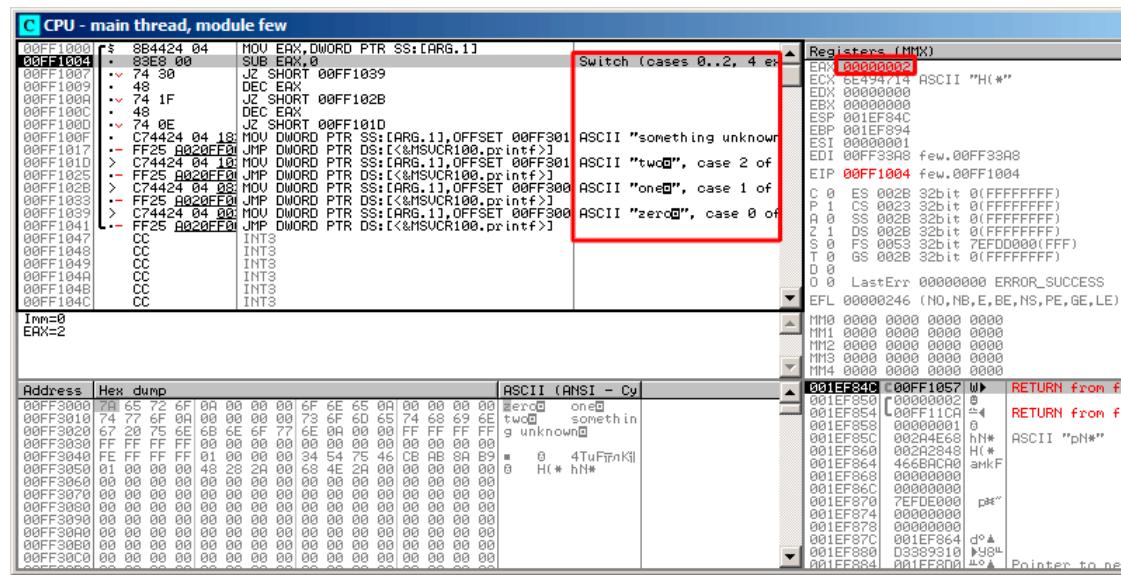


Figure 1.42: OllyDbg: EAX now contain the first (and only) function argument

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

0 is subtracted from 2 in EAX. Of course, EAX still contains 2. But the ZF flag is now 0, indicating that the resulting value is non-zero:

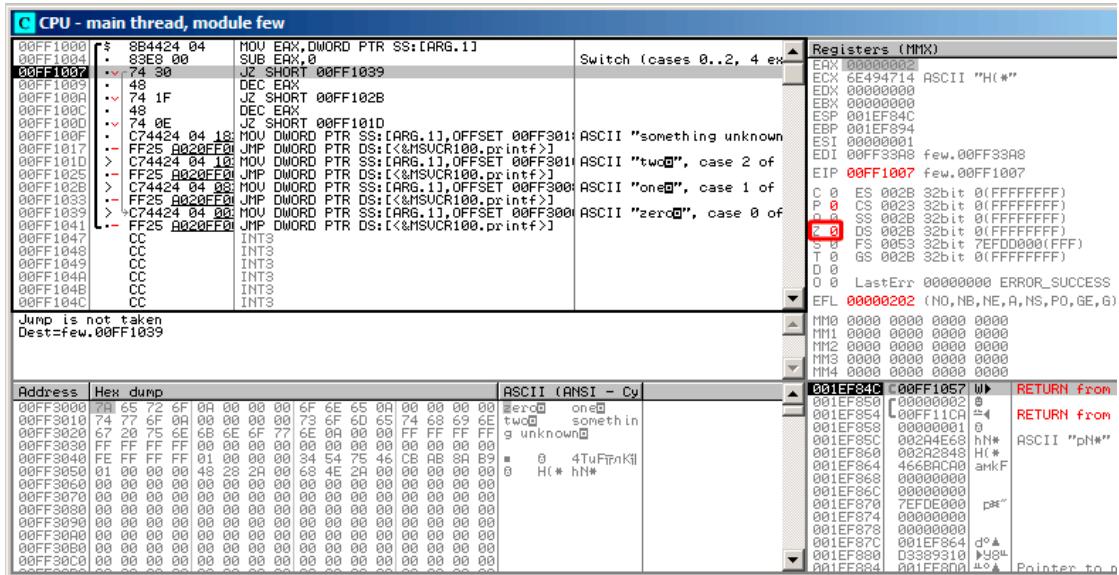


Figure 1.43: OllyDbg: SUB executed

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

DEC is executed and EAX now contains 1. But 1 is non-zero, so the ZF flag is still 0:

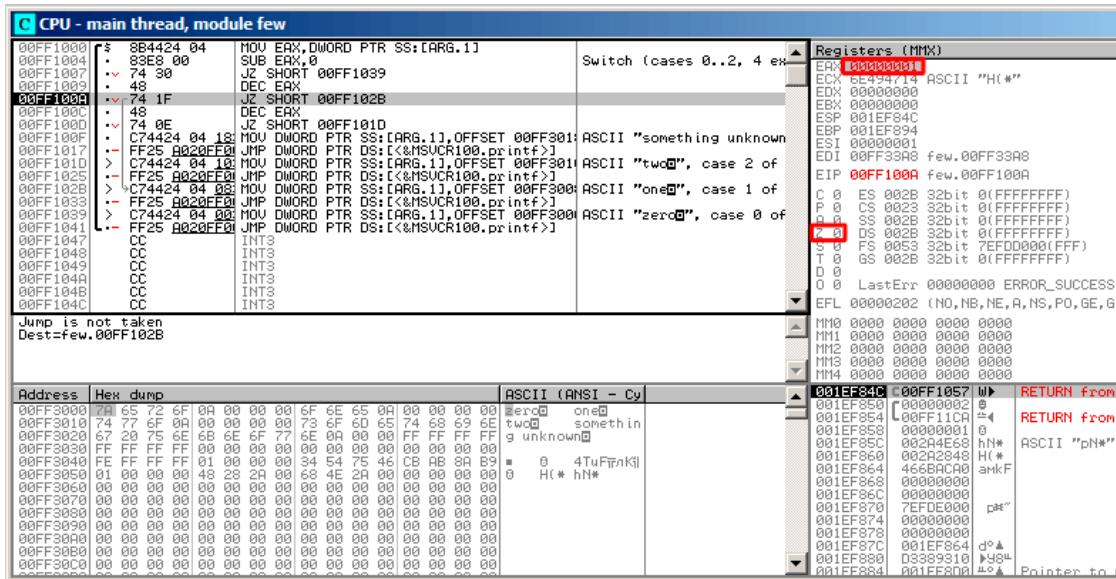


Figure 1.44: OllyDbg: first DEC executed

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Next DEC is executed. EAX is finally 0 and the ZF flag gets set, because the result is zero:

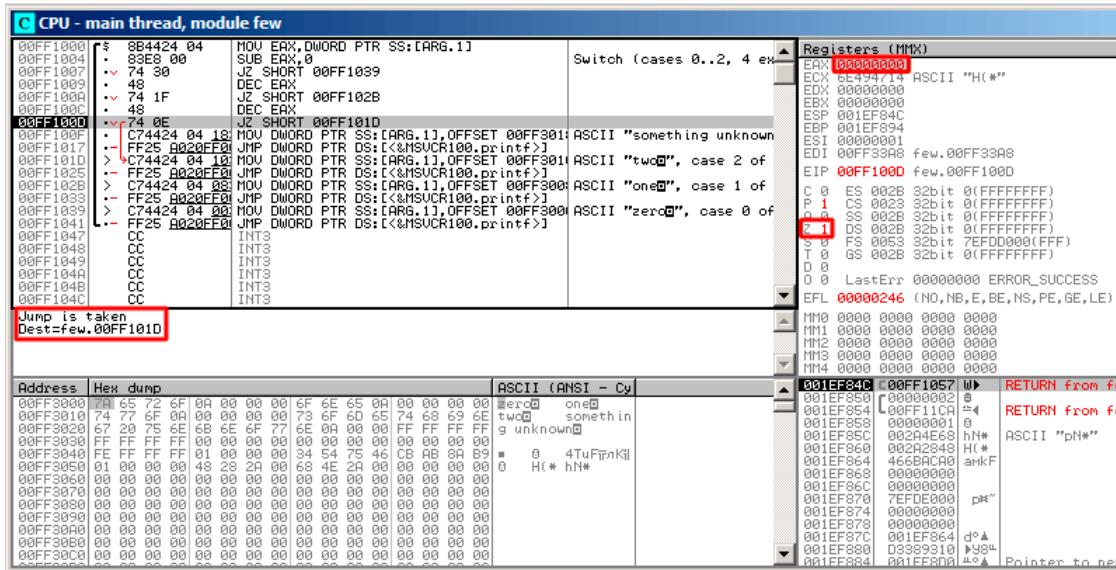


Figure 1.45: OllyDbg: second DEC executed

OllyDbg shows that this jump is to be taken now.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

A pointer to the string “two” is to be written into the stack now:

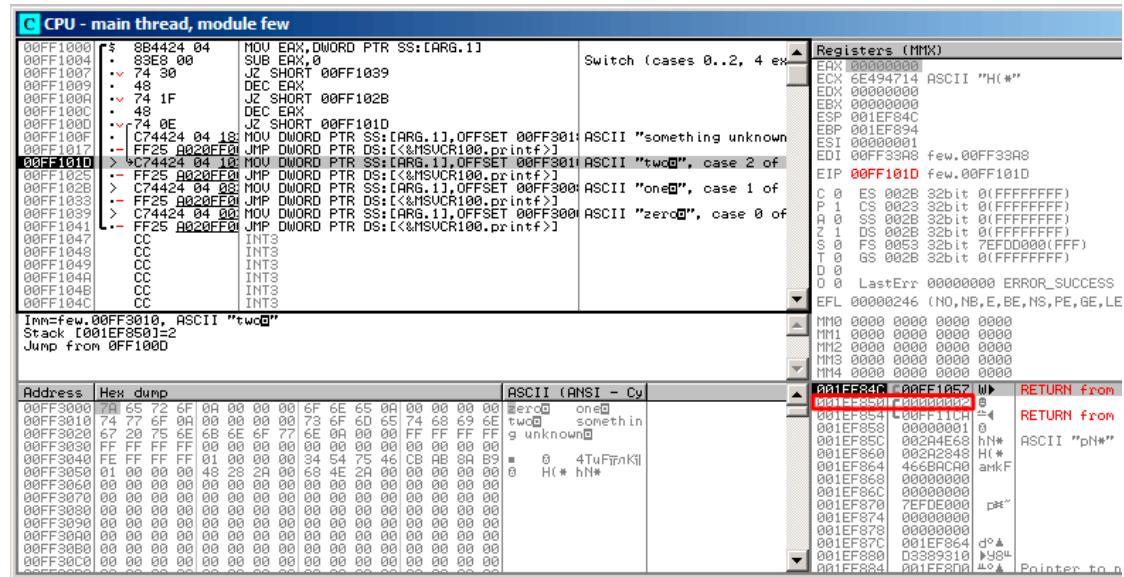


Figure 1.46: OllyDbg: pointer to the string is to be written at the place of the first argument

Please note: the current argument of the function is 2 and 2 is now in the stack at the address 0x001EF850.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

MOV writes the pointer to the string at address 0x001EF850 (see the stack window). Then, jump happens. This is the first instruction of the `printf()` function in MSVCR100.DLL (This example was compiled with /MD switch):

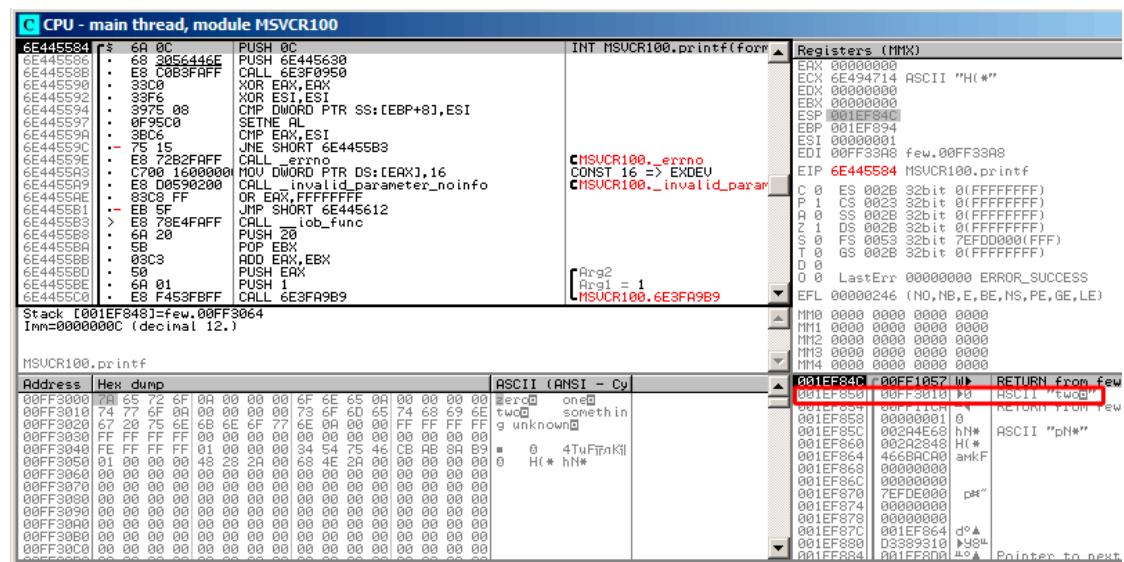


Figure 1.47: OllyDbg: first instruction of `printf()` in MSVCR100.DLL

Now `printf()` treats the string at 0x00FF3010 as its only argument and prints the string.

This is the last instruction of `printf()`:

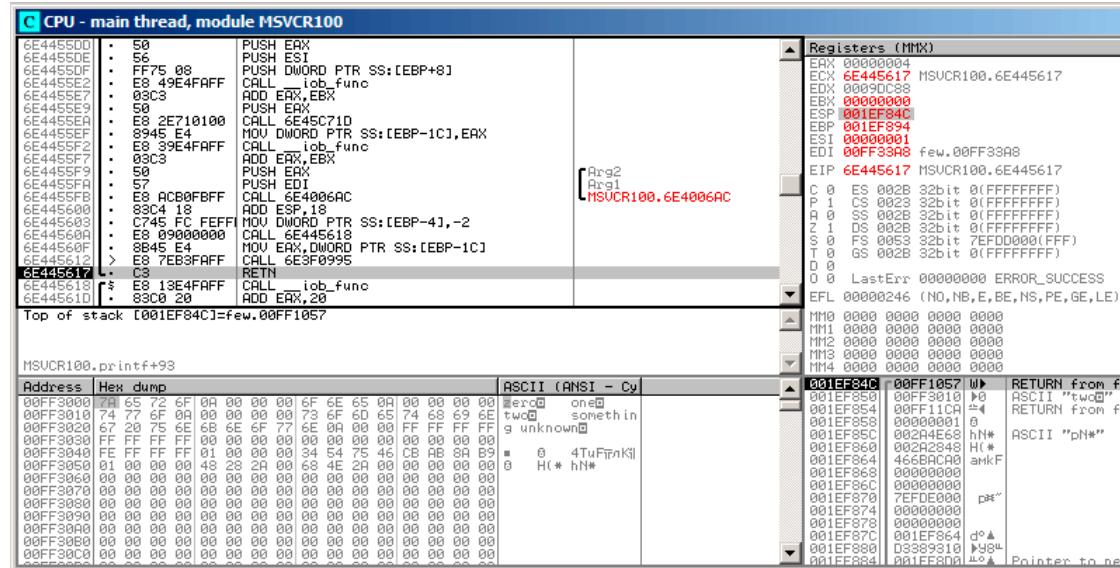


Figure 1.48: OllyDbg: last instruction of `printf()` in MSVCR100.DLL

The string “two” has just been printed to the console window.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Now let's press F7 or F8 (step over) and return...not to f(), but rather to main():

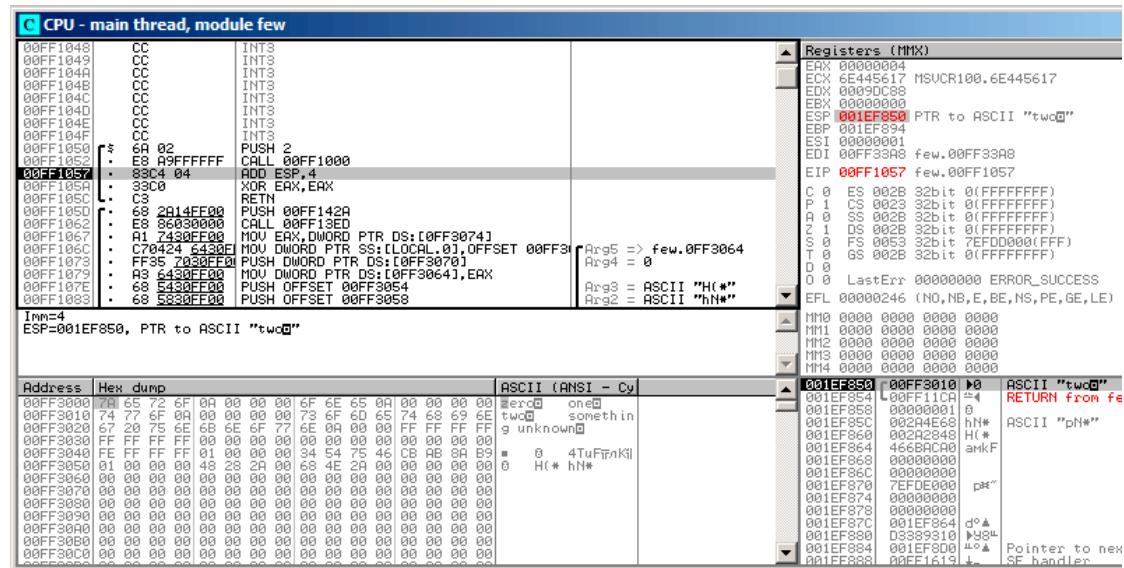


Figure 1.49: OllyDbg: return to main()

Yes, the jump has been direct, from the guts of printf() to main(). Because RA in the stack points not to some place in f(), but rather to main(). And CALL 0x00FF1000 has been the actual instruction which called f().

ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
.text:0000014C          f1:
.text:0000014C 00 00 50 E3    CMP      R0, #0
.text:00000150 13 0E 8F 02    ADREQ   R0, aZero ; "zero\n"
.text:00000154 05 00 00 0A    BEQ     loc_170
.text:00000158 01 00 50 E3    CMP      R0, #1
.text:0000015C 4B 0F 8F 02    ADREQ   R0, aOne ; "one\n"
.text:00000160 02 00 00 0A    BEQ     loc_170
.text:00000164 02 00 50 E3    CMP      R0, #2
.text:00000168 4A 0F 8F 12    ADRNE   R0, aSomethingUnkno ; "something
                                unknown\n"
.text:0000016C 4E 0F 8F 02    ADREQ   R0, aTwo ; "two\n"
.text:00000170
.text:00000170          loc_170: ; CODE XREF: f1+8
                                ; f1+14
.text:00000170 78 18 00 EA    B       __2printf
```

Again, by investigating this code we cannot say if it was a switch() in the original source code, or just a pack of if() statements.

Anyway, we see here predicated instructions again (like ADREQ (*Equal*)) which is triggered only in case $R0 = 0$, and then loads the address of the string «zero\n» into R0.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The next instruction **BEQ** redirects control flow to `loc_170`, if $R0 = 0$.

An astute reader may ask, will **BEQ** trigger correctly since ADREQ it has already filled the R0 register before with another value?

Yes, it will since **BEQ** checks the flags set by the CMP instruction, and ADREQ does not modify any flags at all.

The rest of the instructions are already familiar to us. There is only one call to `printf()`, at the end, and we have already examined this trick here ([1.11.2 on page 71](#)). At the end, there are three paths to `printf()`.

The last instruction, `CMP R0, #2`, is needed to check if $a = 2$.

If it is not true, then ADRNE loads a pointer to the string «*something unknown \n*» into R0, since a has already been checked to be equal to 0 or 1, and we can sure that the a variable is not equal to these numbers at this point. And if $R0 = 2$, a pointer to the string «*two\n*» will be loaded by ADREQ into R0.

ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```
.text:000000D4          f1:
.text:000000D4 10 B5    PUSH   {R4,LR}
.text:000000D6 00 28    CMP    R0, #0
.text:000000D8 05 D0    BEQ    zero_case
.text:000000DA 01 28    CMP    R0, #1
.text:000000DC 05 D0    BEQ    one_case
.text:000000DE 02 28    CMP    R0, #2
.text:000000E0 05 D0    BEQ    two_case
.text:000000E2 91 A0    ADR    R0, aSomethingUnkno ; "something
                        unknown\n"
.text:000000E4 04 E0    B      default_case

.text:000000E6          zero_case: ; CODE XREF: f1+4
.text:000000E6 95 A0    ADR    R0, aZero ; "zero\n"
.text:000000E8 02 E0    B      default_case

.text:000000EA          one_case: ; CODE XREF: f1+8
.text:000000EA 96 A0    ADR    R0, aOne ; "one\n"
.text:000000EC 00 E0    B      default_case

.text:000000EE          two_case: ; CODE XREF: f1+C
.text:000000EE 97 A0    ADR    R0, aTwo ; "two\n"
.text:000000F0          default_case ; CODE XREF: f1+10
                        ; f1+14
.text:000000F0 06 F0 7E F8  BL     _2printf
.text:000000F4 10 BD    POP   {R4,PC}
```

As was already mentioned, it is not possible to add conditional predicates to most instructions in Thumb mode, so the Thumb-code here is somewhat similar to the easily understandable x86 **CISC**-style code.

ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.LC12:    .string "zero"
.LC13:    .string "one"
.LC14:    .string "two"
.LC15:    .string "something unknown"
f12:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
    add    x29, sp, 0
    str    w0, [x29,28]
    ldr    w0, [x29,28]
    cmp    w0, 1
    beq    .L34
    cmp    w0, 2
    beq    .L35
    cmp    w0, wzr
    bne    .L38           ; jump to default label
    adrp   x0, .LC12       ; "zero"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC12
    bl     puts
    b     .L32
.L34:
    adrp   x0, .LC13       ; "one"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC13
    bl     puts
    b     .L32
.L35:
    adrp   x0, .LC14       ; "two"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC14
    bl     puts
    b     .L32
.L38:
    adrp   x0, .LC15       ; "something unknown"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC15
    bl     puts
    nop
.L32:
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32
    ret

```

The type of the input value is *int*, hence register W0 is used to hold it instead of the whole X0 register.

The string pointers are passed to `puts()` using an ADRP/ADD instructions pair just like it was demonstrated in the “Hello, world!” example: [1.5.3 on page 32](#).

ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

f12:
    cmp    w0, 1

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    beq    .L31
    cmp    w0, 2
    beq    .L32
    cbz    w0, .L35
; default case
    adrp   x0, .LC15      ; "something unknown"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC15
    b     puts
.L35:
    adrp   x0, .LC12      ; "zero"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC12
    b     puts
.L32:
    adrp   x0, .LC14      ; "two"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC14
    b     puts
.L31:
    adrp   x0, .LC13      ; "one"
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC13
    b     puts

```

Better optimized piece of code. CBZ (*Compare and Branch on Zero*) instruction does jump if W0 is zero. There is also a direct jump to `puts()` instead of calling it, like it was explained before: [1.21.1 on page 197](#).

MIPS

Listing 1.157: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

f:
; is it 1?
    lui    $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
    li     $v0, 1
    beq   $a0, $v0, loc_60
    la    $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF) ; branch delay slot
; is it 2?
    li     $v0, 2
    beq   $a0, $v0, loc_4C
    or    $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
; jump, if not equal to 0:
    bnez $a0, loc_38
    or    $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
; zero case:
    lui    $a0, ($LC0 >> 16) # "zero"
    lw    $t9, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
    or    $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
    jr    $t9 ; branch delay slot, NOP
    la    $a0, ($LC0 & 0xFFFF) # "zero" ; branch delay slot

loc_38:                      # CODE XREF: f+1C
    lui    $a0, ($LC3 >> 16) # "something unknown"
    lw    $t9, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
    or    $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

jr    $t9
la    $a0, ($LC3 & 0xFFFF) # "something unknown" ; branch
delay slot

loc_4C:                      # CODE XREF: f+14
    lui   $a0, ($LC2 >> 16) # "two"
    lw    $t9, ($puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
    or    $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
    jr    $t9
    la    $a0, ($LC2 & 0xFFFF) # "two" ; branch delay slot

loc_60:                      # CODE XREF: f+8
    lui   $a0, ($LC1 >> 16) # "one"
    lw    $t9, ($puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
    or    $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
    jr    $t9
    la    $a0, ($LC1 & 0xFFFF) # "one" ; branch delay slot

```

The function always ends with calling `puts()`, so here we see a jump to `puts()` (JR: “Jump Register”) instead of “jump and link”. We talked about this earlier: [1.21.1 on page 197](#).

We also often see NOP instructions after LW ones. This is “load delay slot”: another *delay slot* in MIPS.

An instruction next to LW may execute at the moment while LW loads value from memory.

However, the next instruction must not use the result of LW.

Modern MIPS CPUs have a feature to wait if the next instruction uses result of LW, so this is somewhat outdated, but GCC still adds NOPs for older MIPS CPUs. In general, it can be ignored.

Conclusion

A `switch()` with few cases is indistinguishable from an *if/else* construction, for example: [listing.1.21.1](#).

1.21.2 A lot of cases

If a `switch()` statement contains a lot of cases, it is not very convenient for the compiler to emit too large code with a lot JE/JNE instructions.

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f (int a)
{
    switch (a)
    {
    case 0: printf ("zero\n"); break;
    case 1: printf ("one\n"); break;
    case 2: printf ("two\n"); break;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    case 3: printf ("three\n"); break;
    case 4: printf ("four\n"); break;
    default: printf ("something unknown\n"); break;
}
};

int main()
{
    f (2); // test
};

```

x86**Non-optimizing MSVC**

We get (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.158: MSVC 2010

```

tv64 = -4 ; size = 4
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], eax
    cmp     DWORD PTR tv64[ebp], 4
    ja      SHORT $LN1@f
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR tv64[ebp]
    jmp     DWORD PTR $LN11@f[ecx*4]
$LN6@f:
    push    OFFSET $SG739 ; 'zero', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    jmp     SHORT $LN9@f
$LN5@f:
    push    OFFSET $SG741 ; 'one', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    jmp     SHORT $LN9@f
$LN4@f:
    push    OFFSET $SG743 ; 'two', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    jmp     SHORT $LN9@f
$LN3@f:
    push    OFFSET $SG745 ; 'three', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    jmp     SHORT $LN9@f
$LN2@f:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push  OFFSET $SG747 ; 'four', 0aH, 00H
call  _printf
add   esp, 4
jmp   SHORT $LN9@f
$LN1@f:
push  OFFSET $SG749 ; 'something unknown', 0aH, 00H
call  _printf
add   esp, 4
$LN9@f:
mov   esp, ebp
pop   ebp
ret   0
npad  2 ; align next label
$LN11@f:
DD    $LN6@f ; 0
DD    $LN5@f ; 1
DD    $LN4@f ; 2
DD    $LN3@f ; 3
DD    $LN2@f ; 4
_f    ENDP

```

What we see here is a set of `printf()` calls with various arguments. All they have not only addresses in the memory of the process, but also internal symbolic labels assigned by the compiler. All these labels are also mentioned in the `$LN11@f` internal table.

At the function start, if `a` is greater than 4, control flow is passed to label `$LN1@f`, where `printf()` with argument 'something unknown' is called.

But if the value of `a` is less or equals to 4, then it gets multiplied by 4 and added with the `$LN11@f` table address. That is how an address inside the table is constructed, pointing exactly to the element we need. For example, let's say `a` is equal to 2. $2 * 4 = 8$ (all table elements are addresses in a 32-bit process and that is why all elements are 4 bytes wide). The address of the `$LN11@f` table + 8 is the table element where the `$LN4@f` label is stored. JMP fetches the `$LN4@f` address from the table and jumps to it.

This table is sometimes called *jumptable* or *branch table*⁹⁵.

Then the corresponding `printf()` is called with argument 'two'. Literally, the `jmp DWORD PTR $LN11@f[ecx*4]` instruction implies *jump to the DWORD that is stored at address \$LN11@f + ecx * 4*.

`npad` ([1.7 on page 1333](#)) is an assembly language macro that align the next label so that it will be stored at an address aligned on a 4 bytes (or 16 bytes) boundary. This is very suitable for the processor since it is able to fetch 32-bit values from memory through the memory bus, cache memory, etc., in a more effective way if it is aligned.

⁹⁵The whole method was once called *computed GOTO* in early versions of Fortran: [wikipedia](#). Not quite relevant these days, but what a term!

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

OllyDbg

Let's try this example in OllyDbg. The input value of the function (2) is loaded into EAX:

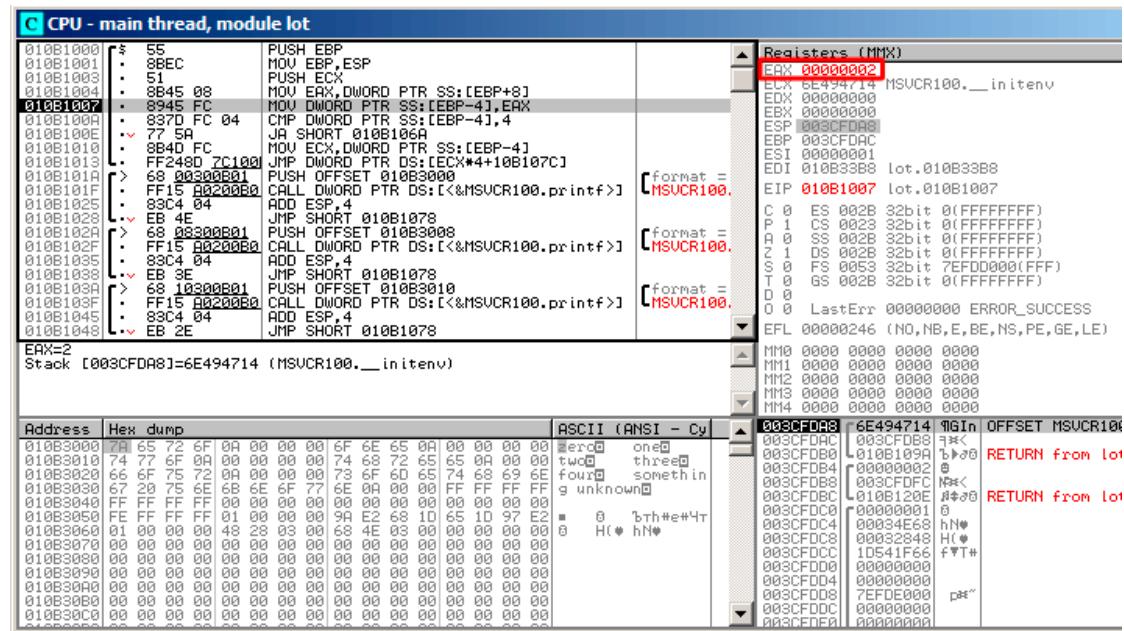


Figure 1.50: OllyDbg: function's input value is loaded in EAX

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The input value is checked, is it bigger than 4? If not, the “default” jump is not taken:

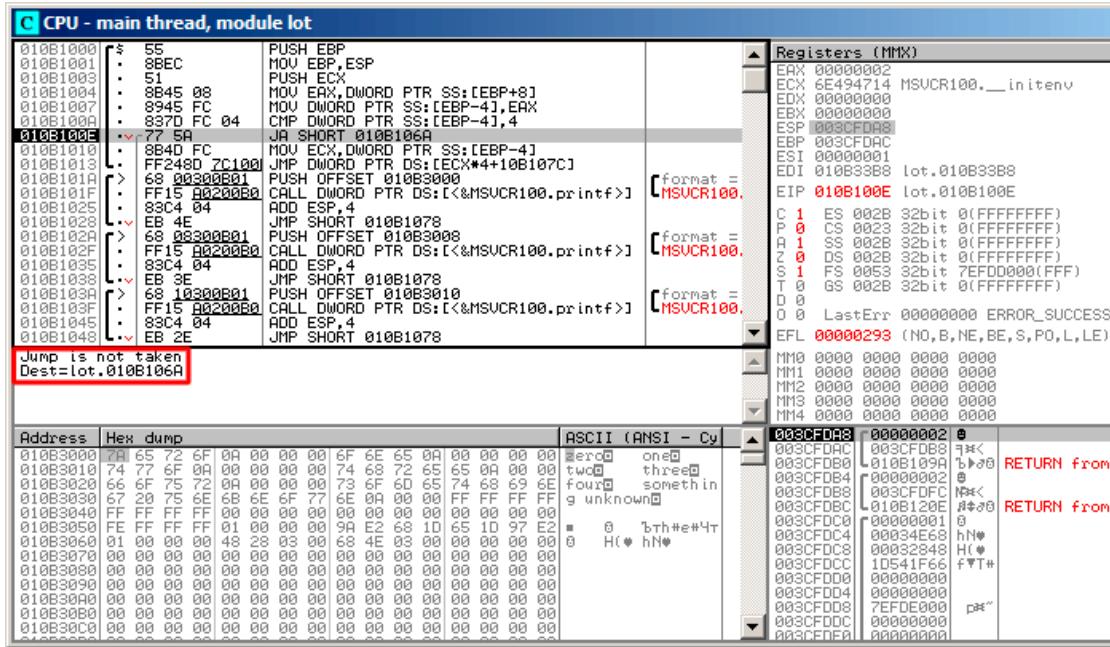


Figure 1.51: OllyDbg: 2 is no bigger than 4: no jump is taken

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Here we see a jumptable:

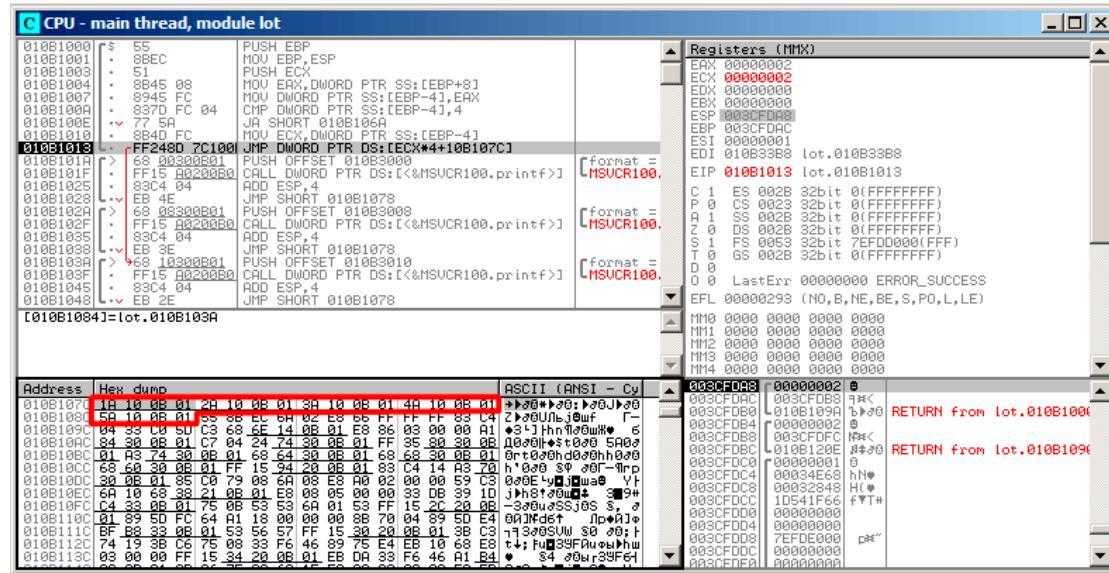


Figure 1.52: OllyDbg: calculating destination address using jumptable

Here we've clicked "Follow in Dump" → "Address constant", so now we see the *jumptable* in the data window. These are 5 32-bit values⁹⁶. ECX is now 2, so the third element (can be indexed as 2^{97}) of the table is to be used. It's also possible to click "Follow in Dump" → "Memory address" and OllyDbg will show the element addressed by the JMP instruction. That's 0x010B103A.

⁹⁶They are underlined by OllyDbg because these are also FIXUPs: [6.5.2 on page 982](#), we are going to come back to them later

⁹⁷About indexing, see also: [3.22.3 on page 768](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

After the jump we are at 0x010B103A: the code printing "two" will now be executed:

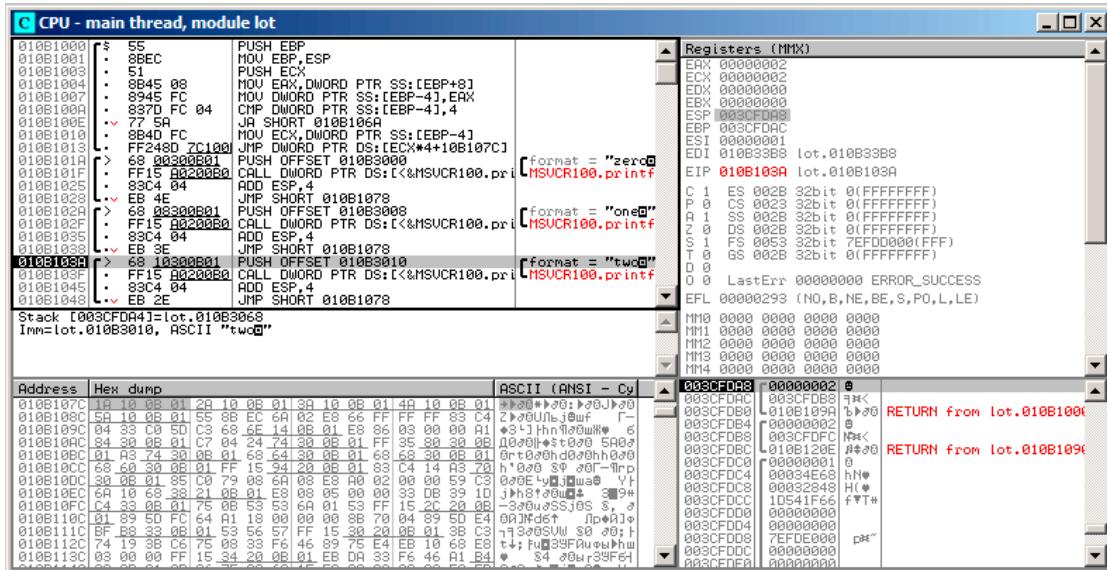


Figure 1.53: OllyDbg: now we at the case: label

Non-optimizing GCC

Let's see what GCC 4.4.1 generates:

Listing 1.159: GCC 4.4.1

```

public f
f      proc near ; CODE XREF: main+10

var_18 = dword ptr -18h
arg_0  = dword ptr  8

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 18h
    cmp     [ebp+arg_0], 4
    ja      short loc_8048444
    mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
    shl     eax, 2
    mov     eax, ds:off_804855C[eax]
    jmp     eax

loc_80483FE: ; DATA XREF: .rodata:off_804855C
    mov     [esp+18h+var_18], offset aZero ; "zero"
    call    _puts
    jmp     short locret_8048450

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

loc_804840C: ; DATA XREF: .rodata:08048560
    mov    [esp+18h+var_18], offset aOne ; "one"
    call   _puts
    jmp    short locret_8048450

loc_804841A: ; DATA XREF: .rodata:08048564
    mov    [esp+18h+var_18], offset aTwo ; "two"
    call   _puts
    jmp    short locret_8048450

loc_8048428: ; DATA XREF: .rodata:08048568
    mov    [esp+18h+var_18], offset aThree ; "three"
    call   _puts
    jmp    short locret_8048450

loc_8048436: ; DATA XREF: .rodata:0804856C
    mov    [esp+18h+var_18], offset aFour ; "four"
    call   _puts
    jmp    short locret_8048450

loc_8048444: ; CODE XREF: f+A
    mov    [esp+18h+var_18], offset aSomethingUnkno ; "something unknown"
    call   _puts

locret_8048450: ; CODE XREF: f+26
                 ; f+34...
    leave
    retn
f      endp

off_804855C dd offset loc_80483FE    ; DATA XREF: f+12
               dd offset loc_804840C
               dd offset loc_804841A
               dd offset loc_8048428
               dd offset loc_8048436

```

It is almost the same, with a little nuance: argument `arg_0` is multiplied by 4 by shifting it to left by 2 bits (it is almost the same as multiplication by 4) ([1.24.2 on page 274](#)). Then the address of the label is taken from the `off_804855C` array, stored in EAX, and then `JMP EAX` does the actual jump.

ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 1.160: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

00000174          f2
00000174 05 00 50 E3  CMP    R0, #5           ; switch 5 cases
00000178 00 F1 8F 30  ADDCC  PC, PC, R0,LSL#2 ; switch jump
0000017C 0E 00 00 EA  B      default_case     ; jumptable 00000178
      default case

00000180
00000180          loc_180 ; CODE XREF: f2+4

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

00000180 03 00 00 EA	B	zero_case	; jumptable 00000178 case 0
00000184			
00000184 04 00 00 EA	B	one_case	; jumptable 00000178 case 1
00000188			
00000188 05 00 00 EA	B	two_case	; jumptable 00000178 case 2
0000018C			
0000018C 06 00 00 EA	B	three_case	; jumptable 00000178 case 3
00000190			
00000190 07 00 00 EA	B	four_case	; jumptable 00000178 case 4
00000194			
00000194 00 8F E2	ADR	R0, aZero	; jumptable 00000178 case 0
00000198 06 00 00 EA	B	loc_1B8	
0000019C			
0000019C 00 8F E2	ADR	R0, aOne	; jumptable 00000178 case 1
000001A0 04 00 00 EA	B	loc_1B8	
000001A4			
000001A4 01 0C 8F E2	ADR	R0, aTwo	; jumptable 00000178 case 2
000001A8 02 00 00 EA	B	loc_1B8	
000001AC			
000001AC 01 0C 8F E2	ADR	R0, aThree	; jumptable 00000178 case 3
000001B0 00 00 00 EA	B	loc_1B8	
000001B4			
000001B4 01 0C 8F E2	ADR	R0, aFour	; jumptable 00000178 case 4
000001B8 00 00 00 EA	B	loc_1B8	; CODE XREF: f2+24
000001B8 66 18 00 EA	B	__2printf	; f2+2C
000001BC			
000001BC		default_case	; CODE XREF: f2+4

```
| 000001BC ; f2+8
| 000001BC D4 00 8F E2 ADR R0, aSomethingUnkno ; jumptable 00000178
|     default case
| 000001C0 FC FF FF EA B loc_1B8
```

This code makes use of the ARM mode feature in which all instructions have a fixed size of 4 bytes.

Let's keep in mind that the maximum value for a is 4 and any greater value will cause «*something unknown\n*» string to be printed.

The first CMP R0, #5 instruction compares the input value of a with 5.

⁹⁸ The next ADDCC PC, PC, R0, LSL#2 instruction is being executed only if $R0 < 5$ ($CC = \text{Carry clear / Less than}$). Consequently, if ADDCC does not trigger (it is a $R0 \geq 5$ case), a jump to *default case label* will occur.

But if $R0 < 5$ and ADDCC triggers, the following is to be happen:

The value in R0 is multiplied by 4. In fact, LSL#2 at the instruction's suffix stands for “shift left by 2 bits”. But as we will see later ([1.24.2 on page 274](#)) in section “Shifts”, shift left by 2 bits is equivalent to multiplying by 4.

Then we add $R0 * 4$ to the current value in **PC**, thus jumping to one of the B (*Branch*) instructions located below.

At the moment of the execution of ADDCC, the value in **PC** is 8 bytes ahead (0x180) than the address at which the ADDCC instruction is located (0x178), or, in other words, 2 instructions ahead.

This is how the pipeline in ARM processors works: when ADDC is executed, the processor at the moment is beginning to process the instruction after the next one, so that is why PC points there. This has to be memorized.

If $a = 0$, then it is to be added to the value in **PC**, and the actual value of the **PC** will be written into **PC** (which is 8 bytes ahead) and a jump to the label *loc_180* will happen, which is 8 bytes ahead of the point where the ADDCC instruction is.

If $a = 1$, then $PC + 8 + a * 4 = PC + 8 + 1 * 4 = PC + 12 = 0x184$ will be written to **PC**, which is the address of the *loc_184* label.

With every 1 added to a , the resulting PC is increased by 4.

4 is the instruction length in ARM mode and also, the length of each B instruction, of which there are 5 in row.

Each of these five B instructions passes control further, to what was programmed in the *switch()*.

Pointer loading of the corresponding string occurs there, etc.

ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

⁹⁸ADD—addition

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Listing 1.161: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

000000F6          EXPORT f2
000000F6          f2
000000F6 10 B5    PUSH   {R4,LR}
000000F8 03 00    MOVS   R3, R0
000000FA 06 F0 69 F8
cases             BL     __ARM_common_switch8_thumb ; switch 6

000000FE 05      DCB 5
000000FF 04 06 08 0A 0C 10  DCB 4, 6, 8, 0xA, 0xC, 0x10 ; jump table for
switch statement
00000105 00      ALIGN 2
00000106
00000106 zero_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000106 8D A0    ADR    R0, aZero ; jumptable 000000FA case 0
00000108 06 E0    B      loc_118

0000010A
0000010A one_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
0000010A 8E A0    ADR    R0, aOne ; jumptable 000000FA case 1
0000010C 04 E0    B      loc_118

0000010E
0000010E two_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
0000010E 8F A0    ADR    R0, aTwo ; jumptable 000000FA case 2
00000110 02 E0    B      loc_118

00000112
00000112 three_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000112 90 A0    ADR    R0, aThree ; jumptable 000000FA case 3
00000114 00 E0    B      loc_118

00000116
00000116 four_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
00000116 91 A0    ADR    R0, aFour ; jumptable 000000FA case 4
00000118
00000118 loc_118 ; CODE XREF: f2+12
00000118        ; f2+16
00000118 06 F0 6A F8    BL     __2printf
0000011C 10 BD    POP    {R4,PC}

0000011E
0000011E default_case ; CODE XREF: f2+4
0000011E 82 A0    ADR    R0, aSomethingUnkno ; jumptable
0000011E default case
00000120 FA E7    B      loc_118

000061D0          EXPORT __ARM_common_switch8_thumb
000061D0          __ARM_common_switch8_thumb ; CODE XREF:
example6_f2+4
000061D0 78 47    BX     PC

000061D2 00 00    ALIGN 4
000061D2          ; End of function __ARM_common_switch8_thumb

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

000061D2
000061D4          _32__ARM_common_switch8_thumb ; CODE XREF:
|   ARM_common_switch8_thumb
000061D4 01 C0 5E E5      LDRB    R12, [LR,#-1]
000061D8 0C 00 53 E1      CMP     R3, R12
000061DC 0C 30 DE 27      LDRCSB  R3, [LR,R12]
000061E0 03 30 DE 37      LDRCCB  R3, [LR,R3]
000061E4 83 C0 8E E0      ADD     R12, LR, R3,LSL#1
000061E8 1C FF 2F E1      BX      R12
000061E8          ; End of function _32__ARM_common_switch8_thumb

```

One cannot be sure that all instructions in Thumb and Thumb-2 modes has the same size. It can even be said that in these modes the instructions have variable lengths, just like in x86.

So there is a special table added that contains information about how much cases are there (not including default-case), and an offset for each with a label to which control must be passed in the corresponding case.

A special function is present here in order to deal with the table and pass control, named `_ARM_common_switch8_thumb`. It starts with `BX PC`, whose function is to switch the processor to ARM-mode. Then you see the function for table processing.

It is too advanced to describe it here now, so let's omit it.

It is interesting to note that the function uses the `LR` register as a pointer to the table.

Indeed, after calling of this function, `LR` contains the address after `BL _ARM_common_switch8_thumb` instruction, where the table starts.

It is also worth noting that the code is generated as a separate function in order to reuse it, so the compiler doesn't generate the same code for every `switch()` statement.

`IDA` successfully perceived it as a service function and a table, and added comments to the labels like

`jumptable 000000FA case 0.`

MIPS

Listing 1.162: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

f:
        lui      $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
; jump to loc_24 if input value is lesser than 5:
        sltiu   $v0, $a0, 5
        bnez   $v0, loc_24
        la      $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF) ; branch delay slot
; input value is greater or equal to 5.
; print "something unknown" and finish:
        lui      $a0, ($LC5 >> 16) # "something unknown"
        lw       $t9, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
        or       $at, $zero ; NOP
        jr      $t9

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

|           la      $a0, ($LC5 & 0xFFFF) # "something unknown" ; branch
| delay slot

loc_24:                                # CODE XREF: f+8
; load address of jumptable
; LA is pseudoinstruction, LUI and ADDIU pair are there in fact:
    la      $v0, off_120
; multiply input value by 4:
    sll     $a0, 2
; sum up multiplied value and jumptable address:
    addu   $a0, $v0, $a0
; load element from jumptable:
    lw      $v0, 0($a0)
    or      $at, $zero ; NOP
; jump to the address we got in jumptable:
    jr      $v0
    or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP

sub_44:                                # DATA XREF: .rodata:0000012C
; print "three" and finish
    lui     $a0, ($LC3 >> 16) # "three"
    lw      $t9, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
    or      $at, $zero ; NOP
    jr      $t9
    la      $a0, ($LC3 & 0xFFFF) # "three" ; branch delay slot

sub_58:                                # DATA XREF: .rodata:00000130
; print "four" and finish
    lui     $a0, ($LC4 >> 16) # "four"
    lw      $t9, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
    or      $at, $zero ; NOP
    jr      $t9
    la      $a0, ($LC4 & 0xFFFF) # "four" ; branch delay slot

sub_6C:                                # DATA XREF: .rodata:off_120
; print "zero" and finish
    lui     $a0, ($LC0 >> 16) # "zero"
    lw      $t9, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
    or      $at, $zero ; NOP
    jr      $t9
    la      $a0, ($LC0 & 0xFFFF) # "zero" ; branch delay slot

sub_80:                                # DATA XREF: .rodata:00000124
; print "one" and finish
    lui     $a0, ($LC1 >> 16) # "one"
    lw      $t9, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)
    or      $at, $zero ; NOP
    jr      $t9
    la      $a0, ($LC1 & 0xFFFF) # "one" ; branch delay slot

sub_94:                                # DATA XREF: .rodata:00000128
; print "two" and finish
    lui     $a0, ($LC2 >> 16) # "two"
    lw      $t9, (puts & 0xFFFF)($gp)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        or      $at, $zero ; NOP
        jr      $t9
        la      $a0, ($LC2 & 0xFFFF) # "two" ; branch delay slot

; may be placed in .rodata section:
off_120:    .word sub_6C
             .word sub_80
             .word sub_94
             .word sub_44
             .word sub_58

```

The new instruction for us is SLTIU (“Set on Less Than Immediate Unsigned”).

This is the same as SLTU (“Set on Less Than Unsigned”), but “I” stands for “immediate”, i.e., a number has to be specified in the instruction itself.

BNEZ is “Branch if Not Equal to Zero”.

Code is very close to the other [ISAs](#). SLL (“Shift Word Left Logical”) does multiplication by 4.

MIPS is a 32-bit CPU after all, so all addresses in the *jumptable* are 32-bit ones.

Conclusion

Rough skeleton of *switch()*:

Listing 1.163: x86

```

MOV REG, input
CMP REG, 4 ; maximal number of cases
JA default
SHL REG, 2 ; find element in table. shift for 3 bits in x64.
MOV REG, jump_table[REG]
JMP REG

case1:
    ; do something
    JMP exit
case2:
    ; do something
    JMP exit
case3:
    ; do something
    JMP exit
case4:
    ; do something
    JMP exit
case5:
    ; do something
    JMP exit

default:
    ...

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

exit:

    ...

jump_table dd case1
    dd case2
    dd case3
    dd case4
    dd case5

```

The jump to the address in the jump table may also be implemented using this instruction:

JMP jump_table[REG*4]. Or JMP jump_table[REG*8] in x64.

A *jump table* is just array of pointers, like the one described later: [1.26.5 on page 354](#).

1.21.3 When there are several case statements in one block

Here is a very widespread construction: several case statements for a single block:

```

#include <stdio.h>

void f(int a)
{
    switch (a)
    {
        case 1:
        case 2:
        case 7:
        case 10:
            printf ("1, 2, 7, 10\n");
            break;
        case 3:
        case 4:
        case 5:
        case 6:
            printf ("3, 4, 5\n");
            break;
        case 8:
        case 9:
        case 20:
        case 21:
            printf ("8, 9, 21\n");
            break;
        case 22:
            printf ("22\n");
            break;
        default:
            printf ("default\n");
            break;
    };
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

};

int main()
{
    f(4);
}

```

It's too wasteful to generate a block for each possible case, so what is usually done is to generate each block plus some kind of dispatcher.

MSVC

Listing 1.164: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

1 $SG2798 DB      '1, 2, 7, 10', 0aH, 00H
2 $SG2800 DB      '3, 4, 5', 0aH, 00H
3 $SG2802 DB      '8, 9, 21', 0aH, 00H
4 $SG2804 DB      '22', 0aH, 00H
5 $SG2806 DB      'default', 0aH, 00H
6
7 _a$ = 8
8 _f     PROC
9      mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
10     dec    eax
11     cmp    eax, 21
12     ja     SHORT $LN1@f
13     movzx  eax, BYTE PTR $LN10@f[eax]
14     jmp    DWORD PTR $LN11@f[eax*4]
15 $LN5@f:
16     mov    DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2798 ; '1, 2, 7, 10'
17     jmp    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
18 $LN4@f:
19     mov    DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2800 ; '3, 4, 5'
20     jmp    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
21 $LN3@f:
22     mov    DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2802 ; '8, 9, 21'
23     jmp    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
24 $LN2@f:
25     mov    DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2804 ; '22'
26     jmp    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
27 $LN1@f:
28     mov    DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4], OFFSET $SG2806 ; 'default'
29     jmp    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
30     npad   2 ; align $LN11@f table on 16-byte boundary
31 $LN11@f:
32     DD    $LN5@f ; print '1, 2, 7, 10'
33     DD    $LN4@f ; print '3, 4, 5'
34     DD    $LN3@f ; print '8, 9, 21'
35     DD    $LN2@f ; print '22'
36     DD    $LN1@f ; print 'default'
37 $LN10@f:
38     DB    0 ; a=1
39     DB    0 ; a=2

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

40      DB    1 ; a=3
41      DB    1 ; a=4
42      DB    1 ; a=5
43      DB    1 ; a=6
44      DB    0 ; a=7
45      DB    2 ; a=8
46      DB    2 ; a=9
47      DB    0 ; a=10
48      DB    4 ; a=11
49      DB    4 ; a=12
50      DB    4 ; a=13
51      DB    4 ; a=14
52      DB    4 ; a=15
53      DB    4 ; a=16
54      DB    4 ; a=17
55      DB    4 ; a=18
56      DB    4 ; a=19
57      DB    2 ; a=20
58      DB    2 ; a=21
59      DB    3 ; a=22
60 _f      ENDP

```

We see two tables here: the first table (\$LN10@f) is an index table, and the second one (\$LN11@f) is an array of pointers to blocks.

First, the input value is used as an index in the index table (line 13).

Here is a short legend for the values in the table: 0 is the first case block (for values 1, 2, 7, 10), 1 is the second one (for values 3, 4, 5), 2 is the third one (for values 8, 9, 21), 3 is the fourth one (for value 22), 4 is for the default block.

There we get an index for the second table of code pointers and we jump to it (line 14).

What is also worth noting is that there is no case for input value 0.

That's why we see the DEC instruction at line 10, and the table starts at $a = 1$, because there is no need to allocate a table element for $a = 0$.

This is a very widespread pattern.

So why is this economical? Why isn't it possible to make it as before ([1.21.2 on page 216](#)), just with one table consisting of block pointers? The reason is that the elements in index table are 8-bit, hence it's all more compact.

GCC

GCC does the job in the way we already discussed ([1.21.2 on page 216](#)), using just one table of pointers.

ARM64: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1

There is no code to be triggered if the input value is 0, so GCC tries to make the jump table more compact and so it starts at 1 as an input value.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

GCC 4.9.1 for ARM64 uses an even cleverer trick. It's able to encode all offsets as 8-bit bytes.

Let's recall that all ARM64 instructions have a size of 4 bytes.

GCC is uses the fact that all offsets in my tiny example are in close proximity to each other. So the jump table consisting of single bytes.

Listing 1.165: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```
f14:
; input value in W0
    sub      w0, w0, #1
    cmp      w0, 21
; branch if less or equal (unsigned):
    bls      .L9
.L2:
; print "default":
    adrp    x0, .LC4
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC4
    b       puts
.L9:
; load jumptable address to X1:
    adrp    x1, .L4
    add     x1, x1, :lo12:.L4
; W0=input_value-1
; load byte from the table:
    ldrb    w0, [x1,w0,uxtw]
; load address of the Lrtx label:
    adr     x1, .Lrtx4
; multiply table element by 4 (by shifting 2 bits left) and add (or subtract)
; to the address of Lrtx:
    add     x0, x1, w0, sxtb #2
; jump to the calculated address:
    br     x0
; this label is pointing in code (text) segment:
.Lrtx4:
    .section      .rodata
; everything after ".section" statement is allocated in the read-only data
; (rodata) segment:
.L4:
    .byte   (.L3 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 1
    .byte   (.L3 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 2
    .byte   (.L5 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 3
    .byte   (.L5 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 4
    .byte   (.L5 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 5
    .byte   (.L5 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 6
    .byte   (.L3 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 7
    .byte   (.L6 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 8
    .byte   (.L6 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 9
    .byte   (.L3 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 10
    .byte   (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 11
    .byte   (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 12
    .byte   (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 13
    .byte   (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 14
    .byte   (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4      ; case 15
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.byte  (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4    ; case 16
.byte  (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4    ; case 17
.byte  (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4    ; case 18
.byte  (.L2 - .Lrtx4) / 4    ; case 19
.byte  (.L6 - .Lrtx4) / 4    ; case 20
.byte  (.L6 - .Lrtx4) / 4    ; case 21
.byte  (.L7 - .Lrtx4) / 4    ; case 22
.text
; everything after ".text" statement is allocated in the code (text) segment:
.L7:
; print "22"
    adrp    x0, .LC3
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC3
    b      puts
.L6:
; print "8, 9, 21"
    adrp    x0, .LC2
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC2
    b      puts
.L5:
; print "3, 4, 5"
    adrp    x0, .LC1
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC1
    b      puts
.L3:
; print "1, 2, 7, 10"
    adrp    x0, .LC0
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
    b      puts
.LC0:
    .string "1, 2, 7, 10"
.LC1:
    .string "3, 4, 5"
.LC2:
    .string "8, 9, 21"
.LC3:
    .string "22"
.LC4:
    .string "default"

```

Let's compile this example to object file and open it in [IDA](#). Here is the jump table:

Listing 1.166: jumptable in IDA

.rodata:0000000000000064	AREA .rodata, DATA, READONLY
.rodata:0000000000000064	; ORG 0x64
.rodata:0000000000000064 \$d	DCB 9 ; case 1
.rodata:0000000000000065	DCB 9 ; case 2
.rodata:0000000000000066	DCB 6 ; case 3
.rodata:0000000000000067	DCB 6 ; case 4
.rodata:0000000000000068	DCB 6 ; case 5
.rodata:0000000000000069	DCB 6 ; case 6
.rodata:000000000000006A	DCB 9 ; case 7
.rodata:000000000000006B	DCB 3 ; case 8

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.rodata:0000000000000006C      DCB    3 ; case 9
.rodata:0000000000000006D      DCB    9 ; case 10
.rodata:0000000000000006E      DCB 0xF7 ; case 11
.rodata:0000000000000006F      DCB 0xF7 ; case 12
.rodata:00000000000000070      DCB 0xF7 ; case 13
.rodata:00000000000000071      DCB 0xF7 ; case 14
.rodata:00000000000000072      DCB 0xF7 ; case 15
.rodata:00000000000000073      DCB 0xF7 ; case 16
.rodata:00000000000000074      DCB 0xF7 ; case 17
.rodata:00000000000000075      DCB 0xF7 ; case 18
.rodata:00000000000000076      DCB 0xF7 ; case 19
.rodata:00000000000000077      DCB    3 ; case 20
.rodata:00000000000000078      DCB    3 ; case 21
.rodata:00000000000000079      DCB    0 ; case 22
.rodata:0000000000000007B ; .rodata ends

```

So in case of 1, 9 is to be multiplied by 4 and added to the address of Lrtx4 label.

In case of 22, 0 is to be multiplied by 4, resulting in 0.

Right after the Lrtx4 label is the L7 label, where you can find the code that prints "22".

There is no jump table in the code segment, it's allocated in a separate .rodata section (there is no special necessity to place it in the code section).

There are also negative bytes (0xF7), they are used for jumping back to the code that prints the "default" string (at .L2).

1.21.4 Fall-through

Another popular usage of switch() operator is so-called "fallthrough". Here is simple example⁹⁹:

```

1 bool is_whitespace(char c) {
2     switch (c) {
3         case ' ': // fallthrough
4         case '\t': // fallthrough
5         case '\r': // fallthrough
6         case '\n':
7             return true;
8         default: // not whitespace
9             return false;
10    }
11 }

```

Slightly harder, from Linux kernel¹⁰⁰:

```

1 char ncol, nco2;

```

⁹⁹Copypasted from https://github.com/azonalon/prgraas/blob/master/prog1lib/lecture_examples/is_whitespace.c

¹⁰⁰Copypasted from <https://github.com/torvalds/linux/blob/master/drivers/media/dvb-frontends/lgdt3306a.c>

```

2
3 void f(int if_freq_khz)
4 {
5
6     switch (if_freq_khz) {
7         default:
8             printf("IF=%d KHz is not supported, 3250 assumed\n",
9                   if_freq_khz);
10            /* fallthrough */
11            case 3250: /* 3.25Mhz */
12                nco1 = 0x34;
13                nco2 = 0x00;
14                break;
15            case 3500: /* 3.50Mhz */
16                nco1 = 0x38;
17                nco2 = 0x00;
18                break;
19            case 4000: /* 4.00Mhz */
20                nco1 = 0x40;
21                nco2 = 0x00;
22                break;
23            case 5000: /* 5.00Mhz */
24                nco1 = 0x50;
25                nco2 = 0x00;
26                break;
27            case 5380: /* 5.38Mhz */
28                nco1 = 0x56;
29                nco2 = 0x14;
30                break;
31        }
32    }

```

Listing 1.167: Optimizing GCC 5.4.0 x86

```

1 .LC0:
2     .string "IF=%d KHz is not supported, 3250 assumed\n"
3 f:
4     sub    esp, 12
5     mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+16]
6     cmp    eax, 4000
7     je     .L3
8     jg     .L4
9     cmp    eax, 3250
10    je    .L5
11    cmp    eax, 3500
12    jne   .L2
13    mov    BYTE PTR nco1, 56
14    mov    BYTE PTR nco2, 0
15    add    esp, 12
16    ret
17 .L4:
18    cmp    eax, 5000
19    je     .L7
20    cmp    eax, 5380

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

21      jne    .L2
22      mov    BYTE PTR nco1, 86
23      mov    BYTE PTR nco2, 20
24      add    esp, 12
25      ret
26 .L2:
27      sub    esp, 8
28      push   eax
29      push   OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
30      call   printf
31      add    esp, 16
32 .L5:
33      mov    BYTE PTR nco1, 52
34      mov    BYTE PTR nco2, 0
35      add    esp, 12
36      ret
37 .L3:
38      mov    BYTE PTR nco1, 64
39      mov    BYTE PTR nco2, 0
40      add    esp, 12
41      ret
42 .L7:
43      mov    BYTE PTR nco1, 80
44      mov    BYTE PTR nco2, 0
45      add    esp, 12
46      ret

```

We can get to .L5 label if there is number 3250 at function's input. But we can get to this label from the other side: we see that there are no jumps between `printf()` call and .L5 label.

Now we can understand why `switch()` statement is sometimes a source of bugs: one forgotten `break` will transform your `switch()` statement into *fallthrough* one, and several blocks will be executed instead of single one.

1.21.5 Exercises

Exercise#1

It's possible to rework the C example in [1.21.2 on page 210](#) in such way that the compiler can produce even smaller code, but will work just the same. Try to achieve it.

1.22 Loops

1.22.1 Simple example

x86

There is a special LOOP instruction in x86 instruction set for checking the value in register ECX and if it is not 0, to `decrement` ECX and pass control flow to the label

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

in the LOOP operand. Probably this instruction is not very convenient, and there are no any modern compilers which emit it automatically. So, if you see this instruction somewhere in code, it is most likely that this is a manually written piece of assembly code.

In C/C++ loops are usually constructed using `for()`, `while()` or `do/while()` statements.

Let's start with `for()`.

This statement defines loop initialization (set loop counter to initial value), loop condition (is the counter bigger than a limit?), what is performed at each iteration ([increment/decrement](#)) and of course loop body.

```
for (initialization; condition; at each iteration)
{
    loop_body;
}
```

The generated code is consisting of four parts as well.

Let's start with a simple example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void printing_function(int i)
{
    printf ("f(%d)\n", i);
};

int main()
{
    int i;

    for (i=2; i<10; i++)
        printing_function(i);

    return 0;
};
```

The result (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.168: MSVC 2010

```
_i$ = -4
_main    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 2      ; loop initialization
    jmp     SHORT $LN3@main
$LN2@main:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp] ; here is what we do after each iteration:
    add     eax, 1                  ; add 1 to (i) value
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
$LN3@main:
    cmp    DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 10 ; this condition is checked before each
iteration
    jge    SHORT $LN1@main        ; if (i) is biggest or equals to 10, lets
finish loop
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp] ; loop body: call printing_function(i)
    push   ecx
    call   _printing_function
    add    esp, 4
    jmp    SHORT $LN2@main        ; jump to loop begin
$LN1@main:                           ; loop end
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main    ENDP
```

As we see, nothing special.

GCC 4.4.1 emits almost the same code, with one subtle difference:

Listing 1.169: GCC 4.4.1

```
main      proc near
var_20    = dword ptr -20h
var_4     = dword ptr -4

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        and     esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
        sub     esp, 20h
        mov     [esp+20h+var_4], 2 ; (i) initializing
        jmp     short loc_8048476

loc_8048465:
        mov     eax, [esp+20h+var_4]
        mov     [esp+20h+var_20], eax
        call   printing_function
        add     [esp+20h+var_4], 1 ; (i) increment

loc_8048476:
        cmp     [esp+20h+var_4], 9
        jle     short loc_8048465 ; if i<=9, continue loop
        mov     eax, 0
        leave
        retn
main    endp
```

Now let's see what we get with optimization turned on (/Ox):

Listing 1.170: Optimizing MSVC

```
_main    PROC
    push   esi
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    esi, 2
$LL3@main:
    push   esi
    call   _printing_function
    inc    esi
    add    esp, 4
    cmp    esi, 10      ; 0000000aH
    jl     SHORT $LL3@main
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    esi
    ret    0
_main    ENDP

```

What happens here is that space for the *i* variable is not allocated in the local stack anymore, but uses an individual register for it, ESI. This is possible in such small functions where there aren't many local variables.

One very important thing is that the *f()* function must not change the value in ESI. Our compiler is sure here. And if the compiler decides to use the ESI register in *f()* too, its value would have to be saved at the function's prologue and restored at the function's epilogue, almost like in our listing: please note PUSH ESI/POP ESI at the function start and end.

Let's try GCC 4.4.1 with maximal optimization turned on (-O3 option):

Listing 1.171: Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```

main          proc near
var_10        = dword ptr -10h

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
    sub    esp, 10h
    mov    [esp+10h+var_10], 2
    call   printing_function
    mov    [esp+10h+var_10], 3
    call   printing_function
    mov    [esp+10h+var_10], 4
    call   printing_function
    mov    [esp+10h+var_10], 5
    call   printing_function
    mov    [esp+10h+var_10], 6
    call   printing_function
    mov    [esp+10h+var_10], 7
    call   printing_function
    mov    [esp+10h+var_10], 8
    call   printing_function
    mov    [esp+10h+var_10], 9
    call   printing_function
    xor    eax, eax
    leave
    retn

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

main	endp
------	------

Huh, GCC just unwound our loop.

[Loop unwinding](#) has an advantage in the cases when there aren't much iterations and we could cut some execution time by removing all loop support instructions. On the other side, the resulting code is obviously larger.

Big unrolled loops are not recommended in modern times, because bigger functions may require bigger cache footprint¹⁰¹.

OK, let's increase the maximum value of the *i* variable to 100 and try again. GCC does:

Listing 1.172: GCC

```

public main
main    proc near

var_20     = dword ptr -20h

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        and     esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
        push    ebx
        mov     ebx, 2      ; i=2
        sub     esp, 1Ch

; aligning label loc_80484D0 (loop body begin) by 16-byte border:
nop

loc_80484D0:
; pass (i) as first argument to printing_function():
        mov     [esp+20h+var_20], ebx
        add     ebx, 1      ; i++
        call    printing_function
        cmp     ebx, 64h    ; i==100?
        jnz    short loc_80484D0 ; if not, continue
        add     esp, 1Ch
        xor     eax, eax    ; return 0
        pop     ebx
        mov     esp, ebp
        pop     ebp
        retn
main    endp

```

It is quite similar to what MSVC 2010 with optimization (/Ox) produce, with the exception that the EBX register is allocated for the *i* variable.

GCC is sure this register will not be modified inside of the f() function, and if it will, it will be saved at the function prologue and restored at epilogue, just like here in

¹⁰¹A very good article about it: [Ulrich Drepper, *What Every Programmer Should Know About Memory*, (2007)]¹⁰². Another recommendations about loop unrolling from Intel are here: [*Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Optimization Reference Manual*, (2014)3.4.1.7].

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

the `main()` function.

x86: OllyDbg

Let's compile our example in MSVC 2010 with `/Ox` and `/Ob0` options and load it into OllyDbg.

It seems that OllyDbg is able to detect simple loops and show them in square brackets, for convenience:

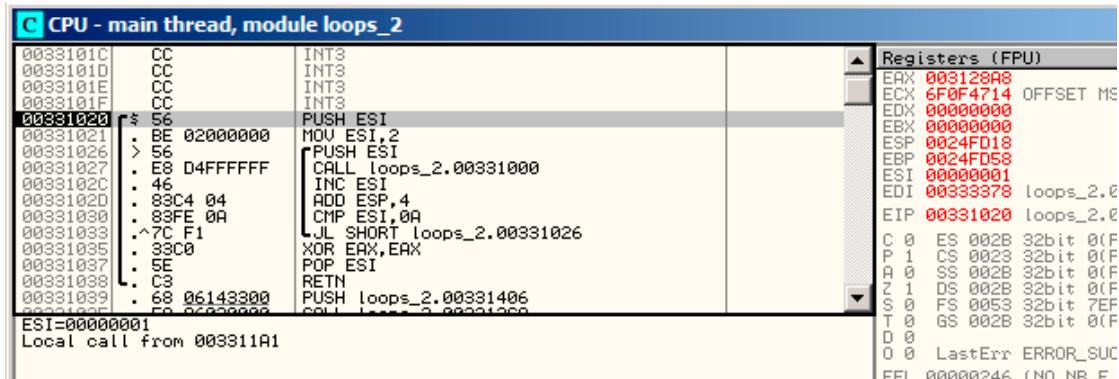


Figure 1.54: OllyDbg: main() begin

By tracing (F8 — step over) we see ESI [incrementing](#). Here, for instance, $ESI = i = 6$:

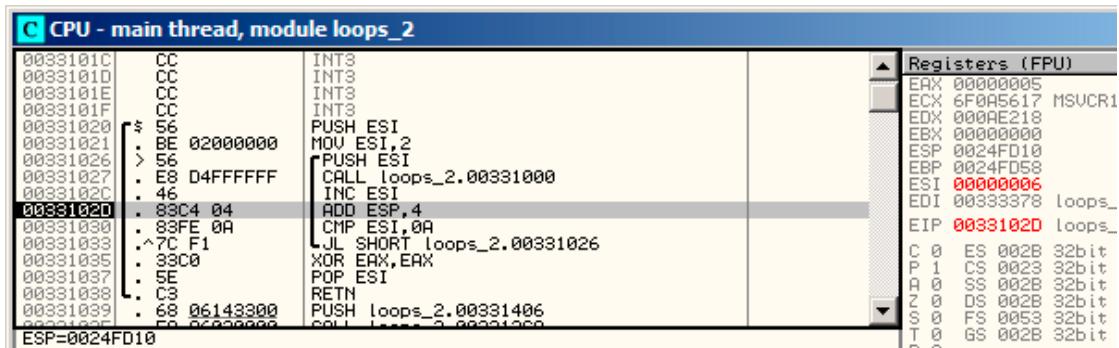


Figure 1.55: OllyDbg: loop body just executed with $i = 6$

9 is the last loop value. That's why JL is not triggering after the [increment](#), and the function will finish:

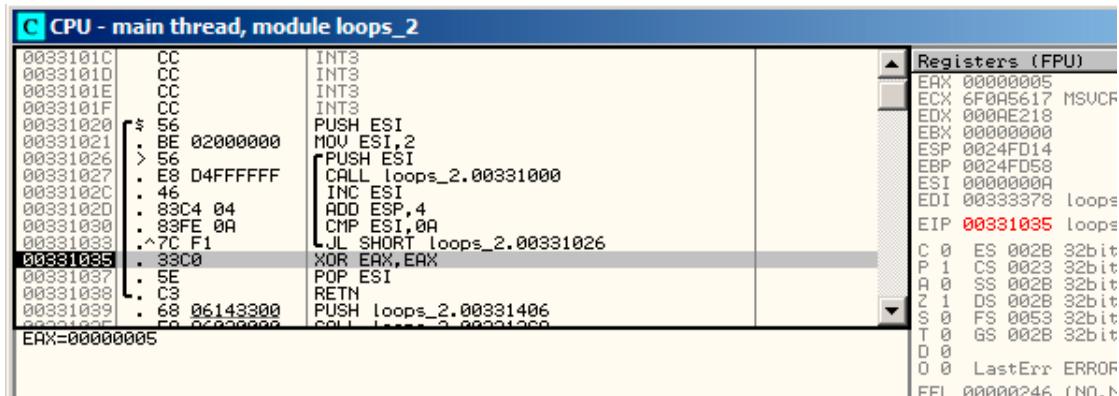


Figure 1.56: OllyDbg: $ESI = 10$, loop end

x86: tracer

As we might see, it is not very convenient to trace manually in the debugger. That's a reason we will try [tracer](#).

We open compiled example in [IDA](#), find the address of the instruction PUSH ESI (passing the sole argument to f()), which is 0x401026 for this case and we run the [tracer](#):

```
tracer.exe -l:loops_2.exe bpx=loops_2.exe!0x00401026
```

BPX just sets a breakpoint at the address and [tracer](#) will then print the state of the registers.

In the tracer.log, this is what we see:

```
PID=12884|New process loops_2.exe
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00a328c8 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0f4714 EDX=0x00000000
ESI=0x00000002 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=PF ZF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000003 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF PF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000004 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF PF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000005 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

FLAGS=CF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000006 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF PF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000007 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000008 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF AF SF IF
(0) loops_2.exe!0x401026
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x6f0a5617 EDX=0x000ee188
ESI=0x00000009 EDI=0x00333378 EBP=0x0024fbfc ESP=0x0024fbb8
EIP=0x00331026
FLAGS=CF PF AF SF IF
PID=12884|Process loops_2.exe exited. ExitCode=0 (0x0)

```

We see how the value of ESI register changes from 2 to 9.

Even more than that, the [tracer](#) can collect register values for all addresses within the function. This is called *trace* there. Every instruction gets traced, all interesting register values are recorded.

Then, an [IDA.idc-script](#) is generated, that adds comments. So, in the [IDA](#) we've learned that the `main()` function address is `0x00401020` and we run:

```
tracer.exe -l:loops_2.exe bpf=loops_2.exe!0x00401020,trace:cc
```

BPF stands for set breakpoint on function.

As a result, we get the `loops_2.exe.idc` and `loops_2.exe_clear.idc` scripts.

We load loops_2.exe.idc into [IDA](#) and see:

```
.text:00401020 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:00401020 _main proc near ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+11D↓p
.text:00401020     argc      = dword ptr  4
.text:00401020     argv      = dword ptr  8
.text:00401020     envp      = dword ptr  0Ch
.text:00401020
.text:00401020     push      esi          ; ESI=1
.text:00401021     mov       esi, 2
.text:00401026 loc_401026:
.text:00401026     push      esi          ; ESI=2..9
.text:00401027     call      sub_401000 ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached,
.text:0040102C     inc       esi          ; ESI=2..9
.text:0040102D     add       esp, 4        ; ESP=0x38fcfc
.text:00401030     cmp       esi, 0Ah      ; ESI=3..0xa
.text:00401033     jl        short loc_401026 ; SF=false,true OF=false
.text:00401035     xor       eax, eax
.text:00401037     pop       esi
.text:00401038     retn      ; EAX=0
.text:00401038 _main endp
```

Figure 1.57: [IDA](#) with .idc-script loaded

We see that ESI can be from 2 to 9 at the start of the loop body, but from 3 to 0xA (10) after the increment. We can also see that main() is finishing with 0 in EAX.

[tracer](#) also generates loops_2.exe.txt, that contains information about how many times each instruction has been executed and register values:

Listing 1.173: loops_2.exe.txt

0x401020 (.text+0x20), e=	1 [PUSH ESI] ESI=1
0x401021 (.text+0x21), e=	1 [MOV ESI, 2]
0x401026 (.text+0x26), e=	8 [PUSH ESI] ESI=2..9
0x401027 (.text+0x27), e=	8 [CALL 8D1000h] tracing nested maximum ↴ ↳ level (1) reached, skipping this CALL 8D1000h=0x8d1000
0x40102c (.text+0x2c), e=	8 [INC ESI] ESI=2..9
0x40102d (.text+0x2d), e=	8 [ADD ESP, 4] ESP=0x38fcfc
0x401030 (.text+0x30), e=	8 [CMP ESI, 0Ah] ESI=3..0xa
0x401033 (.text+0x33), e=	8 [JL 8D1026h] SF=false,true OF=false
0x401035 (.text+0x35), e=	1 [XOR EAX, EAX]
0x401037 (.text+0x37), e=	1 [POP ESI]
0x401038 (.text+0x38), e=	1 [RETN] EAX=0

We can use grep here.

ARM

Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

main
    STMFD  SP!, {R4,LR}
    MOV     R4, #2
    B      loc_368
loc_35C ; CODE XREF: main+1C
    MOV     R0, R4
    BL     printing_function
    ADD     R4, R4, #1

loc_368 ; CODE XREF: main+8
    CMP     R4, #0xA
    BLT    loc_35C
    MOV     R0, #0
    LDMFD  SP!, {R4,PC}

```

Iteration counter i is to be stored in the R4 register. The MOV R4, #2 instruction just initializes i . The MOV R0, R4 and BL printing_function instructions compose the body of the loop, the first instruction preparing the argument for f() function and the second calling the function. The ADD R4, R4, #1 instruction just adds 1 to the i variable at each iteration. CMP R4, #0xA compares i with 0xA (10). The next instruction BLT (Branch Less Than) jumps if i is less than 10. Otherwise, 0 is to be written into R0 (since our function returns 0) and function execution finishes.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

_main
    PUSH    {R4,LR}
    MOVS   R4, #2

loc_132
    MOVS   R0, R4
    BL     printing_function
    ADDS   R4, R4, #1
    CMP    R4, #0xA
    BLT    loc_132
    MOVS   R0, #0
    POP    {R4,PC}

```

Practically the same.

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

```

_main
    PUSH    {R4,R7,LR}
    MOVW   R4, #0x1124 ; "%d\n"
    MOVS   R1, #2
    MOVT.W R4, #0
    ADD    R7, SP, #4
    ADD    R4, PC

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

MOV      R0, R4
BLX      _printf
MOV      R0, R4
MOVS    R1, #3
BLX      _printf
MOV      R0, R4
MOVS    R1, #4
BLX      _printf
MOV      R0, R4
MOVS    R1, #5
BLX      _printf
MOV      R0, R4
MOVS    R1, #6
BLX      _printf
MOV      R0, R4
MOVS    R1, #7
BLX      _printf
MOV      R0, R4
MOVS    R1, #8
BLX      _printf
MOV      R0, R4
MOVS    R1, #9
BLX      _printf
MOVS    R0, #0
POP      {R4,R7,PC}

```

In fact, this was in my `f()` function:

```

void printing_function(int i)
{
    printf ("%d\n", i);
}

```

So, LLVM not just *unrolled* the loop, but also *inlined* my very simple function `f()`, and inserted its body 8 times instead of calling it.

This is possible when the function is so simple (like mine) and when it is not called too much (like here).

ARM64: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1

Listing 1.174: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1

```

printing_function:
; prepare second argument of printf():
    mov    w1, w0
; load address of the "f(%d)\n" string
    adrp   x0, .LC0
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
; just branch here instead of branch with link and return:
    b     printf
main:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; save FP and LR in the local stack:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
; set up stack frame:
    add    x29, sp, 0
; save contents of X19 register in the local stack:
    str    x19, [sp,16]
; we will use W19 register as counter.
; set initial value of 2 to it:
    mov    w19, 2
.L3:
; prepare first argument of printing_function():
    mov    w0, w19
; increment counter register.
    add    w19, w19, 1
; W0 here still holds value of counter value before increment.
    bl     printing_function
; is it end?
    cmp    w19, 10
; no, jump to the loop body begin:
    bne    .L3
; return 0
    mov    w0, 0
; restore contents of X19 register:
    ldr    x19, [sp,16]
; restore FP and LR values:
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32
    ret
.LC0:
    .string "f(%d)\n"

```

ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1

Listing 1.175: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 -fno-inline

```

.LC0:
    .string "f(%d)\n"
printing_function:
; save FP and LR in the local stack:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
; set up stack frame:
    add    x29, sp, 0
; save contents of W0 register:
    str    w0, [x29,28]
; load address of the "f(%d)\n" string
    adrp   x0, .LC0
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
; reload input value from the local stack to W1 register:
    ldr    w1, [x29,28]
; call printf()
    bl     printf
; restore FP and LR values:
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    ret
main:
; save FP and LR in the local stack:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
; set up stack frame:
    add    x29, sp, 0
; initialize counter
    mov    w0, 2
; store it to the place allocated for it in the local stack:
    str    w0, [x29,28]
; skip loop body and jump to the loop condition check instructions:
    b     .L3
.L4:
; load counter value to W0.
; it will be the first argument of printing_function():
    ldr    w0, [x29,28]
; call printing_function():
    bl    printing_function
; increment counter value:
    ldr    w0, [x29,28]
    add    w0, w0, 1
    str    w0, [x29,28]
.L3:
; loop condition check.
; load counter value:
    ldr    w0, [x29,28]
; is it 9?
    cmp    w0, 9
; less or equal? then jump to loop body begin:
; do nothing otherwise.
    ble    .L4
; return 0
    mov    w0, 0
; restore FP and LR values:
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32
    ret

```

MIPS

Listing 1.176: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

main:
; IDA is not aware of variable names in local stack
; We gave them names manually:
i          = -0x10
saved_FP   = -8
saved_RA   = -4

; function prologue:
    addiu $sp, -0x28
    sw    $ra, 0x28+saved_RA($sp)
    sw    $fp, 0x28+saved_FP($sp)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        move    $fp, $sp
; initialize counter at 2 and store this value in local stack
        li      $v0, 2
        sw      $v0, 0x28+i($fp)
; pseudoinstruction. "BEQ $ZERO, $ZERO, loc_9C" there in fact:
        b      loc_9C
        or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP

loc_80:                      # CODE XREF: main+48
; load counter value from local stack and call printing_function():
        lw      $a0, 0x28+i($fp)
        jal     printing_function
        or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
; load counter, increment it, store it back:
        lw      $v0, 0x28+i($fp)
        or      $at, $zero ; NOP
        addiu   $v0, 1
        sw      $v0, 0x28+i($fp)

loc_9C:                      # CODE XREF: main+18
; check counter, is it 10?
        lw      $v0, 0x28+i($fp)
        or      $at, $zero ; NOP
        slti   $v0, 0xA
; if it is less than 10, jump to loc_80 (loop body begin):
        bnez   $v0, loc_80
        or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
; finishing, return 0:
        move    $v0, $zero
; function epilogue:
        move    $sp, $fp
        lw      $ra, 0x28+saved_RA($sp)
        lw      $fp, 0x28+saved_FP($sp)
        addiu   $sp, 0x28
        jr      $ra
        or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP

```

The instruction that's new to us is B. It is actually the pseudo instruction (BEQ).

One more thing

In the generated code we can see: after initializing *i*, the body of the loop is not to be executed, as the condition for *i* is checked first, and only after that loop body can be executed. And that is correct.

Because, if the loop condition is not met at the beginning, the body of the loop must not be executed. This is possible in the following case:

```
for (i=0; i<total_entries_to_process; i++)
    loop_body;
```

If *total_entries_to_process* is 0, the body of the loop must not be executed at all.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

This is why the condition checked before the execution.

However, an optimizing compiler may swap the condition check and loop body, if it sure that the situation described here is not possible (like in the case of our very simple example and using compilers like Keil, Xcode (LLVM), MSVC in optimization mode).

1.22.2 Memory blocks copying routine

Real-world memory copy routines may copy 4 or 8 bytes at each iteration, use SIMD¹⁰³, vectorization, etc. But for the sake of simplicity, this example is the simplest possible.

```
#include <stdio.h>

void my_memcpy (unsigned char* dst, unsigned char* src, size_t cnt)
{
    size_t i;
    for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
        dst[i]=src[i];
}
```

Straight-forward implementation

Listing 1.177: GCC 4.9 x64 optimized for size (-Os)

```
my_memcpy:
; RDI = destination address
; RSI = source address
; RDX = size of block

; initialize counter (i) at 0
    xor     eax, eax
.L2:
; all bytes copied? exit then:
    cmp     rax, rdx
    je      .L5
; load byte at RSI+i:
    mov     cl, BYTE PTR [rsi+rax]
; store byte at RDI+i:
    mov     BYTE PTR [rdi+rax], cl
    inc     rax ; i++
    jmp     .L2
.L5:
    ret
```

Listing 1.178: GCC 4.9 ARM64 optimized for size (-Os)

```
my_memcpy:
; X0 = destination address
```

¹⁰³Single Instruction, Multiple Data

```

; X1 = source address
; X2 = size of block

; initialize counter (i) at 0
    mov     x3, 0
.L2:
; all bytes copied? exit then:
    cmp     x3, x2
    beq     .L5
; load byte at X1+i:
    ldrb   w4, [x1,x3]
; store byte at X0+i:
    strb   w4, [x0,x3]
    add    x3, x3, 1 ; i++
    b      .L2
.L5:
    ret

```

Listing 1.179: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

my_memcpy PROC
; R0 = destination address
; R1 = source address
; R2 = size of block

    PUSH    {r4,lr}
; initialize counter (i) at 0
    MOVS   r3,#0
; condition checked at the end of function, so jump there:
    B      |L0.12|
|L0.6|
; load byte at R1+i:
    LDRB   r4,[r1,r3]
; store byte at R0+i:
    STRB   r4,[r0,r3]
; i++
    ADDS   r3,r3,#1
|L0.12|
; i<size?
    CMP    r3,r2
; jump to the loop begin if its so:
    BCC   |L0.6|
    POP    {r4,pc}
ENDP

```

ARM in ARM mode

Keil in ARM mode takes full advantage of conditional suffixes:

Listing 1.180: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

my_memcpy PROC
; R0 = destination address

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; R1 = source address
; R2 = size of block

; initialize counter (i) at 0
    MOV      r3,#0
|L0.4|
; all bytes copied?
    CMP      r3,r2
; the following block is executed only if less than condition,
; i.e., if R2<R3 or i<size.
; load byte at R1+i:
    LDRBCC  r12,[r1,r3]
; store byte at R0+i:
    STRBCC  r12,[r0,r3]
; i++
    ADDCC   r3,r3,#1
; the last instruction of the conditional block.
; jump to loop begin if i<size
; do nothing otherwise (i.e., if i>=size)
    BCC     |L0.4|
; return
    BX      lr
ENDP

```

That's why there is only one branch instruction instead of 2.

MIPS

Listing 1.181: GCC 4.4.5 optimized for size (-Os) (IDA)

```

my_memcpy:
; jump to loop check part:
    b      loc_14
; initialize counter (i) at 0
; it will always reside in $v0:
    move   $v0, $zero ; branch delay slot

loc_8:                      # CODE XREF: my_memcpy+1C
; load byte as unsigned at address in $t0 to $v1:
    lbu   $v1, 0($t0)
; increment counter (i):
    addiu $v0, 1
; store byte at $a3
    sb    $v1, 0($a3)

loc_14:                     # CODE XREF: my_memcpy
; check if counter (i) in $v0 is still less then 3rd function argument ("cnt"
; in $a2):
    sltu  $v1, $v0, $a2
; form address of byte in source block:
    addu  $t0, $a1, $v0
; $t0 = $a1+$v0 = src+i
; jump to loop body if counter sill less then "cnt":

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        bnez    $v1, loc_8
; form address of byte in destination block ($a3 = $a0+$v0 = dst+i):
        addu    $a3, $a0, $v0 ; branch delay slot
; finish if BNEZ wasnt triggered:
        jr     $ra
        or     $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP

```

Here we have two new instructions: LBU (“Load Byte Unsigned”) and SB (“Store Byte”).

Just like in ARM, all MIPS registers are 32-bit wide, there are no byte-wide parts like in x86.

So when dealing with single bytes, we have to allocate whole 32-bit registers for them.

LBU loads a byte and clears all other bits (“Unsigned”).

On the other hand, LB (“Load Byte”) instruction sign-extends the loaded byte to a 32-bit value.

SB just writes a byte from lowest 8 bits of register to memory.

Vectorization

Optimizing GCC can do much more on this example: [1.36.1 on page 522](#).

1.22.3 Condition check

It's important to keep in mind that in *for()* construct, condition is checked not at the end, but at the beginning, before execution of loop body. But often, it's more convenient for compiler to check it at the end, after body. Sometimes, additional check can be appended at the beginning.

For example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

void f(int start, int finish)
{
    for (; start<finish; start++)
        printf ("%d\n", start);
}

```

Optimizing GCC 5.4.0 x64:

```

f:
; check condition (1):
    cmp    edi, esi
    jge    .L9
    push   rbp
    push   rbx
    mov    ebp, esi
    mov    ebx, edi

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    sub    rsp, 8
.L5:
    mov    edx, ebx
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "%d\n"
    mov    edi, 1
    add    ebx, 1
    call   __printf_chk
; check condition (2):
    cmp    ebp, ebx
    jne    .L5
    add    rsp, 8
    pop    rbx
    pop    rbp
.L9:
    rep    ret

```

We see two checks.

Hex-Rays (at least version 2.2.0) decompiles this as:

```

void __cdecl f(unsigned int start, unsigned int finish)
{
    unsigned int v2; // ebx@2
    __int64 v3; // rdx@3

    if ( (signed int)start < (signed int)finish )
    {
        v2 = start;
        do
        {
            v3 = v2++;
            __printf_chk(1LL, "%d\n", v3);
        }
        while ( finish != v2 );
    }
}

```

In this case, *do/while()* can be replaced by *for()* without any doubt, and the first check can be removed.

1.22.4 Conclusion

Rough skeleton of loop from 2 to 9 inclusive:

Listing 1.182: x86

```

    mov [counter], 2 ; initialization
    jmp check
body:
    ; loop body
    ; do something here
    ; use counter variable in local stack

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

add [counter], 1 ; increment
check:
    cmp [counter], 9
    jle body

```

The increment operation may be represented as 3 instructions in non-optimized code:

Listing 1.183: x86

```

MOV [counter], 2 ; initialization
JMP check
body:
; loop body
; do something here
; use counter variable in local stack
MOV REG, [counter] ; increment
INC REG
MOV [counter], REG
check:
    CMP [counter], 9
    JLE body

```

If the body of the loop is short, a whole register can be dedicated to the counter variable:

Listing 1.184: x86

```

MOV EBX, 2 ; initialization
JMP check
body:
; loop body
; do something here
; use counter in EBX, but do not modify it!
    INC EBX ; increment
check:
    CMP EBX, 9
    JLE body

```

Some parts of the loop may be generated by compiler in different order:

Listing 1.185: x86

```

MOV [counter], 2 ; initialization
JMP label_check
label_increment:
    ADD [counter], 1 ; increment
label_check:
    CMP [counter], 10
    JGE exit
; loop body
; do something here
; use counter variable in local stack
    JMP label_increment
exit:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Usually the condition is checked *before* loop body, but the compiler may rearrange it in a way that the condition is checked *after* loop body.

This is done when the compiler is sure that the condition is always *true* on the first iteration, so the body of the loop is to be executed at least once:

Listing 1.186: x86

```
MOV REG, 2 ; initialization
body:
; loop body
; do something here
; use counter in REG, but do not modify it!
INC REG ; increment
CMP REG, 10
JL body
```

Using the LOOP instruction. This is rare, compilers are not using it. When you see it, it's a sign that this piece of code is hand-written:

Listing 1.187: x86

```
; count from 10 to 1
MOV ECX, 10
body:
; loop body
; do something here
; use counter in ECX, but do not modify it!
LOOP body
```

ARM.

The R4 register is dedicated to counter variable in this example:

Listing 1.188: ARM

```
MOV R4, 2 ; initialization
B check
body:
; loop body
; do something here
; use counter in R4, but do not modify it!
ADD R4,R4, #1 ; increment
check:
CMP R4, #10
BLT body
```

1.22.5 Exercises

- <http://challenges.re/54>
- <http://challenges.re/55>
- <http://challenges.re/56>
- <http://challenges.re/57>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.23 More about strings

1.23.1 `strlen()`

Let's talk about loops one more time. Often, the `strlen()` function ¹⁰⁴ is implemented using a `while()` statement. Here is how it is done in the MSVC standard libraries:

```
int my_strlen (const char * str)
{
    const char *eos = str;

    while( *eos++ ) ;

    return( eos - str - 1 );
}

int main()
{
    // test
    return my_strlen("hello!");
};
```

x86

Non-optimizing MSVC

Let's compile:

```
_eos$ = -4                      ; size = 4
_str$ = 8                       ; size = 4
_strlen PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _str$[ebp] ; place pointer to string from "str"
    mov     DWORD PTR _eos$[ebp], eax ; place it to local variable "eos"
$LN2@strlen_:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _eos$[ebp] ; ECX=EOS

    ; take 8-bit byte from address in ECX and place it
    ; as 32-bit value to EDX with sign extension

    movsx   edx, BYTE PTR [ecx]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _eos$[ebp] ; EAX=eos
    add     eax, 1                  ; increment EAX
    mov     DWORD PTR _eos$[ebp], eax ; place EAX back to "eos"
    test    edx, edx              ; EDX is zero?
    je     SHORT $LN1@strlen_
    jmp     SHORT $LN2@strlen_      ; continue loop
```

¹⁰⁴counting the characters in a string in the C language

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
$LN1@strlen_:

; here we calculate the difference between two pointers

    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _eos$[ebp]
    sub    eax, DWORD PTR _str$[ebp]
    sub    eax, 1                         ; subtract 1 and return result
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
(strlen_ ENDP
```

We get two new instructions here: MOVsx and TEST.

The first one—MOVsx—takes a byte from an address in memory and stores the value in a 32-bit register. MOVsx stands for *MOV with Sign-Extend*. MOVsx sets the rest of the bits, from the 8th to the 31th, to 1 if the source byte is *negative* or to 0 if is *positive*.

And here is why.

By default, the *char* type is signed in MSVC and GCC. If we have two values of which one is *char* and the other is *int*, (*int* is signed too), and if the first value contain -2 (coded as 0xFE) and we just copy this byte into the *int* container, it makes 0x000000FE, and this from the point of signed *int* view is 254, but not -2. In signed *int*, -2 is coded as 0xFFFFFFF. So if we have to transfer 0xFE from a variable of *char* type to *int*, we have to identify its sign and extend it. That is what MOVsx does.

You can also read about it in “*Signed number representations*” section ([2.2 on page 572](#)).

It's hard to say if the compiler needs to store a *char* variable in EDX, it could just take a 8-bit register part (for example DL). Apparently, the compiler's [register allocator](#) works like that.

Then we see TEST EDX, EDX. You can read more about the TEST instruction in the section about bit fields ([1.28 on page 382](#)). Here this instruction just checks if the value in EDX equals to 0.

Non-optimizing GCC

Let's try GCC 4.4.1:

```
public strlen
strlen    proc near

eos        = dword ptr -4
arg_0      = dword ptr  8

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        sub     esp, 10h
        mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

	mov [ebp+eos], eax
loc_80483F0:	
	mov eax, [ebp+eos]
	movzx eax, byte ptr [eax]
	test al, al
	setnz al
	add [ebp+eos], 1
	test al, al
	jnz short loc_80483F0
	mov edx, [ebp+eos]
	mov eax, [ebp+arg_0]
	mov ecx, edx
	sub ecx, eax
	mov eax, ecx
	sub eax, 1
	leave
	ret
strlen	endp

The result is almost the same as in MSVC, but here we see MOVZX instead of MOVSX. MOVZX stands for *MOV with Zero-Extend*. This instruction copies a 8-bit or 16-bit value into a 32-bit register and sets the rest of the bits to 0. In fact, this instruction is convenient only because it enable us to replace this instruction pair:

`xor eax, eax / mov al, [...].`

On the other hand, it is obvious that the compiler could produce this code:

`mov al, byte ptr [eax] / test al, al`—it is almost the same, however, the highest bits of the EAX register will contain random noise. But let's think it is compiler's drawback—it cannot produce more understandable code. Strictly speaking, the compiler is not obliged to emit understandable (to humans) code at all.

The next new instruction for us is SETNZ. Here, if AL doesn't contain zero, `test al, al` sets the ZF flag to 0, but SETNZ, if $ZF == 0$ (*NZ* stands for *not zero*) sets AL to 1. Speaking in natural language, *if AL is not zero, let's jump to loc_80483F0*. The compiler emits some redundant code, but let's not forget that the optimizations are turned off.

Optimizing MSVC

Now let's compile all this in MSVC 2012, with optimizations turned on (/Ox):

Listing 1.189: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob0

_str\$ = 8	; size = 4
_strlen PROC	
mov edx, DWORD PTR _str\$[esp-4]	; EDX -> pointer to the string
mov eax, edx	; move to EAX
\$LL2@strlen:	
mov cl, BYTE PTR [eax]	; CL = *EAX
inc eax	; EAX++
test cl, cl	; CL==0?

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
jne    SHORT $LL2@strlen      ; no, continue loop
sub    eax, edx              ; calculate pointers difference
dec    eax                   ; decrement EAX
ret    0
_strlen ENDP
```

Now it is all simpler. Needless to say, the compiler could use registers with such efficiency only in small functions with a few local variables.

INC/DEC—are [increment/decrement](#) instructions, in other words: add or subtract 1 to/from a variable.

Optimizing MSVC + OllyDbg

We can try this (optimized) example in OllyDbg. Here is the first iteration:

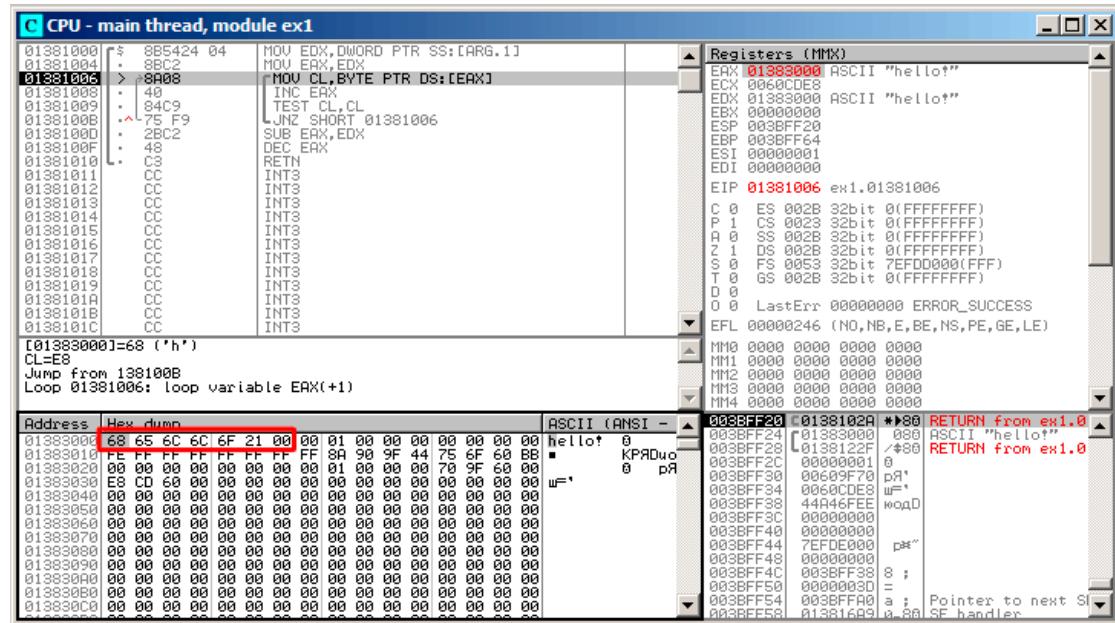


Figure 1.58: OllyDbg: first iteration start

We see that OllyDbg found a loop and, for convenience, wrapped its instructions in brackets. By clicking the right button on EAX, we can choose “Follow in Dump” and the memory window scrolls to the right place. Here we can see the string “hello!” in memory. There is at least one zero byte after it and then random garbage.

If OllyDbg sees a register with a valid address in it, that points to some string, it is shown as a string.

Let's press F8 (step over) a few times, to get to the start of the body of the loop:

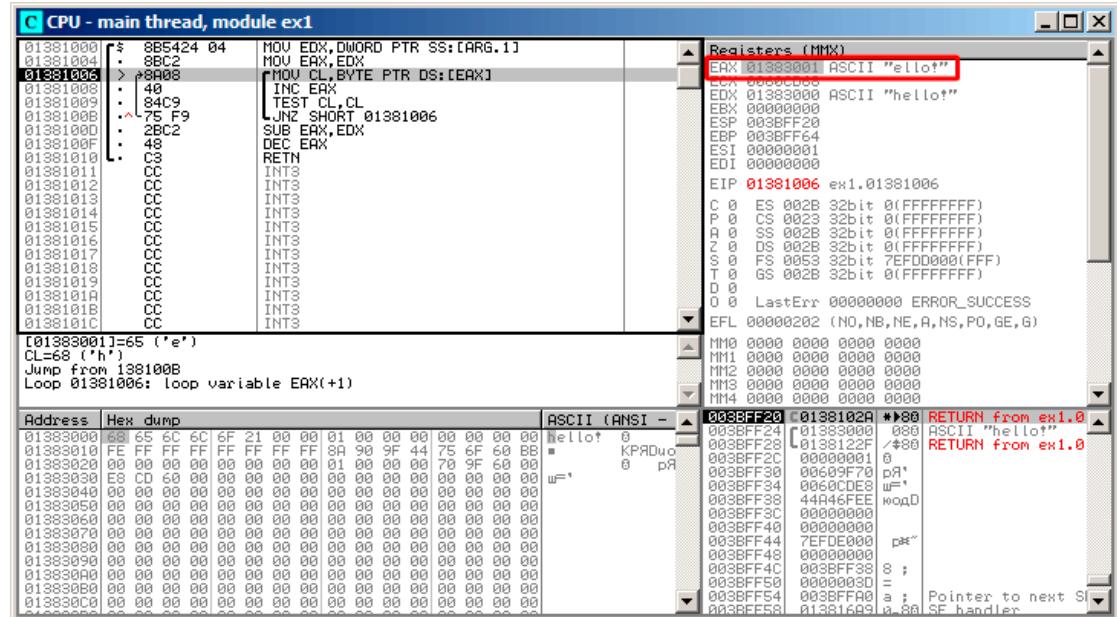


Figure 1.59: OllyDbg: second iteration start

We see that EAX contains the address of the second character in the string.

We have to press F8 enough number of times in order to escape from the loop:

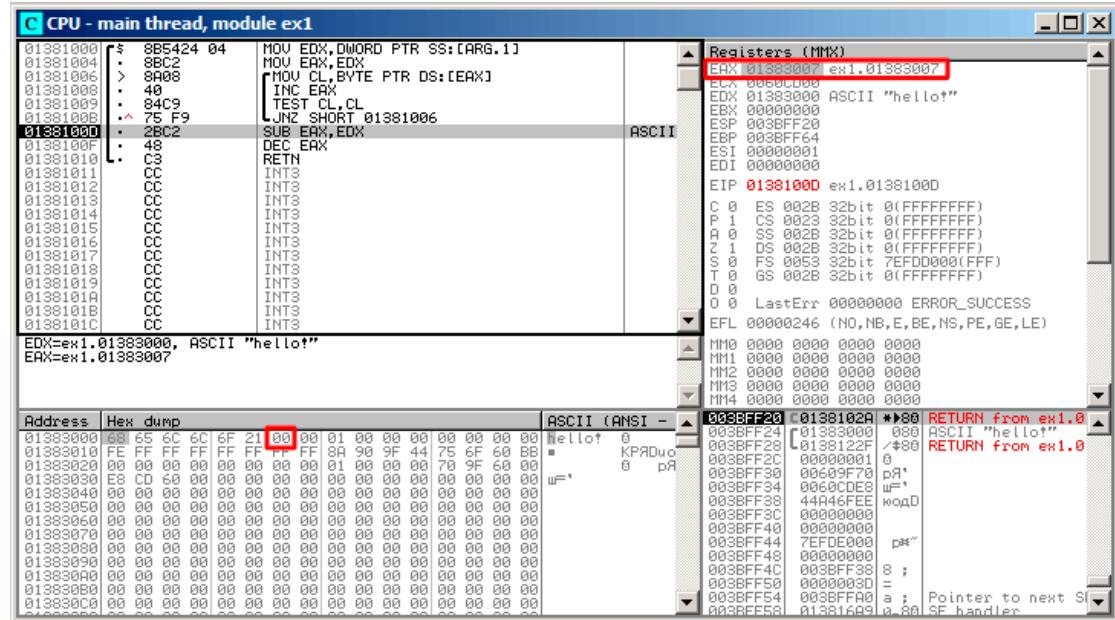


Figure 1.60: OllyDbg: pointers difference to be calculated now

We see that EAX now contains the address of zero byte that's right after the string plus 1 (because INC EAX was executed regardless of whether we exit from the loop or not). Meanwhile, EDX hasn't changed, so it still pointing to the start of the string.

The difference between these two addresses is being calculated now.

The SUB instruction just got executed:

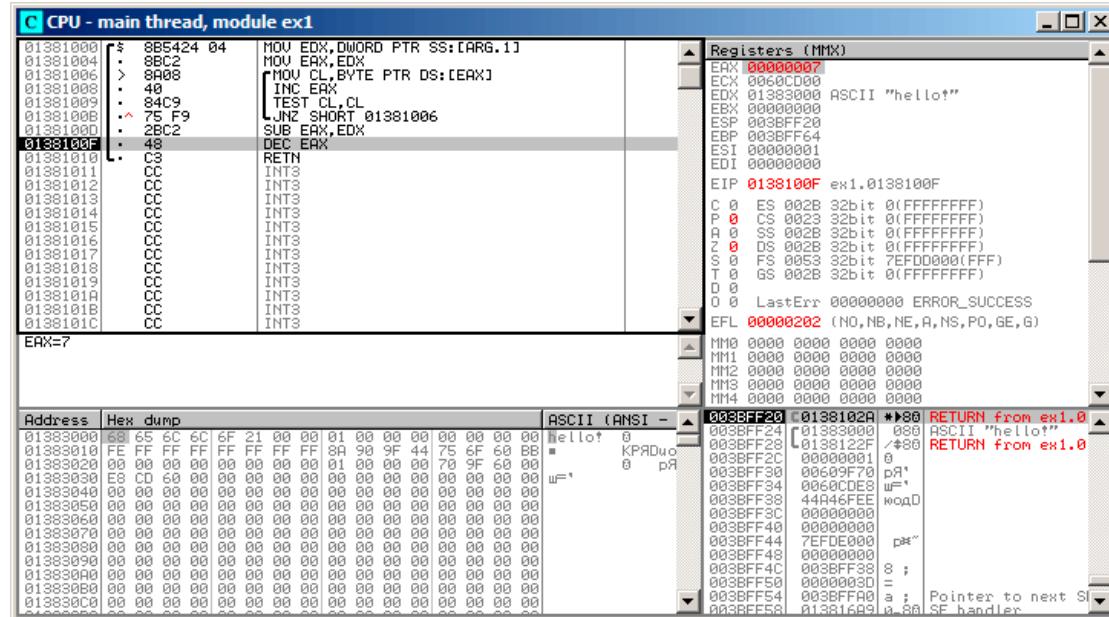


Figure 1.61: OllyDbg: EAX to be decremented now

The difference of pointers is in the EAX register now—7. Indeed, the length of the “hello!” string is 6, but with the zero byte included—7. But `strlen()` must return the number of non-zero characters in the string. So the decrement executes and then the function returns.

Optimizing GCC

Let's check GCC 4.4.1 with optimizations turned on (-O3 key):

```

public strlen
strlen    proc near

arg_0      = dword ptr  8

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
        mov     eax, ecx

loc_8048418:
        movzx   edx, byte ptr [eax]
        add    eax, 1
        test   dl, dl
        jnz    short loc_8048418

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

	not ecx
	add eax, ecx
	pop ebp
	retn
strlen	endp

Here GCC is almost the same as MSVC, except for the presence of MOVZX. However, here MOVZX could be replaced with
`mov dl, byte ptr [eax].`

Perhaps it is simpler for GCC's code generator to *remember* the whole 32-bit EDX register is allocated for a *char* variable and it then can be sure that the highest bits has no any noise at any point.

After that we also see a new instruction—NOT. This instruction inverts all bits in the operand.

You can say that it is a synonym to the XOR ECX, 0xffffffffh instruction. NOT and the following ADD calculate the pointer difference and subtract 1, just in a different way. At the start ECX, where the pointer to *str* is stored, gets inverted and 1 is subtracted from it.

See also: "Signed number representations" ([2.2 on page 572](#)).

In other words, at the end of the function just after loop body, these operations are executed:

```
ecx=str;
eax=eos;
ecx=(-ecx)-1;
eax=eax+ecx
return eax
```

... and this is effectively equivalent to:

```
ecx=str;
eax=eos;
eax=eax-ecx;
eax=eax-1;
return eax
```

Why did GCC decide it would be better? Hard to guess. But perhaps the both variants are equivalent in efficiency.

ARM

32-bit ARM

Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
`<book@beginners.re>`. Thanks!

Listing 1.190: Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

```
_strlen

eos = -8
str = -4

    SUB    SP, SP, #8 ; allocate 8 bytes for local variables
    STR    R0, [SP,#8+str]
    LDR    R0, [SP,#8+str]
    STR    R0, [SP,#8+eos]

loc_2CB8 ; CODE XREF: _strlen+28
    LDR    R0, [SP,#8+eos]
    ADD    R1, R0, #1
    STR    R1, [SP,#8+eos]
    LDRSB R0, [R0]
    CMP    R0, #0
    BEQ    loc_2CD4
    B      loc_2CB8

loc_2CD4 ; CODE XREF: _strlen+24
    LDR    R0, [SP,#8+eos]
    LDR    R1, [SP,#8+str]
    SUB   R0, R0, R1 ; R0=eos-str
    SUB   R0, R0, #1 ; R0=R0-1
    ADD   SP, SP, #8 ; free allocated 8 bytes
    BX     LR
```

Non-optimizing LLVM generates too much code, however, here we can see how the function works with local variables in the stack. There are only two local variables in our function: *eos* and *str*. In this listing, generated by [IDA](#), we have manually renamed *var_8* and *var_4* to *eos* and *str*.

The first instructions just saves the input values into both *str* and *eos*.

The body of the loop starts at label *loc_2CB8*.

The first three instruction in the loop body (LDR, ADD, STR) load the value of *eos* into R0. Then the value is [incremented](#) and saved back into *eos*, which is located in the stack.

The next instruction, LDRSB R0, [R0] (“Load Register Signed Byte”), loads a byte from memory at the address stored in R0 and sign-extends it to 32-bit [¹⁰⁵](#). This is similar to the MOVSX instruction in x86.

The compiler treats this byte as signed since the *char* type is signed according to the C standard. It was already written about it ([1.23.1 on page 254](#)) in this section, in relation to x86.

It has to be noted that it is impossible to use 8- or 16-bit part of a 32-bit register in ARM separately of the whole register, as it is in x86.

Apparently, it is because x86 has a huge history of backwards compatibility with its ancestors up to the 16-bit 8086 and even 8-bit 8080, but ARM was developed from

¹⁰⁵The Keil compiler treats the *char* type as signed, just like MSVC and GCC.

scratch as a 32-bit RISC-processor.

Consequently, in order to process separate bytes in ARM, one has to use 32-bit registers anyway.

So, LDRSB loads bytes from the string into R0, one by one. The following CMP and BEQ instructions check if the loaded byte is 0. If it's not 0, control passes to the start of the body of the loop. And if it's 0, the loop ends.

At the end of the function, the difference between eos and str is calculated, 1 is subtracted from it, and resulting value is returned via R0.

N.B. Registers were not saved in this function.

That's because in the ARM calling convention registers R0-R3 are "scratch registers", intended for arguments passing, and we're not required to restore their value when the function exits, since the calling function will not use them anymore. Consequently, they may be used for anything we want.

No other registers are used here, so that is why we have nothing to save on the stack.

Thus, control may be returned back to calling function by a simple jump (BX), to the address in the LR register.

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb mode)

Listing 1.191: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb mode)

```
_strlen
        MOV      R1, R0

loc_2DF6
        LDRB.W  R2, [R1],#1
        CMP      R2, #0
        BNE      loc_2DF6
        MVNS    R0, R0
        ADD     R0, R1
        BX      LR
```

As optimizing LLVM concludes, eos and str do not need space on the stack, and can always be stored in registers.

Before the start of the loop body, str is always in R0, and eos—in R1.

The LDRB.W R2, [R1],#1 instruction loads a byte from the memory at the address stored in R1, to R2, sign-extending it to a 32-bit value, but not just that. #1 at the instruction's end is implies "Post-indexed addressing", which means that 1 is to be added to R1 after the byte is loaded. Read more about it: [1.39.2 on page 555](#).

Then you can see CMP and BNE¹⁰⁶ in the body of the loop, these instructions continue looping until 0 is found in the string.

¹⁰⁶(PowerPC, ARM) Branch if Not Equal

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

MVNS¹⁰⁷ (inverts all bits, like NOT in x86) and ADD instructions compute $eos - str - 1$. In fact, these two instructions compute $R0 = str + eos$, which is effectively equivalent to what was in the source code, and why it is so, was already explained here ([1.23.1 on page 261](#)).

Apparently, LLVM, just like GCC, concludes that this code can be shorter (or faster).

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 1.192: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
_strlen
        MOV      R1, R0
loc_2C8
        LDRB    R2, [R1],#1
        CMP      R2, #0
        SUBEQ   R0, R1, R0
        SUBEQ   R0, R0, #1
        BNE     loc_2C8
        BX      LR
```

Almost the same as what we saw before, with the exception that the $str - eos - 1$ expression can be computed not at the function's end, but right in the body of the loop. The -EQ suffix, as we may recall, implies that the instruction executes only if the operands in the CMP that has been executed before were equal to each other. Thus, if R0 contains 0, both SUBEQ instructions executes and result is left in the R0 register.

ARM64

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
my_strlen:
        mov      x1, x0
        ; X1 is now temporary pointer (eos), acting like cursor
.L58:
        ; load byte from X1 to W2, increment X1 (post-index)
        ldrb    w2, [x1],1
        ; Compare and Branch if NonZero: compare W2 with 0,
        ; jump to .L58 if it is not
        cbnz    w2, .L58
        ; calculate difference between initial pointer
        ; in X0 and current address in X1
        sub     x0, x1, x0
        ; decrement lowest 32-bit of result
        sub     w0, w0, #1
```

¹⁰⁷MoVe Not

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
ret
```

The algorithm is the same as in [1.23.1 on page 255](#): find a zero byte, calculate the difference between the pointers and decrement the result by 1. Some comments were added by the author of this book.

The only thing worth noting is that our example is somewhat wrong: `my_strlen()` returns 32-bit `int`, while it has to return `size_t` or another 64-bit type.

The reason is that, theoretically, `strlen()` can be called for a huge blocks in memory that exceeds 4GB, so it must able to return a 64-bit value on 64-bit platforms.

Because of my mistake, the last `SUB` instruction operates on a 32-bit part of register, while the penultimate `SUB` instruction works on full the 64-bit register (it calculates the difference between the pointers).

It's my mistake, it is better to leave it as is, as an example of how the code could look like in such case.

Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
my_strlen:
; function prologue
    sub    sp, sp, #32
; first argument (str) will be stored in [sp,8]
    str    x0, [sp,8]
    ldr    x0, [sp,8]
; copy "str" to "eos" variable
    str    x0, [sp,24]
    nop
.L62:
; eos++
    ldr    x0, [sp,24] ; load "eos" to X0
    add    x1, x0, 1    ; increment X0
    str    x1, [sp,24] ; save X0 to "eos"
; load byte from memory at address in X0 to W0
    ldrb   w0, [x0]
; is it zero? (WZR is the 32-bit register always contain zero)
    cmp    w0, w0
; jump if not zero (Branch Not Equal)
    bne    .L62
; zero byte found. now calculate difference.
; load "eos" to X1
    ldr    x1, [sp,24]
; load "str" to X0
    ldr    x0, [sp,8]
; calculate difference
    sub    x0, x1, x0
; decrement result
    sub    w0, w0, #1
; function epilogue
    add    sp, sp, 32
```

```
ret
```

It's more verbose. The variables are often tossed here to and from memory (local stack). The same mistake here: the decrement operation happens on a 32-bit register part.

MIPS

Listing 1.193: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
my_strlen:
; "eos" variable will always reside in $v1:
    move    $v1, $a0

loc_4:
; load byte at address in "eos" into $a1:
    lb      $a1, 0($v1)
    or      $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
; if loaded byte is not zero, jump to loc_4:
    bnez   $a1, loc_4
; increment "eos" anyway:
    addiu  $v1, 1 ; branch delay slot
; loop finished. invert "str" variable:
    nor    $v0, $zero, $a0
; $v0=-str-1
    jr     $ra
; return value = $v1 + $v0 = eos + ( -str-1 ) = eos - str - 1
    addu   $v0, $v1, $v0 ; branch delay slot
```

MIPS lacks a NOT instruction, but has NOR which is OR + NOT operation.

This operation is widely used in digital electronics¹⁰⁸. For example, the Apollo Guidance Computer used in the Apollo program, was built by only using 5600 NOR gates: [Jens Eickhoff, *Onboard Computers, Onboard Software and Satellite Operations: An Introduction*, (2011)]. But NOR element isn't very popular in computer programming.

So, the NOT operation is implemented here as NOR DST, \$ZERO, SRC.

From fundamentals [2.2 on page 572](#) we know that bitwise inverting a signed number is the same as changing its sign and subtracting 1 from the result.

So what NOT does here is to take the value of *str* and transform it into *-str - 1*. The addition operation that follows prepares result.

1.23.2 Boundaries of strings

It's interesting to note, how parameters are passed into win32 *GetOpenFileName()* function. In order to call it, one must set list of allowed file extensions:

```
OPENFILENAME *LPOPENFILENAME;
...

```

¹⁰⁸NOR is called “universal gate”

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

char * filter = "Text files (*.txt)\0*.txt\0MS Word files (*.doc)\0
\0*.doc\0\0";
...
LPOPENFILENAME = (OPENFILENAME *)malloc(sizeof(OPENFILENAME));
...
LPOPENFILENAME->lpstrFilter = filter;
...
if(GetOpenFileName(LPOPENFILENAME))
{
    ...
}

```

What happens here is that list of strings are passed into `GetOpenFileName()`. It is not a problem to parse it: whenever you encounter single zero byte, this is an item. Whenever you encounter two zero bytes, this is end of the list. If you will pass this string into `printf()`, it will treat first item as a single string.

So this is string, or...? It's better say this is buffer containing several zero-terminated C-strings, which can be stored and processed as a whole.

Another example is `strtok()` function. It takes a string and write zero bytes in the middle of it. It thus transforms input string into some kind of buffer, which has several zero-terminated C-strings.

1.24 Replacing arithmetic instructions to other ones

In the pursuit of optimization, one instruction may be replaced by another, or even with a group of instructions. For example, ADD and SUB can replace each other: line 18 in listing 3.122.

For example, the LEA instruction is often used for simple arithmetic calculations: [.1.6 on page 1319](#).

1.24.1 Multiplication

Multiplication using addition

Here is a simple example:

```

unsigned int f(unsigned int a)
{
    return a*8;
}

```

Multiplication by 8 is replaced by 3 addition instructions, which do the same. Apparently, MSVC's optimizer decided that this code can be faster.

Listing 1.194: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_TEXT SEGMENT
_a$ = 8      ; size = 4
_f          PROC

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    add    eax, eax
    add    eax, eax
    add    eax, eax
    ret    0
_f      ENDP
_TEXT   ENDS
END

```

Multiplication using shifting

Multiplication and division instructions by a numbers that's a power of 2 are often replaced by shift instructions.

```

unsigned int f(unsigned int a)
{
    return a*4;
}

```

Listing 1.195: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

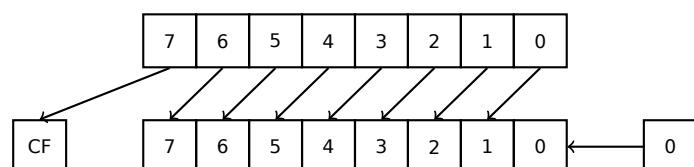
```

_a$ = 8          ; size = 4
_f      PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    shl     eax, 2
    pop     ebp
    ret    0
_f      ENDP

```

Multiplication by 4 is just shifting the number to the left by 2 bits and inserting 2 zero bits at the right (as the last two bits). It is just like multiplying 3 by 100 —we just have to add two zeros at the right.

That's how the shift left instruction works:



The added bits at right are always zeros.

Multiplication by 4 in ARM:

Listing 1.196: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

f PROC
    LSL      r0, r0, #2
    BX      lr
ENDP

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Multiplication by 4 in MIPS:

Listing 1.197: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

<code>jr \$ra</code>
<code>sll \$v0, \$a0, 2 ; branch delay slot</code>

SLL is “Shift Left Logical”.

Multiplication using shifting, subtracting, and adding

It’s still possible to get rid of the multiplication operation when you multiply by numbers like 7 or 17 again by using shifting. The mathematics used here is relatively easy.

32-bit

```
#include <stdint.h>

int f1(int a)
{
    return a*7;
}

int f2(int a)
{
    return a*28;
}

int f3(int a)
{
    return a*17;
}
```

x86

Listing 1.198: Optimizing MSVC 2012

<code>; a*7</code>
<code>_a\$ = 8</code>
<code>_f1 PROC</code>
<code> mov ecx, DWORD PTR _a\$[esp-4]</code>
<code>; ECX=a</code>
<code> lea eax, DWORD PTR [ecx*8]</code>
<code>; EAX=ECX*8</code>
<code> sub eax, ecx</code>
<code>; EAX=EAX-ECX=ECX*8-ECX=ECX*7=a*7</code>
<code> ret 0</code>
<code>_f1 ENDP</code>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; a*28
_a$ = 8
_f2    PROC
        mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
; ECX=a
        lea     eax, DWORD PTR [ecx*8]
; EAX=ECX*8
        sub     eax, ecx
; EAX=EAX-ECX=ECX*8-ECX=ECX*7=a*7
        shl     eax, 2
; EAX=EAX<<2=(a*7)*4=a*28
        ret     0
_f2    ENDP

; a*17
_a$ = 8
_f3    PROC
        mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
; EAX=a
        shl     eax, 4
; EAX=EAX<<4=EAX*16=a*16
        add     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
; EAX=EAX+a=a*16+a=a*17
        ret     0
_f3    ENDP

```

ARM

Keil for ARM mode takes advantage of the second operand's shift modifiers:

Listing 1.199: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

; a*7
||f1|| PROC
        RSB      r0,r0,r0,LSL #3
; R0=R0<<3-R0=R0*8-R0=a*8-a=a*7
        BX      lr
        ENDP

; a*28
||f2|| PROC
        RSB      r0,r0,r0,LSL #3
; R0=R0<<3-R0=R0*8-R0=a*8-a=a*7
        LSL      r0,r0,#2
; R0=R0<<2=R0*4=a*7*4=a*28
        BX      lr
        ENDP

; a*17
||f3|| PROC
        ADD      r0,r0,r0,LSL #4
; R0=R0+R0<<4=R0+R0*16=R0*17=a*17

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
BX      lr
ENDP
```

But there are no such modifiers in Thumb mode. It also can't optimize f2():

Listing 1.200: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```
; a*7
||f1|| PROC
    LSLS      r1,r0,#3
; R1=R0<<3=a<<3=a*8
    SUBS      r0,r1,r0
; R0=R1-R0=a*8-a=a*7
    BX       lr
ENDP

; a*28
||f2|| PROC
    MOVS      r1,#0x1c ; 28
; R1=28
    MULS      r0,r1,r0
; R0=R1*R0=28*a
    BX       lr
ENDP

; a*17
||f3|| PROC
    LSLS      r1,r0,#4
; R1=R0<<4=R0*16=a*16
    ADDS      r0,r0,r1
; R0=R0+R1=a+a*16=a*17
    BX       lr
ENDP
```

MIPS

Listing 1.201: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
_f1:
    sll      $v0, $a0, 3
; $v0 = $a0<<3 = $a0*8
    jr      $ra
    subu   $v0, $a0 ; branch delay slot
; $v0 = $v0-$a0 = $a0*8-$a0 = $a0*7

_f2:
    sll      $v0, $a0, 5
; $v0 = $a0<<5 = $a0*32
    sll      $a0, 2
; $a0 = $a0<<2 = $a0*4
    jr      $ra
    subu   $v0, $a0 ; branch delay slot
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
; $v0 = $a0*32-$a0*4 = $a0*28
_f3:
    sll      $v0, $a0, 4
; $v0 = $a0<<4 = $a0*16
    jr      $ra
    addu    $v0, $a0 ; branch delay slot
; $v0 = $a0*16+$a0 = $a0*17
```

64-bit

```
#include <stdint.h>

int64_t f1(int64_t a)
{
    return a*7;
}

int64_t f2(int64_t a)
{
    return a*28;
}

int64_t f3(int64_t a)
{
    return a*17;
}
```

x64

Listing 1.202: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```
; a*7
f1:
    lea      rax, [0+rdi*8]
; RAX=RDI*8=a*8
    sub     rax, rdi
; RAX=RAX-RDI=a*8-a=a*7
    ret

; a*28
f2:
    lea      rax, [0+rdi*4]
; RAX=RDI*4=a*4
    sal      rdi, 5
; RDI=RDI<<5=RDI*32=a*32
    sub     rdi, rax
; RDI=RDI-RAX=a*32-a*4=a*28
    mov      rax, rdi
    ret
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
; a*17
f3:
    mov      rax, rdi
    sal      rax, 4
; RAX=RAX<<4=a*16
    add      rax, rdi
; RAX=a*16+a=a*17
    ret
```

ARM64

GCC 4.9 for ARM64 is also terse, thanks to the shift modifiers:

Listing 1.203: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9 ARM64

```
; a*7
f1:
    lsl      x1, x0, 3
; X1=X0<<3=X0*8=a*8
    sub      x0, x1, x0
; X0=X1-X0=a*8-a=a*7
    ret

; a*28
f2:
    lsl      x1, x0, 5
; X1=X0<<5=a*32
    sub      x0, x1, x0, lsl 2
; X0=X1-X0<<2=a*32-a<<2=a*32-a*4=a*28
    ret

; a*17
f3:
    add      x0, x0, x0, lsl 4
; X0=X0+X0<<4=a+a*16=a*17
    ret
```

Booth's multiplication algorithm

There was a time when computers were big and that expensive, that some of them lacked hardware support of multiplication operation in [CPU](#), like Data General Nova. And when one need multiplication operation, it can be provided at software level, for example, using Booth's multiplication algorithm. This is a multiplication algorithm which uses only addition operation and shifts.

What modern optimizing compilers do, isn't the same, but the goal (multiplication) and resources (faster operations) are the same.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.24.2 Division

Division using shifts

Example of division by 4:

```
unsigned int f(unsigned int a)
{
    return a/4;
};
```

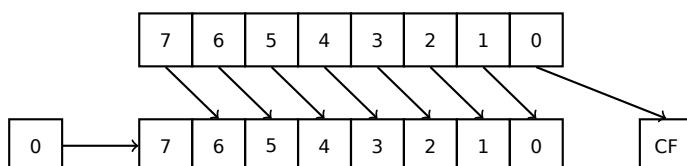
We get (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.204: MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8      ; size = 4
_f          PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    shr     eax, 2
    ret     0
_f          ENDP
```

The SHR (*SHift Right*) instruction in this example is shifting a number by 2 bits to the right. The two freed bits at left (e.g., two most significant bits) are set to zero. The two least significant bits are dropped. In fact, these two dropped bits are the division operation remainder.

The SHR instruction works just like SHL, but in the other direction.



It is easy to understand if you imagine the number 23 in the decimal numeral system. 23 can be easily divided by 10 just by dropping last digit (3—division remainder). 2 is left after the operation as a [quotient](#).

So the remainder is dropped, but that's OK, we work on integer values anyway, these are not a [real numbers](#)!

Division by 4 in ARM:

Listing 1.205: Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
f PROC
    LSR     r0,r0,#2
    BX      lr
ENDP
```

Division by 4 in MIPS:

Listing 1.206: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
jr     $ra
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

srl \$v0, \$a0, 2 ; branch delay slot

The SRL instruction is “Shift Right Logical”.

1.24.3 Exercise

- <http://challenges.re/59>

1.25 Floating-point unit

The **FPU** is a device within the main **CPU**, specially designed to deal with floating point numbers.

It was called “coprocessor” in the past and it stays somewhat aside of the main **CPU**.

1.25.1 IEEE 754

A number in the IEEE 754 format consists of a *sign*, a *significand* (also called *fraction*) and an *exponent*.

1.25.2 x86

It is worth looking into stack machines or learning the basics of the Forth language, before studying the **FPU** in x86.

It is interesting to know that in the past (before the 80486 CPU) the coprocessor was a separate chip and it was not always pre-installed on the motherboard. It was possible to buy it separately and install it ¹⁰⁹.

Starting with the 80486 DX CPU, the **FPU** is integrated in the **CPU**.

The FWAIT instruction reminds us of that fact—it switches the **CPU** to a waiting state, so it can wait until the **FPU** has finished with its work.

Another rudiment is the fact that the **FPU** instruction opcodes start with the so called “escape”-opcodes (D8..DF), i.e., opcodes passed to a separate coprocessor.

The FPU has a stack capable to holding 8 80-bit registers, and each register can hold a number in the IEEE 754 format.

They are ST(0)..ST(7). For brevity, **IDA** and OllyDbg show ST(0) as ST, which is represented in some textbooks and manuals as “Stack Top”.

¹⁰⁹For example, John Carmack used fixed-point arithmetic values in his Doom video game, stored in 32-bit **GPR** registers (16 bit for integral part and another 16 bit for fractional part), so Doom could work on 32-bit computers without FPU, i.e., 80386 and 80486 SX.

1.25.3 ARM, MIPS, x86/x64 SIMD

In ARM and MIPS the FPU is not a stack, but a set of registers, which can be accessed randomly, like [GPR](#).

The same ideology is used in the SIMD extensions of x86/x64 CPUs.

1.25.4 C/C++

The standard C/C++ languages offer at least two floating number types, *float (single-precision, 32 bits)*¹¹⁰ and *double (double-precision, 64 bits)*.

In [Donald E. Knuth, *The Art of Computer Programming*, Volume 2, 3rd ed., (1997)246] we can find the *single-precision* means that the floating point value can be placed into a single [32-bit] machine word, *double-precision* means it can be stored in two words (64 bits).

GCC also supports the *long double* type (*extended precision, 80 bit*), which MSVC doesn't.

The *float* type requires the same number of bits as the *int* type in 32-bit environments, but the number representation is completely different.

1.25.5 Simple example

Let's consider this simple example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

double f (double a, double b)
{
    return a/3.14 + b*4.1;
}

int main()
{
    printf ("%f\n", f(1.2, 3.4));
}
```

x86

MSVC

Compile it in MSVC 2010:

Listing 1.207: MSVC 2010: f()

```
CONST SEGMENT
__real@4010666666666666 DQ 0401066666666666r ; 4.1
CONST ENDS
```

¹¹⁰the single precision floating point number format is also addressed in the *Handling float data type as a structure* ([1.30.6 on page 469](#)) section

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

CONST SEGMENT
__real@40091eb851eb851f DQ 040091eb851eb851fr ; 3.14
CONST ENDS
_TEXT SEGMENT
_a$ = 8           ; size = 8
_b$ = 16          ; size = 8
_f PROC
    push ebp
    mov ebp, esp
    fld QWORD PTR _a$[ebp]

; current stack state: ST(0) = _a

    fdiv QWORD PTR __real@40091eb851eb851f

; current stack state: ST(0) = result of _a divided by 3.14

    fld QWORD PTR _b$[ebp]

; current stack state: ST(0) = _b;
; ST(1) = result of _a divided by 3.14

    fmulp QWORD PTR __real@4010666666666666

; current stack state:
; ST(0) = result of _b * 4.1;
; ST(1) = result of _a divided by 3.14

    faddp ST(1), ST(0)

; current stack state: ST(0) = result of addition

    pop ebp
    ret 0
_f ENDP

```

FLD takes 8 bytes from stack and loads the number into the ST(0) register, automatically converting it into the internal 80-bit format (*extended precision*).

FDIV divides the value in ST(0) by the number stored at address `__real@40091eb851eb851f` —the value 3.14 is encoded there. The assembly syntax doesn't support floating point numbers, so what we see here is the hexadecimal representation of 3.14 in 64-bit IEEE 754 format.

After the execution of FDIV ST(0) holds the [quotient](#).

By the way, there is also the FDIVP instruction, which divides ST(1) by ST(0), popping both these values from stack and then pushing the result. If you know the Forth language, you can quickly understand that this is a stack machine.

The subsequent FLD instruction pushes the value of *b* into the stack.

After that, the quotient is placed in ST(1), and ST(0) has the value of *b*.

The next FMUL instruction does multiplication: *b* from ST(0) is multiplied by value at

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

real@4010666666666666 (the number 4.1 is there) and leaves the result in the ST(0) register.

The last FADDP instruction adds the two values at top of stack, storing the result in ST(1) and then popping the value of ST(0), thereby leaving the result at the top of the stack, in ST(0).

The function must return its result in the ST(0) register, so there are no any other instructions except the function epilogue after FADDP.

MSVC + OllyDbg

2 pairs of 32-bit words are marked by red in the stack. Each pair is a double-number in IEEE 754 format and is passed from main().

We see how the first FLD loads a value (1.2) from the stack and puts it into ST(0):

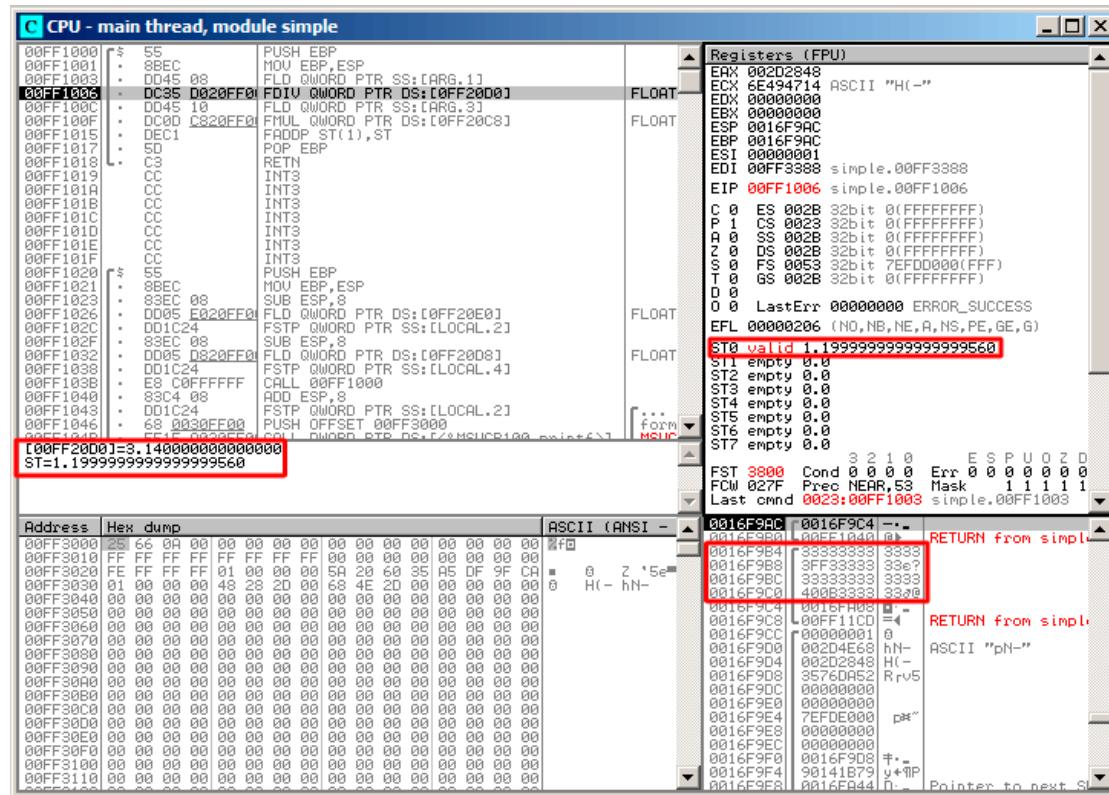


Figure 1.62: OllyDbg: the first FLD has been executed

Because of unavoidable conversion errors from 64-bit IEEE 754 floating point to 80-bit (used internally in the FPU), here we see 1.1999..., which is close to 1.2.

EIP now points to the next instruction (FDIV), which loads a double-number (a constant) from memory. For convenience, OllyDbg shows its value: 3.14

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Let's trace further. FDIV has been executed, now ST(0) contains 0.382...(quotient):

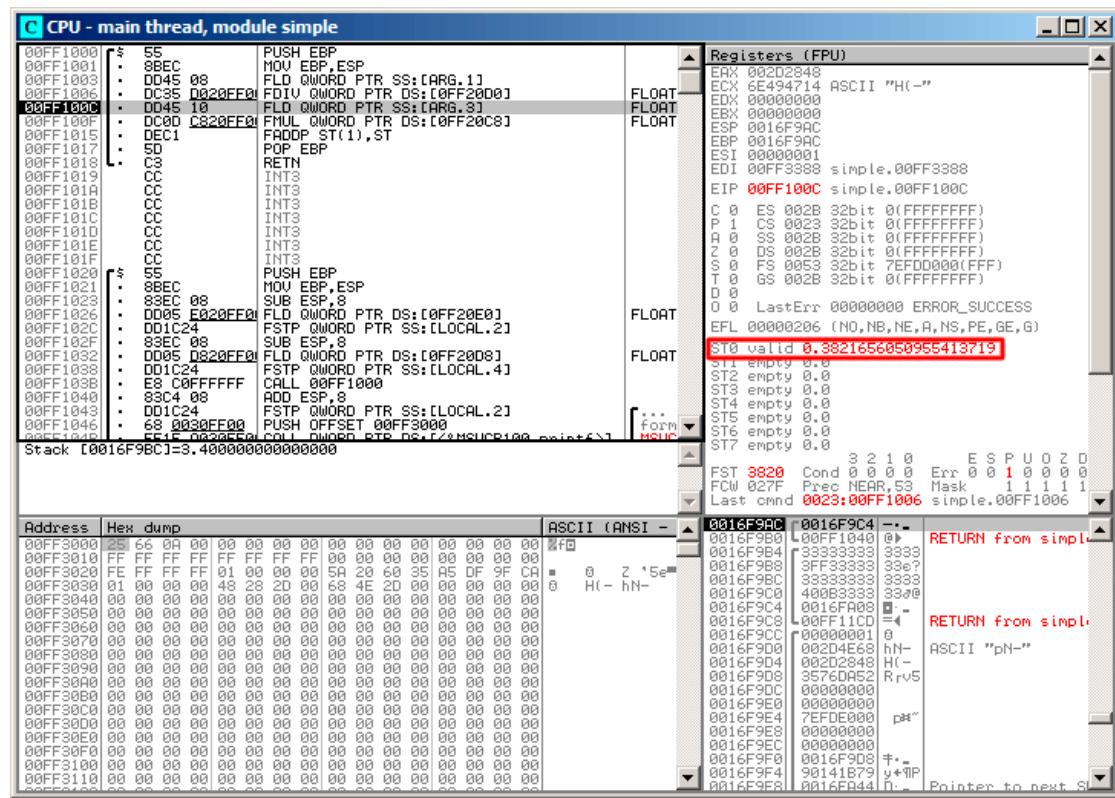


Figure 1.63: OllyDbg: FDIV has been executed

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Third step: the next FLD has been executed, loading 3.4 into ST(0) (here we see the approximate value 3.39999...):

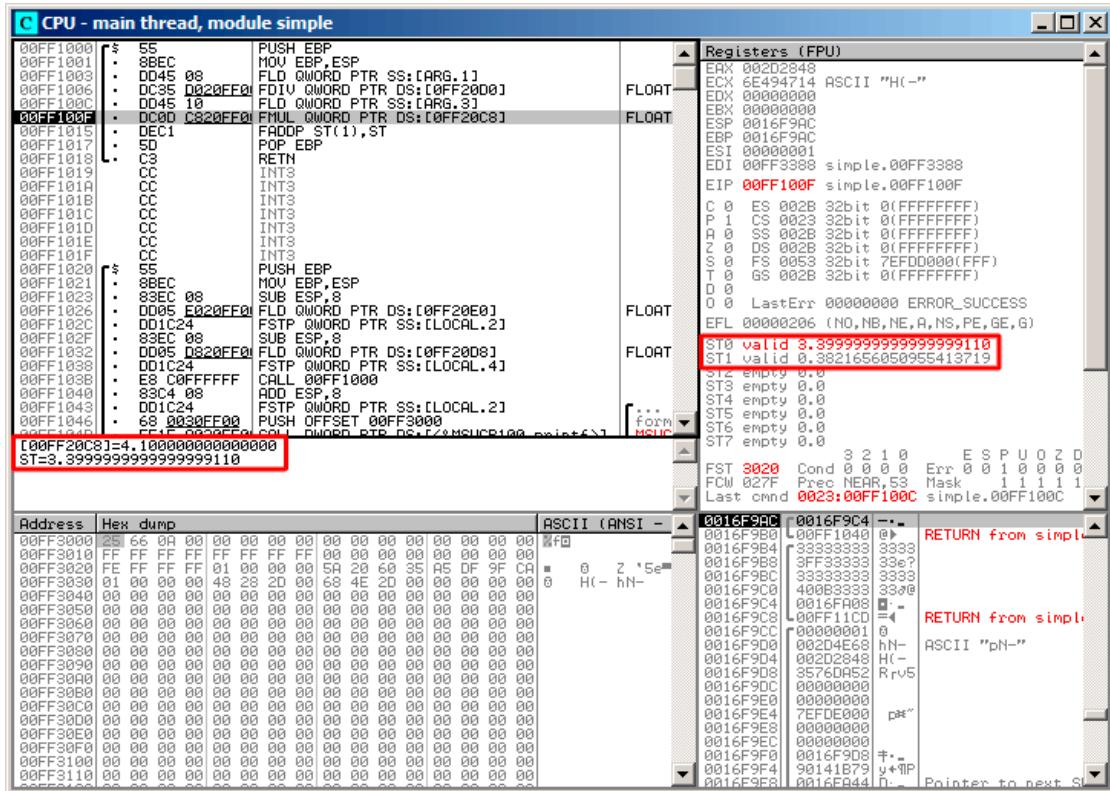


Figure 1.64: OllyDbg: the second FLD has been executed

At the same time, **quotient** is pushed into ST(1). Right now, EIP points to the next instruction: FMUL. It loads the constant 4.1 from memory, which OllyDbg shows.

Next: FMUL has been executed, so now the product is in ST(0):

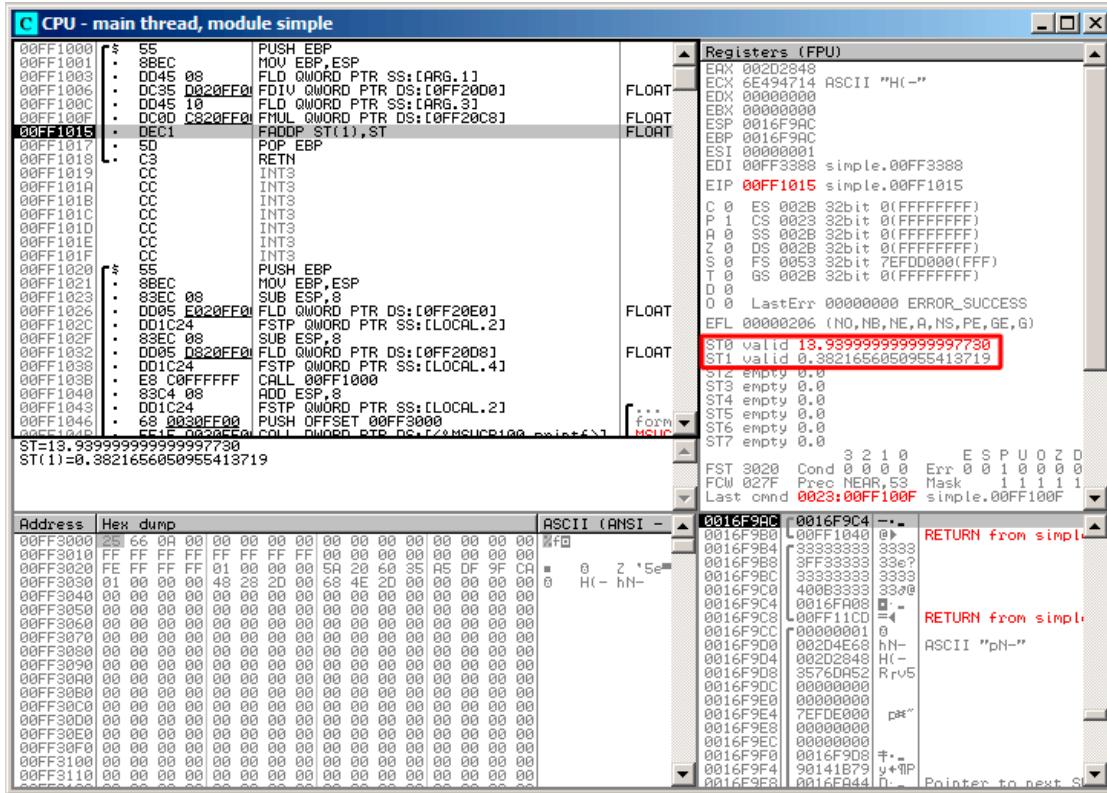


Figure 1.65: OllyDbg: the FMUL has been executed

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Next: the FADDP has been executed, now the result of the addition is in ST(0), and ST(1) is cleared:

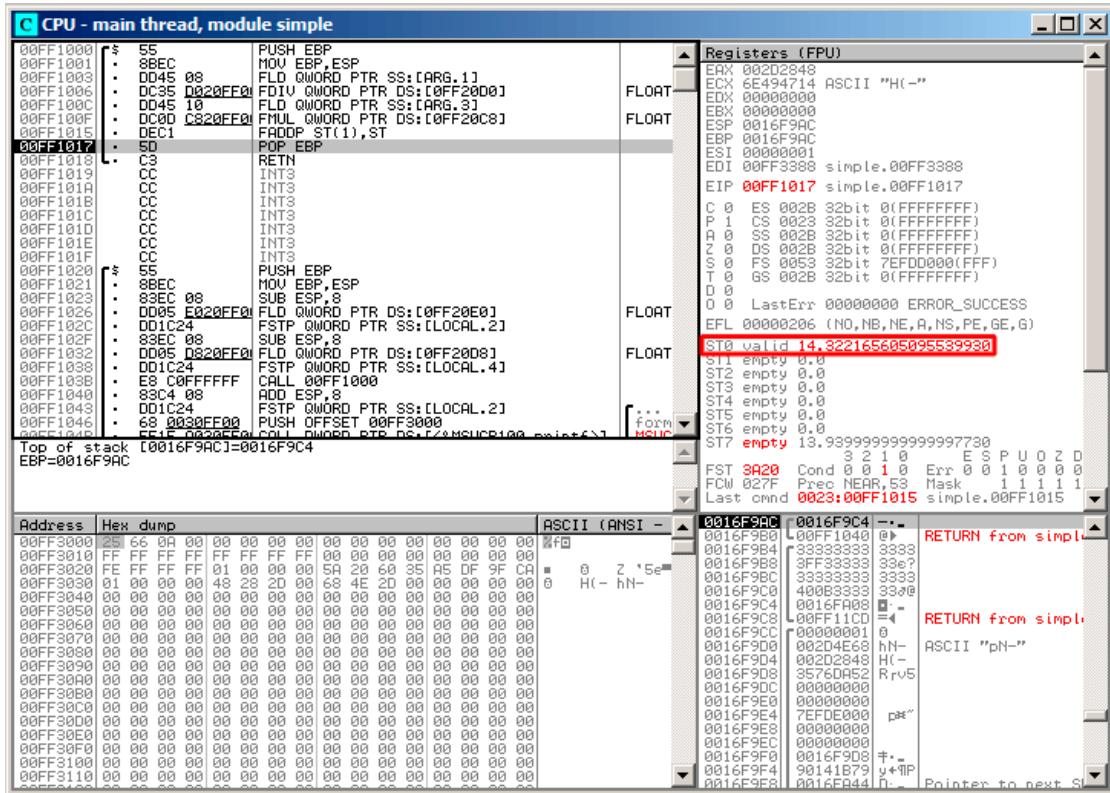


Figure 1.66: OllyDbg: FADDP has been executed

The result is left in ST(0), because the function returns its value in ST(0).

main() takes this value from the register later.

We also see something unusual: the 13.93...value is now located in ST(7). Why?

As we have read some time before in this book, the **FPU** registers are a stack: [1.25.2 on page 275](#). But this is a simplification.

Imagine if it was implemented *in hardware* as it's described, then all 7 register's contents must be moved (or copied) to adjacent registers during pushing and popping, and that's a lot of work.

In reality, the **FPU** has just 8 registers and a pointer (called TOP) which contains a register number, which is the current "top of stack".

When a value is pushed to the stack, TOP is pointed to the next available register, and then a value is written to that register.

The procedure is reversed if a value is popped, however, the register which has been

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

freed is not cleared (it could possibly be cleared, but this is more work which can degrade performance). So that's what we see here.

It can be said that FADDP saved the sum in the stack, and then popped one element. But in fact, this instruction saved the sum and then shifted T0P. More precisely, the registers of the **FPU** are a circular buffer.

GCC

GCC 4.4.1 (with -O3 option) emits the same code, just slightly different:

Listing 1.208: Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```

f          public f
          proc near

arg_0      = qword ptr  8
arg_8      = qword ptr  10h

          push    ebp
          fld     ds:dbl_8048608 ; 3.14

; stack state now: ST(0) = 3.14

          mov     ebp, esp
          fdivr [ebp+arg_0]

; stack state now: ST(0) = result of division

          fld     ds:dbl_8048610 ; 4.1

; stack state now: ST(0) = 4.1, ST(1) = result of division

          fmul   [ebp+arg_8]

; stack state now: ST(0) = result of multiplication, ST(1) = result of
; division

          pop    ebp
          faddp st(1), st

; stack state now: ST(0) = result of addition

          retn
f          endp

```

The difference is that, first of all, 3.14 is pushed to the stack (into ST(0)), and then the value in arg_0 is divided by the value in ST(0).

FDIVR stands for *Reverse Divide* —to divide with divisor and dividend swapped with each other. There is no likewise instruction for multiplication since it is a commutative operation, so we just have FMUL without its -R counterpart.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FADDP adds the two values but also pops one value from the stack. After that operation, ST(0) holds the sum.

ARM: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Until ARM got standardized floating point support, several processor manufacturers added their own instructions extensions. Then, VFP (*Vector Floating Point*) was standardized.

One important difference from x86 is that in ARM, there is no stack, you work just with registers.

Listing 1.209: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

f	VLDR D16, =3.14
	VMOV D17, R0, R1 ; load "a"
	VMOV D18, R2, R3 ; load "b"
	VDIV.F64 D16, D17, D16 ; a/3.14
	VLDR D17, =4.1
	VMUL.F64 D17, D18, D17 ; b*4.1
	VADD.F64 D16, D17, D16 ; +
	VMOV R0, R1, D16
	BX LR
dbl_2C98	DCFD 3.14 ; DATA XREF: f
dbl_2CA0	DCFD 4.1 ; DATA XREF: f+10

So, we see here new some registers used, with D prefix.

These are 64-bit registers, there are 32 of them, and they can be used both for floating-point numbers (double) but also for SIMD (it is called NEON here in ARM).

There are also 32 32-bit S-registers, intended to be used for single precision floating pointer numbers (float).

It is easy to memorize: D-registers are for double precision numbers, while S-registers—for single precision numbers. More about it: [.2.3 on page 1336](#).

Both constants (3.14 and 4.1) are stored in memory in IEEE 754 format.

VLDR and VMOV, as it can be easily deduced, are analogous to the LDR and MOV instructions, but they work with D-registers.

It has to be noted that these instructions, just like the D-registers, are intended not only for floating point numbers, but can be also used for SIMD (NEON) operations and this will also be shown soon.

The arguments are passed to the function in a common way, via the R-registers, however each number that has double precision has a size of 64 bits, so two R-registers are needed to pass each one.

VMOV D17, R0, R1 at the start, composes two 32-bit values from R0 and R1 into one 64-bit value and saves it to D17.

VMOV R0, R1, D16 is the inverse operation: what has been in D16 is split in two registers, R0 and R1, because a double-precision number that needs 64 bits for storage, is returned in R0 and R1.

VDIV, VMUL and VADD, are instruction for processing floating point numbers that compute **quotient**, **product** and sum, respectively.

The code for Thumb-2 is same.

ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```
f
    PUSH {R3-R7,LR}
    MOVS R7, R2
    MOVS R4, R3
    MOVS R5, R0
    MOVS R6, R1
    LDR R2, =0x66666666 ; 4.1
    LDR R3, =0x40106666
    MOVS R0, R7
    MOVS R1, R4
    BL __aeabi_dmul
    MOVS R7, R0
    MOVS R4, R1
    LDR R2, =0x51EB851F ; 3.14
    LDR R3, =0x40091EB8
    MOVS R0, R5
    MOVS R1, R6
    BL __aeabi_ddiv
    MOVS R2, R7
    MOVS R3, R4
    BL __aeabi_dadd
    POP {R3-R7,PC}

; 4.1 in IEEE 754 form:
dword_364 DCD 0x66666666 ; DATA XREF: f+A
dword_368 DCD 0x40106666 ; DATA XREF: f+C
; 3.14 in IEEE 754 form:
dword_36C DCD 0x51EB851F ; DATA XREF: f+1A
dword_370 DCD 0x40091EB8 ; DATA XREF: f+1C
```

Keil generated code for a processor without FPU or NEON support.

The double-precision floating-point numbers are passed via generic R-registers, and instead of FPU-instructions, service library functions are called (like __aeabi_dmul, __aeabi_ddiv, __aeabi_dadd) which emulate multiplication, division and addition for floating-point numbers.

Of course, that is slower than FPU-coprocessor, but it's still better than nothing.

By the way, similar FPU-emulating libraries were very popular in the x86 world when coprocessors were rare and expensive, and were installed only on expensive computers.

The FPU-coprocessor emulation is called *soft float* or *armel (emulation)* in the ARM world, while using the coprocessor's FPU-instructions is called *hard float* or *armhf*.

ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Very compact code:

Listing 1.210: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
f:
; D0 = a, D1 = b
    ldr    d2, .LC25      ; 3.14
; D2 = 3.14
    fdiv   d0, d0, d2
; D0 = D0/D2 = a/3.14
    ldr    d2, .LC26      ; 4.1
; D2 = 4.1
    fmadd  d0, d1, d2, d0
; D0 = D1*D2+D0 = b*4.1+a/3.14
    ret

; constants in IEEE 754 format:
.LC25:
    .word   1374389535      ; 3.14
    .word   1074339512
.LC26:
    .word   1717986918      ; 4.1
    .word   1074816614
```

ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Listing 1.211: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
f:
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    str    d0, [sp,8]       ; save "a" in Register Save Area
    str    d1, [sp]          ; save "b" in Register Save Area
    ldr    x1, [sp,8]
; X1 = a
    ldr    x0, .LC25
; X0 = 3.14
    fmov   d0, x1
    fmov   d1, x0
; D0 = a, D1 = 3.14
    fdiv   d0, d0, d1
; D0 = D0/D1 = a/3.14

    fmov   x1, d0
; X1 = a/3.14
    ldr    x2, [sp]
; X2 = b
    ldr    x0, .LC26
; X0 = 4.1
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        fmov    d0, x2
; D0 = b
        fmov    d1, x0
; D1 = 4.1
        fmul    d0, d0, d1
; D0 = D0*D1 = b*4.1

        fmov    x0, d0
; X0 = D0 = b*4.1
        fmov    d0, x1
; D0 = a/3.14
        fmov    d1, x0
; D1 = X0 = b*4.1
        fadd    d0, d0, d1
; D0 = D0+D1 = a/3.14 + b*4.1

        fmov    x0, d0 ; \ redundant code
        fmov    d0, x0 ; /
        add    sp, sp, 16
        ret

.LC25:
        .word 1374389535      ; 3.14
        .word 1074339512

.LC26:
        .word 1717986918      ; 4.1
        .word 1074816614

```

Non-optimizing GCC is more verbose.

There is a lot of unnecessary value shuffling, including some clearly redundant code (the last two FM0V instructions). Probably, GCC 4.9 is not yet good in generating ARM64 code.

What is worth noting is that ARM64 has 64-bit registers, and the D-registers are 64-bit ones as well.

So the compiler is free to save values of type *double* in GPRs instead of the local stack. This isn't possible on 32-bit CPUs.

And again, as an exercise, you can try to optimize this function manually, without introducing new instructions like FMADD.

1.25.6 Passing floating point numbers via arguments

```

#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main ()
{
    printf ("32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n", pow (32.01,1.54));
    return 0;
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

x86

Let's see what we get in (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.212: MSVC 2010

```

CONST SEGMENT
__real@40400147ae147ae1 DQ 040400147ae147ae1r ; 32.01
__real@3ff8a3d70a3d70a4 DQ 03ff8a3d70a3d70a4r ; 1.54
CONST ENDS

_main PROC
    push ebp
    mov ebp, esp
    sub esp, 8 ; allocate space for the first variable
    fld QWORD PTR __real@3ff8a3d70a3d70a4
    fstp QWORD PTR [esp]
    sub esp, 8 ; allocate space for the second variable
    fld QWORD PTR __real@40400147ae147ae1
    fstp QWORD PTR [esp]
    call _pow
    add esp, 8 ; return back place of one variable.

; in local stack here 8 bytes still reserved for us.
; result now in ST(0)

; move result from ST(0) to local stack for printf():
    fstp QWORD PTR [esp]
    push OFFSET $SG2651
    call _printf
    add esp, 12
    xor eax, eax
    pop ebp
    ret 0
_main ENDP

```

FLD and FSTP move variables between the data segment and the FPU stack. `pow()`¹¹¹ takes both values from the stack and returns its result in the ST(0) register. `printf()` takes 8 bytes from the local stack and interprets them as *double* type variable.

By the way, a pair of MOV instructions could be used here for moving values from the memory into the stack, because the values in memory are stored in IEEE 754 format, and `pow()` also takes them in this format, so no conversion is necessary. That's how it's done in the next example, for ARM: [1.25.6](#).

ARM + Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

```

_main
var_C      = -0xC
        PUSH {R7,LR}

```

¹¹¹a standard C function, raises a number to the given power (exponentiation)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

MOV    R7, SP
SUB    SP, SP, #4
VLDR   D16, =32.01
VMOV   R0, R1, D16
VLDR   D16, =1.54
VMOV   R2, R3, D16
BLX    _pow
VMOV   D16, R0, R1
MOV    R0, 0xFC1 ; "32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n"
ADD    R0, PC
VMOV   R1, R2, D16
BLX    _printf
MOVS   R1, 0
STR    R0, [SP,#0xC+var_C]
MOV    R0, R1
ADD    SP, SP, #4
POP    {R7,PC}

dbl_2F90  DCFD 32.01      ; DATA XREF: _main+6
dbl_2F98  DCFD 1.54       ; DATA XREF: _main+E

```

As it was mentioned before, 64-bit floating pointer numbers are passed in R-registers pairs.

This code is a bit redundant (certainly because optimization is turned off), since it is possible to load values into the R-registers directly without touching the D-registers.

So, as we see, the `_pow` function receives its first argument in R0 and R1, and its second one in R2 and R3. The function leaves its result in R0 and R1. The result of `_pow` is moved into D16, then in the R1 and R2 pair, from where `printf()` takes the resulting number.

ARM + Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

_main
    STMF D SP!, {R4-R6,LR}
    LDR  R2, =0xA3D70A4 ; y
    LDR  R3, =0x3FF8A3D7
    LDR  R0, =0xAE147AE1 ; x
    LDR  R1, =0x40400147
    BL   pow
    MOV  R4, R0
    MOV  R2, R4
    MOV  R3, R1
    ADR  R0, a32_011_54Lf ; "32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n"
    BL   __2printf
    MOV  R0, #0
    LDMFD SP!, {R4-R6,PC}

y          DCD 0xA3D70A4      ; DATA XREF: _main+4
dword_520  DCD 0x3FF8A3D7    ; DATA XREF: _main+8
x          DCD 0xAE147AE1    ; DATA XREF: _main+C
dword_528  DCD 0x40400147    ; DATA XREF: _main+10

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

a32_011_54Lf DCB "32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf",0xA,0 ; DATA XREF: _main+24
--

D-registers are not used here, just R-register pairs.

ARM64 + Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Listing 1.213: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
f:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -16]!
    add    x29, sp, 0
    ldr    d1, .LC1 ; load 1.54 into D1
    ldr    d0, .LC0 ; load 32.01 into D0
    bl     pow
; result of pow() in D0
    adrp   x0, .LC2
    add    x0, x0, :lo12:.LC2
    bl     printf
    mov    w0, 0
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 16
    ret

.LC0:
; 32.01 in IEEE 754 format
    .word   -1374389535
    .word   1077936455
.LC1:
; 1.54 in IEEE 754 format
    .word   171798692
    .word   1073259479
.LC2:
    .string "32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n"
```

The constants are loaded into D0 and D1: pow() takes them from there. The result will be in D0 after the execution of pow(). It is to be passed to printf() without any modification and moving, because printf() takes arguments of [integral types](#) and pointers from X-registers, and floating point arguments from D-registers.

1.25.7 Comparison example

Let's try this:

```
#include <stdio.h>

double d_max (double a, double b)
{
    if (a>b)
        return a;
    return b;
};
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

int main()
{
    printf ("%f\n", d_max (1.2, 3.4));
    printf ("%f\n", d_max (5.6, -4));
}

```

Despite the simplicity of the function, it will be harder to understand how it works.

x86

Non-optimizing MSVC

MSVC 2010 generates the following:

Listing 1.214: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

```

PUBLIC      _d_max
_TEXT       SEGMENT
_a$ = 8          ; size = 8
_b$ = 16         ; size = 8
_d_max        PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    fld     QWORD PTR _b$[ebp]

; current stack state: ST(0) = _b
; compare _b (ST(0)) and _a, and pop register

    fcomp   QWORD PTR _a$[ebp]

; stack is empty here

    fnstsw ax
    test    ah, 5
    jp      SHORT $LN1@_d_max

; we are here only if a>b

    fld     QWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    jmp    SHORT $LN2@_d_max
$LN1@_d_max:
    fld     QWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
$LN2@_d_max:
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_d_max        ENDP

```

So, FLD loads `_b` into ST(0).

FCOMP compares the value in ST(0) with what is in `_a` and sets C3/C2/C0 bits in FPU status word register, accordingly. This is a 16-bit register that reflects the current state of the FPU.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

After the bits are set, the FCOMP instruction also pops one variable from the stack. This is what distinguishes it from FCOM, which is just compares values, leaving the stack in the same state.

Unfortunately, CPUs before Intel P6¹¹² don't have any conditional jumps instructions which check the C3/C2/C0 bits. Perhaps, it is a matter of history (recall: FPU was a separate chip in past).

Modern CPU starting at Intel P6 have FCOMI/FCOMIP/FUCOMI/FUCOMIP instructions — which do the same, but modify the ZF/PF/CF CPU flags.

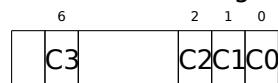
The FNSTSW instruction copies FPU the status word register to AX. C3/C2/C0 bits are placed at positions 14/10/8, they are at the same positions in the AX register and all they are placed in the high part of AX —AH.

- If $b > a$ in our example, then C3/C2/C0 bits are to be set as following: 0, 0, 0.
- If $a > b$, then the bits are: 0, 0, 1.
- If $a = b$, then the bits are: 1, 0, 0.
- If the result is unordered (in case of error), then the set bits are: 1, 1, 1.

This is how C3/C2/C0 bits are located in the AX register:



This is how C3/C2/C0 bits are located in the AH register:



After the execution of `test ah, 5113`, only C0 and C2 bits (on 0 and 2 position) are considered, all other bits are just ignored.

Now let's talk about the *parity flag*, another notable historical rudiment.

This flag is set to 1 if the number of ones in the result of the last calculation is even, and to 0 if it is odd.

Let's look into Wikipedia¹¹⁴:

One common reason to test the parity flag actually has nothing to do with parity. The FPU has four condition flags (C0 to C3), but they cannot be tested directly, and must instead be first copied to the flags register. When this happens, C0 is placed in the carry flag, C2 in the parity flag and C3 in the zero flag. The C2 flag is set when e.g. incomparable floating point values (NaN or unsupported format) are compared with the FUCOM instructions.

As noted in Wikipedia, the parity flag used sometimes in FPU code, let's see how.

¹¹²Intel P6 is Pentium Pro, Pentium II, etc.

¹¹³5=101b

¹¹⁴https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parity_flag

The PF flag is to be set to 1 if both C0 and C2 are set to 0 or both are 1, in which case the subsequent JP (*jump if PF==1*) is triggering. If we recall the values of C3/C2/C0 for various cases, we can see that the conditional jump JP is triggering in two cases: if $b > a$ or $a = b$ (C3 bit is not considered here, since it has been cleared by the test ah, 5 instruction).

It is all simple after that. If the conditional jump has been triggered, FLD loads the value of _b in ST(0), and if it hasn't been triggered, the value of _a is loaded there.

And what about checking C2?

The C2 flag is set in case of error ([NaN](#), etc.), but our code doesn't check it.

If the programmer cares about FPU errors, he/she must add additional checks.

First OllyDbg example: $a=1.2$ and $b=3.4$

Let's load the example into OllyDbg:

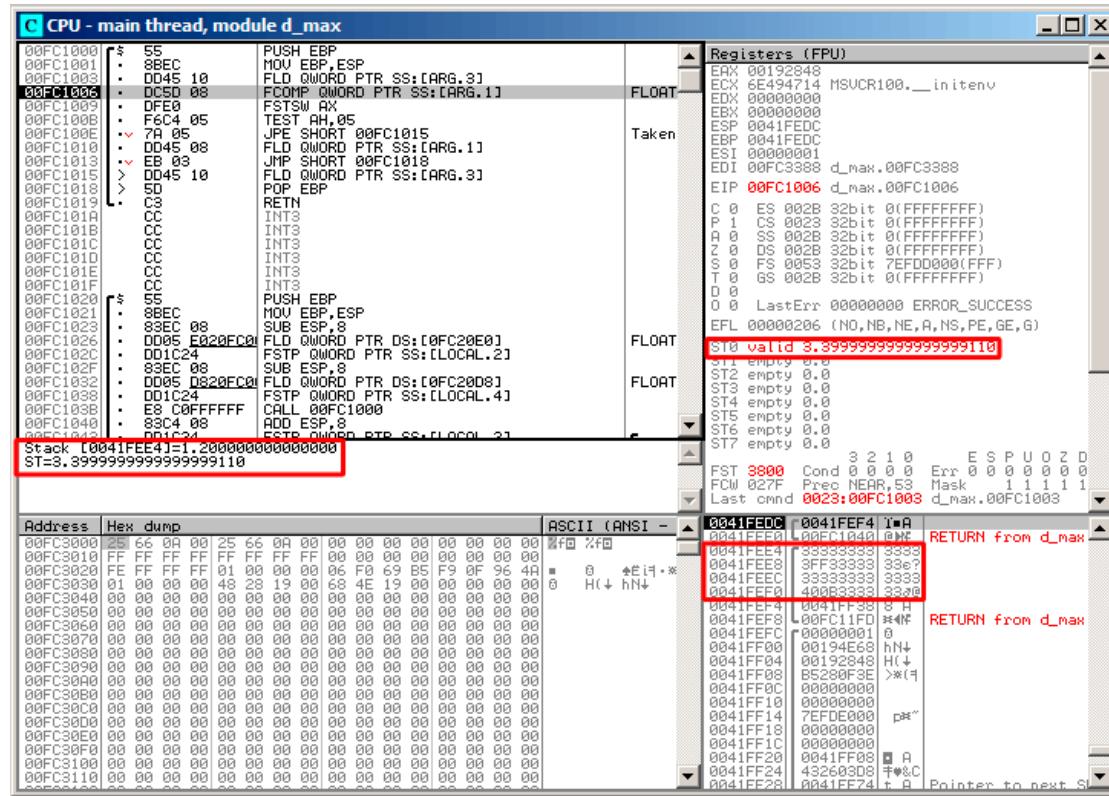


Figure 1.67: OllyDbg: first FLD has been executed

Current arguments of the function: $a = 1.2$ and $b = 3.4$ (We can see them in the stack: two pairs of 32-bit values). b (3.4) is already loaded in $ST(0)$. Now FC0MP is being executed. OllyDbg shows the second FC0MP argument, which is in stack right now.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FCOMP has been executed:

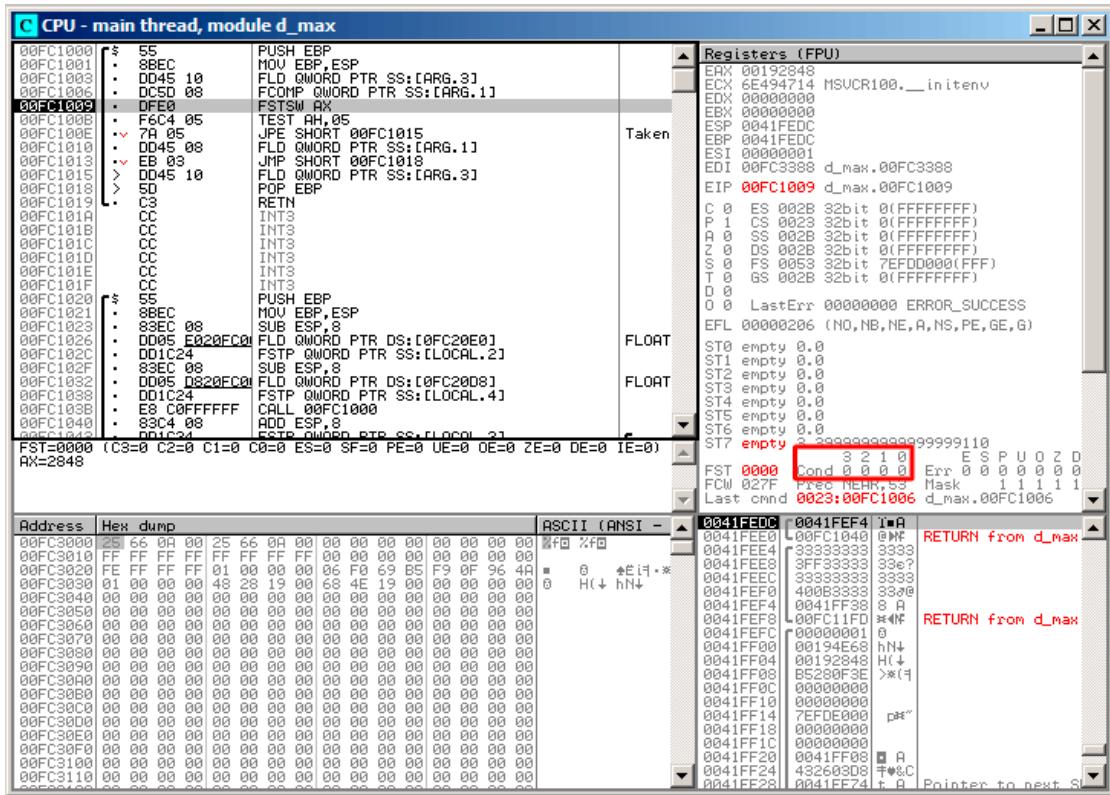


Figure 1.68: OllyDbg: FCOMP has been executed

We see the state of the FPU's condition flags: all zeros. The popped value is reflected as ST(7), it was written earlier about reason for this: [1.25.5 on page 283](#).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FNSTSW has been executed:

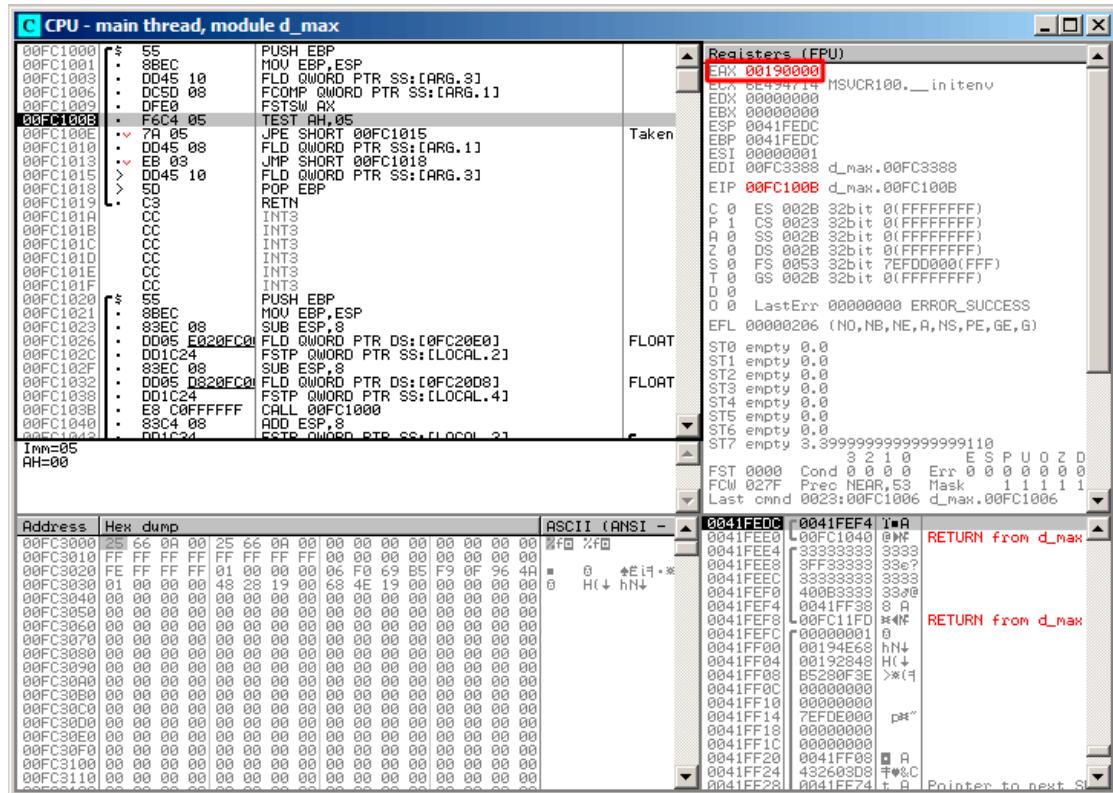


Figure 1.69: OllyDbg: FNSTSW has been executed

We see that the AX register contain zeros: indeed, all condition flags are zero. (OllyDbg disassembles the FNSTSW instruction as FSTSW—they are synonyms).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

TEST has been executed:

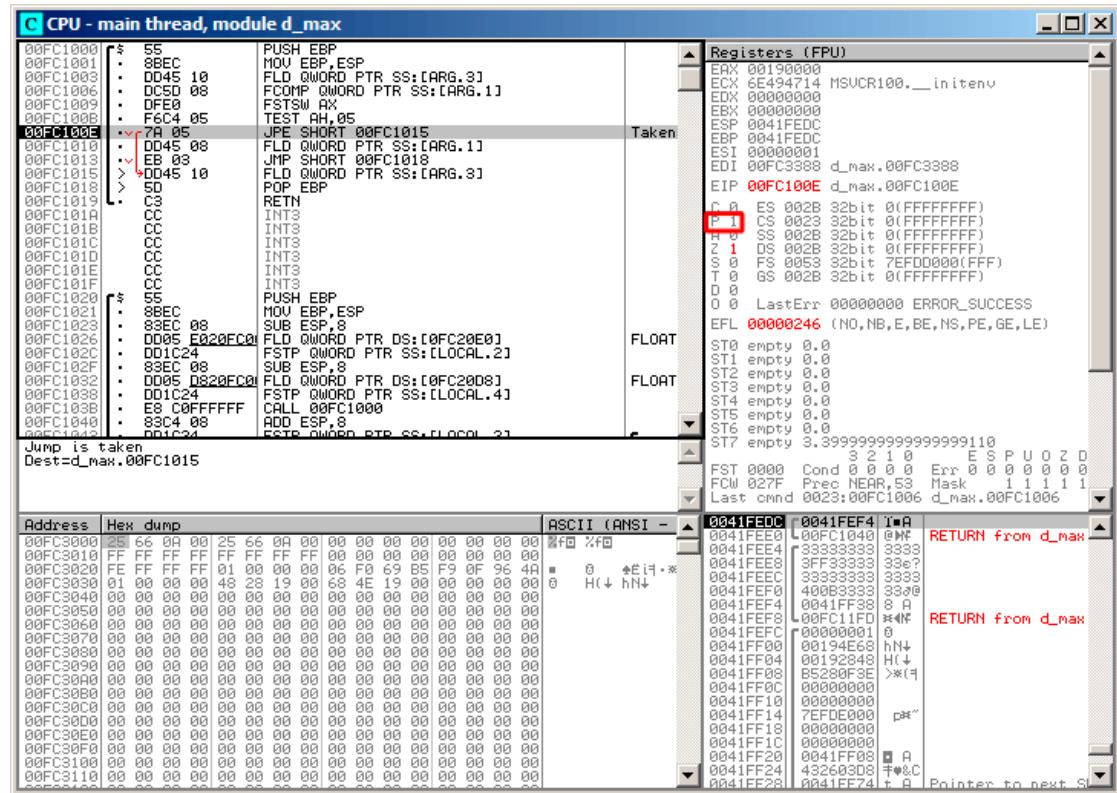


Figure 1.70: OllyDbg: TEST has been executed

The PF flag is set to 1.

Indeed: the number of bits set in 0 is 0 and 0 is an even number. OllyDbg disassembles JP as JPE¹¹⁵—they are synonyms. And it is about to trigger now.

¹¹⁵Jump Parity Even (x86 instruction)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

JPE triggered, FLD loads the value of b (3.4) in ST(0):

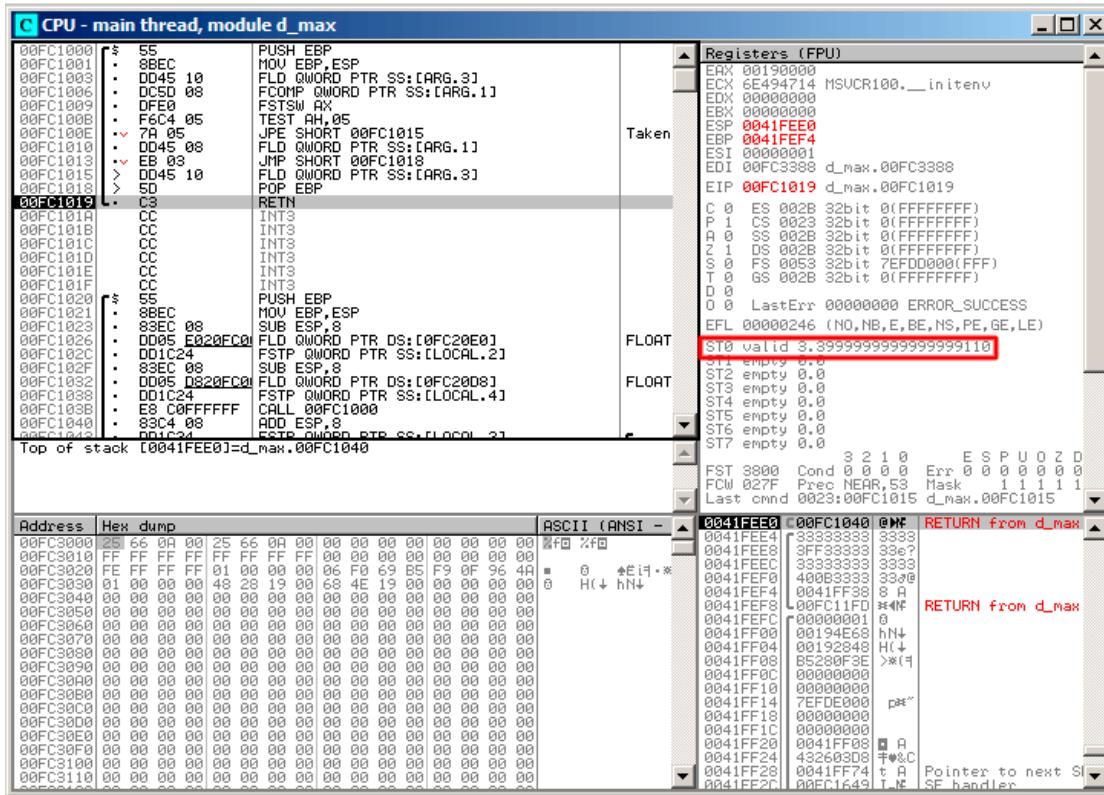


Figure 1.71: OllyDbg: the second FLD has been executed

The function finishes its work.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Second OllyDbg example: a=5.6 and b=-4

Let's load example into OllyDbg:

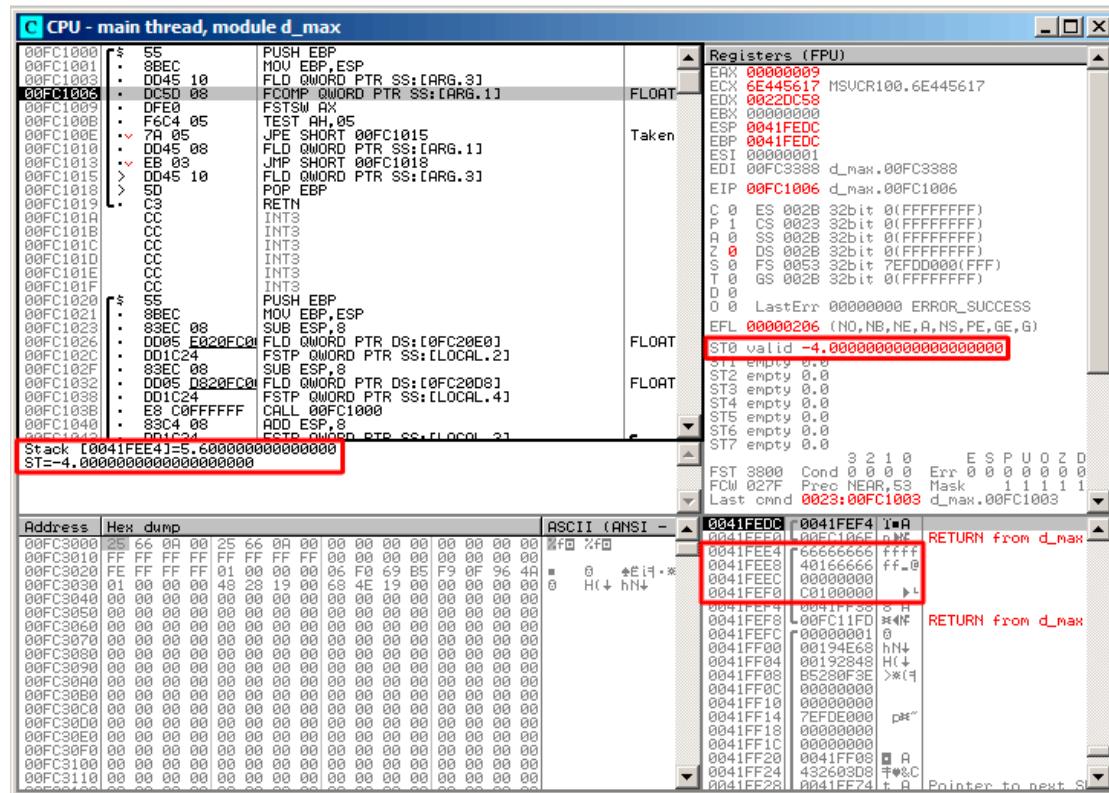


Figure 1.72: OllyDbg: first FLD executed

Current function arguments: $a = 5.6$ and $b = -4$. $b (-4)$ is already loaded in $ST(0)$. $FCOMP$ about to execute now. OllyDbg shows the second $FCOMP$ argument, which is in stack right now.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FCOMP executed:

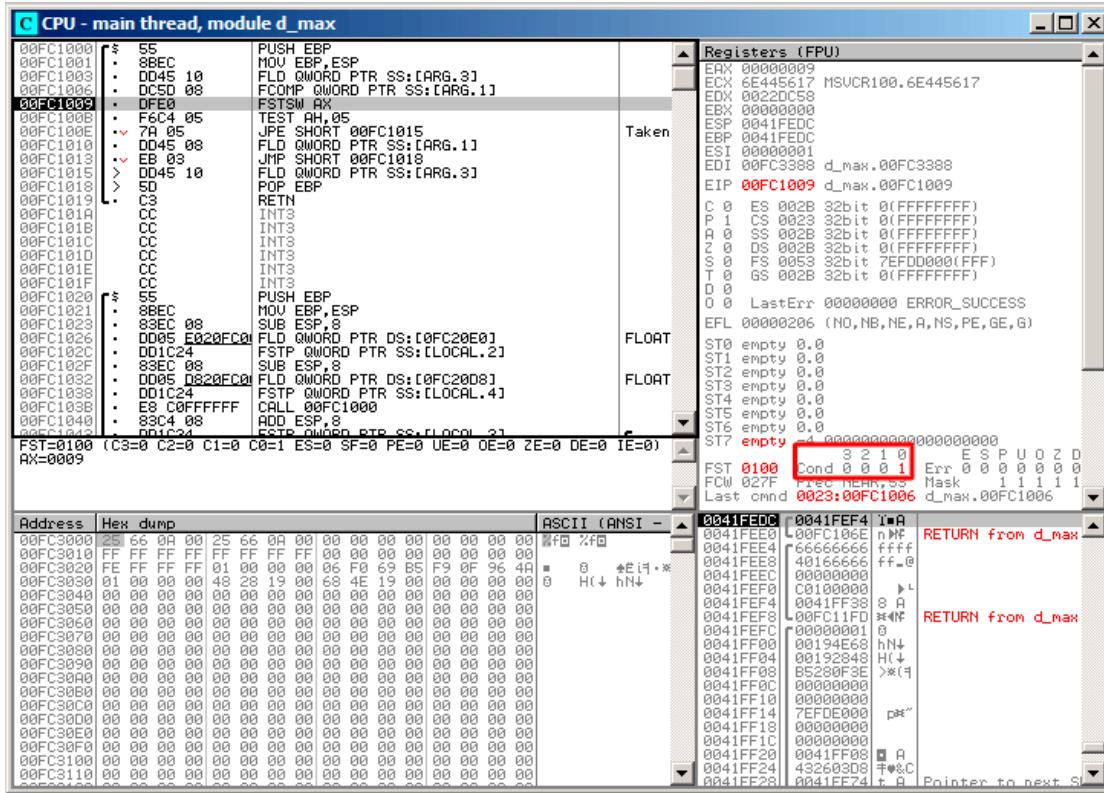


Figure 1.73: OllyDbg: FCOMP executed

We see the state of the FPU's condition flags: all zeros except C0.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FNSTSW executed:

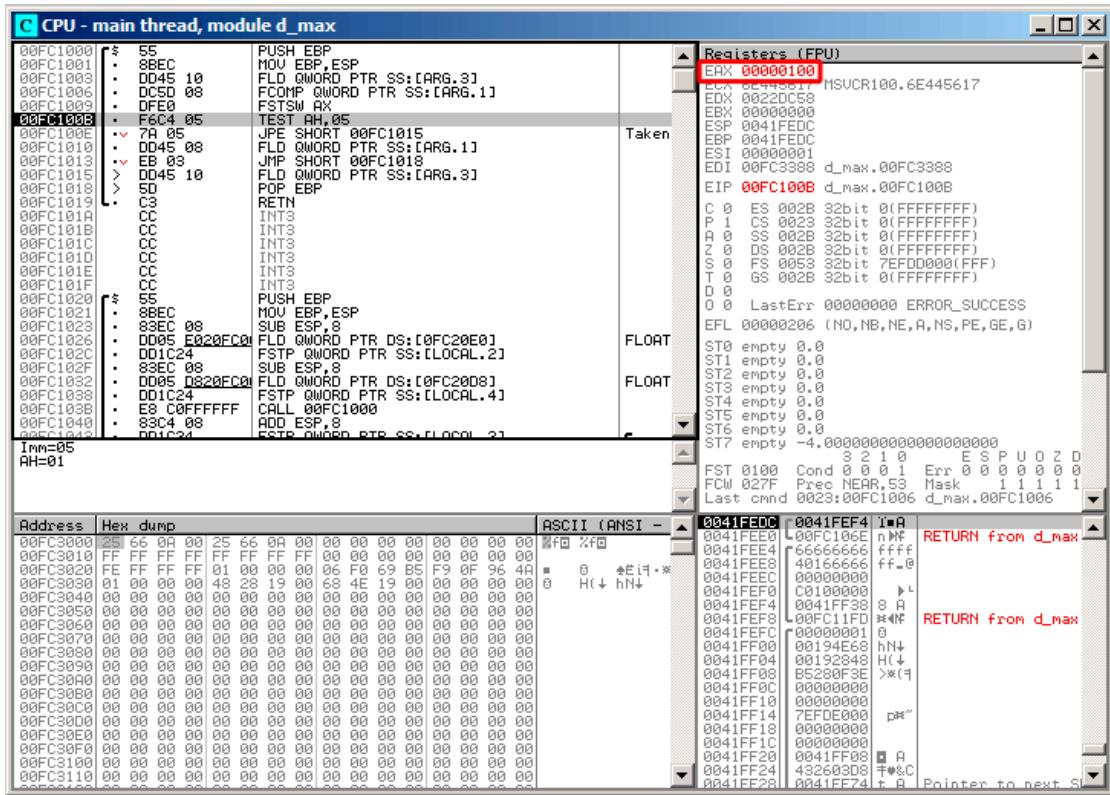


Figure 1.74: OllyDbg: FNSTSW executed

We see that the AX register contains 0x100: the C0 flag is at the 8th bit.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

TEST executed:

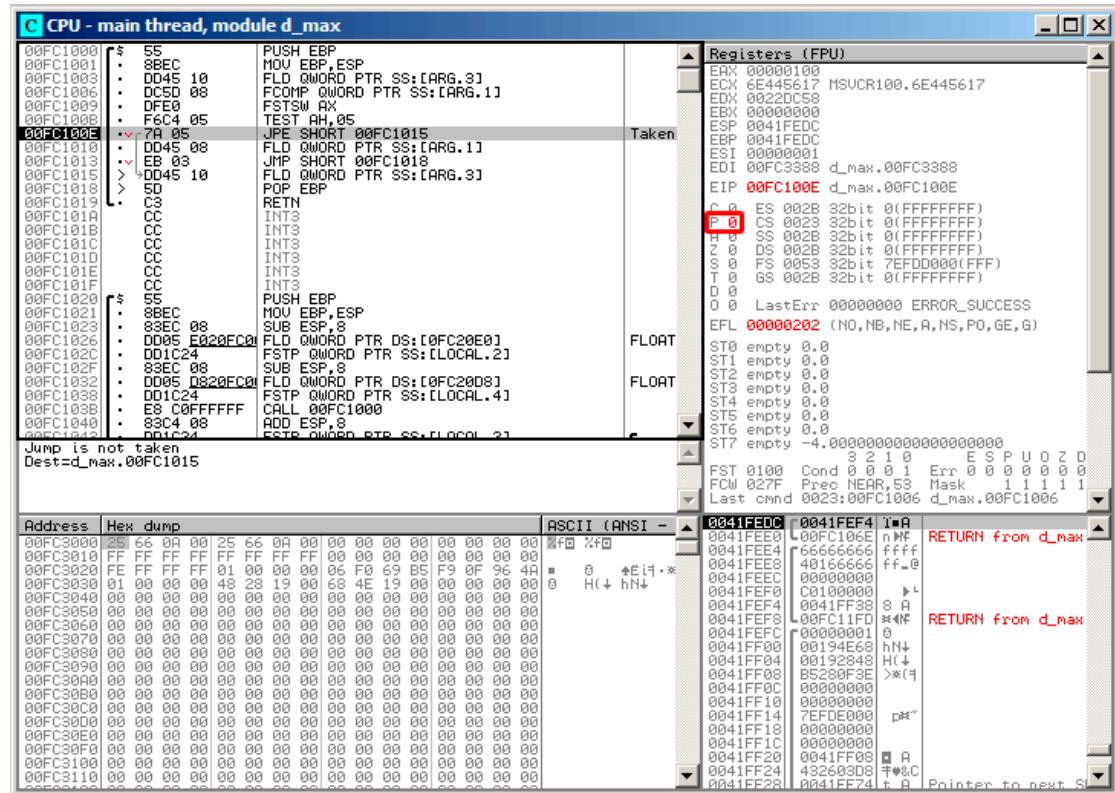


Figure 1.75: OllyDbg: TEST executed

The PF flag is cleared. Indeed:

the count of bits set in 0x100 is 1 and 1 is an odd number. JPE is being skipped now.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

JPE hasn't been triggered, so FLD loads the value of a (5.6) in ST(0):

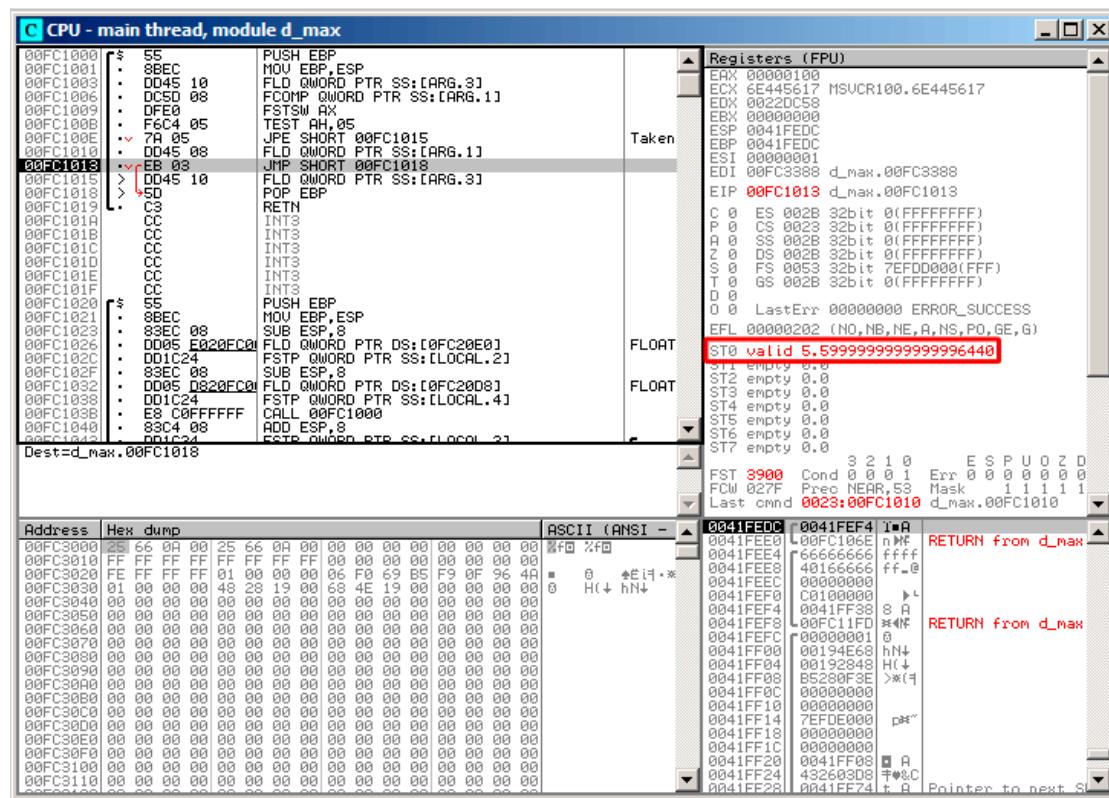


Figure 1.76: OllyDbg: second FLD executed

The function finishes its work.

Optimizing MSVC 2010

Listing 1.215: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8 ; size = 8
_b$ = 16 ; size = 8
_d_max PROC
    fld    QWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    fld    QWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]

; current stack state: ST(0) = _a, ST(1) = _b

    fcom   ST(1) ; compare _a and ST(1) = (_b)
    fnstsw ax
    test   ah, 65 ; 00000041H
    jne    SHORT $LN5@dd max
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

```

; copy ST(0) to ST(1) and pop register,
; leave (_a) on top
    fstp    ST(1)

; current stack state: ST(0) = _a

    ret    0
$LN5@d_max:
; copy ST(0) to ST(0) and pop register,
; leave (_b) on top
    fstp    ST(0)

; current stack state: ST(0) = _b

    ret    0
_d_max    ENDP

```

FCOM differs from FCOMP in the sense that it just compares the values and doesn't change the FPU stack. Unlike the previous example, here the operands are in reverse order, which is why the result of the comparison in C3/C2/C0 is different:

- If $a > b$ in our example, then C3/C2/C0 bits are to be set as: 0, 0, 0.
- If $b > a$, then the bits are: 0, 0, 1.
- If $a = b$, then the bits are: 1, 0, 0.

The test ah, 65 instruction leaves just two bits —C3 and C0. Both will be zero if $a > b$: in that case the JNE jump will not be triggered. Then FSTP ST(1) follows —this instruction copies the value from ST(0) to the operand and pops one value from the FPU stack. In other words, the instruction copies ST(0) (where the value of _a is now) into ST(1). After that, two copies of _a are at the top of the stack. Then, one value is popped. After that, ST(0) contains _a and the function is finished.

The conditional jump JNE is triggering in two cases: if $b > a$ or $a = b$. ST(0) is copied into ST(0), it is just like an idle (**NOP**) operation, then one value is popped from the stack and the top of the stack (ST(0)) is contain what has been in ST(1) before (that is _b). Then the function finishes. The reason this instruction is used here probably is because the **FPU** has no other instruction to pop a value from the stack and discard it.

First OllyDbg example: a=1.2 and b=3.4

Both FLD are executed:

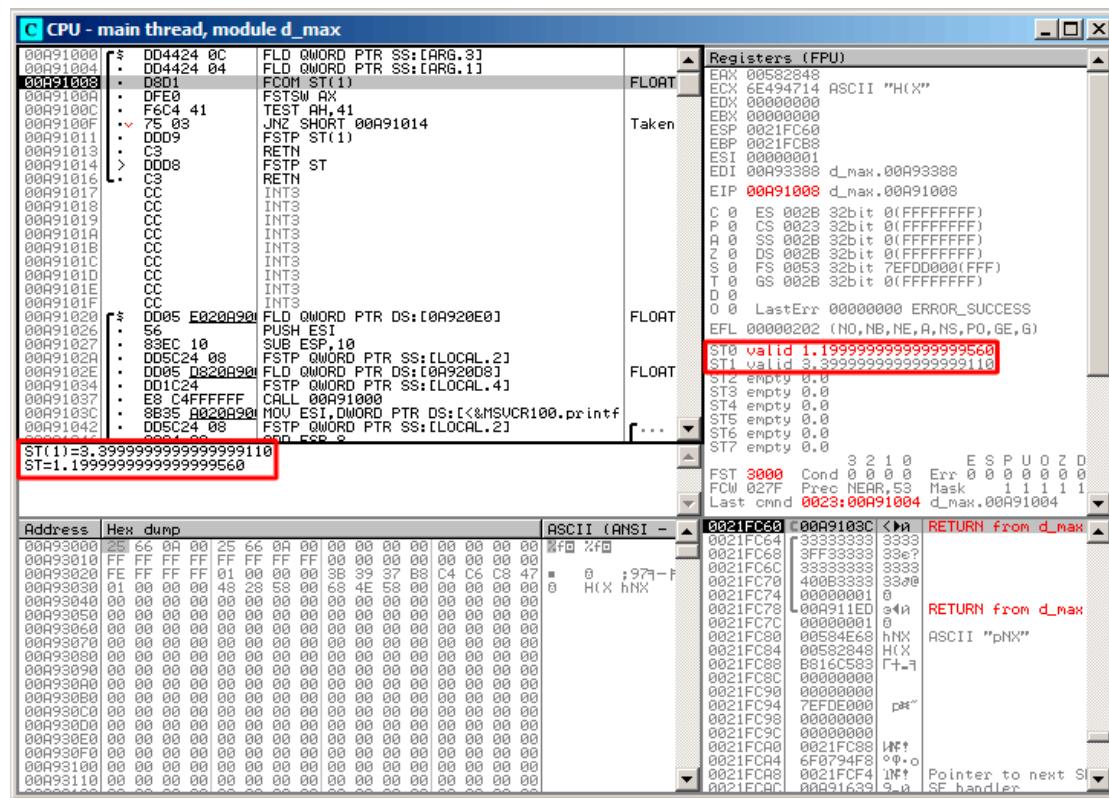


Figure 1.77: OllyDbg: both FLD are executed

FCOM being executed: OllyDbg shows the contents of ST(0) and ST(1) for convenience.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FCOM has been executed:

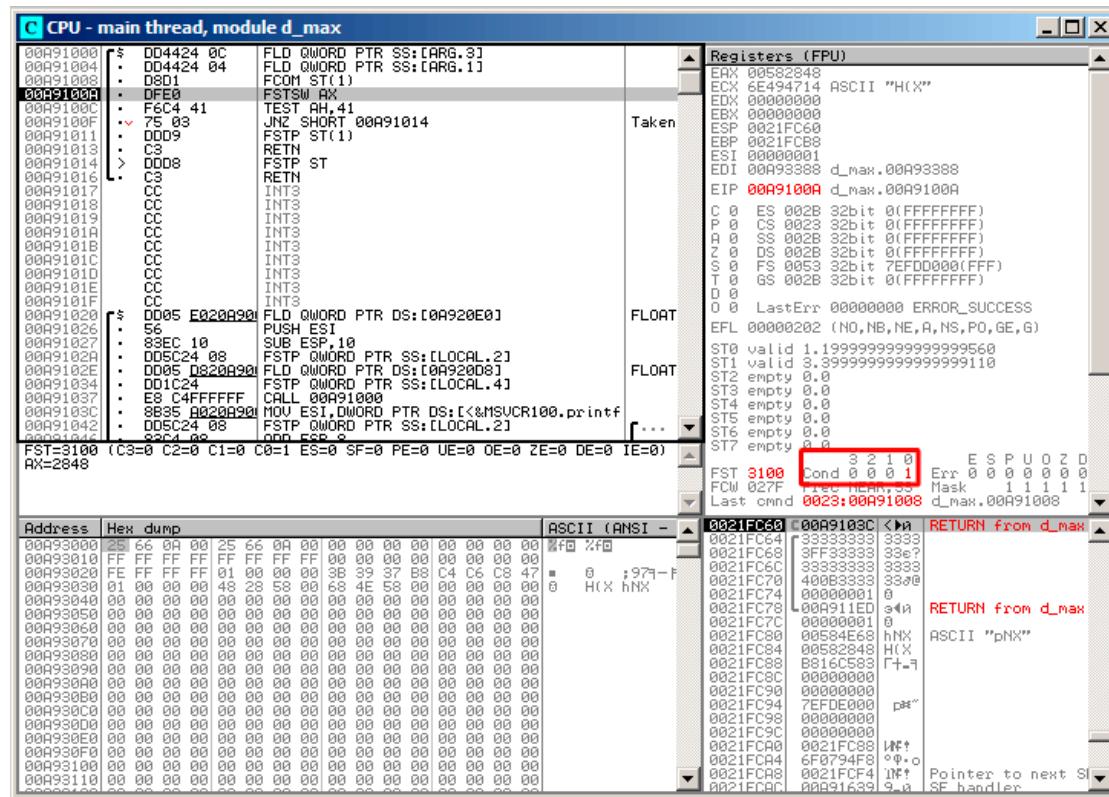


Figure 1.78: OllyDbg: FCOM has been executed

C0 is set, all other condition flags are cleared.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

FNSTSW has been executed, AX=0x3100:

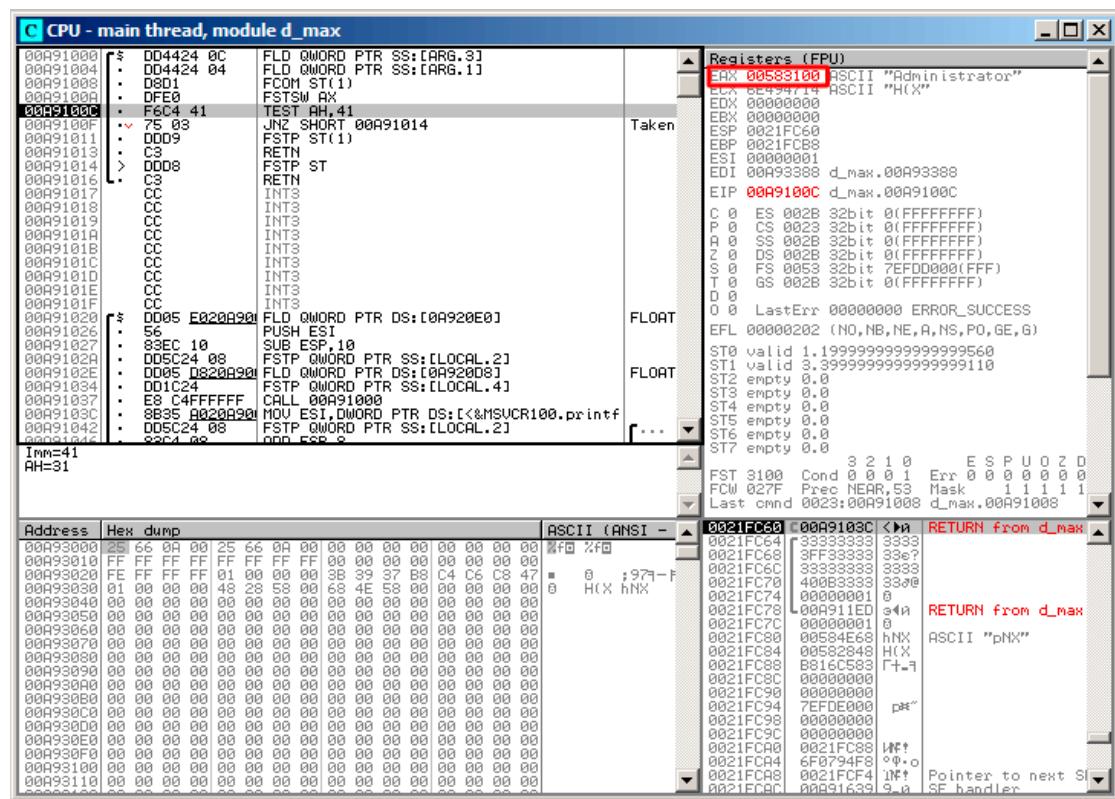


Figure 1.79: OllyDbg: FNSTSW is executed

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

TEST is executed:

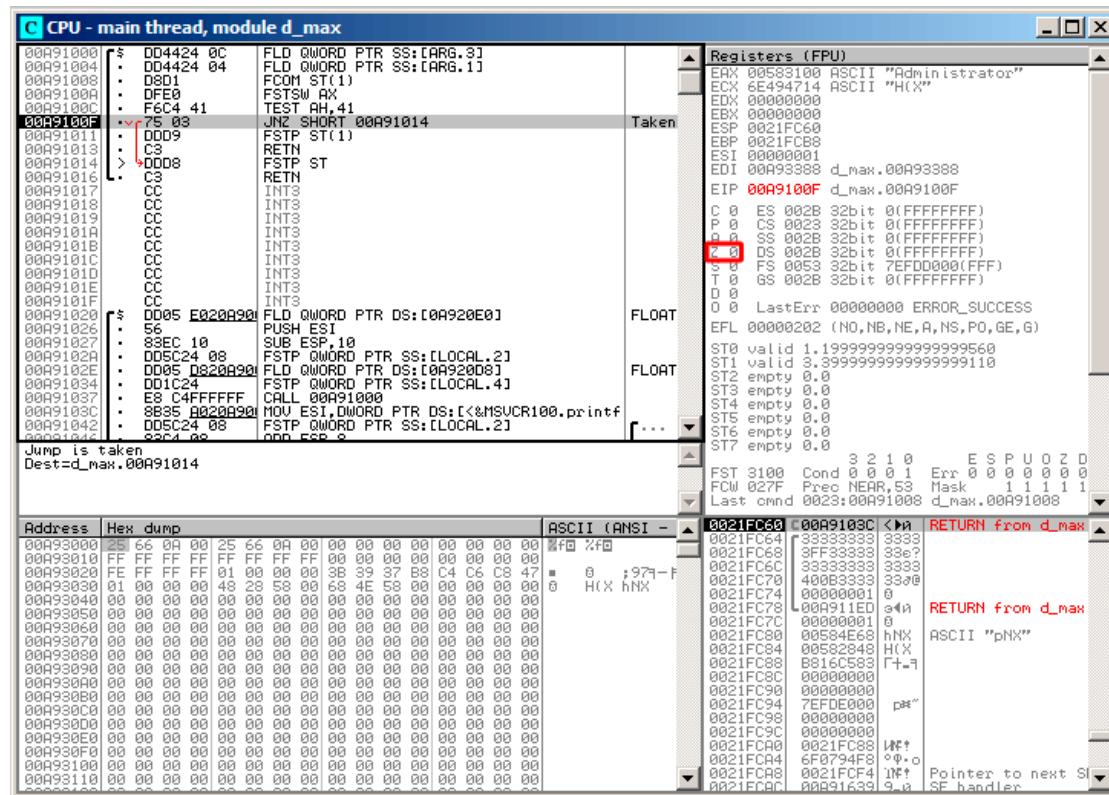


Figure 1.80: OllyDbg: TEST is executed

ZF=0, conditional jump is about to trigger now.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FSTP ST (or FSTP ST(0)) has been executed —1.2 has been popped from the stack, and 3.4 was left on top:

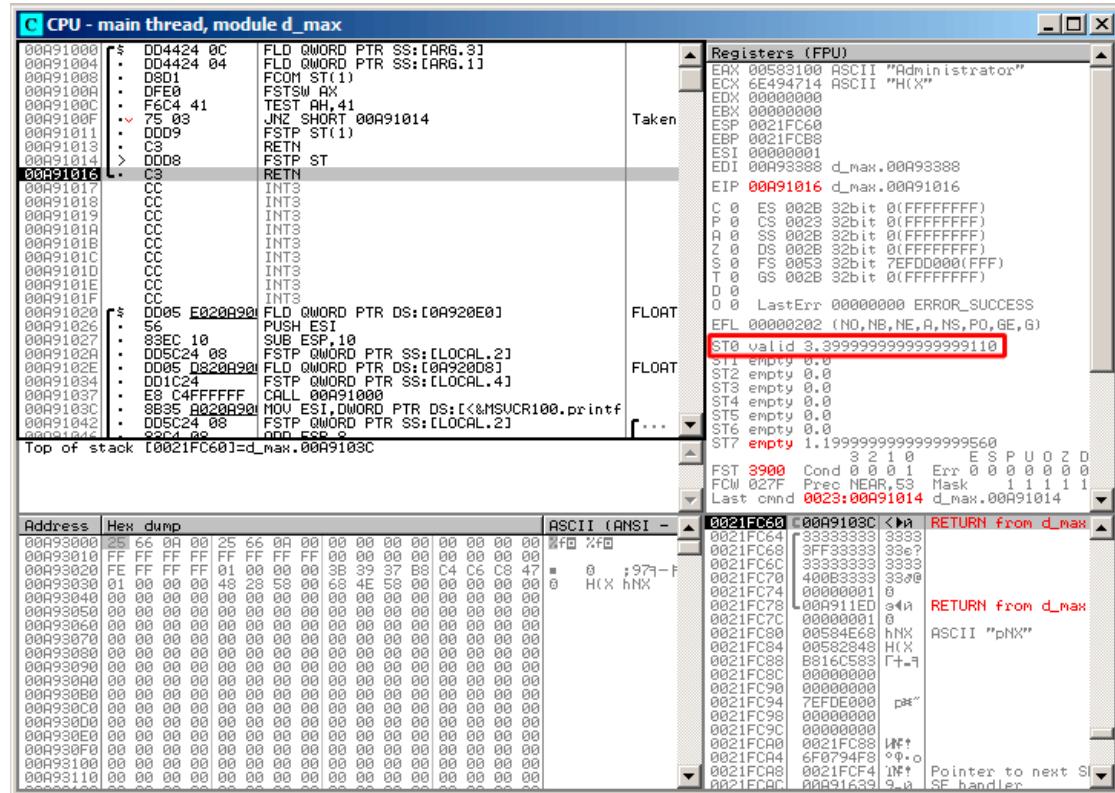


Figure 1.81: OllyDbg: FSTP is executed

We see that the FSTP ST instruction works just like popping one value from the FPU stack.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Second OllyDbg example: a=5.6 and b=-4

Both FLD are executed:

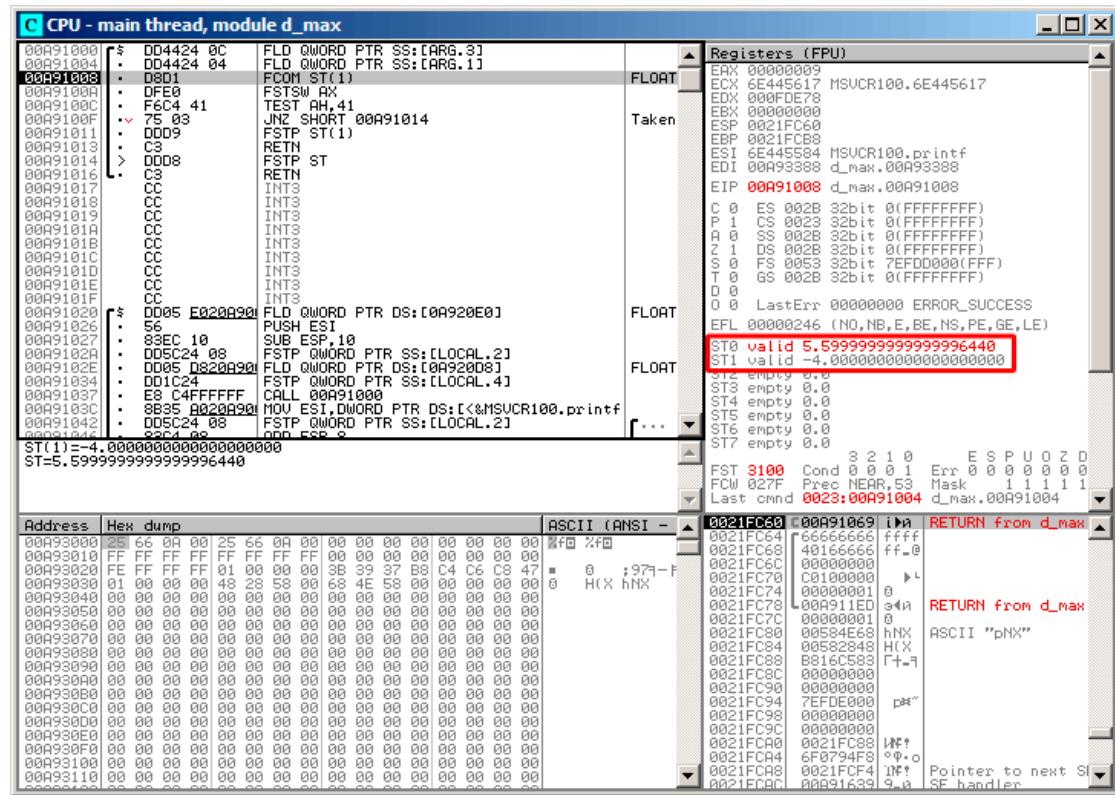


Figure 1.82: OllyDbg: both FLD are executed

FCOM is about to execute.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FCOM has been executed:

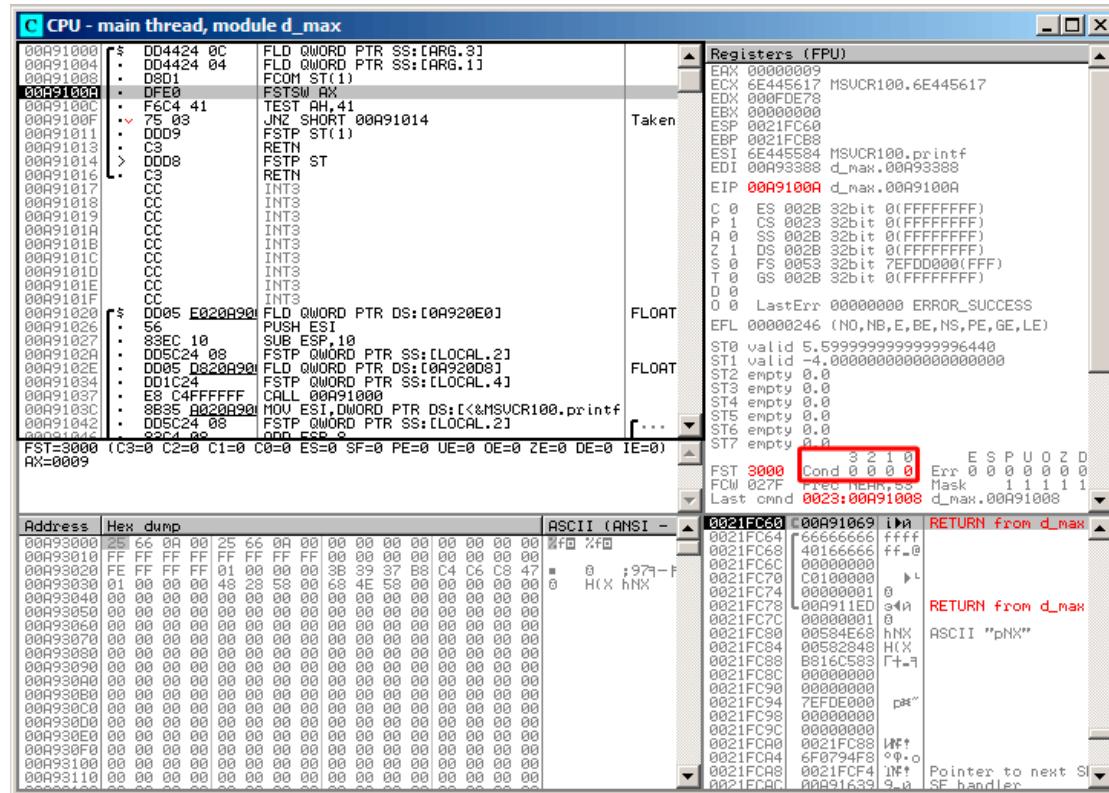


Figure 1.83: OllyDbg: FCOM is finished

All conditional flags are cleared.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FNSTSW done, AX=0x3000:

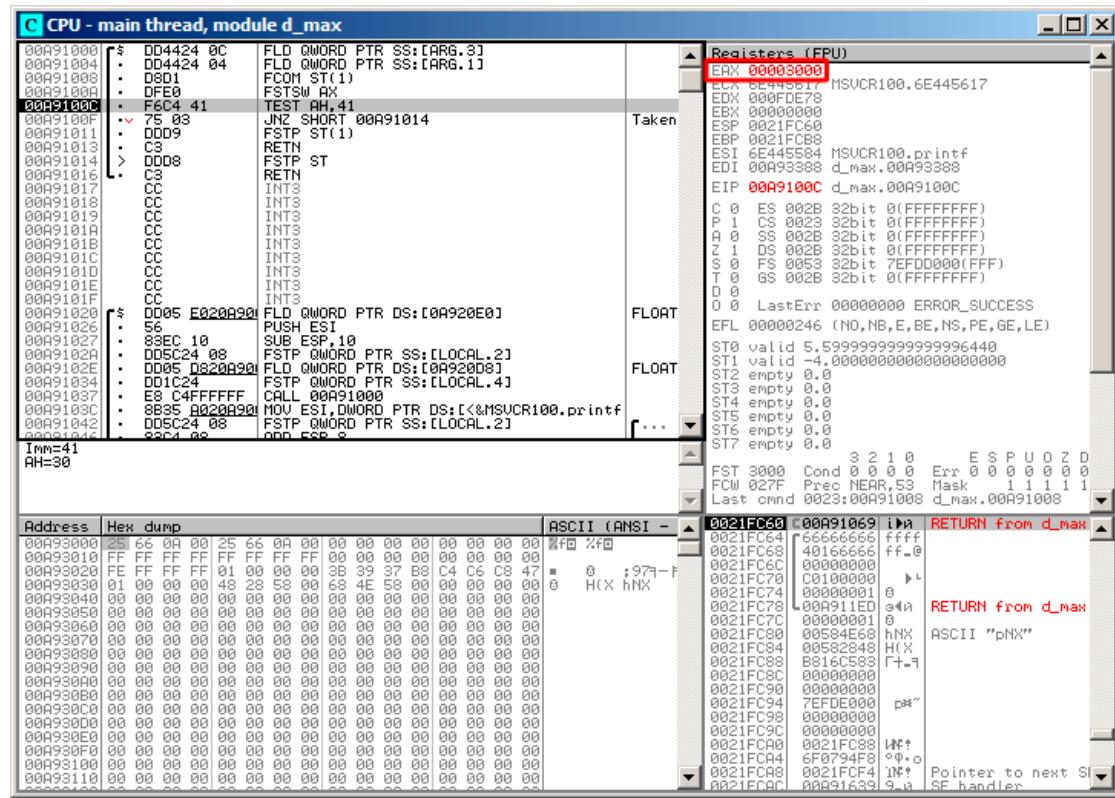


Figure 1.84: OllyDbg: FNSTSW has been executed

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

TEST has been executed:

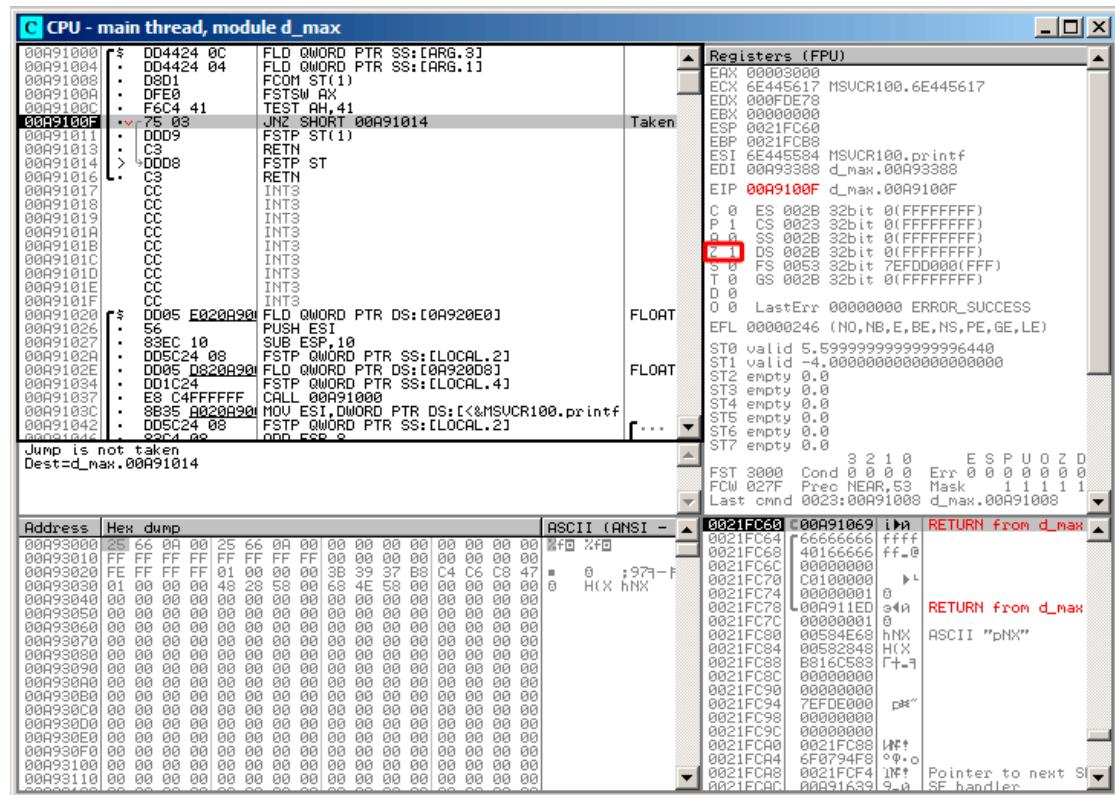


Figure 1.85: OllyDbg: TEST has been executed

ZF=1, jump will not happen now.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FSTP ST(1) has been executed: a value of 5.6 is now at the top of the FPU stack.

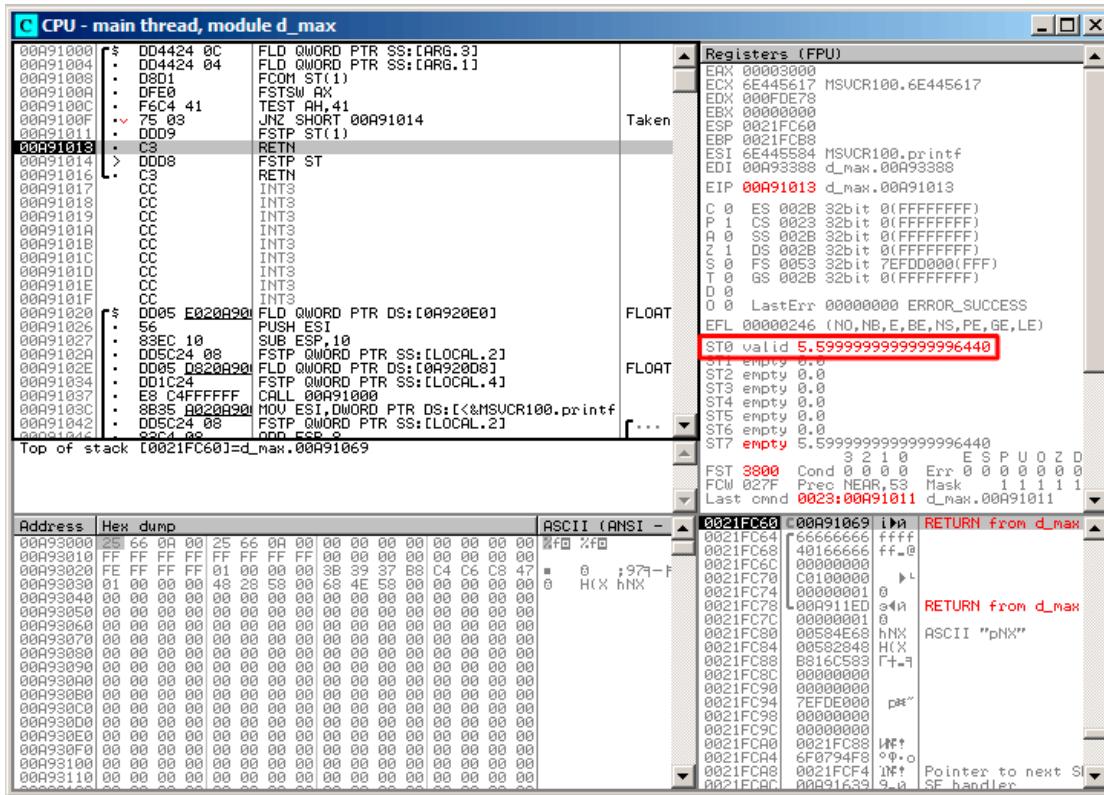


Figure 1.86: OllyDbg: FSTP has been executed

We now see that the FSTP ST(1) instruction works as follows: it leaves what has been at the top of the stack, but clears ST(1).

GCC 4.4.1

Listing 1.216: GCC 4.4.1

```
d_max proc near

b          = qword ptr -10h
a          = qword ptr -8
a_first_half = dword ptr 8
a_second_half = dword ptr 0Ch
b_first_half = dword ptr 10h
b_second_half = dword ptr 14h

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

sub    esp, 10h

; put a and b to local stack:

mov    eax, [ebp+a_first_half]
mov    dword ptr [ebp+a], eax
mov    eax, [ebp+a_second_half]
mov    dword ptr [ebp+a+4], eax
mov    eax, [ebp+b_first_half]
mov    dword ptr [ebp+b], eax
mov    eax, [ebp+b_second_half]
mov    dword ptr [ebp+b+4], eax

; load a and b to FPU stack:

fld    [ebp+a]
fld    [ebp+b]

; current stack state: ST(0) - b; ST(1) - a

fxch   st(1) ; this instruction swaps ST(1) and ST(0)

; current stack state: ST(0) - a; ST(1) - b

fucompp ; compare a and b and pop two values from stack, i.e., a and b
fnstsw ax ; store FPU status to AX
sahf   ; load SF, ZF, AF, PF, and CF flags state from AH
setnbe al ; store 1 to AL, if CF=0 and ZF=0
test   al, al      ; AL==0 ?
jz    short loc_8048453 ; yes
fld    [ebp+a]
jmp    short locret_8048456

loc_8048453:
fld    [ebp+b]

locret_8048456:
leave
retn
d_max endp

```

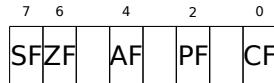
FUCOMPP is almost like FCOM, but pops both values from the stack and handles “not-a-numbers” differently.

A bit about *not-a-numbers*.

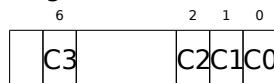
The FPU is able to deal with special values which are *not-a-numbers* or [NaNs](#). These are infinity, result of division by 0, etc. Not-a-numbers can be “quiet” and “signaling”. It is possible to continue to work with “quiet” NaNs, but if one tries to do any operation with “signaling” NaNs, an exception is to be raised.

FCOM raises an exception if any operand is [NaN](#). FUCOM raises an exception only if any operand is a signaling [NaN](#) (SNaN).

The next instruction is SAHF (*Store AH into Flags*) —this is a rare instruction in code not related to the FPU. 8 bits from AH are moved into the lower 8 bits of the CPU flags in the following order:



Let's recall that FNSTSW moves the bits that interest us (C3/C2/C0) into AH and they are in positions 6, 2, 0 of the AH register:



In other words, the fnstsw ax / sahf instruction pair moves C3/C2/C0 into ZF, PF and CF.

Now let's also recall the values of C3/C2/C0 in different conditions:

- If a is greater than b in our example, then C3/C2/C0 are to be set to: 0, 0, 0.
- if a is less than b , then the bits are to be set to: 0, 0, 1.
- If $a = b$, then: 1, 0, 0.

In other words, these states of the CPU flags are possible after three FUCOMPP/FNSTSW/SAHF instructions:

- If $a > b$, the CPU flags are to be set as: ZF=0, PF=0, CF=0.
- If $a < b$, then the flags are to be set as: ZF=0, PF=0, CF=1.
- And if $a = b$, then: ZF=1, PF=0, CF=0.

Depending on the CPU flags and conditions, SETNBE stores 1 or 0 to AL. It is almost the counterpart of JNBE, with the exception that SETcc¹¹⁶ stores 1 or 0 in AL, but Jcc does actually jump or not. SETNBE stores 1 only if CF=0 and ZF=0. If it is not true, 0 is to be stored into AL.

Only in one case both CF and ZF are 0: if $a > b$.

Then 1 is to be stored to AL, the subsequent JZ is not to be triggered and the function will return _a. In all other cases, _b is to be returned.

Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

Listing 1.217: Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```

d_max          public d_max
                proc near
arg_0          = qword ptr  8
arg_8          = qword ptr  10h
                push    ebp

```

¹¹⁶cc is condition code

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    ebp, esp
    fld    [ebp+arg_0] ; _a
    fld    [ebp+arg_8] ; _b

; stack state now: ST(0) = _b, ST(1) = _a
    fxch   st(1)

; stack state now: ST(0) = _a, ST(1) = _b
    fucom  st(1) ; compare _a and _b
    fnstsw ax
    sahf
    ja     short loc_8048448

; store ST(0) to ST(0) (idle operation),
; pop value at top of stack,
; leave _b at top
    fstp   st
    jmp    short loc_804844A

loc_8048448:
; store _a to ST(1), pop value at top of stack, leave _a at top
    fstp   st(1)

loc_804844A:
    pop    ebp
    retn
d_max    endp

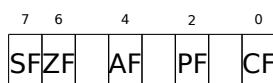
```

It is almost the same except that JA is used after SAHF. Actually, conditional jump instructions that check “larger”, “lesser” or “equal” for unsigned number comparison (these are JA, JAE, JB, JBE, JE/JZ, JNA, JNAE, JNB, JNBE, JNE/JNZ) check only flags CF and ZF.

Let's recall where bits C3/C2/C0 are located in the AH register after the execution of FSTSW/FNSTSW:



Let's also recall, how the bits from AH are stored into the CPU flags after the execution of SAHF:



After the comparison, the C3 and C0 bits are moved into ZF and CF, so the conditional jumps are able work after. s triggering if both CF are ZF zero.

Thereby, the conditional jumps instructions listed here can be used after a FNSTSW/SAHF instruction pair.

Apparently, the FPU C3/C2/C0 status bits were placed there intentionally, to easily map them to base CPU flags without additional permutations?

GCC 4.8.1 with -O3 optimization turned on

Some new FPU instructions were added in the P6 Intel family¹¹⁷. These are FUCOMI (compare operands and set flags of the main CPU) and FCMOVcc (works like CMOVcc, but on FPU registers).

Apparently, the maintainers of GCC decided to drop support of pre-P6 Intel CPUs (early Pentiums, 80486, etc.).

And also, the FPU is no longer separate unit in P6 Intel family, so now it is possible to modify/check flags of the main CPU from the FPU.

So what we get is:

Listing 1.218: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```

fld    QWORD PTR [esp+4]      ; load "a"
fld    QWORD PTR [esp+12]      ; load "b"
; ST0=b, ST1=a
fxch   st(1)
; ST0=a, ST1=b
; compare "a" and "b"
fucomi st, st(1)
; copy ST1 ("b" here) to ST0 if a<=b
; leave "a" in ST0 otherwise
fcmovbe st, st(1)
; discard value in ST1
fstp   st(1)
ret

```

Hard to guess why FXCH (swap operands) is here.

It's possible to get rid of it easily by swapping the first two FLD instructions or by replacing FCMOVBE (*below or equal*) by FCMOVA (*above*). Probably it's a compiler inaccuracy.

So FUCOMI compares ST(0) (*a*) and ST(1) (*b*) and then sets some flags in the main CPU. FCMOVBE checks the flags and copies ST(1) (*b* here at the moment) to ST(0) (*a* here) if $ST0(a) \leq ST1(b)$. Otherwise ($a > b$), it leaves *a* in ST(0).

The last FSTP leaves ST(0) on top of the stack, discarding the contents of ST(1).

Let's trace this function in GDB:

Listing 1.219: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 and GDB

```

1 dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ gcc -O3 d_max.c -o d_max -fno-inline
2 dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ gdb d_max
3 GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
4 ...
5 Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/d_max... (no debugging symbols ...
   found)...done.
6 (gdb) b d_max
7 Breakpoint 1 at 0x80484a0

```

¹¹⁷Starting at Pentium Pro, Pentium-II, etc.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

8 (gdb) run
9 Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/d_max
10
11 Breakpoint 1, 0x080484a0 in d_max ()
12 (gdb) ni
13 0x080484a4 in d_max ()
14 (gdb) disas $eip
15 Dump of assembler code for function d_max:
16     0x080484a0 <+0>:    fldl   0x4(%esp)
17 => 0x080484a4 <+4>:    fldl   0xc(%esp)
18     0x080484a8 <+8>:    fxch   %st(1)
19     0x080484aa <+10>:   fucomi %st(1),%st
20     0x080484ac <+12>:   fcmovbe %st(1),%st
21     0x080484ae <+14>:   fstp    %st(1)
22     0x080484b0 <+16>:   ret
23 End of assembler dump.
24 (gdb) ni
25 0x080484a8 in d_max ()
26 (gdb) info float
27     R7: Valid    0x3fff999999999999800 +1.19999999999999956
28 =>R6: Valid    0x4000d99999999999800 +3.39999999999999911
29     R5: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
30     R4: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
31     R3: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
32     R2: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
33     R1: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
34     R0: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
35
36 Status Word:      0x3000
37                 TOP: 6
38 Control Word:     0x037f  IM DM ZM OM UM PM
39                 PC: Extended Precision (64-bits)
40                 RC: Round to nearest
41 Tag Word:         0xffff
42 Instruction Pointer: 0x73:0x080484a4
43 Operand Pointer:  0x7b:0xbffff118
44 Opcode:          0x0000
45 (gdb) ni
46 0x080484aa in d_max ()
47 (gdb) info float
48     R7: Valid    0x4000d99999999999800 +3.39999999999999911
49 =>R6: Valid    0x3fff999999999999800 +1.19999999999999956
50     R5: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
51     R4: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
52     R3: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
53     R2: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
54     R1: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
55     R0: Empty    0x00000000000000000000000000000000
56
57 Status Word:      0x3000
58                 TOP: 6
59 Control Word:     0x037f  IM DM ZM OM UM PM
60                 PC: Extended Precision (64-bits)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

61          RC: Round to nearest
62 Tag Word:      0x0fff
63 Instruction Pointer: 0x73:0x080484a8
64 Operand Pointer: 0x7b:0xbfffff118
65 Opcode:       0x0000
66 (gdb) disas $eip
67 Dump of assembler code for function d_max:
68 0x080484a0 <+0>:    fldl   0x4(%esp)
69 0x080484a4 <+4>:    fldl   0xc(%esp)
70 0x080484a8 <+8>:    fxch   %st(1)
71 => 0x080484aa <+10>:   fucomi %st(1),%st
72 0x080484ac <+12>:   fcmovbe %st(1),%st
73 0x080484ae <+14>:   fstp   %st(1)
74 0x080484b0 <+16>:   ret
75 End of assembler dump.
76 (gdb) ni
77 0x080484ac in d_max ()
78 (gdb) info registers
79 eax          0x1      1
80 ecx          0xbffff1c4      -1073745468
81 edx          0x8048340      134513472
82 ebx          0xb7fbf000      -1208225792
83 esp          0xbffff10c      0xbffff10c
84 ebp          0xbffff128      0xbffff128
85 esi          0x0      0
86 edi          0x0      0
87 eip          0x80484ac      0x80484ac <d_max+12>
88 eflags        0x203      [ CF IF ]
89 cs           0x73      115
90 ss           0x7b      123
91 ds           0x7b      123
92 es           0x7b      123
93 fs           0x0      0
94 gs           0x33      51
95 (gdb) ni
96 0x080484ae in d_max ()
97 (gdb) info float
98 R7: Valid 0x4000d99999999999999800 +3.39999999999999911
99 =>R6: Valid 0x4000d99999999999999800 +3.39999999999999911
100 R5: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
101 R4: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
102 R3: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
103 R2: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
104 R1: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
105 R0: Empty 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
106
107 Status Word:      0x3000
108                  TOP: 6
109 Control Word:     0x037f  IM DM ZM OM UM PM
110                  PC: Extended Precision (64-bits)
111                  RC: Round to nearest
112 Tag Word:      0x0fff
113 Instruction Pointer: 0x73:0x080484ac

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

114 Operand Pointer: 0x7b:0xbfffff118
115 Opcode: 0x0000
116 (gdb) disas $eip
117 Dump of assembler code for function d_max:
118 0x080484a0 <+0>: fildl 0x4(%esp)
119 0x080484a4 <+4>: fildl 0xc(%esp)
120 0x080484a8 <+8>: fxch %st(1)
121 0x080484aa <+10>: fucomi %st(1),%st
122 0x080484ac <+12>: fcmovebe %st(1),%st
123 => 0x080484ae <+14>: fstp %st(1)
124 0x080484b0 <+16>: ret
125 End of assembler dump.
126 (gdb) ni
127 0x080484b0 in d_max ()
128 (gdb) info float
129 =>R7: Valid 0x4000d9999999999999800 +3.39999999999999911
130 R6: Empty 0x4000d9999999999999800
131 R5: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
132 R4: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
133 R3: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
134 R2: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
135 R1: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
136 R0: Empty 0x000000000000000000000000
137
138 Status Word: 0x3800
139 TOP: 7
140 Control Word: 0x037f IM DM ZM OM UM PM
141 PC: Extended Precision (64-bits)
142 RC: Round to nearest
143 Tag Word: 0x3fff
144 Instruction Pointer: 0x73:0x080484ae
145 Operand Pointer: 0x7b:0xbfffff118
146 Opcode: 0x0000
147 (gdb) quit
148 A debugging session is active.
149
150 Inferior 1 [process 30194] will be killed.
151
152 Quit anyway? (y or n) y
153 dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$
```

Using “ni”, let’s execute the first two FLD instructions.

Let’s examine the FPU registers (line 33).

As it was mentioned before, the FPU registers set is a circular buffer rather than a stack ([1.25.5 on page 283](#)). And GDB doesn’t show ST_x registers, but internal the FPU registers (Rx). The arrow (at line 35) points to the current top of the stack.

You can also see the T0P register contents in *Status Word* (line 36-37)—it is 6 now, so the stack top is now pointing to internal register 6.

The values of *a* and *b* are swapped after FXCH is executed (line 54).

FUCOMI is executed (line 83). Let’s see the flags: CF is set (line 95).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

FCMOVBE has copied the value of *b* (see line 104).

FSTP leaves one value at the top of stack (line 139). The value of T0P is now 7, so the FPU stack top is pointing to internal register 7.

ARM

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Listing 1.220: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

VMOV	D16, R2, R3 ; b
VMOV	D17, R0, R1 ; a
VCMPE.F64	D17, D16
VMRS	APSR_nzcv, FPSCR
VMOVGT.F64	D16, D17 ; copy "a" to D16
VMOV	R0, R1, D16
BX	LR

A very simple case. The input values are placed into the D17 and D16 registers and then compared using the VCMPE instruction.

Just like in the x86 coprocessor, the ARM coprocessor has its own status and flags register ([FPSCR¹¹⁸](#)), since there is a necessity to store coprocessor-specific flags. And just like in x86, there are no conditional jump instruction in ARM, that can check bits in the status register of the coprocessor. So there is VMRS, which copies 4 bits (N, Z, C, V) from the coprocessor status word into bits of the *general* status register ([APSR¹¹⁹](#)).

VMOVGT is the analog of the MOVGT, instruction for D-registers, it executes if one operand is greater than the other while comparing (*GT—Greater Than*).

If it gets executed, the value of *a* is to be written into D16 (that is currently stored in D17). Otherwise the value of *b* stays in the D16 register.

The penultimate instruction VMOV prepares the value in the D16 register for returning it via the R0 and R1 register pair.

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

Listing 1.221: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

VMOV	D16, R2, R3 ; b
VMOV	D17, R0, R1 ; a
VCMPE.F64	D17, D16
VMRS	APSR_nzcv, FPSCR
IT GT	
VMOVGT.F64	D16, D17
VMOV	R0, R1, D16
BX	LR

¹¹⁸(ARM) Floating-Point Status and Control Register

¹¹⁹(ARM) Application Program Status Register

Almost the same as in the previous example, however slightly different. As we already know, many instructions in ARM mode can be supplemented by condition predicate. But there is no such thing in Thumb mode. There is no space in the 16-bit instructions for 4 more bits in which conditions can be encoded.

However, Thumb-2 was extended to make it possible to specify predicates to old Thumb instructions. Here, in the [IDA](#)-generated listing, we see the VM0VGT instruction, as in previous example.

In fact, the usual VMOV is encoded there, but [IDA](#) adds the -GT suffix to it, since there is a IT GT instruction placed right before it.

The IT instruction defines a so-called *if-then block*.

After the instruction it is possible to place up to 4 instructions, each of them has a predicate suffix. In our example, IT GT implies that the next instruction is to be executed, if the *GT (Greater Than)* condition is true.

Here is a more complex code fragment, by the way, from Angry Birds (for iOS):

Listing 1.222: Angry Birds Classic

```
...
ITE NE
VMOVNE      R2, R3, D16
VMOVEQ       R2, R3, D17
BLX          _objc_msgSend ; not suffixed
...
```

ITE stands for *if-then-else*

and it encodes suffixes for the next two instructions.

The first instruction executes if the condition encoded in ITE (*NE, not equal*) is true at, and the second—if the condition is not true. (The inverse condition of NE is EQ (*equal*)).

The instruction followed after the second VMOV (or VMOVEQ) is a normal one, not suffixed (BLX).

One more that's slightly harder, which is also from Angry Birds:

Listing 1.223: Angry Birds Classic

```
...
ITTTT EQ
MOVEQ        R0, R4
ADDEQ        SP, SP, #0x20
POPEQ.W     {R8,R10}
POPEQ        {R4-R7,PC}
BLX          __stack_chk_fail ; not suffixed
...
```

Four “T” symbols in the instruction mnemonic mean that the four subsequent instructions are to be executed if the condition is true.

That's why [IDA](#) adds the -EQ suffix to each one of them.

And if there was, for example, ITEEE EQ (*if-then-else-else-else*), then the suffixes would have been set as follows:

```
-EQ
-NE
-NE
-NE
```

Another fragment from Angry Birds:

Listing 1.224: Angry Birds Classic

```
...
CMP.W      R0, #0xFFFFFFFF
ITTE LE
SUBLE.W    R10, R0, #1
NEGLE      R0, R0
MOVGTE    R10, R0
MOVS       R6, #0           ; not suffixed
CBZ        R0, loc_1E7E32 ; not suffixed
...
```

ITTE (*if-then-then-else*)

implies that the 1st and 2nd instructions are to be executed if the LE (*Less or Equal*) condition is true, and the 3rd—if the inverse condition (GT—*Greater Than*) is true.

Compilers usually don't generate all possible combinations.

For example, in the mentioned Angry Birds game (*classic* version for iOS) only these variants of the IT instruction are used: IT, ITE, ITT, ITTE, ITTT, ITTTT. How to learn this? In [IDA](#), it is possible to produce listing files, so it was created with an option to show 4 bytes for each opcode. Then, knowing the high part of the 16-bit opcode (IT is 0xBF), we do the following using grep:

```
cat AngryBirdsClassic.lst | grep " BF" | grep "IT" > results.lst
```

By the way, if you program in ARM assembly language manually for Thumb-2 mode, and you add conditional suffixes, the assembler will add the IT instructions automatically with the required flags where it is necessary.

Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Listing 1.225: Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

```
b          = -0x20
a          = -0x18
val_to_return = -0x10
saved_R7     = -4

STR        R7, [SP,#saved_R7]!
MOV        R7, SP
SUB        SP, SP, #0x1C
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

BIC	SP, SP, #7
VMOV	D16, R2, R3
VMOV	D17, R0, R1
VSTR	D17, [SP,#0x20+a]
VSTR	D16, [SP,#0x20+b]
VLDR	D16, [SP,#0x20+a]
VLDR	D17, [SP,#0x20+b]
VCMPE.F64	D16, D17
VMRS	APSR_nzcv, FPSCR
BLE	loc_2E08
VLDR	D16, [SP,#0x20+a]
VSTR	D16, [SP,#0x20+val_to_return]
B	loc_2E10
 loc_2E08	
VLDR	D16, [SP,#0x20+b]
VSTR	D16, [SP,#0x20+val_to_return]
 loc_2E10	
VLDR	D16, [SP,#0x20+val_to_return]
VMOV	R0, R1, D16
MOV	SP, R7
LDR	R7, [SP+0x20+b],#4
BX	LR

Almost the same as we already saw, but there is too much redundant code because the *a* and *b* variables are stored in the local stack, as well as the return value.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

Listing 1.226: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

PUSH	{R3-R7,LR}
MOVS	R4, R2
MOVS	R5, R3
MOVS	R6, R0
MOVS	R7, R1
BL	__aeabi_cdrcmple
BCS	loc_1C0
MOVS	R0, R6
MOVS	R1, R7
POP	{R3-R7,PC}
 loc_1C0	
MOVS	R0, R4
MOVS	R1, R5
POP	{R3-R7,PC}

Keil doesn't generate FPU-instructions since it cannot rely on them being supported on the target CPU, and it cannot be done by straightforward bitwise comparing. So it calls an external library function to do the comparison: __aeabi_cdrcmple.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

N.B. The result of the comparison is to be left in the flags by this function, so the following BCS (*Carry set—Greater than or equal*) instruction can work without any additional code.

ARM64

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
d_max:
; D0 - a, D1 - b
    fcmpe d0, d1
    fcSEL d0, d0, d1, gt
; now result in D0
    ret
```

The ARM64 ISA has FPU-instructions which set [APSR](#) the CPU flags instead of [FPSCR](#) for convenience. The [FPU](#) is not a separate device here anymore (at least, logically). Here we see FCMPE. It compares the two values passed in D0 and D1 (which are the first and second arguments of the function) and sets [APSR](#) flags (N, Z, C, V).

FCSEL (*Floating Conditional Select*) copies the value of D0 or D1 into D0 depending on the condition (GT—Greater Than), and again, it uses flags in [APSR](#) register instead of [FPSCR](#).

This is much more convenient, compared to the instruction set in older CPUs.

If the condition is true (GT), then the value of D0 is copied into D0 (i.e., nothing happens). If the condition is not true, the value of D1 is copied into D0.

Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
d_max:
; save input arguments in "Register Save Area"
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    str   d0, [sp,8]
    str   d1, [sp]
; reload values
    ldr    x1, [sp,8]
    ldr    x0, [sp]
    fmov  d0, x1
    fmov  d1, x0
; D0 - a, D1 - b
    fcmpe d0, d1
    ble   .L76
; a>b; load D0 (a) into X0
    ldr   x0, [sp,8]
    b     .L74
.L76:
; a<=b; load D1 (b) into X0
    ldr   x0, [sp]
.L74:
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; result in X0
    fmov    d0, x0
; result in D0
    add     sp, sp, 16
    ret

```

Non-optimizing GCC is more verbose.

First, the function saves its input argument values in the local stack (*Register Save Area*). Then the code reloads these values into registers X0/X1 and finally copies them to D0/D1 to be compared using FCMPE. A lot of redundant code, but that is how non-optimizing compilers work. FCMPE compares the values and sets the [APSR](#) flags. At this moment, the compiler is not thinking yet about the more convenient FCSEL instruction, so it proceed using old methods: using the BLE instruction (*Branch if Less than or Equal*). In the first case ($a > b$), the value of a gets loaded into X0. In the other case ($a \leq b$), the value of b gets loaded into X0. Finally, the value from X0 gets copied into D0, because the return value needs to be in this register.

Exercise

As an exercise, you can try optimizing this piece of code manually by removing redundant instructions and not introducing new ones (including FCSEL).

Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9—float

Let's also rewrite this example to use *float* instead of *double*.

```

float f_max (float a, float b)
{
    if (a>b)
        return a;

    return b;
}

```

```

f_max:
; S0 - a, S1 - b
    fcmpe  s0, s1
    fcsel   s0, s0, s1, gt
; now result in S0
    ret

```

It is the same code, but the S-registers are used instead of D-ones. It's because numbers of type *float* are passed in 32-bit S-registers (which are in fact the lower parts of the 64-bit D-registers).

MIPS

The co-processor of the MIPS processor has a condition bit which can be set in the FPU and checked in the CPU.

Earlier MIPS-es have only one condition bit (called FCC0), later ones have 8 (called FCC7-FCC0).

This bit (or bits) are located in the register called FCCR.

Listing 1.227: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
d_max:
; set FPU condition bit if $f14<$f12 (b<a):
    c.lt.d  $f14, $f12
    or      $at, $zero ; NOP
; jump to locret_14 if condition bit is set
    bc1t   locret_14
; this instruction is always executed (set return value to "a"):
    mov.d   $f0, $f12 ; branch delay slot
; this instruction is executed only if branch was not taken
; (i.e., if b>=a)
; set return value to "b":
    mov.d   $f0, $f14

locret_14:
    jr      $ra
    or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
```

C.LT.D compares two values. LT is the condition “Less Than”. D implies values of type *double*. Depending on the result of the comparison, the FCC0 condition bit is either set or cleared.

BC1T checks the FCC0 bit and jumps if the bit is set. T means that the jump is to be taken if the bit is set (“True”). There is also the instruction BC1F which jumps if the bit is cleared (“False”).

Depending on the jump, one of function arguments is placed into \$F0.

1.25.8 Some constants

It’s easy to find representations of some constants in Wikipedia for IEEE 754 encoded numbers. It’s interesting to know that 0.0 in IEEE 754 is represented as 32 zero bits (for single precision) or 64 zero bits (for double). So in order to set a floating point variable to 0.0 in register or memory, one can use MOV or XOR reg, reg instruction. This is suitable for structures where many variables present of various data types. With usual memset() function one can set all integer variables to 0, all boolean variables to *false*, all pointers to NULL, and all floating point variables (of any precision) to 0.0.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.25.9 Copying

One may think inertially that FLD/FST instructions must be used to load and store (and hence, copy) IEEE 754 values. Nevertheless, same can be achieved easier by usual MOV instruction, which, of course, copies values bitwisely.

1.25.10 Stack, calculators and reverse Polish notation

Now we understand why some old programmable calculators use reverse Polish notation.

For example, for addition of 12 and 34 one has to enter 12, then 34, then press “plus” sign.

It's because old calculators were just stack machine implementations, and this was much simpler than to handle complex parenthesized expressions.

Such a calculator still present in many Unix distributions: *dc*.

1.25.11 80 bits?

Internal numbers representation in FPU — 80-bit. Strange number, because the number not in 2^n form. There is a hypothesis that this is probably due to historical reasons—the standard IBM puched card can encode 12 rows of 80 bits. 80 · 25 text mode resolution was also popular in past.

Wikipedia has another explanation: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Extended_precision.

If you know better, please a drop email to the author: <book@beginners.re>.

1.25.12 x64

On how floating point numbers are processed in x86-64, read more here: [1.38 on page 541](#).

1.25.13 Exercises

- <http://challenges.re/60>
- <http://challenges.re/61>

1.26 Arrays

An array is just a set of variables in memory that lie next to each other and that have the same type¹²⁰.

¹²⁰ AKA “homogeneous container”

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note: <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.26.1 Simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int a[20];
    int i;

    for (i=0; i<20; i++)
        a[i]=i*2;

    for (i=0; i<20; i++)
        printf ("a[%d]=%d\n", i, a[i]);

    return 0;
}
```

x86

MSVC

Let's compile:

Listing 1.228: MSVC 2008

```
_TEXT      SEGMENT
_i$ = -84           ; size = 4
_a$ = -80           ; size = 80
_main     PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 84      ; 00000054H
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
    jmp     SHORT $LN6@main
$LN5@main:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
    add     eax, 1
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
$LN6@main:
    cmp     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 20      ; 00000014H
    jge     SHORT $LN4@main
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
    shl     ecx, 1
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+edx*4], ecx
    jmp     SHORT $LN5@main
$LN4@main:
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
    jmp     SHORT $LN3@main
$LN2@main:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

add    eax, 1
mov    DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
$LN3@main:
cmp    DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 20      ; 00000014H
jge    SHORT $LN1@main
mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
mov    edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+ecx*4]
push   edx
mov    eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
push   eax
push   OFFSET $SG2463
call   _printf
add    esp, 12      ; 0000000ch
jmp    SHORT $LN2@main
$LN1@main:
xor    eax, eax
mov    esp, ebp
pop    ebp
ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

Nothing very special, just two loops: the first is a filling loop and second is a printing loop. The `shl ecx, 1` instruction is used for value multiplication by 2 in ECX, more about it: [1.24.2 on page 274](#).

80 bytes are allocated on the stack for the array, 20 elements of 4 bytes.

Let's try this example in OllyDbg.

We see how the array gets filled:

each element is 32-bit word of *int* type and its value is the index multiplied by 2:

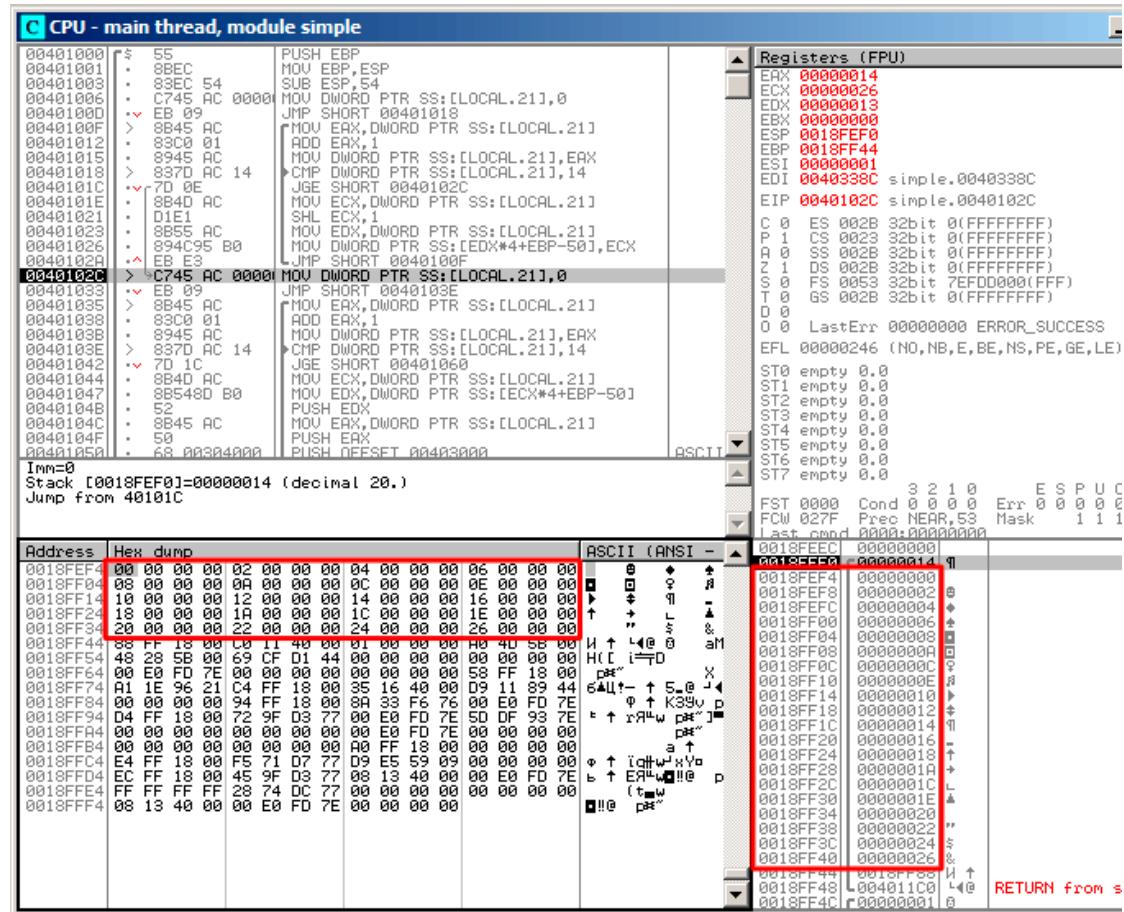


Figure 1.87: OllyDbg: after array filling

Since this array is located in the stack, we can see all its 20 elements there.

GCC

Here is what GCC 4.4.1 does:

Listing 1.229: GCC 4.4.1

```
main          public main
              proc near             ; DATA XREF: _start+17
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```

var_70      = dword ptr -70h
var_6C      = dword ptr -6Ch
var_68      = dword ptr -68h
i_2         = dword ptr -54h
i           = dword ptr -4

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
sub    esp, 70h
mov     [esp+70h+i], 0          ; i=0
jmp     short loc_804840A

loc_80483F7:
    mov     eax, [esp+70h+i]
    mov     edx, [esp+70h+i]
    add     edx, edx            ; edx=i*2
    mov     [esp+eax*4+70h+i_2], edx
    add     [esp+70h+i], 1        ; i++

loc_804840A:
    cmp     [esp+70h+i], 13h
    jle     short loc_80483F7
    mov     [esp+70h+i], 0
    jmp     short loc_8048441

loc_804841B:
    mov     eax, [esp+70h+i]
    mov     edx, [esp+eax*4+70h+i_2]
    mov     eax, offset aADD ; "a[%d]=%d\n"
    mov     [esp+70h+var_68], edx
    mov     edx, [esp+70h+i]
    mov     [esp+70h+var_6C], edx
    mov     [esp+70h+var_70], eax
    call    _printf
    add     [esp+70h+i], 1

loc_8048441:
    cmp     [esp+70h+i], 13h
    jle     short loc_804841B
    mov     eax, 0
    leave
    retn
main      endp

```

By the way, variable *a* is of type *int** (the pointer to *int*)—you can pass a pointer to an array to another function, but it's more correct to say that a pointer to the first element of the array is passed (the addresses of rest of the elements are calculated in an obvious way).

If you index this pointer as *a[idx]*, *idx* is just to be added to the pointer and the element placed there (to which calculated pointer is pointing) is to be returned.

An interesting example: a string of characters like *string* is an array of characters and it has a type of *const char[]*.

An index can also be applied to this pointer.

And that is why it is possible to write things like “*string*”[*i*]—this is a correct C/C++ expression!

ARM

Non-optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

        EXPORT _main
_main
        STMD F SP!, {R4,LR}
        SUB   SP, SP, #0x50      ; allocate place for 20 int variables

; first loop

        MOV   R4, #0             ; i
        B    loc_4A0
loc_494
        MOV   R0, R4,LSL#1       ; R0=R4*2
        STR   R0, [SP,R4,LSL#2] ; store R0 to SP+R4<<2 (same as SP+R4*4)
        ADD   R4, R4, #1         ; i=i+1

loc_4A0
        CMP   R4, #20            ; i<20?
        BLT  loc_494            ; yes, run loop body again

; second loop

        MOV   R4, #0             ; i
        B    loc_4C4
loc_4B0
        LDR   R2, [SP,R4,LSL#2] ; (second printf argument)
        R2=*(SP+R4<<4)        ; (same as *(SP+R4*4))
        MOV   R1, R4              ; (first printf argument) R1=i
        ADR   R0, aADD            ; "a[%d]=%d\n"
        BL    __2printf
        ADD   R4, R4, #1         ; i=i+1

loc_4C4
        CMP   R4, #20            ; i<20?
        BLT  loc_4B0            ; yes, run loop body again
        MOV   R0, #0              ; value to return
        ADD   SP, SP, #0x50      ; deallocate chunk, allocated for 20 int
variables
        LDMFD SP!, {R4,PC}

```

int type requires 32 bits for storage (or 4 bytes),

so to store 20 *int* variables 80 (0x50) bytes are needed. So that is why the *SUB SP, SP, #0x50*

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

instruction in the function's prologue allocates exactly this amount of space in the stack.

In both the first and second loops, the loop iterator i is placed in the R4 register.

The number that is to be written into the array is calculated as $i \times 2$, which is effectively equivalent to shifting it left by one bit, so MOV R0, R4, LSL#1 instruction does this.

STR R0, [SP, R4, LSL#2] writes the contents of R0 into the array.

Here is how a pointer to array element is calculated: SP points to the start of the array, R4 is i .

So shifting i left by 2 bits is effectively equivalent to multiplication by 4 (since each array element has a size of 4 bytes) and then it's added to the address of the start of the array.

The second loop has an inverse LDR R2, [SP, R4, LSL#2] instruction. It loads the value we need from the array, and the pointer to it is calculated likewise.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

_main
    PUSH {R4,R5,LR}
; allocate place for 20 int variables + one more variable
    SUB SP, SP, #0x54

; first loop

    MOVS R0, #0      ; i
    MOV  R5, SP      ; pointer to first array element

loc_1CE
    LSLS R1, R0, #1  ; R1=i<<1 (same as i*2)
    LSLS R2, R0, #2  ; R2=i<<2 (same as i*4)
    ADDS R0, R0, #1  ; i=i+1
    CMP  R0, #20    ; i<20?
    STR  R1, [R5,R2] ; store R1 to *(R5+R2) (same R5+i*4)
    BLT  loc_1CE    ; yes, i<20, run loop body again

; second loop

    MOVS R4, #0      ; i=0
loc_1DC
    LSLS R0, R4, #2  ; R0=i<<2 (same as i*4)
    LDR  R2, [R5,R0] ; load from *(R5+R0) (same as R5+i*4)
    MOVS R1, R4
    ADR  R0, aADD    ; "a[%d]=%d\n"
    BL   __2printf
    ADDS R4, R4, #1  ; i=i+1
    CMP  R4, #20    ; i<20?
    BLT  loc_1DC    ; yes, i<20, run loop body again
    MOVS R0, #0      ; value to return

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
; deallocate chunk, allocated for 20 int variables
; + one more variable
    ADD    SP, SP, #0x54
    POP    {R4,R5,PC}
```

Thumb code is very similar.

Thumb mode has special instructions for bit shifting (like LSLS), which calculates the value to be written into the array and the address of each element in the array as well.

The compiler allocates slightly more space in the local stack, however, the last 4 bytes are not used.

Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

Listing 1.230: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1 (ARM64)

```
.LC0:
    .string "a[%d]=%d\n"
main:
; save FP and LR in stack frame:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -112]!
; set stack frame (FP=SP)
    add    x29, sp, 0
; setting initial counter variable at 0
; (WZR is the register always holding zero):
    str    wZR, [x29,108]
; jump to loop condition checking code:
    b     .L2
.L3:
; load value of "i" variable:
    ldr    w0, [x29,108]
; multiplicate it by 2:
    lsl    w2, w0, 1
; find a place of an array in local stack:
    add    x0, x29, 24
; load 32-bit integer from local stack and sign extend it to 64-bit one:
    ldrsw  x1, [x29,108]
; calculate address of element (X0+X1<<2=array address+i*4)
; and store W2 (i*2) there:
    str    w2, [x0,x1,lsl 2]
; increment counter (i):
    ldr    w0, [x29,108]
    add    w0, w0, 1
    str    w0, [x29,108]
.L2:
; check if we finished:
    ldr    w0, [x29,108]
    cmp    w0, 19
; jump to L3 (loop body begin) if not:
    ble    .L3
; second part of the function begins here.
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; setting initial counter variable at 0.
; by the way, the same place in the local stack was used for counter,
; because the same local variable (i) is being used as counter.
    str      wzr, [x29,108]
    b       .L4
.L5:
; calculate array address:
    add      x0, x29, 24
; load "i" value:
    ldrsw   x1, [x29,108]
; load value from the array at the address (X0+X1<<2 = address of array +
; i*4)
    ldr      w2, [x0,x1,lsl 2]
; load address of the "a[%d]=%d\n" string:
    adrp   x0, .LC0
    add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
; load "i" variable to W1 and pass it to printf() as second argument:
    ldr      w1, [x29,108]
; W2 still contains the value of array element which was just loaded.
; call printf():
    bl      printf
; increment "i" variable:
    ldr      w0, [x29,108]
    add     w0, w0, 1
    str      w0, [x29,108]
.L4:
; are we finished?
    ldr      w0, [x29,108]
    cmp     w0, 19
; jump to the loop body begin if not:
    ble     .L5
; return 0
    mov     w0, 0
; restore FP and LR:
    ldp      x29, x30, [sp], 112
    ret

```

MIPS

The function uses a lot of S-registers which must be preserved, so that's why its values are saved in the function prologue and restored in the epilogue.

Listing 1.231: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

main:

var_70      = -0x70
var_68      = -0x68
var_14      = -0x14
var_10      = -0x10
var_C       = -0xC
var_8       = -8
var_4       = -4

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; function prologue:
    lui      $gp, (_gnu_local_gp >> 16)
    addiu   $sp, -0x80
    la       $gp, (_gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
    sw      $ra, 0x80+var_4($sp)
    sw      $s3, 0x80+var_8($sp)
    sw      $s2, 0x80+var_C($sp)
    sw      $s1, 0x80+var_10($sp)
    sw      $s0, 0x80+var_14($sp)
    sw      $gp, 0x80+var_70($sp)
    addiu   $s1, $sp, 0x80+var_68
    move    $v1, $s1
    move    $v0, $zero
; that value will be used as a loop terminator.
; it was precalculated by GCC compiler at compile stage:
    li      $a0, 0x28 # '('

loc_34:                                # CODE XREF: main+3C
; store value into memory:
    sw      $v0, 0($v1)
; increase value to be stored by 2 at each iteration:
    addiu   $v0, 2
; loop terminator reached?
    bne    $v0, $a0, loc_34
; add 4 to address anyway:
    addiu   $v1, 4
; array filling loop is ended
; second loop begin
    la      $s3, $LC0      # "a[%d]=%d\n"
; "i" variable will reside in $s0:
    move    $s0, $zero
    li      $s2, 0x14

loc_54:                                # CODE XREF: main+70
; call printf():
    lw      $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
    lw      $a2, 0($s1)
    move    $a1, $s0
    move    $a0, $s3
    jalr   $t9
; increment "i":
    addiu   $s0, 1
    lw      $gp, 0x80+var_70($sp)
; jump to loop body if end is not reached:
    bne    $s0, $s2, loc_54
; move memory pointer to the next 32-bit word:
    addiu   $s1, 4
; function epilogue
    lw      $ra, 0x80+var_4($sp)
    move    $v0, $zero
    lw      $s3, 0x80+var_8($sp)
    lw      $s2, 0x80+var_C($sp)
    lw      $s1, 0x80+var_10($sp)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

lw      $s0, 0x80+var_14($sp)
jr      $ra
addiu  $sp, 0x80

$LCO:      .ascii "a[%d]=%d\n"<0>    # DATA XREF: main+44

```

Something interesting: there are two loops and the first one doesn't need i , it needs only $i*2$ (increased by 2 at each iteration) and also the address in memory (increased by 4 at each iteration).

So here we see two variables, one (in $\$V0$) increasing by 2 each time, and another (in $\$V1$) — by 4.

The second loop is where `printf()` is called and it reports the value of i to the user, so there is a variable which is increased by 1 each time (in $\$S0$) and also a memory address (in $\$S1$) increased by 4 each time.

That reminds us of loop optimizations: [3.10 on page 627](#).

Their goal is to get rid of multiplications.

1.26.2 Buffer overflow

Reading outside array bounds

So, array indexing is just `array[index]`. If you study the generated code closely, you'll probably note the missing index bounds checking, which could check *if it is less than 20*. What if the index is 20 or greater? That's the one C/C++ feature it is often blamed for.

Here is a code that successfully compiles and works:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int a[20];
    int i;

    for (i=0; i<20; i++)
        a[i]=i*2;

    printf ("a[20]=%d\n", a[20]);

    return 0;
}
```

Compilation results (MSVC 2008):

Listing 1.232: Non-optimizing MSVC 2008

```
$SG2474 DB      'a[20]=%d', 0aH, 00H
_i$ = -84 ; size = 4
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

_a$ = -80 ; size = 80
_main    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 84
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
    jmp     SHORT $LN3@main
$LN2@main:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
    add     eax, 1
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
$LN3@main:
    cmp     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 20
    jge     SHORT $LN1@main
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
    shl     ecx, 1
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+edx*4], ecx
    jmp     SHORT $LN2@main
$LN1@main:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+80]
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG2474 ; 'a[20]=%d'
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add    esp, 8
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main    ENDP
_TEXT   ENDS
END

```

The code produced this result:

Listing 1.233: OllyDbg: console output

a[20]=1638280

It is just *something* that has been lying in the stack near to the array, 80 bytes away from its first element.

Let's try to find out where did this value come from, using OllyDbg.

Let's load and find the value located right after the last array element:

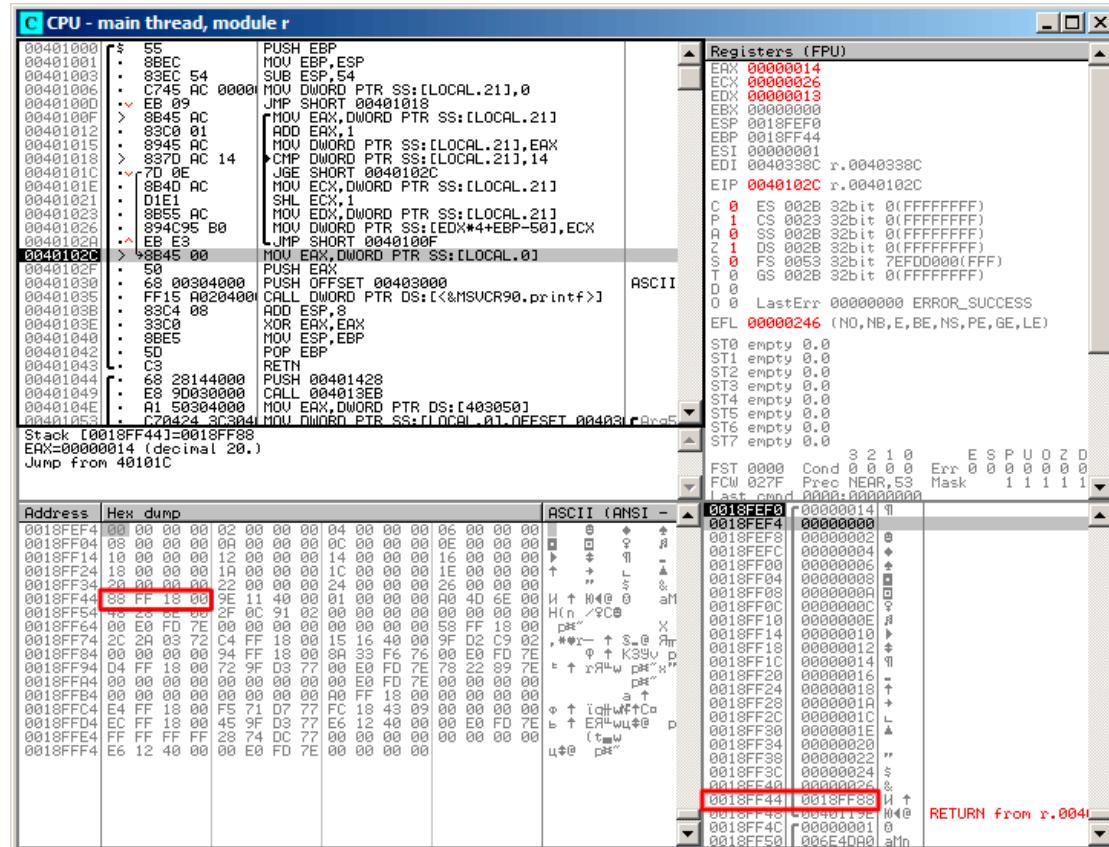


Figure 1.88: OllyDbg: reading of the 20th element and execution of `printf()`

What is this? Judging by the stack layout, this is the saved value of the EBP register.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Let's trace further and see how it gets restored:

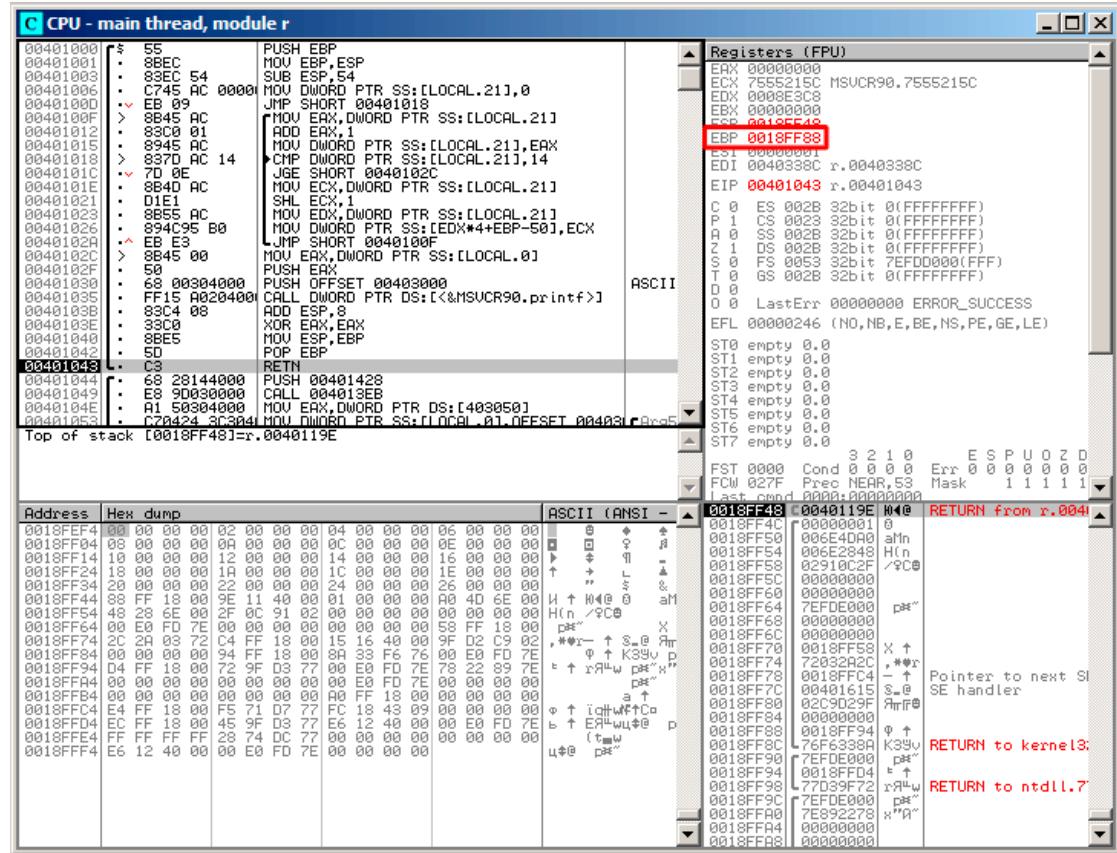


Figure 1.89: OllyDbg: restoring value of EBP

Indeed, how it could be different? The compiler may generate some additional code to check the index value to be always in the array's bounds (like in higher-level programming languages¹²¹) but this makes the code slower.

Writing beyond array bounds

OK, we read some values from the stack *illegally*, but what if we could write something to it?

Here is what we have got:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
```

¹²¹Java, Python, etc.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

int a[20];
int i;

for (i=0; i<30; i++)
    a[i]=i;

return 0;
};

```

MSVC

And what we get:

Listing 1.234: Non-optimizing MSVC 2008

```

_TEXT      SEGMENT
_i$ = -84 ; size = 4
_a$ = -80 ; size = 80
_main     PROC
push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
sub    esp, 84
mov    DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
jmp    SHORT $LN3@main
$LN2@main:
mov    eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
add    eax, 1
mov    DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
$LN3@main:
cmp    DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 30 ; 0000001eH
jge    SHORT $LN1@main
mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
mov    edx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]      ; that instruction is obviously
                                     redundant
mov    DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+ecx*4], edx ; ECX could be used as second operand
                                     here instead
jmp    SHORT $LN2@main
$LN1@main:
xor    eax, eax
mov    esp, ebp
pop    ebp
ret    0
_main   ENDP

```

The compiled program crashes after running. No wonder. Let's see where exactly does it crash.

Let's load it into OllyDbg, and trace until all 30 elements are written:

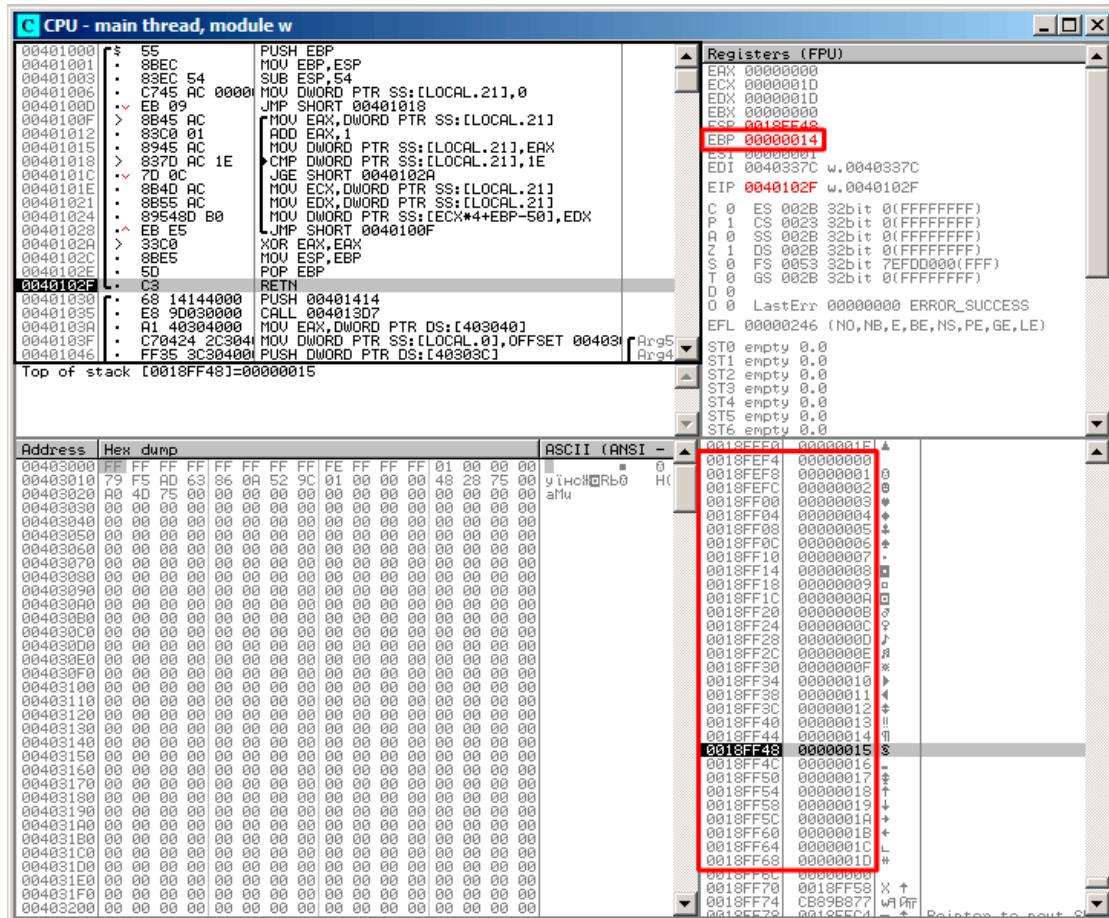


Figure 1.90: OllyDbg: after restoring the value of EBP

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Trace until the function end:

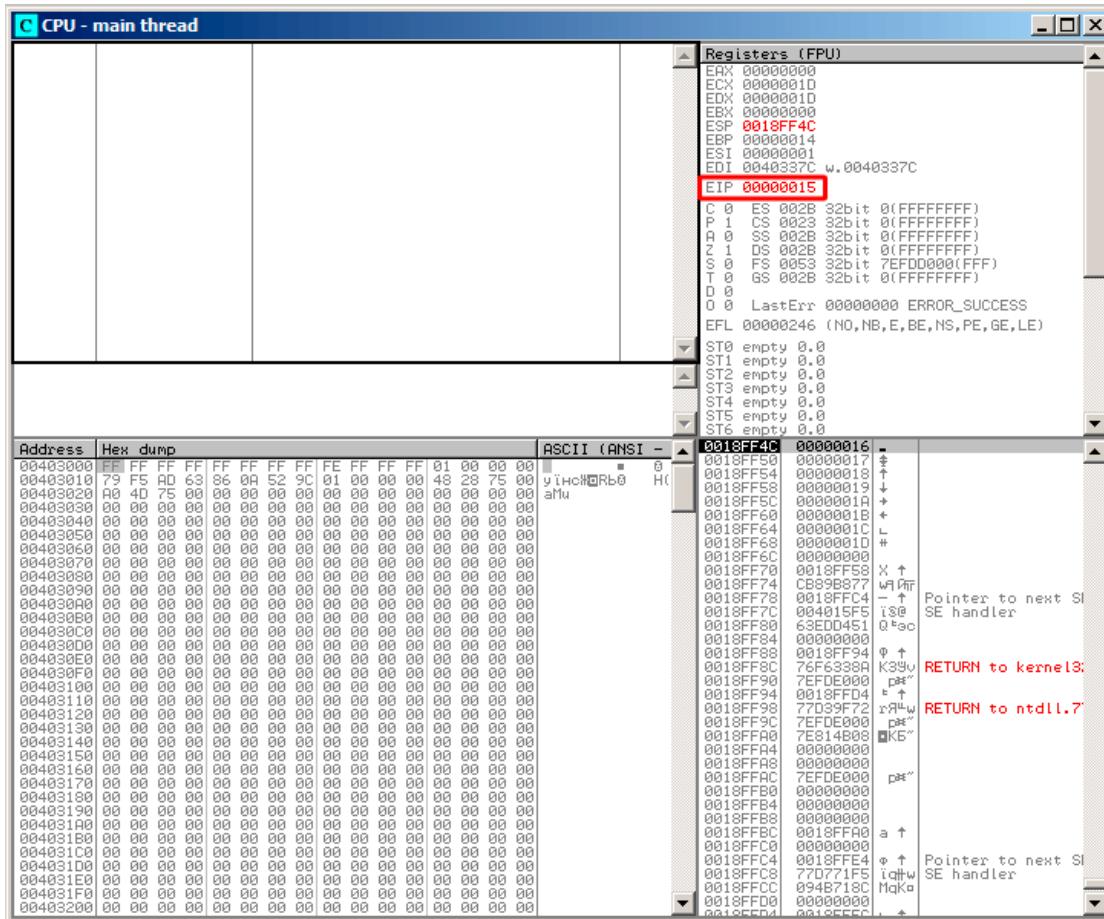


Figure 1.91: OllyDbg: EIP has been restored, but OllyDbg can't disassemble at 0x15

Now please keep your eyes on the registers.

EIP is 0x15 now. It is not a legal address for code—at least for win32 code! We got there somehow against our will. It is also interesting that the EBP register contain 0x14, ECX and EDX contain 0x1D.

Let's study stack layout a bit more.

After the control flow has been passed to `main()`, the value in the EBP register was saved on the stack. Then, 84 bytes were allocated for the array and the `i` variable. That's $(20+1)*\text{sizeof}(\text{int})$. ESP now points to the `_i` variable in the local stack and after the execution of the next PUSH something, that *something* is appearing next to `_i`.

That's the stack layout while the control is in `main()`:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

	ESP	4 bytes allocated for <i>i</i> variable
	ESP+4	80 bytes allocated for <i>a[20]</i> array
	ESP+84	saved EBP value
	ESP+88	return address

a[19]=something statement writes the last *int* in the bounds of the array (in bounds so far!).

a[20]=something statement writes *something* to the place where the value of EBP is saved.

Please take a look at the register state at the moment of the crash. In our case, 20 has been written in the 20th element. At the function end, the function epilogue restores the original EBP value. (20 in decimal is 0x14 in hexadecimal). Then RET gets executed, which is effectively equivalent to POP EIP instruction.

The RET instruction takes the return address from the stack (that is the address in [CRT](#), which has called *main()*), and 21 is stored there (0x15 in hexadecimal). The CPU traps at address 0x15, but there is no executable code there, so exception gets raised.

Welcome! It is called a *buffer overflow*¹²².

Replace the *int* array with a string (*char* array), create a long string deliberately and pass it to the program, to the function, which doesn't check the length of the string and copies it in a short buffer, and you'll able to point the program to an address to which it must jump. It's not that simple in reality, but that is how it emerged. Classic article about it: [Aleph One, *Smashing The Stack For Fun And Profit*, (1996)]¹²³.

GCC

Let's try the same code in GCC 4.4.1. We get:

```

public main
main      proc near

a          = dword ptr -54h
i          = dword ptr -4

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        sub     esp, 60h ; 96
        mov     [ebp+i], 0
        jmp     short loc_80483D1
loc_80483C3:
        mov     eax, [ebp+i]
        mov     edx, [ebp+i]
        mov     [ebp+eax*4+a], edx
        add     [ebp+i], 1
loc_80483D1:
        cmp     [ebp+i], 1Dh

```

¹²²[wikipedia](#)

¹²³Also available as <http://yurichev.com/mirrors/phrack/p49-0x0e.txt>

```

        jle    short loc_80483C3
        mov    eax, 0
        leave
        retn
main      endp

```

Running this in Linux will produce: Segmentation fault.

If we run this in the GDB debugger, we get this:

```

(gdb) r
Starting program: /home/dennis/RE/1

Program received signal SIGSEGV, Segmentation fault.
0x000000016 in ?? ()
(gdb) info registers
eax          0x0      0
ecx          0xd2f96388   -755407992
edx          0x1d     29
ebx          0x26efff4 2551796
esp          0xbffff4b0   0xbffff4b0
ebp          0x15     0x15
esi          0x0      0
edi          0x0      0
eip          0x16     0x16
eflags        0x10202 [ IF RF ]
cs           0x73     115
ss           0x7b     123
ds           0x7b     123
es           0x7b     123
fs           0x0      0
gs           0x33     51
(gdb)

```

The register values are slightly different than in win32 example, since the stack layout is slightly different too.

1.26.3 Buffer overflow protection methods

There are several methods to protect against this scourge, regardless of the C/C++ programmers' negligence. MSVC has options like¹²⁴:

```

/RTCs Stack Frame runtime checking
/GZ Enable stack checks (/RTCs)

```

One of the methods is to write a random value between the local variables in stack at function prologue and to check it in function epilogue before the function exits. If value is not the same, do not execute the last instruction RET, but stop (or hang). The process will halt, but that is much better than a remote attack to your host.

¹²⁴compiler-side buffer overflow protection methods: [wikipedia.org/wiki/Buffer_overflow_protection](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Buffer_overflow_protection)

This random value is called a “canary” sometimes, it is related to the miners’ canary¹²⁵, they were used by miners in the past days in order to detect poisonous gases quickly.

Canaries are very sensitive to mine gases, they become very agitated in case of danger, or even die.

If we compile our very simple array example ([1.26.1 on page 331](#)) in [MSVC](#) with RTC1 and RTCs option, you can see a call to @_RTC_CheckStackVars@8 a function at the end of the function that checks if the “canary” is correct.

Let’s see how GCC handles this. Let’s take an `alloca()` ([1.9.2 on page 47](#)) example:

```
#ifdef __GNUC__
#include <alloca.h> // GCC
#else
#include <malloc.h> // MSVC
#endif
#include <stdio.h>

void f()
{
    char *buf=(char*)alloca (600);
#ifdef __GNUC__
    sprintf (buf, 600, "hi! %d, %d, %d\n", 1, 2, 3); // GCC
#else
    _snprintf (buf, 600, "hi! %d, %d, %d\n", 1, 2, 3); // MSVC
#endif

    puts (buf);
}
```

By default, without any additional options, GCC 4.7.3 inserts a “canary” check into the code:

Listing 1.235: GCC 4.7.3

```
.LC0:
    .string "hi! %d, %d, %d\n"
f:
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ebx
    sub     esp, 676
    lea     ebx, [esp+39]
    and    ebx, -16
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+20], 3
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+16], 2
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+12], 1
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+8], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "hi! %d, %d, %d\n"
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp+4], 600
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], ebx
```

¹²⁵[wikipedia.org/wiki/Domestic_canary#Miner.27s_canary](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Domestic_canary#Miner.27s_canary)

```

    mov    eax, DWORD PTR gs:20      ; canary
    mov    DWORD PTR [ebp-12], eax
    xor    eax, eax
    call   _snprintf
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp], ebx
    call   puts
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [ebp-12]
    xor    eax, DWORD PTR gs:20      ; check canary
    jne    .L5
    mov    ebx, DWORD PTR [ebp-4]
    leave
    ret
.L5:
    call   __stack_chk_fail

```

The random value is located in gs:20. It gets written on the stack and then at the end of the function the value in the stack is compared with the correct “canary” in gs:20. If the values are not equal, the __stack_chk_fail function is called and we can see in the console something like that (Ubuntu 13.04 x86):

```

*** buffer overflow detected ***: ./2_1 terminated
===== Backtrace: ======
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(__fortify_fail+0x63)[0xb7699bc3]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(+0x10593a)[0xb769893a]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(+0x105008)[0xb7698008]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(_IO_default_xsputn+0x8c)[0xb7606e5c]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(_IO_vfprintf+0x165)[0xb75d7a45]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(__vsprintf_chk+0xc9)[0xb76980d9]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(__sprintf_chk+0x2f)[0xb7697fef]
./2_1[0x8048404]
/lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc.so.6(__libc_start_main+0xf5)[0xb75ac935]
===== Memory map: ======
08048000-08049000 r-xp 00000000 08:01 2097586 /home/dennis/2_1
08049000-0804a000 r--p 00000000 08:01 2097586 /home/dennis/2_1
0804a000-0804b000 rw-p 00001000 08:01 2097586 /home/dennis/2_1
094d1000-094f2000 rw-p 00000000 00:00 0 [heap]
b7560000-b757b000 r-xp 00000000 08:01 1048602 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/
    ↳ libgcc_s.so.1
b757b000-b757c000 r--p 0001a000 08:01 1048602 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/
    ↳ libgcc_s.so.1
b757c000-b757d000 rw-p 0001b000 08:01 1048602 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/
    ↳ libgcc_s.so.1
b7592000-b7593000 rw-p 00000000 00:00 0
b7593000-b7740000 r-xp 00000000 08:01 1050781 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc
    ↳ -2.17.so
b7740000-b7742000 r--p 001ad000 08:01 1050781 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc
    ↳ -2.17.so
b7742000-b7743000 rw-p 001af000 08:01 1050781 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/libc
    ↳ -2.17.so
b7743000-b7746000 rw-p 00000000 00:00 0
b775a000-b775d000 rw-p 00000000 00:00 0
b775d000-b775e000 r-xp 00000000 00:00 0 [vdso]
b775e000-b777e000 r-xp 00000000 08:01 1050794 /lib/i386-linux-gnu/ld

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

↳ -2.17.so
b777e000-b777f000 r--p 0001f000 08:01 1050794      /lib/i386-linux-gnu/ld
↳ -2.17.so
b777f000-b7780000 rw-p 00020000 08:01 1050794      /lib/i386-linux-gnu/ld
↳ -2.17.so
bff35000-bff56000 rw-p 00000000 00:00 0          [stack]
Aborted (core dumped)

```

gs is the so-called segment register. These registers were used widely in MS-DOS and DOS-extenders times. Today, its function is different.

To say it briefly, the gs register in Linux always points to the [TLS¹²⁶](#) ([6.2 on page 959](#))—some information specific to thread is stored there. By the way, in win32 the fs register plays the same role, pointing to [TIB^{127 128}](#).

More information can be found in the Linux kernel source code (at least in 3.11 version), in *arch/x86/include/asm/stackprotector.h* this variable is described in the comments.

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

Let's get back to our simple array example ([1.26.1 on page 331](#)), again, now we can see how LLVM checks the correctness of the “canary”:

```

_main

var_64      = -0x64
var_60      = -0x60
var_5C      = -0x5C
var_58      = -0x58
var_54      = -0x54
var_50      = -0x50
var_4C      = -0x4C
var_48      = -0x48
var_44      = -0x44
var_40      = -0x40
var_3C      = -0x3C
var_38      = -0x38
var_34      = -0x34
var_30      = -0x30
var_2C      = -0x2C
var_28      = -0x28
var_24      = -0x24
var_20      = -0x20
var_1C      = -0x1C
var_18      = -0x18
canary     = -0x14
var_10      = -0x10

```

¹²⁶Thread Local Storage

¹²⁷Thread Information Block

¹²⁸wikipedia.org/wiki/Win32_Thread_Information_Block

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

PUSH    {R4-R7,LR}
ADD     R7, SP, #0xC
STR.W   R8, [SP,#0xC+var_10]!
SUB     SP, SP, #0x54
MOVW    R0, #a0bjc_methtype ; "objc_methtype"
MOVS    R2, #0
MOVT.W  R0, #0
MOVS    R5, #0
ADD     R0, PC
LDR.W   R8, [R0]
LDR.W   R0, [R8]
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+canary]
MOVS    R0, #2
STR     R2, [SP,#0x64+var_64]
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_60]
MOVS    R0, #4
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_5C]
MOVS    R0, #6
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_58]
MOVS    R0, #8
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_54]
MOVS    R0, #0xA
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_50]
MOVS    R0, #0xC
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_4C]
MOVS    R0, #0xE
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_48]
MOVS    R0, #0x10
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_44]
MOVS    R0, #0x12
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_40]
MOVS    R0, #0x14
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_3C]
MOVS    R0, #0x16
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_38]
MOVS    R0, #0x18
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_34]
MOVS    R0, #0x1A
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_30]
MOVS    R0, #0x1C
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_2C]
MOVS    R0, #0x1E
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_28]
MOVS    R0, #0x20
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_24]
MOVS    R0, #0x22
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_20]
MOVS    R0, #0x24
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_1C]
MOVS    R0, #0x26
STR     R0, [SP,#0x64+var_18]
MOV     R4, 0xFDA ; "a[%d]=%d\n"
MOV     R0, SP

```

```

ADDS    R6, R0, #4
ADD     R4, PC
B      loc_2F1C

; second loop begin

loc_2F14
ADDS    R0, R5, #1
LDR.W   R2, [R6,R5,LSL#2]
MOV     R5, R0

loc_2F1C
MOV     R0, R4
MOV     R1, R5
BLX    __printf
CMP     R5, #0x13
BNE    loc_2F14
LDR.W   R0, [R8]
LDR     R1, [SP,#0x64+canary]
CMP     R0, R1
ITTTT EQ          ; is canary still correct?
MOVEQ   R0, #0
ADDEQ   SP, SP, #0x54
LDREQ.W R8, [SP+0x64+var_64],#4
POPEQ   {R4-R7,PC}
BLX    __stack_chk_fail

```

First of all, as we see, LLVM “unrolled” the loop and all values were written into an array one-by-one, pre-calculated, as LLVM concluded it can work faster. By the way, instructions in ARM mode may help to do this even faster, and finding this could be your homework.

At the function end we see the comparison of the “canaries”—the one in the local stack and the correct one, to which R8 points.

If they are equal to each other, a 4-instruction block is triggered by ITTTT EQ, which contains writing 0 in R0, the function epilogue and exit. If the “canaries” are not equal, the block being skipped, and the jump to __stack_chk_fail function will occur, which, perhaps will halt execution.

1.26.4 One more word about arrays

Now we understand why it is impossible to write something like this in C/C++ code:

```

void f(int size)
{
    int a[size];
...
};
```

That's just because the compiler must know the exact array size to allocate space for it in the local stack layout on at the compiling stage.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

If you need an array of arbitrary size, allocate it by using `malloc()`, then access the allocated memory block as an array of variables of the type you need.

Or use the C99 standard feature [*ISO/IEC 9899:TC3 (C C99 standard)*, (2007)6.7.5/2], and it works like `alloca()` ([1.9.2 on page 47](#)) internally.

It's also possible to use garbage collecting libraries for C.

And there are also libraries supporting smart pointers for C++.

1.26.5 Array of pointers to strings

Here is an example for an array of pointers.

Listing 1.236: Get month name

```
#include <stdio.h>

const char* month1[]=
{
    "January", "February", "March", "April",
    "May", "June", "July", "August",
    "September", "October", "November", "December"
};

// in 0..11 range
const char* get_month1 (int month)
{
    return month1[month];
}
```

x64

Listing 1.237: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

_DATA	SEGMENT
month1	DQ FLAT:\$SG3122
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3123
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3124
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3125
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3126
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3127
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3128
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3129
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3130
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3131
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3132
	DQ FLAT:\$SG3133
\$SG3122	DB 'January', 00H
\$SG3123	DB 'February', 00H
\$SG3124	DB 'March', 00H
\$SG3125	DB 'April', 00H
\$SG3126	DB 'May', 00H
\$SG3127	DB 'June', 00H

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

$SG3128 DB      'July', 00H
$SG3129 DB      'August', 00H
$SG3130 DB      'September', 00H
$SG3156 DB      '%s', 0aH, 00H
$SG3131 DB      'October', 00H
$SG3132 DB      'November', 00H
$SG3133 DB      'December', 00H
_DATA    ENDS

month$ = 8
get_month1 PROC
    movsx   rax, ecx
    lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:month1
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rcx+rax*8]
    ret     0
get_month1 ENDP

```

The code is very simple:

- The first MOVSDX instruction copies a 32-bit value from ECX (where *month* argument is passed) to RAX with sign-extension (because the *month* argument is of type *int*).

The reason for the sign extension is that this 32-bit value is to be used in calculations with other 64-bit values.

Hence, it has to be promoted to 64-bit¹²⁹.

- Then the address of the pointer table is loaded into RCX.
- Finally, the input value (*month*) is multiplied by 8 and added to the address. Indeed: we are in a 64-bit environment and all address (or pointers) require exactly 64 bits (or 8 bytes) for storage. Hence, each table element is 8 bytes wide. And that's why to pick a specific element, *month**8 bytes has to be skipped from the start. That's what MOV does. In addition, this instruction also loads the element at this address. For 1, an element would be a pointer to a string that contains "February", etc.

Optimizing GCC 4.9 can do the job even better ¹³⁰:

Listing 1.238: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```

movsx   rdi, edi
mov     rax, QWORD PTR month1[0+rdi*8]
ret

```

¹²⁹It is somewhat weird, but negative array index could be passed here as *month* (negative array indices will have been explained later: [3.22 on page 767](#)). And if this happens, the negative input value of *int* type is sign-extended correctly and the corresponding element before table is picked. It is not going to work correctly without sign-extension.

¹³⁰"0+" was left in the listing because GCC assembler output is not tidy enough to eliminate it. It's displacement, and it's zero here.

32-bit MSVC

Let's also compile it in the 32-bit MSVC compiler:

Listing 1.239: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x86

```
_month$ = 8
_get_month1 PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _month$[esp-4]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _month1[eax*4]
    ret     0
_get_month1 ENDP
```

The input value does not need to be extended to 64-bit value, so it is used as is. And it's multiplied by 4, because the table elements are 32-bit (or 4 bytes) wide.

32-bit ARM

ARM in ARM mode

Listing 1.240: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
get_month1 PROC
    LDR      r1, |L0.100|
    LDR      r0,[r1,r0,LSL #2]
    BX      lr
    ENDP

|L0.100|
    DCD    |||.data||

    DCB    "January",0
    DCB    "February",0
    DCB    "March",0
    DCB    "April",0
    DCB    "May",0
    DCB    "June",0
    DCB    "July",0
    DCB    "August",0
    DCB    "September",0
    DCB    "October",0
    DCB    "November",0
    DCB    "December",0

    AREA  |||.data||, DATA, ALIGN=2
month1
    DCD    |||.conststring||
    DCD    |||.conststring||+0x8
    DCD    |||.conststring||+0x11
    DCD    |||.conststring||+0x17
    DCD    |||.conststring||+0x1d
    DCD    |||.conststring||+0x21
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

DCD	.conststring +0x26
DCD	.conststring +0x2b
DCD	.conststring +0x32
DCD	.conststring +0x3c
DCD	.conststring +0x44
DCD	.conststring +0x4d

The address of the table is loaded in R1.

All the rest is done using just one LDR instruction.

Then input value *month* is shifted left by 2 (which is the same as multiplying by 4), then added to R1 (where the address of the table is) and then a table element is loaded from this address.

The 32-bit table element is loaded into R0 from the table.

ARM in Thumb mode

The code is mostly the same, but less dense, because the LSL suffix cannot be specified in the LDR instruction here:

```
get_month1 PROC
    LSLS      r0,r0,#2
    LDR       r1,|L0.64|
    LDR       r0,[r1,r0]
    BX        lr
ENDP
```

ARM64

Listing 1.241: Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64

```
get_month1:
    adrp    x1, .LANCHOR0
    add     x1, x1, :lo12:.LANCHOR0
    ldr     x0, [x1,w0,sxtw 3]
    ret

.LANCHOR0 = . + 0
.type   month1, %object
.size   month1, 96
month1:
    .xword  .LC2
    .xword  .LC3
    .xword  .LC4
    .xword  .LC5
    .xword  .LC6
    .xword  .LC7
    .xword  .LC8
    .xword  .LC9
    .xword  .LC10
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.xword  .LC11
.xword  .LC12
.xword  .LC13
.LC2:
    .string "January"
.LC3:
    .string "February"
.LC4:
    .string "March"
.LC5:
    .string "April"
.LC6:
    .string "May"
.LC7:
    .string "June"
.LC8:
    .string "July"
.LC9:
    .string "August"
.LC10:
    .string "September"
.LC11:
    .string "October"
.LC12:
    .string "November"
.LC13:
    .string "December"

```

The address of the table is loaded in X1 using ADRP/ADD pair.

Then corresponding element is picked using just one LDR, which takes W0 (the register where input argument *month* is), shifts it 3 bits to the left (which is the same as multiplying by 8), sign-extends it (this is what “sxtw” suffix implies) and adds to X0. Then the 64-bit value is loaded from the table into X0.

MIPS

Listing 1.242: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

get_month1:
; load address of table into $v0:
    la      $v0, month1
; take input value and multiply it by 4:
    sll     $a0, 2
; sum up address of table and multiplied value:
    addu   $a0, $v0
; load table element at this address into $v0:
    lw      $v0, 0($a0)
; return
    jr      $ra
    or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
                .data # .data.rel.local

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.month1:
    .globl month1
    .word aJanuary      # "January"
    .word aFebruary     # "February"
    .word aMarch        # "March"
    .word aApril         # "April"
    .word aMay           # "May"
    .word aJune          # "June"
    .word aJuly          # "July"
    .word aAugust         # "August"
    .word aSeptember     # "September"
    .word aOctober        # "October"
    .word aNovember       # "November"
    .word aDecember        # "December"

    .data # .rodata.str1.4
aJanuary:   .ascii "January"<0>
aFebruary:  .ascii "February"<0>
aMarch:     .ascii "March"<0>
aApril:     .ascii "April"<0>
aMay:       .ascii "May"<0>
aJune:      .ascii "June"<0>
aJuly:      .ascii "July"<0>
aAugust:    .ascii "August"<0>
aSeptember: .ascii "September"<0>
aOctober:   .ascii "October"<0>
aNovember:  .ascii "November"<0>
aDecember:  .ascii "December"<0>

```

Array overflow

Our function accepts values in the range of 0..11, but what if 12 is passed? There is no element in table at this place.

So the function will load some value which happens to be there, and return it.

Soon after, some other function can try to get a text string from this address and may crash.

Let's compile the example in MSVC for win64 and open it in [IDA](#) to see what the linker has placed after the table:

Listing 1.243: Executable file in IDA

off_140011000	dq offset aJanuary_1 ; DATA XREF: .text:0000000140001003
	; "January"
	dq offset aFebruary_1 ; "February"
	dq offset aMarch_1 ; "March"
	dq offset aApril_1 ; "April"
	dq offset aMay_1 ; "May"
	dq offset aJune_1 ; "June"
	dq offset aJuly_1 ; "July"
	dq offset aAugust_1 ; "August"
	dq offset aSeptember_1 ; "September"
	dq offset aOctober_1 ; "October"

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

	dq offset aNovember_1 ; "November"
	dq offset aDecember_1 ; "December"
aJanuary_1	db 'January',0 ; DATA XREF: sub_140001020+4 ; .data:off_140011000
aFebruary_1	db 'February',0 ; DATA XREF: .data:0000000140011008 align 4
aMarch_1	db 'March',0 ; DATA XREF: .data:0000000140011010 align 4
aApril_1	db 'April',0 ; DATA XREF: .data:0000000140011018

Month names are came right after.

Our program is tiny, so there isn't much data to pack in the data segment, so it just the month names. But it has to be noted that there might be really *anything* that linker has decided to put by chance.

So what if 12 is passed to the function? The 13th element will be returned.

Let's see how the CPU treats the bytes there as a 64-bit value:

Listing 1.244: Executable file in IDA

off_140011000	dq offset qword_140011060 ; DATA XREF: .text:0000000140001003
	dq offset aFebruary_1 ; "February"
	dq offset aMarch_1 ; "March"
	dq offset aApril_1 ; "April"
	dq offset aMay_1 ; "May"
	dq offset aJune_1 ; "June"
	dq offset aJuly_1 ; "July"
	dq offset aAugust_1 ; "August"
	dq offset aSeptember_1 ; "September"
	dq offset aOctober_1 ; "October"
	dq offset aNovember_1 ; "November"
	dq offset aDecember_1 ; "December"
qword_140011060	dq 797261756E614Ah ; DATA XREF: sub_140001020+4 ; .data:off_140011000
aFebruary_1	db 'February',0 ; DATA XREF: .data:0000000140011008 align 4
aMarch_1	db 'March',0 ; DATA XREF: .data:0000000140011010

And this is 0x797261756E614A.

Soon after, some other function (presumably, one that processes strings) may try to read bytes at this address, expecting a C-string there.

Most likely it is about to crash, because this value doesn't look like a valid address.

Array overflow protection

If something can go wrong, it will

Murphy's Law

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

It's a bit naïve to expect that every programmer who uses your function or library will never pass an argument larger than 11.

There exists the philosophy that says “fail early and fail loudly” or “fail-fast”, which teaches to report problems as early as possible and halt.

One such method in C/C++ is assertions.

We can modify our program to fail if an incorrect value is passed:

Listing 1.245: assert() added

```
const char* get_month1_checked (int month)
{
    assert (month<12);
    return month1[month];
};
```

The assertion macro checks for valid values at every function start and fails if the expression is false.

Listing 1.246: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```
$SG3143 DB      'm', 00H, 'o', 00H, 'n', 00H, 't', 00H, 'h', 00H, '.', 00H
        DB      'c', 00H, 00H, 00H
$SG3144 DB      'm', 00H, 'o', 00H, 'n', 00H, 't', 00H, 'h', 00H, '<', 00H
        DB      '1', 00H, '2', 00H, 00H, 00H

month$ = 48
get_month1_checked PROC
$LN5:
    push    rbx
    sub     rsp, 32
    movsxd rbx, ecx
    cmp     ebx, 12
    jl      SHORT $LN3@get_month1
    lea    rdx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG3143
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG3144
    mov    r8d, 29
    call   _wassert
$LN3@get_month1:
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:month1
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR [rcx+rbx*8]
    add    rsp, 32
    pop    rbx
    ret    0
get_month1_checked ENDP
```

In fact, assert() is not a function, but macro. It checks for a condition, then passes also the line number and file name to another function which reports this information to the user.

Here we see that both file name and condition are encoded in UTF-16. The line number is also passed (it's 29).

This mechanism is probably the same in all compilers. Here is what GCC does:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 1.247: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```

.LC1:
    .string "month.c"
.LC2:
    .string "month<12"

get_month1_checked:
    cmp    edi, 11
    jg     .L6
    movsx rdi, edi
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR month1[0+rdi*8]
    ret

.L6:
    push   rax
    mov    ecx, OFFSET FLAT:_PRETTY_FUNCTION_.2423
    mov    edx, 29
    mov    esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC2
    call   __assert_fail

__PRETTY_FUNCTION_.2423:
    .string "get_month1_checked"

```

So the macro in GCC also passes the function name for convenience.

Nothing is really free, and this is true for the sanitizing checks as well.

They make your program slower, especially if the assert() macros used in small time-critical functions.

So MSVC, for example, leaves the checks in debug builds, but in release builds they all disappear.

Microsoft [Windows NT](#) kernels come in “checked” and “free” builds ¹³¹.

The first has validation checks (hence, “checked”), the second one doesn’t (hence, “free” of checks).

Of course, “checked” kernel works slower because of all these checks, so it is usually used only in debug sessions.

Accessing specific character

An array of pointers to strings can be accessed like this:

```

#include <stdio.h>

const char* month[]=
{
    "January", "February", "March", "April",
    "May", "June", "July", "August",
    "September", "October", "November", "December"
};

```

¹³¹[msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/hardware/ff543450\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/hardware/ff543450(v=vs.85).aspx)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```
int main()
{
    // 4th month, 5th character:
    printf ("%c\n", month[3][4]);
}
```

...since `month[3]` expression has a `const char*` type. And then, 5th character is taken from that expression by adding 4 bytes to its address.

By the way, arguments list passed to `main()` function has the same data type:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    printf ("3rd argument, 2nd character: %c\n", argv[3][1]);
}
```

It's very important to understand, that, despite similar syntax, this is different from two-dimensional arrays, which we will consider later.

Another important thing to notice: strings to be addressed must be encoded in a system, where each character occupies single byte, like [ASCII¹³²](#) and extended [ASCII](#). UTF-8 wouldn't work here.

1.26.6 Multidimensional arrays

Internally, a multidimensional array is essentially the same thing as a linear array.

Since the computer memory is linear, it is an one-dimensional array. For convenience, this multi-dimensional array can be easily represented as one-dimensional.

For example, this is how the elements of the 3x4 array are placed in one-dimensional array of 12 cells:

¹³²American Standard Code for Information Interchange

Offset in memory	array element
0	[0][0]
1	[0][1]
2	[0][2]
3	[0][3]
4	[1][0]
5	[1][1]
6	[1][2]
7	[1][3]
8	[2][0]
9	[2][1]
10	[2][2]
11	[2][3]

Table 1.3: Two-dimensional array represented in memory as one-dimensional

Here is how each cell of 3*4 array are placed in memory:

0	1	2	3
4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11

Table 1.4: Memory addresses of each cell of two-dimensional array

So, in order to calculate the address of the element we need, we first multiply the first index by 4 (array width) and then add the second index. That's called *row-major order*, and this method of array and matrix representation is used in at least C/C++ and Python. The term *row-major order* in plain English language means: "first, write the elements of the first row, then the second row ...and finally the elements of the last row".

Another method for representation is called *column-major order* (the array indices are used in reverse order) and it is used at least in Fortran, MATLAB and R. *column-major order* term in plain English language means: "first, write the elements of the first column, then the second column ...and finally the elements of the last column".

Which method is better?

In general, in terms of performance and cache memory, the best scheme for data organization is the one, in which the elements are accessed sequentially.

So if your function accesses data per row, *row-major order* is better, and vice versa.

Two-dimensional array example

We are going to work with an array of type *char*, which implies that each element requires only one byte in memory.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Row filling example

Let's fill the second row with these values 0..3:

Listing 1.248: Row filling example

```
#include <stdio.h>

char a[3][4];

int main()
{
    int x, y;

    // clear array
    for (x=0; x<3; x++)
        for (y=0; y<4; y++)
            a[x][y]=0;

    // fill second row by 0..3:
    for (y=0; y<4; y++)
        a[1][y]=y;
}
```

All three rows are marked with red. We see that second row now has values 0, 1, 2 and 3:

Address	Hex dump
00C33370	00 00 00 00 00 01 02 03 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00C33380	02 00 00 00 C3 66 47 4E C3 66 47 4E 00 00 00 00
00C33390	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00C333A0	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00C333B0	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

Figure 1.92: OllyDbg: array is filled

Column filling example

Let's fill the third column with values: 0..2:

Listing 1.249: Column filling example

```
#include <stdio.h>

char a[3][4];

int main()
{
    int x, y;

    // clear array
    for (x=0; x<3; x++)
        for (y=0; y<4; y++)
            a[x][y]=0;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
// fill third column by 0..2:
for (x=0; x<3; x++)
    a[x][2]=x;
};
```

The three rows are also marked in red here.

We see that in each row, at third position these values are written: 0, 1 and 2.

Address	Hex dump
01033380	00 00 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 02 00 02 00 00 00
01033390	00 00 00 00 1E AA EF 31 1E AA EF 31 00 00 00 00 00
010333A0	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
010333B0	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

Figure 1.93: OllyDbg: array is filled

Access two-dimensional array as one-dimensional

We can be easily assured that it's possible to access a two-dimensional array as one-dimensional array in at least two ways:

```
#include <stdio.h>

char a[3][4];

char get_by_coordinates1 (char array[3][4], int a, int b)
{
    return array[a][b];
}

char get_by_coordinates2 (char *array, int a, int b)
{
    // treat input array as one-dimensional
    // 4 is array width here
    return array[a*4+b];
}

char get_by_coordinates3 (char *array, int a, int b)
{
    // treat input array as pointer,
    // calculate address, get value at it
    // 4 is array width here
    return *(array+a*4+b);
}

int main()
{
    a[2][3]=123;
    printf ("%d\n", get_by_coordinates1(a, 2, 3));
    printf ("%d\n", get_by_coordinates2(a, 2, 3));
    printf ("%d\n", get_by_coordinates3(a, 2, 3));
}
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Compile¹³³ and run it: it shows correct values.

What MSVC 2013 did is fascinating, all three routines are just the same!

Listing 1.250: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```
array$ = 8
a$ = 16
b$ = 24
get_by_coordinates3 PROC
; RCX=address of array
; RDX=a
; R8=b
    movsxrd rax, r8d
; EAX=b
    movsxrd r9, edx
; R9=a
    add     rax, rcx
; RAX=b+address of array
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [rax+r9*4]
; AL=load byte at address RAX+R9*4=b+address of array+a*4=address of
; array+a*4+b
    ret     0
get_by_coordinates3 ENDP

array$ = 8
a$ = 16
b$ = 24
get_by_coordinates2 PROC
    movsxrd rax, r8d
    movsxrd r9, edx
    add     rax, rcx
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [rax+r9*4]
    ret     0
get_by_coordinates2 ENDP

array$ = 8
a$ = 16
b$ = 24
get_by_coordinates1 PROC
    movsxrd rax, r8d
    movsxrd r9, edx
    add     rax, rcx
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [rax+r9*4]
    ret     0
get_by_coordinates1 ENDP
```

GCC also generates equivalent routines, but slightly different:

Listing 1.251: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```
; RDI=address of array
; RSI=a
```

¹³³This program is to be compiled as a C program, not C++, save it to a file with .c extension to compile it using MSVC

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; RDX=b

get_by_coordinates1:
; sign-extend input 32-bit int values "a" and "b" to 64-bit ones
    movsx    rsi, esi
    movsx    rdx, edx
    lea     rax, [rdi+rsi*4]
; RAX=RDI+RSI*4=address of array+a*4
    movzx    eax, BYTE PTR [rax+rdx]
; AL=load byte at address RAX+RDX=address of array+a*4+b
    ret

get_by_coordinates2:
    lea     eax, [rdx+rsi*4]
; RAX=RDX+RSI*4=b+a*4
    cdqe
    movzx    eax, BYTE PTR [rdi+rax]
; AL=load byte at address RDI+RAX=address of array+b+a*4
    ret

get_by_coordinates3:
    sal    esi, 2
; ESI=a<<2=a*4
; sign-extend input 32-bit int values "a*4" and "b" to 64-bit ones
    movsx    rdx, edx
    movsx    rsi, esi
    add     rdi, rsi
; RDI=RDI+RSI=address of array+a*4
    movzx    eax, BYTE PTR [rdi+rdx]
; AL=load byte at address RDI+RDX=address of array+a*4+b
    ret

```

Three-dimensional array example

It's the same for multidimensional arrays.

Now we are going to work with an array of type *int*: each element requires 4 bytes in memory.

Let's see:

Listing 1.252: simple example

```

#include <stdio.h>

int a[10][20][30];

void insert(int x, int y, int z, int value)
{
    a[x][y][z]=value;
}

```

x86

We get (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.253: MSVC 2010

```

_DATA    SEGMENT
COMM    _a:DWORD:01770H
_DATA    ENDS
PUBLIC   _insert
_TEXT    SEGMENT
_x$ = 8           ; size = 4
_y$ = 12          ; size = 4
_z$ = 16          ; size = 4
_value$ = 20       ; size = 4
_insert    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _x$[ebp]
    imul   eax, 2400           ; eax=600*4*x
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _y$[ebp]
    imul   ecx, 120            ; ecx=30*4*y
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR _a[eax+ecx] ; edx=a + 600*4*x + 30*4*y
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _z$[ebp]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _value$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [edx+eax*4], ecx ; *(edx+z*4)=value
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_insert    ENDP
_TEXT    ENDS

```

Nothing special. For index calculation, three input arguments are used in the formula $address = 600 \cdot 4 \cdot x + 30 \cdot 4 \cdot y + 4z$, to represent the array as multidimensional. Do not forget that the *int* type is 32-bit (4 bytes), so all coefficients must be multiplied by 4.

Listing 1.254: GCC 4.4.1

```

public insert
insert proc near

x      = dword ptr  8
y      = dword ptr  0Ch
z      = dword ptr  10h
value  = dword ptr  14h

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ebx
    mov     ebx, [ebp+x]
    mov     eax, [ebp+y]
    mov     ecx, [ebp+z]
    lea    edx, [eax+eax] ; edx=y*2
    mov     eax, edx       ; eax=y*2

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

shl    eax, 4           ; eax=(y*2)<<4 = y*2*16 = y*32
sub    eax, edx         ; eax=y*32 - y*2=y*30
imul   edx, ebx, 600    ; edx=x*600
add    eax, edx         ; eax=eax+edx=y*30 + x*600
lea    edx, [eax+ecx]    ; edx=y*30 + x*600 + z
mov    eax, [ebp+value]
mov    dword ptr ds:a[edx*4], eax ; *(a+edx*4)=value
pop    ebx
pop    ebp
retn
insert endp

```

The GCC compiler does it differently.

For one of the operations in the calculation ($30y$), GCC produces code without multiplication instructions. This is how it done: $(y+y) \ll 4 - (y+y) = (2y) \ll 4 - 2y = 2 \cdot 16 \cdot y - 2y = 32y - 2y = 30y$. Thus, for the $30y$ calculation, only one addition operation, one bitwise shift operation and one subtraction operation are used. This works faster.

ARM + Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb mode)

Listing 1.255: Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb mode)

```

_insert

value  = -0x10
z      = -0xC
y      = -8
x      = -4

; allocate place in local stack for 4 values of int type
SUB    SP, SP, #0x10
MOV    R9, 0xFC2 ; a
ADD    R9, PC
LDR.W R9, [R9] ; get pointer to array
STR    R0, [SP,#0x10+x]
STR    R1, [SP,#0x10+y]
STR    R2, [SP,#0x10+z]
STR    R3, [SP,#0x10+value]
LDR    R0, [SP,#0x10+value]
LDR    R1, [SP,#0x10+z]
LDR    R2, [SP,#0x10+y]
LDR    R3, [SP,#0x10+x]
MOV    R12, 2400
MUL.W R3, R3, R12
ADD    R3, R9
MOV    R9, 120
MUL.W R2, R2, R9
ADD    R2, R3
LSLS   R1, R1, #2 ; R1=R1<<2
ADD    R1, R2
STR    R0, [R1] ; R1 - address of array element

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
; deallocate chunk in local stack, allocated for 4 values of int type
ADD    SP, SP, #0x10
BX    LR
```

Non-optimizing LLVM saves all variables in local stack, which is redundant.

The address of the array element is calculated by the formula we already saw.

ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb mode)

Listing 1.256: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb mode)

```
_insert
MOVW    R9, #0x10FC
MOV.W   R12, #2400
MOVT.W  R9, #0
RSB.W   R1, R1, R1,LSL#4 ; R1 - y. R1=y<<4 - y = y*16 - y = y*15
ADD     R9, PC
LDR.W   R9, [R9]          ; R9 = pointer to an array
MLA.W   R0, R0, R12, R9   ; R0 - x, R12 - 2400, R9 - pointer to a. R0=x*2400
+ ptr to a
ADD.W   R0, R0, R1,LSL#3  ; R0 = R0+R1<<3 = R0+R1*8 = x*2400 + ptr to a +
y*15*8 =                   ; ptr to a + y*30*4 + x*600*4
STR.W   R3, [R0,R2,LSL#2]  ; R2 - z, R3 - value. address=R0+z*4 =
+ ptr to a + y*30*4 + x*600*4 + z*4
BX     LR
```

The tricks for replacing multiplication by shift, addition and subtraction which we already saw are also present here.

Here we also see a new instruction for us: RSB (*Reverse Subtract*).

It works just as SUB, but it swaps its operands with each other before execution. Why? SUB and RSB are instructions, to the second operand of which shift coefficient may be applied: (LSL#4).

But this coefficient can be applied only to second operand.

That's fine for commutative operations like addition or multiplication (operands may be swapped there without changing the result).

But subtraction is a non-commutative operation, so RSB exist for these cases.

MIPS

My example is tiny, so the GCC compiler decided to put the *a* array into the 64KiB area addressable by the Global Pointer.

Listing 1.257: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
insert:
; $a0=x
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; $a1=y
; $a2=z
; $a3=value
        sll      $v0, $a0, 5
; $v0 = $a0<<5 = x*32
        sll      $a0, 3
; $a0 = $a0<<3 = x*8
        addu    $a0, $v0
; $a0 = $a0+$v0 = x*8+x*32 = x*40
        sll      $v1, $a1, 5
; $v1 = $a1<<5 = y*32
        sll      $v0, $a0, 4
; $v0 = $a0<<4 = x*40*16 = x*640
        sll      $a1, 1
; $a1 = $a1<<1 = y*2
        subu    $a1, $v1, $a1
; $a1 = $v1-$a1 = y*32-y*2 = y*30
        subu    $a0, $v0, $a0
; $a0 = $v0-$a0 = x*640-x*40 = x*600
        la      $gp, __gnu_local_gp
        addu    $a0, $a1, $a0
; $a0 = $a1+$a0 = y*30+x*600
        addu    $a0, $a2
; $a0 = $a0+$a2 = y*30+x*600+z
; load address of table:
        lw      $v0, (a & 0xFFFF)($gp)
; multiply index by 4 to seek array element:
        sll      $a0, 2
; sum up multiplied index and table address:
        addu    $a0, $v0, $a0
; store value into table and return:
        jr      $ra
        sw      $a3, 0($a0)

.comm a:0x1770

```

Getting dimensions of multidimensional array

Any string processing function, if an array of characters passed to it, can't deduce a size of the input array. Likewise, if a function processes 2D array, only one dimension can be deduced.

For example:

```

int get_element(int array[10][20], int x, int y)
{
    return array[x][y];
}

int main()
{
    int array[10][20];

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
    get_element(array, 4, 5);
};
```

... if compiled (by any compiler) and then decompiled by Hex-Rays:

```
int get_element(int *array, int x, int y)
{
    return array[20 * x + y];
}
```

There is no way to find a size of the first dimension. If x value passed is too big, buffer overflow would occur, an element from some random place of memory would be read.

And 3D array:

```
int get_element(int array[10][20][30], int x, int y, int z)
{
    return array[x][y][z];
}

int main()
{
    int array[10][20][30];

    get_element(array, 4, 5, 6);
};
```

Hex-Rays:

```
int get_element(int *array, int x, int y, int z)
{
    return array[600 * x + z + 30 * y];
}
```

Again, sizes of only two of 3 dimensions can be deduced.

More examples

The computer screen is represented as a 2D array, but the video-buffer is a linear 1D array. We talk about it here: [8.15.2 on page 1170](#).

Another example in this book is Minesweeper game: its field is also two-dimensional array: [8.4 on page 1036](#).

1.26.7 Pack of strings as a two-dimensional array

Let's revisit the function that returns the name of a month: listing [1.236](#).

As you see, at least one memory load operation is needed to prepare a pointer to the string that's the month's name.

Is it possible to get rid of this memory load operation?

In fact yes, if you represent the list of strings as a two-dimensional array:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <assert.h>

const char month2[12][10]=
{
    { 'J','a','n','u','a','r','y', 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'F','e','b','r','u','a','r','y', 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'M','a','r','c','h', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'A','p','r','i','l', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'M','a','y', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'J','u','n','e', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'J','u','l','y', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'A','u','g','u','s','t', 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'S','e','p','t','e','m','b','e','r', 0 },
    { 'O','c','t','o','b','e','r', 0, 0, 0 },
    { 'N','o','v','e','m','b','e','r', 0, 0 },
    { 'D','e','c','e','m','b','e','r', 0, 0 }
};

// in 0..11 range
const char* get_month2 (int month)
{
    return &month2[month][0];
}
```

Here is what we've get:

Listing 1.258: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```
month2 DB      04aH
        DB      061H
        DB      06eH
        DB      075H
        DB      061H
        DB      072H
        DB      079H
        DB      00H
        DB      00H
        DB      00H
...
get_month2 PROC
; sign-extend input argument and promote to 64-bit value
    movsxrd rax, ecx
    lea     rcx, QWORD PTR [rax+rax*4]
; RCX=month+month*4=month*5
    lea     rax, OFFSET FLAT:month2
; RAX=pointer to table
    lea     rax, QWORD PTR [rax+rcx*2]
; RAX=pointer to table + RCX*2=pointer to table + month*5*2=pointer to table
    + month*10
    ret     0
get_month2 ENDP
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

There are no memory accesses at all.

All this function does is to calculate a point at which the first character of the name of the month is: *pointer_to_the_table + month * 10*.

There are also two LEA instructions, which effectively work as several MUL and MOV instructions.

The width of the array is 10 bytes.

Indeed, the longest string here—"September"—is 9 bytes, and plus the terminating zero is 10 bytes.

The rest of the month names are padded by zero bytes, so they all occupy the same space (10 bytes).

Thus, our function works even faster, because all string start at an address which can be calculated easily.

Optimizing GCC 4.9 can do it even shorter:

Listing 1.259: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```
movsx rdi, edi
lea    rax, [rdi+rdi*4]
lea    rax, month2[rax+rax]
ret
```

LEA is also used here for multiplication by 10.

Non-optimizing compilers do multiplication differently.

Listing 1.260: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```
get_month2:
    push   rbp
    mov    rbp, rsp
    mov    DWORD PTR [rbp-4], edi
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-4]
    movsx  rdx, eax
; RDX = sign-extended input value
    mov    rax, rdx
; RAX = month
    sal    rax, 2
; RAX = month<<2 = month*4
    add    rax, rdx
; RAX = RAX+RDX = month*4+month = month*5
    add    rax, rax
; RAX = RAX*2 = month*5*2 = month*10
    add    rax, OFFSET FLAT:month2
; RAX = month*10 + pointer to the table
    pop    rbp
    ret
```

Non-optimizing MSVC just uses IMUL instruction:

Listing 1.261: Non-optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```

month$ = 8
get_month2 PROC
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+8], ecx
    movsxd  rax, DWORD PTR month$[rsp]
; RAX = sign-extended input value into 64-bit one
    imul   rax, rax, 10
; RAX = RAX*10
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:month2
; RCX = pointer to the table
    add    rcx, rax
; RCX = RCX+RAX = pointer to the table+month*10
    mov    rax, rcx
; RAX = pointer to the table+month*10
    mov    ecx, 1
; RCX = 1
    imul   rcx, rcx, 0
; RCX = 1*0 = 0
    add    rax, rcx
; RAX = pointer to the table+month*10 + 0 = pointer to the table+month*10
    ret    0
get_month2 ENDP

```

But one thing is weird here: why add multiplication by zero and adding zero to the final result?

This looks like a compiler code generator quirk, which wasn't caught by the compiler's tests (the resulting code works correctly, after all). We intentionally consider such pieces of code so the reader would understand, that sometimes one shouldn't puzzle over such compiler artifacts.

32-bit ARM

Optimizing Keil for Thumb mode uses the multiplication instruction MULS:

Listing 1.262: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

; R0 = month
    MOVS      r1,#0xa
; R1 = 10
    MULS      r0,r1,r0
; R0 = R1*R0 = 10*month
    LDR       r1,|L0.68|
; R1 = pointer to the table
    ADDS      r0,r0,r1
; R0 = R0+R1 = 10*month + pointer to the table
    BX       lr

```

Optimizing Keil for ARM mode uses add and shift operations:

Listing 1.263: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

; R0 = month

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        LDR      r1, |L0.104|
; R1 = pointer to the table
        ADD      r0, r0, r0, LSL #2
; R0 = R0+R0<<2 = R0+R0*4 = month*5
        ADD      r0, r1, r0, LSL #1
; R0 = R1+R0<<2 = pointer to the table + month*5*2 = pointer to the table +
        BX      lr
    month*10

```

ARM64

Listing 1.264: Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64

```

; W0 = month
        sxtw   x0, w0
; X0 = sign-extended input value
        adrp   x1, .LANCHOR1
        add    x1, x1, :lo12:.LANCHOR1
; X1 = pointer to the table
        add    x0, x0, x0, lsl 2
; X0 = X0+X0<<2 = X0+X0*4 = X0*5
        add    x0, x1, x0, lsl 1
; X0 = X1+X0<<1 = X1+X0*2 = pointer to the table + X0*10
        ret

```

SXTW is used for sign-extension and promoting input 32-bit value into a 64-bit one and storing it in X0.

ADRP/ADD pair is used for loading the address of the table.

The ADD instructions also has a LSL suffix, which helps with multiplications.

MIPS

Listing 1.265: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

.globl get_month2
get_month2:
; $a0=month
        sll      $v0, $a0, 3
; $v0 = $a0<<3 = month*8
        sll      $a0, 1
; $a0 = $a0<<1 = month*2
        addu   $a0, $v0
; $a0 = month*2+month*8 = month*10
; load address of the table:
        la      $v0, month2
; sum up table address and index we calculated and return:
        jr      $ra
        addu   $v0, $a0

month2:      .ascii "January"<0>
            .byte 0, 0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
aFebruary:    .ascii "February"<0>
               .byte   0
aMarch:       .ascii "March"<0>
               .byte 0, 0, 0, 0
aApril:       .ascii "April"<0>
               .byte 0, 0, 0, 0
aMay:         .ascii "May"<0>
               .byte 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0
aJune:        .ascii "June"<0>
               .byte 0, 0, 0, 0, 0
aJuly:        .ascii "July"<0>
               .byte 0, 0, 0, 0, 0
aAugust:      .ascii "August"<0>
               .byte 0, 0, 0
aSeptember:   .ascii "September"<0>
aOctober:     .ascii "October"<0>
               .byte 0, 0
aNoverember: .ascii "November"<0>
               .byte   0
aDecember:    .ascii "December"<0>
               .byte 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0
```

Conclusion

This is a bit old-school technique to store text strings. You may find a lot of it in Oracle RDBMS, for example. It's hard to say if it's worth doing on modern computers. Nevertheless, it is a good example of arrays, so it was added to this book.

1.26.8 Conclusion

An array is a pack of values in memory located adjacently.

It's true for any element type, including structures.

Access to a specific array element is just a calculation of its address.

So, a pointer to an array and address of a first element—is the same thing. This is why `ptr[0]` and `*ptr` expressions are equivalent in C/C++. It's interesting to note that Hex-Rays often replaces the first by the second. It does so when it have no idea that it works with pointer to the whole array, and thinks that this is a pointer to single variable.

1.26.9 Exercises

- <http://challenges.re/62>
- <http://challenges.re/63>
- <http://challenges.re/64>
- <http://challenges.re/65>
- <http://challenges.re/66>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.27 Example: a bug in Angband

An ancient rogue-like game from 1990's ¹³⁴ had a nice bug in the spirit of the "Road-side Picnic"¹³⁵ by Strugatsky brothers or "The Lost Room" TV series¹³⁶:

The frog-knows version was abundant of bugs. The funniest of them led to a cunning technique of cheating the game, that was called "mushroom farming". If there were more than a certain number (about five hundred) of objects in the labyrinth, the game would break, and many old things turned into objects thrown to the floor. Accordingly, the player went into the maze, he made such longitudinal grooves there (with a special spell), and walked along the grooves, creating mushrooms with another special spell. When there were a lot of mushrooms, the player put and took, put and took some useful item, and mushrooms one by one turned into this subject. After that, the player returned with hundreds of copies of the useful item.

(Misha "tiphareth" Verbitsky, <http://imperium.lenin.ru/CEBEP/arc/3/lightmusic/light.htm>)

And some information from usenet:

From: be...@uswest.com (George Bell)
 Subject: [Angband] Multiple artifact copies found (bug?)
 Date: Fri, 23 Jul 1993 15:55:08 GMT

Up to 2000 ft I found only 4 artifacts, now my house is littered with the suckers (FYI, most I've gotten from killing nasties, like Dracoliches and ↴ the like). Something really weird is happening now, as I found multiple copies of the same artifact! My half-elf ranger is down at 2400 ft on one level which is particularly nasty. There is a graveyard plus monsters surrounded by permanent rock and 2 or 3 other special monster rooms! I did so much slashing with my favorite weapon, Crisdurian, that I filled several rooms nearly to the brim with treasure (as usual, mostly junk).

Then, when I found a way into the big vault, I noticed some of the treasure had already been identified (in fact it looked strangely familiar!). Then ↴ I found *two* Short Swords named Sting (1d6) (+7,+8), and I just ran across a third copy! I have seen multiple copies of Gurthang on this level as well. Is there some limit on the number of items per level which I have exceeded? This sounds reasonable as all multiple copies I have seen come from this ↴ level.

I'm playing PC angband. Anybody else had this problem?

-George Bell

¹³⁴ [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Angband_\(video_game\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Angband_(video_game)), <http://rephial.org/>

¹³⁵ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Roadside_Picnic

¹³⁶ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Lost_Room

Help! I need a Rod of Restore Life Levels, if there is such a thing.
 ↴ These
 Graveyards are nasty (Black Reavers and some speed 2 wraith in particular).

(<https://groups.google.com/forum/#!original/rec.games.moria/jItmfrdGyL8/8csctQqA7PQJ>)

From: Ceri <cm...@andrew.cmu.edu>
 Subject: Re: [Angband] Multiple artifact copies found (bug?)
 Date: Fri, 23 Jul 1993 23:32:20 -0400

welcome to the mush bug. if there are more than 256 items
 on the floor, things start duplicating. learn to harness
 this power and you will win shortly :>

--Rick

(google groups)

From: nwe...@soda.berkeley.edu (Nicholas C. Weaver)
 Subject: Re: [Angband] Multiple artifact copies found (bug?)
 Date: 24 Jul 1993 18:18:05 GMT

In article <74348474...@unix1.andrew.cmu.edu> Ceri <cm...@andrew.cmu.edu> ↴
 ↴ writes:
 >welcome to the mush bug. if there are more than 256 items
 >on the floor, things start duplicating. learn to harness
 >this power and you will win shortly :>
 >
 >--Rick

QUestion on this. Is it only the first 256 items which get
 duplicated? What about the origional items? Etc ETc ETc...

Oh, for those who like to know about bugs, though, the -n option
 (start new character) has the following behavior:

(this is in version 2.4.Frog.knows on unix)

If you hit control-p, you keep your old stats.

You loose all record of artifacts founds and named monsters killed.

You loose all items you are carrying (they get turned into error in
 objid()s).

You loose your gold.

You KEEP all the stuff in your house.

If you kill something, and then quaff a potion of restore life

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

levels, you are back up to where you were before in EXPERIENCE POINTS!!

Gaining spells will not work right after this, unless you have a gain int item (for spellcasters) or gain wis item (for priests/palidans), ↵ ↴ in which case after performing the above, then take the item back on and off, you will be able to learn spells normally again.

This can be exploited, if you are a REAL H0ZER (like me), into getting multiple artifacts early on. Just get to a level where you can pound wormtongue into the ground, kill him, go up, drop your stuff in your house, buy a few potions of restore exp and high value spellbooks with your leftover gold, anband -n yourself back to what you were before, and repeat the process. Yes, you CAN kill wormtongue multiple times. :)

This also allows the creation of a human rogue with dunedain ↵ ↴ warrior starting stats.

Of course, such practices are evil, vile, and disgusting. I take ↵ ↴ no liability for the results of spreading this information. Yeah, it's ↵ ↴ another bug to go onto the pile.

--
Nicholas C. Weaver perpetual ensign guppy nwe...@soda.berkeley. ↵ ↴ edu
It is a tale, told by an idiot, full of sound and fury, .signifying ↵ ↴ nothing.

Since C evolved out of B, and a C+ is close to a B,
does that mean that C++ is a devolution of the language?

(<https://groups.google.com/forum/#!original/rec.games.moria/jItmfrdGyL8/FoQeiccewHAJ>)

[The whole thread.](#)

The author of these lines has found the version with the bug (2.4 fk)¹³⁷, and we can clearly see how the global arrays are declared:

```
/* Number of dungeon objects */
#define MAX_DUNGEON_OBJ 423

...
int16 sorted_objects[MAX_DUNGEON_OBJ];

/* Identified objects flags */ 
int8u object_ident[OBJECT_IDENT_SIZE];
int16 t_level[MAX_OBJ_LEVEL+1];
inven_type t_list[MAX_TALLOC];
```

¹³⁷ <http://rephial.org/release/2.4.fk>, <https://yurichev.com/mirrors/angband-2.4.fk.tar>

```
inven_type inventory[INVEN_ARRAY_SIZE];
```

Perhaps this is a reason. The MAX_DUNGEON_OBJ constant is too small. Perhaps, authors should use linked lists or other data structures, which are unlimited by size. But arrays are simpler to use.

Another example of buffer overflow over globally defined arrays: [3.31 on page 828](#).

1.28 Manipulating specific bit(s)

A lot of functions define their input arguments as flags in bit fields.

Of course, they could be substituted by a set of *bool*-typed variables, but it is not frugally.

1.28.1 Specific bit checking

x86

Win32 API example:

```
HANDLE fh;

fh=CreateFile ("file", GENERIC_WRITE | GENERIC_READ, ↴
    FILE_SHARE_READ, NULL, OPEN_ALWAYS, FILE_ATTRIBUTE_NORMAL, NULL);
```

We get (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.266: MSVC 2010

```
push    0
push    128           ; 00000080H
push    4
push    0
push    1
push    -1073741824   ; c0000000H
push    OFFSET $SG78813
call    DWORD PTR __imp__CreateFileA@28
mov     DWORD PTR _fh$[ebp], eax
```

Let's take a look in WinNT.h:

Listing 1.267: WinNT.h

```
#define GENERIC_READ          (0x80000000L)
#define GENERIC_WRITE          (0x40000000L)
#define GENERIC_EXECUTE         (0x20000000L)
#define GENERIC_ALL             (0x10000000L)
```

Everything is clear, `GENERIC_READ | GENERIC_WRITE` = `0x80000000 | 0x40000000` = `0xC0000000`, and that value is used as the second argument for the `CreateFile()`¹³⁸ function.

¹³⁸ [msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa363858\(VS.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa363858(VS.85).aspx)

How would CreateFile() check these flags?

If we look in KERNEL32.DLL in Windows XP SP3 x86, we'll find this fragment of code in CreateFileW:

Listing 1.268: KERNEL32.DLL (Windows XP SP3 x86)

```
.text:7C83D429    test    byte ptr [ebp+dwDesiredAccess+3], 40h
.text:7C83D42D    mov     [ebp+var_8], 1
.text:7C83D434    jz     short loc_7C83D417
.text:7C83D436    jmp     loc_7C810817
```

Here we see the TEST instruction, however it doesn't take the whole second argument, but only the most significant byte (ebp+dwDesiredAccess+3) and checks it for flag 0x40 (which implies the GENERIC_WRITE flag here).

TEST is basically the same instruction as AND, but without saving the result (recall the fact CMP is merely the same as SUB, but without saving the result ([1.12.4 on page 113](#))).

The logic of this code fragment is as follows:

```
if ((dwDesiredAccess&0x40000000) == 0) goto loc_7C83D417
```

If AND instruction leaves this bit, the ZF flag is to be cleared and the JZ conditional jump is not to be triggered. The conditional jump is triggered only if the 0x40000000 bit is absent in dwDesiredAccess variable —then the result of AND is 0, ZF is to be set and the conditional jump is to be triggered.

Let's try GCC 4.4.1 and Linux:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <fcntl.h>

void main()
{
    int handle;

    handle=open ("file", O_RDWR | O_CREAT);
}
```

We get:

Listing 1.269: GCC 4.4.1

```
main          public main
              proc near

var_20        = dword ptr -20h
var_1C        = dword ptr -1Ch
var_4         = dword ptr -4

              push    ebp
              mov     ebp, esp
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
        sub    esp, 20h
        mov    [esp+20h+var_1C], 42h
        mov    [esp+20h+var_20], offset aFile ; "file"
        call   _open
        mov    [esp+20h+var_4], eax
        leave
        retn
main      endp

```

If we take a look in the `open()` function in the `libc.so.6` library, it is only a syscall:

Listing 1.270: `open()` (`libc.so.6`)

```

.text:000BE69B    mov     edx, [esp+4+mode] ; mode
.text:000BE69F    mov     ecx, [esp+4+flags] ; flags
.text:000BE6A3    mov     ebx, [esp+4+filename] ; filename
.text:000BE6A7    mov     eax, 5
.text:000BE6AC    int     80h                 ; LINUX - sys_open

```

So, the bit fields for `open()` are apparently checked somewhere in the Linux kernel.

Of course, it is easy to download both Glibc and the Linux kernel source code, but we are interested in understanding the matter without it.

So, as of Linux 2.6, when the `sys_open` syscall is called, control eventually passes to `do_sys_open`, and from there—to the `do_filp_open()` function (it's located in the kernel source tree in `fs/namei.c`).

N.B. Aside from passing arguments via the stack, there is also a method of passing some of them via registers. This is also called fastcall ([6.1.3 on page 949](#)). This works faster since CPU does not need to access the stack in memory to read argument values. GCC has the option `regparm`¹³⁹, through which it's possible to set the number of arguments that can be passed via registers.

The Linux 2.6 kernel is compiled with `-mregparm=3` option [140 141](#).

What this means to us is that the first 3 arguments are to be passed via registers EAX, EDX and ECX, and the rest via the stack. Of course, if the number of arguments is less than 3, only part of registers set is to be used.

So, let's download Linux Kernel 2.6.31, compile it in Ubuntu: `make vmlinux`, open it in [IDA](#), and find the `do_filp_open()` function. At the beginning, we see (the comments are mine):

Listing 1.271: `do_filp_open()` (linux kernel 2.6.31)

```

do_filp_open    proc near
...
        push    ebp
        mov    ebp, esp
        push    edi

```

¹³⁹ohse.de/uwe/articles/gcc-attributes.html#func-regparm

¹⁴⁰kernelnewbies.org/Linux_2_6_20#head-042c62f290834eb1fe0a1942bbf5bb9a4accbc8f

¹⁴¹See also `arch/x86/include/asm/calling.h` file in kernel tree

```

push    esi
push    ebx
mov     ebx, ecx
add     ebx, 1
sub     esp, 98h
mov     esi, [ebp+arg_4] ; acc_mode (5th argument)
test    bl, 3
mov     [ebp+var_80], eax ; dfd (1th argument)
mov     [ebp+var_7C], edx ; pathname (2th argument)
mov     [ebp+var_78], ecx ; open_flag (3th argument)
jnz    short loc_C01EF684
mov     ebx, ecx          ; ebx <- open_flag

```

GCC saves the values of the first 3 arguments in the local stack. If that wasn't done, the compiler would not touch these registers, and that would be too tight environment for the compiler's [register allocator](#).

Let's find this fragment of code:

Listing 1.272: do_filp_open() (linux kernel 2.6.31)

```

loc_C01EF684:      ; CODE XREF: do_filp_open+4F
    test   bl, 40h        ; _O_CREAT
    jnz    loc_C01EF810
    mov    edi, ebx
    shr    edi, 11h
    xor    edi, 1
    and    edi, 1
    test   ebx, 10000h
    jz    short loc_C01EF6D3
    or     edi, 2

```

0x40—is what the `_O_CREAT` macro equals to. `open_flag` gets checked for the presence of the `0x40` bit, and if this bit is 1, the next JNZ instruction is triggered.

ARM

The `_O_CREAT` bit is checked differently in Linux kernel 3.8.0.

Listing 1.273: linux kernel 3.8.0

```

struct file *do_filp_open(int dfd, struct filename *pathname,
                         const struct open_flags *op)
{
...
    filp = path_openat(dfd, pathname, &nd, op, flags | LOOKUP_RCU);
...
}

static struct file *path_openat(int dfd, struct filename *pathname,
                               struct nameidata *nd, const struct open_flags *op, int ↴
                               flags)
{
...

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        error = do_last(nd, &path, file, op, &opened, pathname);
...
}

static int do_last(struct nameidata *nd, struct path *path,
                  struct file *file, const struct open_flags *op,
                  int *opened, struct filename *name)
{
...
    if (!(open_flag & O_CREAT)) {
...
        error = lookup_fast(nd, path, &inode);
...
    } else {
...
        error = complete_walk(nd);
    }
...
}

```

Here is how the kernel compiled for ARM mode looks in [IDA](#):

Listing 1.274: do_last() from vmlinux (IDA)

```

...
.text:C0169EA8      MOV      R9, R3 ; R3 - (4th argument) open_flag
...
.text:C0169ED4      LDR      R6, [R9] ; R6 - open_flag
...
.text:C0169F68      TST      R6, #0x40 ; jumptable C0169F00 default case
.text:C0169F6C      BNE      loc_C016A128
.text:C0169F70      LDR      R2, [R4,#0x10]
.text:C0169F74      ADD      R12, R4, #8
.text:C0169F78      LDR      R3, [R4,#0xC]
.text:C0169F7C      MOV      R0, R4
.text:C0169F80      STR      R12, [R11,#var_50]
.text:C0169F84      LDRB     R3, [R2,R3]
.text:C0169F88      MOV      R2, R8
.text:C0169F8C      CMP      R3, #0
.text:C0169F90      ORRNE   R1, R1, #3
.text:C0169F94      STRNE   R1, [R4,#0x24]
.text:C0169F98      ANDS    R3, R6, #0x200000
.text:C0169F9C      MOV      R1, R12
.text:C0169FA0      LDRNE   R3, [R4,#0x24]
.text:C0169FA4      ANDNE   R3, R3, #1
.text:C0169FA8      EORNE   R3, R3, #1
.text:C0169FAC      STR      R3, [R11,#var_54]
.text:C0169FB0      SUB     R3, R11, #-var_38
.text:C0169FB4      BL      lookup_fast
...
.text:C016A128 loc_C016A128 ; CODE XREF: do_last.isra.14+DC
.text:C016A128      MOV      R0, R4
.text:C016A12C      BL      complete_walk

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

...

TST is analogous to the TEST instruction in x86. We can “spot” visually this code fragment by the fact the `lookup_fast()` is to be executed in one case and `complete_walk()` in the other. This corresponds to the source code of the `do_last()` function. The `_O_CREAT` macro equals to `0x40` here too.

1.28.2 Setting and clearing specific bits

For example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

#define IS_SET(flag, bit)      ((flag) & (bit))
#define SET_BIT(var, bit)      ((var) |= (bit))
#define REMOVE_BIT(var, bit)   ((var) &= ~(bit))

int f(int a)
{
    int rt=a;

    SET_BIT (rt, 0x4000);
    REMOVE_BIT (rt, 0x200);

    return rt;
}

int main()
{
    f(0x12340678);
}
```

x86

Non-optimizing MSVC

We get (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.275: MSVC 2010

```
_rt$ = -4           ; size = 4
_a$ = 8            ; size = 4
_f  PROC
    push  ebp
    mov   ebp, esp
    push  ecx
    mov   eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    mov   DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], eax
    mov   ecx, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    or    ecx, 16384          ; 00004000H
    mov   DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], ecx
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    and    edx, -513           ; fffffdffH
    mov    DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], edx
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f    ENDP
```

The OR instruction sets one bit into a register while ignoring other 1 bits.

AND resets one bit. It can be said that AND just copies all bits except one. Indeed, in the second AND operand only the bits that need to be saved are set, just the one do not want to copy is not (which is 0 in the bitmask). It is the easier way to memorize the logic.

OllyDbg

Let's try this example in OllyDbg.

First, let's see the binary form of the constants we are going to use:

`0x200 (0b00000000000000001000000000)` (i.e., the 10th bit (counting from 1st)).

Inverted 0x200 is 0xFFFFDFF (0b11111111111111110111111111).

`0x4000 (0b00000000000000001000000000000000) (i.e., the 15th bit).`

The input value is: 0x12340678 (0b10010001101000000011001111000). We see how it's loaded:

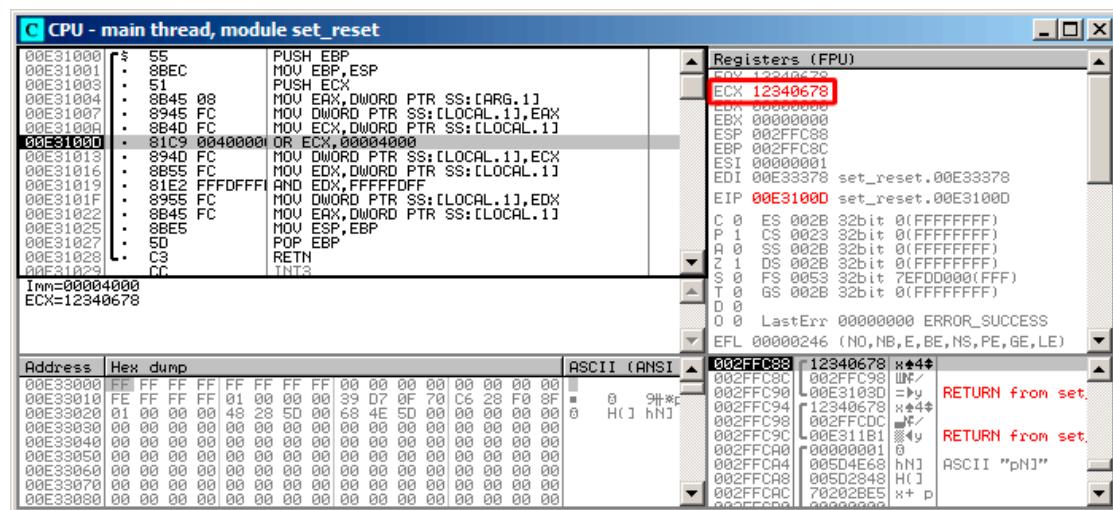


Figure 1.94: OllyDbg: value is loaded into ECX

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

OR got executed:

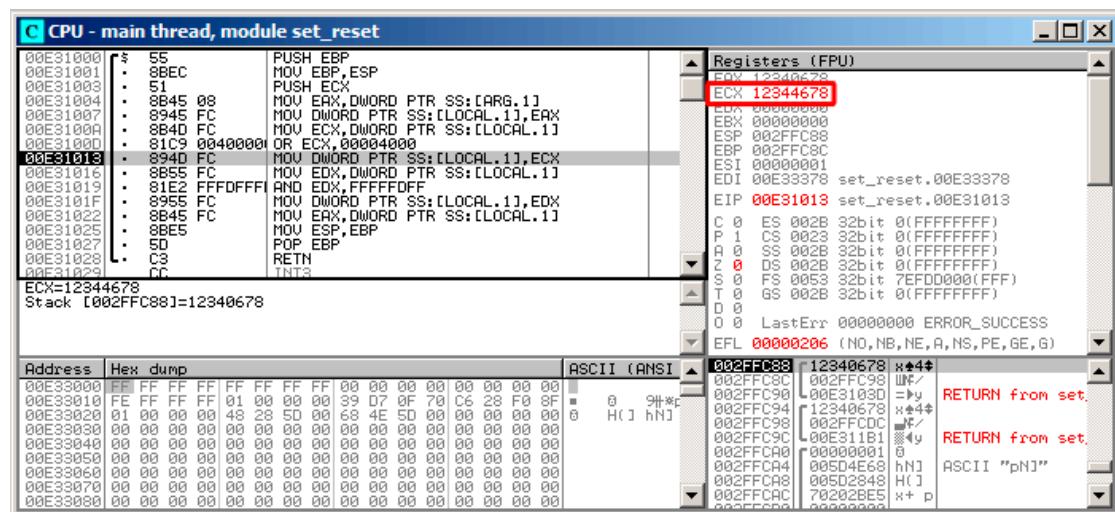


Figure 1.95: OllyDbg: OR executed

15th bit is set: 0x12344678 (0b10010001101000100011001111000).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The value is reloaded again (because the compiler is not in optimizing mode):

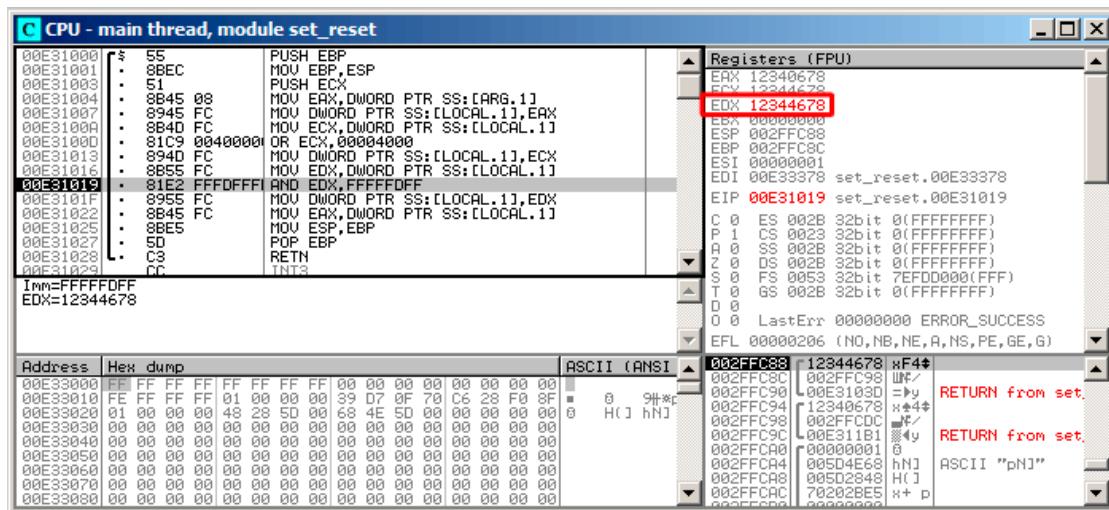


Figure 1.96: OllyDbg: value has been reloaded into EDX

AND got executed:

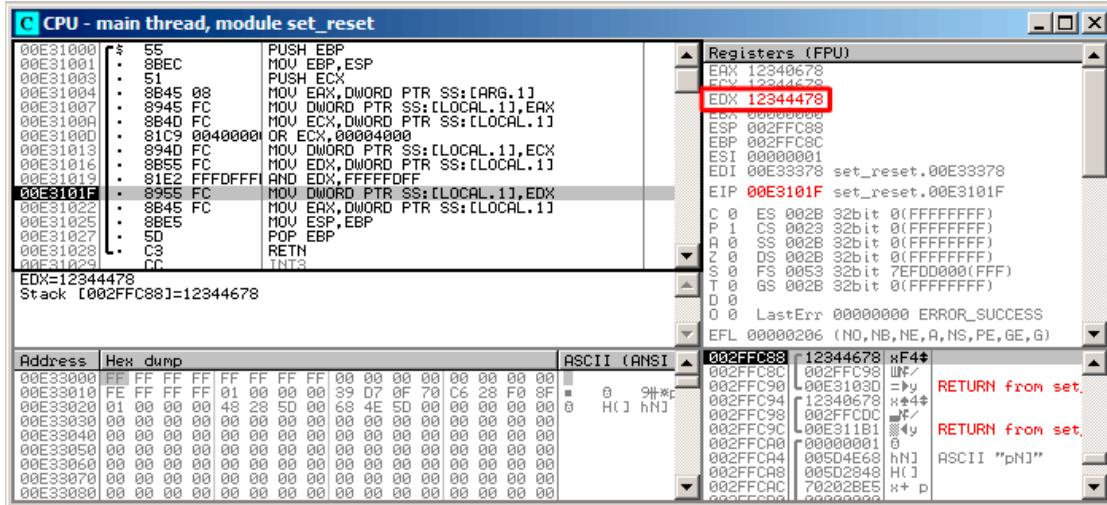


Figure 1.97: OllyDbg: AND executed

The 10th bit has been cleared (or, in other words, all bits were left except the 10th) and the final value now is **0x12344478** (**0b10010001101000100010001111000**).

Optimizing MSVC

If we compile it in MSVC with optimization turned on (/Ox), the code is even shorter:

Listing 1.276: Optimizing MSVC

```

_a$ = 8           ; size = 4
_f    PROC
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    and    eax, -513      ; ffffffdfH
    or     eax, 16384     ; 00004000H
    ret    0
_f    ENDP

```

Non-optimizing GCC

Let's try GCC 4.4.1 without optimization:

Listing 1.277: Non-optimizing GCC

```

f          public f
          proc near

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

var_4      = dword ptr -4
arg_0      = dword ptr 8

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 10h
    mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
    mov     [ebp+var_4], eax
    or      [ebp+var_4], 4000h
    and    [ebp+var_4], 0FFFFFDFFh
    mov     eax, [ebp+var_4]
    leave
    retn
f          endp

```

There is a redundant code present, however, it is shorter than the MSVC version without optimization.

Now let's try GCC with optimization turned on -O3:

Optimizing GCC

Listing 1.278: Optimizing GCC

```

public f
f          proc near

arg_0      = dword ptr 8

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
    pop    ebp
    or     ah, 40h
    and    ah, 0FDh
    retn
f          endp

```

That's shorter. It is worth noting the compiler works with the EAX register part via the AH register—that is the EAX register part from the 8th to the 15th bits included.

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RAX ^{x64}							
EAX							
AX							
AH AL							

N.B. The 16-bit CPU 8086 accumulator was named AX and consisted of two 8-bit halves—AL (lower byte) and AH (higher byte). In 80386 almost all registers were extended to 32-bit, the accumulator was named EAX, but for the sake of compatibility, its *older parts* may be still accessed as AX/AH/AL.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Since all x86 CPUs are successors of the 16-bit 8086 CPU, these *older* 16-bit opcodes are shorter than the newer 32-bit ones. That's why the `or ah, 40h` instruction occupies only 3 bytes. It would be more logical way to emit here `or eax, 04000h` but that is 5 bytes, or even 6 (in case the register in the first operand is not EAX).

Optimizing GCC and regparm

It would be even shorter if to turn on the `-O3` optimization flag and also set `regparm=3`.

Listing 1.279: Optimizing GCC

```
f          public f
          proc near
          push    ebp
          or      ah, 40h
          mov     ebp, esp
          and     ah, 0FDh
          pop    ebp
          retn
f          endp
```

Indeed, the first argument is already loaded in EAX, so it is possible to work with it in-place. It is worth noting that both the function prologue (`push ebp / mov ebp,esp`) and epilogue (`pop ebp`) can easily be omitted here, but GCC probably is not good enough to do such code size optimizations. However, such short functions are better to be *inlined functions* ([3.14 on page 649](#)).

ARM + Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 1.280: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

02 0C C0 E3	BIC	R0, R0, #0x200
01 09 80 E3	ORR	R0, R0, #0x4000
1E FF 2F E1	BX	LR

`BIC` (*Bitwise bit Clear*) is an instruction for clearing specific bits. This is just like the `AND` instruction, but with inverted operand. I.e., it's analogous to a `NOT + AND` instruction pair.

`ORR` is “logical or”, analogous to `OR` in x86.

So far it's easy.

ARM + Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

Listing 1.281: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

01 21 89 03	MOVS	R1, 0x4000
08 43	ORRS	R0, R1
49 11	ASRS	R1, R1, #5 ; generate 0x200 and place to R1
88 43	BICS	R0, R1
70 47	BX	LR

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Seems like Keil decided that the code in Thumb mode, making 0x200 from 0x4000, is more compact than the code for writing 0x200 to an arbitrary register.

So that is why, with the help of ASRS (arithmetic shift right), this value is calculated as $0x4000 \gg 5$.

ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Listing 1.282: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

42 0C C0 E3	BIC	R0, R0, #0x4200
01 09 80 E3	ORR	R0, R0, #0x4000
1E FF 2F E1	BX	LR

The code that was generated by LLVM, in source code form could be something like this:

```
REMOVE_BIT (rt, 0x4200);
SET_BIT (rt, 0x4000);
```

And it does exactly what we need. But why 0x4200? Perhaps that an artifact from LLVM's optimizer ¹⁴².

Probably a compiler's optimizer error, but the generated code works correctly anyway.

You can read more about compiler anomalies here ([11.4 on page 1278](#)).

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) for Thumb mode generates the same code.

ARM: more about the BIC instruction

Let's rework the example slightly:

```
int f(int a)
{
    int rt=a;

    REMOVE_BIT (rt, 0x1234);

    return rt;
};
```

Then the optimizing Keil 5.03 in ARM mode does:

```
f PROC
    BIC      r0,r0,#0x1000
    BIC      r0,r0,#0x234
    BX       lr
ENDP
```

¹⁴²It was LLVM build 2410.2.00 bundled with Apple Xcode 4.6.3

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

There are two BIC instructions, i.e., bits 0x1234 are cleared in two passes.

This is because it's not possible to encode 0x1234 in a BIC instruction, but it's possible to encode 0x1000 and 0x234.

ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Optimizing GCC compiling for ARM64 can use the AND instruction instead of BIC:

Listing 1.283: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
f:
    and    w0, w0, -513      ; 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFDFF
    orr    w0, w0, 16384     ; 0x4000
    ret
```

ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

Non-optimizing GCC generates more redundant code, but works just like optimized:

Listing 1.284: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```
f:
    sub   sp, sp, #32
    str   w0, [sp,12]
    ldr   w0, [sp,12]
    str   w0, [sp,28]
    ldr   w0, [sp,28]
    orr   w0, w0, 16384    ; 0x4000
    str   w0, [sp,28]
    ldr   w0, [sp,28]
    and   w0, w0, -513      ; 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFDFF
    str   w0, [sp,28]
    ldr   w0, [sp,28]
    add   sp, sp, 32
    ret
```

MIPS

Listing 1.285: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
f:
; $a0=a
        ori    $a0, 0x4000
; $a0=a|0x4000
        li     $v0, 0xFFFFFDFF
        jr     $ra
        and   $v0, $a0, $v0
; at finish: $v0 = $a0 & $v0 = a|0x4000 & 0xFFFFFDFF
```

ORI is, of course, the OR operation. “I” in the instruction name means that the value is embedded in the machine code.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

But after that we have AND. There is no way to use ANDI because it's not possible to embed the 0xFFFFFDFF number in a single instruction, so the compiler has to load 0xFFFFFDFF into register \$V0 first and then generates AND which takes all its values from registers.

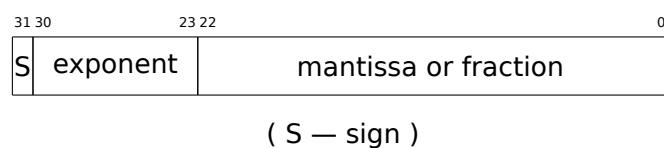
1.28.3 Shifts

Bit shifts in C/C++ are implemented using `<<` and `>>` operators. The x86 ISA has the SHL (SHift Left) and SHR (SHift Right) instructions for this. Shift instructions are often used in division and multiplications by powers of two: 2^n (e.g., 1, 2, 4, 8, etc.): [1.24.1 on page 268](#), [1.24.2 on page 274](#).

Shifting operations are also so important because they are often used for specific bit isolation or for constructing a value of several scattered bits.

1.28.4 Setting and clearing specific bits: FPU example

Here is how bits are located in the *float* type in IEEE 754 form:



The sign of number is in the **MSB**¹⁴³. Will it be possible to change the sign of a floating point number without any FPU instructions?

```
#include <stdio.h>

float my_abs (float i)
{
    unsigned int tmp=(*(unsigned int*)&i) & 0xFFFFFFFF;
    return *(float*)&tmp;
};

float set_sign (float i)
{
    unsigned int tmp=(*(unsigned int*)&i) | 0x80000000;
    return *(float*)&tmp;
};

float negate (float i)
{
    unsigned int tmp=(*(unsigned int*)&i) ^ 0x80000000;
    return *(float*)&tmp;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("my_abs():\n");
}
```

¹⁴³Most Significant Bit

```

printf ("%f\n", my_abs (123.456));
printf ("%f\n", my_abs (-456.123));
printf ("set_sign():\n");
printf ("%f\n", set_sign (123.456));
printf ("%f\n", set_sign (-456.123));
printf ("negate():\n");
printf ("%f\n", negate (123.456));
printf ("%f\n", negate (-456.123));
};

```

We need this trickery in C/C++ to copy to/from *float* value without actual conversion. So there are three functions: `my_abs()` resets **MSB**; `set_sign()` sets **MSB** and `negate()` flips it.

XOR can be used to flip a bit: [2.6 on page 582](#).

x86

The code is pretty straightforward:

Listing 1.286: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```

_tmp$ = 8
_i$ = 8
_my_abs PROC
    and    DWORD PTR _i$[esp-4], 2147483647 ; 7fffffffH
    fld    DWORD PTR _tmp$[esp-4]
    ret    0
_my_abs ENDP

_tmp$ = 8
_i$ = 8
_set_sign PROC
    or     DWORD PTR _i$[esp-4], -2147483648 ; 80000000H
    fld    DWORD PTR _tmp$[esp-4]
    ret    0
_set_sign ENDP

_tmp$ = 8
_i$ = 8
_negate PROC
    xor   DWORD PTR _i$[esp-4], -2147483648 ; 80000000H
    fld    DWORD PTR _tmp$[esp-4]
    ret    0
_negate ENDP

```

An input value of type *float* is taken from the stack, but treated as an integer value. AND and OR reset and set the desired bit. XOR flips it.

Finally, the modified value is loaded into ST0, because floating-point numbers are returned in this register.

Now let's try optimizing MSVC 2012 for x64:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 1.287: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

tmp$ = 8
i$ = 8
my_abs PROC
    movss  DWORD PTR [rsp+8], xmm0
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR i$[rsp]
    btr     eax, 31
    mov     DWORD PTR tmp$[rsp], eax
    movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$[rsp]
    ret     0
my_abs ENDP
_TEXT ENDS

tmp$ = 8
i$ = 8
set_sign PROC
    movss  DWORD PTR [rsp+8], xmm0
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR i$[rsp]
    bts     eax, 31
    mov     DWORD PTR tmp$[rsp], eax
    movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$[rsp]
    ret     0
set_sign ENDP

tmp$ = 8
i$ = 8
negate PROC
    movss  DWORD PTR [rsp+8], xmm0
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR i$[rsp]
    btc     eax, 31
    mov     DWORD PTR tmp$[rsp], eax
    movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR tmp$[rsp]
    ret     0
negate ENDP

```

The input value is passed in XMM0, then it is copied into the local stack and then we see some instructions that are new to us: BTR, BTS, BTC.

These instructions are used for resetting (BTR), setting (BTS) and inverting (or complementing: BTC) specific bits. The 31st bit is **MSB**, counting from 0.

Finally, the result is copied into XMM0, because floating point values are returned through XMM0 in Win64 environment.

MIPS

GCC 4.4.5 for MIPS does mostly the same:

Listing 1.288: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

my_abs:
; move from coprocessor 1:
    mfc1   $v1, $f12

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        li      $v0, 0x7FFFFFFF
; $v0=0x7FFFFFFF
; do AND:
        and    $v0, $v1
; move to coprocessor 1:
        mtc1   $v0, $f0
; return
        jr     $ra
        or     $at, $zero ; branch delay slot

set_sign:
; move from coprocessor 1:
        mfcl   $v0, $f12
        lui    $v1, 0x8000
; $v1=0x80000000
; do OR:
        or     $v0, $v1, $v0
; move to coprocessor 1:
        mtc1   $v0, $f0
; return
        jr     $ra
        or     $at, $zero ; branch delay slot

negate:
; move from coprocessor 1:
        mfcl   $v0, $f12
        lui    $v1, 0x8000
; $v1=0x80000000
; do XOR:
        xor    $v0, $v1, $v0
; move to coprocessor 1:
        mtc1   $v0, $f0
; return
        jr     $ra
        or     $at, $zero ; branch delay slot

```

One single LUI instruction is used to load 0x80000000 into a register, because LUI is clearing the low 16 bits and these are zeros in the constant, so one LUI without subsequent ORI is enough.

ARM

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 1.289: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

my_abs PROC
; clear bit:
    BIC    r0,r0,#0x80000000
    BX    lr
ENDP

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

set_sign PROC
; do OR:
    ORR      r0,r0,#0x80000000
    BX      lr
    ENDP

negate PROC
; do XOR:
    EOR      r0,r0,#0x80000000
    BX      lr
    ENDP

```

So far so good.

ARM has the BIC instruction, which explicitly clears specific bit(s). EOR is the ARM instruction name for XOR (“Exclusive OR”).

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

Listing 1.290: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

my_abs PROC
    LSLS      r0,r0,#1
; r0=i<<1
    LSRS      r0,r0,#1
; r0=(i<<1)>>1
    BX      lr
    ENDP

set_sign PROC
    MOVS      r1,#1
; r1=1
    LSLS      r1,r1,#31
; r1=1<<31=0x80000000
    ORRS      r0,r0,r1
; r0=r0 | 0x80000000
    BX      lr
    ENDP

negate PROC
    MOVS      r1,#1
; r1=1
    LSLS      r1,r1,#31
; r1=1<<31=0x80000000
    EORS      r0,r0,r1
; r0=r0 ^ 0x80000000
    BX      lr
    ENDP

```

Thumb mode in ARM offers 16-bit instructions and not much data can be encoded in them, so here a MOVS/LSLS instruction pair is used for forming the 0x80000000 constant. It works like this: $1 \ll 31 = 0x80000000$.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The code of `my_abs` is weird and it effectively works like this expression: $(i \ll 1) \gg 1$. This statement looks meaningless. But nevertheless, when `input << 1` is executed, the **MSB** (sign bit) is just dropped. When the subsequent `result >> 1` statement is executed, all bits are now in their own places, but **MSB** is zero, because all “new” bits appearing from the shift operations are always zeros. That is how the LSLS/LSRS instruction pair clears **MSB**.

Optimizing GCC 4.6.3 (Raspberry Pi, ARM mode)

Listing 1.291: Optimizing GCC 4.6.3 for Raspberry Pi (ARM mode)

```

my_abs
; copy from S0 to R2:
        FMRS    R2, S0
; clear bit:
        BIC     R3, R2, #0x80000000
; copy from R3 to S0:
        FMSR    S0, R3
        BX      LR

set_sign
; copy from S0 to R2:
        FMRS    R2, S0
; do OR:
        ORR     R3, R2, #0x80000000
; copy from R3 to S0:
        FMSR    S0, R3
        BX      LR

negate
; copy from S0 to R2:
        FMRS    R2, S0
; do ADD:
        ADD     R3, R2, #0x80000000
; copy from R3 to S0:
        FMSR    S0, R3
        BX      LR

```

Let's run Raspberry Pi Linux in QEMU and it emulates an ARM FPU, so S-registers are used here for floating point numbers instead of R-registers.

The FMRS instruction copies data from **GPR** to the FPU and back.

`my_abs()` and `set_sign()` looks as expected, but `negate()`? Why is there ADD instead of XOR?

It's hard to believe, but the instruction ADD register, `0x80000000` works just like XOR register, `0x80000000`. First of all, what's our goal? The goal is to flip the **MSB**, so let's forget about the XOR operation. From school-level mathematics we may recall that adding values like 1000 to other values never affects the last 3 digits. For example: $1234567 + 10000 = 1244567$ (last 4 digits are never affected).

But here we operate in binary base and 0x80000000 is 0b10000000000000000000000000000000, i.e., only the highest bit is set.

Adding 0x80000000 to any value never affects the lowest 31 bits, but affects only the [MSB](#). Adding 1 to 0 is resulting in 1.

Adding 1 to 1 is resulting in 0b10 in binary form, but the 32th bit (counting from zero) gets dropped, because our registers are 32 bit wide, so the result is 0. That's why XOR can be replaced by ADD here.

It's hard to say why GCC decided to do this, but it works correctly.

1.28.5 Counting bits set to 1

Here is a simple example of a function that calculates the number of bits set in the input value.

This operation is also called “population count”^{[144](#)}.

```
#include <stdio.h>

#define IS_SET(flag, bit)      ((flag) & (bit))

int f(unsigned int a)
{
    int i;
    int rt=0;

    for (i=0; i<32; i++)
        if (IS_SET (a, 1<<i))
            rt++;

    return rt;
};

int main()
{
    f(0x12345678); // test
};
```

In this loop, the iteration count value i is counting from 0 to 31, so the $1 \ll i$ statement is counting from 1 to 0x80000000. Describing this operation in natural language, we would say *shift 1 by n bits left*. In other words, $1 \ll i$ statement consequently produces all possible bit positions in a 32-bit number. The freed bit at right is always cleared.

Here is a table of all possible $1 \ll i$ for $i = 0 \dots 31$:

¹⁴⁴modern x86 CPUs (supporting SSE4) even have a POPCNT instruction for it

C/C++ expression	Power of two	Decimal form	Hexadecimal form
$1 \ll 0$	2^0	1	1
$1 \ll 1$	2^1	2	2
$1 \ll 2$	2^2	4	4
$1 \ll 3$	2^3	8	8
$1 \ll 4$	2^4	16	0x10
$1 \ll 5$	2^5	32	0x20
$1 \ll 6$	2^6	64	0x40
$1 \ll 7$	2^7	128	0x80
$1 \ll 8$	2^8	256	0x100
$1 \ll 9$	2^9	512	0x200
$1 \ll 10$	2^{10}	1024	0x400
$1 \ll 11$	2^{11}	2048	0x800
$1 \ll 12$	2^{12}	4096	0x1000
$1 \ll 13$	2^{13}	8192	0x2000
$1 \ll 14$	2^{14}	16384	0x4000
$1 \ll 15$	2^{15}	32768	0x8000
$1 \ll 16$	2^{16}	65536	0x10000
$1 \ll 17$	2^{17}	131072	0x20000
$1 \ll 18$	2^{18}	262144	0x40000
$1 \ll 19$	2^{19}	524288	0x80000
$1 \ll 20$	2^{20}	1048576	0x100000
$1 \ll 21$	2^{21}	2097152	0x200000
$1 \ll 22$	2^{22}	4194304	0x400000
$1 \ll 23$	2^{23}	8388608	0x800000
$1 \ll 24$	2^{24}	16777216	0x1000000
$1 \ll 25$	2^{25}	33554432	0x2000000
$1 \ll 26$	2^{26}	67108864	0x4000000
$1 \ll 27$	2^{27}	134217728	0x8000000
$1 \ll 28$	2^{28}	268435456	0x10000000
$1 \ll 29$	2^{29}	536870912	0x20000000
$1 \ll 30$	2^{30}	1073741824	0x40000000
$1 \ll 31$	2^{31}	2147483648	0x80000000

These constant numbers (bit masks) very often appear in code and a practicing reverse engineer must be able to spot them quickly.

Decimal numbers below 65536 and hexadecimal ones are very easy to memorize. While decimal numbers above 65536 are, probably, not worth memorizing.

These constants are very often used for mapping flags to specific bits. For example, here is excerpt from `ssl_private.h` from Apache 2.4.6 source code:

```
/** 
 * Define the SSL options
 */
#define SSL_OPT_NONE          (0)
#define SSL_OPT_RELSET         (1<<0)
#define SSL_OPT_STDENVARS      (1<<1)
#define SSL_OPT_EXPORTCERTDATA (1<<3)
#define SSL_OPT_FAKEBASICAUTH  (1<<4)
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
#define SSL_OPT_STRICTREQUIRE (1<<5)
#define SSL_OPT_OPTRENEGOTIATE (1<<6)
#define SSL_OPT_LEGACYDNFORMAT (1<<7)
```

Let's get back to our example.

The IS_SET macro checks bit presence in *a*.

The IS_SET macro is in fact the logical AND operation (*AND*) and it returns 0 if the specific bit is absent there, or the bit mask, if the bit is present. The *if()* operator in C/C++ triggers if the expression in it is not zero, it might be even 123456, that is why it always works correctly.

x86

MSVC

Let's compile (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.292: MSVC 2010

```
_rt$ = -8           ; size = 4
_i$ = -4           ; size = 4
_a$ = 8            ; size = 4
_f PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 8
    mov     DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], 0
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
    jmp     SHORT $LN4@f
$LN3@f:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]   ; increment of i
    add     eax, 1
    mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], eax
$LN4@f:
    cmp     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 32   ; 00000020H
    jge     SHORT $LN2@f           ; loop finished?
    mov     edx, 1
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
    shl     edx, cl
    and     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    je      SHORT $LN1@f           ; result of AND instruction was 0?
                                         ; then skip next instructions
                                         ; no, not zero
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    add     eax, 1
    mov     DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], eax
$LN1@f:
    jmp     SHORT $LN3@f
$LN2@f:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
_f    ret    0  
      ENDP
```

OllyDbg

Let's load this example into OllyDbg. Let the input value be 0x12345678.

For $i = 1$, we see how i is loaded into ECX:

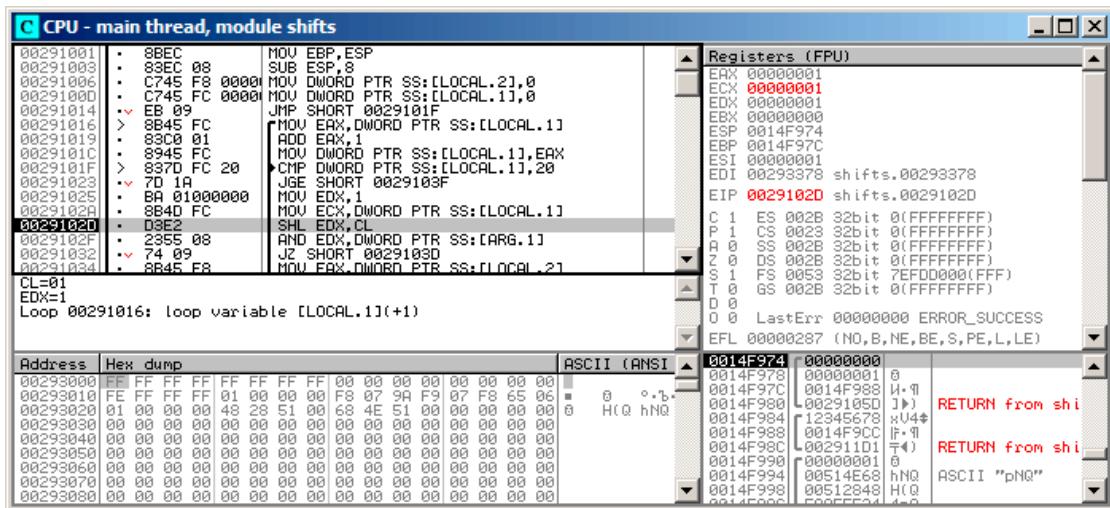


Figure 1.98: OllyDbg: $i = 1$, i is loaded into ECX

EDX is 1. SHL is to be executed now.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

SHL has been executed:

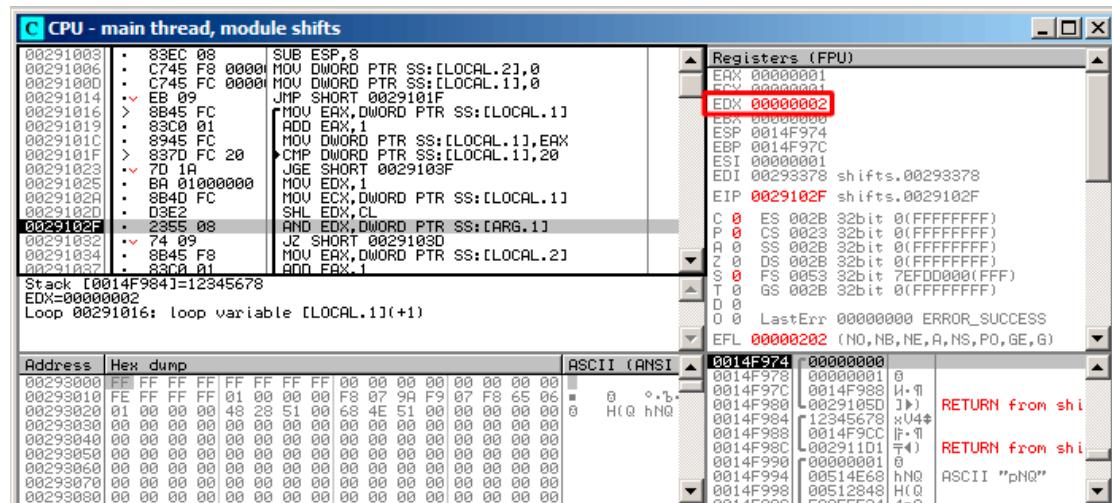


Figure 1.99: OllyDbg: $i = 1$, $EDX = 1 \ll 1 = 2$

EDX contain $1 \ll 1$ (or 2). This is a bit mask.

AND sets ZF to 1, which implies that the input value (0x12345678) ANDed with 2 results in 0:

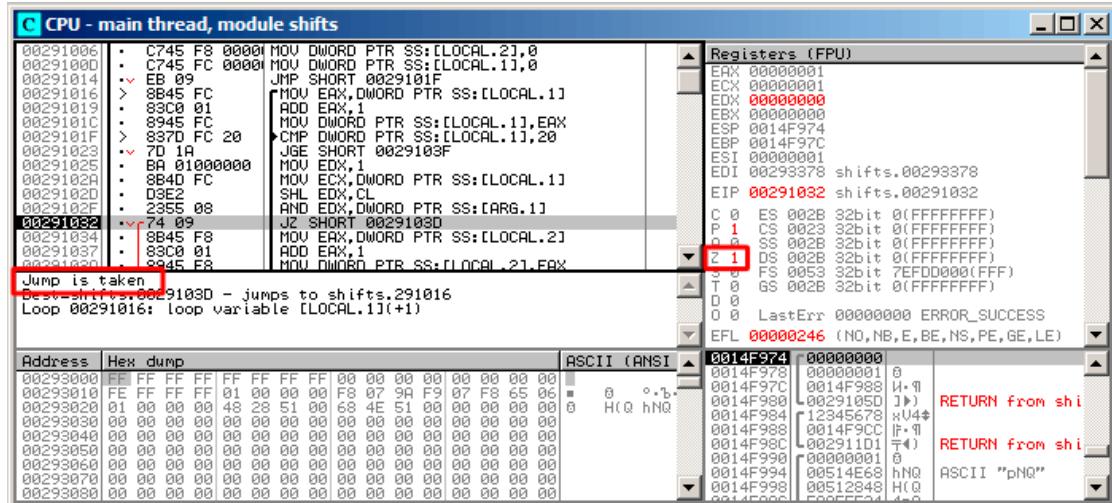


Figure 1.100: OllyDbg: $i = 1$, is there that bit in the input value? No. ($ZF = 1$)

So, there is no corresponding bit in the input value.

The piece of code, which **increments** the counter is not to be executed: the JZ instruction *bypassing* it.

Let's trace a bit further and i is now 4. SHL is to be executed now:

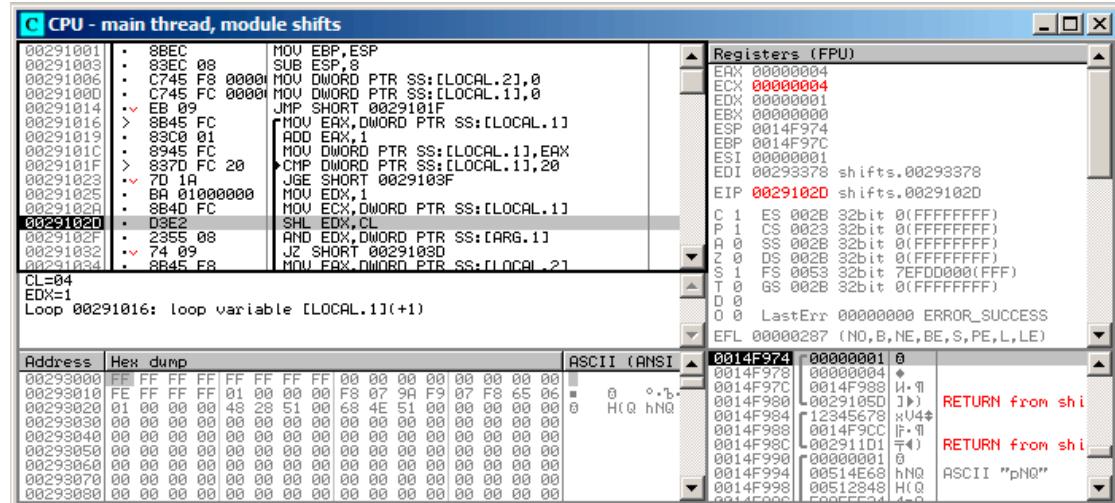


Figure 1.101: OllyDbg: $i = 4$, i is loaded into ECX

$EDX = 1 \ll 4$ (or $0x10$ or 16):

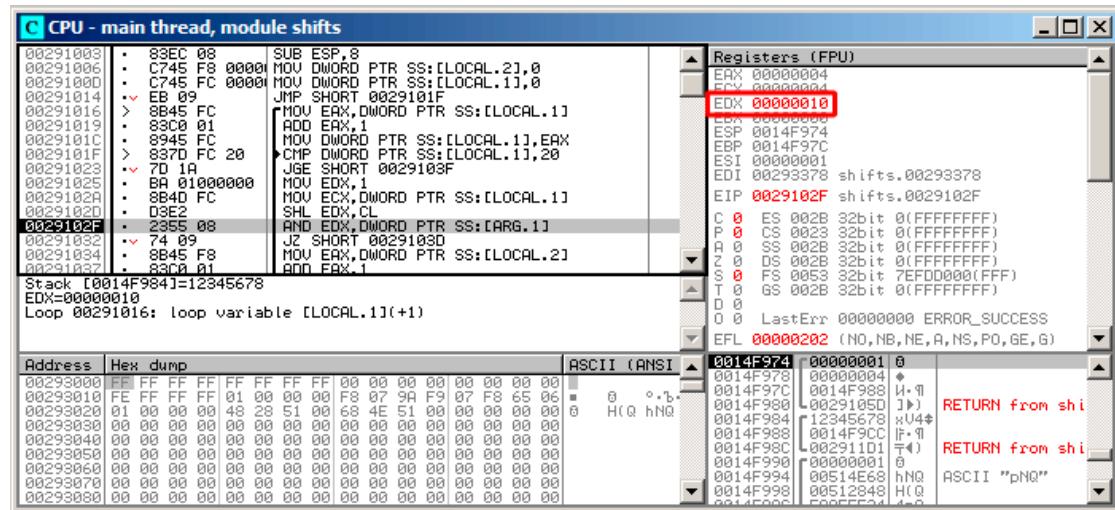


Figure 1.102: OllyDbg: $i = 4$, $EDX = 1 \ll 4 = 0x10$

This is another bit mask.

AND is executed:

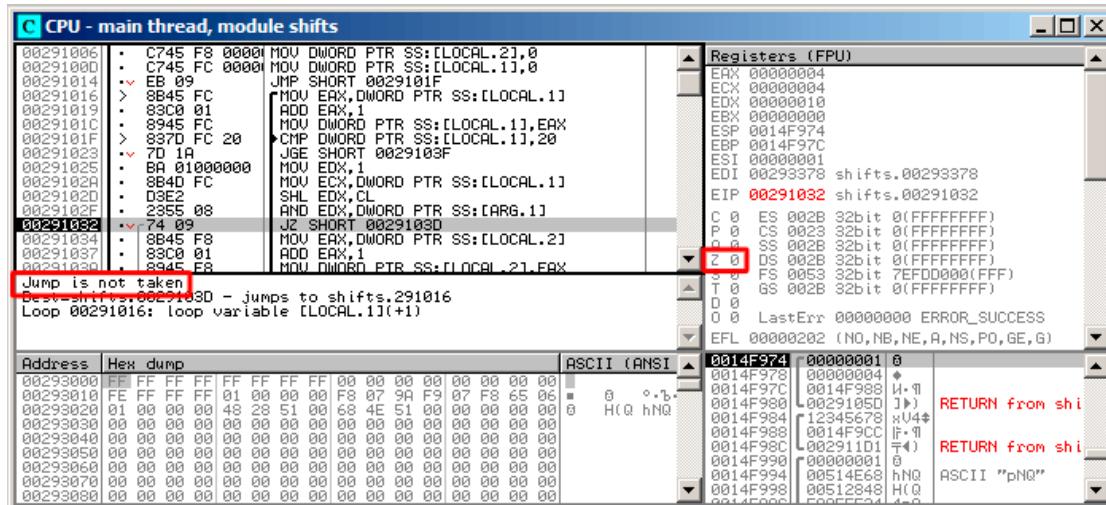


Figure 1.103: OllyDbg: $i = 4$, is there that bit in the input value? Yes. ($ZF = 0$)

ZF is 0 because this bit is present in the input value.

Indeed, $0x12345678 \& 0x10 = 0x10$.

This bit counts: the jump is not triggering and the bit counter [incrementing](#).

The function returns 13. This is total number of bits set in $0x12345678$.

GCC

Let's compile it in GCC 4.4.1:

Listing 1.293: GCC 4.4.1

```

public f
f          proc near

rt         = dword ptr -0Ch
i          = dword ptr -8
arg_0      = dword ptr  8

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
push    ebx
sub    esp, 10h
mov     [ebp+rt], 0
mov     [ebp+i], 0
jmp     short loc_80483EF

loc_80483D0:
        mov     eax, [ebp+i]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        mov    edx, 1
        mov    ebx, edx
        mov    ecx, eax
        shl    ebx, cl
        mov    eax, ebx
        and    eax, [ebp+arg_0]
        test   eax, eax
        jz     short loc_80483EB
        add    [ebp+rt], 1
loc_80483EB:
        add    [ebp+i], 1
loc_80483EF:
        cmp    [ebp+i], 1Fh
        jle    short loc_80483D0
        mov    eax, [ebp+rt]
        add    esp, 10h
        pop    ebx
        pop    ebp
        retn
f
        endp

```

x64

Let's modify the example slightly to extend it to 64-bit:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

#define IS_SET(flag, bit)      ((flag) & (bit))

int f(uint64_t a)
{
    uint64_t i;
    int rt=0;

    for (i=0; i<64; i++)
        if (IS_SET (a, 1ULL<<i))
            rt++;

    return rt;
}

```

Non-optimizing GCC 4.8.2

So far so easy.

Listing 1.294: Non-optimizing GCC 4.8.2

```

f:
    push    rbp
    mov     rbp, rsp

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    QWORD PTR [rbp-24], rdi ; a
    mov    DWORD PTR [rbp-12], 0    ; rt=0
    mov    QWORD PTR [rbp-8], 0     ; i=0
    jmp    .L2

.L4:
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8]
    mov    rdx, QWORD PTR [rbp-24]
; RAX = i, RDX = a
    mov    ecx, eax
; ECX = i
    shr    rdx, cl
; RDX = RDX>>CL = a>>i
    mov    rax, rdx
; RAX = RDX = a>>i
    and    eax, 1
; EAX = EAX&1 = (a>>i)&1
    test   rax, rax
; the last bit is zero?
; skip the next ADD instruction, if it was so.
    je     .L3
    add    DWORD PTR [rbp-12], 1    ; rt++
.L3:
    add    QWORD PTR [rbp-8], 1     ; i++
.L2:
    cmp    QWORD PTR [rbp-8], 63    ; i<63?
    jbe    .L4                    ; jump to the loop body begin, if so
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-12] ; return rt
    pop    rbp
    ret

```

Optimizing GCC 4.8.2

Listing 1.295: Optimizing GCC 4.8.2

```

1 f:
2     xor    eax, eax      ; rt variable will be in EAX register
3     xor    ecx, ecx      ; i variable will be in ECX register
4 .L3:
5     mov    rsi, rdi       ; load input value
6     lea    edx, [rax+1]   ; EDX=EAX+1
7 ; EDX here is a new version of rt,
8 ; which will be written into rt variable, if the last bit is 1
9     shr    rsi, cl        ; RSI=RSI>>CL
10    and   esi, 1          ; ESI=ESI&1
11 ; the last bit is 1? If so, write new version of rt into EAX
12    cmovne eax, edx
13    add    rcx, 1          ; RCX++
14    cmp    rcx, 64
15    jne    .L3
16    rep    ret             ; AKA fatret

```

This code is terser, but has a quirk.

In all examples that we see so far, we were incrementing the “rt” value after comparing a specific bit, but the code here increments “rt” before (line 6), writing the new value into register EDX. Thus, if the last bit is 1, the CMOVNE¹⁴⁵ instruction (which is a synonym for CMOVNZ¹⁴⁶) *commits* the new value of “rt” by moving EDX (“proposed rt value”) into EAX (“current rt” to be returned at the end).

Hence, the incrementing is performed at each step of loop, i.e., 64 times, without any relation to the input value.

The advantage of this code is that it contain only one conditional jump (at the end of the loop) instead of two jumps (skipping the “rt” value increment and at the end of loop). And that might work faster on the modern CPUs with branch predictors: [2.10.1 on page 589](#).

The last instruction is REP RET (opcode F3 C3) which is also called FATRET by MSVC. This is somewhat optimized version of RET, which is recommended by AMD to be placed at the end of function, if RET goes right after conditional jump: [*Software Optimization Guide for AMD Family 16h Processors*, (2013)p.15] ¹⁴⁷.

Optimizing MSVC 2010

Listing 1.296: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
a$ = 8
f      PROC
; RCX = input value
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    edx, 1
    lea    r8d, QWORD PTR [rax+64]
; R8D=64
    npad   5
$LL4@f:
    test   rdx, rcx
; there are no such bit in input value?
; skip the next INC instruction then.
    je     SHORT $LN3@f
    inc    eax      ; rt++
$LN3@f:
    rol    rdx, 1  ; RDX=RDX<<1
    dec    r8       ; R8--
    jne    SHORT $LL4@f
    fatret 0
f      ENDP
```

Here the ROL instruction is used instead of SHL, which is in fact “rotate left” instead of “shift left”, but in this example it works just as SHL.

¹⁴⁵Conditional MOVE if Not Equal

¹⁴⁶Conditional MOVE if Not Zero

¹⁴⁷More information on it: <http://repzret.org/p/repzret/>

You can read more about the rotate instruction here: [1.6 on page 1328](#).

R8 here is counting from 64 to 0. It's just like an inverted *i*.

Here is a table of some registers during the execution:

RDX	R8
0x0000000000000001	64
0x0000000000000002	63
0x0000000000000004	62
0x0000000000000008	61
...	...
0x4000000000000000	2
0x8000000000000000	1

At the end we see the FATRET instruction, which was explained here: [1.28.5 on the previous page](#).

Optimizing MSVC 2012

Listing 1.297: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```
a$ = 8
f      PROC
; RCX = input value
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    edx, 1
    lea    r8d, QWORD PTR [rax+32]
; EDX = 1, R8D = 32
    npad   5
$LL4@f:
; pass 1 -----
    test   rdx, rcx
    je     SHORT $LN3@f
    inc    eax      ; rt++
$LN3@f:
    rol    rdx, 1  ; RDX=RDX<<1
; -----
; pass 2 -----
    test   rdx, rcx
    je     SHORT $LN11@f
    inc    eax      ; rt++
$LN11@f:
    rol    rdx, 1  ; RDX=RDX<<1
; -----
    dec    r8      ; R8--
    jne    SHORT $LL4@f
    fatret 0
f      ENDP
```

Optimizing MSVC 2012 does almost the same job as optimizing MSVC 2010, but somehow, it generates two identical loop bodies and the loop count is now 32 instead of 64.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

To be honest, it's not possible to say why. Some optimization trick? Maybe it's better for the loop body to be slightly longer?

Anyway, such code is relevant here to show that sometimes the compiler output may be really weird and illogical, but perfectly working.

ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

Listing 1.298: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

	MOV	R1, R0
	MOV	R0, #0
	MOV	R2, #1
	MOV	R3, R0
loc_2E54	TST	R1, R2,LSL R3 ; set flags according to R1 & (R2<<R3)
	ADD	R3, R3, #1 ; R3++
	ADDNE	R0, R0, #1 ; if ZF flag is cleared by TST, then R0++
	CMP	R3, #32
	BNE	loc_2E54
	BX	LR

TST is the same thing as TEST in x86.

As was noted before ([3.12.3 on page 639](#)), there are no separate shifting instructions in ARM mode. However, there are modifiers LSL (*Logical Shift Left*), LSR (*Logical Shift Right*), ASR (*Arithmetic Shift Right*), ROR (*Rotate Right*) and RRX (*Rotate Right with Extend*), which may be added to such instructions as MOV, TST, CMP, ADD, SUB, RSB¹⁴⁸.

These modicators define how to shift the second operand and by how many bits.

Thus the “TST R1, R2,LSL R3” instruction works here as $R1 \wedge (R2 \ll R3)$.

ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

Almost the same, but here are two LSL.W/TST instructions are used instead of a single TST, because in Thumb mode it is not possible to define LSL modifier directly in TST.

	MOV	R1, R0
	MOVS	R0, #0
	MOV.W	R9, #1
	MOVS	R3, #0
loc_2F7A	LSL.W	R2, R9, R3
	TST	R2, R1
	ADD.W	R3, R3, #1
	IT NE	
	ADDNE	R0, #1
	CMP	R3, #32
	BNE	loc_2F7A
	BX	LR

¹⁴⁸These instructions are also called “data processing instructions”

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note: <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

ARM64 + Optimizing GCC 4.9

Let's take the 64-bit example which has been already used: [1.28.5 on page 413](#).

Listing 1.299: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.8

```
f:
    mov    w2, 0          ; rt=0
    mov    x5, 1
    mov    w1, w2

.L2:
    lsl    x4, x5, x1      ; w4 = w5<<w1 = 1<<i
    add    w3, w2, 1        ; new_rt=rt+1
    tst    x4, x0          ; (1<<i) & a
    add    w1, w1, 1        ; i++
; result of TST was non-zero?
; then w2=w3 or rt=new_rt.
; otherwise: w2=w2 or rt=rt (idle operation)
    csel   w2, w3, w2, ne
    cmp    w1, 64           ; i<64?
    bne   .L2              ; yes
    mov    w0, w2            ; return rt
    ret
```

The result is very similar to what GCC generates for x64: [1.295 on page 414](#).

The CSEL instruction is “Conditional SELect”. It just chooses one variable of two depending on the flags set by TST and copies the value into W2, which holds the “rt” variable.

ARM64 + Non-optimizing GCC 4.9

And again, we'll work on the 64-bit example which was already used: [1.28.5 on page 413](#). The code is more verbose, as usual.

Listing 1.300: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.8

```
f:
    sub    sp, sp, #32
    str    x0, [sp,8]       ; store "a" value to Register Save Area
    str    wzr, [sp,24]     ; rt=0
    str    wzr, [sp,28]     ; i=0
    b     .L2

.L4:
    ldr    w0, [sp,28]
    mov    x1, 1
    lsl    x0, x1, x0      ; X0 = X1<<X0 = 1<<i
    mov    x1, x0
; X1 = 1<<i
    ldr    x0, [sp,8]
; X0 = a
    and    x0, x1, x0
; X0 = X1&X0 = (1<<i) & a
; X0 contain zero? then jump to .L3, skipping "rt" increment
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        cmp    x0, xzr
        beq    .L3
; rt++
        ldr    w0, [sp,24]
        add    w0, w0, 1
        str    w0, [sp,24]
.L3:
; i++
        ldr    w0, [sp,28]
        add    w0, w0, 1
        str    w0, [sp,28]
.L2:
; i<=63? then jump to .L4
        ldr    w0, [sp,28]
        cmp    w0, 63
        ble    .L4
; return rt
        ldr    w0, [sp,24]
        add    sp, sp, 32
        ret

```

MIPS**Non-optimizing GCC**

Listing 1.301: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

f:
; IDA is not aware of variable names, we gave them manually:
rt      = -0x10
i       = -0xC
var_4   = -4
a       = 0

        addiu   $sp, -0x18
        sw      $fp, 0x18+var_4($sp)
        move    $fp, $sp
        sw      $a0, 0x18+a($fp)
; initialize rt and i variables to zero:
        sw      $zero, 0x18+rt($fp)
        sw      $zero, 0x18+i($fp)
; jump to loop check instructions:
        b      loc_68
        or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP

loc_20:
        li      $v1, 1
        lw      $v0, 0x18+i($fp)
        or      $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
        sllv   $v0, $v1, $v0
; $v0 = 1<<i
        move   $v1, $v0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        lw      $v0, 0x18+a($fp)
        or      $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
        and    $v0, $v1, $v0
; $v0 = a & (1<<i)
; is a & (1<<i) equals to zero? jump to loc_58 then:
        beqz  $v0, loc_58
        or     $at, $zero
; no jump occurred, that means a & (1<<i)!=0, so increment "rt" then:
        lw      $v0, 0x18+rt($fp)
        or      $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
        addiu $v0, 1
        sw      $v0, 0x18+rt($fp)

loc_58:
; increment i:
        lw      $v0, 0x18+i($fp)
        or      $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
        addiu $v0, 1
        sw      $v0, 0x18+i($fp)

loc_68:
; load i and compare it with 0x20 (32).
; jump to loc_20 if it is less than 0x20 (32):
        lw      $v0, 0x18+i($fp)
        or      $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
        slti  $v0, 0x20 # '
        bnez  $v0, loc_20
        or     $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
; function epilogue. return rt:
        lw      $v0, 0x18+rt($fp)
        move  $sp, $fp ; load delay slot
        lw      $fp, 0x18+var_4($sp)
        addiu $sp, 0x18 ; load delay slot
        jr     $ra
        or     $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP

```

That is verbose: all local variables are located in the local stack and reloaded each time they're needed.

The SLLV instruction is “Shift Word Left Logical Variable”, it differs from SLL only in that the shift amount is encoded in the SLL instruction (and is fixed, as a consequence), but SLLV takes shift amount from a register.

Optimizing GCC

That is terser. There are two shift instructions instead of one. Why?

It's possible to replace the first SLLV instruction with an unconditional branch instruction that jumps right to the second SLLV. But this is another branching instruction in the function, and it's always favorable to get rid of them: [2.10.1 on page 589](#).

Listing 1.302: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

f:
; $a0=a
; rt variable will reside in $v0:
    move    $v0, $zero
; i variable will reside in $v1:
    move    $v1, $zero
    li     $t0, 1
    li     $a3, 32
    sllv   $a1, $t0, $v1
; $a1 = $t0<<$v1 = 1<<i

loc_14:
    and     $a1, $a0
; $a1 = a&(1<<i)
; increment i:
    addiu  $v1, 1
; jump to loc_28 if a&(1<<i)==0 and increment rt:
    beqz   $a1, loc_28
    addiu  $a2, $v0, 1
; if BEQZ was not triggered, save updated rt into $v0:
    move    $v0, $a2

loc_28:
; if i!=32, jump to loc_14 and also prepare next shifted value:
    bne    $v1, $a3, loc_14
    sllv   $a1, $t0, $v1
; return
    jr     $ra
    or     $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP

```

1.28.6 Conclusion

Analogous to the C/C++ shifting operators `<<` and `>>`, the shift instructions in x86 are `SHR/SHL` (for unsigned values) and `SAR/SHL` (for signed values).

The shift instructions in ARM are `LSR/LSL` (for unsigned values) and `ASR/LSL` (for signed values).

It's also possible to add shift suffix to some instructions (which are called "data processing instructions").

Check for specific bit (known at compile stage)

Test if the `0b1000000` bit (`0x40`) is present in the register's value:

Listing 1.303: C/C++

```

if (input&0x40)
...

```

Listing 1.304: x86

```

TEST REG, 40h

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
`<book@beginners.re>`. Thanks!

```
JNZ is_set
; bit is not set
```

Listing 1.305: x86

```
TEST REG, 40h
JZ is_cleared
; bit is set
```

Listing 1.306: ARM (ARM mode)

```
TST REG, #0x40
BNE is_set
; bit is not set
```

Sometimes, AND is used instead of TEST, but the flags that are set are the same.

Check for specific bit (specified at runtime)

This is usually done by this C/C++ code snippet (shift value by n bits right, then cut off lowest bit):

Listing 1.307: C/C++

```
if ((value>>n)&1)
    ...
```

This is usually implemented in x86 code as:

Listing 1.308: x86

```
; REG=input_value
; CL=n
SHR REG, CL
AND REG, 1
```

Or (shift 1 bit n times left, isolate this bit in input value and check if it's not zero):

Listing 1.309: C/C++

```
if (value & (1<<n))
    ...
```

This is usually implemented in x86 code as:

Listing 1.310: x86

```
; CL=n
MOV REG, 1
SHL REG, CL
AND input_value, REG
```

Set specific bit (known at compile stage)

Listing 1.311: C/C++

```
value=value|0x40;
```

Listing 1.312: x86

```
OR REG, 40h
```

Listing 1.313: ARM (ARM mode) and ARM64

```
ORR R0, R0, #0x40
```

Set specific bit (specified at runtime)

Listing 1.314: C/C++

```
value=value|(1<<n);
```

This is usually implemented in x86 code as:

Listing 1.315: x86

```
; CL=n
MOV REG, 1
SHL REG, CL
OR input_value, REG
```

Clear specific bit (known at compile stage)

Just apply AND operation with the inverted value:

Listing 1.316: C/C++

```
value=value&(~0x40);
```

Listing 1.317: x86

```
AND REG, 0FFFFFFFBFh
```

Listing 1.318: x64

```
AND REG, 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFBFh
```

This is actually leaving all bits set except one.

ARM in ARM mode has BIC instruction, which works like the NOT +AND instruction pair:

Listing 1.319: ARM (ARM mode)

```
BIC R0, R0, #0x40
```

Clear specific bit (specified at runtime)

Listing 1.320: C/C++

```
value=value&(~(1<<n));
```

Listing 1.321: x86

```
; CL=n
MOV REG, 1
SHL REG, CL
NOT REG
AND input_value, REG
```

1.28.7 Exercises

- <http://challenges.re/67>
- <http://challenges.re/68>
- <http://challenges.re/69>
- <http://challenges.re/70>

1.29 Linear congruential generator as pseudorandom number generator

Perhaps, the linear congruential generator is the simplest possible way to generate random numbers.

It's not in favour nowadays¹⁴⁹, but it's so simple (just one multiplication, one addition and AND operation), that we can use it as an example.

```
#include <stdint.h>

// constants from the Numerical Recipes book
#define RNG_a 1664525
#define RNG_c 1013904223

static uint32_t rand_state;

void my_srand (uint32_t init)
{
    rand_state=init;
}

int my_rand ()
{
    rand_state=rand_state*RNG_a;
    rand_state=rand_state+RNG_c;
```

¹⁴⁹Mersenne twister is better

```

    return rand_state & 0x7fff;
}

```

There are two functions: the first one is used to initialize the internal state, and the second one is called to generate pseudorandom numbers.

We see that two constants are used in the algorithm. They are taken from [William H. Press and Saul A. Teukolsky and William T. Vetterling and Brian P. Flannery, *Numerical Recipes*, (2007)].

Let's define them using a `#define` C/C++ statement. It's a macro.

The difference between a C/C++ macro and a constant is that all macros are replaced with their value by C/C++ preprocessor, and they don't take any memory, unlike variables.

In contrast, a constant is a read-only variable.

It's possible to take a pointer (or address) of a constant variable, but impossible to do so with a macro.

The last AND operation is needed because by C-standard `my_rand()` has to return a value in the 0..32767 range.

If you want to get 32-bit pseudorandom values, just omit the last AND operation.

1.29.1 x86

Listing 1.322: Optimizing MSVC 2013

```

_BSS      SEGMENT
_rand_state DD 01H DUP (?)
_BSS      ENDS

_init$ = 8
_srand  PROC
        mov     eax, DWORD PTR _init$[esp-4]
        mov     DWORD PTR _rand_state, eax
        ret     0
_srand  ENDP

_TEXT    SEGMENT
_rand  PROC
        imul   eax, DWORD PTR _rand_state, 1664525
        add    eax, 1013904223 ; 3c6ef35fh
        mov    DWORD PTR _rand_state, eax
        and    eax, 32767       ; 00007ffff
        ret     0
_rand  ENDP

_TEXT    ENDS

```

Here we see it: both constants are embedded into the code. There is no memory allocated for them.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The `my_srand()` function just copies its input value into the internal `rand_state` variable.

`my_rand()` takes it, calculates the next `rand_state`, cuts it and leaves it in the EAX register.

The non-optimized version is more verbose:

Listing 1.323: Non-optimizing MSVC 2013

```
_BSS      SEGMENT
_rand_state DD  01H DUP (?)
_BSS      ENDS

_init$ = 8
_srand  PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _init$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR _rand_state, eax
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_srand  ENDP

_TEXT    SEGMENT
_rand   PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    imul   eax, DWORD PTR _rand_state, 1664525
    mov     DWORD PTR _rand_state, eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _rand_state
    add    ecx, 1013904223 ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov     DWORD PTR _rand_state, ecx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _rand_state
    and    eax, 32767       ; 00007fffH
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_rand   ENDP

_TEXT    ENDS
```

1.29.2 x64

The x64 version is mostly the same and uses 32-bit registers instead of 64-bit ones (because we are working with `int` values here).

But `my_srand()` takes its input argument from the ECX register rather than from stack:

Listing 1.324: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```
_BSS      SEGMENT
rand_state DD  01H DUP (?)
_BSS      ENDS
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

init$ = 8
my_srand PROC
; ECX = input argument
    mov     DWORD PTR rand_state, ecx
    ret     0
my_srand ENDP

_TEXT  SEGMENT
my_rand PROC
    imul    eax, DWORD PTR rand_state, 1664525 ; 0019660dH
    add     eax, 1013904223 ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov     DWORD PTR rand_state, eax
    and     eax, 32767      ; 00007ffffH
    ret     0
my_rand ENDP

_TEXT  ENDS

```

GCC compiler generates mostly the same code.

1.29.3 32-bit ARM

Listing 1.325: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

my_srand PROC
    LDR    r1, |L0.52| ; load pointer to rand_state
    STR    r0,[r1,#0] ; save rand_state
    BX    lr
    ENDP

my_rand PROC
    LDR    r0, |L0.52| ; load pointer to rand_state
    LDR    r2, |L0.56| ; load RNG_a
    LDR    r1,[r0,#0] ; load rand_state
    MUL    r1,r2,r1
    LDR    r2, |L0.60| ; load RNG_c
    ADD    r1,r1,r2
    STR    r1,[r0,#0] ; save rand_state
; AND with 0x7FFF:
    LSL    r0,r1,#17
    LSR    r0,r0,#17
    BX    lr
    ENDP

|L0.52|
    DCD    ||.data||
|L0.56|
    DCD    0x0019660d
|L0.60|
    DCD    0x3c6ef35f

    AREA ||.data||, DATA, ALIGN=2

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

rand_state	DCD	0x00000000
------------	-----	------------

It's not possible to embed 32-bit constants into ARM instructions, so Keil has to place them externally and load them additionally. One interesting thing is that it's not possible to embed the 0x7FFF constant as well. So what Keil does is shifting `rand_state` left by 17 bits and then shifting it right by 17 bits. This is analogous to the `(rand_state << 17) >> 17` statement in C/C++. It seems to be useless operation, but what it does is clearing the high 17 bits, leaving the low 15 bits intact, and that's our goal after all.

Optimizing Keil for Thumb mode generates mostly the same code.

1.29.4 MIPS

Listing 1.326: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

my_srand:
; store $a0 to rand_state:
    lui      $v0, (rand_state >> 16)
    jr      $ra
    sw      $a0, rand_state

my_rand:
; load rand_state to $v0:
    lui      $v1, (rand_state >> 16)
    lw      $v0, rand_state
    or      $at, $zero ; load delay slot
; multiplicate rand_state in $v0 by 1664525 (RNG_a):
    sll      $a1, $v0, 2
    sll      $a0, $v0, 4
    addu     $a0, $a1, $a0
    sll      $a1, $a0, 6
    subu     $a0, $a1, $a0
    addu     $a0, $v0
    sll      $a1, $a0, 5
    addu     $a0, $a1
    sll      $a0, 3
    addu     $v0, $a0, $v0
    sll      $a0, $v0, 2
    addu     $v0, $a0

; add 1013904223 (RNG_c)
; the LI instruction is coalesced by IDA from LUI and ORI
    li      $a0, 0x3C6EF35F
    addu     $v0, $a0
; store to rand_state:
    sw      $v0, (rand_state & 0xFFFF)($v1)
    jr      $ra
    andi     $v0, 0x7FFF ; branch delay slot

```

Wow, here we see only one constant (0x3C6EF35F or 1013904223). Where is the other one (1664525)?

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

It seems that multiplication by 1664525 is performed by just using shifts and additions! Let's check this assumption:

```
#define RNG_a 1664525

int f (int a)
{
    return a*RNG_a;
}
```

Listing 1.327: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
f:
    sll      $v1, $a0, 2
    sll      $v0, $a0, 4
    addu   $v0, $v1, $v0
    sll      $v1, $v0, 6
    subu   $v0, $v1, $v0
    addu   $v0, $a0
    sll      $v1, $v0, 5
    addu   $v0, $v1
    sll      $v0, 3
    addu   $a0, $v0, $a0
    sll      $v0, $a0, 2
    jr       $ra
    addu   $v0, $a0, $v0 ; branch delay slot
```

Indeed!

MIPS relocations

We will also focus on how such operations as load from memory and store to memory actually work.

The listings here are produced by IDA, which hides some details.

We'll run objdump twice: to get a disassembled listing and also relocations list:

Listing 1.328: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (objdump)

```
# objdump -D rand_03.o

...
00000000 <my_srand>:
 0: 3c020000      lui      v0,0x0
 4: 03e00008      jr      ra
 8: ac440000      sw      a0,0(v0)

0000000c <my_rand>:
 c: 3c030000      lui      v1,0x0
 10: 8c620000     lw      v0,0(v1)
 14: 00200825     move   at,at
 18: 00022880     sll      a1,v0,0x2
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

1c: 00022100    sll    a0,v0,0x4
20: 00a42021    addu   a0,a1,a0
24: 00042980    sll    a1,a0,0x6
28: 00a42023    subu   a0,a1,a0
2c: 00822021    addu   a0,a0,v0
30: 00042940    sll    a1,a0,0x5
34: 00852021    addu   a0,a0,a1
38: 000420c0    sll    a0,a0,0x3
3c: 00821021    addu   v0,a0,v0
40: 00022080    sll    a0,v0,0x2
44: 00441021    addu   v0,v0,a0
48: 3c043c6e    lui    a0,0x3c6e
4c: 3484f35f    ori    a0,a0,0xf35f
50: 00441021    addu   v0,v0,a0
54: ac620000    sw     v0,0(v1)
58: 03e00008    jr    ra
5c: 30427fff    andi   v0,v0,0x7fff

...
# objdump -r rand_03.o

...
RELOCATION RECORDS FOR [.text]:
OFFSET  TYPE          VALUE
00000000 R_MIPS_HI16 .bss
00000008 R_MIPS_L016 .bss
0000000c R_MIPS_HI16 .bss
00000010 R_MIPS_L016 .bss
00000054 R_MIPS_L016 .bss

...

```

Let's consider the two relocations for the `my_srand()` function.

The first one, for address 0 has a type of `R_MIPS_HI16` and the second one for address 8 has a type of `R_MIPS_L016`.

That implies that address of the beginning of the `.bss` segment is to be written into the instructions at address of 0 (high part of address) and 8 (low part of address).

The `rand_state` variable is at the very start of the `.bss` segment.

So we see zeros in the operands of instructions `LUI` and `SW`, because nothing is there yet—the compiler don't know what to write there.

The linker will fix this, and the high part of the address will be written into the operand of `LUI` and the low part of the address—to the operand of `SW`.

`SW` will sum up the low part of the address and what is in register `$V0` (the high part is there).

It's the same story with the `my_rand()` function: `R_MIPS_HI16` relocation instructs the linker to write the high part of the `.bss` segment address into instruction `LUI`.

So the high part of the `rand_state` variable address is residing in register `$V1`.

The `LW` instruction at address `0x10` sums up the high and low parts and loads the value of the `rand_state` variable into `$V0`.

The `SW` instruction at address `0x54` do the summing again and then stores the new value to the `rand_state` global variable.

IDA processes relocations while loading, thus hiding these details, but we should keep them in mind.

1.29.5 Thread-safe version of the example

The thread-safe version of the example is to be demonstrated later: [6.2.1 on page 959](#).

1.30 Structures

A C/C++ structure, with some assumptions, is just a set of variables, always stored in memory together, not necessary of the same type ^{[150](#)}.

1.30.1 MSVC: SYSTEMTIME example

Let's take the `SYSTEMTIME`^{[151](#)} win32 structure that describes time.

This is how it's defined:

Listing 1.329: WinBase.h

```
typedef struct _SYSTEMTIME {
    WORD wYear;
    WORD wMonth;
    WORD wDayOfWeek;
    WORD wDay;
    WORD wHour;
    WORD wMinute;
    WORD wSecond;
    WORD wMilliseconds;
} SYSTEMTIME, *PSYSTEMTIME;
```

Let's write a C function to get the current time:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    SYSTEMTIME t;
    GetSystemTime (&t);
```

¹⁵⁰AKA “heterogeneous container”

¹⁵¹[MSDN: SYSTEMTIME structure](#)

```

printf ("%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d\n",
       t.wYear, t.wMonth, t.wDay,
       t.wHour, t.wMinute, t.wSecond);

return;
}

```

We get (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.330: MSVC 2010 /GS-

```

_t$ = -16 ; size = 16
_main      PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 16
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
    push    eax
    call    DWORD PTR __imp__GetSystemTime@4
    movzx   ecx, WORD PTR _t$[ebp+12] ; wSecond
    push    ecx
    movzx   edx, WORD PTR _t$[ebp+10] ; wMinute
    push    edx
    movzx   eax, WORD PTR _t$[ebp+8] ; wHour
    push    eax
    movzx   ecx, WORD PTR _t$[ebp+6] ; wDay
    push    ecx
    movzx   edx, WORD PTR _t$[ebp+2] ; wMonth
    push    edx
    movzx   eax, WORD PTR _t$[ebp] ; wYear
    push    eax
    push    OFFSET $SG78811 ; '%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d', 0aH, 00H
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 28
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main      ENDP

```

16 bytes are allocated for this structure in the local stack —that is exactly `sizeof(WORD)*8` (there are 8 WORD variables in the structure).

Pay attention to the fact that the structure begins with the `wYear` field. It can be said that a pointer to the `SYSTEMTIME` structure is passed to the `GetSystemTime()`¹⁵², but it is also can be said that a pointer to the `wYear` field is passed, and that is the same! `GetSystemTime()` writes the current year to the WORD pointer pointing to, then shifts 2 bytes ahead, writes current month, etc., etc.

¹⁵²[MSDN: SYSTEMTIME structure](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

OllyDbg

Let's compile this example in MSVC 2010 with /GS- /MD keys and run it in OllyDbg.

Let's open windows for data and stack at the address which is passed as the first argument of the GetSystemTime() function, and let's wait until it's executed. We see this:

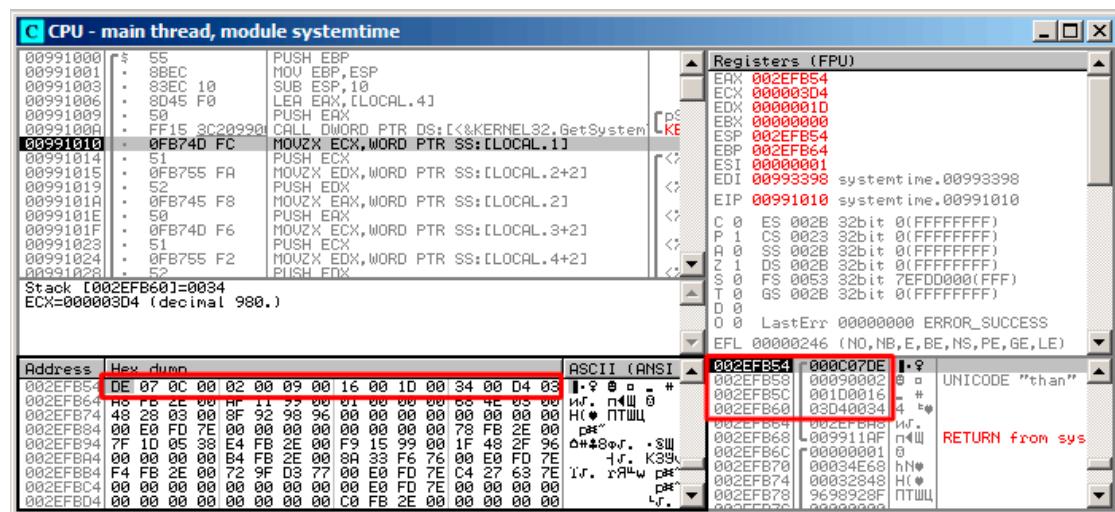


Figure 1.104: OllyDbg: GetSystemTime() just executed

The system time of the function execution on my computer is 9 December 2014, 22:29:52:

Listing 1.331: printf() output

```
2014-12-09 22:29:52
```

So we see these 16 bytes in the data window:

```
DE 07 0C 00 02 00 09 00 16 00 1D 00 34 00 D4 03
```

Each two bytes represent one field of the structure. Since the [endianness](#) is *little endian*, we see the low byte first and then the high one.

Hence, these are the values currently stored in memory:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Hexadecimal number	decimal number	field name
0x07DE	2014	wYear
0x000C	12	wMonth
0x0002	2	wDayOfWeek
0x0009	9	wDay
0x0016	22	wHour
0x001D	29	wMinute
0x0034	52	wSecond
0x03D4	980	wMilliseconds

The same values are seen in the stack window, but they are grouped as 32-bit values. And then `printf()` just takes the values it needs and outputs them to the console. Some values aren't output by `printf()` (`wDayOfWeek` and `wMilliseconds`), but they are in memory right now, available for use.

Replacing the structure with array

The fact that the structure fields are just variables located side-by-side, can be easily demonstrated by doing the following. Keeping in mind the `SYSTEMTIME` structure description, it's possible to rewrite this simple example like this:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    WORD array[8];
    GetSystemTime (array);

    printf ("%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d\n",
            array[0] /* wYear */, array[1] /* wMonth */, array[3] /* wDay */,
            array[4] /* wHour */, array[5] /* wMinute */, array[6] /* wSecond */);

    return;
}
```

The compiler grumbles a bit:

```
systemtime2.c(7) : warning C4133: 'function' : incompatible types - from 'LPSYSTEMTIME'
                   ↳ WORD [8]' to 'LPSYSTEMTIME'
```

But nevertheless, it produces this code:

Listing 1.332: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

```
$SG78573 DB      '%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d', 0aH, 00H
_array$ = -16    ; size = 16
_main    PROC
          push    ebp
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    ebp, esp
    sub    esp, 16
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
    push   eax
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__GetSystemTime@4
    movzx  ecx, WORD PTR _array$[ebp+12] ; wSecond
    push   ecx
    movzx  edx, WORD PTR _array$[ebp+10] ; wMinute
    push   edx
    movzx  eax, WORD PTR _array$[ebp+8] ; wHour
    push   eax
    movzx  ecx, WORD PTR _array$[ebp+6] ; wDay
    push   ecx
    movzx  edx, WORD PTR _array$[ebp+2] ; wMonth
    push   edx
    movzx  eax, WORD PTR _array$[ebp] ; wYear
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG78573 ; '%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d', 0aH, 00H
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 28
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

And it works just as the same!

It is very interesting that the result in assembly form cannot be distinguished from the result of the previous compilation.

So by looking at this code, one cannot say for sure if there was a structure declared, or an array.

Nevertheless, no sane person would do it, as it is not convenient.

Also the structure fields may be changed by developers, swapped, etc.

We will not study this example in OllyDbg, because it will be just the same as in the case with the structure.

1.30.2 Let's allocate space for a structure using malloc()

Sometimes it is simpler to place structures not the in local stack, but in the [heap](#):

```

#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    SYSTEMTIME *t;
    t=(SYSTEMTIME *)malloc (sizeof (SYSTEMTIME));

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

GetSystemTime (t);

printf ("%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d\n",
       t->wYear, t->wMonth, t->wDay,
       t->wHour, t->wMinute, t->wSecond);

free (t);

return;
}

```

Let's compile it now with optimization (/Ox) so it would be easy to see what we need.

Listing 1.333: Optimizing MSVC

```

_main    PROC
    push   esi
    push   16
    call   _malloc
    add    esp, 4
    mov    esi, eax
    push   esi
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__GetSystemTime@4
    movzx  eax, WORD PTR [esi+12] ; wSecond
    movzx  ecx, WORD PTR [esi+10] ; wMinute
    movzx  edx, WORD PTR [esi+8] ; wHour
    push   eax
    movzx  eax, WORD PTR [esi+6] ; wDay
    push   ecx
    movzx  ecx, WORD PTR [esi+2] ; wMonth
    push   edx
    movzx  edx, WORD PTR [esi] ; wYear
    push   eax
    push   ecx
    push   edx
    push   OFFSET $SG78833
    call   _printf
    push   esi
    call   _free
    add    esp, 32
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    esi
    ret    0
_main    ENDP

```

So, `sizeof(SYSTEMTIME)` = 16 and that is exact number of bytes to be allocated by `malloc()`. It returns a pointer to a freshly allocated memory block in the EAX register, which is then moved into the ESI register. `GetSystemTime()` win32 function takes care of saving value in ESI, and that is why it is not saved here and continues to be used after the `GetSystemTime()` call.

New instruction —`MOVZX` (*Move with Zero eXtend*). It may be used in most cases as `MOVSX`, but it sets the remaining bits to 0. That's because `printf()` requires a

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

32-bit *int*, but we got a WORD in the structure —that is 16-bit unsigned type. That's why by copying the value from a WORD into *int*, bits from 16 to 31 must be cleared, because a random noise may be there, which is left from the previous operations on the register(s).

In this example, it's possible to represent the structure as an array of 8 WORDs:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void main()
{
    WORD *t;

    t=(WORD *)malloc (16);

    GetSystemTime (t);

    printf ("%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d\n",
            t[0] /* wYear */, t[1] /* wMonth */, t[3] /* wDay */,
            t[4] /* wHour */, t[5] /* wMinute */, t[6] /* wSecond */);

    free (t);

    return;
}
```

We get:

Listing 1.334: Optimizing MSVC

\$SG78594 DB	'%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d', 0Ah, 00H
<hr/>	
_main PROC	
push	esi
push	16
call	_malloc
add	esp, 4
mov	esi, eax
push	esi
call	DWORD PTR __imp__GetSystemTime@4
movzx	eax, WORD PTR [esi+12]
movzx	ecx, WORD PTR [esi+10]
movzx	edx, WORD PTR [esi+8]
push	eax
movzx	eax, WORD PTR [esi+6]
push	ecx
movzx	ecx, WORD PTR [esi+2]
push	edx
movzx	edx, WORD PTR [esi]
push	eax
push	ecx
push	edx
push	OFFSET \$SG78594

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

call    _printf
push    esi
call    _free
add    esp, 32
xor    eax, eax
pop    esi
ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

Again, we got the code that cannot be distinguished from the previous one.

And again it has to be noted, you haven't to do this in practice, unless you really know what you are doing.

1.30.3 UNIX: struct tm

Linux

Let's take the tm structure from time.h in Linux for example:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <time.h>

void main()
{
    struct tm t;
    time_t unix_time;

    unix_time=time(NULL);

    localtime_r (&unix_time, &t);

    printf ("Year: %d\n", t.tm_year+1900);
    printf ("Month: %d\n", t.tm_mon);
    printf ("Day: %d\n", t.tm_mday);
    printf ("Hour: %d\n", t.tm_hour);
    printf ("Minutes: %d\n", t.tm_min);
    printf ("Seconds: %d\n", t.tm_sec);
}

```

Let's compile it in GCC 4.4.1:

Listing 1.335: GCC 4.4.1

```

main proc near
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
    sub    esp, 40h
    mov    dword ptr [esp], 0 ; first argument for time()
    call   time
    mov    [esp+3Ch], eax
    lea    eax, [esp+3Ch] ; take pointer to what time() returned
    lea    edx, [esp+10h] ; at ESP+10h struct tm will begin

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov    [esp+4], edx      ; pass pointer to the structure begin
mov    [esp], eax        ; pass pointer to result of time()
call   localtime_r
mov    eax, [esp+24h]    ; tm_year
lea    edx, [eax+76Ch]  ; edx=eax+1900
mov    eax, offset format ; "Year: %d\n"
mov    [esp+4], edx
mov    [esp], eax
call   printf
mov    edx, [esp+20h]    ; tm_mon
mov    eax, offset aMonthD ; "Month: %d\n"
mov    [esp+4], edx
mov    [esp], eax
call   printf
mov    edx, [esp+1Ch]    ; tm_mday
mov    eax, offset aDayD  ; "Day: %d\n"
mov    [esp+4], edx
mov    [esp], eax
call   printf
mov    edx, [esp+18h]    ; tm_hour
mov    eax, offset aHourD ; "Hour: %d\n"
mov    [esp+4], edx
mov    [esp], eax
call   printf
mov    edx, [esp+14h]    ; tm_min
mov    eax, offset aMinutesD ; "Minutes: %d\n"
mov    [esp+4], edx
mov    [esp], eax
call   printf
mov    edx, [esp+10h]
mov    eax, offset aSecondsD ; "Seconds: %d\n"
mov    [esp+4], edx        ; tm_sec
mov    [esp], eax
call   printf
leave
retn
main endp

```

Somehow, [IDA](#) did not write the local variables' names in the local stack. But since we already are experienced reverse engineers :-) we may do it without this information in this simple example.

Please also pay attention to the `lea edx, [eax+76Ch]` —this instruction just adds `0x76C` (1900) to value in EAX, but doesn't modify any flags. See also the relevant section about LEA ([.1.6 on page 1319](#)).

GDB

Let's try to load the example into GDB ^{[153](#)}:

¹⁵³The date result is slightly corrected for demonstration purposes. Of course, it's not possible to run GDB that quickly, in the same second.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 1.336: GDB

```
dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ date
Mon Jun  2 18:10:37 EEST 2014
dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ gcc GCC_tm.c -o GCC_tm
dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ gdb GCC_tm
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
...
Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/GCC_tm... (no debugging symbols ↴
  ↴ found)...done.
(gdb) b printf
Breakpoint 1 at 0x8048330
(gdb) run
Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/GCC_tm

Breakpoint 1, __printf (format=0x80485c0 "Year: %d\n") at printf.c:29
29      printf.c: No such file or directory.
(gdb) x/20x $esp
0xbffff0dc: 0x080484c3      0x080485c0      0x000007de      0x00000000
0xbffff0ec: 0x08048301      0x538c93ed      0x00000025      0x0000000a
0xbffff0fc: 0x00000012      0x00000002      0x00000005      0x00000072
0xbffff10c: 0x00000001      0x00000098      0x00000001      0x00002a30
0xbffff11c: 0x0804b090      0x08048530      0x00000000      0x00000000
(gdb)
```

We can easily find our structure in the stack. First, let's see how it's defined in *time.h*:

Listing 1.337: time.h

```
struct tm
{
    int tm_sec;
    int tm_min;
    int tm_hour;
    int tm_mday;
    int tm_mon;
    int tm_year;
    int tm_wday;
    int tm_yday;
    int tm_isdst;
};
```

Pay attention that 32-bit *int* is used here instead of WORD in SYSTEMTIME. So, each field occupies 32-bit.

Here are the fields of our structure in the stack:

0xbffff0dc:	0x080484c3	0x080485c0	0x000007de	0x00000000
0xbffff0ec:	0x08048301	0x538c93ed	0x00000025	sec 0x0000000a min
0xbffff0fc:	0x00000012	hour	0x00000002	mday 0x00000005 mon 0x00000072 ↴
	↳ year			
0xbffff10c:	0x00000001	wday	0x00000098	yday 0x00000001 isdst 0x00002a30
0xbffff11c:	0x0804b090		0x08048530	0x00000000 0x00000000

Or as a table:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Hexadecimal number	decimal number	field name
0x00000025	37	tm_sec
0x0000000a	10	tm_min
0x00000012	18	tm_hour
0x00000002	2	tm_mday
0x00000005	5	tm_mon
0x00000072	114	tm_year
0x00000001	1	tm_wday
0x00000098	152	tm_yday
0x00000001	1	tm_isdst

Just like SYSTEMTIME ([1.30.1 on page 431](#)),

there are also other fields available that are not used, like tm_wday, tm_yday, tm_isdst.

ARM

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

Same example:

Listing 1.338: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

var_38 = -0x38
var_34 = -0x34
var_30 = -0x30
var_2C = -0x2C
var_28 = -0x28
var_24 = -0x24
timer = -0xC

PUSH {LR}
MOVS R0, #0          ; timer
SUB SP, SP, #0x34
BL time
STR R0, [SP,#0x38+timer]
MOV R1, SP          ; tp
ADD R0, SP, #0x38+timer ; timer
BL localtime_r
LDR R1, =0x76C
LDR R0, [SP,#0x38+var_24]
ADDS R1, R0, R1
ADR R0, aYearD      ; "Year: %d\n"
BL __2printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_28]
ADR R0, aMonthD     ; "Month: %d\n"
BL __2printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_2C]
ADR R0, aDayD       ; "Day: %d\n"
BL __2printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_30]
ADR R0, aHourD      ; "Hour: %d\n"

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

BL      __2printf
LDR    R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34]
ADR    R0, aMinutesD ; "Minutes: %d\n"
BL      __2printf
LDR    R1, [SP,#0x38+var_38]
ADR    R0, aSecondsD ; "Seconds: %d\n"
BL      __2printf
ADD    SP, SP, #0x34
POP    {PC}

```

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

IDA “knows” the tm structure (because IDA “knows” the types of the arguments of library functions like `localtime_r()`),

so it shows here structure elements accesses and their names.

Listing 1.339: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

```

var_38 = -0x38
var_34 = -0x34

PUSH {R7,LR}
MOV R7, SP
SUB SP, SP, #0x30
MOVS R0, #0 ; time_t *
BLX _time
ADD R1, SP, #0x38+var_34 ; struct tm *
STR R0, [SP,#0x38+var_38]
MOV R0, SP ; time_t *
BLX _localtime_r
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34.tm_year]
MOV R0, 0xF44 ; "Year: %d\n"
ADD R0, PC ; char *
ADDW R1, R1, #0x76C
BLX _printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34.tm_mon]
MOV R0, 0xF3A ; "Month: %d\n"
ADD R0, PC ; char *
BLX _printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34.tm_mday]
MOV R0, 0xF35 ; "Day: %d\n"
ADD R0, PC ; char *
BLX _printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34.tm_hour]
MOV R0, 0xF2E ; "Hour: %d\n"
ADD R0, PC ; char *
BLX _printf
LDR R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34.tm_min]
MOV R0, 0xF28 ; "Minutes: %d\n"
ADD R0, PC ; char *
BLX _printf

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

LDR  R1, [SP,#0x38+var_34]
MOV  R0, 0xF25 ; "Seconds: %d\n"
ADD  R0, PC ; char *
BLX  _printf
ADD  SP, SP, #0x30
POP  {R7,PC}

...
00000000 tm      struc ; (sizeof=0x2C, standard type)
00000000 tm_sec  DCD ?
00000004 tm_min  DCD ?
00000008 tm_hour DCD ?
0000000C tm_mday DCD ?
00000010 tm_mon  DCD ?
00000014 tm_year DCD ?
00000018 tm_wday DCD ?
0000001C tm_yday DCD ?
00000020 tm_isdst DCD ?
00000024 tm_gmtoff DCD ?
00000028 tm_zone DCD ? ; offset
0000002C tm      ends

```

MIPS

Listing 1.340: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

1 main:
2
3 ; IDA is not aware of structure field names, we named them manually:
4
5 var_40      = -0x40
6 var_38      = -0x38
7 seconds     = -0x34
8 minutes    = -0x30
9 hour        = -0x2C
10 day         = -0x28
11 month       = -0x24
12 year        = -0x20
13 var_4       = -4
14
15 lui      $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
16 addiu   $sp, -0x50
17 la       $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
18 sw       $ra, 0x50+var_4($sp)
19 sw       $gp, 0x50+var_40($sp)
20 lw       $t9, (time & 0xFFFF)($gp)
21 or       $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
22 jalr    $t9
23 move    $a0, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
24 lw       $gp, 0x50+var_40($sp)
25 addiu   $a0, $sp, 0x50+var_38
26 lw       $t9, (localtime_r & 0xFFFF)($gp)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

27 addiu $a1, $sp, 0x50+seconds
28 jalr $t9
29 sw $v0, 0x50+var_38($sp) ; branch delay slot
30 lw $gp, 0x50+var_40($sp)
31 lw $a1, 0x50+year($sp)
32 lw $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
33 la $a0, $LC0      # "Year: %d\n"
34 jalr $t9
35 addiu $a1, 1900 ; branch delay slot
36 lw $gp, 0x50+var_40($sp)
37 lw $a1, 0x50+month($sp)
38 lw $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
39 lui $a0, ($LC1 >> 16) # "Month: %d\n"
40 jalr $t9
41 la $a0, ($LC1 & 0xFFFF) # "Month: %d\n" ; branch delay slot
42 lw $gp, 0x50+var_40($sp)
43 lw $a1, 0x50+day($sp)
44 lw $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
45 lui $a0, ($LC2 >> 16) # "Day: %d\n"
46 jalr $t9
47 la $a0, ($LC2 & 0xFFFF) # "Day: %d\n" ; branch delay slot
48 lw $gp, 0x50+var_40($sp)
49 lw $a1, 0x50+hour($sp)
50 lw $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
51 lui $a0, ($LC3 >> 16) # "Hour: %d\n"
52 jalr $t9
53 la $a0, ($LC3 & 0xFFFF) # "Hour: %d\n" ; branch delay slot
54 lw $gp, 0x50+var_40($sp)
55 lw $a1, 0x50+minutes($sp)
56 lw $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
57 lui $a0, ($LC4 >> 16) # "Minutes: %d\n"
58 jalr $t9
59 la $a0, ($LC4 & 0xFFFF) # "Minutes: %d\n" ; branch delay slot
60 lw $gp, 0x50+var_40($sp)
61 lw $a1, 0x50+seconds($sp)
62 lw $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
63 lui $a0, ($LC5 >> 16) # "Seconds: %d\n"
64 jalr $t9
65 la $a0, ($LC5 & 0xFFFF) # "Seconds: %d\n" ; branch delay slot
66 lw $ra, 0x50+var_4($sp)
67 or $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
68 jr $ra
69 addiu $sp, 0x50
70
71 $LC0: .ascii "Year: %d\n<0>"
72 $LC1: .ascii "Month: %d\n<0>"
73 $LC2: .ascii "Day: %d\n<0>"
74 $LC3: .ascii "Hour: %d\n<0>"
75 $LC4: .ascii "Minutes: %d\n<0>"
76 $LC5: .ascii "Seconds: %d\n<0>"

```

This is an example where the branch delay slots can confuse us.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

For example, there is the instruction `addiu $a1, 1900` at line 35 which adds 1900 to the year number.

It's executed before the corresponding `JALR` at line 34, do not forget about it.

Structure as a set of values

In order to illustrate that the structure is just variables laying side-by-side in one place, let's rework our example while looking at the `tm` structure definition again: listing 1.337.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <time.h>

void main()
{
    int tm_sec, tm_min, tm_hour, tm_mday, tm_mon, tm_year, tm_wday, tm_yday,
        tm_isdst;
    time_t unix_time;

    unix_time=time(NULL);

    localtime_r (&unix_time, &tm_sec);

    printf ("Year: %d\n", tm_year+1900);
    printf ("Month: %d\n", tm_mon);
    printf ("Day: %d\n", tm_mday);
    printf ("Hour: %d\n", tm_hour);
    printf ("Minutes: %d\n", tm_min);
    printf ("Seconds: %d\n", tm_sec);
}
```

N.B. The pointer to the `tm_sec` field is passed into `localtime_r`, i.e., to the first element of the “structure”.

The compiler warns us:

Listing 1.341: GCC 4.7.3

```
GCC_tm2.c: In function 'main':
GCC_tm2.c:11:5: warning: passing argument 2 of 'localtime_r' from
  ↴ incompatible pointer type [enabled by default]
In file included from GCC_tm2.c:2:0:
/usr/include/time.h:59:12: note: expected 'struct tm *' but argument is of
  ↴ type 'int *'
```

But nevertheless, it generates this:

Listing 1.342: GCC 4.7.3

```
main      proc near
var_30    = dword ptr -30h
var_2C    = dword ptr -2Ch
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

unix_time = dword ptr -1Ch
tm_sec    = dword ptr -18h
tm_min    = dword ptr -14h
tm_hour   = dword ptr -10h
tm_mday   = dword ptr -0Ch
tm_mon    = dword ptr -8
tm_year   = dword ptr -4

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
sub    esp, 30h
call   __main
mov    [esp+30h+var_30], 0 ; arg 0
call   time
mov    [esp+30h+unix_time], eax
lea     eax, [esp+30h+tm_sec]
mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
lea     eax, [esp+30h+unix_time]
mov    [esp+30h+var_30], eax
call   localtime_r
mov    eax, [esp+30h+tm_year]
add    eax, 1900
mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aYearD ; "Year: %d\n"
call   printf
mov    eax, [esp+30h+tm_mon]
mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aMonthD ; "Month: %d\n"
call   printf
mov    eax, [esp+30h+tm_mday]
mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aDayD ; "Day: %d\n"
call   printf
mov    eax, [esp+30h+tm_hour]
mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aHourD ; "Hour: %d\n"
call   printf
mov    eax, [esp+30h+tm_min]
mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aMinutesD ; "Minutes: %d\n"
call   printf
mov    eax, [esp+30h+tm_sec]
mov    [esp+30h+var_2C], eax
mov    [esp+30h+var_30], offset aSecondsD ; "Seconds: %d\n"
call   printf
leave
retn
main endp

```

This code is identical to what we saw previously and it is not possible to say, was it a structure in original source code or just a pack of variables.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

And this works. However, it is not recommended to do this in practice.

Usually, non-optimizing compilers allocates variables in the local stack in the same order as they were declared in the function.

Nevertheless, there is no guarantee.

By the way, some other compiler may warn about the `tm_year`, `tm_mon`, `tm_mday`, `tm_hour`, `tm_min` variables, but not `tm_sec` are used without being initialized.

Indeed, the compiler is not aware that these are to be filled by `localtime_r()` function.

We chose this example, since all structure fields are of type `int`.

This would not work if structure fields are 16-bit (WORD), like in the case of the `SYSTEMTIME` structure—`GetSystemTime()` will fill them incorrectly (because the local variables are aligned on a 32-bit boundary). Read more about it in next section: “Fields packing in structure” ([1.30.4 on page 451](#)).

So, a structure is just a pack of variables laying in one place, side-by-side. We could say that the structure is the instruction to the compiler, directing it to hold variables in one place. By the way, in some very early C versions (before 1972), there were no structures at all [Dennis M. Ritchie, *The development of the C language*, (1993)]¹⁵⁴.

There is no debugger example here: it is just the same as you already saw.

Structure as an array of 32-bit words

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <time.h>

void main()
{
    struct tm t;
    time_t unix_time;
    int i;

    unix_time=time(NULL);

    localtime_r (&unix_time, &t);

    for (i=0; i<9; i++)
    {
        int tmp=((int*)&t)[i];
        printf ("0x%08X (%d)\n", tmp, tmp);
    };
}
```

We just *cast* a pointer to structure to an array of `int`'s. And that works! We run the example at 23:51:45 26-July-2014.

¹⁵⁴Also available as [pdf](#)

```

0x00000002D (45)
0x000000033 (51)
0x000000017 (23)
0x00000001A (26)
0x000000006 (6)
0x000000072 (114)
0x000000006 (6)
0x0000000CE (206)
0x000000001 (1)

```

The variables here are in the same order as they are enumerated in the definition of the structure: [1.337 on page 440](#).

Here is how it gets compiled:

Listing 1.343: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```

main proc near
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    esi
    push    ebx
    and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
    sub    esp, 40h
    mov    dword ptr [esp], 0 ; timer
    lea    ebx, [esp+14h]
    call   _time
    lea    esi, [esp+38h]
    mov    [esp+4], ebx    ; tp
    mov    [esp+10h], eax
    lea    eax, [esp+10h]
    mov    [esp], eax      ; timer
    call   _localtime_r
    nop
    lea    esi, [esi+0]      ; NOP
loc_80483D8:
; EBX here is pointer to structure,
; ESI is the pointer to the end of it.
    mov    eax, [ebx] ; get 32-bit word from array
    add    ebx, 4       ; next field in structure
    mov    dword ptr [esp+4], offset a0x08xD ; "0x%08X (%d)\n"
    mov    dword ptr [esp], 1
    mov    [esp+0Ch], eax    ; pass value to printf()
    mov    [esp+8], eax      ; pass value to printf()
    call   __printf_chk
    cmp    ebx, esi      ; meet structure end?
    jnz    short loc_80483D8 ; no - load next value then
    lea    esp, [ebp-8]
    pop    ebx
    pop    esi
    pop    ebp
    retn
main endp

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Indeed: the space in the local stack is first treated as a structure, and then it's treated as an array.

It's even possible to modify the fields of the structure through this pointer.

And again, it's dubiously hackish way to do things, not recommended for use in production code.

Exercise

As an exercise, try to modify (increase by 1) the current month number, treating the structure as an array.

Structure as an array of bytes

We can go even further. Let's *cast* the pointer to an array of bytes and dump it:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <time.h>

void main()
{
    struct tm t;
    time_t unix_time;
    int i, j;

    unix_time=time(NULL);

    localtime_r (&unix_time, &t);

    for (i=0; i<9; i++)
    {
        for (j=0; j<4; j++)
            printf ("0x%02X ", ((unsigned char*)&t)[i*4+j]);
        printf ("\n");
    };
}
```

```
0x2D 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x33 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x17 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x1A 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x06 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x72 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x06 0x00 0x00 0x00
0xCE 0x00 0x00 0x00
0x01 0x00 0x00 0x00
```

We also run this example at 23:51:45 26-July-2014 ¹⁵⁵. The values are just the same as in the previous dump ([1.30.3 on the preceding page](#)), and of course, the lowest

¹⁵⁵The time and date are the same for demonstration purposes. Byte values are fixed up.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

byte goes first, because this is a little-endian architecture ([2.8 on page 587](#)).

Listing 1.344: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```

main proc near
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    edi
    push    esi
    push    ebx
    and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
    sub    esp, 40h
    mov    dword ptr [esp], 0 ; timer
    lea    esi, [esp+14h]
    call   _time
    lea    edi, [esp+38h] ; struct end
    mov    [esp+4], esi ; tp
    mov    [esp+10h], eax
    lea    eax, [esp+10h]
    mov    [esp], eax ; timer
    call   _localtime_r
    lea    esi, [esi+0] ; NOP
; ESI here is the pointer to structure in local stack.
; EDI is the pointer to structure end.
loc_8048408:
    xor    ebx, ebx ; j=0

loc_804840A:
    movzx  eax, byte ptr [esi+ebx] ; load byte
    add    ebx, 1 ; j=j+1
    mov    dword ptr [esp+4], offset a0x02x ; "0x%02X "
    mov    dword ptr [esp], 1
    mov    [esp+8], eax ; pass loaded byte to printf()
    call   __printf_chk
    cmp    ebx, 4
    jnz    short loc_804840A
; print carriage return character (CR)
    mov    dword ptr [esp], 0Ah ; c
    add    esi, 4
    call   _putchar
    cmp    esi, edi ; meet struct end?
    jnz    short loc_8048408 ; j=0
    lea    esp, [ebp-0Ch]
    pop    ebx
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    pop    ebp
    retn
main endp

```

GNU Scientific Library: Representation of complex numbers

This is a relatively rare case when an array is used instead of a structure, on purpose:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Representation of complex numbers

Complex numbers are represented using the type :code:`gsl_complex`. The internal representation of this type may vary across platforms and should not be accessed directly. The functions and macros described below allow complex numbers to be manipulated in a portable way.

For reference, the default form of the :code:`gsl_complex` type is given by the following struct::

```
typedef struct
{
    double dat[2];
} gsl_complex;
```

The real and imaginary part are stored in contiguous elements of a two element array. This eliminates any padding between the real and imaginary parts, :code:`dat[0]` and :code:`dat[1]`, allowing the struct to be mapped correctly onto packed complex arrays.

([URL](#))

1.30.4 Fields packing in structure

One important thing is fields packing in structures.

Let's take a simple example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

struct s
{
    char a;
    int b;
    char c;
    int d;
};

void f(struct s s)
{
    printf ("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d\n", s.a, s.b, s.c, s.d);
}

int main()
{
    struct s tmp;
    tmp.a=1;
    tmp.b=2;
    tmp.c=3;
    tmp.d=4;
    f(tmp);
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
};
```

As we see, we have two *char* fields (each is exactly one byte) and two more —*int* (each — 4 bytes).

x86

This compiles to:

Listing 1.345: MSVC 2012 /GS- /Ob0

```

1 _tmp$ = -16
2 _main    PROC
3     push    ebp
4     mov     ebp, esp
5     sub     esp, 16
6     mov     BYTE PTR _tmp$[ebp], 1      ; set field a
7     mov     DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+4], 2   ; set field b
8     mov     BYTE PTR _tmp$[ebp+8], 3    ; set field c
9     mov     DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+12], 4 ; set field d
10    sub    esp, 16                  ; allocate place for temporary
11    structure
12    mov     eax, esp
13    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp]  ; copy our structure to the temporary
14    one
15    mov     DWORD PTR [eax], ecx
16    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+4]
17    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+4], edx
18    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+8]
19    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+12]
20    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+12], edx
21    call    _f
22    add    esp, 16
23    xor    eax, eax
24    mov    esp, ebp
25    pop    ebp
26    ret    0
27 _main    ENDP
28
29 _s$ = 8 ; size = 16
30 ?f@YAXUs@@@Z PROC ; f
31     push    ebp
32     mov     ebp, esp
33     mov     eax, DWORD PTR _s$[ebp+12]
34     push    eax
35     movsx  ecx, BYTE PTR _s$[ebp+8]
36     push    ecx
37     mov     edx, DWORD PTR _s$[ebp+4]
38     push    edx
39     movsx  eax, BYTE PTR _s$[ebp]
40     push    eax
41     push    OFFSET $SG3842
42     call    _printf

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

42     add    esp, 20
43     pop    ebp
44     ret    0
45 ?f@@YAXUs@??Z ENDP ; f
46 _TEXT    ENDS

```

We pass the structure as a whole, but in fact, as we can see, the structure is being copied to a temporary one (a place in stack is allocated in line 10 for it, and then all 4 fields, one by one, are copied in lines 12 ... 19), and then its pointer (address) is to be passed.

The structure is copied because it's not known whether the `f()` function going to modify the structure or not. If it gets changed, then the structure in `main()` has to remain as it has been.

We could use C/C++ pointers, and the resulting code will be almost the same, but without the copying.

As we can see, each field's address is aligned on a 4-byte boundary. That's why each `char` occupies 4 bytes here (like `int`). Why? Because it is easier for the CPU to access memory at aligned addresses and to cache data from it.

However, it is not very economical.

Let's try to compile it with option (`/Zp1`) (`/Zp[n]` pack structures on *n*-byte boundary).

Listing 1.346: MSVC 2012 /GS- /Zp1

```

1 _main    PROC
2     push    ebp
3     mov     ebp, esp
4     sub    esp, 12
5     mov    BYTE PTR _tmp$[ebp], 1      ; set field a
6     mov    DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+1], 2   ; set field b
7     mov    BYTE PTR _tmp$[ebp+5], 3   ; set field c
8     mov    DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+6], 4   ; set field d
9     sub    esp, 12                  ; allocate place for temporary
10    structure
11        mov    eax, esp
12        mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp]  ; copy 10 bytes
13        mov    DWORD PTR [eax], ecx
14        mov    edx, DWORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+4]
15        mov    DWORD PTR [eax+4], edx
16        mov    cx, WORD PTR _tmp$[ebp+8]
17        mov    WORD PTR [eax+8], cx
18        call    _f
19        add    esp, 12
20        xor    eax, eax
21        mov    esp, ebp
22        pop    ebp
23        ret    0
24 _main    ENDP
25 _TEXT    SEGMENT
26 _s$ = 8 ; size = 10

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

27 ?f@@YAXUs@Z PROC    ; f
28     push    ebp
29     mov     ebp, esp
30     mov     eax, DWORD PTR _s$[ebp+6]
31     push    eax
32     movsx   ecx, BYTE PTR _s$[ebp+5]
33     push    ecx
34     mov     edx, DWORD PTR _s$[ebp+1]
35     push    edx
36     movsx   eax, BYTE PTR _s$[ebp]
37     push    eax
38     push    OFFSET $SG3842
39     call    _printf
40     add    esp, 20
41     pop    ebp
42     ret    0
43 ?f@@YAXUs@Z ENDP    ; f

```

Now the structure takes only 10 bytes and each *char* value takes 1 byte. What does it give to us? Size economy. And as drawback —the CPU accessing these fields slower than it could.

The structure is also copied in `main()`. Not field-by-field, but directly 10 bytes, using three pairs of `MOV`. Why not 4?

The compiler decided that it's better to copy 10 bytes using 3 `MOV` pairs than to copy two 32-bit words and two bytes using 4 `MOV` pairs.

By the way, such copy implementation using `MOV` instead of calling the `memcpy()` function is widely used, because it's faster than a call to `memcpy()`—for short blocks, of course: [3.14.1 on page 655](#).

As it can be easily guessed, if the structure is used in many source and object files, all these must be compiled with the same convention about structures packing.

Aside from MSVC `/Zp` option which sets how to align each structure field, there is also the `#pragma pack` compiler option, which can be defined right in the source code. It is available in both MSVC¹⁵⁶ and GCC¹⁵⁷.

Let's get back to the `SYSTEMTIME` structure that consists of 16-bit fields. How does our compiler know to pack them on 1-byte alignment boundary?

`WinNT.h` file has this:

Listing 1.347: `WinNT.h`

```
#include "pshpack1.h"
```

And this:

Listing 1.348: `WinNT.h`

```
#include "pshpack4.h"          // 4 byte packing is the default
```

¹⁵⁶ [MSDN: Working with Packing Structures](#)

¹⁵⁷ [Structure-Packing Pragmas](#)

The file PshPack1.h looks like:

Listing 1.349: PshPack1.h

```
#if ! (defined(lint) || defined(RC_INVOKED))
#if (_MSC_VER >= 800 && !_defined(_M_I86)) || defined(_PUSHPOP_SUPPORTED)
#pragma warning(disable:4103)
#endif !(defined( MIDL_PASS )) || defined( __midl )
#pragma pack(push,1)
#else
#pragma pack(1)
#endif
#endif /* ! (defined(lint) || defined(RC_INVOKED)) */
```

This tell the compiler how to pack the structures defined after `#pragma pack`.

OllyDbg + fields are packed by default

Let's try our example (where the fields are aligned by default (4 bytes)) in OllyDbg:

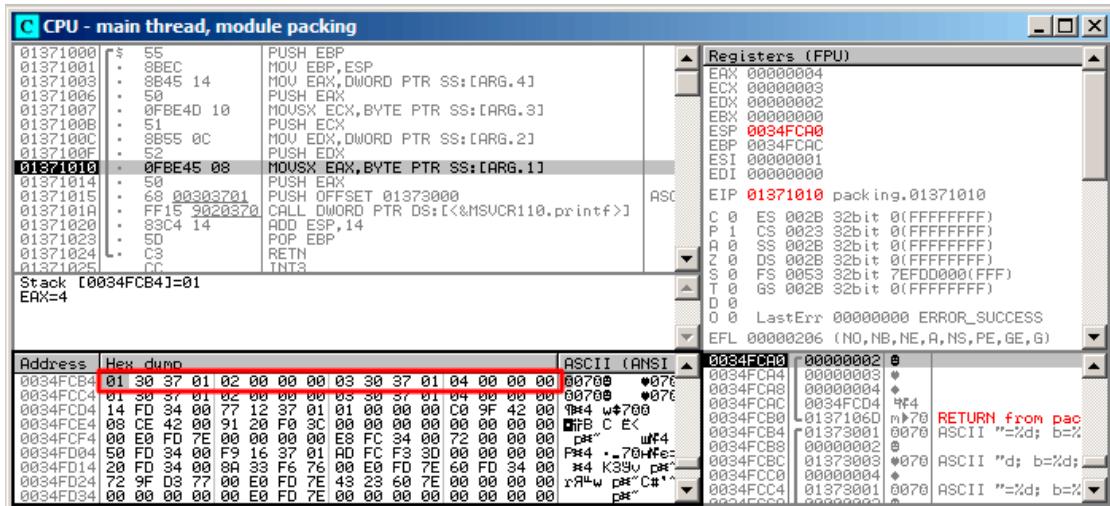


Figure 1.105: OllyDbg: Before `printf()` execution

We see our 4 fields in the data window.

But where do the random bytes (0x30, 0x37, 0x01) come from, that are next to the first (a) and third (c) fields?

By looking at our listing [1.345 on page 452](#), we can see that the first and third fields are `char`, therefore only one byte is written, 1 and 3 respectively (lines 6 and 8).

The remaining 3 bytes of the 32-bit words are not being modified in memory! Hence, random garbage is left there.

This garbage doesn't influence the `printf()` output in any way, because the values for it are prepared using the `MOVZX` instruction, which takes bytes, not words: listing [1.345](#) (lines 34 and 38).

By the way, the `MOVZX` (sign-extending) instruction is used here, because `char` is signed by default in MSVC and GCC. If the `unsigned char` data type or `uint8_t` was used here, `MOVZ` instruction would have been used instead.

OllyDbg + fields aligning on 1 byte boundary

Things are much clearer here: 4 fields occupy 10 bytes and the values are stored side-by-side

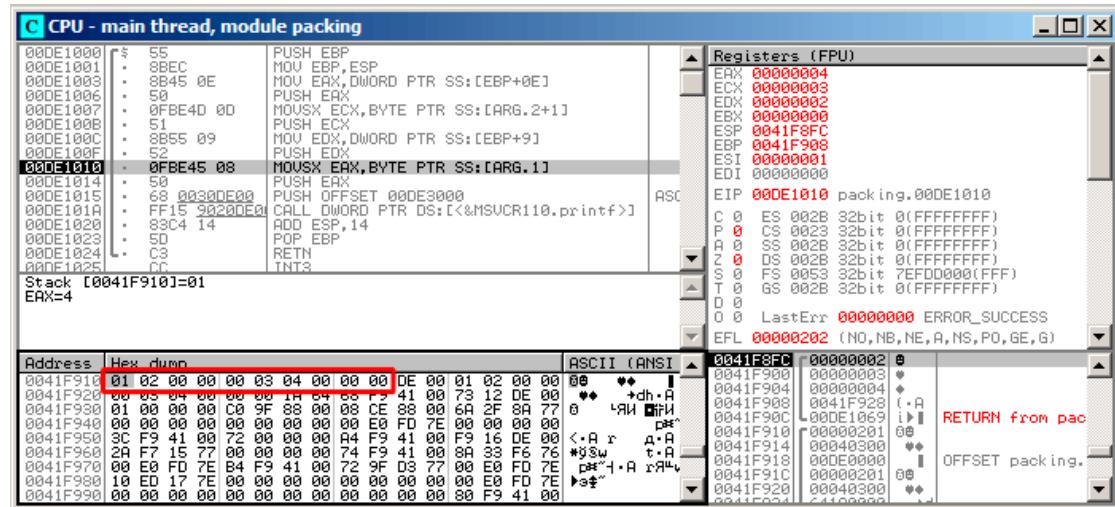


Figure 1.106: OllyDbg: Before printf() execution

ARM

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

Listing 1.350: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

.text:0000003E          exit ; CODE XREF: f+16
.text:0000003E 05 B0      ADD    SP, SP, #0x14
.text:00000040 00 BD      POP    {PC}

.text:00000280          f
.text:00000280
.text:00000280          var_18 = -0x18
.text:00000280          a      = -0x14
.text:00000280          b      = -0x10
.text:00000280          c      = -0xC
.text:00000280          d      = -8
.text:00000280
.text:00000280 0F B5      PUSH   {R0-R3,LR}
.text:00000282 81 B0      SUB    SP, SP, #4
.text:00000284 04 98      LDR    R0, [SP,#16] ; d
.text:00000286 02 9A      LDR    R2, [SP,#8]  ; b
.text:00000288 00 90      STR    R0, [SP]
.text:0000028A 68 46      MOV    R0, SP

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

.text:0000028C 03 7B	LDRB	R3, [R0,#12]	; c
.text:0000028E 01 79	LDRB	R1, [R0,#4]	; a
.text:00000290 59 A0	ADR	R0, aADBDCDDD	; "a=%d; b=%d;
c=%d; d=%d\n"			
.text:00000292 05 F0 AD FF	BL	__2printf	
.text:00000296 D2 E6	B	exit	

As we may recall, here a structure is passed instead of pointer to one, and since the first 4 function arguments in ARM are passed via registers, the structure's fields are passed via R0-R3.

LDRB loads one byte from memory and extends it to 32-bit, taking its sign into account. This is similar to MOVSX in x86. Here it is used to load fields *a* and *c* from the structure.

One more thing we spot easily is that instead of function epilogue, there is jump to another function's epilogue! Indeed, that was quite different function, not related in any way to ours, however, it has exactly the same epilogue (probably because, it holds 5 local variables too ($5 * 4 = 0x14$)).

Also it is located nearby (take a look at the addresses).

Indeed, it doesn't matter which epilogue gets executed, if it works just as we need.

Apparently, Keil decides to reuse a part of another function to economize.

The epilogue takes 4 bytes while jump—only 2.

ARM + Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

Listing 1.351: Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

```
var_C = -0xC

PUSH {R7,LR}
MOV R7, SP
SUB SP, SP, #4
MOV R9, R1 ; b
MOV R1, R0 ; a
MOVW R0, #0xF10 ; "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d\n"
SXTB R1, R1 ; prepare a
MOVT.W R0, #0
STR R3, [SP,#0xC+var_C] ; place d to stack for printf()
ADD R0, PC ; format-string
SXTB R3, R2 ; prepare c
MOV R2, R9 ; b
BLX __printf
ADD SP, SP, #4
POP {R7,PC}
```

SXTB (*Signed Extend Byte*) is analogous to MOVSX in x86. All the rest—just the same.

MIPS

Listing 1.352: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

1 f:
2
3 var_18      = -0x18
4 var_10      = -0x10
5 var_4       = -4
6 arg_0       = 0
7 arg_4       = 4
8 arg_8       = 8
9 arg_C       = 0xC
10
11 ; $a0=s.a
12 ; $a1=s.b
13 ; $a2=s.c
14 ; $a3=s.d
15         lui    $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
16         addiu $sp, -0x28
17         la     $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
18         sw    $ra, 0x28+var_4($sp)
19         sw    $gp, 0x28+var_10($sp)
20 ; prepare a byte from 32-bit big-endian integer:
21         sra   $t0, $a0, 24
22         move  $v1, $a1
23 ; prepare a byte from 32-bit big-endian integer:
24         sra   $v0, $a2, 24
25         lw    $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
26         sw    $a0, 0x28+arg_0($sp)
27         lui   $a0, ($LC0 >> 16) # "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d\n"
28         sw    $a3, 0x28+var_18($sp)
29         sw    $a1, 0x28+arg_4($sp)
30         sw    $a2, 0x28+arg_8($sp)
31         sw    $a3, 0x28+arg_C($sp)
32         la    $a0, ($LC0 & 0xFFFF) # "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d\n"
33         move  $a1, $t0
34         move  $a2, $v1
35         jalr $t9
36         move  $a3, $v0 ; branch delay slot
37         lw    $ra, 0x28+var_4($sp)
38         or    $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
39         jr    $ra
40         addiu $sp, 0x28 ; branch delay slot
41
42 $LC0:      .ascii "a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d\n<0>

```

Structure fields come in registers \$A0..\$A3 and then get reshuffled into \$A1..\$A3 for `printf()`, while 4th field (from \$A3) is passed via local stack using SW.

But there are two SRA ("Shift Word Right Arithmetic") instructions, which prepare *char* fields. Why?

MIPS is a big-endian architecture by default [2.8 on page 587](#), and the Debian Linux

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

we work in is big-endian as well.

So when byte variables are stored in 32-bit structure slots, they occupy the high 31..24 bits.

And when a *char* variable needs to be extended into a 32-bit value, it must be shifted right by 24 bits.

char is a signed type, so an arithmetical shift is used here instead of logical.

One more word

Passing a structure as a function argument (instead of a passing pointer to structure) is the same as passing all structure fields one by one.

If the structure fields are packed by default, the f() function can be rewritten as:

```
void f(char a, int b, char c, int d)
{
    printf ("a=%d; b=%d; c=%d; d=%d\n", a, b, c, d);
}
```

And that leads to the same code.

1.30.5 Nested structures

Now what about situations when one structure is defined inside of another?

```
#include <stdio.h>

struct inner_struct
{
    int a;
    int b;
};

struct outer_struct
{
    char a;
    int b;
    struct inner_struct c;
    char d;
    int e;
};

void f(struct outer_struct s)
{
    printf ("a=%d; b=%d; c.a=%d; c.b=%d; d=%d; e=%d\n",
           s.a, s.b, s.c.a, s.c.b, s.d, s.e);
}

int main()
{
    struct outer_struct s;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

s.a=1;
s.b=2;
s.c.a=100;
s.c.b=101;
s.d=3;
s.e=4;
f(s);
};

```

...in this case, both `inner_struct` fields are to be placed between the `a,b` and `d,e` fields of the `outer_struct`.

Let's compile (MSVC 2010):

Listing 1.353: Optimizing MSVC 2010 /Ob0

```

$SG2802 DB      'a=%d; b=%d; c.a=%d; c.b=%d; d=%d; e=%d', 0aH, 00H

_TEXT      SEGMENT
_s$ = 8
_f      PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+16]
    movsx  ecx, BYTE PTR _s$[esp+12]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+8]
    push   eax
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+8]
    push   ecx
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+8]
    push   edx
    movsx  edx, BYTE PTR _s$[esp+8]
    push   eax
    push   ecx
    push   edx
    push   OFFSET $SG2802 ; 'a=%d; b=%d; c.a=%d; c.b=%d; d=%d; e=%d'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 28
    ret    0
_f      ENDP

_s$ = -24
_main   PROC
    sub    esp, 24
    push   ebx
    push   esi
    push   edi
    mov    ecx, 2
    sub    esp, 24
    mov    eax, esp
; from this moment, EAX is synonymous to ESP:
    mov    BYTE PTR _s$[esp+60], 1
    mov    ebx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+60]
    mov    DWORD PTR [eax], ebx
    mov    DWORD PTR [eax+4], ecx
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+98]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

lea    esi, DWORD PTR [ecx+99]
lea    edi, DWORD PTR [ecx+2]
mov    DWORD PTR [eax+8], edx
mov    BYTE PTR _s$[esp+76], 3
mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+76]
mov    DWORD PTR [eax+12], esi
mov    DWORD PTR [eax+16], ecx
mov    DWORD PTR [eax+20], edi
call   _f
add    esp, 24
pop    edi
pop    esi
xor    eax, eax
pop    ebx
add    esp, 24
ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

One curious thing here is that by looking onto this assembly code, we do not even see that another structure was used inside of it! Thus, we would say, nested structures are unfolded into *linear* or *one-dimensional* structure.

Of course, if we replace the `struct inner_struct c;` declaration with `struct inner_struct *c;` (thus making a pointer here) the situation will be quite different.

OllyDbg

Let's load the example into OllyDbg and take a look at outer_struct in memory:

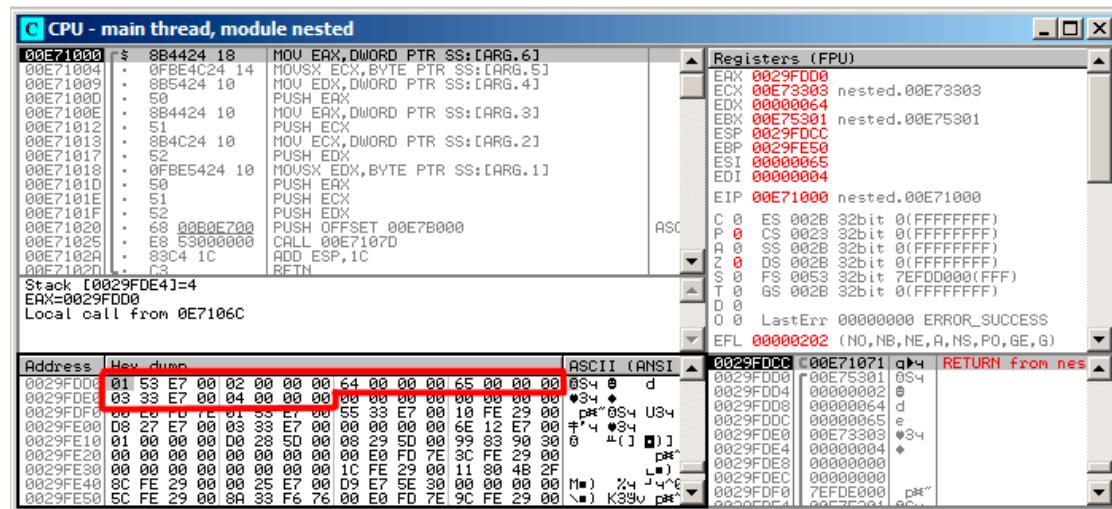


Figure 1.107: OllyDbg: Before printf() execution

That's how the values are located in memory:

- (outer_struct.a) (byte) 1 + 3 bytes of random garbage;
- (outer_struct.b) (32-bit word) 2;
- (inner_struct.a) (32-bit word) 0x64 (100);
- (inner_struct.b) (32-bit word) 0x65 (101);
- (outer_struct.d) (byte) 3 + 3 bytes of random garbage;
- (outer_struct.e) (32-bit word) 4.

1.30.6 Bit fields in a structure

CPUID example

The C/C++ language allows to define the exact number of bits for each structure field. It is very useful if one needs to save memory space. For example, one bit is enough for a *bool* variable. But of course, it is not rational if speed is important.

Let's consider the CPUD¹⁵⁸ instruction example. This instruction returns information about the current CPU and its features.

If the EAX is set to 1 before the instruction's execution, CPUD returning this information packed into the EAX register:

¹⁵⁸ [wikipedia](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

3:0 (4 bits)	Stepping
7:4 (4 bits)	Model
11:8 (4 bits)	Family
13:12 (2 bits)	Processor Type
19:16 (4 bits)	Extended Model
27:20 (8 bits)	Extended Family

MSVC 2010 has CPUID macro, but GCC 4.4.1 does not. So let's make this function by ourselves for GCC with the help of its built-in assembler¹⁵⁹.

```
#include <stdio.h>

#ifndef __GNUC__
static inline void cpuid(int code, int *a, int *b, int *c, int *d) {
    asm volatile("cpuid": "=a"(*a), "=b"(*b), "=c"(*c), "=d"(*d): "a"(code));
}
#endif

#ifndef _MSC_VER
#include <intrin.h>
#endif

struct CPUID_1_EAX
{
    unsigned int stepping:4;
    unsigned int model:4;
    unsigned int family_id:4;
    unsigned int processor_type:2;
    unsigned int reserved1:2;
    unsigned int extended_model_id:4;
    unsigned int extended_family_id:8;
    unsigned int reserved2:4;
};

int main()
{
    struct CPUID_1_EAX *tmp;
    int b[4];

#ifdef _MSC_VER
    __cpuid(b,1);
#endif

#ifdef __GNUC__
    cpuid (1, &b[0], &b[1], &b[2], &b[3]);
#endif

    tmp=(struct CPUID_1_EAX *)&b[0];

    printf ("stepping=%d\n", tmp->stepping);
    printf ("model=%d\n", tmp->model);
    printf ("family_id=%d\n", tmp->family_id);
}
```

¹⁵⁹[More about internal GCC assembler](#)

```

printf ("processor_type=%d\n", tmp->processor_type);
printf ("extended_model_id=%d\n", tmp->extended_model_id);
printf ("extended_family_id=%d\n", tmp->extended_family_id);

return 0;
};

```

After CPUID fills EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX, these registers are to be written in the b[] array. Then, we have a pointer to the CPUID_1_EAX structure and we point it to the value in EAX from the b[] array.

In other words, we treat a 32-bit *int* value as a structure. Then we read specific bits from the structure.

MSVC

Let's compile it in MSVC 2008 with /Ox option:

Listing 1.354: Optimizing MSVC 2008

```

_b$ = -16 ; size = 16
_main    PROC
    sub    esp, 16
    push   ebx

    xor    ecx, ecx
    mov    eax, 1
    cpuid
    push   esi
    lea    esi, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+24]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esi], eax
    mov    DWORD PTR [esi+4], ebx
    mov    DWORD PTR [esi+8], ecx
    mov    DWORD PTR [esi+12], edx

    mov    esi, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+24]
    mov    eax, esi
    and    eax, 15
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG15435 ; 'stepping=%d', 0aH, 00H
    call   _printf

    mov    ecx, esi
    shr    ecx, 4
    and    ecx, 15
    push   ecx
    push   OFFSET $SG15436 ; 'model=%d', 0aH, 00H
    call   _printf

    mov    edx, esi
    shr    edx, 8
    and    edx, 15
    push   edx

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push  OFFSET $SG15437 ; 'family_id=%d', 0aH, 00H
call  _printf

mov   eax, esi
shr   eax, 12
and   eax, 3
push  eax
push  OFFSET $SG15438 ; 'processor_type=%d', 0aH, 00H
call  _printf

mov   ecx, esi
shr   ecx, 16
and   ecx, 15
push  ecx
push  OFFSET $SG15439 ; 'extended_model_id=%d', 0aH, 00H
call  _printf

shr   esi, 20
and   esi, 255
push  esi
push  OFFSET $SG15440 ; 'extended_family_id=%d', 0aH, 00H
call  _printf
add   esp, 48
pop   esi

xor   eax, eax
pop   ebx

add   esp, 16
ret   0
_main  ENDP

```

The SHR instruction shifting the value in EAX by the number of bits that must be *skipped*, e.g., we ignore some bits *at the right side*.

The AND instruction clears the unneeded bits *on the left*, or, in other words, leaves only those bits in the EAX register we need.

MSVC + OllyDbg

Let's load our example into OllyDbg and see, what values are set in EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX after the execution of CPUID:

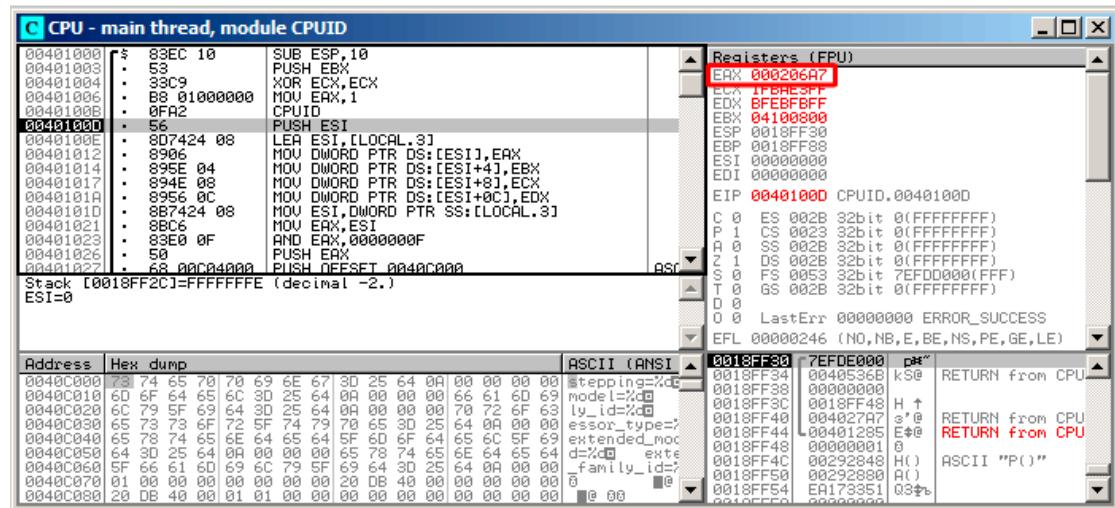


Figure 1.108: OllyDbg: After CPUID execution

EAX has `0x000206A7` (my CPU is Intel Xeon E3-1220).
This is `0b0000000000000000100000011010100111` in binary form.

Here is how the bits are distributed by fields:

field	in binary form	in decimal form
reserved2	0000	0
extended_family_id	00000000	0
extended_model_id	0010	2
reserved1	00	0
processor_id	00	0
family_id	0110	6
model	1010	10
stepping	0111	7

Listing 1.355: Console output

```
stepping=7
model=10
family_id=6
processor_type=0
extended_model_id=2
extended_family_id=0
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

GCC

Let's try GCC 4.4.1 with -O3 option.

Listing 1.356: Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```
main proc near ; DATA XREF: _start+17
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and     esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
    push    esi
    mov     esi, 1
    push    ebx
    mov     eax, esi
    sub     esp, 18h
    cpuid
    mov     esi, eax
    and     eax, 0Fh
    mov     [esp+8], eax
    mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset aSteppingD ; "stepping=%d\n"
    mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
    call    __printf_chk
    mov     eax, esi
    shr     eax, 4
    and     eax, 0Fh
    mov     [esp+8], eax
    mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset aModelD ; "model=%d\n"
    mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
    call    __printf_chk
    mov     eax, esi
    shr     eax, 8
    and     eax, 0Fh
    mov     [esp+8], eax
    mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset aFamily_idD ; "family_id=%d\n"
    mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
    call    __printf_chk
    mov     eax, esi
    shr     eax, 0Ch
    and     eax, 3
    mov     [esp+8], eax
    mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset aProcessor_type ; "processor_type=%d\n"
    mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
    call    __printf_chk
    mov     eax, esi
    shr     eax, 10h
    shr     esi, 14h
    and     eax, 0Fh
    and     esi, 0FFh
    mov     [esp+8], eax
    mov     dword ptr [esp+4], offset aExtended_model ;
    "extended_model_id=%d\n"
    mov     dword ptr [esp], 1
    call    __printf_chk
    mov     [esp+8], esi
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov    dword ptr [esp+4], offset unk_80486D0
mov    dword ptr [esp], 1
call   __printf_chk
add    esp, 18h
xor    eax, eax
pop    ebx
pop    esi
mov    esp, ebp
pop    ebp
retn
main          endp

```

Almost the same. The only thing worth noting is that GCC somehow combines the calculation of `extended_model_id` and `extended_family_id` into one block, instead of calculating them separately before each `printf()` call.

Handling float data type as a structure

As we already noted in the section about FPU ([1.25 on page 275](#)), both `float` and `double` types consist of a *sign*, a *significand* (or *fraction*) and an *exponent*. But will we be able to work with these fields directly? Let's try this with `float`.



```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <assert.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <memory.h>

struct float_as_struct
{
    unsigned int fraction : 23; // fractional part
    unsigned int exponent : 8; // exponent + 0x3FF
    unsigned int sign : 1; // sign bit
};

float f(float _in)
{
    float f=_in;
    struct float_as_struct t;

    assert (sizeof (struct float_as_struct) == sizeof (float));

    memcpy (&t, &f, sizeof (float));

    t.sign=1; // set negative sign
    t.exponent=t.exponent+2; // multiply d by 2^n(n here is 2)
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    memcpy (&f, &t, sizeof (float));

    return f;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%f\n", f(1.234));
}

```

The `float_as_struct` structure occupies the same amount of memory as `float`, i.e., 4 bytes or 32 bits.

Now we are setting the negative sign in the input value and also, by adding 2 to the exponent, we thereby multiply the whole number by 2^2 , i.e., by 4.

Let's compile in MSVC 2008 without optimization turned on:

Listing 1.357: Non-optimizing MSVC 2008

```

_t$ = -8      ; size = 4
_f$ = -4      ; size = 4
_in$ = 8       ; size = 4
?f@YAMM@Z PROC ; f
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 8

    fld     DWORD PTR _in$[ebp]
    fstp   DWORD PTR _f$[ebp]

    push    4
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR _f$[ebp]
    push    eax
    lea     ecx, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
    push    ecx
    call    _memcpy
    add     esp, 12

    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
    or      edx, -2147483648 ; 80000000H - set minus sign
    mov     DWORD PTR _t$[ebp], edx

    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
    shr     eax, 23           ; 00000017H - drop significand
    and     eax, 255          ; 000000ffH - leave here only exponent
    add     eax, 2             ; add 2 to it
    and     eax, 255          ; 000000ffH
    shl     eax, 23           ; 00000017H - shift result to place of bits 30:23
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
    and     ecx, -2139095041 ; 807fffffH - drop exponent

; add original value without exponent with new calculated exponent:
    or      ecx, eax

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov    DWORD PTR _t$[ebp], ecx
push   4
lea    edx, DWORD PTR _t$[ebp]
push   edx
lea    eax, DWORD PTR _f$[ebp]
push   eax
call   _memcpy
add    esp, 12
fld    DWORD PTR _f$[ebp]
mov    esp, ebp
pop    ebp
ret    0
?f@YAMM@Z ENDP ; f

```

A bit redundant. If it was compiled with /Ox flag there would be no `memcpy()` call, the `f` variable is used directly. But it is easier to understand by looking at the unoptimized version.

What would GCC 4.4.1 with -O3 do?

Listing 1.358: Optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```

; f(float)
public _Z1ff
_Z1ff proc near

var_4 = dword ptr -4
arg_0 = dword ptr 8

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
sub    esp, 4
mov    eax, [ebp+arg_0]
or     eax, 80000000h ; set minus sign
mov    edx, eax
and    eax, 807FFFFFh ; leave only sign and significand in EAX
shr    edx, 23 ; prepare exponent
add    edx, 2 ; add 2
movzx  edx, dl ; clear all bits except 7:0 in EDX
shl    edx, 23 ; shift new calculated exponent to its place
or     eax, edx ; join new exponent and original value without
exponent
mov    [ebp+var_4], eax
fld    [ebp+var_4]
leave
retn
_Z1ff endp

public main
main  proc near
push   ebp

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov    ebp, esp
and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
sub    esp, 10h
fld    ds:dword_8048614 ; -4.936
fstp   qword ptr [esp+8]
mov    dword ptr [esp+4], offset asc_8048610 ; "%f\n"
mov    dword ptr [esp], 1
call   __printf_chk
xor    eax, eax
leave
retn
main  endp

```

The `f()` function is almost understandable. However, what is interesting is that GCC was able to calculate the result of `f(1.234)` during compilation despite all this hodge-podge with the structure fields and prepared this argument to `printf()` as precalculated at compile time!

1.30.7 Exercises

- <http://challenges.re/71>
- <http://challenges.re/72>

1.31 The classic `struct` bug

This is a classic `struct` bug.

A sample definition:

```

struct test
{
    int field1;
    int field2;
};

```

And then C files:

```

void setter(struct test *t, int a, int b)
{
    t->field1=a;
    t->field2=b;
};

```

```

#include <stdio.h>

void printer(struct test *t)
{
    printf ("%d\n", t->field1);
    printf ("%d\n", t->field2);
};

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

So far so good.

Now you add a third field into the structure, some place between two fields:

```
struct test
{
    int field1;
    int inserted;
    int field2;
};
```

And you probably modify `setter()` function, but forget about `printer()`:

```
void setter(struct test *t, int a, int b, int c)
{
    t->field1=a;
    t->inserted=b;
    t->field2=c;
};
```

You compile your project, but the C file where `printer()` is residing, isn't recompiling, because your [IDE¹⁶⁰](#) or build system has no idea that module depends on a `test` struct definition. Maybe because `#include <new.h>` is omitted. Or maybe, `new.h` header file is included in `printer.c` via some other header file. The object file remains untouched ([IDE](#) thinks it doesn't need to be recompiled), while `setter()` function is already a new version. These two object files (old and new) eventually linked into an executable file.

Then you run it, and the `setter()` sets 3 fields at `+0`, `+4` and `+8` offsets. However, the `printer()` only knows about 2 fields, and gets them from `+0` and `+4` offsets during printing.

This leads to very obscure and nasty bugs. The reason is that [IDE](#) or build system or Makefile doesn't know the fact that both C files (or modules) depends on the header file with `test` definition. A popular remedy is to clean everything and recompile.

This is true for C++ classes as well, since they works just like structures: [3.21.1 on page 697](#).

This is a C/C++'s malady, and a source of criticism, yes. Many newer [PLs](#) has better support of modules and interfaces. But keep in mind, when C compiler was created: 1970s, on old PDP computers. So everything was simplified down to this by C creators.

1.32 Unions

C/C++ `union` is mostly used for interpreting a variable (or memory block) of one data type as a variable of another data type.

¹⁶⁰Integrated development environment

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.32.1 Pseudo-random number generator example

If we need float random numbers between 0 and 1, the simplest thing is to use a [PRNG](#) like the Mersenne twister. It produces random unsigned 32-bit values (in other words, it produces random 32 bits). Then we can transform this value to *float* and then divide it by RAND_MAX (0xFFFFFFFF in our case)—we getting a value in the 0..1 interval.

But as we know, division is slow. Also, we would like to issue as few FPU operations as possible. Can we get rid of the division?

Let's recall what a floating point number consists of: sign bit, significand bits and exponent bits. We just have to store random bits in all significand bits to get a random float number!

The exponent cannot be zero (the floating number is denormalized in this case), so we are storing 0b0111111 to exponent—this means that the exponent is 1. Then we filling the significand with random bits, set the sign bit to 0 (which means a positive number) and voilà. The generated numbers is to be between 1 and 2, so we must also subtract 1.

A very simple linear congruential random numbers generator is used in my example^{[161](#)}, it produces 32-bit numbers. The [PRNG](#) is initialized with the current time in UNIX timestamp format.

Here we represent the *float* type as an *union*—it is the C/C++ construction that enables us to interpret a piece of memory as different types. In our case, we are able to create a variable of type *union* and then access to it as it is *float* or as it is *uint32_t*. It can be said, it is just a hack. A dirty one.

The integer [PRNG](#) code is the same as we already considered: [1.29 on page 424](#). So this code in compiled form is omitted.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>
#include <time.h>

// integer PRNG definitions, data and routines:

// constants from the Numerical Recipes book
const uint32_t RNG_a=1664525;
const uint32_t RNG_c=1013904223;
uint32_t RNG_state; // global variable

void my_srand(uint32_t i)
{
    RNG_state=i;
};

uint32_t my_rand()
{
    RNG_state=RNG_state*RNG_a+RNG_c;
    return RNG_state;
```

¹⁶¹the idea was taken from: [URL](#)

```

};

// FPU PRNG definitions and routines:

union uint32_t _float
{
    uint32_t i;
    float f;
};

float float_rand()
{
    union uint32_t_float tmp;
    tmp.i=my_rand() & 0x007fffff | 0x3F800000;
    return tmp.f-1;
};

// test

int main()
{
    my_srand(time(NULL)); // PRNG initialization

    for (int i=0; i<100; i++)
        printf ("%f\n", float_rand());

    return 0;
}

```

x86

Listing 1.359: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

$SG4238 DB      '%f', 0aH, 00H

__real@3ff0000000000000 DQ 03ff000000000000r ; 1

tv130 = -4
_tmp$ = -4
?float_rand@@YAMXZ PROC
    push    ecx
    call    ?my_rand@@YAIXZ
; EAX=pseudorandom value
    and     eax, 8388607           ; 007fffffH
    or      eax, 1065353216       ; 3f800000H
; EAX=pseudorandom value & 0x007fffff | 0x3f800000
; store it into local stack:
    mov     DWORD PTR _tmp$[esp+4], eax
; reload it as float point number:
    fld     DWORD PTR _tmp$[esp+4]
; subtract 1.0:
    fsub   QWORD PTR __real@3ff000000000000
; store value we got into local stack and reload it:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; these instructions are redundant:
fstp    DWORD PTR tv130[esp+4]
fld     DWORD PTR tv130[esp+4]
pop    ecx
ret    0
?float_rand@@YAMXZ ENDP

_main  PROC
push   esi
xor    eax, eax
call   _time
push   eax
call   ?my_srand@@YAXI@Z
add    esp, 4
mov    esi, 100
$LL3@main:
call   ?float_rand@@YAMXZ
sub    esp, 8
fstp   QWORD PTR [esp]
push   OFFSET $SG4238
call   _printf
add    esp, 12
dec    esi
jne   SHORT $LL3@main
xor    eax, eax
pop    esi
ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

Function names are so strange here because this example was compiled as C++ and this is name mangling in C++, we will talk about it later: [3.21.1 on page 698](#). If we compile this in MSVC 2012, it uses the SIMD instructions for the FPU, read more about it here: [1.38.5 on page 554](#).

ARM (ARM mode)

Listing 1.360: Optimizing GCC 4.6.3 (IDA)

```

float_rand
        STMFD   SP!, {R3,LR}
        BL      my_rand
; R0=pseudorandom value
        FLDS   S0, =1.0
; S0=1.0
        BIC    R3, R0, #0xFF000000
        BIC    R3, R3, #0x800000
        ORR    R3, R3, #0x3F800000
; R3=pseudorandom value & 0x007fffff | 0x3f800000
; copy from R3 to FPU (register S15).
; it behaves like bitwise copy, no conversion done:
        FMSR   S15, R3
; subtract 1.0 and leave result in S0:
        FSUBS  S0, S15, S0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

LDMFD   SP!, {R3,PC}

flt_5C      DCFS 1.0

main
    STMFD   SP!, {R4,LR}
    MOV     R0, #0
    BL     time
    BL     my_srand
    MOV     R4, #0x64 ; 'd'

loc_78
    BL     float_rand
; S0=pseudorandom value
    LDR     R0, =aF          ; "%f"
; convert float type value into double type value (printf() will need it):
    FCVTDS D7, S0
; bitwise copy from D7 into R2/R3 pair of registers (for printf()):
    FMRRD   R2, R3, D7
    BL     printf
    SUBS   R4, R4, #1
    BNE    loc_78
    MOV     R0, R4
    LDMFD   SP!, {R4,PC}

aF           DCB "%f", 0xA, 0

```

We'll also make a dump in objdump and we'll see that the FPU instructions have different names than in [IDA](#). Apparently, IDA and binutils developers used different manuals? Perhaps it would be good to know both instruction name variants.

Listing 1.361: Optimizing GCC 4.6.3 (objdump)

```

00000038 <float_rand>:
 38: e92d4008      push   {r3, lr}
 3c: ebfffffe      bl    10 <my_rand>
 40: ed9f0a05      vldr   s0, [pc, #20] ; 5c <float_rand+0x24>
 44: e3c034ff      bic    r3, r0, #-16777216 ; 0xff000000
 48: e3c33502      bic    r3, r3, #8388608 ; 0x800000
 4c: e38335fe      orr    r3, r3, #1065353216 ; 0x3f800000
 50: ee073a90      vmov   s15, r3
 54: ee370ac0      vsub.f32 s0, s15, s0
 58: e8bd8008      pop    {r3, pc}
 5c: 3f800000      svccc  0x00800000

00000000 <main>:
 0:  e92d4010      push   {r4, lr}
 4:  e3a00000      mov    r0, #0
 8:  ebfffffe      bl    0 <time>
 c:  ebfffffe      bl    0 <main>
10:  e3a04064      mov    r4, #100 ; 0x64
14:  ebfffffe      bl    38 <main+0x38>
18:  e59f0018      ldr    r0, [pc, #24] ; 38 <main+0x38>
1c:  eeb77ac0      vcvt.f64.f32 d7, s0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

20:	ec532b17	vmov	r2, r3, d7
24:	ebfffffe	bl	0 <printf>
28:	e2544001	subs	r4, r4, #1
2c:	1affffff8	bne	14 <main+0x14>
30:	e1a00004	mov	r0, r4
34:	e8bd8010	pop	{r4, pc}
38:	00000000	andeq	r0, r0, r0

The instructions at 0x5c in `float_rand()` and at 0x38 in `main()` are (pseudo-)random noise.

1.32.2 Calculating machine epsilon

The machine epsilon is the smallest possible value the [FPU](#) can work with. The more bits allocated for floating point number, the smaller the machine epsilon. It is $2^{-23} = 1.19e - 07$ for *float* and $2^{-52} = 2.22e - 16$ for *double*. See also: [Wikipedia article](#).

It's interesting, how easy it's to calculate the machine epsilon:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

union uint_float
{
    uint32_t i;
    float f;
};

float calculate_machine_epsilon(float start)
{
    union uint_float v;
    v.f=start;
    v.i++;
    return v.f-start;
}

void main()
{
    printf ("%g\n", calculate_machine_epsilon(1.0));
}
```

What we do here is just treat the fraction part of the IEEE 754 number as integer and add 1 to it. The resulting floating number is equal to *starting_value + machine_epsilon*, so we just have to subtract the starting value (using floating point arithmetic) to measure, what difference one bit reflects in the single precision (*float*). The *union* serves here as a way to access IEEE 754 number as a regular integer. Adding 1 to it in fact adds 1 to the *fraction* part of the number, however, needless to say, overflow is possible, which will add another 1 to the exponent part.

x86

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 1.362: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

tv130 = 8
_v$ = 8
_start$ = 8
_calculate_machine_epsilon PROC
    fld    DWORD PTR _start$[esp-4]
; this instruction is redundant:
    fst    DWORD PTR _v$[esp-4]
    inc    DWORD PTR _v$[esp-4]
    fsubr   DWORD PTR _v$[esp-4]
; this instruction pair is also redundant:
    fstp   DWORD PTR tv130[esp-4]
    fld    DWORD PTR tv130[esp-4]
    ret    0
_calculate_machine_epsilon ENDP

```

The second FST instruction is redundant: there is no necessity to store the input value in the same place (the compiler decided to allocate the *v* variable at the same point in the local stack as the input argument). Then it is incremented with INC, as it is a normal integer variable. Then it is loaded into the FPU as a 32-bit IEEE 754 number, FSUBR does the rest of job and the resulting value is stored in ST0. The last FSTP/FLD instruction pair is redundant, but the compiler didn't optimize it out.

ARM64

Let's extend our example to 64-bit:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

typedef union
{
    uint64_t i;
    double d;
} uint_double;

double calculate_machine_epsilon(double start)
{
    uint_double v;
    v.d=start;
    v.i++;
    return v.d-start;
}

void main()
{
    printf ("%g\n", calculate_machine_epsilon(1.0));
}

```

ARM64 has no instruction that can add a number to a FPU D-register, so the input value (that came in D0) is first copied into [GPR](#), incremented, copied to FPU register D1, and then subtraction occurs.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 1.363: Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64

```
calculate_machine_epsilon:
    fmov    x0, d0      ; load input value of double type into X0
    add     x0, x0, 1    ; X0++
    fmov    d1, x0      ; move it to FPU register
    fsub    d0, d1, d0   ; subtract
    ret
```

See also this example compiled for x64 with SIMD instructions: [1.38.4 on page 553](#).

MIPS

The new instruction here is MTC1 (“Move To Coprocessor 1”), it just transfers data from [GPR](#) to the FPU’s registers.

Listing 1.364: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
calculate_machine_epsilon:
    mfc1    $v0, $f12
    or      $at, $zero ; NOP
    addiu   $v1, $v0, 1
    mtc1    $v1, $f2
    jr      $ra
    sub.s   $f0, $f2, $f12 ; branch delay slot
```

Conclusion

It’s hard to say whether someone may need this trickery in real-world code, but as was mentioned many times in this book, this example serves well for explaining the IEEE 754 format and *unions* in C/C++.

1.32.3 FSCALE instruction replacement

Agner Fog in his *Optimizing subroutines in assembly language / An optimization guide for x86 platforms* work ¹⁶² states that FSCALE [FPU](#) instruction (calculating 2^n) may be slow on many CPUs, and he offers faster replacement.

Here is my translation of his assembly code to C/C++:

```
#include <stdint.h>
#include <stdio.h>

union uint_float
{
    uint32_t i;
    float f;
};

float flt_2n(int N)
```

¹⁶²http://www.agner.org/optimize/optimizing_assembly.pdf

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

{
    union uint_float tmp;
    tmp.i=(N<<23)+0x3f800000;
    return tmp.f;
};

struct float_as_struct
{
    unsigned int fraction : 23;
    unsigned int exponent : 8;
    unsigned int sign : 1;
};

float flt_2n_v2(int N)
{
    struct float_as_struct tmp;

    tmp.fraction=0;
    tmp.sign=0;
    tmp.exponent=N+0x7f;
    return *(float*)(&tmp);
};

union uint64_double
{
    uint64_t i;
    double d;
};

double dbl_2n(int N)
{
    union uint64_double tmp;

    tmp.i=((uint64_t)N<<52)+0x3ff0000000000000UL;
    return tmp.d;
};

struct double_as_struct
{
    uint64_t fraction : 52;
    int exponent : 11;
    int sign : 1;
};

double dbl_2n_v2(int N)
{
    struct double_as_struct tmp;

    tmp.fraction=0;
    tmp.sign=0;
    tmp.exponent=N+0x3ff;
    return *(double*)(&tmp);
};

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

};

int main()
{
    // 211 = 2048
    printf ("%f\n", flt_2n(11));
    printf ("%f\n", flt_2n_v2(11));
    printf ("%lf\n", dbl_2n(11));
    printf ("%lf\n", dbl_2n_v2(11));
}

```

FSCALE instruction may be faster in your environment, but still, it's a good example of *union*'s and the fact that exponent is stored in 2^n form, so an input n value is shifted to the exponent in IEEE 754 encoded number. Then exponent is then corrected with addition of 0x3f800000 or 0x3ff0000000000000.

The same can be done without shift using *struct*, but internally, shift operations still occurred.

1.32.4 Fast square root calculation

Another well-known algorithm where *float* is interpreted as integer is fast calculation of square root.

Listing 1.365: The source code is taken from Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Methods_of_computing_square_roots

```

/* Assumes that float is in the IEEE 754 single precision floating point ↴
   ↴ format
 * and that int is 32 bits. */
float sqrt_approx(float z)
{
    int val_int = *(int*)&z; /* Same bits, but as an int */
    /*
     * To justify the following code, prove that
     *
     * (((val_int / 2m) - b) / 2) + b) * 2m = ((val_int - 2m) / 2) + (((
     ↴ b + 1) / 2) * 2m)
     *
     * where
     *
     * b = exponent bias
     * m = number of mantissa bits
     *
     * .
     */
    val_int -= 1 << 23; /* Subtract 2m. */
    val_int >>= 1; /* Divide by 2. */
    val_int += 1 << 29; /* Add ((b + 1) / 2) * 2m. */

    return *(float*)&val_int; /* Interpret again as float */
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

As an exercise, you can try to compile this function and to understand, how it works.

There is also well-known algorithm of fast calculation of $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$. Algorithm became popular, supposedly, because it was used in Quake III Arena.

Algorithm description can be found in Wikipedia: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fast_inverse_square_root.

1.33 Pointers to functions

A pointer to a function, as any other pointer, is just the address of the function's start in its code segment.

They are often used for calling callback functions.

Well-known examples are:

- `qsort()`, `atexit()` from the standard C library;
- *NIX OS signals.
- thread starting: `CreateThread()` (win32), `pthread_create()` (POSIX);
- lots of win32 functions, like `EnumChildWindows()`.
- lots of places in the Linux kernel, for example the filesystem driver functions are called via callbacks.
- The GCC plugin functions are also called via callbacks.

So, the `qsort()` function is an implementation of quicksort in the C/C++ standard library. The function is able to sort anything, any type of data, as long as you have a function to compare these two elements and `qsort()` is able to call it.

The comparison function can be defined as:

```
int (*compare)(const void *, const void *)
```

Let's use the following example:

```

1 /* ex3 Sorting ints with qsort */
2
3 #include <stdio.h>
4 #include <stdlib.h>
5
6 int comp(const void * _a, const void * _b)
7 {
8     const int *a=(const int *)_a;
9     const int *b=(const int *)_b;
10
11    if (*a==*b)
12        return 0;
13    else
14        if (*a < *b)
15            return -1;

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

16     else
17         return 1;
18 }
19
20 int main(int argc, char* argv[])
21 {
22     int numbers[10]={1892,45,200,-98,4087,5,-12345,1087,88,-100000};
23     int i;
24
25     /* Sort the array */
26     qsort(numbers,10,sizeof(int),comp) ;
27     for (i=0;i<9;i++)
28         printf("Number = %d\n",numbers[ i ]) ;
29     return 0;
30 }
```

1.33.1 MSVC

Let's compile it in MSVC 2010 (some parts were omitted for the sake of brevity) with /Ox option:

Listing 1.366: Optimizing MSVC 2010: /GS- /MD

```

__a$ = 8                                ; size = 4
__b$ = 12                               ; size = 4
_comp PROC
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR __a$[esp-4]
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR __b$[esp-4]
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [eax]
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    cmp    eax, ecx
    jne    SHORT $LN4@comp
    xor    eax, eax
    ret    0
$LN4@comp:
    xor    edx, edx
    cmp    eax, ecx
    setge dl
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR [edx+edx-1]
    ret    0
_comp ENDP

_numbers$ = -40                           ; size = 40
_argc$ = 8                               ; size = 4
_argv$ = 12                              ; size = 4
_main PROC
    sub    esp, 40                          ; 000000028H
    push   esi
    push   OFFSET _comp
    push   4
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+52]
    push   10                             ; 0000000aH
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push    eax
mov     DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+60], 1892      ; 000000764H
mov     DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+64], 45          ; 00000002dH
mov     DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+68], 200         ; 0000000c8H
mov     DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+72], -98        ; ffffff9eH
mov     DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+76], 4087        ; 00000ff7H
mov     DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+80], 5            ; ffffffc7H
mov     DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+84], -12345       ; 0000043fH
mov     DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+88], 1087        ; 00000058H
mov     DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+92], 88           ; 0000000000000000
mov     DWORD PTR _numbers$[esp+96], -100000       ; ffe7960H
call    _qsort
add    esp, 16                                     ; 00000010H
...

```

Nothing surprising so far. As a fourth argument, the address of label `_comp` is passed, which is just a place where `comp()` is located, or, in other words, the address of the very first instruction of that function.

How does `qsort()` call it?

Let's take a look at this function, located in `MSVCR80.DLL` (a MSVC DLL module with C standard library functions):

Listing 1.367: `MSVCR80.DLL`

```

.text:7816CBF0 ; void __cdecl qsort(void *, unsigned int, unsigned int, int
    (__cdecl *)(const void *, const void *))
.text:7816CBF0                 public _qsort
.text:7816CBF0 _qsort          proc near
.text:7816CBF0
.text:7816CBF0 lo              = dword ptr -104h
.text:7816CBF0 hi              = dword ptr -100h
.text:7816CBF0 var_FC          = dword ptr -0FCh
.text:7816CBF0 stkptr          = dword ptr -0F8h
.text:7816CBF0 lostk           = dword ptr -0F4h
.text:7816CBF0 histk           = dword ptr -7Ch
.text:7816CBF0 base             = dword ptr 4
.text:7816CBF0 num              = dword ptr 8
.text:7816CBF0 width            = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:7816CBF0 comp             = dword ptr 10h
.text:7816CBF0
.text:7816CBF0                 sub    esp, 100h
....
.text:7816CCE0 loc_7816CCE0:          ; CODE XREF: _qsort+B1
.text:7816CCE0                 shr    eax, 1
.text:7816CCE2                 imul   eax, ebp
.text:7816CCE5                 add    eax, ebx
.text:7816CCE7                 mov    edi, eax
.text:7816CCE9                 push   edi
.text:7816CCEA                 push   ebx
.text:7816CCEB                 call   [esp+118h+comp]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

.text:7816CCF2	add	esp, 8
.text:7816CCF5	test	eax, eax
.text:7816CCF7	jle	short loc_7816CD04

comp—is the fourth function argument. Here the control gets passed to the address in the comp argument. Before it, two arguments are prepared for comp(). Its result is checked after its execution.

That's why it is dangerous to use pointers to functions. First of all, if you call qsort() with an incorrect function pointer, qsort() may pass control flow to an incorrect point, the process may crash and this bug will be hard to find.

The second reason is that the callback function types must comply strictly, calling the wrong function with wrong arguments of wrong types may lead to serious problems, however, the crashing of the process is not a problem here —the problem is how to determine the reason for the crash —because the compiler may be silent about the potential problems while compiling.

MSVC + OllyDbg

Let's load our example into OllyDbg and set a breakpoint on `comp()`. We can see how the values are compared at the first `comp()` call:

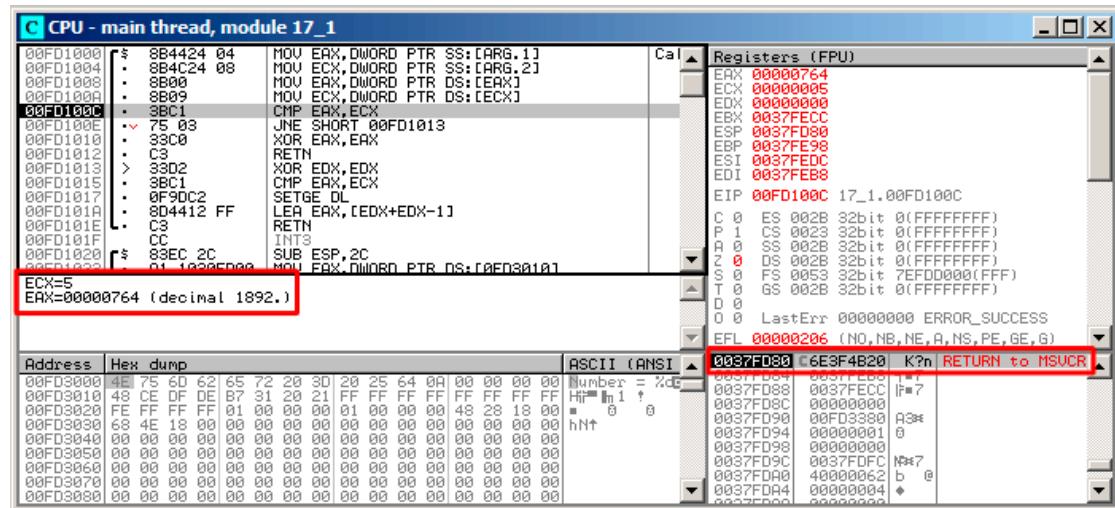


Figure 1.109: OllyDbg: first call of `comp()`

OllyDbg shows the compared values in the window under the code window, for convenience. We can also see that the `SP` points to `RA`, where the `qsort()` function is (located in `MSVCR100.DLL`).

By tracing (F8) until the RETN instruction and pressing F8 one more time, we return to the qsort() function:

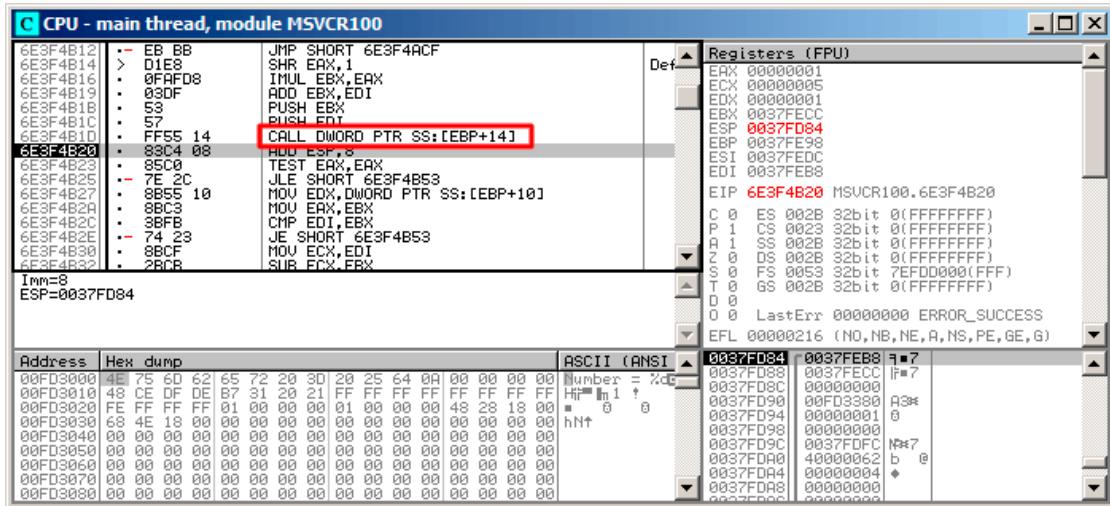


Figure 1.110: OllyDbg: the code in qsort() right after comp() call

That has been a call to the comparison function.

Here is also a screenshot of the moment of the second call of `comp()`—now values that have to be compared are different:

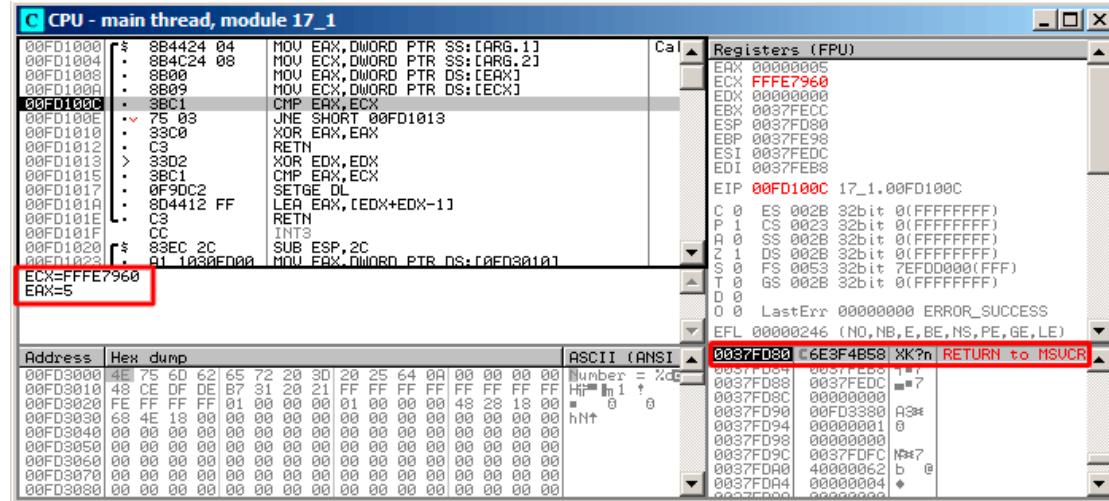


Figure 1.111: OllyDbg: second call of `comp()`

MSVC + tracer

Let's also see which pairs are compared. These 10 numbers are being sorted: 1892, 45, 200, -98, 4087, 5, -12345, 1087, 88, -100000.

We got the address of the first CMP instruction in `comp()`, it is 0x0040100C and we've set a breakpoint on it:

```
tracer.exe -l:17_1.exe bpx=17_1.exe!0x0040100C
```

Now we get some information about the registers at the breakpoint:

```
PID=4336|New process 17_1.exe
(0) 17_1.exe!0x40100c
EAX=0x00000764 EBX=0x0051f7c8 ECX=0x00000005 EDX=0x00000000
ESI=0x0051f7d8 EDI=0x0051f7b4 EBP=0x0051f794 ESP=0x0051f67c
EIP=0x0028100c
FLAGS=IF
(0) 17_1.exe!0x40100c
EAX=0x00000005 EBX=0x0051f7c8 ECX=0xffffe7960 EDX=0x00000000
ESI=0x0051f7d8 EDI=0x0051f7b4 EBP=0x0051f794 ESP=0x0051f67c
EIP=0x0028100c
FLAGS=PF_ZF_IF
(0) 17_1.exe!0x40100c
EAX=0x00000764 EBX=0x0051f7c8 ECX=0x00000005 EDX=0x00000000
ESI=0x0051f7d8 EDI=0x0051f7b4 EBP=0x0051f794 ESP=0x0051f67c
EIP=0x0028100c
FLAGS=CF_PF_ZF_IF
...
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Let's filter out EAX and ECX and we got:

```
EAX=0x00000764 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x00000005 ECX=0xffffe7960
EAX=0x00000764 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x0000002d ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x00000058 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x0000043f ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xfffffcfc7 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x000000c8 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xffffffff9e ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x00000ff7 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0x00000ff7 ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xfffffff9e ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xffffffff9e ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xfffffcfc7 ECX=0xffffe7960
EAX=0x00000005 ECX=0xfffffcfc7
EAX=0xfffffff9e ECX=0x00000005
EAX=0xfffffcfc7 ECX=0xffffe7960
EAX=0xfffffff9e ECX=0xfffffcfc7
EAX=0xfffffcfc7 ECX=0xffffe7960
EAX=0x000000c8 ECX=0x00000ff7
EAX=0x0000002d ECX=0x00000ff7
EAX=0x0000043f ECX=0x00000ff7
EAX=0x00000058 ECX=0x00000ff7
EAX=0x00000764 ECX=0x00000ff7
EAX=0x000000c8 ECX=0x00000764
EAX=0x0000002d ECX=0x00000764
EAX=0x0000043f ECX=0x00000764
EAX=0x00000058 ECX=0x00000764
EAX=0x000000c8 ECX=0x00000058
EAX=0x0000002d ECX=0x000000c8
EAX=0x0000043f ECX=0x000000c8
EAX=0x000000c8 ECX=0x00000058
EAX=0x0000002d ECX=0x000000c8
EAX=0x0000002d ECX=0x00000058
```

That's 34 pairs. Therefore, the quick sort algorithm needs 34 comparison operations to sort these 10 numbers.

MSVC + tracer (code coverage)

We can also use the tracer's feature to collect all possible register values and show them in [IDA](#).

Let's trace all instructions in `comp()`:

```
tracer.exe -l:17_1.exe bpf=17_1.exe!0x00401000,trace:cc
```

We get an .idc-script for loading into [IDA](#) and load it:

```
.text:00401000
.text:00401000 ; int __cdecl PtFuncCompare(const void *, const void *)
.text:00401000 PtFuncCompare proc near ; DATA XREF: _main+5↓o
.text:00401000
.text:00401000 arg_0      = dword ptr 4
.text:00401000 arg_4      = dword ptr 8
.text:00401000
.text:00401000     mov    eax, [esp+arg_0] ; [ESP+4]=0x45F7ec..0x45F810(step=4), L"?\\x0b?
.text:00401004     mov    ecx, [esp+arg_4] ; [ESP+8]=0x45F7ec..0x45F7F4(step=4), 0x45F7Fc
.text:00401008     mov    eax, [eax]      ; [EAX]=5, 0x2d, 0x58, 0xc8, 0x43F, 0x764, 0xFF
.text:0040100A     mov    ecx, [ecx]      ; [ECX]=5, 0x58, 0xc8, 0x764, 0xFF7, 0xffffe7960
.text:0040100C     cmp    eax, ecx      ; EAX=5, 0x2d, 0x58, 0xc8, 0x43F, 0x764, 0xFF7,
.text:0040100E     jnz    short loc_401013 ; ZF=False
.text:00401010     xor    eax, eax
.text:00401012     retn
.text:00401013 ;
.text:00401013 loc_401013:          ; CODE XREF: PtFuncCompare+E↑j
.text:00401013     xor    edx, edx
.text:00401015     cmp    eax, ecx      ; EAX=5, 0x2d, 0x58, 0xc8, 0x43F, 0x764, 0xFF7,
.text:00401017     setnl dl             ; SF=False,true OF=False
.text:0040101A     lea    eax, [edx+edx-1]
.text:0040101E     retn
.text:0040101E PtFuncCompare endp
.text:0040101F
```

Figure 1.112: tracer and IDA. N.B.: some values are cut at right

[IDA](#) gave the function a name (`PtFuncCompare`)—because [IDA](#) sees that the pointer to this function is passed to `qsort()`.

We see that the *a* and *b* pointers are pointing to various places in the array, but the step between them is 4, as 32-bit values are stored in the array.

We see that the instructions at `0x401010` and `0x401012` were never executed (so they left as white): indeed, `comp()` has never returned 0, because there no equal elements in the array.

1.33.2 GCC

Not a big difference:

Listing 1.368: GCC

```
lea    eax, [esp+40h+var_28]
mov    [esp+40h+var_40], eax
mov    [esp+40h+var_28], 764h
mov    [esp+40h+var_24], 2Dh
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov    [esp+40h+var_20], 0C8h
mov    [esp+40h+var_1C], 0FFFFFF9Eh
mov    [esp+40h+var_18], 0FF7h
mov    [esp+40h+var_14], 5
mov    [esp+40h+var_10], 0FFFFFCFC7h
mov    [esp+40h+var_C], 43Fh
mov    [esp+40h+var_8], 58h
mov    [esp+40h+var_4], 0FFE7960h
mov    [esp+40h+var_34], offset comp
mov    [esp+40h+var_38], 4
mov    [esp+40h+var_3C], 0Ah
call   _qsort

```

comp() function:

```

public comp
comp    proc near

arg_0     = dword ptr 8
arg_4     = dword ptr 0Ch

push    ebp
mov     ebp, esp
mov     eax, [ebp+arg_4]
mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
mov     edx, [eax]
xor     eax, eax
cmp     [ecx], edx
jnz    short loc_8048458
pop     ebp
retn

loc_8048458:
setnl  al
movzx  eax, al
lea    eax, [eax+eax-1]
pop    ebp
retn
comp    endp

```

The implementation of qsort() is located in `libc.so.6` and it is in fact just a wrapper¹⁶³ for `qsort_r()`.

In turn, it is calling `quicksort()`, where our defined function is called via a passed pointer:

Listing 1.369: (file `libc.so.6`, glibc version—2.10.1)

```

...
.text:0002DDF6          mov     edx, [ebp+arg_10]
.text:0002DDF9          mov     [esp+4], esi
.text:0002DDFD          mov     [esp], edi
.text:0002DE00          mov     [esp+8], edx

```

¹⁶³a concept like [thunk function](#)

.text:0002DE04	call [ebp+arg_C]
...	

GCC + GDB (with source code)

Obviously, we have the C-source code of our example ([1.33 on page 483](#)), so we can set a breakpoint (*b*) on line number (11—the line where the first comparison occurs). We also have to compile the example with debugging information included (-g), so the table with addresses and corresponding line numbers is present.

We can also print values using variable names (p): the debugging information also has tells us which register and/or local stack element contains which variable.

We can also see the stack (bt) and find out that there is some intermediate function `msort_with_tmp()` used in Glibc.

Listing 1.370: GDB session

```
dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ gcc 17_1.c -g
dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ gdb ./a.out
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
Copyright (C) 2013 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
...
Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/a.out...done.
(gdb) b 17_1.c:11
Breakpoint 1 at 0x804845f: file 17_1.c, line 11.
(gdb) run
Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon./a.out

Breakpoint 1, comp (_a=0xbffff0f8, _b=_b@entry=0xbffff0fc) at 17_1.c:11
11      if (*a==*b)
(gdb) p *a
$1 = 1892
(gdb) p *b
$2 = 45
(gdb) c
Continuing.

Breakpoint 1, comp (_a=0xbffff104, _b=_b@entry=0xbffff108) at 17_1.c:11
11      if (*a==*b)
(gdb) p *a
$3 = -98
(gdb) p *b
$4 = 4087
(gdb) bt
#0  comp (_a=0xbffff0f8, _b=_b@entry=0xbffff0fc) at 17_1.c:11
#1  0xb7e42872 in msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=2)
    at msort.c:65
#2  0xb7e4273e in msort_with_tmp (n=2, b=0xbffff0f8, p=0xbffff07c) at msort.c:45
#3  msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=2)
    at msort.c:53
```

```
#4 0xb7e4273e in msort_with_tmp (n=5, b=0xbffff0f8, p=0xbffff07c) at msort.c:45
#5 msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=10) at msort.c:53
#6 0xb7e42cef in msort_with_tmp (n=10, b=0xbffff0f8, p=0xbffff07c) at msort.c:45
#7 __GI_qsort_r (b=b@entry=0xbffff0f8, n=n@entry=10, s=s@entry=4, cmp=cmp@entry=0x804844d <comp>, arg=arg@entry=0x0) at msort.c:297
#8 0xb7e42dcf in __GI_qsort (b=0xbffff0f8, n=10, s=4, cmp=0x804844d <comp>) at msort.c:307
#9 0x0804850d in main (argc=1, argv=0xbffff1c4) at 17_1.c:26
(gdb)
```

GCC + GDB (no source code)

But often there is no source code at all, so we can disassemble the `comp()` function (`disas`), find the very first CMP instruction and set a breakpoint (`b`) at that address.

At each breakpoint, we are going to dump all register contents (`info registers`). The stack information is also available (`bt`),

but partially: there is no line number information for `comp()`.

Listing 1.371: GDB session

```
dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ gcc 17_1.c
dennis@ubuntuvm:~/polygon$ gdb ./a.out
GNU gdb (GDB) 7.6.1-ubuntu
Copyright (C) 2013 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
...
Reading symbols from /home/dennis/polygon/a.out...(no debugging symbols found)...done.
(gdb) set disassembly-flavor intel
(gdb) disas comp
Dump of assembler code for function comp:
0x0804844d <+0>:    push    ebp
0x0804844e <+1>:    mov     ebp,esp
0x08048450 <+3>:    sub     esp,0x10
0x08048453 <+6>:    mov     eax,DWORD PTR [ebp+0x8]
0x08048456 <+9>:    mov     DWORD PTR [ebp-0x8],eax
0x08048459 <+12>:   mov     eax,DWORD PTR [ebp+0xc]
0x0804845c <+15>:   mov     DWORD PTR [ebp-0x4],eax
0x0804845f <+18>:   mov     eax,DWORD PTR [ebp-0x8]
0x08048462 <+21>:   mov     edx,DWORD PTR [eax]
0x08048464 <+23>:   mov     eax,DWORD PTR [ebp-0x4]
0x08048467 <+26>:   mov     eax,DWORD PTR [eax]
0x08048469 <+28>:   cmp     edx, eax
0x0804846b <+30>:   jne     0x8048474 <comp+39>
0x0804846d <+32>:   mov     eax,0x0
0x08048472 <+37>:   jmp     0x804848e <comp+65>
0x08048474 <+39>:   mov     eax,DWORD PTR [ebp-0x8]
0x08048477 <+42>:   mov     edx,DWORD PTR [eax]
0x08048479 <+44>:   mov     eax,DWORD PTR [ebp-0x4]
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

0x0804847c <+47>:    mov    eax,DWORD PTR [eax]
0x0804847e <+49>:    cmp    edx, eax
0x08048480 <+51>:    jge    0x8048489 <comp+60>
0x08048482 <+53>:    mov    eax,0xffffffff
0x08048487 <+58>:    jmp    0x804848e <comp+65>
0x08048489 <+60>:    mov    eax,0x1
0x0804848e <+65>:    leave
0x0804848f <+66>:    ret

End of assembler dump.
(gdb) b *0x08048469
Breakpoint 1 at 0x8048469
(gdb) run
Starting program: /home/dennis/polygon/.a.out

Breakpoint 1, 0x08048469 in comp ()
(gdb) info registers
eax            0x2d      45
ecx            0xbffff0f8      -1073745672
edx            0x764     1892
ebx            0xb7fc0000      -1208221696
esp            0xbffffeeb8      0xbffffeeb8
ebp            0xbffffeec8      0xbffffeec8
esi            0xbffff0fc      -1073745668
edi            0xbffff010      -1073745904
eip            0x8048469      0x8048469 <comp+28>
eflags          0x286      [ PF SF IF ]
cs              0x73       115
ss              0x7b       123
ds              0x7b       123
es              0x7b       123
fs              0x0        0
gs              0x33       51
(gdb) c
Continuing.

Breakpoint 1, 0x08048469 in comp ()
(gdb) info registers
eax            0xff7      4087
ecx            0xbffff104      -1073745660
edx            0xfffffff9e      -98
ebx            0xb7fc0000      -1208221696
esp            0xbffffee58      0xbffffee58
ebp            0xbffffee68      0xbffffee68
esi            0xbffff108      -1073745656
edi            0xbffff010      -1073745904
eip            0x8048469      0x8048469 <comp+28>
eflags          0x282      [ SF IF ]
cs              0x73       115
ss              0x7b       123
ds              0x7b       123
es              0x7b       123
fs              0x0        0
gs              0x33       51

```

```
(gdb) c
Continuing.

Breakpoint 1, 0x08048469 in comp ()
(gdb) info registers
eax            0xffffffff9e      -98
ecx            0xbfffff100     -1073745664
edx            0xc8          200
ebx            0xb7fc0000     -1208221696
esp            0xbffffeeb8     0xbffffeeb8
ebp            0xbffffeec8     0xbffffeec8
esi            0xbfffff104     -1073745660
edi            0xbfffff010     -1073745904
eip            0x8048469      0x8048469 <comp+28>
eflags          0x286      [ PF SF IF ]
cs              0x73        115
ss              0x7b        123
ds              0x7b        123
es              0x7b        123
fs              0x0         0
gs              0x33        51
(gdb) bt
#0  0x08048469 in comp ()
#1  0xb7e42872 in msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbfffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbfffff0f8, n=n@entry=2)
   ↳ xfffffff0f8, n=n@entry=2)
   at msort.c:65
#2  0xb7e4273e in msort_with_tmp (n=2, b=0xbfffff0f8, p=0xbfffff07c) at msort.c:45
#3  msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbfffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbfffff0f8, n=n@entry=5)
   ↳ =5) at msort.c:53
#4  0xb7e4273e in msort_with_tmp (n=5, b=0xbfffff0f8, p=0xbfffff07c) at msort.c:45
#5  msort_with_tmp (p=p@entry=0xbfffff07c, b=b@entry=0xbfffff0f8, n=n@entry=10)
   ↳ =10) at msort.c:53
#6  0xb7e42cef in msort_with_tmp (n=10, b=0xbfffff0f8, p=0xbfffff07c) at msort.c:45
#7  __GI_qsort_r (b=b@entry=0xbfffff0f8, n=n@entry=10, s=s@entry=4, cmp=cmp@entry=0x804844d <comp>,
   ↳ cmp@entry=0x804844d <comp>,
   ↳ arg=arg@entry=0x0) at msort.c:297
#8  0xb7e42dcf in __GI_qsort (b=0xbfffff0f8, n=10, s=4, cmp=0x804844d <comp>)
   ↳ >) at msort.c:307
#9  0x0804850d in main ()
```

1.33.3 Danger of pointers to functions

As we can see, `qsort()` function expects a pointer to function which takes two `void*` arguments and returning integer. If you have several comparison functions in your code (one compares string, another—integers, etc), it's very easy to mix them up with each other. You could try to sort array of string using function which compares integers, and compiler will not warn you about bug.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.34 64-bit values in 32-bit environment

In a 32-bit environment, GPR's are 32-bit, so 64-bit values are stored and passed as 32-bit value pairs ¹⁶⁴.

1.34.1 Returning of 64-bit value

```
#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t f ()
{
    return 0x1234567890ABCDEF;
}
```

x86

In a 32-bit environment, 64-bit values are returned from functions in the EDX:EAX register pair.

Listing 1.372: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_f      PROC
        mov     eax, -1867788817 ; 90abcdefH
        mov     edx, 305419896   ; 12345678H
        ret     0
_f      ENDP
```

ARM

A 64-bit value is returned in the R0-R1 register pair (R1 is for the high part and R0 for the low part):

Listing 1.373: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
||f|| PROC
    LDR    r0, |L0.12|
    LDR    r1, |L0.16|
    BX    lr
ENDP

|L0.12|
DCD    0x90abcdef
|L0.16|
DCD    0x12345678
```

¹⁶⁴By the way, 32-bit values are passed as pairs in 16-bit environment in the same way: [3.34.4 on page 839](#)

MIPS

A 64-bit value is returned in the V0-V1 (\$2-\$3) register pair (V0 (\$2) is for the high part and V1 (\$3) for the low part):

Listing 1.374: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (assembly listing)

```
li      $3, -1867841536    # 0xfffffffff90ab0000
li      $2, 305397760     # 0x12340000
ori      $3,$3,0xcdef
j       $31
ori      $2,$2,0x5678
```

Listing 1.375: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
lui    $v1, 0x90AB
lui    $v0, 0x1234
li     $v1, 0x90ABCDEF
jr     $ra
li     $v0, 0x12345678
```

1.34.2 Arguments passing, addition, subtraction

```
#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t f_add (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a+b;
};

void f_add_test ()
{
#ifdef __GNUC__
    printf ("%lld\n", f_add(12345678901234, 2345678901234));
#else
    printf ("%I64d\n", f_add(12345678901234, 2345678901234));
#endif
};

uint64_t f_sub (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a-b;
};
```

x86

Listing 1.376: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob1

```
_a$ = 8          ; size = 8
_b$ = 16         ; size = 8
_f_add PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    add    eax, DWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp]
    adc    edx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp]
    ret    0
_f_add ENDP

_f_add_test PROC
    push   5461          ; 00001555H
    push   1972608889    ; 75939f79H
    push   2874          ; 00000b3aH
    push   1942892530    ; 73ce2ff2H
    call   _f_add
    push   edx
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG1436 ; '%I64d', 0aH, 00H
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 28
    ret    0
_f_add_test ENDP

_f_sub PROC
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    sub    eax, DWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp]
    sbb    edx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp]
    ret    0
_f_sub ENDP

```

We can see in the `f_add_test()` function that each 64-bit value is passed using two 32-bit values, high part first, then low part.

Addition and subtraction occur in pairs as well.

In addition, the low 32-bit part are added first. If carry has been occurred while adding, the CF flag is set.

The following ADC instruction adds the high parts of the values, and also adds 1 if *CF* = 1.

Subtraction also occurs in pairs. The first SUB may also turn on the CF flag, which is to be checked in the subsequent SBB instruction: if the carry flag is on, then 1 is also to be subtracted from the result.

It is easy to see how the `f_add()` function result is then passed to `printf()`.

Listing 1.377: GCC 4.8.1 -O1 -fno-inline

```

_f_add:
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+16]
    add    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
    adc    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
    ret

_f_add_test:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

sub    esp, 28
mov    DWORD PTR [esp+8], 1972608889 ; 75939f79H
mov    DWORD PTR [esp+12], 5461      ; 00001555H
mov    DWORD PTR [esp], 1942892530 ; 73ce2ff2H
mov    DWORD PTR [esp+4], 2874      ; 000000b3aH
call   _f_add
mov    DWORD PTR [esp+4], eax
mov    DWORD PTR [esp+8], edx
mov    DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:LC0 ; "%lld\n"
call   _printf
add    esp, 28
ret

_f_sub:
mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
mov    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
sub    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
sbb    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+16]
ret

```

GCC code is the same.

ARM

Listing 1.378: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

f_add PROC
    ADDS   r0,r0,r2
    ADC    r1,r1,r3
    BX    lr
    ENDP

f_sub PROC
    SUBS   r0,r0,r2
    SBC    r1,r1,r3
    BX    lr
    ENDP

f_add_test PROC
    PUSH   {r4,lr}
    LDR    r2,|L0.68| ; 0x75939f79
    LDR    r3,|L0.72| ; 0x00001555
    LDR    r0,|L0.76| ; 0x73ce2ff2
    LDR    r1,|L0.80| ; 0x000000b3a
    BL    f_add
    POP    {r4,lr}
    MOV    r2,r0
    MOV    r3,r1
    ADR    r0,|L0.84| ; "%I64d\n"
    B    __2printf
    ENDP

|L0.68|

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

	DCD	0x75939f79
L0.72	DCD	0x00001555
L0.76	DCD	0x73ce2ff2
L0.80	DCD	0x00000b3a
L0.84	DCB	"%I64d\n", 0

The first 64-bit value is passed in R0 and R1 register pair, the second in R2 and R3 register pair. ARM has the ADC instruction as well (which counts carry flag) and SBC (“subtract with carry”). Important thing: when the low parts are added/subtracted, ADDS and SUBS instructions with -S suffix are used. The -S suffix stands for “set flags”, and flags (esp. carry flag) is what consequent ADC/SBC instructions definitely need. Otherwise, instructions without the -S suffix would do the job (ADD and SUB).

MIPS

Listing 1.379: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
f_add:
; $a0 - high part of a
; $a1 - low part of a
; $a2 - high part of b
; $a3 - low part of b
        addu    $v1, $a3, $a1 ; sum up low parts
        addu    $a0, $a2, $a0 ; sum up high parts
; will carry generated while summing up low parts?
; if yes, set $v0 to 1
        sltu    $v0, $v1, $a3
        jr     $ra
; add 1 to high part of result if carry should be generated:
        addu    $v0, $a0 ; branch delay slot
; $v0 - high part of result
; $v1 - low part of result

f_sub:
; $a0 - high part of a
; $a1 - low part of a
; $a2 - high part of b
; $a3 - low part of b
        subu    $v1, $a1, $a3 ; subtract low parts
        subu    $v0, $a0, $a2 ; subtract high parts
; will carry generated while subtracting low parts?
; if yes, set $a0 to 1
        sltu    $a1, $v1
        jr     $ra
; subtract 1 from high part of result if carry should be generated:
        subu    $v0, $a1 ; branch delay slot
; $v0 - high part of result
; $v1 - low part of result
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

f_add_test:

var_10      = -0x10
var_4       = -4

        lui      $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
        addiu   $sp, -0x20
        la      $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
        sw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
        sw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
        lui      $a1, 0x73CE
        lui      $a3, 0x7593
        li      $a0, 0xB3A
        li      $a3, 0x75939F79
        li      $a2, 0x1555
        jal     f_add
        li      $a1, 0x73CE2FF2
        lw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
        lui      $a0, ($LC0 >> 16) # "%lld\n"
        lw      $t9, (printf & 0xFFFF)($gp)
        lw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
        la      $a0, ($LC0 & 0xFFFF) # "%lld\n"
        move   $a3, $v1
        move   $a2, $v0
        jr      $t9
        addiu  $sp, 0x20

$LC0:      .ascii "%lld\n<0>

```

MIPS has no flags register, so there is no such information present after the execution of arithmetic operations. So there are no instructions like x86's ADC and SBB. To know if the carry flag would be set, a comparison (using SLTU instruction) also occurs, which sets the destination register to 1 or 0. This 1 or 0 is then added or subtracted to/from the final result.

1.34.3 Multiplication, division

```

#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t f_mul (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a*b;
};

uint64_t f_div (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a/b;
};

uint64_t f_rem (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a % b;
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
};
```

x86

Listing 1.380: Optimizing MSVC 2013 /Ob1

```
_a$ = 8 ; size = 8
_b$ = 16 ; size = 8
_f_mul PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp+4]
    push    eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push    ecx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+4]
    push    edx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    push    eax
    call    __allmul ; long long multiplication
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f_mul ENDP

_a$ = 8 ; size = 8
_b$ = 16 ; size = 8
_f_div PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp+4]
    push    eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push    ecx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+4]
    push    edx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    push    eax
    call    __aulldiv ; unsigned long long division
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f_div ENDP

_a$ = 8 ; size = 8
_b$ = 16 ; size = 8
_f_rem PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp+4]
    push    eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push    ecx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp+4]
    push    edx
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    push   eax
    call   __aullrem ; unsigned long long remainder
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f_rem ENDP

```

Multiplication and division are more complex operations, so usually the compiler embeds calls to a library functions doing that.

These functions are described here: [.5 on page 1340](#).

Listing 1.381: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 -fno-inline

```

_f_mul:
    push   ebx
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+16]
    mov    ebx, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR [esp+20]
    imul   ebx, eax
    imul   ecx, edx
    mul    edx
    add    ecx, ebx
    add    edx, ecx
    pop    ebx
    ret

_f_div:
    sub    esp, 28
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+40]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+44]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp+8], eax
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp+12], edx
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+36]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp], eax
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp+4], edx
    call   __udivdi3 ; unsigned division
    add    esp, 28
    ret

_f_rem:
    sub    esp, 28
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+40]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+44]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp+8], eax
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp+12], edx
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+36]
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp], eax
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp+4], edx
    call   __umoddi3 ; unsigned modulo
    add    esp, 28

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

ret

GCC does the expected, but the multiplication code is inlined right in the function, thinking it could be more efficient. GCC has different library function names: [.4 on page 1340](#).

ARM

Keil for Thumb mode inserts library subroutine calls:

Listing 1.382: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```
||f_mul|| PROC
    PUSH    {r4,lr}
    BL      __aeabi_lmul
    POP    {r4,pc}
    ENDP

||f_div|| PROC
    PUSH    {r4,lr}
    BL      __aeabi_ulddivmod
    POP    {r4,pc}
    ENDP

||f_rem|| PROC
    PUSH    {r4,lr}
    BL      __aeabi_ulddivmod
    MOVS   r0,r2
    MOVS   r1,r3
    POP    {r4,pc}
    ENDP
```

Keil for ARM mode, on the other hand, is able to produce 64-bit multiplication code:

Listing 1.383: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
||f_mul|| PROC
    PUSH    {r4,lr}
    UMULL  r12,r4,r0,r2
    MLA    r1,r2,r1,r4
    MLA    r1,r0,r3,r1
    MOV    r0,r12
    POP    {r4,pc}
    ENDP

||f_div|| PROC
    PUSH    {r4,lr}
    BL      __aeabi_ulddivmod
    POP    {r4,pc}
    ENDP

||f_rem|| PROC
    PUSH    {r4,lr}
    BL      __aeabi_ulddivmod
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

MOV	r0,r2
MOV	r1,r3
POP	{r4,pc}
ENDP	

MIPS

Optimizing GCC for MIPS can generate 64-bit multiplication code, but has to call a library routine for 64-bit division:

Listing 1.384: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
f_mul:
    mult    $a2, $a1
    mflo    $v0
    or      $at, $zero ; NOP
    or      $at, $zero ; NOP
    mult    $a0, $a3
    mflo    $a0
    addu   $v0, $a0
    or      $at, $zero ; NOP
    multu   $a3, $a1
    mfhi    $a2
    mflo    $v1
    jr     $ra
    addu   $v0, $a2

f_div:
var_10 = -0x10
var_4  = -4

    lui     $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
    addiu   $sp, -0x20
    la      $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
    sw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
    sw      $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
    lw      $t9, (_udivdi3 & 0xFFFF)($gp)
    or      $at, $zero
    jalr    $t9
    or      $at, $zero
    lw      $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
    or      $at, $zero
    jr     $ra
    addiu   $sp, 0x20

f_rem:
var_10 = -0x10
var_4  = -4

    lui     $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
    addiu   $sp, -0x20
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

la    $gp, (_gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)
sw    $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
sw    $gp, 0x20+var_10($sp)
lw    $t9, (_umoddi3 & 0xFFFF)($gp)
or    $at, $zero
jalr $t9
or    $at, $zero
lw    $ra, 0x20+var_4($sp)
or    $at, $zero
jr    $ra
addiu $sp, 0x20

```

There are a lot of **NOPs**, probably delay slots filled after the multiplication instruction (it's slower than other instructions, after all).

1.34.4 Shifting right

```
#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t f (uint64_t a)
{
    return a>>7;
};
```

x86

Listing 1.385: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob1

```

_a$ = 8      ; size = 8
_f PROC
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp]
    shrd   eax, edx, 7
    shr    edx, 7
    ret    0
_f ENDP

```

Listing 1.386: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 -fno-inline

```

_f:
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
    shrd   eax, edx, 7
    shr    edx, 7
    ret

```

Shifting also occurs in two passes: first the lower part is shifted, then the higher part. But the lower part is shifted with the help of the SHRD instruction, it shifts the value of EAX by 7 bits, but pulls new bits from EDX, i.e., from the higher part. In other words, 64-bit value from EDX:EAX register's pair, as a whole, is shifted by 7 bits and lowest 32 bits of result are placed into EAX. The higher part is shifted using the much more

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

popular SHR instruction: indeed, the freed bits in the higher part must be filled with zeros.

ARM

ARM doesn't have such instruction as SHRD in x86, so the Keil compiler ought to do this using simple shifts and OR operations:

Listing 1.387: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
||f|| PROC
    LSR      r0,r0,#7
    ORR      r0,r0,r1,LSL #25
    LSR      r1,r1,#7
    BX       lr
ENDP
```

Listing 1.388: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```
||f|| PROC
    LSLS     r2,r1,#25
    LSRS     r0,r0,#7
    ORRS     r0,r0,r2
    LSRS     r1,r1,#7
    BX       lr
ENDP
```

MIPS

GCC for MIPS follows the same algorithm as Keil does for Thumb mode:

Listing 1.389: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
f:
    sll      $v0, $a0, 25
    srl      $v1, $a1, 7
    or       $v1, $v0, $v1
    jr       $ra
    srl      $v0, $a0, 7
```

1.34.5 Converting 32-bit value into 64-bit one

```
#include <stdint.h>

int64_t f (int32_t a)
{
    return a;
};
```

x86

Listing 1.390: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```
_a$ = 8
_f      PROC
        mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
        cdq
        ret     0
_f      ENDP
```

Here we also run into necessity to extend a 32-bit signed value into a 64-bit signed one. Unsigned values are converted straightforwardly: all bits in the higher part must be set to 0. But this is not appropriate for signed data types: the sign has to be copied into the higher part of the resulting number.

The CDQ instruction does that here, it takes its input value in EAX, extends it to 64-bit and leaves it in the EDX:EAX register pair. In other words, CDQ gets the number sign from EAX (by getting the most significant bit in EAX), and depending of it, sets all 32 bits in EDX to 0 or 1. Its operation is somewhat similar to the MOVsx instruction.

ARM

Listing 1.391: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```
||f|| PROC
        ASR     r1,r0,#31
        BX      lr
ENDP
```

Keil for ARM is different: it just arithmetically shifts right the input value by 31 bits. As we know, the sign bit is **MSB**, and the arithmetical shift copies the sign bit into the “emerged” bits. So after “ASR r1,r0,#31”, R1 containing 0xFFFFFFFF if the input value has been negative and 0 otherwise. R1 contains the high part of the resulting 64-bit value. In other words, this code just copies the **MSB** (sign bit) from the input value in R0 to all bits of the high 32-bit part of the resulting 64-bit value.

MIPS

GCC for MIPS does the same as Keil did for ARM mode:

Listing 1.392: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
f:
    sra    $v0, $a0, 31
    jr    $ra
    move   $v1, $a0
```

1.35 LARGE_INTEGER structure case

Imagine this: late 1980s, you're Microsoft, and you're developing a new *serious OS* (Windows NT), that will compete with Unices. Target platforms has both 32-bit and 64-bit CPUs. And you need a 64-bit integer datatype for all sort of purposes, starting at FILETIME¹⁶⁵ structure.

The problem: not all target C/C++ compilers support 64-bit integer yet (this is late 1980s). Surely, this will be changed in (near) future, but not now. What would you do?

While reading this, try to stop (and/or close this book) and think, how can you solve this problem.

¹⁶⁵ <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/desktop/api/minwinbase/ns-minwinbase-filetime>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

This is what Microsoft did, something like this¹⁶⁶:

```
union ULONG_INTEGER
{
    struct backward_compatibility
    {
        DWORD LowPart;
        DWORD HighPart;
    };
#ifdef NEW_FANCY_COMPILER_SUPPORTING_64_BIT
    ULLONG QuadPart;
#endif
};
```

This is a chunk of 8 bytes, which can be accessed via 64-bit integer QuadPart (if compiled using newer compiler), or using two 32-bit integers (if compiled using old one).

QuadPart field is just absent here when compiled using old compiler.

Order is crucial: first field (LowPart) maps to lower 4 bytes of 64-bit value, second field (HighPart) maps to higher 4 bytes.

Microsoft also added utility functions for all the arithmetical operation, in a same manner as I already described: [1.34 on page 497](#).

And this is from the leaked Windows 2000 source code base:

Listing 1.393: i386 arch

```
;++
;
; LARGE_INTEGER
; RtlLargeIntegerAdd (
; IN LARGE_INTEGER Addend1,
; IN LARGE_INTEGER Addend2
; )
;
; Routine Description:
;
; This function adds a signed large integer to a signed large integer and
; returns the signed large integer result.
;
; Arguments:
;
; (TOS+4) = Addend1 - first addend value
; (TOS+12) = Addend2 - second addend value
;
; Return Value:
;
; The large integer result is stored in (edx:eax)
;
;--
```

¹⁶⁶Not a copy-pasted source code, I wrote this

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
cPublicProc _RtlLargeIntegerAdd ,4
cPublicFpo 4,0

    mov    eax,[esp]+4          ; (eax)=add1.low
    add    eax,[esp]+12         ; (eax)=sum.low
    mov    edx,[esp]+8          ; (edx)=add1.hi
    adc    edx,[esp]+16         ; (edx)=sum.hi
    stdRET   _RtlLargeIntegerAdd

stdENDP _RtlLargeIntegerAdd
```

Listing 1.394: MIPS arch

```
LEAF_ENTRY(RtlLargeIntegerAdd)

    lw     t0,4 * 4(sp)          // get low part of addend2 value
    lw     t1,4 * 5(sp)          // get high part of addend2 value
    addu  t0,t0,a2              // add low parts of large integer
    addu  t1,t1,a3              // add high parts of large integer
    sltu  t2,t0,a2              // generate carry from low part
    addu  t1,t1,t2              // add carry to high part
    sw    t0,0(a0)               // store low part of result
    sw    t1,4(a0)               // store high part of result
    move  v0,a0                 // set function return register
    j     ra                     // return

.end   RtlLargeIntegerAdd
```

Now two 64-bit architectures:

Listing 1.395: Itanium arch

```
LEAF_ENTRY(RtlLargeIntegerAdd)

    add      v0 = a0, a1           // add both quadword ↴
    ↳ arguments
    LEAF_RETURN

    LEAF_EXIT(RtlLargeIntegerAdd)
```

Listing 1.396: DEC Alpha arch

```
LEAF_ENTRY(RtlLargeIntegerAdd)

    addq    a0, a1, v0             // add both quadword arguments
    ret    zero, (ra)              // return

.end   RtlLargeIntegerAdd
```

No need using 32-bit instructions on Itanium and DEC Alpha—64-bit ones are here already.

And this is what we can find in Windows Research Kernel:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

DECLSPEC_DEPRECATED_DDK           // Use native __int64 math
__inline
LARGE_INTEGER
NTAPI
RtlLargeIntegerAdd (
    LARGE_INTEGER Addend1,
    LARGE_INTEGER Addend2
)
{
    LARGE_INTEGER Sum;

    Sum.QuadPart = Addend1.QuadPart + Addend2.QuadPart;
    return Sum;
}

```

All these functions can be dropped (in future), but now they just operate on QuadPart field. If this piece of code is to be compiled using a modern 32-bit compiler (that supports 64-bit integer), it will generate two 32-bit additions under the hood. From this moment, LowPart/HighPart fields can be dropped from the LARGE_INTEGER union/structure.

Would you use such a technique today? Probably not, but if someone would need 128-bit integer data type, you can implement it just like this.

Also, needless to say, this works thanks to *little-endian* ([2.8 on page 587](#)) (all architectures Windows NT was developed for are *little-endian*). This trick wouldn't be possible on a *big-endian* architecture.

1.36 SIMD

SIMD is an acronym: *Single Instruction, Multiple Data*.

As its name implies, it processes multiple data using only one instruction.

Like the **FPU**, that **CPU** subsystem looks like a separate processor inside x86.

SIMD began as MMX in x86. 8 new 64-bit registers appeared: MM0-MM7.

Each MMX register can hold 2 32-bit values, 4 16-bit values or 8 bytes. For example, it is possible to add 8 8-bit values (bytes) simultaneously by adding two values in MMX registers.

One simple example is a graphics editor that represents an image as a two dimensional array. When the user changes the brightness of the image, the editor must add or subtract a coefficient to/from each pixel value. For the sake of brevity if we say that the image is grayscale and each pixel is defined by one 8-bit byte, then it is possible to change the brightness of 8 pixels simultaneously.

By the way, this is the reason why the *saturation* instructions are present in SIMD.

When the user changes the brightness in the graphics editor, overflow and underflow are not desirable, so there are addition instructions in SIMD which are not adding anything if the maximum value is reached, etc.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

When MMX appeared, these registers were actually located in the FPU's registers. It was possible to use either FPU or MMX at the same time. One might think that Intel saved on transistors, but in fact the reason of such symbiosis was simpler —older OSes that are not aware of the additional CPU registers would not save them at the context switch, but saving the FPU registers. Thus, MMX-enabled CPU + old OS + process utilizing MMX features will still work.

SSE—is extension of the SIMD registers to 128 bits, now separate from the FPU.

AVX—another extension, to 256 bits.

Now about practical usage.

Of course, this is memory copy routines (`memcpy`), memory comparing (`memcmp`) and so on.

One more example: the DES encryption algorithm takes a 64-bit block and a 56-bit key, encrypt the block and produces a 64-bit result. The DES algorithm may be considered as a very large electronic circuit, with wires and AND/OR/NOT gates.

Bitslice DES¹⁶⁷ —is the idea of processing groups of blocks and keys simultaneously. Let's say, variable of type *unsigned int* on x86 can hold up to 32 bits, so it is possible to store there intermediate results for 32 block-key pairs simultaneously, using 64+56 variables of type *unsigned int*.

There is an utility to brute-force Oracle RDBMS passwords/hashes (ones based on DES), using slightly modified bitslice DES algorithm for SSE2 and AVX—now it is possible to encrypt 128 or 256 block-keys pairs simultaneously.

<http://conus.info/utils/ops SIMD/>

1.36.1 Vectorization

Vectorization¹⁶⁸ is when, for example, you have a loop taking couple of arrays for input and producing one array. The loop body takes values from the input arrays, does something and puts the result into the output array. Vectorization is to process several elements simultaneously.

Vectorization is not very fresh technology: the author of this textbook saw it at least on the Cray Y-MP supercomputer line from 1988 when he played with its “lite” version Cray Y-MP EL¹⁶⁹.

For example:

```
for (i = 0; i < 1024; i++)
{
    C[i] = A[i]*B[i];
}
```

This fragment of code takes elements from A and B, multiplies them and saves the result into C.

¹⁶⁷ <http://www.darkside.com.au/bitslice/>

¹⁶⁸ [Wikipedia: vectorization](#)

¹⁶⁹ Remotely. It is installed in the museum of supercomputers: <http://www.cray-cyber.org>

If each array element we have is 32-bit *int*, then it is possible to load 4 elements from A into a 128-bit XMM-register, from B to another XMM-registers, and by executing **PMULLD** (*Multiply Packed Signed Dword Integers and Store Low Result*) and **PMULHW** (*Multiply Packed Signed Integers and Store High Result*), it is possible to get 4 64-bit [products](#) at once.

Thus, loop body execution count is $1024/4$ instead of 1024, that is 4 times less and, of course, faster.

Addition example

Some compilers can do vectorization automatically in simple cases, e.g., Intel C++^{[170](#)}.

Here is tiny function:

```
int f (int sz, int *ar1, int *ar2, int *ar3)
{
    for (int i=0; i<sz; i++)
        ar3[i]=ar1[i]+ar2[i];

    return 0;
};
```

Intel C++

Let's compile it with Intel C++ 11.1.051 win32:

```
icl intel.cpp /QaxSSE2 /Faintel.asm /Ox
```

We got (in [IDA](#)):

```
; int __cdecl f(int, int *, int *, int *)
    public ?f@YAHHPAH00@Z
?f@YAHHPAH00@Z proc near

var_10 = dword ptr -10h
sz      = dword ptr 4
ar1     = dword ptr 8
ar2     = dword ptr 0Ch
ar3     = dword ptr 10h

    push    edi
    push    esi
    push    ebx
    push    esi
    mov     edx, [esp+10h+sz]
    test   edx, edx
    jle    loc_15B
    mov     eax, [esp+10h+ar3]
    cmp     edx, 6
    jle    loc_143
```

¹⁷⁰More about Intel C++ automatic vectorization: [Excerpt: Effective Automatic Vectorization](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```

    cmp    eax, [esp+10h+ar2]
    jbe    short loc_36
    mov    esi, [esp+10h+ar2]
    sub    esi, eax
    lea    ecx, ds:0[edx*4]
    neg    esi
    cmp    ecx, esi
    jbe    short loc_55

loc_36: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+21
    cmp    eax, [esp+10h+ar2]
    jnb    loc_143
    mov    esi, [esp+10h+ar2]
    sub    esi, eax
    lea    ecx, ds:0[edx*4]
    cmp    esi, ecx
    jb     loc_143

loc_55: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+34
    cmp    eax, [esp+10h+ar1]
    jbe    short loc_67
    mov    esi, [esp+10h+ar1]
    sub    esi, eax
    neg    esi
    cmp    ecx, esi
    jbe    short loc_7F

loc_67: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+59
    cmp    eax, [esp+10h+ar1]
    jnb    loc_143
    mov    esi, [esp+10h+ar1]
    sub    esi, eax
    cmp    esi, ecx
    jb     loc_143

loc_7F: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+65
    mov    edi, eax          ; edi = ar3
    and    edi, 0Fh          ; is ar3 16-byte aligned?
    jz    short loc_9A       ; yes
    test   edi, 3
    jnz   loc_162
    neg    edi
    add    edi, 10h
    shr    edi, 2

loc_9A: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+84
    lea    ecx, [edi+4]
    cmp    edx, ecx
    jl    loc_162
    mov    ecx, edx
    sub    ecx, edi
    and    ecx, 3
    neg    ecx

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

add    ecx, edx
test   edi, edi
jbe    short loc_D6
mov    ebx, [esp+10h+ar2]
mov    [esp+10h+var_10], ecx
mov    ecx, [esp+10h+ar1]
xor    esi, esi

loc_C1: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+CD
    mov    edx, [ecx+esi*4]
    add    edx, [ebx+esi*4]
    mov    [eax+esi*4], edx
    inc    esi
    cmp    esi, edi
    jb     short loc_C1
    mov    ecx, [esp+10h+var_10]
    mov    edx, [esp+10h+sz]

loc_D6: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+B2
    mov    esi, [esp+10h+ar2]
    lea    esi, [esi+edi*4] ; is ar2+i*4 16-byte aligned?
    test   esi, 0Fh
    jz    short loc_109 ; yes!
    mov    ebx, [esp+10h+ar1]
    mov    esi, [esp+10h+ar2]

loc_ED: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+105
    movdqu xmm1, xmmword ptr [ebx+edi*4] ; ar1+i*4
    movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [esi+edi*4] ; ar2+i*4 is not 16-byte
aligned, so load it to XMM0
    paddd  xmm1, xmm0
    movdqa xmmword ptr [eax+edi*4], xmm1 ; ar3+i*4
    add    edi, 4
    cmp    edi, ecx
    jb     short loc_ED
    jmp    short loc_127

loc_109: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+E3
    mov    ebx, [esp+10h+ar1]
    mov    esi, [esp+10h+ar2]

loc_111: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+125
    movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [ebx+edi*4]
    paddd  xmm0, xmmword ptr [esi+edi*4]
    movdqa xmmword ptr [eax+edi*4], xmm0
    add    edi, 4
    cmp    edi, ecx
    jb     short loc_111

loc_127: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+107
           ; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+164
    cmp    ecx, edx
    jnb    short loc_15B
    mov    esi, [esp+10h+ar1]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov      edi, [esp+10h+ar2]

loc_133: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+13F
    mov      ebx, [esi+ecx*4]
    add      ebx, [edi+ecx*4]
    mov      [eax+ecx*4], ebx
    inc      ecx
    cmp      ecx, edx
    jb       short loc_133
    jmp      short loc_15B

loc_143: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+17
          ; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+3A ...
    mov      esi, [esp+10h+ar1]
    mov      edi, [esp+10h+ar2]
    xor      ecx, ecx

loc_14D: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+159
    mov      ebx, [esi+ecx*4]
    add      ebx, [edi+ecx*4]
    mov      [eax+ecx*4], ebx
    inc      ecx
    cmp      ecx, edx
    jb       short loc_14D

loc_15B: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+A
          ; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+129 ...
    xor      eax, eax
    pop      ecx
    pop      ebx
    pop      esi
    pop      edi
    retn

loc_162: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+8C
          ; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+9F
    xor      ecx, ecx
    jmp      short loc_127
?f@YAHHPAH00@Z endp

```

The SSE2-related instructions are:

- **MOVDQU (Move Unaligned Double Quadword)**—just loads 16 bytes from memory into a XMM-register.
- **PADDD (Add Packed Integers)**—adds 4 pairs of 32-bit numbers and leaves the result in the first operand. By the way, no exception is raised in case of overflow and no flags are to be set, just the low 32 bits of the result are to be stored. If one of PADDD's operands is the address of a value in memory, then the address must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. If it is not aligned, an exception will be triggered.
- **MOVDQA (Move Aligned Double Quadword)** is the same as MOVDQU, but requires the address of the value in memory to be aligned on a 16-bit boundary. If it

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

is not aligned, exception will be raised. MOVDQA works faster than MOVDQU, but requires aforesaid.

So, these SSE2-instructions are to be executed only in case there are more than 4 pairs to work on and the pointer ar3 is aligned on a 16-byte boundary.

Also, if ar2 is aligned on a 16-byte boundary as well, this fragment of code is to be executed:

```
movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [ebx+edi*4] ; ar1+i*4
paddd  xmm0, xmmword ptr [esi+edi*4] ; ar2+i*4
movdqa xmmword ptr [eax+edi*4], xmm0 ; ar3+i*4
```

Otherwise, the value from ar2 is to be loaded into XMM0 using MOVDQU, which does not require aligned pointer, but may work slower:

```
movdqu xmm1, xmmword ptr [ebx+edi*4] ; ar1+i*4
movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [esi+edi*4] ; ar2+i*4 is not 16-byte aligned, so
load it to XMM0
paddd  xmm1, xmm0
movdqa xmmword ptr [eax+edi*4], xmm1 ; ar3+i*4
```

In all other cases, non-SSE2 code is to be executed.

GCC

GCC may also vectorize in simple cases¹⁷¹, if the -O3 option is used and SSE2 support is turned on: -msse2.

What we get (GCC 4.4.1):

```
; f(int, int *, int *, int *)
    public _Z1fiPiS_S_
_Z1fiPiS_S_ proc near

var_18      = dword ptr -18h
var_14      = dword ptr -14h
var_10      = dword ptr -10h
arg_0       = dword ptr  8
arg_4       = dword ptr  0Ch
arg_8       = dword ptr  10h
arg_C       = dword ptr  14h

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    edi
    push    esi
    push    ebx
    sub    esp, 0Ch
    mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
    mov     esi, [ebp+arg_4]
```

¹⁷¹More about GCC vectorization support: <http://gcc.gnu.org/projects/tree-ssa/vectorization.html>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        mov    edi, [ebp+arg_8]
        mov    ebx, [ebp+arg_C]
        test   ecx, ecx
        jle    short loc_80484D8
        cmp    ecx, 6
        lea    eax, [ebx+10h]
        ja     short loc_80484E8

loc_80484C1: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+4B
; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+61 ...
        xor    eax, eax
        nop
        lea    esi, [esi+0]

loc_80484C8: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+36
        mov    edx, [edi+eax*4]
        add    edx, [esi+eax*4]
        mov    [ebx+eax*4], edx
        add    eax, 1
        cmp    eax, ecx
        jnz    short loc_80484C8

loc_80484D8: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+17
; f(int,int *,int *,int *)+A5
        add    esp, 0Ch
        xor    eax, eax
        pop    ebx
        pop    esi
        pop    edi
        pop    ebp
        retn

        align 8

loc_80484E8: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+1F
        test   bl, 0Fh
        jnz    short loc_80484C1
        lea    edx, [esi+10h]
        cmp    ebx, edx
        jbe    loc_8048578

loc_80484F8: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+E0
        lea    edx, [edi+10h]
        cmp    ebx, edx
        ja    short loc_8048503
        cmp    edi, eax
        jbe    short loc_80484C1

loc_8048503: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+5D
        mov    eax, ecx
        shr    eax, 2
        mov    [ebp+var_14], eax
        shl    eax, 2

```

```

test    eax, eax
mov     [ebp+var_10], eax
jz      short loc_8048547
mov     [ebp+var_18], ecx
mov     ecx, [ebp+var_14]
xor     eax, eax
xor     edx, edx
nop

loc_8048520: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+9B
    movdqu xmm1, xmmword ptr [edi+eax]
    movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [esi+eax]
    add    edx, 1
    paddd  xmm0, xmm1
    movdqa xmmword ptr [ebx+eax], xmm0
    add    eax, 10h
    cmp    edx, ecx
    jb     short loc_8048520
    mov    ecx, [ebp+var_18]
    mov    eax, [ebp+var_10]
    cmp    ecx, eax
    jz     short loc_80484D8

loc_8048547: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+73
    lea    edx, ds:0[eax*4]
    add    esi, edx
    add    edi, edx
    add    ebx, edx
    lea    esi, [esi+0]

loc_8048558: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+CC
    mov    edx, [edi]
    add    eax, 1
    add    edi, 4
    add    edx, [esi]
    add    esi, 4
    mov    [ebx], edx
    add    ebx, 4
    cmp    ecx, eax
    jg    short loc_8048558
    add    esp, 0Ch
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    ebx
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    pop    ebp
    retn

loc_8048578: ; CODE XREF: f(int,int *,int *,int *)+52
    cmp    eax, esi
    jnb    loc_80484C1
    jmp    loc_80484F8
_Z1fiPiS_S_ endp

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Almost the same, however, not as meticulously as Intel C++.

Memory copy example

Let's revisit the simple `memcpy()` example ([1.22.2 on page 246](#)):

```
#include <stdio.h>

void my_memcpy (unsigned char* dst, unsigned char* src, size_t cnt)
{
    size_t i;
    for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
        dst[i]=src[i];
}
```

And that's what optimizations GCC 4.9.1 did:

Listing 1.397: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```
my_memcpy:
; RDI = destination address
; RSI = source address
; RDX = size of block
    test    rdx, rdx
    je     .L41
    lea     rax, [rdi+16]
    cmp     rsi, rax
    lea     rax, [rsi+16]
    setae  cl
    cmp     rdi, rax
    setae  al
    or      cl, al
    je     .L13
    cmp     rdx, 22
    jbe    .L13
    mov     rcx, rsi
    push   rbp
    push   rbx
    neg    rcx
    and    ecx, 15
    cmp     rcx, rdx
    cmova  rcx, rdx
    xor    eax, eax
    test   rcx, rcx
    je     .L4
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi]
    cmp     rcx, 1
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi], al
    je     .L15
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+1]
    cmp     rcx, 2
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+1], al
    je     .L16
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+2]
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    cmp    rcx, 3
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+2], al
    je     .L17
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+3]
    cmp    rcx, 4
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+3], al
    je     .L18
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+4]
    cmp    rcx, 5
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+4], al
    je     .L19
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+5]
    cmp    rcx, 6
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+5], al
    je     .L20
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+6]
    cmp    rcx, 7
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+6], al
    je     .L21
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+7]
    cmp    rcx, 8
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+7], al
    je     .L22
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+8]
    cmp    rcx, 9
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+8], al
    je     .L23
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+9]
    cmp    rcx, 10
    mov   BYTE PTR [rdi+9], al
    je     .L24
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+10]
    cmp   rcx, 11
    mov   BYTE PTR [rdi+10], al
    je     .L25
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+11]
    cmp   rcx, 12
    mov   BYTE PTR [rdi+11], al
    je     .L26
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+12]
    cmp   rcx, 13
    mov   BYTE PTR [rdi+12], al
    je     .L27
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+13]
    cmp   rcx, 15
    mov   BYTE PTR [rdi+13], al
    jne    .L28
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rsi+14]
    mov   BYTE PTR [rdi+14], al
    mov    eax, 15

.L4:
    mov    r10, rdx
    lea    r9, [rdx-1]

```

```

sub    r10, rcx
lea    r8, [r10-16]
sub    r9, rcx
shr    r8, 4
add    r8, 1
mov    r11, r8
sal    r11, 4
cmp    r9, 14
jbe    .L6
lea    rbp, [rsi+rcx]
xor    r9d, r9d
add    rcx, rdi
xor    ebx, ebx

.L7:
movdqa xmm0, XMMWORD PTR [rbp+0+r9]
add    rbx, 1
movups XMMWORD PTR [rcx+r9], xmm0
add    r9, 16
cmp    rbx, r8
jb     .L7
add    rax, r11
cmp    r10, r11
je    .L1

.L6:
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+1]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+1+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+1+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+2]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+2+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+2+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+3]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+3+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+3+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+4]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+4+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+4+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+5]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+5+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+5+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+6]
cmp    rdx, rcx

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+6+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+6+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+7]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+7+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+7+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+8]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+8+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+8+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+9]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+9+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+9+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+10]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+10+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+10+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+11]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+11+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+11+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+12]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+12+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+12+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+13]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+13+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+13+rax], cl
lea    rcx, [rax+14]
cmp    rdx, rcx
jbe    .L1
movzx  edx, BYTE PTR [rsi+14+rax]
mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+14+rax], dl
.L1:
    pop    rbx
    pop    rbp
.L41:
    rep    ret
.L13:
    xor    eax, eax
.L3:
    movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi+rax]
    mov    BYTE PTR [rdi+rax], cl

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
add    rax, 1
cmp    rax, rdx
jne    .L3
rep    ret
.L28:
        mov    eax, 14
        jmp    .L4
.L15:
        mov    eax, 1
        jmp    .L4
.L16:
        mov    eax, 2
        jmp    .L4
.L17:
        mov    eax, 3
        jmp    .L4
.L18:
        mov    eax, 4
        jmp    .L4
.L19:
        mov    eax, 5
        jmp    .L4
.L20:
        mov    eax, 6
        jmp    .L4
.L21:
        mov    eax, 7
        jmp    .L4
.L22:
        mov    eax, 8
        jmp    .L4
.L23:
        mov    eax, 9
        jmp    .L4
.L24:
        mov    eax, 10
        jmp   .L4
.L25:
        mov    eax, 11
        jmp   .L4
.L26:
        mov    eax, 12
        jmp   .L4
.L27:
        mov    eax, 13
        jmp   .L4
```

1.36.2 SIMD `strlen()` implementation

It has to be noted that the SIMD instructions can be inserted in C/C++ code via special macros¹⁷². For MSVC, some of them are located in the `intrin.h` file.

It is possible to implement the `strlen()` function¹⁷³ using SIMD instructions that works 2-2.5 times faster than the common implementation. This function loads 16 characters into a XMM-register and check each against zero¹⁷⁴.

```
size_t strlen_sse2(const char *str)
{
    register size_t len = 0;
    const char *s=str;
    bool str_is_aligned=((unsigned int)str)&0xFFFFFFFF0) == (unsigned int)str;

    if (str_is_aligned==false)
        return strlen (str);

    __m128i xmm0 = _mm_setzero_si128();
    __m128i xmm1;
    int mask = 0;

    for (;;)
    {
        xmm1 = _mm_load_si128((__m128i *)s);
        xmm1 = _mm_cmpeq_epi8(xmm1, xmm0);
        if ((mask = _mm_movemask_epi8(xmm1)) != 0)
        {
            unsigned long pos;
            BitScanForward(&pos, mask);
            len += (size_t)pos;

            break;
        }
        s += sizeof(__m128i);
        len += sizeof(__m128i);
    };

    return len;
}
```

Let's compile it in MSVC 2010 with `/Ox` option:

Listing 1.398: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_pos$75552 = -4          ; size = 4
$str$ = 8                ; size = 4
?strlen_sse2@@YAIPBD@Z PROC ; strlen_sse2

    push    ebp
```

¹⁷²MSDN: MMX, SSE, and SSE2 Intrinsics

¹⁷³`strlen()` —standard C library function for calculating string length

¹⁷⁴The example is based on source code from: http://www.strchr.com/sse2_optimised_strlen.

```

    mov    ebp, esp
    and    esp, -16           ; ffffffff0H
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _str$[ebp]
    sub    esp, 12            ; 0000000cH
    push   esi
    mov    esi, eax
    and    esi, -16           ; ffffffff0H
    xor    edx, edx
    mov    ecx, eax
    cmp    esi, eax
    je     SHORT $LN4@strlen_sse
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [eax+1]
    npad  3 ; align next label
$LL11@strlen_sse:
    mov    cl, BYTE PTR [eax]
    inc    eax
    test   cl, cl
    jne    SHORT $LL11@strlen_sse
    sub    eax, edx
    pop    esi
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
$LN4@strlen_sse:
    movdqa xmm1, XMMWORD PTR [eax]
    pxor  xmm0, xmm0
    pcmpeqb xmm1, xmm0
    pmovmskb eax, xmm1
    test   eax, eax
    jne    SHORT $LN9@strlen_sse
$LL3@strlen_sse:
    movdqa xmm1, XMMWORD PTR [ecx+16]
    add    ecx, 16            ; 000000010H
    pcmpeqb xmm1, xmm0
    add    edx, 16            ; 000000010H
    pmovmskb eax, xmm1
    test   eax, eax
    je     SHORT $LL3@strlen_sse
$LN9@strlen_sse:
    bsf    eax, eax
    mov    ecx, eax
    mov    DWORD PTR _pos$75552[esp+16], eax
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+edx]
    pop    esi
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
?strlen_sse2@@YAIPBD@Z ENDP          ; strlen_sse2

```

How it works? First of all, we must understand goal of the function. It calculates C-string length, but we can use different terms: it's task is searching for zero byte, and then calculating its position relatively to string start.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

First, we check if the str pointer is aligned on a 16-byte boundary. If not, we call the generic `strlen()` implementation.

Then, we load the next 16 bytes into the XMM1 register using `MOVDQA`.

An observant reader might ask, why can't `MOVDQU` be used here since it can load data from the memory regardless pointer alignment?

Yes, it might be done in this way: if the pointer is aligned, load data using `MOVDQA`, if not —use the slower `MOVDQU`.

But here we are may hit another caveat:

In the Windows NT line of OS (but not limited to it), memory is allocated by pages of 4 KiB (4096 bytes). Each win32-process has 4 GiB available, but in fact, only some parts of the address space are connected to real physical memory. If the process is accessing an absent memory block, an exception is to be raised. That's how VM works¹⁷⁵.

So, a function loading 16 bytes at once may step over the border of an allocated memory block. Let's say that the OS has allocated 8192 (0x2000) bytes at address 0x008c0000. Thus, the block is the bytes starting from address 0x008c0000 to 0x008c1fff inclusive.

After the block, that is, starting from address 0x008c2000 there is nothing at all, e.g. the OS not allocated any memory there. Any attempt to access memory starting from that address will raise an exception.

And let's consider the example in which the program is holding a string that contains 5 characters almost at the end of a block, and that is not a crime.

0x008c1ff8	'h'
0x008c1ff9	'e'
0x008c1ffa	'l'
0x008c1ffb	'l'
0x008c1ffc	'o'
0x008c1ffd	'\x00'
0x008c1ffe	random noise
0x008c1fff	random noise

So, in normal conditions the program calls `strlen()`, passing it a pointer to the string 'hello' placed in memory at address 0x008c1ff8. `strlen()` reads one byte at a time until 0x008c1ffd, where there's a zero byte, and then it stops.

Now if we implement our own `strlen()` reading 16 bytes at once, starting at any address, aligned or not, `MOVDQU` may attempt to load 16 bytes at once at address 0x008c1ff8 up to 0x008c2008, and then an exception will be raised. That situation is to be avoided, of course.

So then we'll work only with the addresses aligned on a 16 bytes boundary, which in combination with the knowledge that the OS' page size is usually aligned on a 16-byte boundary gives us some warranty that our function will not read from unallocated memory.

¹⁷⁵[wikipedia](#)

Let's get back to our function.

`_mm_setzero_si128()`—is a macro generating `pxor xmm0, xmm0`—it just clears the XMM0 register.

`_mm_load_si128()`—is a macro for `MOVDQA`, it just loads 16 bytes from the address into the XMM1 register.

`_mm_cmpeq_epi8()`—is a macro for `PCMPEQB`, an instruction that compares two XMM-registers bytewise.

And if some byte is equals to the one in the other register, there will be `0xff` at this point in the result or 0 if otherwise.

For example:

```
XMM1: 0x11223344556677880000000000000000
XMM0: 0x11ab3444007877881111111111111111
```

After the execution of `pcmpeqb xmm1, xmm0`, the XMM1 register contains:

```
XMM1: 0xff0000ff0000ffff0000000000000000
```

In our case, this instruction compares each 16-byte block with a block of 16 zero-bytes, which has been set in the XMM0 register by `pxor xmm0, xmm0`.

The next macro is `_mm_movemask_epi8()`—that is the `PMOVMSKB` instruction.

It is very useful with `PCMPEQB`.

```
pmovmskb eax, xmm1
```

This instruction sets first EAX bit to 1 if the most significant bit of the first byte in XMM1 is 1. In other words, if the first byte of the XMM1 register is `0xff`, then the first bit of EAX is to be 1, too.

If the second byte in the XMM1 register is `0xff`, then the second bit in EAX is to be set to 1. In other words, the instruction is answering the question “which bytes in XMM1 has the most significant bit set, or greater than `0x7f`”, and returns 16 bits in the EAX register. The other bits in the EAX register are to be cleared.

By the way, do not forget about this quirk of our algorithm. There might be 16 bytes in the input like:

15	14	13	12	11	10	9		3	2	1	0
'h'	'e'	'l'	'l'	'o'	0		garbage		0	garbage	

It is the 'hello' string, terminating zero, and some random noise in memory.

If we load these 16 bytes into XMM1 and compare them with the zeroed XMM0, we are getting something like ¹⁷⁶:

```
XMM1: 0x0000ff0000000000000000ff0000000000
```

This means that the instruction found two zero bytes, and it is not surprising.

`PMOVMSKB` in our case will set EAX to
`0b0010000000100000`.

¹⁷⁶An order from **MSB** to **LSB**¹⁷⁷ is used here.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
`<book@beginners.re>`. Thanks!

Obviously, our function must take only the first zero bit and ignore the rest.

The next instruction is BSF (*Bit Scan Forward*).

This instruction finds the first bit set to 1 and stores its position into the first operand.

`EAX=0b0010000000100000`

After the execution of `bsf eax, eax`, EAX contains 5, meaning 1 has been found at the 5th bit position (starting from zero).

MSVC has a macro for this instruction: `_BitScanForward`.

Now it is simple. If a zero byte has been found, its position is added to what we have already counted and now we have the return result.

Almost all.

By the way, it is also has to be noted that the MSVC compiler emitted two loop bodies side by side, for optimization.

By the way, SSE 4.2 (that appeared in Intel Core i7) offers more instructions where these string manipulations might be even easier: http://www.strchr.com/strcmp_and_strlen_using_sse_4.2

1.37 64 bits

1.37.1 x86-64

It is a 64-bit extension to the x86 architecture.

From the reverse engineer's perspective, the most important changes are:

- Almost all registers (except FPU and SIMD) were extended to 64 bits and got a R- prefix. 8 additional registers were added. Now GPR's are: RAX, RBX, RCX, RDX, RBP, RSP, RSI, RDI, R8, R9, R10, R11, R12, R13, R14, R15.

It is still possible to access the *older* register parts as usual. For example, it is possible to access the lower 32-bit part of the RAX register using EAX:

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RAX ^{x64}							
						EAX	
						AX	
						AH	AL

The new R8-R15 registers also have their *lower parts*: R8D-R15D (lower 32-bit parts), R8W-R15W (lower 16-bit parts), R8L-R15L (lower 8-bit parts).

Byte number:									
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th		
			R8						
			R8D						
			R8W						
			R8L						

The number of SIMD registers was doubled from 8 to 16: XMM0-XMM15.

- In Win64, the function calling convention is slightly different, somewhat resembling fastcall ([6.1.3 on page 949](#)). The first 4 arguments are stored in the RCX, RDX, R8, R9 registers, the rest —in the stack. The **caller** function must also allocate 32 bytes so the **callee** may save there 4 first arguments and use these registers for its own needs. Short functions may use arguments just from registers, but larger ones may save their values on the stack.

System V AMD64 ABI (Linux, *BSD, Mac OS X)[Michael Matz, Jan Hubicka, Andreas Jaeger, Mark Mitchell, *System V Application Binary Interface. AMD64 Architecture Processor Supplement*, (2013)] ¹⁷⁸also somewhat resembles fastcall, it uses 6 registers RDI, RSI, RDX, RCX, R8, R9 for the first 6 arguments. All the rest are passed via the stack.

See also the section on calling conventions ([6.1 on page 947](#)).

- The C/C++ *int* type is still 32-bit for compatibility.
- All pointers are 64-bit now.

Since now the number of registers is doubled, the compilers have more space for maneuvering called **register allocation**. For us this implies that the emitted code containing less number of local variables.

For example, the function that calculates the first S-box of the DES encryption algorithm processes 32/64/128/256 values at once (depending on DES_type type (uint32, uint64, SSE2 or AVX)) using the bitslice DES method (read more about this technique here ([1.36 on page 514](#))):

```
/*
 * Generated S-box files.
 *
 * This software may be modified, redistributed, and used for any purpose,
 * so long as its origin is acknowledged.
 *
 * Produced by Matthew Kwan - March 1998
 */

#ifndef _WIN64
#define DES_type unsigned __int64
#else
#define DES_type unsigned int
#endif
```

¹⁷⁸Also available as <https://software.intel.com/sites/default/files/article/402129/mpx-linux64-abi.pdf>

```

void
s1 (
    DES_type    a1,
    DES_type    a2,
    DES_type    a3,
    DES_type    a4,
    DES_type    a5,
    DES_type    a6,
    DES_type    *out1,
    DES_type    *out2,
    DES_type    *out3,
    DES_type    *out4
) {
    DES_type    x1, x2, x3, x4, x5, x6, x7, x8;
    DES_type    x9, x10, x11, x12, x13, x14, x15, x16;
    DES_type    x17, x18, x19, x20, x21, x22, x23, x24;
    DES_type    x25, x26, x27, x28, x29, x30, x31, x32;
    DES_type    x33, x34, x35, x36, x37, x38, x39, x40;
    DES_type    x41, x42, x43, x44, x45, x46, x47, x48;
    DES_type    x49, x50, x51, x52, x53, x54, x55, x56;

    x1 = a3 & ~a5;
    x2 = x1 ^ a4;
    x3 = a3 & ~a4;
    x4 = x3 | a5;
    x5 = a6 & x4;
    x6 = x2 ^ x5;
    x7 = a4 & ~a5;
    x8 = a3 ^ a4;
    x9 = a6 & ~x8;
    x10 = x7 ^ x9;
    x11 = a2 | x10;
    x12 = x6 ^ x11;
    x13 = a5 ^ x5;
    x14 = x13 & x8;
    x15 = a5 & ~a4;
    x16 = x3 ^ x14;
    x17 = a6 | x16;
    x18 = x15 ^ x17;
    x19 = a2 | x18;
    x20 = x14 ^ x19;
    x21 = a1 & x20;
    x22 = x12 ^ ~x21;
    *out2 ^= x22;
    x23 = x1 | x5;
    x24 = x23 ^ x8;
    x25 = x18 & ~x2;
    x26 = a2 & ~x25;
    x27 = x24 ^ x26;
    x28 = x6 | x7;
    x29 = x28 ^ x25;
    x30 = x9 ^ x24;
    x31 = x18 & ~x30;
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

x32 = a2 & x31;
x33 = x29 ^ x32;
x34 = a1 & x33;
x35 = x27 ^ x34;
*out4 ^= x35;
x36 = a3 & x28;
x37 = x18 & ~x36;
x38 = a2 | x3;
x39 = x37 ^ x38;
x40 = a3 | x31;
x41 = x24 & ~x37;
x42 = x41 | x3;
x43 = x42 & ~a2;
x44 = x40 ^ x43;
x45 = a1 & ~x44;
x46 = x39 ^ ~x45;
*out1 ^= x46;
x47 = x33 & ~x9;
x48 = x47 ^ x39;
x49 = x4 ^ x36;
x50 = x49 & ~x5;
x51 = x42 | x18;
x52 = x51 ^ a5;
x53 = a2 & ~x52;
x54 = x50 ^ x53;
x55 = a1 | x54;
x56 = x48 ^ ~x55;
*out3 ^= x56;
}

```

There are a lot of local variables. Of course, not all those going into the local stack. Let's compile it with MSVC 2008 with /Ox option:

Listing 1.399: Optimizing MSVC 2008

```

PUBLIC    _s1
; Function compile flags: /Ogtpy
_TEXT    SEGMENT
_x6$ = -20          ; size = 4
_x3$ = -16          ; size = 4
_x1$ = -12          ; size = 4
_x8$ = -8           ; size = 4
_x4$ = -4           ; size = 4
_a1$ = 8            ; size = 4
_a2$ = 12           ; size = 4
_a3$ = 16           ; size = 4
_x33$ = 20          ; size = 4
_x7$ = 20           ; size = 4
_a4$ = 20           ; size = 4
_a5$ = 24           ; size = 4
tv326 = 28          ; size = 4
_x36$ = 28          ; size = 4
_x28$ = 28          ; size = 4
_a6$ = 28           ; size = 4

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

_out1$ = 32          ; size = 4
_x24$ = 36          ; size = 4
_out2$ = 36          ; size = 4
_out3$ = 40          ; size = 4
_out4$ = 44          ; size = 4
_s1    PROC
    sub    esp, 20           ; 00000014H
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _a5$[esp+16]
    push   ebx
    mov    ebx, DWORD PTR _a4$[esp+20]
    push   ebp
    push   esi
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR _a3$[esp+28]
    push   edi
    mov    edi, ebx
    not    edi
    mov    ebp, edi
    and    edi, DWORD PTR _a5$[esp+32]
    mov    ecx, edx
    not    ecx
    and    ebp, esi
    mov    eax, ecx
    and    eax, esi
    and    ecx, ebx
    mov    DWORD PTR _x1$[esp+36], eax
    xor    eax, ebx
    mov    esi, ebp
    or     esi, edx
    mov    DWORD PTR _x4$[esp+36], esi
    and    esi, DWORD PTR _a6$[esp+32]
    mov    DWORD PTR _x7$[esp+32], ecx
    mov    edx, esi
    xor    edx, eax
    mov    DWORD PTR _x6$[esp+36], edx
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _a3$[esp+32]
    xor    edx, ebx
    mov    ebx, esi
    xor    ebx, DWORD PTR _a5$[esp+32]
    mov    DWORD PTR _x8$[esp+36], edx
    and    edx, edx
    mov    ecx, edx
    mov    edx, ebx
    xor    edx, ebp
    or     edx, DWORD PTR _a6$[esp+32]
    not    ecx
    and    ecx, DWORD PTR _a6$[esp+32]
    xor    edx, edi
    mov    edi, edx
    or     edi, DWORD PTR _a2$[esp+32]
    mov    DWORD PTR _x3$[esp+36], ebp
    mov    ebp, DWORD PTR _a2$[esp+32]
    xor    edi, ebx
    and    edi, DWORD PTR _a1$[esp+32]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov    ebx, ecx
xor    ebx, DWORD PTR _x7$[esp+32]
not    edi
or     ebx, ebp
xor    edi, ebx
mov    ebx, edi
mov    edi, DWORD PTR _out2$[esp+32]
xor    ebx, DWORD PTR [edi]
not    eax
xor    ebx, DWORD PTR _x6$[esp+36]
and    eax, edx
mov    DWORD PTR [edi], ebx
mov    ebx, DWORD PTR _x7$[esp+32]
or     ebx, DWORD PTR _x6$[esp+36]
mov    edi, esi
or     edi, DWORD PTR _x1$[esp+36]
mov    DWORD PTR _x28$[esp+32], ebx
xor    edi, DWORD PTR _x8$[esp+36]
mov    DWORD PTR _x24$[esp+32], edi
xor    edi, ecx
not    edi
and    edi, edx
mov    ebx, edi
and    ebx, ebp
xor    ebx, DWORD PTR _x28$[esp+32]
xor    ebx, eax
not    eax
mov    DWORD PTR _x33$[esp+32], ebx
and    ebx, DWORD PTR _a1$[esp+32]
and    eax, ebp
xor    eax, ebx
mov    ebx, DWORD PTR _out4$[esp+32]
xor    eax, DWORD PTR [ebx]
xor    eax, DWORD PTR _x24$[esp+32]
mov    DWORD PTR [ebx], eax
mov    eax, DWORD PTR _x28$[esp+32]
and    eax, DWORD PTR _a3$[esp+32]
mov    ebx, DWORD PTR _x3$[esp+36]
or     edi, DWORD PTR _a3$[esp+32]
mov    DWORD PTR _x36$[esp+32], eax
not    eax
and    eax, edx
or     ebx, ebp
xor    ebx, eax
not    eax
and    eax, DWORD PTR _x24$[esp+32]
not    ebp
or     eax, DWORD PTR _x3$[esp+36]
not    esi
and    ebp, eax
or     eax, edx
xor    eax, DWORD PTR _a5$[esp+32]
mov    edx, DWORD PTR _x36$[esp+32]

```

```

xor    edx, DWORD PTR _x4$[esp+36]
xor    ebp, edi
mov    edi, DWORD PTR _out1$[esp+32]
not    eax
and    eax, DWORD PTR _a2$[esp+32]
not    ebp
and    ebp, DWORD PTR _a1$[esp+32]
and    edx, esi
xor    eax, edx
or     eax, DWORD PTR _a1$[esp+32]
not    ebp
xor    ebp, DWORD PTR [edi]
not    ecx
and    ecx, DWORD PTR _x33$[esp+32]
xor    ebx, eax
not    eax
mov    DWORD PTR [edi], ebp
xor    eax, ecx
mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _out3$[esp+32]
xor    eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
pop    edi
pop    esi
xor    eax, ebx
pop    ebp
mov    DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
pop    ebx
add    esp, 20
ret    0
_s1   ENDP

```

5 variables were allocated in the local stack by the compiler.

Now let's try the same thing in the 64-bit version of MSVC 2008:

Listing 1.400: Optimizing MSVC 2008

```

a1$ = 56
a2$ = 64
a3$ = 72
a4$ = 80
x36$1$ = 88
a5$ = 88
a6$ = 96
out1$ = 104
out2$ = 112
out3$ = 120
out4$ = 128
s1    PROC
$LN3:
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+24], rbx
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+32], rbp
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+16], rdx
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+8], rcx
    push   rsi

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
push    rdi
push    r12
push    r13
push    r14
push    r15
mov     r15, QWORD PTR a5$[rsp]
mov     rcx, QWORD PTR a6$[rsp]
mov     rbp, r8
mov     r10, r9
mov     rax, r15
mov     rdx, rbp
not    rax
xor    rdx, r9
not    r10
mov     r11, rax
and    rax, r9
mov     rsi, r10
mov     QWORD PTR x36$1$[rsp], rax
and    r11, r8
and    rsi, r8
and    r10, r15
mov     r13, rdx
mov     rbx, r11
xor    rbx, r9
mov     r9, QWORD PTR a2$[rsp]
mov     r12, rsi
or     r12, r15
not    r13
and    r13, rcx
mov     r14, r12
and    r14, rcx
mov     rax, r14
mov     r8, r14
xor    r8, rbx
xor    rax, r15
not    rbx
and    rax, rdx
mov     rdi, rax
xor    rdi, rsi
or     rdi, rcx
xor    rdi, r10
and    rbx, rdi
mov     rcx, rdi
or     rcx, r9
xor    rcx, rax
mov     rax, r13
xor    rax, QWORD PTR x36$1$[rsp]
and    rcx, QWORD PTR a1$[rsp]
or     rax, r9
not    rcx
xor    rcx, rax
mov     rax, QWORD PTR out2$[rsp]
xor    rcx, QWORD PTR [rax]
```

```
xor    rcx, r8
mov    QWORD PTR [rax], rcx
mov    rax, QWORD PTR x36$1$[rsp]
mov    rcx, r14
or     rax, r8
or     rcx, r11
mov    r11, r9
xor    rcx, rdx
mov    QWORD PTR x36$1$[rsp], rax
mov    r8, rsi
mov    rdx, rcx
xor    rdx, r13
not    rdx
and    rdx, rdi
mov    r10, rdx
and    r10, r9
xor    r10, rax
xor    r10, rbx
not    rbx
and    rbx, r9
mov    rax, r10
and    rax, QWORD PTR a1$[rsp]
xor    rbx, rax
mov    rax, QWORD PTR out4$[rsp]
xor    rbx, QWORD PTR [rax]
xor    rbx, rcx
mov    QWORD PTR [rax], rbx
mov    rbx, QWORD PTR x36$1$[rsp]
and    rbx, rbp
mov    r9, rbx
not    r9
and    r9, rdi
or     r8, r11
mov    rax, QWORD PTR out1$[rsp]
xor    r8, r9
not    r9
and    r9, rcx
or     rdx, rbp
mov    rbp, QWORD PTR [rsp+80]
or     r9, rsi
xor    rbx, r12
mov    rcx, r11
not    rcx
not    r14
not    r13
and    rcx, r9
or     r9, rdi
and    rbx, r14
xor    r9, r15
xor    rcx, rdx
mov    rdx, QWORD PTR a1$[rsp]
not    r9
not    rcx
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

and    r13, r10
and    r9, r11
and    rcx, rdx
xor    r9, rbx
mov    rbx, QWORD PTR [rsp+72]
not    rcx
xor    rcx, QWORD PTR [rax]
or     r9, rdx
not    r9
xor    rcx, r8
mov    QWORD PTR [rax], rcx
mov    rax, QWORD PTR out3$[rsp]
xor    r9, r13
xor    r9, QWORD PTR [rax]
xor    r9, r8
mov    QWORD PTR [rax], r9
pop    r15
pop    r14
pop    r13
pop    r12
pop    rdi
pop    rsi
ret    0
s1    ENDP

```

Nothing was allocated in the local stack by the compiler, x36 is synonym for a5.

By the way, there are CPUs with much more GPR's, e.g. Itanium (128 registers).

1.37.2 ARM

64-bit instructions appeared in ARMv8.

1.37.3 Float point numbers

How floating point numbers are processed in x86-64 is explained here: [1.38 on the next page](#).

1.37.4 64-bit architecture criticism

Some people has irritation sometimes: now one needs twice as much memory for storing pointers, including cache memory, despite the fact that x64 CPUs can address only 48 bits of external RAM.

Pointers have gone out of favor to the point now where I had to flame about it because on my 64-bit computer that I have here, if I really care about using the capability of my machine I find that I'd better not use pointers because I have a machine that has 64-bit registers but it only has 2 gigabytes of RAM. So a pointer never has more than

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

32 significant bits to it. But every time I use a pointer it's costing me 64 bits and that doubles the size of my data structure. Worse, it goes into the cache and half of my cache is gone and that costs cash—cache is expensive.

So if I'm really trying to push the envelope now, I have to use arrays instead of pointers. I make complicated macros so that it looks like I'm using pointers, but I'm not really.

(Donald Knuth in "Coders at Work: Reflections on the Craft of Programming ".)

Some people make their own memory allocators. It's interesting to know about CryptoMiniSat¹⁷⁹ case. This program rarely uses more than 4GiB of RAM, but it uses pointers heavily. So it requires less memory on 32-bit architecture than on 64-bit one. To mitigate this problem, author made his own allocator (in *clauseallocator.(h|cpp)* files), which allows to have access to allocated memory using 32-bit identifiers instead of 64-bit pointers.

1.38 Working with floating point numbers using SIMD

Of course, the FPU has remained in x86-compatible processors when the SIMD extensions were added.

The SIMD extensions (SSE2) offer an easier way to work with floating-point numbers.

The number format remains the same (IEEE 754).

So, modern compilers (including those generating for x86-64) usually use SIMD instructions instead of FPU ones.

It can be said that it's good news, because it's easier to work with them.

We are going to reuse the examples from the FPU section here: [1.25 on page 275](#).

1.38.1 Simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

double f (double a, double b)
{
    return a/3.14 + b*4.1;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%f\n", f(1.2, 3.4));
};
```

¹⁷⁹<https://github.com/msoos/cryptominisat/>

x64

Listing 1.401: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

__real@4010666666666666 DQ 0401066666666666r ; 4.1
__real@40091eb851eb851f DQ 040091eb851eb851fr ; 3.14

a$ = 8
b$ = 16
f    PROC
      divsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@40091eb851eb851f
      mulsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4010666666666666
      addsd  xmm0, xmm1
      ret     0
f    ENDP

```

The input floating point values are passed in the XMM0-XMM3 registers, all the rest—via the stack ¹⁸⁰.

a is passed in XMM0, *b*—via XMM1.

The XMM-registers are 128-bit (as we know from the section about SIMD: [1.36 on page 513](#)), but the *double* values are 64 bit, so only lower register half is used.

DIVSD is an SSE-instruction that stands for “Divide Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values”, it just divides one value of type *double* by another, stored in the lower halves of operands.

The constants are encoded by compiler in IEEE 754 format.

MULSD and ADDSD work just as the same, but do multiplication and addition.

The result of the function’s execution in type *double* is left in the in XMM0 register.

That is how non-optimizing MSVC works:

Listing 1.402: MSVC 2012 x64

```

__real@4010666666666666 DQ 0401066666666666r ; 4.1
__real@40091eb851eb851f DQ 040091eb851eb851fr ; 3.14

a$ = 8
b$ = 16
f    PROC
      movsd  QWORD PTR [rsp+16], xmm1
      movsd  QWORD PTR [rsp+8], xmm0
      movsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR a$[rsp]
      divsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@40091eb851eb851f
      movsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR b$[rsp]
      mulsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4010666666666666
      addsd  xmm0, xmm1
      ret     0
f    ENDP

```

¹⁸⁰ [MSDN: Parameter Passing](#)

Slightly redundant. The input arguments are saved in the “shadow space” ([1.14.2 on page 129](#)), but only their lower register halves, i.e., only 64-bit values of type *double*. GCC produces the same code.

x86

Let’s also compile this example for x86. Despite the fact it’s generating for x86, MSVC 2012 uses SSE2 instructions:

Listing 1.403: Non-optimizing MSVC 2012 x86

```
tv70 = -8      ; size = 8
_a$ = 8       ; size = 8
_b$ = 16      ; size = 8
_f    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 8
    movsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    divsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@40091eb851eb851f
    movsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    mulsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4010666666666666
    addsd  xmm0, xmm1
    movsd  QWORD PTR tv70[ebp], xmm0
    fld    QWORD PTR tv70[ebp]
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_f    ENDP
```

Listing 1.404: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x86

```
tv67 = 8      ; size = 8
_a$ = 8       ; size = 8
_b$ = 16      ; size = 8
_f    PROC
    movsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    divsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@40091eb851eb851f
    movsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    mulsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@4010666666666666
    addsd  xmm1, xmm0
    movsd  QWORD PTR tv67[esp-4], xmm1
    fld    QWORD PTR tv67[esp-4]
    ret    0
_f    ENDP
```

It’s almost the same code, however, there are some differences related to calling conventions: 1) the arguments are passed not in XMM registers, but in the stack, like in the FPU examples ([1.25 on page 275](#)); 2) the result of the function is returned in ST(0) — in order to do so, it’s copied (through local variable tv) from one of the XMM registers to ST(0).

Let's try the optimized example in OllyDbg:

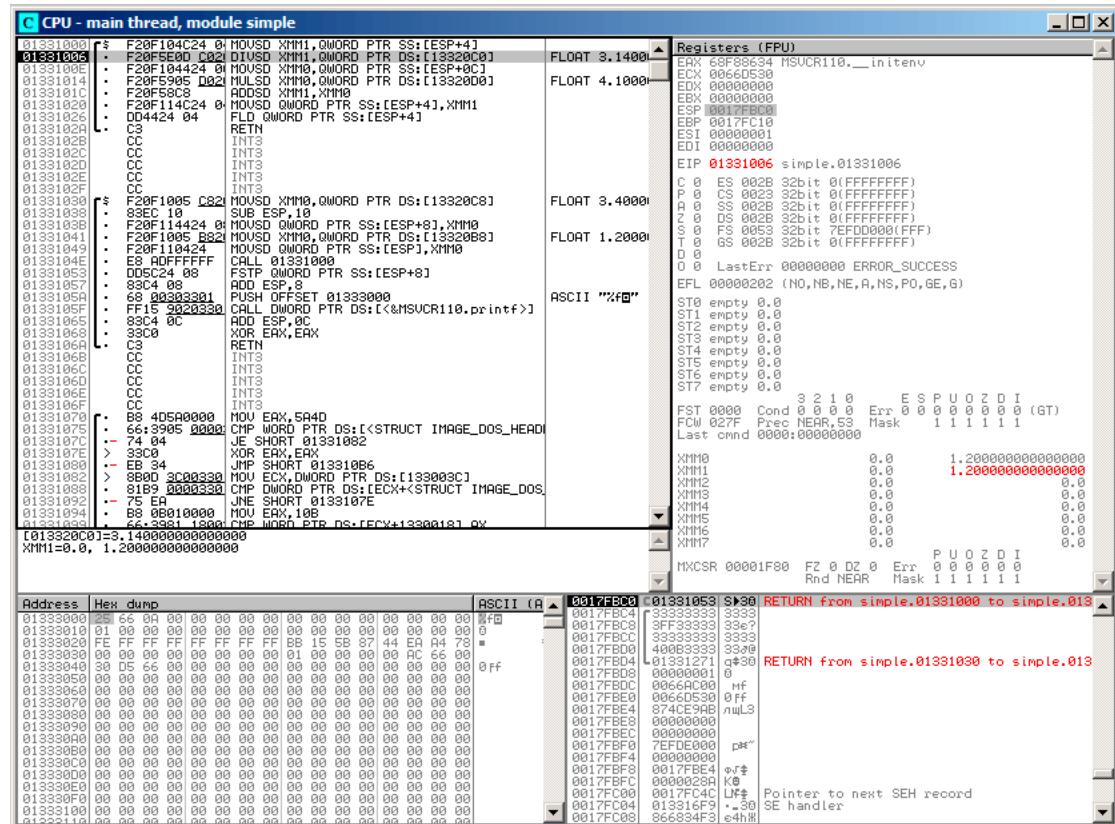


Figure 1.113: OllyDbg: MOVSD loads the value of *a* into XMM1

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

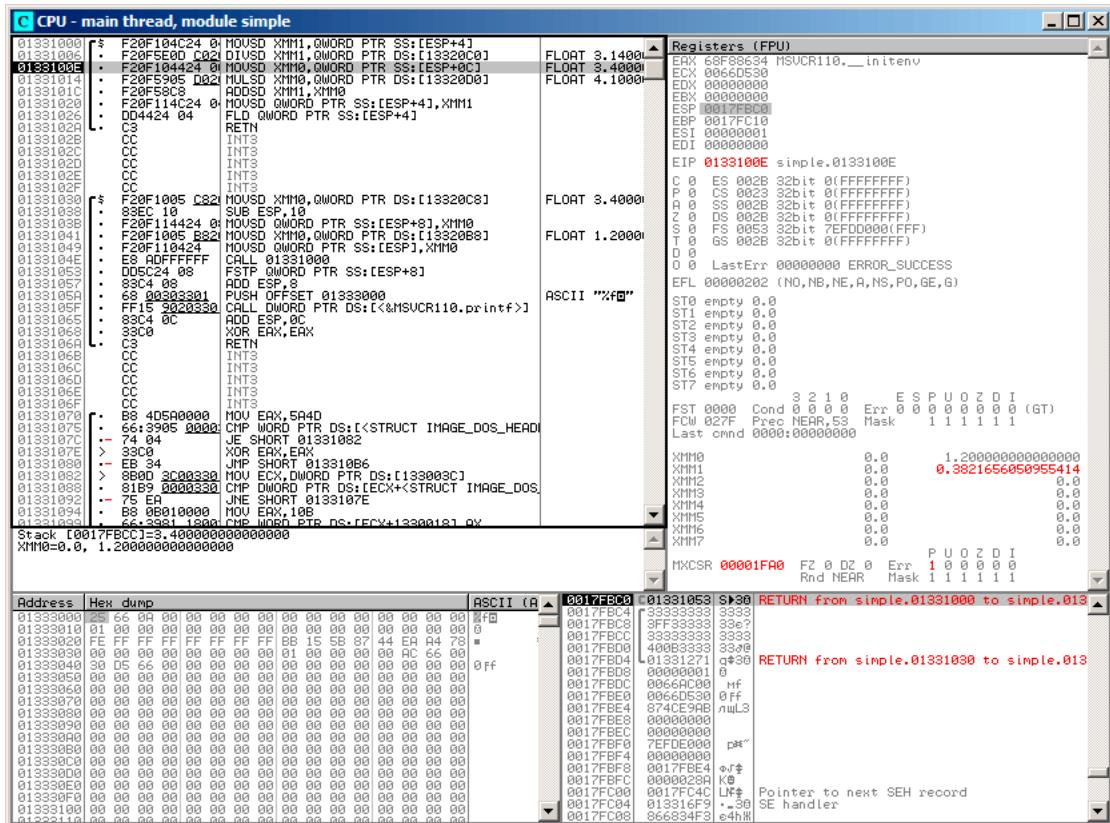


Figure 1.114: OllyDbg: DIVSD calculated quotient and stored it in XMM1

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

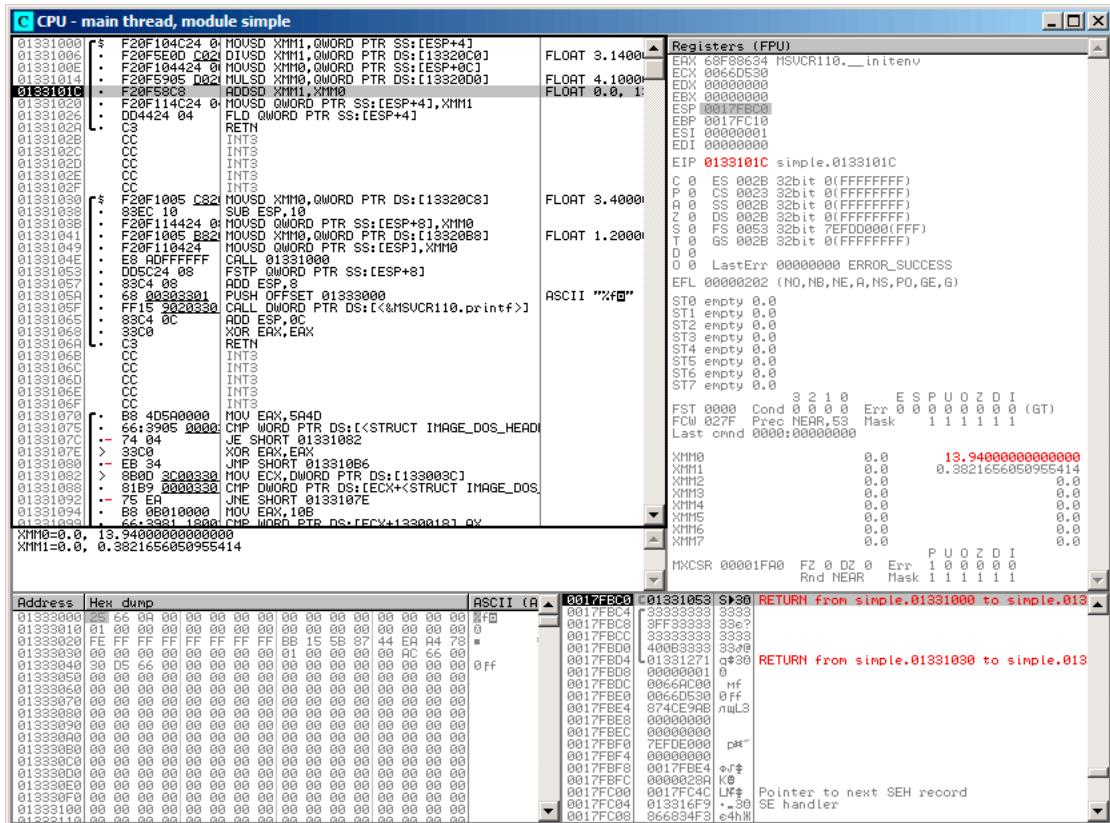


Figure 1.115: OllyDbg: MULSD calculated product and stored it in XMM0

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

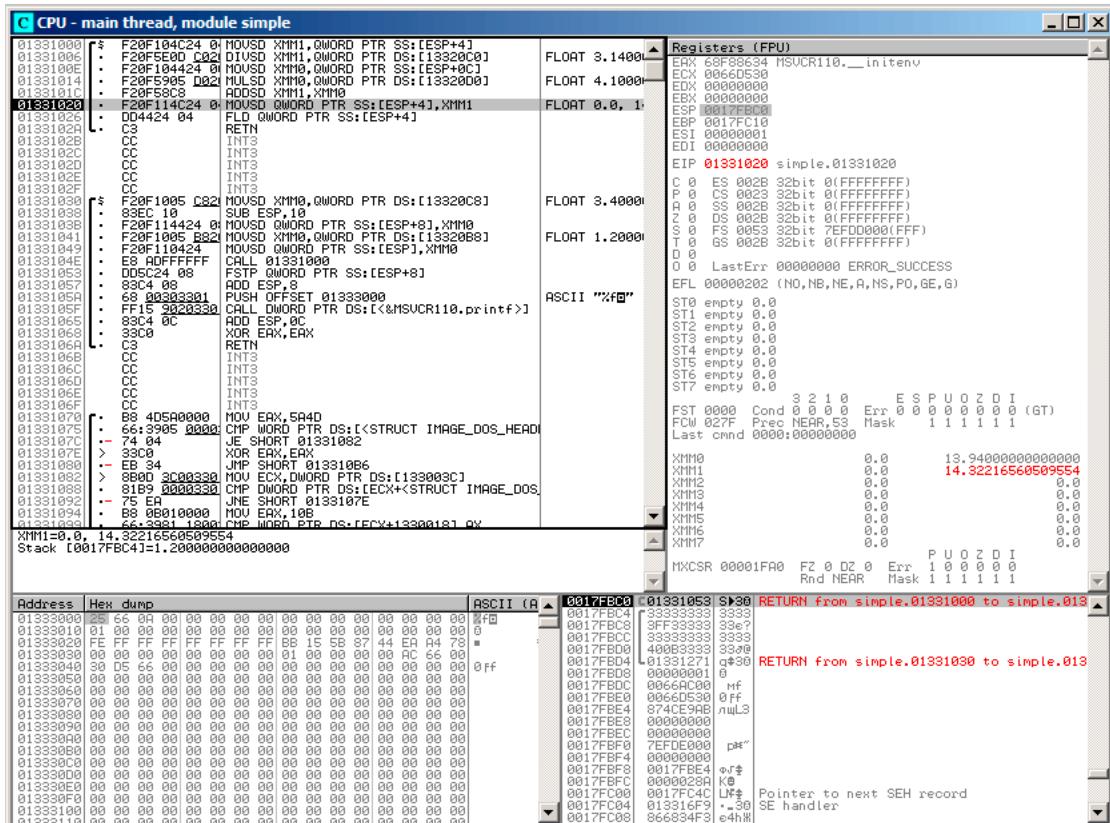


Figure 1.116: OllyDbg: ADDSD adds value in XMM0 to XMM1

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

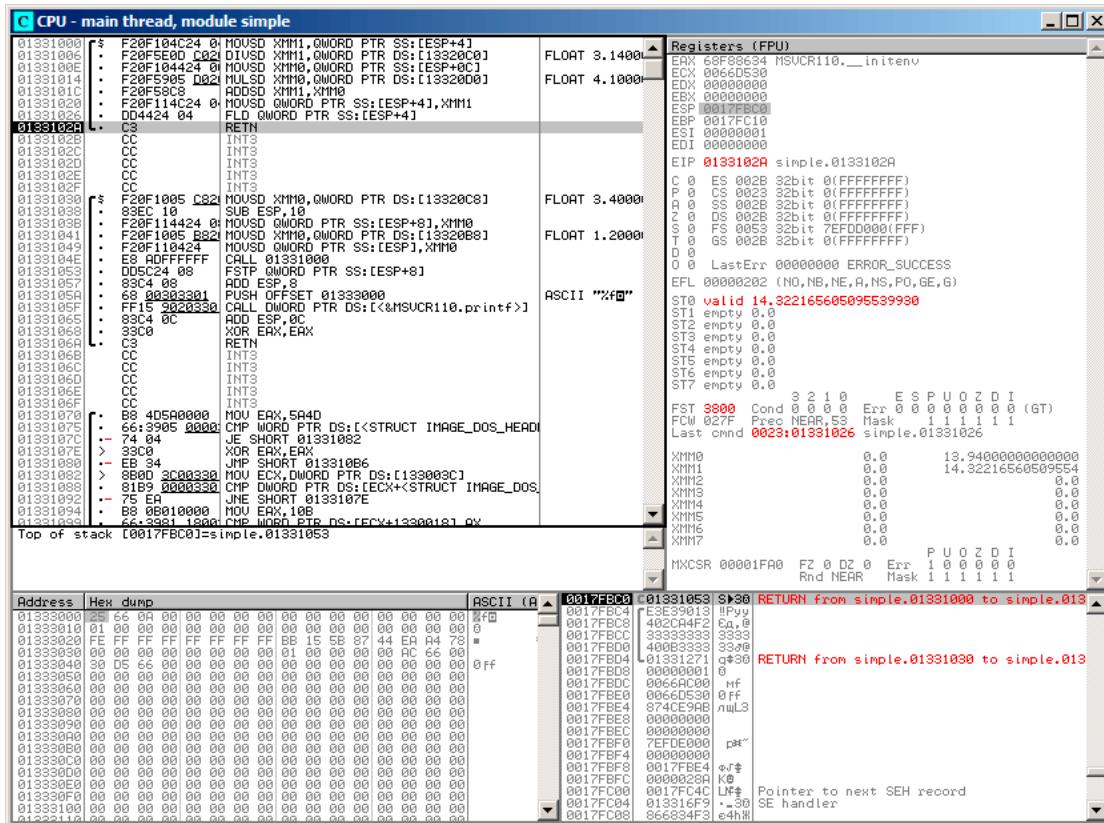


Figure 1.117: OllyDbg: FLD left function result in ST(0)

We see that OllyDbg shows the XMM registers as pairs of *double* numbers, but only the *lower* part is used.

Apparently, OllyDbg shows them in that format because the SSE2 instructions (suffixes with -SD) are executed right now.

But of course, it's possible to switch the register format and to see their contents as 4 float-numbers or just as 16 bytes.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1.38.2 Passing floating point number via arguments

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main ()
{
    printf ("32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n", pow (32.01,1.54));

    return 0;
}
```

They are passed in the lower halves of the XMM0-XMM3 registers.

Listing 1.405: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
$SG1354 DB      '32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf', 0aH, 00H

__real@40400147ae147ae1 DQ 040400147ae147ae1r ; 32.01
__real@3ff8a3d70a3d70a4 DQ 03ff8a3d70a3d70a4r ; 1.54

main PROC
    sub    rsp, 40                                ; 00000028H
    movsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@3ff8a3d70a3d70a4
    movsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@40400147ae147ae1
    call   pow
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG1354
    movaps xmm1, xmm0
    movd   rdx, xmm1
    call   printf
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 40                                ; 00000028H
    ret    0
main ENDP
```

There is no MOVSDX instruction in Intel and AMD manuals ([12.1.4 on page 1302](#)), there it is called just MOVSD. So there are two instructions sharing the same name in x86 (about the other see: [.1.6 on page 1320](#)). Apparently, Microsoft developers wanted to get rid of the mess, so they renamed it to MOVSDX. It just loads a value into the lower half of a XMM register.

`pow()` takes arguments from XMM0 and XMM1, and returns result in XMM0. It is then moved to RDX for `printf()`. Why? Maybe because `printf()`—is a variable arguments function?

Listing 1.406: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```
.LC2:
.string "32.01 ^ 1.54 = %lf\n"
main:
    sub    rsp, 8
    movsd xmm1, QWORD PTR .LC0[rip]
    movsd xmm0, QWORD PTR .LC1[rip]
    call   pow
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; result is now in XMM0
mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC2
mov    eax, 1 ; number of vector registers passed
call   printf
xor    eax, eax
add    rsp, 8
ret

.LC0:
.long 171798692
.long 1073259479

.LC1:
.long 2920577761
.long 1077936455

```

GCC generates clearer output. The value for `printf()` is passed in `XMM0`. By the way, here is a case when 1 is written into `EAX` for `printf()`—this implies that one argument will be passed in vector registers, just as the standard requires [Michael Matz, Jan Hubicka, Andreas Jaeger, Mark Mitchell, *System V Application Binary Interface. AMD64 Architecture Processor Supplement*, (2013)]¹⁸¹.

1.38.3 Comparison example

```

#include <stdio.h>

double d_max (double a, double b)
{
    if (a>b)
        return a;

    return b;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%f\n", d_max (1.2, 3.4));
    printf ("%f\n", d_max (5.6, -4));
}

```

x64

Listing 1.407: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

a$ = 8
b$ = 16
d_max PROC
    comisd xmm0, xmm1
    ja SHORT $LN2@d_max
    movaps xmm0, xmm1
$LN2@d_max:

```

¹⁸¹Also available as <https://software.intel.com/sites/default/files/article/402129/mpx-linux64-abi.pdf>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

d_max    fatret 0
        ENDP

```

Optimizing MSVC generates a code very easy to understand.

COMISD is “Compare Scalar Ordered Double-Precision Floating-Point Values and Set EFLAGS”. Essentially, that is what it does.

Non-optimizing MSVC generates more redundant code, but it is still not hard to understand:

Listing 1.408: MSVC 2012 x64

```

a$ = 8
b$ = 16
d_max PROC
    movsd QWORD PTR [rsp+16], xmm1
    movsd QWORD PTR [rsp+8], xmm0
    movsd xmm0, QWORD PTR a$[rsp]
    comisd xmm0, QWORD PTR b$[rsp]
    jbe SHORT $LN1@d_max
    movsd xmm0, QWORD PTR a$[rsp]
    jmp SHORT $LN2@d_max
$LN1@d_max:
    movsd xmm0, QWORD PTR b$[rsp]
$LN2@d_max:
    fatret 0
d_max ENDP

```

However, GCC 4.4.6 did more optimizations and used the MAXSD (“Return Maximum Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value”) instruction, which just choose the maximum value!

Listing 1.409: Optimizing GCC 4.4.6 x64

```

d_max:
    maxsd    xmm0, xmm1
    ret

```

x86

Let's compile this example in MSVC 2012 with optimization turned on:

Listing 1.410: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x86

```
_a$ = 8          ; size = 8
_b$ = 16         ; size = 8
_d_max PROC
    movsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    comisd xmm0, QWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    jbe     SHORT $LN1@_d_max
    fld    QWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    ret    0
$LN1@_d_max:
    fld    QWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    ret    0
_d_max ENDP
```

Almost the same, but the values of *a* and *b* are taken from the stack and the function result is left in ST(0).

If we load this example in OllyDbg, we can see how the COMISD instruction compares values and sets/clears the CF and PF flags:

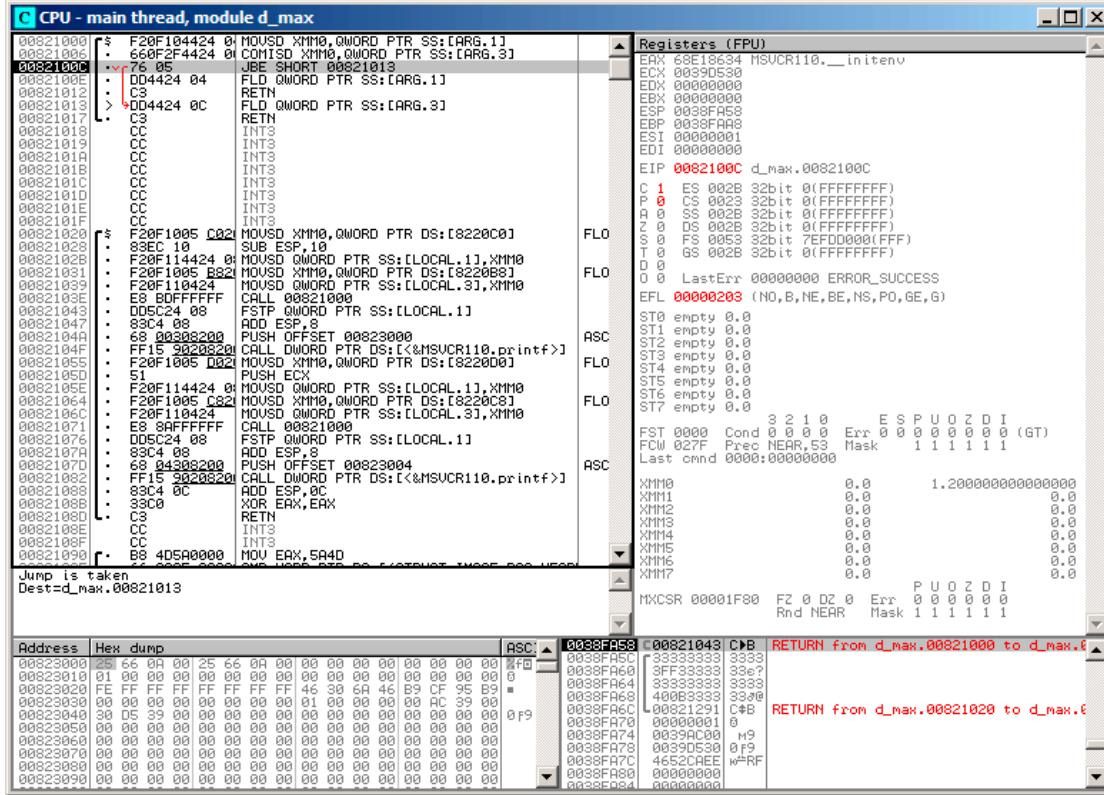


Figure 1.118: OllyDbg: COMISD changed CF and PF flags

1.38.4 Calculating machine epsilon: x64 and SIMD

Let's revisit the "calculating machine epsilon" example for *double* listing.[1.32.2](#).

Now we compile it for x64:

Listing 1.411: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
v$ = 8
calculate_machine_epsilon PROC
    movsdx QWORD PTR v$[rsp], xmm0
    movaps xmm1, xmm0
    inc QWORD PTR v$[rsp]
    movsdx xmm0, QWORD PTR v$[rsp]
    subsd xmm0, xmm1
    ret 0
calculate_machine_epsilon ENDP
```

There is no way to add 1 to a value in 128-bit XMM register, so it must be placed into memory.

There is, however, the ADDSD instruction (*Add Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point*

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Values) which can add a value to the lowest 64-bit half of a XMM register while ignoring the higher one, but MSVC 2012 probably is not that good yet ¹⁸².

Nevertheless, the value is then reloaded to a XMM register and subtraction occurs. SUBSD is “Subtract Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values”, i.e., it operates on the lower 64-bit part of 128-bit XMM register. The result is returned in the XMM0 register.

1.38.5 Pseudo-random number generator example revisited

Let's revisit “pseudo-random number generator example” example listing [1.32.1](#).

If we compile this in MSVC 2012, it will use the SIMD instructions for the FPU.

Listing 1.412: Optimizing MSVC 2012

```
__real@3f800000 DD 03f800000r ; 1

tv128 = -4
_tmp$ = -4
?float_rand@@YAMXZ PROC
    push    ecx
    call    ?my_rand@@YAIXZ
; EAX=pseudorandom value
    and     eax, 8388607 ; 007fffffH
    or      eax, 1065353216 ; 3f800000H
; EAX=pseudorandom value & 0x007fffff | 0x3f800000
; store it into local stack:
    mov     DWORD PTR _tmp$[esp+4], eax
; reload it as float point number:
    movss  xmm0, DWORD PTR _tmp$[esp+4]
; subtract 1.0:
    subss  xmm0, DWORD PTR __real@3f800000
; move value to ST0 by placing it in temporary variable...
    movss  DWORD PTR tv128[esp+4], xmm0
; ... and reloading it into ST0:
    fld    DWORD PTR tv128[esp+4]
    pop    ecx
    ret    0
?float_rand@@YAMXZ ENDP
```

All instructions have the -SS suffix, which stands for “Scalar Single”.

“Scalar” implies that only one value is stored in the register.

“Single”¹⁸³ stands for *float* data type.

1.38.6 Summary

Only the lower half of XMM registers is used in all examples here, to store number in IEEE 754 format.

¹⁸²As an exercise, you may try to rework this code to eliminate the usage of the local stack.

¹⁸³I.e., single precision.

Essentially, all instructions prefixed by -SD (“Scalar Double-Precision”)—are instructions working with floating point numbers in IEEE 754 format, stored in the lower 64-bit half of a XMM register.

And it is easier than in the FPU, probably because the SIMD extensions were evolved in a less chaotic way than the FPU ones in the past. The stack register model is not used.

If you would try to replace *double* with *float*

in these examples, the same instructions will be used, but prefixed with -SS (“Scalar Single-Precision”), for example, MOVSS, COMISS, ADDSS, etc.

“Scalar” implies that the SIMD register containing only one value instead of several.

Instructions working with several values in a register simultaneously have “Packed” in their name.

Needless to say, the SSE2 instructions work with 64-bit IEEE 754 numbers (*double*), while the internal representation of the floating-point numbers in FPU is 80-bit numbers.

Hence, the FPU may produce less round-off errors and as a consequence, FPU may give more precise calculation results.

1.39 ARM-specific details

1.39.1 Number sign (#) before number

The Keil compiler, [IDA](#) and objdump precede all numbers with the “#” number sign, for example: listing [1.22.1](#).

But when GCC 4.9 generates assembly language output, it doesn't, for example: listing [3.18](#).

The ARM listings in this book are somewhat mixed.

It's hard to say, which method is right. Supposedly, one has to obey the rules accepted in environment he/she works in.

1.39.2 Addressing modes

This instruction is possible in ARM64:

```
ldr    x0, [x29,24]
```

This means add 24 to the value in X29 and load the value from this address.

Please note that 24 is inside the brackets. The meaning is different if the number is outside the brackets:

```
ldr    w4, [x1],28
```

This means load the value at the address in X1, then add 28 to X1.

ARM allows you to add or subtract a constant to/from the address used for loading.

And it's possible to do that both before and after loading.

There is no such addressing mode in x86, but it is present in some other processors, even on PDP-11.

There is a legend that the pre-increment, post-increment, pre-decrement and post-decrement modes in PDP-11, were “guilty” for the appearance of such C language (which developed on PDP-11) constructs as `*ptr++`, `*++ptr`, `*ptr--`, `--ptr`.

By the way, this is one of the hard to memorize C features. This is how it is:

C term	ARM term	C statement	how it works
Post-increment	post-indexed addressing	<code>*ptr++</code>	use <code>*ptr</code> value, then increment <code>ptr</code> pointer
Post-decrement	post-indexed addressing	<code>*ptr--</code>	use <code>*ptr</code> value, then decrement <code>ptr</code> pointer
Pre-increment	pre-indexed addressing	<code>*++ptr</code>	increment <code>ptr</code> pointer, then use <code>*ptr</code> value
Pre-decrement	pre-indexed addressing	<code>*--ptr</code>	decrement <code>ptr</code> pointer, then use <code>*ptr</code> value

Pre-indexing is marked with an exclamation mark in the ARM assembly language. For example, see line 2 in listing 1.29.

Dennis Ritchie (one of the creators of the C language) mentioned that it presumably was invented by Ken Thompson (another C creator) because this processor feature was present in PDP-7¹⁸⁴, [Dennis M. Ritchie, *The development of the C language, (1993)*]¹⁸⁵.

Thus, C language compilers may use it, if it is present on the target processor.

That's very convenient for array processing.

1.39.3 Loading a constant into a register

32-bit ARM

As we already know, all instructions have a length of 4 bytes in ARM mode and 2 bytes in Thumb mode.

Then how can we load a 32-bit value into a register, if it's not possible to encode it in one instruction?

Let's try:

¹⁸⁴ http://yurichev.com/mirrors/C/c_dmr_postincrement.txt

¹⁸⁵ Also available as [pdf](#)

```
unsigned int f()
{
    return 0x12345678;
};
```

Listing 1.413: GCC 4.6.3 -O3 ARM mode

```
f:
    ldr    r0, .L2
    bx    lr
.L2:
    .word 305419896 ; 0x12345678
```

So, the 0x12345678 value is just stored aside in memory and loaded if needed. But it's possible to get rid of the additional memory access.

Listing 1.414: GCC 4.6.3 -O3 -march=armv7-a (ARM mode)

```
movw    r0, #22136      ; 0x5678
movt    r0, #4660        ; 0x1234
bx     lr
```

We see that the value is loaded into the register by parts, the lower part first (using MOVW), then the higher (using MOVT).

This implies that 2 instructions are necessary in ARM mode for loading a 32-bit value into a register.

It's not a real problem, because in fact there are not many constants in real code (except of 0 and 1).

Does it mean that the two-instruction version is slower than one-instruction version?

Doubtfully. Most likely, modern ARM processors are able to detect such sequences and execute them fast.

On the other hand, [IDA](#) is able to detect such patterns in the code and disassembles this function as:

```
MOV    R0, 0x12345678
BX     LR
```

ARM64

```
uint64_t f()
{
    return 0x12345678ABCDEF01;
};
```

Listing 1.415: GCC 4.9.1 -O3

```
mov    x0, 61185      ; 0xef01
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
movk    x0, 0xabcd, lsl 16
movk    x0, 0x5678, lsl 32
movk    x0, 0x1234, lsl 48
ret
```

MOVK stands for “MOV Keep”, i.e., it writes a 16-bit value into the register, not touching the rest of the bits. The LSL suffix shifts left the value by 16, 32 and 48 bits at each step. The shifting is done before loading.

This implies that 4 instructions are necessary to load a 64-bit value into a register.

Storing floating-point number into register

It's possible to store a floating-point number into a D-register using only one instruction.

For example:

```
double a()
{
    return 1.5;
};
```

Listing 1.416: GCC 4.9.1 -O3 + objdump

```
0000000000000000 <a>:
0: 1e6f1000      fmov    d0, #1.5000000000000000e+000
4: d65f03c0      ret
```

The number 1.5 was indeed encoded in a 32-bit instruction. But how?

In ARM64, there are 8 bits in the FM0V instruction for encoding some floating-point numbers.

The algorithm is called VFPEExpandImm() in [ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv8, for ARMv8-A architecture profile, (2013)]¹⁸⁶. This is also called *minifloat*¹⁸⁷.

We can try different values: the compiler is able to encode 30.0 and 31.0, but it couldn't encode 32.0, as 8 bytes have to be allocated for this number in the IEEE 754 format:

```
double a()
{
    return 32;
};
```

Listing 1.417: GCC 4.9.1 -O3

```
a:
```

¹⁸⁶Also available as [http://yurichev.com/mirrors/ARMv8-A_Architecture_Reference_Manual_\(Issue_A.a\).pdf](http://yurichev.com/mirrors/ARMv8-A_Architecture_Reference_Manual_(Issue_A.a).pdf)

¹⁸⁷wikipedia

```

    ldr      d0, .LC0
    ret
.LC0:
    .word   0
    .word   1077936128

```

1.39.4 Relocs in ARM64

As we know, there are 4-byte instructions in ARM64, so it is impossible to write a large number into a register using a single instruction.

Nevertheless, an executable image can be loaded at any random address in memory, so that's why relocs exists. Read more about them (in relation to Win32 PE): [6.5.2 on page 982](#).

The address is formed using the ADRP and ADD instruction pair in ARM64.

The first loads a 4KiB-page address and the second one adds the remainder. Let's compile the example from "Hello, world!" (listing.1.11) in GCC (Linaro) 4.9 under win32:

Listing 1.418: GCC (Linaro) 4.9 and objdump of object file

```

...>aarch64-linux-gnu-gcc.exe hw.c -c
...>aarch64-linux-gnu-objdump.exe -d hw.o
...
0000000000000000 <main>:
 0: a9bf7bfd      stp      x29, x30, [sp,#-16]!
 4: 910003fd      mov      x29, sp
 8: 90000000      adrp     x0, 0 <main>
 c: 91000000      add      x0, x0, #0x0
10: 94000000      bl       0 <printf>
14: 52800000      mov      w0, #0x0 // #0
18: a8c17bfd      ldp      x29, x30, [sp],#16
1c: d65f03c0      ret

...>aarch64-linux-gnu-objdump.exe -r hw.o
...
RELOCATION RECORDS FOR [.text]:
OFFSET      TYPE           VALUE
0000000000000008 R_AARCH64_ADR_PREL_PG_HI21  .rodata
000000000000000c R_AARCH64_ADD_ABS_L012_NC  .rodata
0000000000000010 R_AARCH64_CALL26   printf

```

So there are 3 relocations in this object file.

- The first one takes the page address, cuts the lowest 12 bits and writes the remaining high 21 bits to the ADRP instruction's bit fields. This is because we

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

don't need to encode the low 12 bits, and the ADRP instruction has space only for 21 bits.

- The second one puts the 12 bits of the address relative to the page start into the ADD instruction's bit fields.
- The last, 26-bit one, is applied to the instruction at address 0x10 where the jump to the printf() function is.

All ARM64 (and in ARM in ARM mode) instruction addresses have zeros in the two lowest bits (because all instructions have a size of 4 bytes), so one have to encode only the highest 26 bits of 28-bit address space ($\pm 128\text{MB}$).

There are no such relocs in the executable file: because it's known where the "Hello!" string is located, in which page, and the address of puts() is also known.

So there are values set already in the ADRP, ADD and BL instructions (the linker has written them while linking):

Listing 1.419: objdump of executable file

```
0000000000400590 <main>:
400590:   a9bf7bfd      stp    x29, x30, [sp,#-16]!
400594:   910003fd      mov    x29, sp
400598:   90000000      adrp   x0, 400000 <_init-0x3b8>
40059c:   91192000      add    x0, x0, #0x648
4005a0:   97ffffa0      bl     400420 <puts@plt>
4005a4:   52800000      mov    w0, #0x0 // #0
4005a8:   a8c17bfd      ldp    x29, x30, [sp],#16
4005ac:   d65f03c0      ret

...
Contents of section .rodata:
400640 01000200 00000000 48656c6c 6f210000 .....Hello!...
```

As an example, let's try to disassemble the BL instruction manually.

0x97ffffa0 is 0b1001011111111111111111110100000. According to [ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv8, for ARMv8-A architecture profile, (2013)C5.6.26], imm26 is the last 26 bits:

$imm26 = 0b11111111111111111111110100000$. It is 0x3FFFA0, but the MSB is 1, so the number is negative, and we can convert it manually to convenient form for us. By the rules of negation (2.2 on page 573), just invert all bits: (it is 0b101111=0x5F), and add 1 (0x5F+1=0x60). So the number in signed form is -0x60. Let's multiply -0x60 by 4 (because address stored in opcode is divided by 4): it is -0x180. Now let's calculate destination address: $0x4005a0 + (-0x180) = 0x400420$ (please note: we consider the address of the BL instruction, not the current value of PC, which may be different!). So the destination address is 0x400420.

More about ARM64-related relocations: [ELF for the ARM 64-bit Architecture (AArch64), (2013)]¹⁸⁸.

¹⁸⁸Also available as http://infocenter.arm.com/help/topic/com.arm.doc.ihi0056b/IHI0056B_aaelf64.pdf

1.40 MIPS-specific details

1.40.1 Loading a 32-bit constant into register

```
unsigned int f()
{
    return 0x12345678;
};
```

All instructions in MIPS, just like ARM, have a size of 32-bit, so it's not possible to embed a 32-bit constant into one instruction.

So one have to use at least two instructions: the first loads the high part of the 32-bit number and the second one applies an OR operation, which effectively sets the low 16-bit part of the target register:

Listing 1.420: GCC 4.4.5 -O3 (assembly output)

```
li      $2,305397760 # 0x12340000
j       $31
ori    $2,$2,0x5678 ; branch delay slot
```

[IDA](#) is fully aware of such frequently encountered code patterns, so, for convenience it shows the last ORI instruction as the LI pseudo instruction, which allegedly loads a full 32-bit number into the \$V0 register.

Listing 1.421: GCC 4.4.5 -O3 (IDA)

```
lui    $v0, 0x1234
jr     $ra
li     $v0, 0x12345678 ; branch delay slot
```

The GCC assembly output has the LI pseudo instruction, but in fact, LUI ("Load Upper Immediate") is there, which stores a 16-bit value into the high part of the register.

Let's see in *objdump* output:

Listing 1.422: objdump

```
00000000 <f>:
0: 3c021234      lui    v0,0x1234
4: 03e00008      jr     ra
8: 34425678      ori    v0,v0,0x5678
```

Loading a 32-bit global variable into register

```
unsigned int global_var=0x12345678;

unsigned int f2()
{
    return global_var;
};
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

This is slightly different: LUI loads upper 16-bit from *global_var* into \$2 (or \$V0) and then LW loads lower 16-bits summing it with the contents of \$2:

Listing 1.423: GCC 4.4.5 -O3 (assembly output)

```
f2:
    lui      $2,%hi(global_var)
    lw       $2,%lo(global_var)($2)
    j       $31
    nop     ; branch delay slot

    ...

global_var:
    .word   305419896
```

[IDA](#) is fully aware of often used LUI/LW instruction pair, so it coalesces both into a single LW instruction:

Listing 1.424: GCC 4.4.5 -O3 (IDA)

```
_f2:
    lw      $v0, global_var
    jr      $ra
    or      $at, $zero      ; branch delay slot

    ...

    .data
    .globl global_var
global_var: .word 0x12345678      # DATA XREF: _f2
```

objdump's output is the same as GCC's assembly output. Let's also dump relocs of the object file:

Listing 1.425: objdump

```
objdump -D filename.o

...
0000000c <f2>:
    c: 3c020000      lui      v0,0x0
    10: 8c420000     lw       v0,0(v0)
    14: 03e00008     jr      ra
    18: 00200825     move    at,at  ; branch delay slot
    1c: 00200825     move    at,at

Disassembly of section .data:

00000000 <global_var>:
    0: 12345678      beq    s1,s4,159e4 <f2+0x159d8>
...

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
objdump -r filename.o  
...  
RELOCATION RECORDS FOR [.text]:  
OFFSET   TYPE      VALUE  
0000000c R_MIPS_HI16    global_var  
00000010 R_MIPS_L016    global_var  
...
```

We can see that address of *global_var* is to be written right into LUI and LW instructions during executable file loading: high 16-bit part of *global_var* goes into the first one (LUI), lower 16-bit part goes into the second one (LW).

1.40.2 Further reading about MIPS

Dominic Sweetman, See *MIPS Run, Second Edition*, (2010).

Chapter 2

Important fundamentals

2.1 Integral datatypes

Integral datatype is a type for a value which can be converted to number. These are numbers, enumerations, booleans.

2.1.1 Bit

Obvious usage for bits are boolean values: 0 for *false* and 1 for *true*.

Set of booleans can be packed into [word](#): there will be 32 booleans in 32-bit word, etc. This way is called *bitmap* or *bitfield*.

But it has obvious overhead: a bit jiggling, isolating, etc. While using [word](#) (or *int* type) for boolean variable is not economic, but highly efficient.

In C/C++ environment, 0 is for *false* and any non-zero value is for *true*. For example:

```
if (1234)
    printf ("this will always be executed\n");
else
    printf ("this will never\n");
```

This is popular way of enumerating characters in a C-string:

```
char *input=...;

while(*input) // execute body if *input character is non-zero
{
    // do something with *input
    input++;
};
```

2.1.2 Nibble AKA nybble

AKA half-byte, tetrade. Equals to 4 bits.

All these terms are still in use today.

Binary-coded decimal (**BCD**¹)

4-bit nibbles were used in 4-bit CPUs like legendary Intel 4004 (used in calculators).

It's interesting to know that there was *binary-coded decimal* (**BCD**) way of representing decimal digit using 4 bits. Decimal 0 is represented as 0b0000, decimal 9 as 0b1001 and higher values are not used. Decimal 1234 is represented as 0x1234. Of course, this way is not economical.

Nevertheless, it has one advantage: decimal to **BCD**-packed number conversion and back is extremely easy. BCD-numbers can be added, subtracted, etc., but an additional correction is needed. x86 CPUs has rare instructions for that: AAA/DAA (adjust after addition), AAS/DAS (adjust after subtraction), AAM (after multiplication), AAD (after division).

The need for CPUs to support **BCD** numbers is a reason why *half-carry flag* (on 8080/Z80) and *auxiliary flag* (AF on x86) are exist: this is carry-flag generated after proceeding of lower 4 bits. The flag is then used for adjustment instructions.

The fact of easy conversion had led to popularity of [Peter Abel, *IBM PC assembly language and programming* (1987)] book. But aside of this book, the author of these notes never seen **BCD** numbers in practice, except for *magic numbers* ([5.6.1 on page 921](#)), like when someone's birthday is encoded like 0x19791011—this is indeed packed **BCD** number.

Surprisingly, the author found a use of **BCD**-encoded numbers in SAP software: <https://yurichev.com/blog/SAP/>. Some numbers, including prices, are encoded in **BCD** form in database. Perhaps, they used it to make it compatible with some ancient software/hardware?

BCD instructions in x86 were often used for other purposes, especially in undocumented ways, for example:

```
cmp al,10
sbb al,69h
das
```

This obscure code converts number in 0..15 range into **ASCII** character '0'..'9', 'A'..'F'.

Z80

Z80 was clone of 8-bit Intel 8080 CPU, and because of space constraints, it has 4-bit **ALU**, i.e., each operation over two 8-bit numbers had to be proceeded in two steps. One side-effect of this was easy and natural generation of *half-carry flag*.

¹Binary-Coded Decimal

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

2.1.3 Byte

Byte is primarily used for character storage. 8-bit bytes were not common as today. Punched tapes for teletypes had 5 and 6 possible holes, this is 5 or 6 bits for byte.

To emphasize the fact the byte has 8 bits, byte is sometimes called *octet*: at least *fetchmail* uses this terminology.

9-bit bytes used to exist in 36-bit architectures: 4 9-bit bytes would fit in a single [word](#). Probably because of this fact, C/C++ standard tells that *char* has to have a room for *at least* 8 bits, but more bits are allowable.

For example, in the early C language manual², we can find this:

```
char one byte character (PDP-11, IBM360: 8 bits; H6070: 9 bits)
```

By H6070 they probably meant Honeywell 6070, with 36-bit words.

Standard ASCII table

7-bit ASCII table is standard, which has only 128 possible characters. Early E-Mail transport software were operating only on 7-bit ASCII codes, so a [MIME](#)³ standard needed to encode messages in non-Latin writing systems. 7-bit ASCII code was augmented by parity bit, resulting in 8 bits.

Data Encryption Standard ([DES](#)⁴) has a 56 bits key, this is 8 7-bit bytes, leaving a space to parity bit for each character.

There is no need to memorize whole [ASCII](#) table, but rather ranges. [0..0x1F] are control characters (non-printable). [0x20..0x7E] are printable ones. Codes starting at 0x80 are usually used for non-Latin writing systems and/or pseudographics.

Significant codes which will be easily memorized are: 0 (end of C-string, '\0' in C/C++); 0xA or 10 (*line feed*, '\n' in C/C++); 0xD or 13 (*carriage return*, '\r' in C/C++).

0x20 (space) is also often memorized.

8-bit CPUs

x86 has capability to work with byte(s) on register level (because they are descendants of 8-bit 8080 CPU), RISC CPUs like ARM and MIPS—not.

2.1.4 Wide char

This is an attempt to support multi-lingual environment by extending byte to 16-bit. Most well-known example is Windows NT kernel and win32 functions with *W* suffix. This is why each Latin character in plain English text string is interleaved with zero byte. This encoding is called UCS-2 or UTF-16

²<https://yurichev.com/mirrors/C/bwk-tutor.html>

³Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions

⁴Data Encryption Standard

Usually, `wchar_t` is synonym to 16-bit `short` data type.

2.1.5 Signed integer vs unsigned

Some may argue, why unsigned data types exist at first place, since any unsigned number can be represented as signed. Yes, but absence of sign bit in a value extends its range twice. Hence, signed byte has range of -128..127, and unsigned one: 0..255. Another benefit of using unsigned data types is self-documenting: you define a variable which can't be assigned to negative values.

Unsigned data types are absent in Java, for which it's criticized. It's hard to implement cryptographical algorithms using boolean operations over signed data types.

Values like 0xFFFFFFFF (-1) are used often, mostly as error codes.

2.1.6 Word

Word word is somewhat ambiguous term and usually denotes a data type fitting in **GPR**. Bytes are practical for characters, but impractical for other arithmetical calculations.

Hence, many **CPU**s have **GPR**s with width of 16, 32 or 64 bits. Even 8-bit CPUs like 8080 and Z80 offer to work with 8-bit register pairs, each pair forming a 16-bit *pseudoregister* (*BC*, *DE*, *HL*, etc.). Z80 has some capability to work with register pairs, and this is, in a sense, some kind of 16-bit CPU emulation.

In general, if a CPU marketed as “n-bit CPU”, this usually means it has n-bit **GPR**s.

There was a time when hard disks and **RAM** modules were marketed as having *n* kilo-words instead of *b* kilobytes/megabytes.

For example, *Apollo Guidance Computer* has 2048 words of **RAM**. This was a 16-bit computer, so there was 4096 bytes of **RAM**.

TX-0 had 64K of 18-bit words of magnetic core memory, i.e., 64 kilo-words.

DECSystem-2060 could have up to 4096 kilowords of *solid state memory* (i.e., hard disks, tapes, etc). This was 36-bit computer, so this is 18432 kilobytes or 18 megabytes.

Essentially, why do you need bytes if you have words? Mostly for text strings processing. Words can be used in almost any other situations.

int in C/C++ is almost always mapped to **word**. (Except of AMD64 architecture where *int* is still 32-bit one, perhaps, for the reason of better portability.)

int is 16-bit on PDP-11 and old MS-DOS compilers. *int* is 32-bit on VAX, on x86 starting at 80386, etc.

Even more than that, if type declaration for a variable is omitted in C/C++ program, *int* is used silently by default. Perhaps, this is inheritance of B programming language⁵.

⁵<http://yurichev.com/blog/typeless/>

GPR is usually fastest container for variable, faster than packed bit, and sometimes even faster than byte (because there is no need to isolate a single bit/byte from **GPR**). Even if you use it as a container for loop counter in 0..99 range.

Word in assembly language is still 16-bit for x86, because it was so for 16-bit 8086. *Double word* is 32-bit, *quad word* is 64-bit. That's why 16-bit words are declared using DW in x86 assembly, 32-bit ones using DD and 64-bit ones using DQ.

Word is 32-bit for ARM, MIPS, etc., 16-bit data types are called *half-word* there. Hence, *double word* on 32-bit RISC is 64-bit data type.

GDB has the following terminology: *halfword* for 16-bit, **word** for 32-bit and *giant word* for 64-bit.

16-bit C/C++ environment on PDP-11 and MS-DOS has *long* data type with width of 32 bits, perhaps, they meant *long word* or *long int*?

32-bit C/C++ environment has *long long* data type with width of 64 bits.

Now you see why the *word* word is ambiguous.

Should I use *int*?

Some people argue that *int* shouldn't be used at all, because it ambiguity can lead to bugs. For example, well-known *Izhuf* library uses *int* at one point and everything works fine on 16-bit architecture. But if ported to architecture with 32-bit *int*, it can crash: <http://yurichev.com/blog/lzhuf/>.

Less ambiguous types are defined in *stdint.h* file: *uint8_t*, *uint16_t*, *uint32_t*, *uint64_t*, etc.

Some people like Donald E. Knuth proposed⁶ more sonorous words for these types: *byte/wyde/tetrabyte/octabyte*. But these names are less popular than clear terms with inclusion of *u (unsigned)* character and number right into the type name.

Word-oriented computers

Despite the ambiguity of the **word** term, modern computers are still word-oriented: **RAM** and all levels of cache are still organized by words, not by bytes. However, size in bytes is used in marketing.

Access to RAM/cache by address aligned by word boundary is often cheaper than non-aligned.

During data structures development, which are supposed to be fast and efficient, one should always take into consideration length of the **word** on the CPU to be executed on. Sometimes the compiler will do this for programmer, sometimes not.

⁶<http://www-cs-faculty.stanford.edu/~uno/news98.html>

2.1.7 Address register

For those who fostered on 32-bit and/or 64-bit x86, and/or RISC of 90s like ARM, MIPS, PowerPC, it's natural that address bus has the same width as [GPR](#) or [word](#). Nevertheless, width of address bus can be different on other architectures.

8-bit Z80 can address 2^{16} bytes, using 8-bit registers pairs or dedicated registers (*I*X, *I*Y). *SP* and *PC* registers are also 16-bit ones.

Cray-1 supercomputer has 64-bit GPRs, but 24-bit address registers, so it can address 2^{24} (16 megawords or 128 megabytes). RAM was very expensive in 1970s, and a typical Cray had 1048576 (0x100000) words of RAM or 8MB. So why to allocate 64-bit register for address or pointer?

8086/8088 CPUs had a really weird addressing scheme: values of two 16-bit registers were summed in a weird manner resulting in a 20-bit address. Perhaps, this was some kind of toy-level virtualization ([11.6 on page 1284](#))? 8086 could run several programs (not simultaneously, though).

Early ARM1 has an interesting artifact:

Another interesting thing about the register file is the PC register is missing a few bits. Since the ARM1 uses 26-bit addresses, the top 6 bits are not used. Because all instructions are aligned on a 32-bit boundary, the bottom two address bits in the PC are always zero. These 8 bits are not only unused, they are omitted from the chip entirely.

(<http://www.righto.com/2015/12/reverse-engineering-arm1-ancestor-of.html>)

Hence, it's physically not possible to push a value with one of two last bits set into PC register. Nor it's possible to set any bits in high 6 bits of PC.

x86-64 architecture has virtual 64-bit pointers/addresses, but internally, width of address bus is 48 bits (seems enough to address 256TB of [RAM](#)).

2.1.8 Numbers

What are numbers used for?

When you see some number(s) altering in a CPU register, you may be interested in what this number means. It's an important skill for a reverse engineer to determine possible data type from a set of changing numbers.

Boolean

If the number is switching from 0 to 1 and back, most chances that this value has boolean data type.

Loop counter, array index

Variable increasing from 0, like: 0, 1, 2, 3...—a good chance this is a loop counter and/or array index.

Signed numbers

If you see a variable which holds very low numbers and sometimes very high numbers, like 0, 1, 2, 3, and 0xFFFFFFFF, 0xFFFFFFF, 0xFFFFFD, there's a good chance it is a signed variable in *two's complement* form ([2.2 on page 572](#)), and last 3 numbers are -1, -2, -3.

32-bit numbers

There are numbers so large, that there is even a special notation which exists to represent them (Knuth's up-arrow notation). These numbers are so large so these are not practical for engineering, science and mathematics.

Almost all engineers and scientists are happy with IEEE 754 double precision floating point, which has maximal value around $1.8 \cdot 10^{308}$. (As a comparison, the number of atoms in the observable universe, is estimated to be between $4 \cdot 10^{79}$ and $4 \cdot 10^{81}$.)

In fact, upper bound in practical computing is much, much lower. In MS-DOS era 16-bit *int* was used almost for everything (array indices, loop counters), while 32-bit *long* was used rarely.

During advent of x86-64, it was decided for *int* to stay as 32 bit size integer, because, probably, usage of 64-bit *int* is even rarer.

I would say, 16-bit numbers in range 0..65535 are probably most used numbers in computing.

Given that, if you see unusually large 32-bit value like 0x87654321, this is a good chance this can be:

- this can still be a 16-bit number, but signed, between 0xFFFF8000 (-32768) and 0xFFFFFFF (-1).
- address of memory cell (can be checked using memory map feature of debugger).
- packed bytes (can be checked visually).
- bit flags.
- something related to (amateur) cryptography.
- magic number ([5.6.1 on page 921](#)).
- IEEE 754 floating point number (can also be checked).

Almost same story for 64-bit values.

...so 16-bit *int* is enough for almost everything?

It's interesting to note: in [Michael Abrash, *Graphics Programming Black Book*, 1997 chapter 13] we can find that there are plenty cases in which 16-bit variables are just enough. In a meantime, Michael Abrash has a pity that 80386 and 80486 CPUs has so little available registers, so he offers to put two 16-bit values into one 32-bit register and then to rotate it using ROR reg, 16 (on 80386 and later) (ROL reg, 16 will also work) or BSWAP (on 80486 and later) instruction.

That reminds us Z80 with alternate pack of registers (suffixed with apostrophe), to which CPU can switch (and then switch back) using EXX instruction.

Size of buffer

When a programmer needs to declare the size of some buffer, values in form of 2^x are usually used (512 bytes, 1024, etc.). Values in 2^x form are easily recognizable ([1.28.5 on page 403](#)) in decimal, hexadecimal and binary base.

But needless to say, programmers are still humans with their decimal culture. And somehow, in **DBMS** area, size of textual database fields is often chosen as 10^x number, like 100, 200. They just think "Okay, 100 is enough, wait, 200 will be better". And they are right, of course.

Maximum width of **VARCHAR2** data type in Oracle RDBMS is 4000 characters, not 4096.

There is nothing wrong with this, this is just a place where numbers like 10^x can be encountered.

Address

It's always a good idea to keep in mind an approximate memory map of the process you currently debug. For example, many win32 executables started at 0x00401000, so an address like 0x00451230 is probably located inside executable section. You'll see addresses like these in the EIP register.

Stack is usually located somewhere below.

Many debuggers are able to show the memory map of the debugger, for example: [1.12.3 on page 103](#).

If a value is increasing by step 4 on 32-bit architecture or by step 8 on 64-bit one, this probably sliding address of some elements of array.

It's important to know that win32 doesn't use addresses below 0x10000, so if you see some number below this constant, this cannot be an address (see also: <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms810627.aspx>).

Anyway, many debuggers can show you if the value in a register can be an address to something. OllyDbg can also show an ASCII string if the value is an address of it.

Bit field

If you see a value where one (or more) bit(s) are flipping from time to time like `0xABCD1234 → 0xABCD1434` and back, this is probably a bit field (or bitmap).

Packed bytes

When `strcmp()` or `memcmp()` copies a buffer, it loads/stores 4 (or 8) bytes simultaneously, so if a string containing “4321”, and it would be copied to another place, at one point you’ll see `0x31323334` value in some register. This is 4 packed bytes into a 32-bit value.

2.2 Signed number representations

There are several methods for representing signed numbers, but “two’s complement” is the most popular one in computers.

Here is a table for some byte values:

binary	hexadecimal	unsigned	signed
01111111	0x7f	127	127
01111110	0x7e	126	126
...			
00000110	0x6	6	6
00000101	0x5	5	5
00000100	0x4	4	4
00000011	0x3	3	3
00000010	0x2	2	2
00000001	0x1	1	1
00000000	0x0	0	0
11111111	0xff	255	-1
11111110	0xfe	254	-2
11111101	0xfd	253	-3
11111100	0xfc	252	-4
11111011	0xfb	251	-5
11111010	0xfa	250	-6
...			
10000010	0x82	130	-126
10000001	0x81	129	-127
10000000	0x80	128	-128

The difference between signed and unsigned numbers is that if we represent `0xFFFFFFFF` and `0x00000002` as unsigned, then the first number (4294967294) is bigger than the second one (2). If we represent them both as signed, the first one becomes -2, and it is smaller than the second (2). That is the reason why conditional jumps ([1.18 on page 156](#)) are present both for signed (e.g. `JG`, `JL`) and unsigned (`JA`, `JB`) operations.

For the sake of simplicity, this is what one needs to know:

- Numbers can be signed or unsigned.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

- C/C++ signed types:

- `int64_t` (-9,223,372,036,854,775,808 .. 9,223,372,036,854,775,807) (-9.2.. 9.2 quintillions) or
0x8000000000000000..0x7FFFFFFFFFFFFF),
- `int` (-2,147,483,648..2,147,483,647 (- 2.15.. 2.15Gb) or
0x80000000..0x7FFFFFFF),
- `char` (-128..127 or 0x80..0x7F),
- `ssize_t`.

Unsigned:

- `uint64_t` (0..18,446,744,073,709,551,615 (18 quintillions)
or 0..0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFF),
- `unsigned int` (0..4,294,967,295 (4.3Gb) or 0..0xFFFFFFFF),
- `unsigned char` (0..255 or 0..0xFF),
- `size_t`.

- Signed types have the sign in the **MSB**: 1 means “minus”, 0 means “plus”.
- Promoting to a larger data types is simple: [1.34.5 on page 508](#).
- Negation is simple: just invert all bits and add 1.

We can keep in mind that a number of inverse sign is located on the opposite side at the same proximity from zero. The addition of one is needed because zero is present in the middle.

- The addition and subtraction operations work well for both signed and unsigned values. But for multiplication and division operations, x86 has different instructions: IDIV/IMUL for signed and DIV/MUL for unsigned.
- Here are some more instructions that work with signed numbers:
`CBW/CWD/CWDE/CDQ/CDQE` ([.1.6 on page 1324](#)), `MOVSS` ([1.23.1 on page 254](#)),
`SAR` ([.1.6 on page 1329](#)).

A table of some negative and positive values ([?? on page ??](#)) looks like thermometer with Celsius scale. This is why addition and subtraction works equally well for both signed and unsigned numbers: if the first addend is represented as mark on thermometer, and one need to add a second addend, and it's positive, we just shift mark up on thermometer by the value of second addend. If the second addend is negative, then we shift mark down to absolute value of the second addend.

Addition of two negative numbers works as follows. For example, we need to add -2 and -3 using 16-bit registers. -2 and -3 is 0xffffe and 0xffffd respectively. If we add these numbers as unsigned, we will get 0xffffe+0xffffd=0x1ffb. But we work on 16-bit registers, so the result is *cut off*, the first 1 is dropped, 0x1ffb is left, and this is -5. This works because -2 (or 0xffffe) can be represented using plain English like this: “2 lacks in this value up to maximal value in 16-bit register + 1”. -3 can be represented as “...3 lacks in this value up to ...”. Maximal value of 16-bit register +

1 is 0x10000. During addition of two numbers and *cutting off* by 2^{16} modulo, $2+3=5$ will be lacking.

2.2.1 Using IMUL over MUL

Example like listing [3.23.2](#) where two unsigned values are multiplied compiles into listing [3.23.2](#) where IMUL is used instead of MUL.

This is important property of both MUL and IMUL instructions. First of all, they both produce 64-bit value if two 32-bit values are multiplied, or 128-bit value if two 64-bit values are multiplied (biggest possible **product** in 32-bit environment is $0xffffffff*0xffffffff=0xfffffffffe00000001$). But C/C++ standards have no way to access higher half of result, and a **product** always has the same size as multiplicands. And both MUL and IMUL instructions works in the same way if higher half is ignored, i.e., they both generate the same lower half. This is important property of “two’s complement” way of representing signed numbers.

So C/C++ compiler can use any of these instructions.

But IMUL is more versatile than MUL because it can take any register(s) as source, while MUL requires one of multiplicands stored in AX/EAX/RAX register. Even more than that: MUL stores result in EDX:EAX pair in 32-bit environment, or RDX:RAX in 64-bit one, so it always calculates the whole result. On contrary, it's possible to set a single destination register while using IMUL instead of pair, and then **CPU** will calculate only lower half, which works faster [see Torbjörn Granlund, *Instruction latencies and throughput for AMD and Intel x86 processors*⁷].

Given than, C/C++ compilers may generate IMUL instruction more often then MUL.

Nevertheless, using compiler intrinsic, it's still possible to do unsigned multiplication and get *full* result. This is sometimes called *extended multiplication*. MSVC has intrinsic for this called `_emu`⁸ and another one: `_umul128`⁹. GCC offer `_int128` data type, and if 64-bit multiplicands are first promoted to 128-bit ones, then a **product** is stored into another `_int128` value, then result is shifted by 64 bits right, you'll get higher half of result¹⁰.

MulDiv() function in Windows

Windows has MulDiv() function ¹¹, fused multiply/divide function, it multiplies two 32-bit integers into intermediate 64-bit value and then divides it by a third 32-bit integer. It is easier than to use two compiler intrinsic, so Microsoft developers made a special function for it. And it seems, this is busy function, judging by its usage.

⁷ <http://yurichev.com/mirrors/x86-timing.pdf>

⁸ [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/d2s81xt0\(v=vs.80\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/d2s81xt0(v=vs.80).aspx)

⁹ <https://msdn.microsoft.com/library/3dayytw9%28v=vs.100%29.aspx>

¹⁰ Example: <http://stackoverflow.com/a/13187798>

¹¹ [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa383718\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa383718(v=vs.85).aspx)

2.2.2 Couple of additions about two's complement form

Exercise 2-1. Write a program to determine the ranges of char, short, int, and long variables, both signed and unsigned, by printing appropriate values from standard headers and by direct computation.

Brian W. Kernighan, Dennis M. Ritchie, *The C Programming Language*, 2ed, (1988)

Getting maximum number of some word

Maximum unsigned number is just a number where all bits are set: *0xFF...FF* (this is -1 if the **word** is treated as signed integer). So you take a **word**, set all bits and get the value:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    unsigned int val=~0; // change to "unsigned char" to get maximal
    // value for the unsigned 8-bit byte
    // 0-1 will also work, or just -1
    printf ("%u\n", val); // ;
```

This is 4294967295 for 32-bit integer.

Getting minimum number for some signed word

Minimum signed number is encoded as *0x80...00*, i.e., most significant bit is set, while others are cleared. Maximum signed number is encoded in the same way, but all bits are inverted: *0x7F...FF*.

Let's shift a lone bit left until it disappears:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    signed int val=1; // change to "signed char" to find values for
    // signed byte
    while (val!=0)
    {
        printf ("%d %d\n", val, ~val);
        val=val<<1;
    };
}
```

Output is:

```
...
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

536870912 -536870913
1073741824 -1073741825
-2147483648 2147483647

Two last numbers are minimum and maximum signed 32-bit *int* respectively.

2.2.3 -1

Now you see that -1 is when all bits are set. Often, you can find the -1 constant in all sorts of code, where a constant with all bits set are needed, for example, a mask.

For example: [3.18.1 on page 676](#).

2.3 Integer overflow

I intentionally put this section after the section about signed number representation.

First, take a look at this implementation of *itoa()* function from [Brian W. Kernighan, Dennis M. Ritchie, *The C Programming Language*, 2ed, (1988)]:

```
void itoa(int n, char s[])
{
    int i, sign;
    if ((sign = n) < 0) /* record sign */
        n = -n; /* make n positive */
    i = 0;
    do { /* generate digits in reverse order */
        s[i++] = n % 10 + '0'; /* get next digit */
    } while ((n /= 10) > 0); /* delete it */
    if (sign < 0)
        s[i++] = '-';
    s[i] = '\0';
    strrev(s);
}
```

(The full source code: https://beginners.re/current-tree/fundamentals/itoa_KR.c)

It has a subtle bug. Try to find it. You can download source code, compile it, etc. The answer on the next page.

From [Brian W. Kernighan, Dennis M. Ritchie, *The C Programming Language*, 2ed, (1988)]:

Exercise 3-4. In a two's complement number representation, our version of *itoa* does not handle the largest negative number, that is, the value of n equal to $-(2^{\text{wordsizes}-1})$. Explain why not. Modify it to print that value correctly, regardless of the machine on which it runs.

The answer is: the function cannot process largest negative number (INT_MIN or 0x80000000 or -2147483648) correctly.

How to change sign? Invert all bits and add 1. If to invert all bits in INT_MIN value (0x80000000), this is 0xffffffff. Add 1 and this is 0x80000000 again. So changing sign has no effect. This is an important artifact of two's complement system.

Further reading:

- blexim – Basic Integer Overflows¹²
- Yannick Moy, Nikolaj Bjørner, and David Siefaff – Modular Bug-finding for Integer Overflows in the Large: Sound, Efficient, Bit-precise Static Analysis¹³

2.4 AND

2.4.1 Checking if a value is on 2^n boundary

If you need to check if your value is divisible by 2^n number (like 1024, 4096, etc.) without remainder, you can use a % operator in C/C++, but there is a simpler way. 4096 is 0x1000, so it always has $4 * 3 = 12$ lower bits cleared.

What you need is just:

```
if (value&0xFFFF)
{
    printf ("value is not divisible by 0x1000 (or 4096)\n");
    printf ("by the way, remainder is %d\n", value&0xFFFF);
}
else
    printf ("value is divisible by 0x1000 (or 4096)\n");
```

In other words, this code checks if there are any bit set among lower 12 bits. As a side effect, lower 12 bits is always a remainder from division a value by 4096 (because division by 2^n is merely a right shift, and shifted (and dropped) bits are bits of remainder).

Same story if you want to check if the number is odd or even:

```
if (value&1)
    // odd
```

¹²<http://phrack.org/issues/60/10.html>

¹³<https://yurichev.com/mirrors/SMT/z3prefix.pdf>

```
else
    // even
```

This is merely the same as if to divide by 2 and get 1-bit remainder.

2.4.2 KOI-8R Cyrillic encoding

It was a time when 8-bit [ASCII](#) table wasn't supported by some Internet services, including email. Some supported, some others—not.

It was also a time, when non-Latin writing systems used second half of 8-bit ASCII table to accommodate non-Latin characters. There were several popular Cyrillic encodings, but KOI-8R (devised by Andrey "ache" Chernov) is somewhat unique in comparison with others.

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	
0I																	
1I																	
2I	!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	,	-	.	/			
3I	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	<	=	>	?		
4I	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	
5I	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[\]	^	-	
6I	'	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	
7I	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	}	~			
8I	-	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
9I	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
AI	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	
BI	=	Ё	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	=	
CI	к	а	б	ц	д	е	ф	г	х	ү	к	л	м	н	о		
DI	п	я	р	с	т	у	ж	в	ь	ы	з	ш	э	щ	ч	ь	
EI	ю	я	а	б	ц	д	е	ф	г	х	и	й	к	л	м	н	о
FI	П	Я	Р	С	Т	У	Ж	В	Ь	Ы	З	Ш	Э	Щ	Ч	Ь	

Figure 2.1: KOI8-R table

Someone may notice that Cyrillic characters are allocated almost in the same sequence as Latin ones. This leads to one important property: if all 8th bits in Cyrillic text encoded in KOI-8R are to be reset, a text transforms into transliterated text with Latin characters in place of Cyrillic. For example, Russian sentence:

Мой дядя самых честных правил, Когда не в шутку занемог, Он
уважать себя заставил, И лучше выдумать не мог.

...if encoded in KOI-8R and then 8th bit stripped, transforms into:

mOJ DQDQ SAMYH ^ESTNYH PRAWIL, KOGDA NE W [UTKU
ZANEMOG, oN UWAVATX SEBQ ZASTAWIL, i LU^E WYDUMATX NE
MOG.

...perhaps this is not very appealing æsthetically, but this text is still readable to Russian language natives.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Hence, Cyrillic text encoded in KOI-8R, passed through an old 7-bit service will survive into transliterated, but still readable text.

Stripping 8th bit is automatically transposes any character from the second half of the (any) 8-bit [ASCII](#) table to the first one, into the same place (take a look at red arrow right of table). If the character has already been placed in the first half (i.e., it has been in standard 7-bit [ASCII](#) table), it's not transposed.

Perhaps, transliterated text is still recoverable, if you'll add 8th bit to the characters which were seems transliterated.

Drawback is obvious: Cyrillic characters allocated in KOI-8R table are not in the same sequence as in Russian/Bulgarian/Ukrainian/etc. alphabet, and this isn't suitable for sorting, for example.

2.5 AND and OR as subtraction and addition

2.5.1 ZX Spectrum ROM text strings

Those who once investigated ZX Spectrum [ROM](#) internals, probably noticed that the last symbol of each text string is seemingly absent.

```
~(...,6,...,i ..0.NEXT
without F0.Variable not
foun.Subscript wron.Out
of memor.Out of scree.N
umber too bi.RETURN with
out GOSU.End of fil.STOP
statemen.Invalid argume
n.Integer out of rang.No
nsense in BASI.BREAK - C
ONT repeat.Out of DAT.In
valid file nam.No room f
or lin.STOP in INPU.FOR
without NEX.Invalid I/O
devic.Invalid colou.BREA
K into progra.RAMTOP no
goo.Statement los.Invalid
strea.FN without DE.Pa
rameter erro.Tape loadin
g erro.... 1982 Sinclair
Research Lt.>.....CI
```

Figure 2.2: Part of ZX Spectrum ROM

There are present, in fact.

Here is excerpt of ZX Spectrum 128K ROM disassembled:

L048C: DEFM "MERGE erro"	; Report 'a'.
DEFB 'r'+\$80	
L0497: DEFM "Wrong file typ"	; Report 'b'.
DEFB 'e'+\$80	
L04A6: DEFM "CODE erro"	; Report 'c'.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        DEFB 'r'+$80
L04B0: DEFM "Too many bracket"      ; Report 'd'.
        DEFB 's'+$80
L04C1: DEFM "File already exist"   ; Report 'e'.
        DEFB 's'+$80

```

(http://www.matthew-wilson.net/spectrum/rom/128_ROM0.html)

Last character has most significant bit set, which marks string end. Presumably, it was done to save some space? Old 8-bit computers have very tight environment.

Characters of all messages are always in standard 7-bit **ASCII** table, so it's guaranteed 7th bit is never used for characters.

To print such string, we must check **MSB** of each byte, and if it's set, we must clear it, then print character, and then stop. Here is a C example:

```

unsigned char hw[]=
{
    'H',
    'e',
    'l',
    'l',
    'o'|0x80
};

void print_string()
{
    for (int i=0; ;i++)
    {
        if (hw[i]&0x80) // check MSB
        {
            // clear MSB
            // (in other words, clear all, but leave 7 lower bits
            intact)
            printf ("%c", hw[i] & 0x7F);
            // stop
            break;
        };
        printf ("%c", hw[i]);
    };
}

```

Now what is interesting, since 7th bit is the most significant bit (in byte), we can check it, set it and remove it using arithmetical operations instead of logical.

I can rewrite my C example:

```

unsigned char hw[]=
{
    'H',
    'e',
    'l',
    'l',
    'o'+0x80

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

};

void print()
{
    for (int i=0; ;i++)
    {
        // hw[] must have 'unsigned char' type
        if (hw[i] >= 0x80) // check for MSB
        {
            printf ("%c", hw[i]-0x80); // clear MSB
            // stop
            break;
        };
        printf ("%c", hw[i]);
    };
}

```

By default, *char* is signed type in C/C++, so to compare it with variable like 0x80 (which is negative (-128) if treated as signed), we must treat each character in text message as unsigned.

Now if 7th bit is set, the number is always larger or equal to 0x80. If 7th bit is clear, the number is always smaller than 0x80.

Even more than that: if 7th bit is set, it can be cleared by subtracting 0x80, nothing else. If it's not set beforehand, however, subtracting will destruct other bits.

Likewise, if 7th bit is clear, it's possible to set it by adding 0x80. But if it's set beforehand, addition operation will destruct some other bits.

In fact, this is valid for any bit. If the 4th bit is clear, you can set it just by adding 0x10: $0x100+0x10 = 0x110$. If the 4th bit is set, you can clear it by subtracting 0x10: $0x1234-0x10 = 0x1224$.

It works, because carry isn't happened during addition/subtraction. It will, however, happen, if the bit is already set there before addition, or absent before subtraction.

Likewise, addition/subtraction can be replaced using OR/AND operation if two conditions are met: 1) you want to add/subtract by a number in form of 2^n ; 2) this bit in source value is clear/set.

For example, addition of 0x20 is the same as ORing value with 0x20 under condition that this bit is clear before: $0x1204|0x20 = 0x1204+0x20 = 0x1224$.

Subtraction of 0x20 is the same as ANDing value with 0x20 (0x...FFDF), but if this bit is set before: $0x1234\&(~0x20) = 0x1234\&0xFFDF = 0x1234-0x20 = 0x1214$.

Again, it works because carry not happened when you add 2^n number and this bit isn't set before.

This property of boolean algebra is important, worth understanding and keeping it in mind.

Another example in this book: [3.19.3 on page 689](#).

2.6 XOR (exclusive OR)

XOR is widely used when one needs just to flip specific bit(s). Indeed, the XOR operation applied with 1 effectively inverts a bit:

input A	input B	output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

And vice-versa, the XOR operation applied with 0 does nothing, i.e., it's an idle operation. This is a very important property of the XOR operation and it's highly recommended to memorize it.

2.6.1 Logical difference

In Cray-1 supercomputer (1976-1977) manual ¹⁴, you can find XOR instruction was called *logical difference*.

Indeed, $\text{XOR}(a,b)=1$ if $a \neq b$.

2.6.2 Everyday speech

XOR operation present in common everyday speech. When someone asks “please buy apples or bananas”, this usually means “buy the first object or the second, but not both”—this is exactly exclusive OR, because logical OR would mean “both objects are also fine”.

Some people suggest “and/or” should be used in everyday speech to make emphasis that logical OR is used instead of exclusive OR: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/And/or>.

2.6.3 Encryption

XOR is heavily used in both amateur ([9.1 on page 1191](#)) and *real* encryption (at least in *Feistel network*).

XOR is very useful here because: $\text{cipher_text} = \text{plain_text} \oplus \text{key}$ and then: $(\text{plain_text} \oplus \text{key}) \oplus \text{key} = \text{plain_text}$.

2.6.4 RAID4

[RAID4](#) offers a very simple method to protect hard disks. For example, there are several disks (D_1 , D_2 , D_3 , etc.) and one parity disk (P). Each bit/byte written to

¹⁴http://www.bitsavers.org/pdf/cray/CRAY-1/HR-0004-CRAY_1_Hardware_Reference_Manual-PRELIMINARY-1975.OCR.pdf

parity disk is calculated and written on-fly:

$$P = D_1 \oplus D_2 \oplus D_3 \quad (2.1)$$

If any of disks is failed, for example, D_2 , it's restored using the very same way:

$$D_2 = D_1 \oplus P \oplus D_3 \quad (2.2)$$

If parity disk failed, it is restored using 2.1 way. If two of any disks are failed, then it wouldn't be possible to restore both.

RAID5 is more advanced, but this XOR property is still exploited there.

That's why **RAID** controllers has hardware "XOR accelerators" helping to XOR large chunks of written data on-fly. When computers get faster and faster, it now can be done at software level, using **SIMD**.

2.6.5 XOR swap algorithm

Hard to believe, but this code swaps values in EAX and EBX without aid of any other additional register or memory cell:

```
xor eax, ebx
xor ebx, eax
xor eax, ebx
```

Let's find out, how it works. First, we will rewrite it to step aside from x86 assembly language:

```
X = X XOR Y
Y = Y XOR X
X = X XOR Y
```

What X and Y has at each step? Just keep in mind the simple rule: $(X \oplus Y) \oplus Y = X$ for any values of X and Y.

Let's see, X after 1st step has $X \oplus Y$; Y after 2nd step has $Y \oplus (X \oplus Y) = X$; X after 3rd step has $(X \oplus Y) \oplus X = Y$.

Hard to say if anyone should use this trick, but it servers as a good demonstration example of XOR properties.

Wikipedia article (https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XOR_swap_algorithm) has also yet another explanation: addition and subtraction operations can be used instead of XOR:

```
X = X + Y
Y = X - Y
X = X - Y
```

Let's see: X after 1st step has $X + Y$; Y after 2nd step has $X + Y - Y = X$; X after 3rd step has $X + Y - X = Y$.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

2.6.6 XOR linked list

Doubly linked list is a list in which each element has link to the previous element and to the next one. Hence, it's very easy to traverse list backwards or forward. `std::list` in C++ implements doubly linked list which also is examined in this book: [3.21.4 on page 730](#).

So each element has two pointers. Is it possible, perhaps in environment of small **RAM** footprint, to preserve all functionality with one pointer instead of two? Yes, if it a value of $\text{prev} \oplus \text{next}$ will be stored in this memory cell, which is usually called "link".

Maybe, we could say that address to the previous element is "encrypted" using address of next element and otherwise: next element address is "encrypted" using previous element address.

When we traverse this list forward, we always know address of the previous element, so we can "decrypt" this field and get address of the next element. Likewise, it's possible to traverse this list backwards, "decrypting" this field using next element's address.

But it's not possible to find address of previous or next element of some specific element without knowing address of the first one.

Couple of things to complete this solution: first element will have address of next element without any XOR-ing, last element will have address of previous element without any XOR-ing.

Now let's sum it up. This is example of doubly linked list of 5 elements. A_x is address of element.

address	<i>link field contents</i>
A_0	A_1
A_1	$A_0 \oplus A_2$
A_2	$A_1 \oplus A_3$
A_3	$A_2 \oplus A_4$
A_4	A_3

And again, hard to say if anyone should use this tricky hacks, but this is also a good demonstration of XOR properties. As with XOR swap algorithm, Wikipedia article about it also offers way to use addition or subtraction instead of XOR: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XOR_linked_list.

2.6.7 Switching value trick

... found in Jorg Arndt — Matters Computational / Ideas, Algorithms, Source Code ¹⁵.

You want a variable to be switching between 123 and 456. You may write something like:

```
if (a==123)
    a=456;
else
    a=123;
```

¹⁵ <https://www.jjj.de/fxt/fxtbook.pdf>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

But this can be done using a single operation:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int a=123;
#define C 123^456

    a=a^C;
    printf ("%d\n", a);
    a=a^C;
    printf ("%d\n", a);
    a=a^C;
    printf ("%d\n", a);
}
```

It works because $123 \oplus 123 \oplus 456 = 0 \oplus 456 = 456$ and $456 \oplus 123 \oplus 456 = 456 \oplus 456 \oplus 123 = 0 \oplus 123 = 123$.

One can argue, worth it using or not, especially keeping in mind code readability. But this is yet another demonstration of XOR properties.

2.6.8 Zobrist hashing / tabulation hashing

If you work on a chess engine, you traverse a game tree many times per second, and often, you can encounter the same position, which has already been processed.

So you have to use a method to store already calculated positions somewhere. But chess position can require a lot of memory, and a hash function would be used instead.

Here is a way to compress a chess position into 64-bit value, called Zobrist hashing:

```
// we have 8*8 board and 12 pieces (6 for white side and 6 for black)

uint64_t table[12][8][8]; // filled with random values

int position[8][8]; // for each square on board. 0 - no piece. 1..12 - piece

uint64_t hash;

for (int row=0; row<8; row++)
    for (int col=0; col<8; col++)
    {
        int piece=position[row][col];

        if (piece!=0)
            hash=hash^table[piece][row][col];
    };

return hash;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Now the most interesting part: if the next (modified) chess position differs only by one (moved) piece, you don't need to recalculate hash for the whole position, all you need is:

```
hash=...; // (already calculated)

// subtract information about the old piece:
hash=hash^table[old_piece][old_row][old_col];

// add information about the new piece:
hash=hash^table[new_piece][new_row][new_col];
```

2.6.9 By the way

The usual OR also sometimes called *inclusive OR* (or even *IOR*), as opposed to *exclusive OR*. One place is *operator* Python's library: it's called *operator.ior* here.

2.6.10 AND/OR/XOR as MOV

OR reg, 0xFFFFFFFF sets all bits to 1, hence, no matter what has been in register before, it will be set to -1. OR reg, -1 is shorter than MOV reg, -1, so MSVC uses OR instead the latter, for example: [3.18.1 on page 676](#).

Likewise, AND reg, 0 always resets all bits, hence, it acts like MOV reg, 0.

XOR reg, reg, no matter what has been in register beforehand, resets all bits, and also acts like MOV reg, 0.

2.7 Population count

POPCNT instruction is population count (AKA Hamming weight). It just counts number of bits set in an input value.

As a side effect, POPCNT instruction (or operation) can be used to determine, if the value has 2^n form. Since, 2^n number always has just one single bit, POPCNT's result will always be just 1.

For example, I once wrote a base64 strings scanner for hunting something interesting in binary files¹⁶. And there is a lot of garbage and false positives, so I add an option to filter out data blocks which has size of 2^n bytes (i.e., 256 bytes, 512, 1024, etc.). The size of block is checked just like this:

```
if (popcnt(size)==1)
    // OK
...
```

The instruction is also known as “[NSA¹⁷](#) instruction” due to rumors:

¹⁶<https://github.com/DennisYurichev/base64scanner>

¹⁷National Security Agency

This branch of cryptography is fast-paced and very politically charged. Most designs are secret; a majority of military encryption systems in use today are based on LFSRs. In fact, most Cray computers (Cray 1, Cray X-MP, Cray Y-MP) have a rather curious instruction generally known as “population count.” It counts the 1 bits in a register and can be used both to efficiently calculate the Hamming distance between two binary words and to implement a vectorized version of a LFSR. I’ve heard this called the canonical NSA instruction, demanded by almost all computer contracts.

[Bruce Schneier, *Applied Cryptography*, (John Wiley & Sons, 1994)]

2.8 Endianness

The endianness is a way of representing values in memory.

2.8.1 Big-endian

The 0x12345678 value is represented in memory as:

address in memory	byte value
+0	0x12
+1	0x34
+2	0x56
+3	0x78

Big-endian CPUs include Motorola 68k, IBM POWER.

2.8.2 Little-endian

The 0x12345678 value is represented in memory as:

address in memory	byte value
+0	0x78
+1	0x56
+2	0x34
+3	0x12

Little-endian CPUs include Intel x86. One important example of little-endian using in this book is: [1.35 on page 510](#).

2.8.3 Example

Let’s take big-endian MIPS Linux installed and ready in QEMU ¹⁸.

And let’s compile this simple example:

¹⁸ Available for download here: <https://people.debian.org/~aurel32/qemu/mips/>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int v;
    v=123;
    printf ("%02X %02X %02X %02X\n",
            *(char*)&v,
            *((char*)&v)+1,
            *((char*)&v)+2,
            *((char*)&v)+3);
}
```

After running it we get:

```
root@debian-mips:~# ./a.out
00 00 00 7B
```

That is it. 0x7B is 123 in decimal. In little-endian architectures, 7B is the first byte (you can check on x86 or x86-64), but here it is the last one, because the highest byte goes first.

That's why there are separate Linux distributions for MIPS ("mips" (big-endian) and "mipsel" (little-endian)). It is impossible for a binary compiled for one endianness to work on an [OS](#) with different endianness.

There is another example of MIPS big-endianness in this book: [1.30.4 on page 459](#).

2.8.4 Bi-endian

CPUs that may switch between endianness are ARM, PowerPC, SPARC, MIPS, [IA64¹⁹](#), etc.

2.8.5 Converting data

The BSWAP instruction can be used for conversion.

TCP/IP network data packets use the big-endian conventions, so that is why a program working on a little-endian architecture has to convert the values. The htonl() and htons() functions are usually used.

In TCP/IP, big-endian is also called "network byte order", while byte order on the computer "host byte order". "host byte order" is little-endian on Intel x86 and other little-endian architectures, but it is big-endian on IBM POWER, so htonl() and htons() don't shuffle any bytes on the latter.

¹⁹Intel Architecture 64 (Itanium)

2.9 Memory

There are 3 main types of memory:

- Global memory **AKA** “static memory allocation”. No need to allocate explicitly, the allocation is performed just by declaring variables/arrays globally. These are global variables, residing in the data or constant segments. They are available globally (hence, considered as an [anti-pattern](#)). Not convenient for buffers/arrays, because they must have a fixed size. Buffer overflows that occur here usually overwrite variables or buffers residing next to them in memory. There’s an example in this book: [1.12.3 on page 100](#).
- Stack **AKA** “allocate on stack”. The allocation is performed just by declaring variables/arrays locally in the function. These are usually local variables for the function. Sometimes these local variable are also available to descending functions (to [callee](#) functions, if caller passes a pointer to a variable to the [callee](#) to be executed). Allocation and deallocation are very fast, it just [SP](#) needs to be shifted.

But they’re also not convenient for buffers/arrays, because the buffer size has to be fixed, unless `alloca()` ([1.9.2 on page 47](#)) (or a variable-length array) is used. Buffer overflows usually overwrite important stack structures: [1.26.2 on page 340](#).

- Heap **AKA** “dynamic memory allocation”. Allocation/deallocation is performed by calling `malloc()/free()` or `new/delete` in C++. This is the most convenient method: the block size may be set at runtime.

Resizing is possible (using `realloc()`), but can be slow. This is the slowest way to allocate memory: the memory allocator must support and update all control structures while allocating and deallocating. Buffer overflows usually overwrite these structures. Heap allocations are also source of memory leak problems: each memory block has to be deallocated explicitly, but one may forget about it, or do it incorrectly.

Another problem is the “use after free”—using a memory block after `free()` has been called on it, which is very dangerous.

Example in this book: [1.30.2 on page 435](#).

2.10 CPU

2.10.1 Branch predictors

Some latest compilers try to get rid of conditional jump instructions. Examples in this book are: [1.18.1 on page 170](#), [1.18.3 on page 180](#), [1.28.5 on page 413](#).

This is because the branch predictor is not always perfect, so the compilers try to do without conditional jumps, if possible.

Conditional instructions in ARM (like ADRcc) are one way, another one is the CMOVcc x86 instruction.

2.10.2 Data dependencies

Modern CPUs are able to execute instructions simultaneously (OOE²⁰), but in order to do so, the results of one instruction in a group must not influence the execution of others. Hence, the compiler endeavors to use instructions with minimal influence on the CPU state.

That's why the LEA instruction is so popular, because it does not modify CPU flags, while other arithmetic instructions do.

2.11 Hash functions

A very simple example is CRC32, an algorithm that provides “stronger” checksum for integrity checking purposes. It is impossible to restore the original text from the hash value, it has much less information: But CRC32 is not cryptographically secure: it is known how to alter a text in a way that the resulting CRC32 hash value will be the one we need. Cryptographic hash functions are protected from this.

MD5, SHA1, etc. are such functions and they are widely used to hash user passwords in order to store them in a database. Indeed: an Internet forum database may not contain user passwords (a stolen database can compromise all users' passwords) but only hashes (so a cracker can't reveal the passwords). Besides, an Internet forum engine does not need to know your password exactly, it needs only to check if its hash is the same as the one in the database, and give you access if they match. One of the simplest password cracking methods is just to try hashing all possible passwords in order to see which matches the resulting value that we need. Other methods are much more complex.

2.11.1 How do one-way functions work?

A one-way function is a function which is able to transform one value into another, while it is impossible (or very hard) to reverse it. Some people have difficulties while understanding how this is possible at all. Here is a simple demonstration.

We have a vector of 10 numbers in range 0..9, each is present only once, for example:

4	6	0	1	3	5	7	8	9	2
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

The algorithm for the simplest possible one-way function is:

- take the number at zeroth position (4 in our case);
- take the number at first position (6 in our case);
- swap numbers at positions of 4 and 6.

²⁰Out-of-Order Execution

Let's mark the numbers at positions 4 and 6:

4	6	0	1	3	5	7	8	9	2
			^	^					

Let's swap them and we get this result:

4	6	0	1	7	5	3	8	9	2

While looking at the result, and even if we know the algorithm, we can't know unambiguously the initial state, because the first two numbers could be 0 and/or 1, and then they could participate in the swapping procedure.

This is an utterly simplified example for demonstration. Real one-way functions are much more complex.

Chapter 3

Slightly more advanced examples

3.1 Zero register

x86 architecture lacks zero register, unlike MIPS and ARM. However, it's often a case, when a compiler assigns a zero to a register, that will hold it upon the function's exit.

This is a case of Mahjong game from Windows 7 x86. Zeroed EBX (at 0x010281BF) is used to initialize local variables, to pass zero argument into other functions and to compare values against it.

Listing 3.1: Mahjong.exe from Windows 7 x86

```
.text:010281AE sub_10281AE      proc near ; CODE XREF: sub_1028790+4FFp
.text:010281AE                      ; sub_102909A+357p ...
.text:010281AE
.text:010281AE var_34             = dword ptr -34h
.text:010281AE var_30             = dword ptr -30h
.text:010281AE var_2C             = dword ptr -2Ch
.text:010281AE var_28             = dword ptr -28h
.text:010281AE var_24             = dword ptr -24h
.text:010281AE var_20             = dword ptr -20h
.text:010281AE var_1C             = dword ptr -1Ch
.text:010281AE var_18             = dword ptr -18h
.text:010281AE var_14             = dword ptr -14h
.text:010281AE var_10             = dword ptr -10h
.text:010281AE var_4              = dword ptr -4
.text:010281AE arg_0              = dword ptr 8
.text:010281AE arg_4              = byte ptr 0Ch
.text:010281AE
.text:010281AE                      push    28h
.text:010281AE                      mov     eax, offset __ehandler ...
.text:010281B0                      call    __EH_prolog3
.text:010281B5                      mov     edi, ecx
.text:010281BA                      mov     esi, [ebp+arg_0]
```

```

.text:010281BF xor ebx, ebx ; *
.text:010281C1 mov [ebp+var_10], ebx ; *
.text:010281C4 cmp [esi], ebx ; *
.text:010281C6 jbe short loc_10281E8
.text:010281C8
.text:010281C8 loc_10281C8: ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+38j
    mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
    mov ecx, [ebp+var_10]
    push dword ptr [eax+ecx*4]
    call sub_10506C9
    mov eax, [ebp+var_10]
    pop ecx
    mov ecx, [esi+0Ch]
    mov [ecx+eax*4], ebx ; *
    inc eax
    mov [ebp+var_10], eax
    cmp eax, [esi]
    jb short loc_10281C8
.text:010281E8
.text:010281E8 loc_10281E8: ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+18j
    mov [esi], ebx ; *
    mov [edi+14h], ebx ; *
    mov [ebp+var_34], ebx ; *
    mov [ebp+var_30], ebx ; *
    mov [ebp+var_2C], 10h
    mov [ebp+var_28], ebx ; *
    mov [ebp+var_4], ebx ; *
    mov [ebp+arg_0], ebx ; *
    cmp [edi+0B0h], ebx ; *
    jbe loc_10282C3
.text:0102820F
.text:0102820F loc_102820F: ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+10Fj
    mov eax, [edi+0BCh]
    mov ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
    mov eax, [eax+ecx*4]
    mov [ebp+var_14], eax
    cmp eax, ebx ; *
    jz loc_10282A6
    push ebx ; *
    push eax
    mov ecx, edi
    call sub_1026B3D
    test al, al
    jz short loc_10282A6
    mov [ebp+var_24], ebx ; *
    mov [ebp+var_20], ebx ; *
    mov [ebp+var_1C], 10h
    mov [ebp+var_18], ebx ; *
    lea eax, [ebp+var_34]
    push eax
    lea eax, [ebp+var_24]
    push eax
    push [ebp+var_14]

```

```

.text:0102824E          mov    ecx, edi
.text:01028250          mov    byte ptr [ebp+var_4], 1
.text:01028254          call   sub_1026E4F
.text:01028259          mov    [ebp+var_10], ebx      ; *
.text:0102825C          cmp    [ebp+var_24], ebx      ; *
.text:0102825F          jbe   short loc_102829B
.text:01028261
.text:01028261 loc_1028261:      ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+EBj
.text:01028261          push   0Ch; Size
.text:01028263          call   sub_102E741
.text:01028268          pop    ecx
.text:01028269          cmp    eax, ebx      ; *
.text:0102826B          jz    short loc_1028286
.text:0102826D          mov    edx, [ebp+var_10]
.text:01028270          mov    ecx, [ebp+var_18]
.text:01028273          mov    ecx, [ecx+edx*4]
.text:01028276          mov    edx, [ebp+var_14]
.text:01028279          mov    edx, [edx+4]
.text:0102827C          mov    [eax], edx
.text:0102827E          mov    [eax+4], ecx
.text:01028281          mov    [eax+8], ebx      ; *
.text:01028284          jmp   short loc_1028288
.text:01028286 ;
.text:01028286
.text:01028286 loc_1028286:      ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+BDj
.text:01028286          xor    eax, eax
.text:01028288
.text:01028288 loc_1028288:      ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+D6j
.text:01028288          push   eax
.text:01028289          mov    ecx, esi
.text:0102828B          call   sub_104922B
.text:01028290          inc    [ebp+var_10]
.text:01028293          mov    eax, [ebp+var_10]
.text:01028296          cmp    eax, [ebp+var_24]
.text:01028299          jb    short loc_1028261
.text:0102829B
.text:0102829B loc_102829B:      ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+B1j
.text:0102829B          lea    ecx, [ebp+var_24]
.text:0102829E          mov    byte ptr [ebp+var_4], bl
.text:010282A1          call   sub_10349DB
.text:010282A6
.text:010282A6 loc_10282A6:      ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+72j
.text:010282A6          ; sub_10281AE+83j
.text:010282A6          push   [ebp+arg_0]
.text:010282A9          lea    ecx, [ebp+var_34]
.text:010282AC          call   sub_104922B
.text:010282B1          inc    [ebp+arg_0]
.text:010282B4          mov    eax, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:010282B7          cmp    eax, [edi+0B0h]
.text:010282BD          jb    loc_102820F
.text:010282C3
.text:010282C3 loc_10282C3:      ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+5Bj
.text:010282C3          cmp    [ebp+arg_4], bl

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:010282C6      jz     short loc_1028337
.text:010282C8      mov    eax, dword_1088AD8
.text:010282CD      mov    esi, ds:EnableMenuItem
.text:010282D3      mov    edi, 40002
.text:010282D8      cmp    [eax+8], ebx ; *
.text:010282DB      jnz    short loc_10282EC
.text:010282DD      push   3      ; uEnable
.text:010282DF      push   edi   ; uIDEnableItem
.text:010282E0      push   hMenu ; hMenu
.text:010282E6      call   esi ; EnableMenuItem
.text:010282E8      push   3
.text:010282EA      jmp    short loc_10282F7
.text:010282EC      ;
.text:010282EC      .text:010282EC loc_10282EC:           ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+12Dj
.text:010282EC      push   ebx   ; *
.text:010282ED      push   edi   ; uIDEnableItem
.text:010282EE      push   hMenu ; hMenu
.text:010282F4      call   esi ; EnableMenuItem
.text:010282F6      push   ebx   ; *
.text:010282F7      .text:010282F7 loc_10282F7:           ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+13Cj
.text:010282F7      push   edi   ; uIDEnableItem
.text:010282F8      push   hmenu ; hMenu
.text:010282FE      call   esi ; EnableMenuItem
.text:01028300      mov    ecx, dword_1088AD8
.text:01028306      call   sub_1020402
.text:0102830B      mov    edi, 40001
.text:01028310      test   al, al
.text:01028312      jz    short loc_1028321
.text:01028314      push   ebx   ; *
.text:01028315      push   edi   ; uIDEnableItem
.text:01028316      push   hMenu ; hMenu
.text:0102831C      call   esi ; EnableMenuItem
.text:0102831E      push   ebx   ; *
.text:0102831F      jmp    short loc_102832E
.text:01028321      ;
.text:01028321      .text:01028321 loc_1028321:           ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+164j
.text:01028321      push   3      ; uEnable
.text:01028323      push   edi   ; uIDEnableItem
.text:01028324      push   hMenu ; hMenu
.text:0102832A      call   esi ; EnableMenuItem
.text:0102832C      push   3      ; uEnable
.text:0102832E      .text:0102832E loc_102832E:           ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+171j
.text:0102832E      push   edi   ; uIDEnableItem
.text:0102832F      push   hmenu ; hMenu
.text:01028335      call   esi ; EnableMenuItem
.text:01028337      .text:01028337 loc_1028337:           ; CODE XREF: sub_10281AE+118j
.text:01028337      lea    ecx, [ebp+var_34]
.text:0102833A      call   sub_10349DB

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
.text:0102833F          call      EH_epilog3
.text:01028344          retn     8
.text:01028344  sub_10281AE    endp
```

By the way, IDA can rename a register inside a function (press n):

Listing 3.2: Mahjong.exe from Windows 7 x86

```
.text:010281AE sub_10281AE    proc near
...
.text:010281AE zero = ebx
...
.text:010281BF xor      zero, zero      ; *
.text:010281C1 mov      [ebp+var_10], zero ; *
.text:010281C4 cmp      [esi], zero      ; *
.text:010281C6 jbe      short loc_10281E8
...
...
```

3.2 Double negation

A popular way¹ to convert non-zero value into 1 (or boolean *true*) and zero value into 0 (or boolean *false*) is `!!statement`:

```
int convert_to_bool(int a)
{
    return !!a;
};
```

Optimizing GCC 5.4 x86:

```
convert_to_bool:
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
    xor     eax, eax
    test    edx, edx
    setne   al
    ret
```

XOR always clears return value in EAX, even in case if SETNE will not trigger. I.e., XOR sets default return value to zero.

If the input value is not equal to zero (-NE suffix in SET instruction), 1 is set to AL, otherwise AL isn't touched.

Why SETNE operates on low 8-bit part of EAX register? Because the matter is just in the last bit (0 or 1), while other bits are cleared by XOR.

¹This way is also controversial, because it leads to hard-to-read code

Therefore, that C/C++ code could be rewritten like this:

```
int convert_to_bool(int a)
{
    if (a!=0)
        return 1;
    else
        return 0;
};
```

...or even:

```
int convert_to_bool(int a)
{
    if (a)
        return 1;
    else
        return 0;
};
```

Compilers targeting [CPUs](#) lacking instruction similar to SET, in this case, generates branching instructions, etc.

3.3 const correctness

This is undeservedly underused feature of many programming languages. Read here about its importance: [1](#), [2](#).

Ideally, everything you don't modify should have *const* modifier.

Interestingly, how *const correctness* is implemented at low level. There are no run-time checks of local *const* variables and function arguments (only compile-time checks). But global variables of such a type are to be allocated in read-only data segments.

This example is to be crashed, because if compiled by MSVC for win32, the *a* global variable is allocated in .rdata read-only segment:

```
const a=123;

void f(int *i)
{
    *i=11; // crash
};

int main()
{
    f(&a);
    return a;
};
```

Anonymous (not linked to a variable name) C strings also have *const char** type. You can't modify them:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```
#include <string.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void alter_string(char *s)
{
    strcpy (s, "Goodbye!");
    printf ("Result: %s\n", s);
};

int main()
{
    alter_string ("Hello, world!\n");
}
```

This code will crash on Linux (“segmentation fault”) and on Windows if compiled by MinGW.

GCC for Linux places all text strings info .rodata data segment, which is explicitly read-only (“read only data”):

```
$ objdump -s 1

...
Contents of section .rodata:
400600 01000200 52657375 6c743a20 25730a00 ....Result: %s..
400610 48656c6c 6f2c2077 6f726c64 210a00 Hello, world!..
```

When the `alter_string()` function tries to write there, exception occurred.

Things are different in the code generated by MSVC, strings are located in .data segment, which has no READONLY flag. MSVC’s developers misstep?

```
C:\...>objdump -s 1.exe

...
Contents of section .data:
40b000 476f6f64 62796521 00000000 52657375 Goodbye!....Resu
40b010 6c743a20 25730a00 48656c6c 6f2c2077 lt: %s..Hello, w
40b020 6f726c64 210a0000 00000000 00000000 orld!.....
40b030 01000000 00000000 c0cb4000 00000000 .....@.....
...
C:\...>objdump -x 1.exe

...
Sections:
Idx Name      Size    VMA       LMA       File off  Align
 0 .text     00006d2a 00401000 00401000 00000400 2**2
              CONTENTS, ALLOC, LOAD, READONLY, CODE
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1 .rdata	00002262	00408000	00408000	00007200	2**2
	CONTENTS, ALLOC, LOAD, READONLY, DATA				
2 .data	00000e00	0040b000	0040b000	00009600	2**2
	CONTENTS, ALLOC, LOAD, DATA				
3 .reloc	00000b98	0040e000	0040e000	0000a400	2**2
	CONTENTS, ALLOC, LOAD, READONLY, DATA				

However, MinGW hasn't this fault and allocates text strings in .rdata segment.

3.3.1 Overlapping const strings

The fact that an *anonymous C-string* has *const* type ([1.5.1 on page 12](#)), and that C-strings allocated in constants segment are guaranteed to be immutable, has an interesting consequence: the compiler may use a specific part of the string.

Let's try this example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int f1()
{
    printf ("world\n");
}

int f2()
{
    printf ("hello world\n");
}

int main()
{
    f1();
    f2();
}
```

Common C/C++-compilers (including MSVC) allocate two strings, but let's see what GCC 4.8.1 does:

Listing 3.3: GCC 4.8.1 + IDA listing

```
f1          proc near
s          = dword ptr -1Ch
          sub     esp, 1Ch
          mov     [esp+1Ch+s], offset s ; "world\n"
          call    _puts
          add     esp, 1Ch
          retn
f1          endp
f2          proc near
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

s          = dword ptr -1Ch
          sub    esp, 1Ch
          mov     [esp+1Ch+s], offset aHello ; "hello "
          call    _puts
          add    esp, 1Ch
          retn
f2          endp

aHello      db 'hello '
s          db 'world',0xa,0

```

Indeed: when we print the “hello world” string these two words are positioned in memory adjacently and `puts()` called from `f2()` function is not aware that this string is divided. In fact, it’s not divided; it’s divided only *virtually*, in this listing.

When `puts()` is called from `f1()`, it uses the “world” string plus a zero byte. `puts()` is not aware that there is something before this string!

This clever trick is often used by at least GCC and can save some memory. This is close to *string interning*.

Another related example is here: [3.4](#).

3.4 `strstr()` example

Let’s back to the fact that GCC sometimes can use part of string: [3.3.1 on the previous page](#).

The `strstr()` C/C++ standard library function is used to find any occurrence in a string. This is what we will do:

```

#include <string.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    char *s="Hello, world!";
    char *w=strstr(s, "world");

    printf ("%p, [%s]\n", s, s);
    printf ("%p, [%s]\n", w, w);
}

```

The output is:

```

0x8048530, [Hello, world!]
0x8048537, [world!]

```

The difference between the address of the original string and the address of the substring that `strstr()` has returned is 7. Indeed, “Hello, ” string has length of 7 characters.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The `printf()` function during second call has no idea there are some other characters before the passed string and it prints characters from the middle of original string till the end (marked by zero byte).

3.5 `qsort()` revisited

(Let's back to the fact that CMP instruction works like SUB: [1.12.4 on page 113](#).)

Now that you already familiar with `qsort()` function ([1.33 on page 483](#)), here is a nice example where comparison operation (CMP) can be replaced by subtraction operation (SUB).

```
/* qsort int comparison function */
int int_cmp(const void *a, const void *b)
{
    const int *ia = (const int *)a; // casting pointer types
    const int *ib = (const int *)b;
    return *ia - *ib;
    /* integer comparison: returns negative if b > a
       and positive if a > b */
}
```

(http://www.anyexample.com/programming/c/qsort_sorting_array_of_strings_integers_and_structs.xml <http://archive.is/Hh3jz>)

Also, a typical implementation of `strcmp()` (from OpenBSD):

```
int
strcmp(const char *s1, const char *s2)
{
    while (*s1 == *s2++)
        if (*s1++ == 0)
            return (0);
    return (*(unsigned char *)s1 - *(unsigned char *)--s2);
}
```

3.6 Temperature converting

Another very popular example in programming books for beginners is a small program that converts Fahrenheit temperature to Celsius or back.

$$C = \frac{5 \cdot (F - 32)}{9}$$

We can also add simple error handling: 1) we must check if the user has entered a correct number; 2) we must check if the Celsius temperature is not below -273 (which is below absolute zero, as we may recall from school physics lessons).

The `exit()` function terminates the program instantly, without returning to the `caller` function.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

3.6.1 Integer values

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

int main()
{
    int celsius, fahr;
    printf ("Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:\n");
    if (scanf ("%d", &fahr)!=1)
    {
        printf ("Error while parsing your input\n");
        exit(0);
    };

    celsius = 5 * (fahr-32) / 9;

    if (celsius<-273)
    {
        printf ("Error: incorrect temperature!\n");
        exit(0);
    };
    printf ("Celsius: %d\n", celsius);
};
```

Optimizing MSVC 2012 x86

Listing 3.4: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x86

```
$SG4228 DB      'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:', 0aH, 00H
$SG4230 DB      '%d', 00H
$SG4231 DB      'Error while parsing your input', 0aH, 00H
$SG4233 DB      'Error: incorrect temperature!', 0aH, 00H
$SG4234 DB      'Celsius: %d', 0aH, 00H

_fahr$ = -4      ; size = 4
_main  PROC
    push    ecx
    push    esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    push    OFFSET $SG4228          ; 'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:'
    call    esi                   ; call printf()
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+12]
    push    eax
    push    OFFSET $SG4230          ; '%d'
    call    DWORD PTR __imp__scanf
    add    esp, 12
    cmp    eax, 1
    je     SHORT $LN2@main
    push    OFFSET $SG4231          ; 'Error while parsing your input'
    call    esi                   ; call printf()
    add    esp, 4
    push    0
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

call    DWORD PTR __imp__exit
$LN9@main:
$LN2@main:
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+8]
    add    eax, -32           ; ffffffe0H
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+eax*4]
    mov    eax, 954437177   ; 38e38e39H
    imul   ecx
    sar    edx, 1
    mov    eax, edx
    shr    eax, 31          ; 00000001fH
    add    eax, edx
    cmp    eax, -273        ; ffffffeefH
    jge    SHORT $LN1@main
    push   OFFSET $SG4233      ; 'Error: incorrect temperature!'
    call   esi    ; call printf()
    add    esp, 4
    push   0
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__exit
$LN10@main:
$LN1@main:
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG4234      ; 'Celsius: %d'
    call   esi    ; call printf()
    add    esp, 8
    ; return 0 - by C99 standard
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    esi
    pop    ecx
    ret    0
$LN8@main:
_main   ENDP

```

What we can say about it:

- The address of `printf()` is first loaded in the `ESI` register, so the subsequent `printf()` calls are done just by the `CALL ESI` instruction. It's a very popular compiler technique, possible if several consequent calls to the same function are present in the code, and/or if there is a free register which can be used for this.
- We see the `ADD EAX, -32` instruction at the place where 32 has to be subtracted from the value. $EAX = EAX + (-32)$ is equivalent to $EAX = EAX - 32$ and somehow, the compiler decided to use `ADD` instead of `SUB`. Maybe it's worth it, it's hard to be sure.
- The `LEA` instruction is used when the value is to be multiplied by 5: `lea ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+eax*4]`. Yes, $i + i * 4$ is equivalent to $i * 5$ and `LEA` works faster than `IMUL`.
By the way, the `SHL EAX, 2 / ADD EAX, EAX` instruction pair could be also used here instead—some compilers do it like.
- The division by multiplication trick ([3.12 on page 636](#)) is also used here.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

- `main()` returns 0 if we don't have `return 0` at its end. The C99 standard tells us [ISO/IEC 9899:TC3 (C C99 standard), (2007)5.1.2.2.3] that `main()` will return 0 in case the `return` statement is missing. This rule works only for the `main()` function.

Though, MSVC doesn't officially support C99, but maybe it supports it partially?

Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

The code is almost the same, but we can find `INT 3` instructions after each `exit()` call.

```
xor    ecx, ecx
call   QWORD PTR __imp_exit
int    3
```

`INT 3` is a debugger breakpoint.

It is known that `exit()` is one of the functions which can never return ², so if it does, something really odd has happened and it's time to load the debugger.

3.6.2 Floating-point values

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

int main()
{
    double celsius, fahr;
    printf ("Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:\n");
    if (scanf ("%lf", &fahr)!=1)
    {
        printf ("Error while parsing your input\n");
        exit(0);
    }

    celsius = 5 * (fahr-32) / 9;

    if (celsius<-273)
    {
        printf ("Error: incorrect temperature!\n");
        exit(0);
    }
    printf ("Celsius: %lf\n", celsius);
}
```

MSVC 2010 x86 uses FPU instructions...

Listing 3.5: Optimizing MSVC 2010 x86

```
$SG4038 DB      'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:', 0aH, 00H
```

²another popular one is `longjmp()`

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

$SG4040 DB      '%lf', 00H
$SG4041 DB      'Error while parsing your input', 0aH, 00H
$SG4043 DB      'Error: incorrect temperature!', 0aH, 00H
$SG4044 DB      'Celsius: %lf', 0aH, 00H

__real@c0711000000000000 DQ 0c0711000000000000 ; -273
__real@4022000000000000 DQ 040220000000000000 ; 9
__real@4014000000000000 DQ 040140000000000000 ; 5
__real@4040000000000000 DQ 040400000000000000 ; 32

_fahr$ = -8      ; size = 8
_main  PROC
    sub    esp, 8
    push   esi
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    push   OFFSET $SG4038          ; 'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:'
    call   esi                   ; call printf()
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+16]
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG4040          ; '%lf'
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__scanf
    add    esp, 12
    cmp    eax, 1
    je     SHORT $LN2@main
    push   OFFSET $SG4041          ; 'Error while parsing your input'
    call   esi                   ; call printf()
    add    esp, 4
    push   0
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__exit
$LN2@main:
    fld    QWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+12]
    fsub  QWORD PTR __real@4040000000000000 ; 32
    fmul  QWORD PTR __real@4014000000000000 ; 5
    fdiv  QWORD PTR __real@4022000000000000 ; 9
    fld    QWORD PTR __real@c0711000000000000 ; -273
    fcomp ST(1)
    fnstsw ax
    test   ah, 65    ; 00000041H
    jne    SHORT $LN1@main
    push   OFFSET $SG4043          ; 'Error: incorrect temperature!'
    fstp   ST(0)
    call   esi                   ; call printf()
    add    esp, 4
    push   0
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__exit
$LN1@main:
    sub    esp, 8
    fstp   QWORD PTR [esp]
    push   OFFSET $SG4044          ; 'Celsius: %lf'
    call   esi
    add    esp, 12
    ; return 0 - by C99 standard
    xor    eax, eax

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    pop    esi
    add    esp, 8
    ret    0
$LN10@main:
_main    ENDP

```

...but MSVC 2012 uses **SIMD** instructions instead:

Listing 3.6: Optimizing MSVC 2010 x86

```

$SG4228 DB      'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:', 0aH, 00H
$SG4230 DB      '%lf', 00H
$SG4231 DB      'Error while parsing your input', 0aH, 00H
$SG4233 DB      'Error: incorrect temperature!', 0aH, 00H
$SG4234 DB      'Celsius: %f', 0aH, 00H
__real@c0711000000000000 DQ 0c07110000000000r ; -273
__real@4040000000000000 DQ 0404000000000000r ; 32
__real@4022000000000000 DQ 0402200000000000r ; 9
__real@4014000000000000 DQ 0401400000000000r ; 5

_fahr$ = -8      ; size = 8
_main    PROC
    sub    esp, 8
    push   esi
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR __imp_printf
    push   OFFSET $SG4228          ; 'Enter temperature in Fahrenheit:'
    call   esi                   ; call printf()
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+16]
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG4230          ; '%lf'
    call   DWORD PTR __imp_scantf
    add    esp, 12
    cmp    eax, 1
    je     SHORT $LN2@main
    push   OFFSET $SG4231          ; 'Error while parsing your input'
    call   esi                   ; call printf()
    add    esp, 4
    push   0
    call   DWORD PTR __imp_exit

$LN9@main:
$LN2@main:
    movsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR _fahr$[esp+12]
    subsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4040000000000000 ; 32
    movsd  xmm0, QWORD PTR __real@c07110000000000 ; -273
    mulsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4014000000000000 ; 5
    divsd  xmm1, QWORD PTR __real@4022000000000000 ; 9
    comisd xmm0, xmm1
    jbe    SHORT $LN1@main
    push   OFFSET $SG4233          ; 'Error: incorrect temperature!'
    call   esi                   ; call printf()
    add    esp, 4
    push   0
    call   DWORD PTR __imp_exit

$LN10@main:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
$LN1@main:
    sub    esp, 8
    movsd  QWORD PTR [esp], xmm1
    push   OFFSET $SG4234          ; 'Celsius: %lf'
    call   esi                      ; call printf()
    add    esp, 12
    ; return 0 - by C99 standard
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    esi
    add    esp, 8
    ret    0

$LN8@main:
_main  ENDP
```

Of course, SIMD instructions are available in x86 mode, including those working with floating point numbers.

It's somewhat easier to use them for calculations, so the new Microsoft compiler uses them.

We can also see that the `-273` value is loaded into XMM0 register too early. And that's OK, because the compiler may emit instructions not in the order they are in the source code.

3.7 Fibonacci numbers

Another widespread example used in programming textbooks is a recursive function that generates the Fibonacci numbers³. The sequence is very simple: each consecutive number is the sum of the previous two. The first two numbers are 0 and 1, or 1 and 1.

The sequence starts like this:

0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, 89, 144, 233, 377, 610, 987, 1597, 2584, 4181...

3.7.1 Example #1

The implementation is simple. This program generates the sequence until 21.

```
#include <stdio.h>

void fib (int a, int b, int limit)
{
    printf ("%d\n", a+b);
    if (a+b > limit)
        return;
    fib (b, a+b, limit);
}

int main()
```

³<http://oeis.org/A000045>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
{
    printf ("0\n1\n1\n");
    fib (1, 1, 20);
};
```

Listing 3.7: MSVC 2010 x86

```
_a$ = 8           ; size = 4
_b$ = 12          ; size = 4
_limit$ = 16       ; size = 4
_fib  PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    add     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push    eax
    push    OFFSET $SG2643
    call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add     esp, 8
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    add     ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    cmp     ecx, DWORD PTR _limit$[ebp]
    jle    SHORT $LN1@fib
    jmp    SHORT $LN2@fib
$LN1@fib:
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _limit$[ebp]
    push    edx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    add     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push    eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push    ecx
    call    _fib
    add     esp, 12
$LN2@fib:
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_fib  ENDP

_main  PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    OFFSET $SG2647 ; "0\n1\n1\n"
    call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add     esp, 4
    push    20
    push    1
    push    1
    call    _fib
    add     esp, 12
    xor     eax, eax
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main  ENDP
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

We will illustrate the stack frames with this.

Let's load the example in OllyDbg and trace to the last call of f():

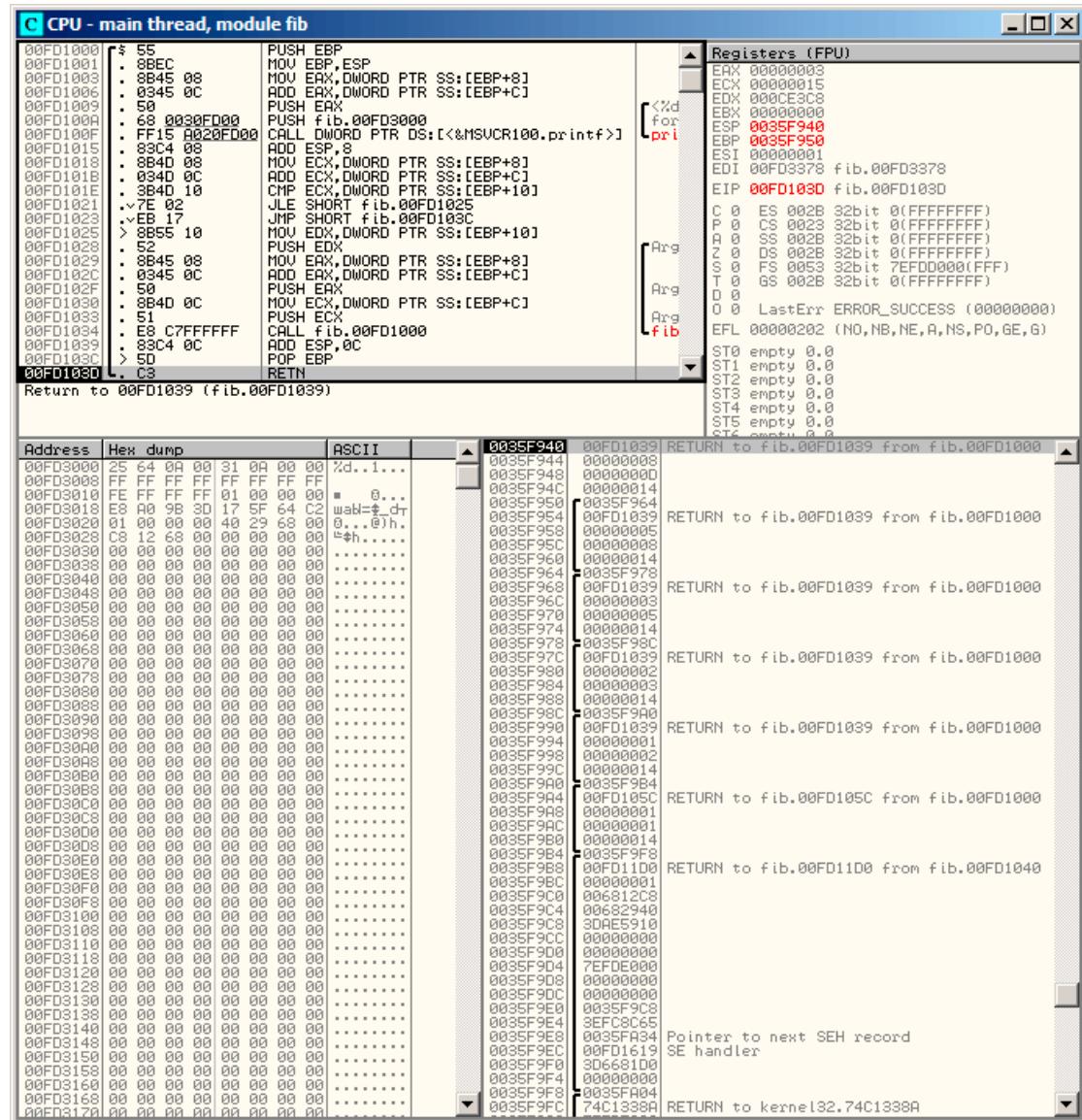


Figure 3.1: OllyDbg: last call of f()

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Let's investigate the stack more closely. Comments were added by the author of this book ⁴:

0035F940	00FD1039	RETURN to fib.00FD1039 from fib.00FD1000
0035F944	00000008	1st argument: a
0035F948	0000000D	2nd argument b
0035F94C	00000014	3rd argument: limit
0035F950	/0035F964	saved EBP register
0035F954	00FD1039	RETURN to fib.00FD1039 from fib.00FD1000
0035F958	00000005	1st argument: a
0035F95C	00000008	2nd argument: b
0035F960	00000014	3rd argument: limit
0035F964	0035F978	saved EBP register
0035F968	00FD1039	RETURN to fib.00FD1039 from fib.00FD1000
0035F96C	00000003	1st argument: a
0035F970	00000005	2nd argument: b
0035F974	00000014	3rd argument: limit
0035F978	0035F98C	saved EBP register
0035F97C	00FD1039	RETURN to fib.00FD1039 from fib.00FD1000
0035F980	00000002	1st argument: a
0035F984	00000003	2nd argument: b
0035F988	00000014	3rd argument: limit
0035F98C	0035F9A0	saved EBP register
0035F990	00FD1039	RETURN to fib.00FD1039 from fib.00FD1000
0035F994	00000001	1st argument: a
0035F998	00000002	2nd argument: b
0035F99C	00000014	3rd argument: limit
0035F9A0	0035F9B4	saved EBP register
0035F9A4	00FD105C	RETURN to fib.00FD105C from fib.00FD1000
0035F9A8	00000001	1st argument: a \
0035F9AC	00000001	2nd argument: b prepared in main() for f1()
0035F9B0	00000014	3rd argument: limit /
0035F9B4	0035F9F8	saved EBP register
0035F9B8	00FD11D0	RETURN to fib.00FD11D0 from fib.00FD1040
0035F9BC	00000001	main() 1st argument: argc \
0035F9C0	006812C8	main() 2nd argument: argv prepared in CRT for main()
0035F9C4	00682940	main() 3rd argument: envp /

The function is recursive ⁵, hence stack looks like a “sandwich”.

We see that the *limit* argument is always the same (0x14 or 20), but the *a* and *b* arguments are different for each call.

There are also the **RA**-s and the saved EBP values. OllyDbg is able to determine the EBP-based frames, so it draws these brackets. The values inside each bracket make the **stack frame**, in other words, the stack area which each function incarnation uses as scratch space.

We can also say that each function incarnation must not access stack elements beyond the boundaries of its frame (excluding function arguments), although it's technically possible.

⁴By the way, it's possible to select several entries in OllyDbg and copy them to the clipboard (Ctrl-C). That's what was done by author for this example.

⁵i.e., it calls itself

It's usually true, unless the function has bugs.

Each saved EBP value is the address of the previous [stack frame](#): this is the reason why some debuggers can easily divide the stack in frames and dump each function's arguments.

As we see here, each function incarnation prepares the arguments for the next function call.

At the end we see the 3 arguments for `main()`. argc is 1 (yes, indeed, we have ran the program without command-line arguments).

This easily lead to a stack overflow: just remove (or comment out) the limit check and it will crash with exception 0xC00000FD (stack overflow.)

3.7.2 Example #2

My function has some redundancy, so let's add a new local variable `next` and replace all "a+b" with it:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void fib (int a, int b, int limit)
{
    int next=a+b;
    printf ("%d\n", next);
    if (next > limit)
        return;
    fib (b, next, limit);
};

int main()
{
    printf ("0\n1\n1\n");
    fib (1, 1, 20);
};
```

This is the output of non-optimizing MSVC, so the `next` variable is actually allocated in the local stack:

Listing 3.8: MSVC 2010 x86

```
_next$ = -4      ; size = 4
_a$ = 8         ; size = 4
_b$ = 12        ; size = 4
_limit$ = 16    ; size = 4
_fib    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    add     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR _next$[ebp], eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _next$[ebp]
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push    ecx
push    OFFSET $SG2751 ; '%d'
call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
add    esp, 8
mov    edx, DWORD PTR _next$[ebp]
cmp    edx, DWORD PTR _limit$[ebp]
jle    SHORT $LN1@fib
jmp    SHORT $LN2@fib
$LN1@fib:
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _limit$[ebp]
    push   eax
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _next$[ebp]
    push   ecx
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    push   edx
    call   _fib
    add    esp, 12
$LN2@fib:
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_fib  ENDP

_main PROC
    push   ebp
    mov    ebp, esp
    push   OFFSET $SG2753 ; "0\n1\n1\n"
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add    esp, 4
    push   20
    push   1
    push   1
    call   _fib
    add    esp, 12
    xor    eax, eax
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_main ENDP

```

Let's load it in OllyDbg once again:

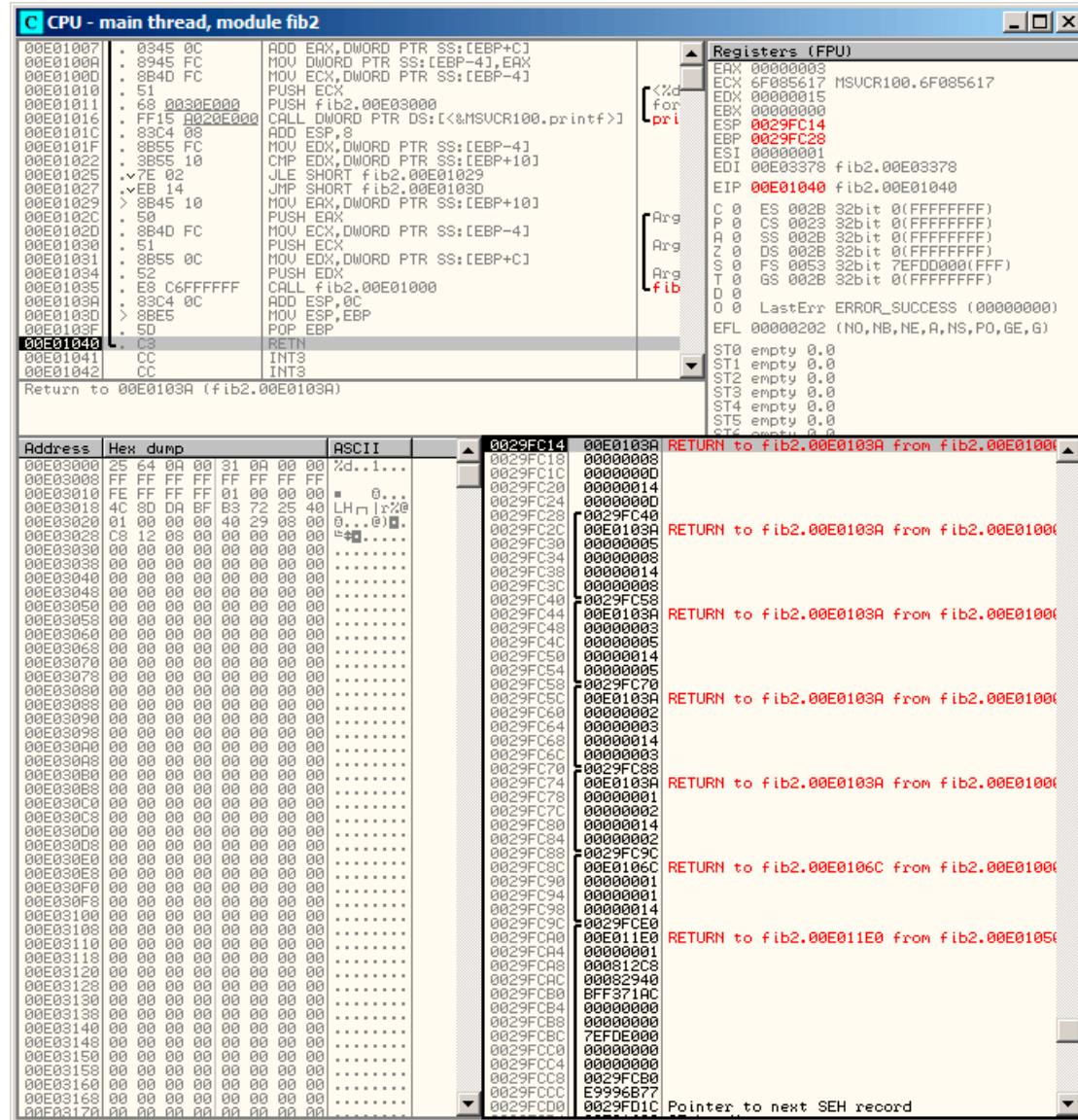


Figure 3.2: OllyDbg: last call of f()

Now the *next* variable is present in each frame.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Let's investigate the stack more closely. The author has again added his comments:

```

0029FC14 00E0103A RETURN to fib2.00E0103A from fib2.00E01000
0029FC18 00000008 1st argument: a
0029FC1C 0000000D 2nd argument: b
0029FC20 00000014 3rd argument: limit
0029FC24 0000000D "next" variable
0029FC28 /0029FC40 saved EBP register
0029FC2C |00E0103A RETURN to fib2.00E0103A from fib2.00E01000
0029FC30 |00000005 1st argument: a
0029FC34 |00000008 2nd argument: b
0029FC38 |00000014 3rd argument: limit
0029FC3C |00000008 "next" variable
0029FC40 |0029FC58 saved EBP register
0029FC44 |00E0103A RETURN to fib2.00E0103A from fib2.00E01000
0029FC48 |00000003 1st argument: a
0029FC4C |00000005 2nd argument: b
0029FC50 |00000014 3rd argument: limit
0029FC54 |00000005 "next" variable
0029FC58 |0029FC70 saved EBP register
0029FC5C |00E0103A RETURN to fib2.00E0103A from fib2.00E01000
0029FC60 |00000002 1st argument: a
0029FC64 |00000003 2nd argument: b
0029FC68 |00000014 3rd argument: limit
0029FC6C |00000003 "next" variable
0029FC70 |0029FC88 saved EBP register
0029FC74 |00E0103A RETURN to fib2.00E0103A from fib2.00E01000
0029FC78 |00000001 1st argument: a \
0029FC7C |00000002 2nd argument: b | prepared in f1() for next f1() ↴
    ↴ call
0029FC80 |00000014 3rd argument: limit /
0029FC84 |00000002 "next" variable
0029FC88 |0029FC9C saved EBP register
0029FC8C |00E0106C RETURN to fib2.00E0106C from fib2.00E01000
0029FC90 |00000001 1st argument: a \
0029FC94 |00000001 2nd argument: b | prepared in main() for f1()
0029FC98 |00000014 3rd argument: limit /
0029FC9C |0029FCE0 saved EBP register
0029FCA0 |00E011E0 RETURN to fib2.00E011E0 from fib2.00E01050
0029FCA4 |00000001 main() 1st argument: argc \
0029FCA8 |000812C8 main() 2nd argument: argv | prepared in CRT for main()
0029FCAC |00082940 main() 3rd argument: envp /

```

Here we see it: the *next* value is calculated in each function incarnation, then passed as argument *b* to the next incarnation.

3.7.3 Summary

Recursive functions are aesthetically nice, but technically may degrade performance because of their heavy stack usage. Everyone who writes performance critical code probably should avoid recursion.

For example, the author of this book once wrote a function to seek a particular node

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

in a binary tree. As a recursive function it looked quite stylish but since additional time was spent at each function call for the prologue/epilogue, it was working a couple of times slower than an iterative (recursion-free) implementation.

By the way, that is the reason that some functional [PL⁶](#) compilers (where recursion is used heavily) use [tail call](#). We talk about tail call when a function has only one single call to itself located at the end of it, like:

Listing 3.9: Scheme, example is copypasted from Wikipedia

```
;; factorial : number -> number
;; to calculate the product of all positive
;; integers less than or equal to n.
(define (factorial n)
  (if (= n 1)
      1
      (* n (factorial (- n 1)))))
```

Tail call is important because compiler can rework this code easily into iterative one, to get rid of recursion.

3.8 CRC32 calculation example

This is a very popular table-based CRC32 hash calculation technique⁷.

```
/* By Bob Jenkins, (c) 2006, Public Domain */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stddef.h>
#include <string.h>

typedef unsigned long ub4;
typedef unsigned char ub1;

static const ub4 crctab[256] = {
    0x00000000, 0x77073096, 0xee0e612c, 0x990951ba, 0x076dc419,
    0x706af48f, 0xe963a535, 0x9e6495a3, 0x0edb8832, 0x79dcb8a4,
    0xe0d5e91e, 0x97d2d988, 0x09b64c2b, 0x7eb17cbd, 0xe7b82d07,
    0x90bf1d91, 0x1db71064, 0x6ab020f2, 0xf3b97148, 0x84be41de,
    0x1adad47d, 0x6ddde4eb, 0xf4d4b551, 0x83d385c7, 0x136c9856,
    0x646ba8c0, 0xfd62f97a, 0x8a65c9ec, 0x14015c4f, 0x63066cd9,
    0xfa0f3d63, 0x8d080df5, 0x3b6e20c8, 0x4c69105e, 0xd56041e4,
    0xa2677172, 0x3c03e4d1, 0x4b04d447, 0xd20d85fd, 0xa50ab56b,
    0x35b5a8fa, 0x42b2986c, 0xdbbbc9d6, 0xacbcf940, 0x32d86ce3,
    0x45df5c75, 0xdcd60dcf, 0xabd13d59, 0x26d930ac, 0x51de003a,
    0xc8d75180, 0xbfd06116, 0x21b4f4b5, 0x56b3c423, 0xcfba9599,
    0xb8bda50f, 0x2802b89e, 0x5f058808, 0xc60cd9b2, 0xb10be924,
    0x2f6f7c87, 0x58684c11, 0xc1611dab, 0xb6662d3d, 0x76dc4190,
    0x01db7106, 0x98d220bc, 0xefd5102a, 0x71b18589, 0x06b6b51f,
    0x9fbfe4a5, 0xe8b8d433, 0x7807c9a2, 0x0f00f934, 0x9609a88e,
```

⁶LISP, Python, Lua, etc.

⁷The source code has been taken from here: <http://burtleburtle.net/bob/c/crc.c>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:

<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!


```

        printf("0x%.8lx, ", j);
        if (i%6 == 5) printf("\n");
    }

/* the hash function */
ub4 crc(const void *key, ub4 len, ub4 hash)
{
    ub4 i;
    const ub1 *k = key;
    for (hash=len, i=0; i<len; ++i)
        hash = (hash >> 8) ^ crctab[(hash & 0xff) ^ k[i]];
    return hash;
}

/* To use, try "gcc -O0 crc.c -o crc; crc < crc.c" */
int main()
{
    char s[1000];
    while (gets(s)) printf("%.8lx\n", crc(s, strlen(s), 0));
    return 0;
}

```

We are interested in the `crc()` function only. By the way, pay attention to the two loop initializers in the `for()` statement: `hash=len`, `i=0`. The C/C++ standard allows this, of course. The emitted code will contain two operations in the loop initialization part instead of one.

Let's compile it in MSVC with optimization (/Ox). For the sake of brevity, only the `crc()` function is listed here, with my comments.

```

$key$ = 8                      ; size = 4
$_len$ = 12                     ; size = 4
$_hash$ = 16                     ; size = 4
_crc    PROC
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _len$[esp-4]
    xor    ecx, ecx ; i will be stored in ECX
    mov    eax, edx
    test   edx, edx
    jbe    SHORT $LN1@crc
    push   ebx
    push   esi
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR _key$[esp+4] ; ESI = key
    push   edi
$LL3@crc:
; work with bytes using only 32-bit registers. byte from address key+i we
; store into EDI
    movzx  edi, BYTE PTR [ecx+esi]
    mov    ebx, eax ; EBX = (hash = len)
    and    ebx, 255 ; EBX = hash & 0xff

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; XOR EDI, EBX (EDI=EDI^EBX)
; this operation uses all 32 bits of each register
; but other bits (8-31) are cleared all time, so it is OK
; these are cleared because, as for EDI, it was done by MOVZX instruction
; above
; high bits of EBX was cleared by AND EBX, 255 instruction above (255 = 0xff)

    xor    edi, ebx

; EAX=EAX>>8; bits 24-31 taken from nowhere will be cleared
    shr    eax, 8

; EAX=EAX^crctab[EDI*4] - choose EDI-th element from crctab[] table
    xor    eax, DWORD PTR _crctab[edi*4]
    inc    ecx          ; i++
    cmp    ecx, edx      ; i<len ?
    jb     SHORT $LL3@crc ; yes
    pop    edi
    pop    esi
    pop    ebx
$LN1@crc:
    ret    0
_crc    ENDP

```

Let's try the same in GCC 4.4.1 with -O3 option:

```

public crc
crc    proc near

key        = dword ptr  8
hash       = dword ptr  0Ch

    push    ebp
    xor    edx, edx
    mov    ebp, esp
    push    esi
    mov    esi, [ebp+key]
    push    ebx
    mov    ebx, [ebp+hash]
    test   ebx, ebx
    mov    eax, ebx
    jz     short loc_80484D3
    nop          ; padding
    lea    esi, [esi+0] ; padding; works as NOP (ESI does not
change here)

loc_80484B8:
    mov    ecx, eax      ; save previous state of hash to ECX
    xor    al, [esi+edx]; AL=*(key+i)
    add    edx, 1        ; i++
    shr    ecx, 8         ; ECX=hash>>8
    movzx  eax, al        ; EAX=*(key+i)
    mov    eax, dword ptr ds:crctab[eax*4] ; EAX=crctab[EAX]
    xor    eax, ecx        ; hash=EAX^ECX

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

	cmp	ebx, edx
	ja	short loc_80484B8
loc_80484D3:		
	pop	ebx
	pop	esi
	pop	ebp
	retn	
crc	endp	

GCC has aligned the loop start on a 8-byte boundary by adding NOP and lea esi, [esi+0] (that is an *idle operation* too). Read more about it in npad section ([.1.7 on page 1333](#)).

3.9 Network address calculation example

As we know, a TCP/IP address (IPv4) consists of four numbers in the 0...255 range, i.e., four bytes.

Four bytes can be fit in a 32-bit variable easily, so an IPv4 host address, network mask or network address can all be 32-bit integers.

From the user's point of view, the network mask is defined as four numbers and is formatted like 255.255.255.0 or so, but network engineers (sysadmins) use a more compact notation ([CIDR⁸](#)), like "/8", "/16", etc.

This notation just defines the number of bits the mask has, starting at the **MSB**.

Mask	Hosts	Usable	Netmask	Hex mask	
/30	4	2	255.255.255.252	0xffffffffc	
/29	8	6	255.255.255.248	0xfffffff8	
/28	16	14	255.255.255.240	0xfffffff0	
/27	32	30	255.255.255.224	0xffffffe0	
/26	64	62	255.255.255.192	0xfffffc0	
/24	256	254	255.255.255.0	0xffffff00	class C network
/23	512	510	255.255.254.0	0xfffffe00	
/22	1024	1022	255.255.252.0	0xfffffc00	
/21	2048	2046	255.255.248.0	0xfffff800	
/20	4096	4094	255.255.240.0	0xfffff000	
/19	8192	8190	255.255.224.0	0xffffe000	
/18	16384	16382	255.255.192.0	0xffffc000	
/17	32768	32766	255.255.128.0	0xffff8000	
/16	65536	65534	255.255.0.0	0xffff0000	class B network
/8	16777216	16777214	255.0.0.0	0xff000000	class A network

Here is a small example, which calculates the network address by applying the network mask to the host address.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>
```

⁸Classless Inter-Domain Routing

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```

uint32_t form_IP (uint8_t ip1, uint8_t ip2, uint8_t ip3, uint8_t ip4)
{
    return (ip1<<24) | (ip2<<16) | (ip3<<8) | ip4;
};

void print_as_IP (uint32_t a)
{
    printf ("%d.%d.%d.%d\n",
            (a>>24)&0xFF,
            (a>>16)&0xFF,
            (a>>8)&0xFF,
            (a)&0xFF);
};

// bit=31..0
uint32_t set_bit (uint32_t input, int bit)
{
    return input=input|(1<<bit);
};

uint32_t form_netmask (uint8_t netmask_bits)
{
    uint32_t netmask=0;
    uint8_t i;

    for (i=0; i<netmask_bits; i++)
        netmask=set_bit(netmask, 31-i);

    return netmask;
};

void calc_network_address (uint8_t ip1, uint8_t ip2, uint8_t ip3, uint8_t ip4,
                           uint8_t netmask_bits)
{
    uint32_t netmask=form_netmask(netmask_bits);
    uint32_t ip=form_IP(ip1, ip2, ip3, ip4);
    uint32_t netw_addr;

    printf ("netmask=");
    print_as_IP (netmask);

    netw_addr=ip&netmask;

    printf ("network address=");
    print_as_IP (netw_addr);
};

int main()
{
    calc_network_address (10, 1, 2, 4, 24);      // 10.1.2.4, /24
    calc_network_address (10, 1, 2, 4, 8);       // 10.1.2.4, /8
    calc_network_address (10, 1, 2, 4, 25);      // 10.1.2.4, /25
    calc_network_address (10, 1, 2, 64, 26);     // 10.1.2.4, /26

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
};
```

3.9.1 calc_network_address()

`calc_network_address()` function is simplest one: it just ANDs the host address with the network mask, resulting in the network address.

Listing 3.10: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob0

```

1 _ip1$ = 8           ; size = 1
2 _ip2$ = 12          ; size = 1
3 _ip3$ = 16          ; size = 1
4 _ip4$ = 20          ; size = 1
5 _netmask_bits$ = 24 ; size = 1
6 _calc_network_address PROC
7     push    edi
8     push    DWORD PTR _netmask_bits$[esp]
9     call    _form_netmask
10    push   OFFSET $SG3045 ; 'netmask='
11    mov     edi, eax
12    call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
13    push   edi
14    call    _print_as_IP
15    push   OFFSET $SG3046 ; 'network address='
16    call    DWORD PTR __imp__printf
17    push   DWORD PTR _ip4$[esp+16]
18    push   DWORD PTR _ip3$[esp+20]
19    push   DWORD PTR _ip2$[esp+24]
20    push   DWORD PTR _ip1$[esp+28]
21    call    _form_IP
22    and    eax, edi      ; network address = host address & netmask
23    push   eax
24    call    _print_as_IP
25    add    esp, 36
26    pop    edi
27    ret    0
28 _calc_network_address ENDP

```

At line 22 we see the most important AND—here the network address is calculated.

3.9.2 form_IP()

The `form_IP()` function just puts all 4 bytes into a 32-bit value.

Here is how it is usually done:

- Allocate a variable for the return value. Set it to 0.
- Take the fourth (lowest) byte, apply OR operation to this byte and return the value. The return value contain the 4th byte now.
- Take the third byte, shift it left by 8 bits. You'll get a value like `0x0000bb00` where `bb` is your third byte. Apply the OR operation to the resulting value and

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

returning value. The return value has contained 0x000000aa so far, so ORing the values will produce a value like 0x0000bbbaa.

- Take the second byte, shift it left by 16 bits. You'll get a value like 0x00cc0000, where cc is your second byte. Apply the OR operation to the resulting value and returning value. The return value has contained 0x0000bbbaa so far, so ORing the values will produce a value like 0x00ccbbaa.
- Take the first byte, shift it left by 24 bits. You'll get a value like 0xdd000000, where dd is your first byte. Apply the OR operation to the resulting value and returning value. The return value has contained 0x00ccbbaa so far, so ORing the values will produce a value like 0xddccbbaa.

And this is how it's done by non-optimizing MSVC 2012:

Listing 3.11: Non-optimizing MSVC 2012

```
; denote ip1 as "dd", ip2 as "cc", ip3 as "bb", ip4 as "aa".
_ip1$ = 8          ; size = 1
_ip2$ = 12         ; size = 1
_ip3$ = 16         ; size = 1
_ip4$ = 20         ; size = 1
_form_IP PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR _ip1$[ebp]
    ; EAX=000000dd
    shl    eax, 24
    ; EAX=dd000000
    movzx   ecx, BYTE PTR _ip2$[ebp]
    ; ECX=000000cc
    shl    ecx, 16
    ; ECX=00cc0000
    or     eax, ecx
    ; EAX=ddcc0000
    movzx   edx, BYTE PTR _ip3$[ebp]
    ; EDX=000000bb
    shl    edx, 8
    ; EDX=0000bb00
    or     eax, edx
    ; EAX=ddccb000
    movzx   ecx, BYTE PTR _ip4$[ebp]
    ; ECX=000000aa
    or     eax, ecx
    ; EAX=ddccbbaa
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_form_IP ENDP
```

Well, the order is different, but, of course, the order of the operations doesn't matter. Optimizing MSVC 2012 does essentially the same, but in a different way:

Listing 3.12: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob0

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; denote ip1 as "dd", ip2 as "cc", ip3 as "bb", ip4 as "aa".
_ip1$ = 8          ; size = 1
_ip2$ = 12         ; size = 1
_ip3$ = 16         ; size = 1
_ip4$ = 20         ; size = 1
_form_IP PROC
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR _ip1$[esp-4]
    ; EAX=000000dd
    movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR _ip2$[esp-4]
    ; ECX=000000cc
    shl    eax, 8
    ; EAX=0000dd00
    or     eax, ecx
    ; EAX=0000ddcc
    movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR _ip3$[esp-4]
    ; ECX=000000bb
    shl    eax, 8
    ; EAX=00ddcc00
    or     eax, ecx
    ; EAX=00ddccb0
    movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR _ip4$[esp-4]
    ; ECX=000000aa
    shl    eax, 8
    ; EAX=ddccb00
    or     eax, ecx
    ; EAX=ddccbbaa
    ret    0
_form_IP ENDP

```

We could say that each byte is written to the lowest 8 bits of the return value, and then the return value is shifted left by one byte at each step.

Repeat 4 times for each input byte.

That's it! Unfortunately, there are probably no other ways to do it.

There are no popular CPUs or ISAs which has instruction for composing a value from bits or bytes.

It's all usually done by bit shifting and ORing.

3.9.3 print_as_IP()

`print_as_IP()` does the inverse: splitting a 32-bit value into 4 bytes.

Slicing works somewhat simpler: just shift input value by 24, 16, 8 or 0 bits, take the bits from zeroth to seventh (lowest byte), and that's it:

Listing 3.13: Non-optimizing MSVC 2012

```

_a$ = 8          ; size = 4
_print_as_IP PROC
    push   ebp
    mov    ebp, esp
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; EAX=ddccbbaa
and    eax, 255
; EAX=000000aa
push   eax
mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; ECX=ddccbbaa
shr    ecx, 8
; ECX=00ddccbb
and    ecx, 255
; ECX=000000bb
push   ecx
mov    edx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; EDX=ddccbbaa
shr    edx, 16
; EDX=0000ddcc
and    edx, 255
; EDX=000000cc
push   edx
mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
; EAX=ddccbbaa
shr    eax, 24
; EAX=000000dd
and    eax, 255 ; probably redundant instruction
; EAX=000000dd
push   eax
push   OFFSET $SG2973 ; '%d.%d.%d.%d'
call   DWORD PTR __imp__printf
add    esp, 20
pop    ebp
ret    0
_print_as_IP ENDP

```

Optimizing MSVC 2012 does almost the same, but without unnecessary reloading of the input value:

Listing 3.14: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob0

```

_a$ = 8          ; size = 4
_print_as_IP PROC
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
; ECX=ddccbbaa
    movzx  eax, cl
; EAX=000000aa
    push   eax
    mov    eax, ecx
; EAX=ddccbbaa
    shr    eax, 8
; EAX=00ddccbb
    and    eax, 255
; EAX=000000bb
    push   eax
    mov    eax, ecx
; EAX=ddccbbaa
    shr    eax, 16

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; EAX=0000ddcc
and    eax, 255
; EAX=000000cc
push   eax
; ECX=ddccbbaa
shr    ecx, 24
; ECX=000000dd
push   ecx
push   OFFSET $SG3020 ; '%d.%d.%d.%d'
call   DWORD PTR __imp__printf
add    esp, 20
ret    0
_print_as_IP ENDP

```

3.9.4 form_netmask() and set_bit()

`form_netmask()` makes a network mask value from [CIDR](#) notation. Of course, it would be much effective to use here some kind of a precalculated table, but we consider it in this way intentionally, to demonstrate bit shifts.

We will also write a separate function `set_bit()`. It's a not very good idea to create a function for such primitive operation, but it would be easy to understand how it all works.

Listing 3.15: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob0

```

_input$ = 8           ; size = 4
_bit$ = 12          ; size = 4
_set_bit PROC
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _bit$[esp-4]
    mov    eax, 1
    shl    eax, cl
    or     eax, DWORD PTR _input$[esp-4]
    ret    0
_set_bit ENDP

_netmask_bits$ = 8      ; size = 1
_form_netmask PROC
    push   ebx
    push   esi
    movzx  esi, BYTE PTR _netmask_bits$[esp+4]
    xor    ecx, ecx
    xor    bl, bl
    test   esi, esi
    jle    SHORT $LN9@form_netma
    xor    edx, edx
$LL3@form_netma:
    mov    eax, 31
    sub    eax, edx
    push   eax
    push   ecx
    call   _set_bit
    inc    bl

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    movzx  edx, bl
    add   esp, 8
    mov   ecx, eax
    cmp   edx, esi
    jl    SHORT $LL3@form_netma
$LN9@form_netma:
    pop   esi
    mov   eax, ecx
    pop   ebx
    ret   0
_form_netmask ENDP

```

`set_bit()` is primitive: it just shift left 1 to number of bits we need and then ORs it with the “input” value. `form_netmask()` has a loop: it will set as many bits (starting from the **MSB**) as passed in the `netmask_bits` argument

3.9.5 Summary

That's it! We run it and getting:

```

netmask=255.255.255.0
network address=10.1.2.0
netmask=255.0.0.0
network address=10.0.0.0
netmask=255.255.255.128
network address=10.1.2.0
netmask=255.255.255.192
network address=10.1.2.64

```

3.10 Loops: several iterators

In most cases loops have only one iterator, but there could be several in the resulting code.

Here is a very simple example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

void f(int *a1, int *a2, size_t cnt)
{
    size_t i;

    // copy from one array to another in some weird scheme
    for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
        a1[i*3]=a2[i*7];
}

```

There are two multiplications at each iteration and they are costly operations. Can we optimize it somehow?

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Yes, if we notice that both array indices are jumping on values that we can easily calculate without multiplication.

3.10.1 Three iterators

Listing 3.16: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```
f      PROC
; RCX=a1
; RDX=a2
; R8=cnt
    test    r8, r8      ; cnt==0? exit then
    je     SHORT $LN1@f
    npad   11
$LL3@f:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [rdx]
    lea     rcx, QWORD PTR [rcx+12]
    lea     rdx, QWORD PTR [rdx+28]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rcx-12], eax
    dec     r8
    jne     SHORT $LL3@f
$LN1@f:
    ret     0
f      ENDP
```

Now there are 3 iterators: the *cnt* variable and two indices, which are increased by 12 and 28 at each iteration. We can rewrite this code in C/C++:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f(int *a1, int *a2, size_t cnt)
{
    size_t i;
    size_t idx1=0; idx2=0;

    // copy from one array to another in some weird scheme
    for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
    {
        a1[idx1]=a2[idx2];
        idx1+=3;
        idx2+=7;
    };
}
```

So, at the cost of updating 3 iterators at each iteration instead of one, we can remove two multiplication operations.

3.10.2 Two iterators

GCC 4.9 does even more, leaving only 2 iterators:

Listing 3.17: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```

; RDI=a1
; RSI=a2
; RDX=cnt
f:
    test    rdx, rdx ; cnt==0? exit then
    je      .L1
; calculate last element address in "a2" and leave it in RDX
    lea     rax, [0+rdx*4]
; RAX=RDX*4=cnt*4
    sal     rdx, 5
; RDX=RDX<<5=cnt*32
    sub     rdx, rax
; RDX=RDX-RAX=cnt*32-cnt*4=cnt*28
    add     rdx, rsi
; RDX=RDX+RSI=a2+cnt*28
.L3:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [rsi]
    add     rsi, 28
    add     rdi, 12
    mov     DWORD PTR [rdi-12], eax
    cmp     rsi, rdx
    jne     .L3
.L1:
    rep    ret

```

There is no *counter* variable any more: GCC concluded that it is not needed.

The last element of the *a2* array is calculated before the loop begins (which is easy: $cnt * 7$) and that's how the loop is to be stopped: just iterate until the second index reaches this precalculated value.

You can read more about multiplication using shifts/additions/subtractions here: [1.24.1 on page 269](#).

This code can be rewritten into C/C++ like that:

```

#include <stdio.h>

void f(int *a1, int *a2, size_t cnt)
{
    size_t idx1=0; idx2=0;
    size_t last_idx2=cnt*7;

    // copy from one array to another in some weird scheme
    for (;;)
    {
        a1[idx1]=a2[idx2];
        idx1+=3;
        idx2+=7;
        if (idx2==last_idx2)
            break;
    }
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

GCC (Linaro) 4.9 for ARM64 does the same, but it precalculates the last index of *a1* instead of *a2*, which, of course has the same effect:

Listing 3.18: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9 ARM64

```
; X0=a1
; X1=a2
; X2=cnt
f:
    cbz    x2, .L1           ; cnt==0? exit then
; calculate last element of "a1" array
    add    x2, x2, x2, lsl 1
; X2=X2+X2<<1=X2+X2*2=X2*3
    mov    x3, 0
    lsl    x2, x2, 2
; X2=X2<<2=X2*4=X2*3*4=X2*12
.L3:
    ldr    w4, [x1],28       ; load at X1, add 28 to X1
    (post-increment)
    str    w4, [x0,x3]       ; store at X0+X3=a1+X3
    add    x3, x3, 12        ; shift X3
    cmp    x3, x2            ; end?
    bne    .L3
.L1:
    ret
```

GCC 4.4.5 for MIPS does the same:

Listing 3.19: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 for MIPS (IDA)

```
; $a0=a1
; $a1=a2
; $a2=cnt
f:
; jump to loop check code:
    beqz   $a2, locret_24
; initialize counter (i) at 0:
    move   $v0, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP

loc_8:
; load 32-bit word at $a1
    lw     $a3, 0($a1)
; increment counter (i):
    addiu $v0, 1
; check for finish (compare "i" in $v0 and "cnt" in $a2):
    sltu   $v1, $v0, $a2
; store 32-bit word at $a0:
    sw     $a3, 0($a0)
; add 0x1C (28) to $a1 at each iteration:
    addiu $a1, 0x1C
; jump to loop body if i<cnt:
    bnez   $v1, loc_8
; add 0xC (12) to $a0 at each iteration:
    addiu $a0, 0xC ; branch delay slot
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
locret_24:
    jr      $ra
    or      $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
```

3.10.3 Intel C++ 2011 case

Compiler optimizations can also be weird, but nevertheless, still correct. Here is what the Intel C++ compiler 2011 does:

Listing 3.20: Optimizing Intel C++ 2011 x64

```
f      PROC
; parameter 1: rcx = a1
; parameter 2: rdx = a2
; parameter 3: r8 = cnt
.B1.1::
    test     r8, r8
    jbe      exit

.B1.2::
    cmp      r8, 6
    jbe      just_copy

.B1.3::
    cmp      rcx, rdx
    jbe      .B1.5

.B1.4::
    mov      r10, r8
    mov      r9, rcx
    shl      r10, 5
    lea      rax, QWORD PTR [r8*4]
    sub      r9, rdx
    sub      r10, rax
    cmp      r9, r10
    jge      just_copy2

.B1.5::
    cmp      rdx, rcx
    jbe      just_copy

.B1.6::
    mov      r9, rdx
    lea      rax, QWORD PTR [r8*8]
    sub      r9, rcx
    lea      r10, QWORD PTR [rax+r8*4]
    cmp      r9, r10
    jl       just_copy

just_copy2::
; R8 = cnt
; RDX = a2
; RCX = a1
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

xor      r10d, r10d
xor      r9d, r9d
xor      eax, eax

.B1.8::
    mov      r11d, DWORD PTR [rax+rdx]
    inc      r10
    mov      DWORD PTR [r9+rcx], r11d
    add      r9, 12
    add      rax, 28
    cmp      r10, r8
    jb       .B1.8
    jmp      exit

just_copy::
; R8 = cnt
; RDX = a2
; RCX = a1
    xor      r10d, r10d
    xor      r9d, r9d
    xor      eax, eax

.B1.11::
    mov      r11d, DWORD PTR [rax+rdx]
    inc      r10
    mov      DWORD PTR [r9+rcx], r11d
    add      r9, 12
    add      rax, 28
    cmp      r10, r8
    jb       .B1.11

exit::
    ret

```

First, there are some decisions taken, then one of the routines is executed.

Looks like it is a check if arrays intersect.

This is very well known way of optimizing memory block copy routines. But copy routines are the same!

This has to be an error of the Intel C++ optimizer, which still produces workable code, though.

We intentionally considering such example code in this book so the reader would understand that compiler output is weird at times, but still correct, because when the compiler was tested, it passed the tests.

3.11 Duff's device

Duff's device is an unrolled loop with the possibility to jump to the middle of it. The unrolled loop is implemented using a fallthrough switch() statement. We would use

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

here a slightly simplified version of Tom Duff's original code. Let's say, we have to write a function that clears a region in memory. One can come with a simple loop, clearing byte by byte. It's obviously slow, since all modern computers have much wider memory bus. So the better way is to clear the memory region using 4 or 8 bytes blocks. Since we are going to work with a 64-bit example here, we are going to clear the memory in 8 bytes blocks. So far so good. But what about the tail? Memory clearing routine can also be called for regions of size that's not a multiple of 8. So here is the algorithm:

- calculate the number of 8-bytes blocks, clear them using 8-bytes (64-bit) memory accesses;
- calculate the size of the tail, clear it using 1-byte memory accesses.

The second step can be implemented using a simple loop. But let's implement it as an unrolled loop:

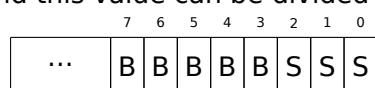
```
#include <stdint.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void bzero(uint8_t* dst, size_t count)
{
    int i;

    if (count&(~7))
        // work out 8-byte blocks
        for (i=0; i<count>>3; i++)
    {
        *(uint64_t*)dst=0;
        dst=dst+8;
    };

    // work out the tail
    switch(count & 7)
    {
    case 7: *dst++ = 0;
    case 6: *dst++ = 0;
    case 5: *dst++ = 0;
    case 4: *dst++ = 0;
    case 3: *dst++ = 0;
    case 2: *dst++ = 0;
    case 1: *dst++ = 0;
    case 0: // do nothing
        break;
    }
}
```

Let's first understand how the calculation is performed. The memory region size comes as a 64-bit value. And this value can be divided in two parts:



("B" is number of 8-byte blocks and "S" is length of the tail in bytes).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

When we divide the input memory region size by 8, the value is just shifted right by 3 bits. But to calculate the remainder, we can just isolate the lowest 3 bits! So the number of 8-byte blocks is calculated as `count >> 3` and remainder as `count&7`. We also have to find out if we are going to execute the 8-byte procedure at all, so we need to check if the value of `count` is greater than 7. We do this by clearing the 3 lowest bits and comparing the resulting number with zero, because all we need here is to answer the question, is the high part of `count` non-zero. Of course, this works because 8 is 2^3 and division by numbers that are 2^n is easy. It's not possible for other numbers. It's actually hard to say if these hacks are worth using, because they lead to hard-to-read code. However, these tricks are very popular and a practicing programmer, even if he/she is not using them, nevertheless has to understand them.

So the first part is simple: get the number of 8-byte blocks and write 64-bit zero values to memory. The second part is an unrolled loop implemented as fallthrough switch() statement.

First, let's express in plain English what we have to do here.

We have to "write as many zero bytes in memory, as `count&7` value tells us". If it's 0, jump to the end, there is no work to do. If it's 1, jump to the place inside switch() statement where only one storage operation is to be executed. If it's 2, jump to another place, where two storage operation are to be executed, etc. 7 as input value leads to the execution of all 7 operations. There is no 8, because a memory region of 8 bytes is to be processed by the first part of our function. So we wrote an unrolled loop. It was definitely faster on older computers than normal loops (and conversely, latest CPUs works better for short loops than for unrolled ones). Maybe this is still meaningful on modern low-cost embedded MCUs⁹.

Let's see what the optimizing MSVC 2012 does:

```
dst$ = 8
count$ = 16
bzero PROC
    test    rdx, -8
    je     SHORT $LN11@bzero
; work out 8-byte blocks
    xor     r10d, r10d
    mov     r9, rdx
    shr     r9, 3
    mov     r8d, r10d
    test    r9, r9
    je     SHORT $LN11@bzero
    npad   5
$LL19@bzero:
    inc     r8d
    mov     QWORD PTR [rcx], r10
    add     rcx, 8
    movsxd rax, r8d
    cmp     rax, r9
    jb     SHORT $LL19@bzero
$LN11@bzero:
; work out the tail
```

⁹Microcontroller Unit

```

        and    edx, 7
        dec    rdx
        cmp    rdx, 6
        ja     SHORT $LN9@bzero
        lea    r8, OFFSET FLAT:_ImageBase
        mov    eax, DWORD PTR $LN22@bzero[r8+rdx*4]
        add    rax, r8
        jmp    rax
$LN8@bzero:
        mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
        inc    rcx
$LN7@bzero:
        mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
        inc    rcx
$LN6@bzero:
        mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
        inc    rcx
$LN5@bzero:
        mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
        inc    rcx
$LN4@bzero:
        mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
        inc    rcx
$LN3@bzero:
        mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
        inc    rcx
$LN2@bzero:
        mov    BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
$LN9@bzero:
        fatret 0
        npad   1
$LN22@bzero:
        DD     $LN2@bzero
        DD     $LN3@bzero
        DD     $LN4@bzero
        DD     $LN5@bzero
        DD     $LN6@bzero
        DD     $LN7@bzero
        DD     $LN8@bzero
bzero  ENDP

```

The first part of the function is predictable. The second part is just an unrolled loop and a jump passing control flow to the correct instruction inside it. There is no other code between the MOV/INC instruction pairs, so the execution is to fall until the very end, executing as many pairs as needed. By the way, we can observe that the MOV/INC pair consumes a fixed number of bytes (3+3). So the pair consumes 6 bytes. Knowing that, we can get rid of the switch() jumpable, we can just multiple the input value by 6 and jump to *current_RIP + input_value * 6*.

This can also be faster because we are not in need to fetch a value from the jumpable.

It's possible that 6 probably is not a very good constant for fast multiplication and

maybe it's not worth it, but you get the idea¹⁰.

That is what old-school demomakers did in the past with unrolled loops.

3.11.1 Should one use unrolled loops?

Unrolled loops can have benefits if there is no fast cache memory between RAM and CPU, and the CPU, in order to get the code of the next instruction, must load it from RAM each time. This is a case of modern low-cost MCU and old CPUs.

Unrolled loops are slower than short loops if there is a fast cache between RAM and CPU and the body of loop can fit into cache, and CPU will load the code from it not touching the RAM. Fast loops are the loops which body's size can fit into L1 cache, but even faster loops are those small ones which can fit into micro-operation cache.

3.12 Division using multiplication

A very simple function:

```
int f(int a)
{
    return a/9;
};
```

3.12.1 x86

...is compiled in a very predictable way:

Listing 3.21: MSVC

```
_a$ = 8          ; size = 4
_f      PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    cdq      ; sign extend EAX to EDX:EAX
    mov     ecx, 9
    idiv   ecx
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_f      ENDP
```

IDIV divides the 64-bit number stored in the EDX:EAX register pair by the value in the ECX. As a result, EAX will contain the quotient, and EDX—the remainder. The result is returned from the f() function in the EAX register, so the value is not moved after the division operation, it is in right place already.

¹⁰As an exercise, you can try to rework the code to get rid of the jump table. The instruction pair can be rewritten in a way that it will consume 4 bytes or maybe 8. 1 byte is also possible (using STOSB instruction).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Since IDIV uses the value in the EDX:EAX register pair, the CDQ instruction (before IDIV) extends the value in EAX to a 64-bit value taking its sign into account, just as MOVSX does.

If we turn optimization on (/Ox), we get:

Listing 3.22: Optimizing MSVC

```
_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_f     PROC

    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    mov    eax, 954437177 ; 38e38e39H
    imul   ecx
    sar    edx, 1
    mov    eax, edx
    shr    eax, 31          ; 00000001fH
    add    eax, edx
    ret    0
_f     ENDP
```

This is division by multiplication. Multiplication operations work much faster. And it is possible to use this trick ¹¹ to produce code which is effectively equivalent and faster.

This is also called “strength reduction” in compiler optimizations.

GCC 4.4.1 generates almost the same code even without additional optimization flags, just like MSVC with optimization turned on:

Listing 3.23: Non-optimizing GCC 4.4.1

```
public f
f      proc near

arg_0 = dword ptr 8

    push   ebp
    mov    ebp, esp
    mov    ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
    mov    edx, 954437177 ; 38E38E39h
    mov    eax, ecx
    imul   edx
    sar    edx, 1
    mov    eax, ecx
    sar    eax, 1Fh
    mov    ecx, edx
    sub    ecx, eax
    mov    eax, ecx
    pop    ebp
    retn
f      endp
```

¹¹Read more about division by multiplication in [Henry S. Warren, *Hacker's Delight*, (2002)10-3]

3.12.2 How it works

From school-level mathematics, we can remember that division by 9 can be replaced by multiplication by $\frac{1}{9}$. In fact, sometimes compilers do so for floating-point arithmetic, for example, FDIV instruction in x86 code can be replaced by FMUL. At least MSVC 6.0 will replace division by 9 by multiplication by 0.11111... and sometimes it's hard to be sure, what operation was in the original source code.

But when we operate over integer values and integer CPU registers, we can't use fractions. However, we can rework fraction like that:

$$\text{result} = \frac{x}{9} = x \cdot \frac{1}{9} = x \cdot \frac{1 \cdot \text{MagicNumber}}{9 \cdot \text{MagicNumber}}$$

Given the fact that division by 2^n is very fast (using shifts), we now should find that *MagicNumber*, for which the following equation will be true: $2^n = 9 \cdot \text{MagicNumber}$.

Division by 2^{32} is somewhat hidden: lower 32-bit of product in EAX is not used (dropped), only higher 32-bit of product (in EDX) is used and then shifted by additional 1 bit.

In other words, the assembly code we have just seen multiplies by $\frac{954437177}{2^{32+1}}$, or divides by $\frac{2^{32+1}}{954437177}$. To find a divisor we just have to divide numerator by denominator. Using Wolfram Alpha, we can get 8.99999999.... as result (which is close to 9).

Read more about it in [Henry S. Warren, *Hacker's Delight*, (2002)10-3].

Many people miss "hidden" division by 2^{32} or 2^{64} , when lower 32-bit part (or 64-bit part) of product is not used. This is why division by multiplication is difficult to understand at the beginning.

Mathematics for Programmers¹² has yet another explanation.

3.12.3 ARM

The ARM processor, just like in any other "pure" RISC processor lacks an instruction for division. It also lacks a single instruction for multiplication by a 32-bit constant (recall that a 32-bit constant cannot fit into a 32-bit opcode).

By taking advantage of this clever trick (or *hack*), it is possible to do division using only three instructions: addition, subtraction and bit shifts ([1.28 on page 382](#)).

Here is an example that divides a 32-bit number by 10, from [Advanced RISC Machines Ltd, *The ARM Cookbook*, (1994)3.3 Division by a Constant]. The output consists of the quotient and the remainder.

```
; takes argument in a1
; returns quotient in a1, remainder in a2
; cycles could be saved if only divide or remainder is required
SUB    a2, a1, #10          ; keep (x-10) for later
SUB    a1, a1, a1, lsr #2
ADD    a1, a1, a1, lsr #4
```

¹²<https://yurichev.com/writings/Math-for-programmers.pdf>

```

ADD    a1, a1, a1, lsr #8
ADD    a1, a1, a1, lsr #16
MOV    a1, a1, lsr #3
ADD    a3, a1, a1, asl #2
SUBS   a2, a2, a3, asl #1      ; calc (x-10) - (x/10)*10
ADDPL  a1, a1, #1            ; fix-up quotient
ADDMI  a2, a2, #10           ; fix-up remainder
MOV    pc, lr

```

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (ARM mode)

```

__text:00002C58 39 1E 08 E3 E3 18 43 E3  MOV    R1, 0x38E38E39
__text:00002C60 10 F1 50 E7  SMMUL R0, R0, R1
__text:00002C64 C0 10 A0 E1  MOV    R1, R0, ASR#1
__text:00002C68 A0 0F 81 E0  ADD    R0, R1, R0, LSR#31
__text:00002C6C 1E FF 2F E1  BX     LR

```

This code is almost the same as the one generated by the optimizing MSVC and GCC. Apparently, LLVM uses the same algorithm for generating constants.

The observant reader may ask, how does MOV writes a 32-bit value in a register, when this is not possible in ARM mode.

it is impossible indeed, but, as we see, there are 8 bytes per instruction instead of the standard 4, in fact, there are two instructions.

The first instruction loads 0x8E39 into the low 16 bits of register and the second instruction is MOVT, it loads 0x383E into the high 16 bits of the register. [IDA](#) is fully aware of such sequences, and for the sake of compactness reduces them to one single “pseudo-instruction”.

The SMMUL (*Signed Most Significant Word Multiply*) instruction two multiplies numbers, treating them as signed numbers and leaving the high 32-bit part of result in the R0 register, dropping the low 32-bit part of the result.

The “MOV R1, R0, ASR#1” instruction is an arithmetic shift right by one bit.

“ADD R0, R1, R0, LSR#31” is $R0 = R1 + R0 \gg 31$

There is no separate shifting instruction in ARM mode. Instead, an instructions like (MOV, ADD, SUB, RSB)¹³ can have a suffix added, that says if the second operand must be shifted, and if yes, by what value and how. ASR stands for *Arithmetic Shift Right*, LSR—*Logical Shift Right*.

Optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) (Thumb-2 mode)

MOV	R1, 0x38E38E39
SMMUL.W	R0, R0, R1
ASRS	R1, R0, #1
ADD.W	R0, R1, R0, LSR#31
BX	LR

¹³These instructions are also called “data processing instructions”

There are separate instructions for shifting in Thumb mode, and one of them is used here—ASRS (arithmetic shift right).

Non-optimizing Xcode 4.6.3 (LLVM) and Keil 6/2013

Non-optimizing LLVM does not generate the code we saw before in this section, but instead inserts a call to the library function `__divsi3`.

What about Keil: it inserts a call to the library function `_aeabi_idivmod` in all cases.

3.12.4 MIPS

For some reason, optimizing GCC 4.4.5 generate just a division instruction:

Listing 3.24: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```
f:
    li      $v0, 9
    bnez   $v0, loc_10
    div    $a0, $v0 ; branch delay slot
    break  0x1C00 ; "break 7" in assembly output and objdump

loc_10:
    mflo   $v0
    jr    $ra
    or    $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
```

Here we see here a new instruction: BREAK. It just raises an exception.

In this case, an exception is raised if the divisor is zero (it's not possible to divide by zero in conventional math).

But GCC probably did not do very well the optimization job and did not see that \$V0 is never zero.

So the check is left here. So if \$V0 is zero somehow, BREAK is to be executed, signaling to the OS about the exception.

Otherwise, MFLO executes, which takes the result of the division from the LO register and copies it in \$V0.

By the way, as we may know, the MUL instruction leaves the high 32 bits of the result in register HI and the low 32 bits in register LO.

DIV leaves the result in the LO register, and remainder in the HI register.

If we alter the statement to “a % 9”, the MFHI instruction is to be used here instead of MFLO.

3.12.5 Exercise

- <http://challenges.re/27>

3.13 String to number conversion (atoi())

Let's try to reimplement the standard atoi() C function.

3.13.1 Simple example

Here is the simplest possible way to read a number represented in [ASCII](#) encoding. It's not error-prone: a character other than a digit leads to incorrect result.

```
#include <stdio.h>

int my_atoi (char *s)
{
    int rt=0;

    while (*s)
    {
        rt=rt*10 + (*s-'0');
        s++;
    };

    return rt;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("1234"));
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("1234567890"));
}
```

So what the algorithm does is just reading digits from left to right.

The zero [ASCII](#) character is subtracted from each digit.

The digits from "0" to "9" are consecutive in the [ASCII](#) table, so we do not even need to know the exact value of the "0" character.

All we have to know is that "0" minus "0" is 0, "9" minus "0" is 9 and so on.

Subtracting "0" from each character results in a number from 0 to 9 inclusive.

Any other character leads to an incorrect result, of course!

Each digit has to be added to the final result (in variable "rt"), but the final result is also multiplied by 10 at each digit.

In other words, the result is shifted left by one position in decimal form on each iteration.

The last digit is added, but there is no shift.

Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Listing 3.25: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```
s$ = 8
my_atoi PROC
; load first character
    movzx    r8d, BYTE PTR [rcx]
; EAX is allocated for "rt" variable
; its 0 at start
    xor     eax, eax
; first character is zero-byte, i.e., string terminator?
; exit then.
    test    r8b, r8b
    je      SHORT $LN9@my_atoi
$LL2@my_atoi:
    lea     edx, DWORD PTR [rax+rax*4]
; EDX=RAX+RAX*4=rt+rt*4=rt*5
    movsx    eax, r8b
; EAX=input character
; load next character to R8D
    movzx    r8d, BYTE PTR [rcx+1]
; shift pointer in RCX to the next character:
    lea     rcx, QWORD PTR [rcx+1]
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR [rax+rdx*2]
; EAX=RAX+RDX*2=input character + rt*5*2=input character + rt*10
; correct digit by subtracting 48 (0x30 or '0')
    add     eax, -48                                ; ffffffffffffffd0H
; was the last character zero?
    test    r8b, r8b
; jump to loop begin, if not
    jne     SHORT $LL2@my_atoi
$LN9@my_atoi:
    ret     0
my_atoi ENDP
```

A character can be loaded in two places: the first character and all subsequent characters. This is arranged so for loop regrouping.

There is no instruction for multiplication by 10, two LEA instruction do this instead.

MSVC sometimes uses the ADD instruction with a negative constant instead of SUB. This is the case.

It's very hard to say why this is better than SUB. But MSVC does this often.

Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 is more concise, but there is one redundant RET instruction at the end. One would be enough.

Listing 3.26: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```
my_atoi:
; load input character into EDX
    movsx    edx, BYTE PTR [rdi]
; EAX is allocated for "rt" variable
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        xor      eax, eax
; exit, if loaded character is null byte
        test     dl, dl
        je       .L4
.L3:
        lea      eax, [rax+rax*4]
; EAX=RAX*5=rt*5
; shift pointer to the next character:
        add     rdi, 1
        lea      eax, [rdx-48+rax*2]
; EAX=input character - 48 + RAX*2 = input character - '0' + rt*10
; load next character:
        movsx   edx, BYTE PTR [rdi]
; goto loop begin, if loaded character is not null byte
        test     dl, dl
        jne     .L3
        rep    ret
.L4:
        rep    ret

```

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 3.27: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

my_atoi PROC
; R1 will contain pointer to character
    MOV      r1,r0
; R0 will contain "rt" variable
    MOV      r0,#0
    B       |L0.28|
|L0.12|
    ADD      r0,r0,r0,LSL #2
; R0=R0+R0<<2=rt*5
    ADD      r0,r2,r0,LSL #1
; R0=input character + rt*5<<1 = input character + rt*10
; correct whole thing by subtracting '0' from rt:
    SUB      r0,r0,#0x30
; shift pointer to the next character:
    ADD      r1,r1,#1
|L0.28|
; load input character to R2
    LDRB    r2,[r1,#0]
; is it null byte? if no, jump to loop body.
    CMP      r2,#0
    BNE     |L0.12|
; exit if null byte.
; "rt" variable is still in R0 register, ready to be used in caller function
    BX      lr
    ENDP

```

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 3.28: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

my_atoi PROC
; R1 will be pointer to the input character
    MOVS    r1,r0
; R0 is allocated to "rt" variable
    MOVS    r0,#0
    B      |L0.16|
|L0.6|
    MOVS    r3,#0xa
; R3=10
    MULS    r0,r3,r0
; R0=R3*R0=rt*10
; shift pointer to the next character:
    ADDS    r1,r1,#1
; correct whole thing by subtracting '0' character from it:
    SUBS    r0,r0,#0x30
    ADDS    r0,r2,r0
; rt=R2+R0=input character + (rt*10 - '0')
|L0.16|
; load input character to R2
    LDRB    r2,[r1,#0]
; is it zero?
    CMP     r2,#0
; jump to loop body if it is not
    BNE     |L0.6|
; rt variable in R0 now, ready to be used in caller function
    BX      lr
ENDP

```

Interestingly, from school mathematics we may recall that the order of addition and subtraction operations doesn't matter.

That's our case: first, the $rt * 10 - '0'$ expression is computed, then the input character value is added to it.

Indeed, the result is the same, but the compiler did some regrouping.

Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

The ARM64 compiler can use the pre-increment instruction suffix:

Listing 3.29: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```

my_atoi:
; load input character into W1
    ldrb    w1, [x0]
    mov     x2, x0
; X2=address of input string
; is loaded character zero?
; jump to exit if its so
; W1 will contain 0 in this case.
; it will be reloaded into W0 at L4.
    cbz    w1, .L4
; W0 will contain "rt" variable

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; initialize it at zero:
    mov     w0, 0
.L3:
; subtract 48 or '0' from input variable and put result into W3:
    sub     w3, w1, #48
; load next character at address X2+1 into W1 with pre-increment:
    ldrb   w1, [x2,1]!
    add     w0, w0, w0, lsl 2
; W0=W0+W0<<2=W0+W0*4=rt*5
    add     w0, w3, w0, lsl 1
; W0=input digit + W0<<1 = input digit + rt*5*2 = input digit + rt*10
; if the character we just loaded is not null byte, jump to the loop begin
    cbnz   w1, .L3
; variable to be returned (rt) is in W0, ready to be used in caller function
    ret
.L4:
    mov     w0, w1
    ret

```

3.13.2 A slightly advanced example

My new code snippet is more advanced, now it checks for the “minus” sign at the first character and reports an error if a non-digit has been found in the input string:

```

#include <stdio.h>

int my_atoi (char *s)
{
    int negative=0;
    int rt=0;

    if (*s=='-')
    {
        negative=1;
        s++;
    };

    while (*s)
    {
        if (*s<'0' || *s>'9')
        {
            printf ("Error! Unexpected char: '%c'\n", *s);
            exit(0);
        };
        rt=rt*10 + (*s-'0');
        s++;
    };

    if (negative)
        return -rt;
    return rt;
};

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("1234"));
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("1234567890"));
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("-1234"));
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("-1234567890"));
    printf ("%d\n", my_atoi ("-a1234567890")); // error
};

```

Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

Listing 3.30: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```

.LC0:
.string "Error! Unexpected char: '%c'\n"

my_atoi:
    sub    rsp, 8
    movsx  edx, BYTE PTR [rdi]
; check for minus sign
    cmp    dl, 45 ; '-'
    je     .L22
    xor    esi, esi
    test   dl, dl
    je     .L20
.L10:
; ESI=0 here if there was no minus sign and 1 if it was
    lea    eax, [rdx-48]
; any character other than digit will result
; in unsigned number greater than 9 after subtraction
; so if it is not digit, jump to L4,
; where error will be reported:
    cmp    al, 9
    ja    .L4
    xor    eax, eax
    jmp    .L6
.L7:
    lea    ecx, [rdx-48]
    cmp    cl, 9
    ja    .L4
.L6:
    lea    eax, [rax+rax*4]
    add    rdi, 1
    lea    eax, [rdx-48+rax*2]
    movsx  edx, BYTE PTR [rdi]
    test   dl, dl
    jne    .L7
; if there was no minus sign, skip NEG instruction
; if it was, execute it.
    test   esi, esi
    je     .L18
    neg    eax

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.L18:
    add    rsp, 8
    ret

.L22:
    movsx  edx, BYTE PTR [rdi+1]
    lea    rax, [rdi+1]
    test   dl, dl
    je     .L20
    mov    rdi, rax
    mov    esi, 1
    jmp    .L10

.L20:
    xor    eax, eax
    jmp    .L18

.L4:
; report error. character is in EDX
    mov    edi, 1
    mov    esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "Error! Unexpected char: '%c'\n"
    xor    eax, eax
    call   __printf_chk
    xor    edi, edi
    call   exit

```

If the “minus” sign has been encountered at the string start, the NEG instruction is to be executed at the end. It just negates the number.

There is one more thing that needs mentioning.

How would a common programmer check if the character is not a digit? Just how we have it in the source code:

```

if (*s<'0' || *s>'9')
    ...

```

There are two comparison operations.

What is interesting is that we can replace both operations by single one: just subtract “0” from character value,

treat result as unsigned value (this is important) and check if it’s greater than 9.

For example, let’s say that the user input contains the dot character (“.”) which has **ASCII** code 46. $46 - 48 = -2$ if we treat the result as a signed number.

Indeed, the dot character is located two places earlier than the “0” character in the **ASCII** table. But it is 0xFFFFFFF (4294967294) if we treat the result as an unsigned value, and that’s definitely bigger than 9!

The compilers do this often, so it’s important to recognize these tricks.

Another example of it in this book: [3.19.1 on page 687](#).

Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64 does the same tricks.

Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

Listing 3.31: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

1 my_atoi PROC
2     PUSH    {r4-r6,lr}
3     MOV     r4,r0
4     LDRB   r0,[r0,#0]
5     MOV     r6,#0
6     MOV     r5,r6
7     CMP     r0,#0x2d '-'
8 ; R6 will contain 1 if minus was encountered, 0 if otherwise
9     MOVEQ   r6,#1
10    ADDEQ   r4,r4,#1
11    B      |L0.80|
12 |L0.36|
13    SUB    r0,r1,#0x30
14    CMP    r0,#0xa
15    BCC   |L0.64|
16    ADR    r0,|L0.220|
17    BL     _2printf
18    MOV    r0,#0
19    BL     exit
20 |L0.64|
21    LDRB   r0,[r4],#1
22    ADD    r1,r5,r5,LSL #2
23    ADD    r0,r0,r1,LSL #1
24    SUB    r5,r0,#0x30
25 |L0.80|
26    LDRB   r1,[r4,#0]
27    CMP    r1,#0
28    BNE   |L0.36|
29    CMP    r6,#0
30 ; negate result
31    RSBNE  r0,r5,#0
32    MOVEQ   r0,r5
33    POP    {r4-r6,pc}
34    ENDP
35
36 |L0.220|
37    DCB    "Error! Unexpected char: '%c'\n",0

```

There is no NEG instruction in 32-bit ARM, so the “Reverse Subtraction” operation (line 31) is used here.

It is triggered if the result of the CMP instruction (at line 29) has been “Not Equal” (hence -NE suffix).

So what RSBNE does is to subtract the resulting value from 0.

It works just like the regular subtraction operation, but swaps operands.

Subtracting any number from 0 results in negation: $0 - x = -x$.

Thumb mode code is mostly the same.

GCC 4.9 for ARM64 can use the NEG instruction, which is available in ARM64.

3.13.3 Exercise

Oh, by the way, security researchers deals often with unpredictable behavior of program while handling of incorrect data.

For example, while fuzzing. As an exercise, you may try to enter non-digit characters and see what happens.

Try to explain, what happened and why.

3.14 Inline functions

Inlined code is when the compiler, instead of placing a call instruction to a small or tiny function, just places its body right in-place.

Listing 3.32: A simple example

```
#include <stdio.h>

int celsius_to_fahrenheit (int celsius)
{
    return celsius * 9 / 5 + 32;
}

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    int celsius=atol(argv[1]);
    printf ("%d\n", celsius_to_fahrenheit (celsius));
}
```

...is compiled in very predictable way, however, if we turn on GCC optimizations (-O3), we'll see:

Listing 3.33: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```
_main:
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    and     esp, -16
    sub     esp, 16
    call    __main
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [ebp+12]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], eax
    call    _atol
    mov     edx, 1717986919
    mov     DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:LC2 ; "%d\n"
    lea     ecx, [eax+eax*8]
    mov     eax, ecx
    imul   edx
    sar     ecx, 31
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

sar    edx
sub    edx, ecx
add    edx, 32
mov    DWORD PTR [esp+4], edx
call   _printf
leave
ret

```

(Here the division is performed by multiplication([3.12 on page 636](#)).)

Yes, our small function `celsius_to_fahrenheit()` has just been placed before the `printf()` call.

Why? It can be faster than executing this function's code plus the overhead of calling/returning.

Modern optimizing compilers are choosing small functions for inlining automatically. But it's possible to force compiler additionally to inline some function, if to mark it with the "inline" keyword in its declaration.

3.14.1 Strings and memory functions

Another very common automatic optimization tactic is the inlining of string functions like `strcpy()`, `strcmp()`, `strlen()`, `memset()`, `memcmp()`, `memcpy()`, etc..

Sometimes it's faster than to call a separate function.

These are very frequent patterns and it is highly advisable for reverse engineers to learn to detect automatically.

strcmp()

Listing 3.34: strcmp() example

```

bool is_bool (char *s)
{
    if (strcmp (s, "true")==0)
        return true;
    if (strcmp (s, "false")==0)
        return false;

    assert(0);
}

```

Listing 3.35: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```

.LC0:
    .string "true"
.LC1:
    .string "false"
is_bool:
.LFB0:
    push    edi

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    ecx, 5
    push   esi
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    sub    esp, 20
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
    repz  cmpsb
    je     .L3
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR [esp+32]
    mov    ecx, 6
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1
    repz  cmpsb
    seta   cl
    setb   dl
    xor    eax, eax
    cmp    cl, dl
    jne   .L8
    add    esp, 20
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    ret
.L8:
    mov    DWORD PTR [esp], 0
    call   assert
    add    esp, 20
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    ret
.L3:
    add    esp, 20
    mov    eax, 1
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    ret

```

Listing 3.36: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

$SG3454 DB      'true', 00H
$SG3456 DB      'false', 00H

_s$ = 8          ; size = 4
?is_bool@YA_NPAD@Z PROC ; is_bool
    push   esi
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR _s$[esp]
    mov    ecx, OFFSET $SG3454 ; 'true'
    mov    eax, esi
    npad   4 ; align next label
$LL6@is_bool:
    mov    dl, BYTE PTR [eax]
    cmp    dl, BYTE PTR [ecx]
    jne   SHORT $LN7@is_bool
    test   dl, dl
    je    SHORT $LN8@is_bool
    mov    dl, BYTE PTR [eax+1]
    cmp    dl, BYTE PTR [ecx+1]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        jne    SHORT $LN7@is_bool
        add    eax, 2
        add    ecx, 2
        test   dl, dl
        jne    SHORT $LL6@is_bool
$LN8@is_bool:
        xor    eax, eax
        jmp    SHORT $LN9@is_bool
$LN7@is_bool:
        sbb    eax, eax
        sbb    eax, -1
$LN9@is_bool:
        test   eax, eax
        jne    SHORT $LN2@is_bool

        mov    al, 1
        pop    esi

        ret    0
$LN2@is_bool:

        mov    ecx, OFFSET $SG3456 ; 'false'
        mov    eax, esi
$LL10@is_bool:
        mov    dl, BYTE PTR [eax]
        cmp    dl, BYTE PTR [ecx]
        jne    SHORT $LN11@is_bool
        test   dl, dl
        je     SHORT $LN12@is_bool
        mov    dl, BYTE PTR [eax+1]
        cmp    dl, BYTE PTR [ecx+1]
        jne    SHORT $LN11@is_bool
        add    eax, 2
        add    ecx, 2
        test   dl, dl
        jne    SHORT $LL10@is_bool
$LN12@is_bool:
        xor    eax, eax
        jmp    SHORT $LN13@is_bool
$LN11@is_bool:
        sbb    eax, eax
        sbb    eax, -1
$LN13@is_bool:
        test   eax, eax
        jne    SHORT $LN1@is_bool

        xor    al, al
        pop    esi

        ret    0
$LN1@is_bool:

        push   11

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push    OFFSET $SG3458
push    OFFSET $SG3459
call    DWORD PTR __imp__wassert
add    esp, 12
pop    esi

ret    0
?is_bool@@YA_NPAD@Z ENDP ; is_bool

```

strlen()

Listing 3.37: strlen() example

```

int strlen_test(char *s1)
{
    return strlen(s1);
}

```

Listing 3.38: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_s1$ = 8 ; size = 4
_strlen_test PROC
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _s1$[esp-4]
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR [eax+1]
$LL3@strlen_tes:
    mov    cl, BYTE PTR [eax]
    inc    eax
    test   cl, cl
    jne    SHORT $LL3@strlen_tes
    sub    eax, edx
    ret    0
_strlen_test ENDP

```

strcpy()

Listing 3.39: strcpy() example

```

void strcpy_test(char *s1, char *outbuf)
{
    strcpy(outbuf, s1);
}

```

Listing 3.40: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_s1$ = 8      ; size = 4
_outbuf$ = 12 ; size = 4
_strcpy_test PROC
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _s1$[esp-4]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _outbuf$[esp-4]
    sub    edx, eax
    npad   6 ; align next label
$LL3@strcpy_tes:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
        mov     cl, BYTE PTR [eax]
        mov     BYTE PTR [edx+eax], cl
        inc     eax
        test    cl, cl
        jne     SHORT $LL3@strcpy_tes
        ret     0
 strcpy_test ENDP
```

memset()

Example#1

Listing 3.41: 32 bytes

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f(char *out)
{
    memset(out, 0, 32);
}
```

Many compilers don't generate a call to `memset()` for short blocks, but rather insert a pack of `MOV`s:

Listing 3.42: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```
f:  
    mov    QWORD PTR [rdi], 0  
    mov    QWORD PTR [rdi+8], 0  
    mov    QWORD PTR [rdi+16], 0  
    mov    QWORD PTR [rdi+24], 0  
    ret
```

By the way, that remind us of unrolled loops: [1.22.1 on page 241](#).

Example#2

Listing 3.43: 67 bytes

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f(char *out)
{
    memset(out, 0, 67);
}
```

When the block size is not a multiple of 4 or 8, the compilers can behave differently. For instance, MSVC 2012 continues to insert MOVs:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Listing 3.44: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

out$ = 8
f      PROC
        xor    eax, eax
        mov    QWORD PTR [rcx], rax
        mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+8], rax
        mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+16], rax
        mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+24], rax
        mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+32], rax
        mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+40], rax
        mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+48], rax
        mov    QWORD PTR [rcx+56], rax
        mov    WORD PTR [rcx+64], ax
        mov    BYTE PTR [rcx+66], al
        ret    0
f      ENDP

```

...while GCC uses REP STOSQ, concluding that this would be shorter than a pack of MOVs:

Listing 3.45: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```

f:
        mov    QWORD PTR [rdi], 0
        mov    QWORD PTR [rdi+59], 0
        mov    rcx, rdi
        lea    rdi, [rdi+8]
        xor    eax, eax
        and    rdi, -8
        sub    rcx, rdi
        add    ecx, 67
        shr    ecx, 3
        rep    stosq
        ret

```

memcpy()

Short blocks

The routine to copy short blocks is often implemented as a sequence of MOV instructions.

Listing 3.46: memcpy() example

```

void memcpy_7(char *inbuf, char *outbuf)
{
    memcpy(outbuf+10, inbuf, 7);
}

```

Listing 3.47: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_inbuf$ = 8      ; size = 4

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

_outbuf$ = 12    ; size = 4
_memcpy_7 PROC
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _inbuf$[esp-4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _outbuf$[esp-4]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+10], edx
    mov     dx, WORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov     WORD PTR [eax+14], dx
    mov     cl, BYTE PTR [ecx+6]
    mov     BYTE PTR [eax+16], cl
    ret     0
_memcpy_7 ENDP

```

Listing 3.48: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```

memcpy_7:
    push    ebx
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [esp+8]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
    mov     ebx, DWORD PTR [eax]
    lea     edx, [ecx+10]
    mov     DWORD PTR [ecx+10], ebx
    movzx   ecx, WORD PTR [eax+4]
    mov     WORD PTR [edx+4], cx
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [eax+6]
    mov     BYTE PTR [edx+6], al
    pop    ebx
    ret

```

That's usually done as follows: 4-byte blocks are copied first, then a 16-bit word (if needed), then the last byte (if needed).

Structures are also copied using MOV: [1.30.4 on page 454](#).

Long blocks

The compilers behave differently in this case.

Listing 3.49: memcpy() example

```

void memcpy_128(char *inbuf, char *outbuf)
{
    memcpy(outbuf+10, inbuf, 128);
}

void memcpy_123(char *inbuf, char *outbuf)
{
    memcpy(outbuf+10, inbuf, 123);
}

```

For copying 128 bytes, MSVC uses a single MOVSD instruction (because 128 divides evenly by 4):

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 3.50: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_inbuf$ = 8           ; size = 4
_outbuf$ = 12          ; size = 4
_memcpy_128 PROC
    push    esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _inbuf$[esp]
    push    edi
    mov     edi, DWORD PTR _outbuf$[esp+4]
    add    edi, 10
    mov    ecx, 32
    rep    movsd
    pop    edi
    pop    esi
    ret    0
_memcpy_128 ENDP
```

When copying 123 bytes, 30 32-bit words are copied first using MOVSD (that's 120 bytes), then 2 bytes are copied using MOVSW, then one more byte using MOVSb.

Listing 3.51: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_inbuf$ = 8           ; size = 4
_outbuf$ = 12          ; size = 4
_memcpy_123 PROC
    push    esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _inbuf$[esp]
    push    edi
    mov     edi, DWORD PTR _outbuf$[esp+4]
    add    edi, 10
    mov    ecx, 30
    rep    movsd
    movsw
    movsb
    pop    edi
    pop    esi
    ret    0
_memcpy_123 ENDP
```

GCC uses one big universal functions, that works for any block size:

Listing 3.52: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1

```
memcpy_123:
.LFB3:
    push    edi
    mov     eax, 123
    push    esi
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+16]
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR [esp+12]
    lea    edi, [edx+10]
    test   edi, 1
    jne    .L24
    test   edi, 2
    jne    .L25
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.L7:
    mov    ecx, eax
    xor    edx, edx
    shr    ecx, 2
    test   al, 2
    rep    movsd
    je     .L8
    movzx  edx, WORD PTR [esi]
    mov    WORD PTR [edi], dx
    mov    edx, 2

.L8:
    test   al, 1
    je     .L5
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [esi+edx]
    mov    BYTE PTR [edi+edx], al

.L5:
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    ret

.L24:
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [esi]
    lea    edi, [edx+11]
    add    esi, 1
    test   edi, 2
    mov    BYTE PTR [edx+10], al
    mov    eax, 122
    je     .L7

.L25:
    movzx  edx, WORD PTR [esi]
    add    edi, 2
    add    esi, 2
    sub    eax, 2
    mov    WORD PTR [edi-2], dx
    jmp    .L7

.LFE3:

```

Universal memory copy functions usually work as follows: calculate how many 32-bit words can be copied, then copy them using MOVSD, then copy the remaining bytes.

More advanced and complex copy functions use **SIMD** instructions and also take the memory alignment in consideration.

As an example of SIMD strlen() function: [1.36.2 on page 527](#).

memcmp()

Listing 3.53: memcmp() example

```

int memcmp_1235(char *buf1, char *buf2)
{
    return memcmp(buf1, buf2, 1235);
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

For any block size, MSVC 2013 inserts the same universal function:

Listing 3.54: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_buf1$ = 8      ; size = 4
_buf2$ = 12     ; size = 4
_memcmp_1235 PROC
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _buf1$[esp-4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _buf2$[esp-4]
    push    esi
    mov     esi, 1231
    npad   2
$LL5@memcmp_123:
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    cmp     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    jne    SHORT $LN4@memcmp_123
    add     ecx, 4
    add     edx, 4
    sub     esi, 4
    jae    SHORT $LL5@memcmp_123
$LN4@memcmp_123:
    mov     al, BYTE PTR [ecx]
    cmp     al, BYTE PTR [edx]
    jne    SHORT $LN6@memcmp_123
    mov     al, BYTE PTR [ecx+1]
    cmp     al, BYTE PTR [edx+1]
    jne    SHORT $LN6@memcmp_123
    mov     al, BYTE PTR [ecx+2]
    cmp     al, BYTE PTR [edx+2]
    jne    SHORT $LN6@memcmp_123
    cmp     esi, -1
    je     SHORT $LN3@memcmp_123
    mov     al, BYTE PTR [ecx+3]
    cmp     al, BYTE PTR [edx+3]
    jne    SHORT $LN6@memcmp_123
$LN3@memcmp_123:
    xor     eax, eax
    pop    esi
    ret    0
$LN6@memcmp_123:
    sbb     eax, eax
    or      eax, 1
    pop    esi
    ret    0
_memcmp_1235 ENDP
```

strcat()

This is inlined strcat() as it has been generated by MSVC 6.0. There are 3 parts visible: 1) getting source string length (first scasb); 2) getting destination string length (second scasb); 3) copying source string into the end of destination string (movsd/movsb pair).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 3.55: strcat()

```

    lea    edi, [src]
    or     ecx, 0xFFFFFFFFh
    repne scasb
    not    ecx
    sub    edi, ecx
    mov    esi, edi
    mov    edi, [dst]
    mov    edx, ecx
    or     ecx, 0xFFFFFFFFh
    repne scasb
    mov    ecx, edx
    dec    edi
    shr    ecx, 2
    rep movsd
    mov    ecx, edx
    and    ecx, 3
    rep movsb

```

IDA script

There is also a small [IDA](#) script for searching and folding such very frequently seen pieces of inline code:

[GitHub](#).

3.15 C99 restrict

Here is a reason why Fortran programs, in some cases, work faster than C/C++ ones.

```

void f1 (int* x, int* y, int* sum, int* product, int* sum_product, int* ↴
         ↴ update_me, size_t s)
{
    for (int i=0; i<s; i++)
    {
        sum[i]=x[i]+y[i];
        product[i]=x[i]*y[i];
        update_me[i]=i*123; // some dummy value
        sum_product[i]=sum[i]+product[i];
    };
}

```

That's very simple example with one specific thing in it: the pointer to the `update_me` array could be a pointer to the `sum` array, `product` array, or even the `sum_product` array—nothing forbids that, right?

The compiler is fully aware of this, so it generates code with four stages in the loop body:

- calculate next `sum[i]`

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

- calculate next product[i]
- calculate next update_me[i]
- calculate next sum_product[i]—on this stage, we need to load from memory the already calculated sum[i] and product[i]

Is it possible to optimize the last stage? Since we have already calculated sum[i] and product[i] it is not necessary to load them again from memory.

Yes, but compiler is not sure that nothing has been overwritten at the 3rd stage! This is called “pointer aliasing”, a situation when the compiler cannot be sure that a memory to which a pointer is pointing hasn’t been changed.

restrict in the C99 standard [ISO/IEC 9899:TC3 (C C99 standard), (2007) 6.7.3/1] is a promise, given by programmer to the compiler that the function arguments marked by this keyword always points to different memory locations and never intersects.

To be more precise and describe this formally, *restrict* shows that only this pointer is to be used to access an object, and no other pointer will be used for it.

It can be even said the object will be accessed only via one single pointer, if it is marked as *restrict*.

Let’s add this keyword to each pointer argument:

```
void f2 (int* restrict x, int* restrict y, int* restrict sum, int* restrict ↴
         ↴ product, int* restrict sum_product,
         ↴ int* restrict update_me, size_t s)
{
    for (int i=0; i<s; i++)
    {
        sum[i]=x[i]+y[i];
        product[i]=x[i]*y[i];
        update_me[i]=i*123; // some dummy value
        sum_product[i]=sum[i]+product[i];
    };
}
```

Let’s see results:

Listing 3.56: GCC x64: f1()

```
f1:
    push    r15 r14 r13 r12 rbp rdi rsi rbx
    mov     r13, QWORD PTR 120[rsp]
    mov     rbp, QWORD PTR 104[rsp]
    mov     r12, QWORD PTR 112[rsp]
    test   r13, r13
    je     .L1
    add    r13, 1
    xor    ebx, ebx
    mov    edi, 1
    xor    r11d, r11d
    jmp    .L4
.L6:
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    r11, rdi
    mov    rdi, rax
.L4:
    lea    rax, 0[0+r11*4]
    lea    r10, [rcx+rax]
    lea    r14, [rdx+rax]
    lea    rsi, [r8+rax]
    add    rax, r9
    mov    r15d, DWORD PTR [r10]
    add    r15d, DWORD PTR [r14]
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsi], r15d      ; store to sum[]
    mov    r10d, DWORD PTR [r10]
    imul   r10d, DWORD PTR [r14]
    mov    DWORD PTR [rax], r10d      ; store to product[]
    mov    DWORD PTR [r12+r11*4], ebx ; store to update_me[]
    add    ebx, 123
    mov    r10d, DWORD PTR [rsi]      ; reload sum[i]
    add    r10d, DWORD PTR [rax]      ; reload product[i]
    lea    rax, 1[rdi]
    cmp    rax, r13
    mov    DWORD PTR 0[rbp+r11*4], r10d ; store to sum_product[]
    jne    .L6
.L1:
    pop    rbx rsi rdi rbp r12 r13 r14 r15
    ret

```

Listing 3.57: GCC x64: f2()

```

f2:
    push   r13 r12 rbp rdi rsi rbx
    mov    r13, QWORD PTR 104[rsp]
    mov    rbp, QWORD PTR 88[rsp]
    mov    r12, QWORD PTR 96[rsp]
    test   r13, r13
    je     .L7
    add    r13, 1
    xor    r10d, r10d
    mov    edi, 1
    xor    eax, eax
    jmp    .L10
.L11:
    mov    rax, rdi
    mov    rdi, r11
.L10:
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR [rcx+rax*4]
    mov    r11d, DWORD PTR [rdx+rax*4]
    mov    DWORD PTR [r12+rax*4], r10d ; store to update_me[]
    add    r10d, 123
    lea    ebx, [rsi+r11]
    imul   r11d, esi
    mov    DWORD PTR [r8+rax*4], ebx    ; store to sum[]
    mov    DWORD PTR [r9+rax*4], r11d    ; store to product[]
    add    r11d, ebx
    mov    DWORD PTR 0[rbp+rax*4], r11d ; store to sum_product[]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    lea    r11, 1[rdi]
    cmp    r11, r13
    jne    .L11
.L7:
    pop    rbx rsi rdi rbp r12 r13
    ret

```

The difference between the compiled `f1()` and `f2()` functions is as follows: in `f1()`, `sum[i]` and `product[i]` are reloaded in the middle of the loop, and in `f2()` there is no such thing, the already calculated values are used, since we “promised” the compiler that no one and nothing will change the values in `sum[i]` and `product[i]` during the execution of the loop’s body, so it is “sure” that there is no need to load the value from memory again.

Obviously, the second example works faster.

But what if the pointers in the function’s arguments intersect somehow?

This is on the programmer’s conscience, and the results will be incorrect.

Let’s go back to Fortran.

Compilers of this programming language treats all pointers as such, so when it was not possible to set `restrict` in C, Fortran could generate faster code in these cases.

How practical is it?

In the cases when the function works with several big blocks in memory.

There are a lot of such in linear algebra, for instance.

Supercomputers/[HPC¹⁴](#) are very busy with linear algebra, so probably that is why, traditionally, Fortran is still used there [Eugene Loh, *The Ideal HPC Programming Language*, (2010)].

But when the number of iterations is not very big, certainly, the speed boost may not to be significant.

3.16 Branchless `abs()` function

Let’s revisit an example we considered earlier [1.18.2 on page 177](#) and ask ourselves, is it possible to make a branchless version of the function in x86 code?

```

int my_abs (int i)
{
    if (i<0)
        return -i;
    else
        return i;
}

```

And the answer is yes.

¹⁴High-Performance Computing

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

3.16.1 Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

We could see it if we compile it using optimizing GCC 4.9:

Listing 3.58: Optimizing GCC 4.9 x64

```
my_abs:
    mov    edx, edi
    mov    eax, edi
    sar    edx, 31
; EDX is 0xFFFFFFFF here if sign of input value is minus
; EDX is 0 if sign of input value is plus (including 0)
; the following two instructions have effect only if EDX is 0xFFFFFFFF
; or idle if EDX is 0
    xor    eax, edx
    sub    eax, edx
    ret
```

This is how it works:

Arithmetically shift the input value right by 31.

Arithmetical shift implies sign extension, so if the **MSB** is 1, all 32 bits are to be filled with 1, or with 0 if otherwise.

In other words, the SAR REG, 31 instruction makes 0xFFFFFFFF if the sign has been negative or 0 if positive.

After the execution of SAR, we have this value in EDX.

Then, if the value is 0xFFFFFFFF (i.e., the sign is negative), the input value is inverted (because XOR REG, 0xFFFFFFFF is effectively an inverse all bits operation).

Then, again, if the value is 0xFFFFFFFF (i.e., the sign is negative), 1 is added to the final result (because subtracting -1 from some value resulting in incrementing it).

Inversion of all bits and incrementing is exactly how two's complement value is negated: [2.2 on page 572](#).

We may observe that the last two instruction do something if the sign of the input value is negative.

Otherwise (if the sign is positive) they do nothing at all, leaving the input value untouched.

The algorithm is explained in [Henry S. Warren, *Hacker's Delight*, (2002)2-4].

It's hard to say, how GCC did it, deduced it by itself or found a suitable pattern among known ones?

3.16.2 Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64

GCC 4.9 for ARM64 generates mostly the same, just decides to use the full 64-bit registers.

There are less instructions, because the input value can be shifted using a suffixed instruction ("asr") instead of using a separate instruction.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Listing 3.59: Optimizing GCC 4.9 ARM64

```

my_abs:
; sign-extend input 32-bit value to X0 64-bit register:
    sxtw    x0, w0
    eor     x1, x0, x0, asr 63
; X1=X0^(X0>>63) (shift is arithmetical)
    sub     x0, x1, x0, asr 63
; X0=X1-(X0>>63)=X0^(X0>>63)-(X0>>63)
; (all shifts are arithmetical)
    ret

```

3.17 Variadic functions

Functions like `printf()` and `scanf()` can have a variable number of arguments. How are these arguments accessed?

3.17.1 Computing arithmetic mean

Let's imagine that we want to calculate [arithmetic mean](#), and for some weird reason we want to specify all the values as function arguments.

But it's impossible to get the number of arguments in a variadic function in C/C++, so let's denote the value of `-1` as a terminator.

Using `va_arg` macro

There is the standard `stdarg.h` header file which define macros for dealing with such arguments.

The `printf()` and `scanf()` functions use them as well.

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

int arith_mean(int v, ...)
{
    va_list args;
    int sum=v, count=1, i;
    va_start(args, v);

    while(1)
    {
        i=va_arg(args, int);
        if (i==-1) // terminator
            break;
        sum=sum+i;
        count++;
    }

    va_end(args);
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        return sum/count;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", arith_mean (1, 2, 7, 10, 15, -1 /* terminator */));
}

```

The first argument has to be treated just like a normal argument.

All other arguments are loaded using the `va_arg` macro and then summed.

So what is inside?

cdecl calling conventions

Listing 3.60: Optimizing MSVC 6.0

```

_v$ = 8
_arith_mean PROC NEAR
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _v$[esp-4] ; load 1st argument into sum
    push    esi
    mov     esi, 1                      ; count=1
    lea     edx, DWORD PTR _v$[esp]    ; address of the 1st argument
$L838:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [edx+4]      ; load next argument
    add     edx, 4                      ; shift pointer to the next
    argument
    cmp     ecx, -1                   ; is it -1?
    je      SHORT $L856              ; exit if so
    add     eax, ecx                  ; sum = sum + loaded argument
    inc     esi                      ; count++
    jmp     SHORT $L838
$L856:
; calculate quotient

    cdq
    idiv    esi
    pop     esi
    ret     0
_arith_mean ENDP

$SG851 DB      '%d', 0aH, 00H

_main  PROC NEAR
    push    -1
    push    15
    push    10
    push    7
    push    2
    push    1
    call    _arith_mean
    push    eax

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG851 ; '%d'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 32
    ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

The arguments, as we may see, are passed to `main()` one-by-one.

The first argument is pushed into the local stack as first.

The terminating value (`-1`) is pushed last.

The `arith_mean()` function takes the value of the first argument and stores it in the `sum` variable.

Then, it sets the `EDX` register to the address of the second argument, takes the value from it, adds it to `sum`, and does this in an infinite loop, until `-1` is found.

When it's found, the sum is divided by the number of all values (excluding `-1`) and the `quotient` is returned.

So, in other words, the function treats the stack fragment as an array of integer values of infinite length.

Now we can understand why the `cdecl` calling convention forces us to push the first argument into the stack as last.

Because otherwise, it would not be possible to find the first argument, or, for `printf`-like functions, it would not be possible to find the address of the format-string.

Register-based calling conventions

The observant reader may ask, what about calling conventions where the first few arguments are passed in registers? Let's see:

Listing 3.61: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

$SG3013 DB      '%d', 0aH, 00H

v$ = 8
arith_mean PROC
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+8], ecx    ; 1st argument
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+16], rdx   ; 2nd argument
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+24], r8    ; 3rd argument
    mov    eax, ecx                ; sum = 1st argument
    lea    rcx, QWORD PTR v$[rsp+8] ; pointer to the 2nd argument
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+32], r9    ; 4th argument
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [rcx]     ; load 2nd argument
    mov    r8d, 1                  ; count=1
    cmp    edx, -1                 ; 2nd argument is -1?
    je     SHORT $LN8@arith_mean  ; exit if so
$LL3@arith_mean:
    add    eax, edx              ; sum = sum + loaded argument
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [rcx+8]  ; load next argument

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    lea    rcx, QWORD PTR [rcx+8] ; shift pointer to point to the
argument after next
    inc    r8d                      ; count++
    cmp    edx, -1                  ; is loaded argument -1?
    jne    SHORT $LL3@arith_mean   ; go to loop begin if its not
$LN8@arith_mean:
; calculate quotient
    cdq
    idiv   r8d
    ret    0
arith_mean ENDP

main    PROC
    sub    rsp, 56
    mov    edx, 2
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+40], -1
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+32], 15
    lea    r9d, QWORD PTR [rdx+8]
    lea    r8d, QWORD PTR [rdx+5]
    lea    ecx, QWORD PTR [rdx-1]
    call   arith_mean
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG3013
    mov    edx, eax
    call   printf
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 56
    ret    0
main    ENDP

```

We see that the first 4 arguments are passed in the registers and two more—in the stack.

The `arith_mean()` function first places these 4 arguments into the *Shadow Space* and then treats the *Shadow Space* and stack behind it as a single continuous array!

What about GCC? Things are slightly clumsier here, because now the function is divided in two parts: the first part saves the registers into the “red zone”, processes that space, and the second part of the function processes the stack:

Listing 3.62: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```

arith_mean:
    lea    rax, [rsp+8]
; save 6 input registers in
; red zone in the local stack
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp-40], rsi
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp-32], rdx
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp-16], r8
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp-24], rcx
    mov    esi, 8
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp-64], rax
    lea    rax, [rsp-48]
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp-8], r9
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp-72], 8
    lea    rdx, [rsp+8]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        mov    r8d, 1
        mov    QWORD PTR [rsp-56], rax
        jmp    .L5

.L7:
        ; work out saved arguments
        lea    rax, [rsp-48]
        mov    ecx, esi
        add    esi, 8
        add    rcx, rax
        mov    ecx, DWORD PTR [rcx]
        cmp    ecx, -1
        je     .L4

.L8:
        add    edi, ecx
        add    r8d, 1

.L5:
        ; decide, which part we will work out now.
        ; is current argument number less or equal 6?
        cmp    esi, 47
        jbe    .L7           ; no, process saved arguments then
        ; work out arguments from stack
        mov    rcx, rdx
        add    rdx, 8
        mov    ecx, DWORD PTR [rcx]
        cmp    ecx, -1
        jne    .L8

.L4:
        mov    eax, edi
        cdq
        idiv   r8d
        ret

.LC1:
        .string "%d\n"
main:
        sub    rsp, 8
        mov    edx, 7
        mov    esi, 2
        mov    edi, 1
        mov    r9d, -1
        mov    r8d, 15
        mov    ecx, 10
        xor    eax, eax
        call   arith_mean
        mov    esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1
        mov    edx, eax
        mov    edi, 1
        xor    eax, eax
        add    rsp, 8
        jmp    __printf_chk

```

By the way, a similar usage of the *Shadow Space* is also considered here: [6.1.8 on page 956](#).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Using pointer to the first function argument

The example can be rewritten without `va_arg` macro:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int arith_mean(int v, ...)
{
    int *i=&v;
    int sum=*i, count=1;
    i++;

    while(1)
    {
        if ((*i)==-1) // terminator
            break;
        sum=sum+(*i);
        count++;
        i++;
    }

    return sum/count;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", arith_mean (1, 2, 7, 10, 15, -1 /* terminator */));
    // test: https://www.wolframalpha.com/input/?i=mean(1,2,7,10,15)
};
```

In other words, if an argument set is array of words (32-bit or 64-bit), we just enumerate array elements starting at first one.

3.17.2 `vprintf()` function case

Many programmers define their own logging functions which take a `printf`-like format string + a variable number of arguments.

Another popular example is the `die()` function, which prints some message and exits.

We need some way to pack input arguments of unknown number and pass them to the `printf()` function. But how?

That's why there are functions with "v" in name.

One of them is `vprintf()`: it takes a format-string and a pointer to a variable of type `va_list`:

```
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

void die (const char * fmt, ...)
{
    va_list va;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    va_start (va, fmt);

    vprintf (fmt, va);
    exit(0);
}

```

By closer examination, we can see that `va_list` is a pointer to an array. Let's compile:

Listing 3.63: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_fmt$ = 8
_die PROC
    ; load 1st argument (format-string)
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _fmt$[esp-4]
    ; get pointer to the 2nd argument
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _fmt$[esp]
    push   eax           ; pass a pointer
    push   ecx
    call   _vprintf
    add    esp, 8
    push   0
    call   _exit
$LN3@die:
    int    3
_die ENDP

```

We see that all our function does is just taking a pointer to the arguments and passing it to `vprintf()`, and that function is treating it like an infinite array of arguments!

Listing 3.64: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```

fmt$ = 48
die PROC
    ; save first 4 arguments in Shadow Space
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+8], rcx
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+16], rdx
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+24], r8
    mov    QWORD PTR [rsp+32], r9
    sub    rsp, 40
    lea    rdx, QWORD PTR fmt$[rsp+8] ; pass pointer to the 1st argument
    ; RCX here is still points to the 1st argument (format-string) of
die()
    ; so vprintf() will take it right from RCX
    call   vprintf
    xor    ecx, ecx
    call   exit
    int    3
die ENDP

```

3.17.3 Pin case

It's interesting to note how some functions from Pin DBI¹⁵ framework takes number of arguments:

```
INS_InsertPredicatedCall(
    ins, IPOINT_BEFORE, (AFUNPTR)RecordMemRead,
    IARG_INST_PTR,
    IARG_MEMORYOP_EA, memOp,
    IARG_END);
```

(pinatrace.cpp)

And this is how `INS_InsertPredicatedCall()` function is declared:

```
extern VOID INS_InsertPredicatedCall(INS ins, IPOINT ipoint, AFUNPTR funptr,
                                     ...);
```

(pin_client.PH)

Hence, constants with names starting with `IARG_` are some kinds of arguments to the function, which are handled inside of `INS_InsertPredicatedCall()`. You can pass as many arguments, as you need. Some commands has additional argument(s), some are not. Full list of arguments: https://software.intel.com/sites/landingpage/pintool/docs/58423/Pin/html/group__INST__ARGS.html. And it has to be a way to detect an end of arguments list, so the list must be terminated with `IARG_END` constant, without which, the function will (try to) handle random noise in the local stack, treating it as additional arguments.

Also, in [Brian W. Kernighan, Rob Pike, *Practice of Programming*, (1999)] we can find a nice example of C/C++ routines very similar to `pack/unpack`¹⁶ in Python.

3.17.4 Format string exploit

It's a popular mistake, to write `printf(string)` instead of `puts(string)` or `printf("%s", string)`. If the attacker can put his/her own text into `string`, he/she can crash process, or get insight into variables in the local stack.

Take a look at this:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    char *s1="hello";
    char *s2="world";
    char buf[128];

    // do something mundane here
    strcpy (buf, s1);
    strcpy (buf, " ");
```

¹⁵Dynamic Binary Instrumentation

¹⁶<https://docs.python.org/3/library/struct.html>

```

    strcpy (buf, s2);
    printf ("%s");
}

```

Please note, that `printf()` has no additional arguments besides single format string.

Now let's imagine, that was the attacker who put `%s` string into the last `printf()` first arguments. I compile this example using GCC 5.4.0 on x86 Ubuntu, and the resulting executable prints "world" string if it gets executed!

If I turn optimization on, `printf()` outputs some garbage, though—probably, `strcpy()` calls has been optimized and/or local variables as well. Also, result will be different for x64 code, different compiler, OS, etc.

Now, let's say, attacker could pass the following string to `printf()` call: `%x %x %x %x %x`. In may case, output is: "80485c6 b7751b48 1 0 80485c0" (these are just values from local stack). You see, there are 1 and 0 values, and some pointers (first is probably pointer to "world" string). So if the attacker passes `%s %s %s %s %s` string, the process will crash, because `printf()` treats 1 and/or 0 as pointer to string, tries to read characters from there and fails.

Even worse, there could be `sprintf (buf, string)` in code, where `buf` is a buffer in the local stack with size of 1024 bytes or so, attacker can craft string in such a way that `buf` will be overflowed, maybe even in a way that would lead to code execution.

Many popular and well-known software was (or even still) vulnerable:

QuakeWorld went up, got to around 4000 users, then the master server exploded.
 Disrupter and cohorts are working on more robust code now.
 If anyone did it on purpose, how about letting us know... (It wasn't all the people that tried %s as a name)

(John Carmack's .plan file, 17-Dec-1996¹⁷)

Nowadays, almost all decent compilers warn about this.

Another problem is the lesser known `%n` `printf()` argument: whenever `printf()` reaches it in a format string, it writes the number of characters printed so far into the corresponding argument: stackoverflow.com. Thus, an attacker could zap local variables by passing many `%n` commands in format string.

3.18 Strings trimming

A very common string processing task is to remove some characters at the start and/or at the end.

¹⁷https://github.com/ESWAT/john-carmack-plan-archive/blob/33ae52fdb46aa0d1abfed6fc7598233748541c0/by_day/johnc_plan_19961217.txt

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

In this example, we are going to work with a function which removes all newline characters ([CR¹⁸](#)/[LF¹⁹](#)) from the end of the input string:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>

char* str_trim (char *s)
{
    char c;
    size_t str_len;

    // work as long as \r or \n is at the end of string
    // stop if some other character there or its an empty string
    // (at start or due to our operation)
    for (str_len=strlen(s); str_len>0 && (c=s[str_len-1]); str_len--)
    {
        if (c=='\r' || c=='\n')
            s[str_len-1]=0;
        else
            break;
    }
    return s;
}

int main()
{
    // test

    // strdup() is used to copy text string into data segment,
    // because it will crash on Linux otherwise,
    // where text strings are allocated in constant data segment,
    // and not modifiable.

    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup(""))));
    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup ("\n")));
    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup ("\r")));
    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup ("\n\r")));
    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup ("\r\n")));
    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup ("test1\r\n")));
    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup ("test2\n\r")));
    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup ("test3\n\r\n\r")));
    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup ("test4\n")));
    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup ("test5\r")));
    printf ("%s\n", str_trim (strdup ("test6\r\r\r")));
}
```

The input argument is always returned on exit, this is convenient when you want to chain string processing functions, like it has done here in the `main()` function.

The second part of `for() (str_len>0 && (c=s[str_len-1]))` is the so called “short-circuit” in C/C++ and is very convenient [Dennis Yurichev, *C/C++ programming lan-*

¹⁸Carriage Return (13 or '\r' in C/C++)

¹⁹Line Feed (10 or '\n' in C/C++)

guage notes 1.3.8].

The C/C++ compilers guarantee an evaluation sequence from left to right.

So if the first clause is false after evaluation, the second one is never to be evaluated.

3.18.1 x64: Optimizing MSVC 2013

Listing 3.65: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```
s$ = 8
str_trim PROC

; RCX is the first function argument and it always holds pointer to the
; string
    mov     rdx, rcx
; this is strlen() function inlined right here:
; set RAX to 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFF (-1)
    or      rax, -1
$LL14@str_trim:
    inc     rax
    cmp     BYTE PTR [rcx+rax], 0
    jne     SHORT $LL14@str_trim
; is the input string length zero? exit then:
    test    rax, rax
    je      SHORT $LN15@str_trim
; RAX holds string length
    dec     rcx
; RCX = s-1
    mov     r8d, 1
    add     rcx, rax
; RCX = s-1+strlen(s), i.e., this is the address of the last character in the
; string
    sub     r8, rdx
; R8 = 1-s
$LL6@str_trim:
; load the last character of the string:
; jump, if its code is 13 or 10:
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [rcx]
    cmp     al, 13
    je      SHORT $LN2@str_trim
    cmp     al, 10
    jne     SHORT $LN15@str_trim
$LN2@str_trim:
; the last character has a 13 or 10 code
; write zero at this place:
    mov     BYTE PTR [rcx], 0
; decrement address of the last character,
; so it will point to the character before the one which has just been
; erased:
    dec     rcx
    lea     rax, QWORD PTR [r8+rcx]
; RAX = 1 - s + address of the current last character
; thus we can determine if we reached the first character and we need to
; stop, if it is so
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    test    rax, rax
    jne     SHORT $LL6@str_trim
$LN15@str_trim:
    mov     rax, rdx
    ret     0
str_trim ENDP

```

First, MSVC inlined the `strlen()` function code, because it concluded this is to be faster than the usual `strlen()` work + the cost of calling it and returning from it. This is called inlining: [3.14 on page 649](#).

The first instruction of the inlined `strlen()` is
`OR RAX, 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFF`.

MSVC often uses `OR` instead of `MOV RAX, 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFF`, because resulting opcode is shorter.

And of course, it is equivalent: all bits are set, and a number with all bits set is -1 in two's complement arithmetic: [2.2 on page 572](#).

Why would the -1 number be used in `strlen()`, one might ask. Due to optimizations, of course. Here is the code that MSVC generated:

Listing 3.66: Inlined `strlen()` by MSVC 2013 x64

```

; RCX = pointer to the input string
; RAX = current string length
    or      rax, -1
label:
    inc     rax
    cmp     BYTE PTR [rcx+rax], 0
    jne     SHORT label
; RAX = string length

```

Try to write shorter if you want to initialize the counter at 0! OK, let' try:

Listing 3.67: Our version of `strlen()`

```

; RCX = pointer to the input string
; RAX = current string length
    xor     rax, rax
label:
    cmp     byte ptr [rcx+rax], 0
    jz      exit
    inc     rax
    jmp     label
exit:
; RAX = string length

```

We failed. We have to use additional `JMP` instruction!

So what the MSVC 2013 compiler did is to move the `INC` instruction to the place before the actual character loading.

If the first character is 0, that's OK, `RAX` is 0 at this moment, so the resulting string length is 0.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The rest in this function seems easy to understand.

3.18.2 x64: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9.1

```

str_trim:
    push    rbp
    mov     rbp, rsp
    sub    rsp, 32
    mov     QWORD PTR [rbp-24], rdi
; for() first part begins here
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-24]
    mov     rdi, rax
    call    strlen
    mov     QWORD PTR [rbp-8], rax      ; str_len
; for() first part ends here
    jmp    .L2
; for() body begins here
.L5:
    cmp    BYTE PTR [rbp-9], 13      ; c=='\r'?
    je     .L3
    cmp    BYTE PTR [rbp-9], 10      ; c=='\n'?
    jne    .L4
.L3:
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8]   ; str_len
    lea     rdx, [rax-1]           ; EDX=str_len-1
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-24]   ; s
    add     rax, rdx             ; RAX=s+str_len-1
    mov     BYTE PTR [rax], 0       ; s[str_len-1]=0
; for() body ends here
; for() third part begins here
    sub     QWORD PTR [rbp-8], 1      ; str_len--
; for() third part ends here
.L2:
; for() second part begins here
    cmp    QWORD PTR [rbp-8], 0      ; str_len==0?
    je     .L4                     ; exit then
; check second clause, and load "c"
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8]   ; RAX=str_len
    lea     rdx, [rax-1]           ; RDX=str_len-1
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-24]   ; RAX=s
    add     rax, rdx             ; RAX=s+str_len-1
    movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [rax]     ; AL=s[str_len-1]
    mov     BYTE PTR [rbp-9], al     ; store loaded char into "c"
    cmp    BYTE PTR [rbp-9], 0       ; is it zero?
    jne    .L5                     ; yes? exit then
; for() second part ends here
.L4:
; return "s"
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-24]
    leave
    ret

```

Comments are added by the author of the book.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

After the execution of `strlen()`, the control is passed to the L2 label, and there two clauses are checked, one after another.

The second will never be checked, if the first one (`str_len==0`) is false (this is “short-circuit”).

Now let's see this function in short form:

- First for() part (call to `strlen()`)
- goto L2
- L5: for() body. goto exit, if needed
- for() third part (decrement of `str_len`)
- L2: for() second part: check first clause, then second. goto loop body begin or exit.
- L4: // exit
- return s

3.18.3 x64: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1

```
str_trim:
    push    rbx
    mov     rbx, rdi
; RBX will always be "s"
    call    strlen
; check for str_len==0 and exit if its so
    test   rax, rax
    je     .L9
    lea    rdx, [rax-1]
; RDX will always contain str_len-1 value, not str_len
; so RDX is more like buffer index variable
    lea    rsi, [rbx+rdx]      ; RSI=s+str_len-1
    movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rsi] ; load character
    test   cl, cl
    je     .L9                 ; exit if its zero
    cmp    cl, 10
    je     .L4                 ; exit if its not '\n' and not '\r'
    cmp    cl, 13
    jne   .L9
.L4:
; this is weird instruction. we need RSI=s-1 here.
; its possible to get it by MOV RSI, EBX / DEC RSI
; but this is two instructions instead of one
    sub    rsi, rax
; RSI = s+str_len-1-str_len = s-1
; main loop begin
.L12:
    test   rdx, rdx
; store zero at address s-1+str_len-1+1 = s-1+str_len = s+str_len-1
    mov    BYTE PTR [rsi+1+rdx], 0
; check for str_len-1==0. exit if so.
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

je      .L9
sub    rdx, 1           ; equivalent to str_len--
; load next character at address s+str_len-1
movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [rbx+rdx]
test   cl, cl          ; is it zero? exit then
je     .L9
cmp    cl, 10            ; is it '\n'?
je     .L12
cmp    cl, 13            ; is it '\r'?
je     .L12
.L9:
; return "s"
mov    rax, rbx
pop    rbx
ret

```

Now this is more complex.

The code before the loop's body start is executed only once, but it has the CR/LF characters check too! What is this code duplication for?

The common way to implement the main loop is probably this:

- (loop start) check for CR/LF characters, make decisions
- store zero character

But GCC has decided to reverse these two steps.

Of course, *store zero character* cannot be first step, so another check is needed:

- workout first character. match it to CR/LF, exit if character is not CR/LF
- (loop begin) store zero character
- check for CR/LF characters, make decisions

Now the main loop is very short, which is good for latest CPUs.

The code doesn't use the str_len variable, but str_len-1. So this is more like an index in a buffer.

Apparently, GCC notices that the str_len-1 statement is used twice.

So it's better to allocate a variable which always holds a value that's smaller than the current string length by one, and decrement it (this is the same effect as decrementing the str_len variable).

3.18.4 ARM64: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

This implementation is straightforward:

Listing 3.68: Non-optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

str_trim:
    stp    x29, x30, [sp, -48]!
    add    x29, sp, 0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    str    x0, [x29,24] ; copy input argument into local stack
    ldr    x0, [x29,24] ; s
    bl     strlen
    str    x0, [x29,40] ; str_len variable in local stack
    b     .L2
; main loop begin
.L5:
    ldrb   w0, [x29,39]
; W0=c
    cmp    w0, 13        ; is it '\r'?
    beq    .L3
    ldrb   w0, [x29,39]
; W0=n
    cmp    w0, 10        ; is it '\n'?
    bne    .L4          ; goto exit if it is not
.L3:
    ldr    x0, [x29,40]
; X0=str_len
    sub    x0, x0, #1
; X0=str_len-1
    ldr    x1, [x29,24]
; X1=s
    add    x0, x1, x0
; X0=s+str_len-1
    strb  w0, [x0]       ; write byte at s+str_len-1
; decrement str_len:
    ldr    x0, [x29,40]
; X0=str_len
    sub    x0, x0, #1
; X0=str_len-1
    str    x0, [x29,40]
; save X0 (or str_len-1) to local stack
.L2:
    ldr    x0, [x29,40]
; str_len==0?
    cmp    x0, xzr
; goto exit then
    beq    .L4
    ldr    x0, [x29,40]
; X0=str_len
    sub    x0, x0, #1
; X0=str_len-1
    ldr    x1, [x29,24]
; X1=s
    add    x0, x1, x0
; X0=s+str_len-1
; load byte at address s+str_len-1 to W0
    ldrb  w0, [x0]
    strb  w0, [x29,39] ; store loaded byte to "c"
    ldrb  w0, [x29,39] ; reload it
; is it zero byte?
    cmp    w0, wzr
; goto exit, if its zero or to L5 if its not

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        bne      .L5
.L4:
; return s
    ldr      x0, [x29,24]
    ldp      x29, x30, [sp], 48
    ret

```

3.18.5 ARM64: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

This is a more advanced optimization.

The first character is loaded at the beginning, and compared against 10 (the [LF](#) character).

Characters are also loaded in the main loop, for the characters after first one.

This is somewhat similar to the [3.18.3 on page 678](#) example.

Listing 3.69: Optimizing GCC (Linaro) 4.9

```

str_trim:
    stp      x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
    add      x29, sp, 0
    str      x19, [sp,16]
    mov      x19, x0
; X19 will always hold value of "s"
    bl       strlen
; X0=str_len
    cbz      x0, .L9          ; goto L9 (exit) if str_len==0
    sub      x1, x0, #1
; X1=X0-1=str_len-1
    add      x3, x19, x1
; X3=X19+X1=s+str_len-1
    ldrb    w2, [x19,x1]     ; load byte at address X19+X1=s+str_len-1
; W2=loaded character
    cbz      w2, .L9          ; is it zero? jump to exit then
    cmp      w2, 10            ; is it '\n'?
    bne      .L15
.L12:
; main loop body. loaded character is always 10 or 13 at this moment!
    sub      x2, x1, x0
; X2=X1-X0=str_len-1-str_len=-1
    add      x2, x3, x2
; X2=X3+X2=s+str_len-1+(-1)=s+str_len-2
    strb    w2, [x2,1]         ; store zero byte at address
; s+str_len-2+1=s+str_len-1
    cbz      x1, .L9          ; str_len-1==0? goto exit, if so
    sub      x1, x1, #1        ; str_len--
    ldrb    w2, [x19,x1]     ; load next character at address
; X19+X1=s+str_len-1
    cmp      w2, 10            ; is it '\n'?
    cbz      w2, .L9          ; jump to exit, if its zero
    beq      .L12              ; jump to begin loop, if its '\n'
.L15:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    cmp    w2, 13      ; is it '\r'?
    beq    .L12        ; yes, jump to the loop body begin
.L9:
; return "s"
    mov    x0, x19
    ldr    x19, [sp,16]
    ldp    x29, x30, [sp], 32
    ret

```

3.18.6 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

And again, the compiler took advantage of ARM mode's conditional instructions, so the code is much more compact.

Listing 3.70: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

str_trim PROC
    PUSH   {r4,lr}
; R0=s
    MOV    r4,r0
; R4=s
    BL     strlen      ; strlen() takes "s" value from R0
; R0=str_len
    MOV    r3,#0
; R3 will always hold 0
|L0.16|
    CMP    r0,#0      ; str_len==0?
    ADDNE r2,r4,r0    ; (if str_len!=0) R2=R4+R0=s+str_len
    LDRBNE r1,[r2,#-1] ; (if str_len!=0) R1=load byte at address
R2-1=s+str_len-1
    CMPNE r1,#0       ; (if str_len!=0) compare loaded byte against 0
    BEQ    |L0.56|      ; jump to exit if str_len==0 or loaded byte is
0
    CMP    r1,#0xd     ; is loaded byte '\r'?
    CMPNE r1,#0xa     ;
    (if loaded byte is not '\r') is loaded byte '\n'
    SUBEQ r0,r0,#1    ;
    (if loaded byte is '\r' or '\n') R0-- or str_len--
    STRBEQ r3,[r2,#-1] ; (if loaded byte is '\r' or '\n') store R3
(zero) at address R2-1=s+str_len-1
    BEQ    |L0.16|      ;
    jump to loop begin if loaded byte was '\r' or '\n'
|L0.56|
; return "s"
    MOV    r0,r4
    POP    {r4,pc}
ENDP

```

3.18.7 ARM: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

There are less conditional instructions in Thumb mode, so the code is simpler.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

But there are is really weird thing with the 0x20 and 0x1F offsets (lines 22 and 23). Why did the Keil compiler do so? Honestly, it's hard to say.

It has to be a quirk of Keil's optimization process. Nevertheless, the code works correctly.

Listing 3.71: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

1 str_trim PROC
2     PUSH    {r4,lr}
3     MOVS    r4,r0
4 ; R4=s
5     BL      strlen      ; strlen() takes "s" value from R0
6 ; R0=str_len
7     MOVS    r3,#0
8 ; R3 will always hold 0
9     B       |L0.24|
10 |L0.12|
11     CMP    r1,#0xd      ; is loaded byte '\r'?
12     BEQ    |L0.20|
13     CMP    r1,#0xa      ; is loaded byte '\n'?
14     BNE    |L0.38|      ; jump to exit, if no
15 |L0.20|
16     SUBS   r0,r0,#1      ; R0-- or str_len--
17     STRB   r3,[r2,#0x1f] ; store 0 at address
        R2+0x1F=s+str_len-0x20+0x1F=s+str_len-1
18 |L0.24|
19     CMP    r0,#0      ; str_len==0?
20     BEQ    |L0.38|      ; yes? jump to exit
21     ADDS   r2,r4,r0      ; R2=R4+R0=s+str_len
22     SUBS   r2,r2,#0x20      ; R2=R2-0x20=s+str_len-0x20
23     LDRB   r1,[r2,#0x1f] ; load byte at address
        R2+0x1F=s+str_len-0x20+0x1F=s+str_len-1 to R1
24     CMP    r1,#0      ; is loaded byte 0?
25     BNE    |L0.12|      ; jump to loop begin, if its not 0
26 |L0.38|
27 ; return "s"
28     MOVS   r0,r4
29     POP    {r4,pc}
30 ENDP

```

3.18.8 MIPS

Listing 3.72: Optimizing GCC 4.4.5 (IDA)

```

str_trim:
; IDA is not aware of local variable names, we gave them manually:
saved_GP      = -0x10
saved_S0      = -8
saved_RA      = -4

        lui    $gp, (__gnu_local_gp >> 16)
        addiu $sp, -0x20
        la    $gp, (__gnu_local_gp & 0xFFFF)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        sw      $ra, 0x20+saved_RA($sp)
        sw      $s0, 0x20+saved_S0($sp)
        sw      $gp, 0x20+saved_GP($sp)
; call strlen(). input string address is still in $a0, strlen() will take it
from there:    lw      $t9, (strlen & 0xFFFF)($gp)
                or      $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
                jalr   $t9
; input string address is still in $a0, put it to $s0:
                move   $s0, $a0 ; branch delay slot
; result of strlen() (i.e, length of string) is in $v0 now
; jump to exit if $v0==0 (i.e., if length of string is 0):
                beqz  $v0, exit
                or     $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
                addiu $a1, $v0, -1
; $a1 = $v0-1 = str_len-1
                addu   $a1, $s0, $a1
; $a1 = input string address + $a1 = s+strlen-1
; load byte at address $a1:
                lb      $a0, 0($a1)
                or      $at, $zero ; load delay slot, NOP
; loaded byte is zero? jump to exit if its so:
                beqz  $a0, exit
                or     $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
                addiu $v1, $v0, -2
; $v1 = str_len-2
                addu   $v1, $s0, $v1
; $v1 = $s0+$v1 = s+str_len-2
                li      $a2, 0xD
; skip loop body:
                b      loc_6C
                li      $a3, 0xA ; branch delay slot
loc_5C:
; load next byte from memory to $a0:
                lb      $a0, 0($v1)
                move   $a1, $v1
; $a1=s+str_len-2
; jump to exit if loaded byte is zero:
                beqz  $a0, exit
; decrement str_len:
                addiu $v1, -1 ; branch delay slot
loc_6C:
; at this moment, $a0=loaded byte, $a2=0xD (CR symbol) and $a3=0xA (LF
symbol)
; loaded byte is CR? jump to loc_7C then:
                beq    $a0, $a2, loc_7C
                addiu $v0, -1 ; branch delay slot
; loaded byte is LF? jump to exit if its not LF:
                bne   $a0, $a3, exit
                or     $at, $zero ; branch delay slot, NOP
loc_7C:
; loaded byte is CR at this moment
; jump to loc_5c (loop body begin) if str_len (in $v0) is not zero:
                bnez  $v0, loc_5C

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; simultaneously, store zero at that place in memory:
        sb      $zero, 0($a1) ; branch delay slot
; "exit" label was named by me manually:
exit:
        lw      $ra, 0x20+saved_RA($sp)
        move   $v0, $s0
        lw      $s0, 0x20+saved_S0($sp)
        jr      $ra
        addiu  $sp, 0x20      ; branch delay slot

```

Registers prefixed with S- are also called “saved temporaries”, so \$S0 value is saved in the local stack and restored upon finish.

3.19 toupper() function

Another very popular function transforms a symbol from lower case to upper case, if needed:

```

char toupper (char c)
{
    if(c>='a' && c<='z')
        return c-'a'+'A';
    else
        return c;
}

```

The 'a'+'A' expression is left in the source code for better readability, it will be optimized by compiler, of course ²⁰.

The ASCII code of “a” is 97 (or 0x61), and 65 (or 0x41) for “A”.

The difference (or distance) between them in the ASCII table is 32 (or 0x20).

For better understanding, the reader may take a look at the 7-bit standard ASCII table:

Characters in the coded character set ascii.																
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	
0x C-@	C-a	C-b	C-c	C-d	C-e	C-f	C-g	C-h	TAB	C-j	C-k	C-l	RET	C-n	C-o	
1x C-p	C-q	C-r	C-s	C-t	C-u	C-v	C-w	C-x	C-y	C-z	ESC	C-\	C-[C-^	C-_	
2x !	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/		
3x 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?	
4x @	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	
5x P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[]	\	^		
6x `	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	
7x p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	}		~	DEL	

Figure 3.3: 7-bit ASCII table in Emacs

²⁰However, to be meticulous, there still could be compilers which can't optimize such expressions and will leave them right in the code.

3.19.1 x64

Two comparison operations

Non-optimizing MSVC is straightforward: the code checks if the input symbol is in [97..122] range (or in ['a'..'z'] range) and subtracts 32 if it's true.

There are also some minor compiler artifact:

Listing 3.73: Non-optimizing MSVC 2013 (x64)

```

1 c$ = 8
2 toupper PROC
3     mov    BYTE PTR [rsp+8], cl
4     movsx eax, BYTE PTR c$[rsp]
5     cmp    eax, 97
6     jl    SHORT $LN2@toupper
7     movsx eax, BYTE PTR c$[rsp]
8     cmp    eax, 122
9     jg    SHORT $LN2@toupper
10    movsx eax, BYTE PTR c$[rsp]
11    sub    eax, 32
12    jmp    SHORT $LN3@toupper
13    jmp    SHORT $LN1@toupper ; compiler artifact
14 $LN2@toupper:
15    movzx eax, BYTE PTR c$[rsp] ; unnecessary casting
16 $LN1@toupper:
17 $LN3@toupper:                 ; compiler artifact
18    ret    0
19 toupper ENDP

```

It's important to notice that the input byte is loaded into a 64-bit local stack slot at line 3.

All the remaining bits ([8..63]) are untouched, i.e., contain some random noise (you'll see it in debugger).

All instructions operate only on byte-level, so it's fine.

The last MOVZX instruction at line 15 takes the byte from the local stack slot and zero-extends it to a *int* 32-bit data type.

Non-optimizing GCC does mostly the same:

Listing 3.74: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 (x64)

```
toupper:
    push   rbp
    mov    rbp, rsp
    mov    eax, edi
    mov    BYTE PTR [rbp-4], al
    cmp    BYTE PTR [rbp-4], 96
    jle    .L2
    cmp    BYTE PTR [rbp-4], 122
    jg    .L2
    movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rbp-4]
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        sub    eax, 32
        jmp   .L3
.L2:
        movzx eax, BYTE PTR [rbp-4]
.L3:
        pop    rbp
        ret

```

One comparison operation

Optimizing MSVC does a better job, it generates only one comparison operation:

Listing 3.75: Optimizing MSVC 2013 (x64)

```

toupper PROC
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR [rcx-97]
    cmp    al, 25
    ja     SHORT $LN2@toupper
    movsx eax, cl
    sub    eax, 32
    ret    0
$LN2@toupper:
    movzx eax, cl
    ret    0
toupper ENDP

```

It was explained earlier how to replace the two comparison operations with a single one: [3.13.2 on page 647](#).

We will now rewrite this in C/C++:

```

int tmp=c-97;
if (tmp>25)
    return c;
else
    return c-32;

```

The *tmp* variable must be signed.

This makes two subtraction operations in case of a transformation plus one comparison.

In contrast the original algorithm uses two comparison operations plus one subtracting.

Optimizing GCC is even better, it gets rid of the jumps (which is good: [2.10.1 on page 589](#)) by using the CMOVcc instruction:

Listing 3.76: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (x64)

```

1 toupper:
2     lea    edx, [rdi-97] ; 0x61
3     lea    eax, [rdi-32] ; 0x20

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

4     cmp    dl, 25
5     cmova eax, edi
6     ret

```

At line 3 the code prepares the subtracted value in advance, as if the conversion will always happen.

At line 5 the subtracted value in EAX is replaced by the untouched input value if a conversion is not needed. And then this value (of course incorrect) is dropped.

Advance subtracting is a price the compiler pays for the absence of conditional jumps.

3.19.2 ARM

Optimizing Keil for ARM mode also generates only one comparison:

Listing 3.77: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (ARM mode)

```

toupper PROC
    SUB    r1,r0,#0x61
    CMP    r1,#0x19
    SUBLS  r0,r0,#0x20
    ANDLS  r0,r0,#0xff
    BX    lr
ENDP

```

The SUBLS and ANDLS instructions are executed only if the value in R1 is less than 0x19 (or equal). They also do the actual conversion.

Optimizing Keil for Thumb mode generates only one comparison operation as well:

Listing 3.78: Optimizing Keil 6/2013 (Thumb mode)

```

toupper PROC
    MOVS   r1,r0
    SUBS   r1,r1,#0x61
    CMP    r1,#0x19
    BHI    |L0.14|
    SUBS   r0,r0,#0x20
    LSLS   r0,r0,#24
    LSRS   r0,r0,#24
|L0.14|
    BX    lr
ENDP

```

The last two LSLS and LSRS instructions work like AND reg, 0xFF: they are equivalent to the C/C++-expression ($i \ll 24 \gg 24$).

Seems like that Keil for Thumb mode deduced that two 2-byte instructions are shorter than the code that loads the 0xFF constant into a register plus an AND instruction.

GCC for ARM64

Listing 3.79: Non-optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```
toupper:
    sub    sp, sp, #16
    strb   w0, [sp,15]
    ldrb   w0, [sp,15]
    cmp    w0, 96
    bls    .L2
    ldrb   w0, [sp,15]
    cmp    w0, 122
    bhi    .L2
    ldrb   w0, [sp,15]
    sub    w0, w0, #32
    uxtb   w0, w0
    b     .L3
.L2:
    ldrb   w0, [sp,15]
.L3:
    add    sp, sp, 16
    ret
```

Listing 3.80: Optimizing GCC 4.9 (ARM64)

```
toupper:
    uxtb   w0, w0
    sub    w1, w0, #97
    uxtb   w1, w1
    cmp    w1, 25
    bhi    .L2
    sub    w0, w0, #32
    uxtb   w0, w0
.L2:
    ret
```

3.19.3 Using bit operations

Given the fact that 5th bit (counting from 0th) is always present after the check, subtracting is merely clearing this sole bit, but the very same effect can be achieved with ANDing ([2.5 on page 579](#)).

Even simpler, with XOR-ing:

```
char toupper (char c)
{
    if(c>='a' && c<='z')
        return c^0x20;
    else
        return c;
```

The code is close to what the optimized GCC has produced for the previous example ([3.76 on page 687](#)):

Listing 3.81: Optimizing GCC 5.4 (x86)

```
toupper:
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [esp+4]
    lea     ecx, [edx-97]
    mov     eax, edx
    xor     eax, 32
    cmp     cl, 25
    cmova  eax, edx
    ret
```

...but XOR is used instead of SUB.

Flipping 5th bit is just moving a *cursor* in ASCII table up and down by two rows.

Some people say that lowercase/uppercase letters has been placed in the ASCII table in such a way deliberately, because:

Very old keyboards used to do Shift just by toggling the 32 or 16 bit, depending on the key; this is why the relationship between small and capital letters in ASCII is so regular, and the relationship between numbers and symbols, and some pairs of symbols, is sort of regular if you squint at it.

(Eric S. Raymond, <http://www.catb.org/esr/faqs/things-every-hacker-once-knew/>)

Therefore, we can write this piece of code, which just flips the case of letters:

```
#include <stdio.h>

char flip (char c)
{
    if((c>='a' && c<='z') || (c>='A' && c<='Z'))
        return c^0x20;
    else
        return c;
}

int main()
{
    // will produce "hELLO, WORLD!"
    for (char *s="Hello, world!"; *s; s++)
        printf ("%c", flip(*s));
}
```

3.19.4 Summary

All these compiler optimizations are very popular nowadays and a practicing reverse engineer usually sees such code patterns often.

3.20 Obfuscation

The obfuscation is an attempt to hide the code (or its meaning) from reverse engineers.

3.20.1 Text strings

As we know from ([5.4 on page 910](#)), text strings may be really helpful.

Programmers who are aware of this try to hide them, making it impossible to find the string in [IDA](#) or any hex editor.

Here is the simplest method.

This is how the string can be constructed:

```
mov    byte ptr [ebx], 'h'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+1], 'e'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+2], 'l'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+3], 'l'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+4], 'o'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+5], ' '
mov    byte ptr [ebx+6], 'w'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+7], 'o'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+8], 'r'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+9], 'l'
mov    byte ptr [ebx+10], 'd'
```

The string can also be compared with another one like this:

```
mov    ebx, offset username
cmp    byte ptr [ebx], 'j'
jnz    fail
cmp    byte ptr [ebx+1], 'o'
jnz    fail
cmp    byte ptr [ebx+2], 'h'
jnz    fail
cmp    byte ptr [ebx+3], 'n'
jnz    fail
jz     it_is_john
```

In both cases, it is impossible to find these strings straightforwardly in a hex editor.

By the way, this is a way to work with the strings when it is impossible to allocate space for them in the data segment, for example in a [PIC²¹](#) or in shellcode.

Another method is to use `sprintf()` for the construction:

²¹Position Independent Code

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
sprintf(buf, "%s%c%s%c%s", "hel",'l',"o w",'o',"rld");
```

The code looks weird, but as a simple anti-reversing measure, it may be helpful. Text strings may also be present in encrypted form, then every string usage is to be preceded by a string decrypting routine. For example: [8.8.2 on page 1080](#).

3.20.2 Executable code

Inserting garbage

Executable code obfuscation implies inserting random garbage code between real one, which executes but does nothing useful.

A simple example:

Listing 3.82: original code

```
add    eax, ebx
mul    ecx
```

Listing 3.83: obfuscated code

```
xor    esi, 011223344h ; garbage
add    esi, eax        ; garbage
add    eax, ebx
mov    edx, eax        ; garbage
shl    edx, 4          ; garbage
mul    ecx
xor    esi, ecx        ; garbage
```

Here the garbage code uses registers which are not used in the real code (ESI and EDX). However, the intermediate results produced by the real code may be used by the garbage instructions for some extra mess—why not?

Replacing instructions with bloated equivalents

- MOV op1, op2 can be replaced by the PUSH op2 / POP op1 pair.
- JMP label can be replaced by the PUSH label / RET pair. [IDA](#) will not show the references to the label.
- CALL label can be replaced by the following instructions triplet:
PUSH label_after_CALL_instruction / PUSH label / RET.
- PUSH op can also be replaced with the following instructions pair:
SUB ESP, 4 (or 8) / MOV [ESP], op.

Always executed/never executed code

If the developer is sure that ESI at always 0 at that point:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov    esi, 1
...    ; some code not touching ESI
dec    esi
...    ; some code not touching ESI
cmp    esi, 0
jz     real_code
; fake luggage
real_code:

```

The reverse engineer needs some time to get into it.

This is also called an *opaque predicate*.

Another example (and again, the developer is sure that ESI is always zero):

```

; ESI=0
add    eax, ebx      ; real code
mul    ecx          ; real code
add    eax, esi      ; opaque predicate. XOR, AND or SHL, etc, can be here
instead of ADD.

```

Making a lot of mess

```

instruction 1
instruction 2
instruction 3

```

Can be replaced with:

```

begin:      jmp    ins1_label
ins2_label: instruction 2
            jmp    ins3_label
ins3_label: instruction 3
            jmp    exit:
ins1_label: instruction 1
            jmp    ins2_label
exit:

```

Using indirect pointers

```

dummy_data1    db    100h dup (0)
message1       db    'hello world',0
dummy_data2    db    200h dup (0)
message2       db    'another message',0
func           proc
...

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        mov    eax, offset dummy_data1 ; PE or ELF reloc here
        add    eax, 100h
        push   eax
        call   dump_string
        ...
        mov    eax, offset dummy_data2 ; PE or ELF reloc here
        add    eax, 200h
        push   eax
        call   dump_string
        ...
func      endp

```

IDA will show references only to `dummy_data1` and `dummy_data2`, but not to the text strings.

Global variables and even functions may be accessed like that.

Now something slightly more advanced.

Honestly, I don't know its exact name, but I would call it *shifted pointer*. This technique is quite common, at least in copy protection schemes.

In short: while writing a value into global memory you use an address, but by reading you use a sum of (other) addresses, or maybe a difference. The goal is to hide a real address from a reverse engineer who debugs the code or exploring it in IDA (or another disassembler).

This can be a nuisance.

```

#include <stdio.h>

// 64KiB, but it's OK
unsigned char secret_array[0x10000];

void check_lic_key()
{
    // pretend licence check has been failed
    secret_array[0x6123]=1; // 1 mean failed

    printf ("check failed\n"); // exit(0); // / a cracker may patch here

    // or put there another value if check is succeeded
    secret_array[0x6123]=0;
}

unsigned char get_byte_at_0x6000(unsigned char *a)
{
    return *(a+0x6000);
}

void check_again()
{
    if (get_byte_at_0x6000(secret_array+0x123)==1)
    {
        // do something mean (add watermark maybe) or report error:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        printf ("check failed\n");
    }
    else
    {
        // proceed further
    };
};

int main()
{
    // at start:
    check_lic_key();

    // do something

    // ... and while in some very critical part:
    check_again();
}

```

If compiled by non-optimizing MSVC 2015:

```

_check_lic_key proc near
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, 1
    imul   ecx, eax, 6123h
    mov     _secret_array[ecx], 1
    pop    ebp
    retn
_check_lic_key endp

_get_byte_at_0x6000 proc near
a           = dword ptr  8

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, [ebp+a]
    mov     al, [eax+6000h]
    pop    ebp
    retn
_get_byte_at_0x6000 endp

_check_again proc near
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push   offset point_passed_to_get_byte_at_0x6000
    call   j__get_byte_at_0x6000
    add    esp, 4
    movzx  eax, al
    cmp    eax, 1
    jnz   short loc_406735
    push   offset _Format ; "check failed\n"

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        call    j__printf
        add    esp, 4

loc_406735:
        pop    ebp
        retn
_check_again    endp

.data:0045F5C0 ; char secret_array[65536]
.data:0045F5C0 _secret_array db 123h dup(?)
.data:0045F6E3 ; char point_passed_to_get_byte_at_0x6000[65245]
.data:0045F6E3 point_passed_to_get_byte_at_0x6000 db 0FEDDh dup(?)

```

You see, IDA can only get two addresses: `secret_array[]` (start of the array) and `point_passed_to_get_byte_at_0x6000`.

How to deal with it: you can use hardware breakpoints on memory access operations ([tracer](#) has BPMx options) or symbolic execution engine or maybe you can write a plugin for IDA...

Surely, one array can be used for many values, not limited to boolean ones...

N.B.: Optimizing MSVC 2015 is smart enough to optimize the `get_byte_at_0x6000()` function out.

3.20.3 Virtual machine / pseudo-code

A programmer can construct his/her own [PL](#) or [ISA](#) and interpreter for it.

(Like the pre-5.0 Visual Basic, .NET or Java machines). The reverse engineer will have to spend some time to understand the meaning and details of all of the [ISA](#)'s instructions.

He/she will also have to write a disassembler/decompiler of some sort.

3.20.4 Other things to mention

My own (yet weak) attempt to patch the Tiny C compiler to produce obfuscated code: <http://blog.yurichev.com/node/58>.

Using the MOV instruction for really complicated things: [Stephen Dolan, *mov is Turing-complete*, (2013)]²².

3.20.5 Exercise

- <http://challenges.re/29>

²²Also available as <http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~sd601/papers/mov.pdf>

3.21 C++

3.21.1 Classes

A simple example

Internally, the representation of C++ classes is almost the same as the structures.

Let's try an example with two variables, two constructors and one method:

```
#include <stdio.h>

class c
{
private:
    int v1;
    int v2;
public:
    c() // default ctor
    {
        v1=667;
        v2=999;
    }

    c(int a, int b) // ctor
    {
        v1=a;
        v2=b;
    }

    void dump()
    {
        printf ("%d; %d\n", v1, v2);
    }
};

int main()
{
    class c c1;
    class c c2(5,6);

    c1.dump();
    c2.dump();

    return 0;
}
```

MSVC: x86

Here is how the `main()` function looks like, translated into assembly language:

Listing 3.84: MSVC

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

_c2$ = -16 ; size = 8
_c1$ = -8 ; size = 8
_main PROC
    push ebp
    mov ebp, esp
    sub esp, 16
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c1$[ebp]
    call ??0c@@QAE@XZ ; c::c
    push 6
    push 5
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c2$[ebp]
    call ??0c@@QAE@HH@Z ; c::c
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c1$[ebp]
    call ?dump@c@@QAEXXZ ; c::dump
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c2$[ebp]
    call ?dump@c@@QAEXXZ ; c::dump
    xor eax, eax
    mov esp, ebp
    pop ebp
    ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Here's what's going on. For each object (instance of class *c*) 8 bytes are allocated, exactly the size needed to store the 2 variables.

For *c1* a default argumentless constructor ??0c@@QAE@XZ is called. For *c2* another constructor ??0c@@QAE@HH@Z is called and two numbers are passed as arguments.

A pointer to the object (*this* in C++ terminology) is passed in the ECX register. This is called **thiscall** ([3.21.1](#))—the method for passing a pointer to the object.

MSVC does it using the ECX register. Needless to say, it is not a standardized method, other compilers can do it differently, e.g., via the first function argument (like GCC).

Why do these functions have such odd names? That's [name mangling](#).

A C++ class may contain several methods sharing the same name but having different arguments—that is polymorphism. And of course, different classes may have their own methods with the same name.

Name mangling enable us to encode the class name + method name + all method argument types in one ASCII string, which is then used as an internal function name. That's all because neither the linker, nor the DLL [OS](#) loader (mangled names may be among the DLL exports as well) knows anything about C++ or [OOP²³](#).

The `dump()` function is called two times.

Now let's see the constructors' code:

Listing 3.85: MSVC

```

_this$ = -4      ; size = 4
??0c@@QAE@XZ PROC ; c::c, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx

```

²³Object-Oriented Programming

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push ebp
mov ebp, esp
push ecx
mov DWORD PTR _this$[ebp], ecx
mov eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov DWORD PTR [eax], 667
mov ecx, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov DWORD PTR [ecx+4], 999
mov eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov esp, ebp
pop ebp
ret 0
??0c@@QAE@XZ ENDP ; c::c

_this$ = -4 ; size = 4
_a$ = 8      ; size = 4
_b$ = 12     ; size = 4
??0c@@QAE@HH@Z PROC ; c::c, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
push ebp
mov ebp, esp
push ecx
mov DWORD PTR _this$[ebp], ecx
mov eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
mov DWORD PTR [eax], ecx
mov edx, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
mov DWORD PTR [edx+4], eax
mov eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
mov esp, ebp
pop ebp
ret 8
??0c@@QAE@HH@Z ENDP ; c::c

```

The constructors are just functions, they use a pointer to the structure in ECX, copying the pointer into their own local variable, however, it is not necessary.

From the C++ standard (C++11 12.1) we know that constructors are not required to return any values.

In fact, internally, the constructors return a pointer to the newly created object, i.e., *this*.

Now the dump() method:

Listing 3.86: MSVC

```

_this$ = -4          ; size = 4
?dump@c@@QAEXXZ PROC ; c::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
push ebp
mov ebp, esp
push ecx
mov DWORD PTR _this$[ebp], ecx

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov  eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
    push ecx
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    push eax
    push OFFSET ??_C@_07NJBDCIEC@?$CFd?$DL?5?$CFd?6?$AA@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 12
    mov  esp, ebp
    pop  ebp
    ret  0
?dump@@QAEAXZ ENDP ; c::dump

```

Simple enough: `dump()` takes a pointer to the structure that contains the two `int`'s from ECX, takes both values from it and passes them to `printf()`.

The code is much shorter if compiled with optimizations (/Ox):

Listing 3.87: MSVC

```

??0c@@QAE@XZ PROC ; c::c, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, ecx
    mov  DWORD PTR [eax], 667
    mov  DWORD PTR [eax+4], 999
    ret  0
??0c@@QAE@XZ ENDP ; c::c

_a$ = 8 ; size = 4
_b$ = 12 ; size = 4
??0c@@QAE@HH@Z PROC ; c::c, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    mov  eax, ecx
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    mov  DWORD PTR [eax], ecx
    mov  DWORD PTR [eax+4], edx
    ret  8
??0c@@QAE@HH@Z ENDP ; c::c

?dump@@QAEAXZ PROC ; c::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push eax
    push ecx
    push OFFSET ??_C@_07NJBDCIEC@?$CFd?$DL?5?$CFd?6?$AA@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 12
    ret  0
?dump@@QAEAXZ ENDP ; c::dump

```

That's all. The other thing we must note is that the [stack pointer](#) hasn't been corrected with `add esp, X` after the constructor has been called. At the same time, the constructor has `ret 8` instead of `RET` at the end.

This is all because the `thiscall` ([3.21.1 on page 698](#)) calling convention is used here, which together with the `stdcall` ([6.1.2 on page 947](#)) method offers the [callee](#) to correct the stack instead of the [caller](#). The `ret x` instruction adds `X` to the value in `ESP`, then passes the control to the [caller](#) function.

See also the section about calling conventions ([6.1 on page 947](#)).

It also has to be noted that the compiler decides when to call the constructor and destructor—but we already know that from the C++ language basics.

MSVC: x86-64

As we already know, the first 4 function arguments in x86-64 are passed in `RCX`, `RDX`, `R8` and `R9` registers, all the rest—via the stack.

Nevertheless, the `this` pointer to the object is passed in `RCX`, the first argument of the method in `RDX`, etc. We can see this in the `c(int a, int b)` method internals:

Listing 3.88: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
; void dump()

?dump@c@@QEAXXXZ PROC ; c::dump
    mov     r8d, DWORD PTR [rcx+4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rcx]
    lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:??_C@_07NJBDCIEC@?$CFd?$DL?5?$CFd?6?$AA@ ;
    '%d; %d'
    jmp     printf
?dump@c@@QEAXXXZ ENDP ; c::dump

; c(int a, int b)

??0c@@QEAA@HH@Z PROC ; c::c
    mov     DWORD PTR [rcx], edx    ; 1st argument: a
    mov     DWORD PTR [rcx+4], r8d ; 2nd argument: b
    mov     rax, rcx
    ret     0
??0c@@QEAA@HH@Z ENDP ; c::c

; default ctor

??0c@@QEAA@XZ PROC ; c::c
    mov     DWORD PTR [rcx], 667
    mov     DWORD PTR [rcx+4], 999
    mov     rax, rcx
    ret     0
??0c@@QEAA@XZ ENDP ; c::c
```

The *int* data type is still 32-bit in x64²⁴, so that is why 32-bit register parts are used here.

We also see JMP printf instead of RET in the dump() method, that *hack* we already saw earlier: [1.21.1 on page 197](#).

GCC: x86

It is almost the same story in GCC 4.4.1, with a few exceptions.

Listing 3.89: GCC 4.4.1

```
public main
main proc near

var_20 = dword ptr -20h
var_1C = dword ptr -1Ch
var_18 = dword ptr -18h
var_10 = dword ptr -10h
var_8 = dword ptr -8

push ebp
mov ebp, esp
and esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
sub esp, 20h
lea eax, [esp+20h+var_8]
mov [esp+20h+var_20], eax
call _ZN1cC1Ev
mov [esp+20h+var_18], 6
mov [esp+20h+var_1C], 5
lea eax, [esp+20h+var_10]
mov [esp+20h+var_20], eax
call _ZN1cC1Eii
lea eax, [esp+20h+var_8]
mov [esp+20h+var_20], eax
call _ZN1c4dumpEv
lea eax, [esp+20h+var_10]
mov [esp+20h+var_20], eax
call _ZN1c4dumpEv
mov eax, 0
leave
retn
main endp
```

Here we see another *name mangling* style, specific to GNU²⁵. It can also be noted that the pointer to the object is passed as the first function argument—invisible to programmer, of course.

First constructor:

²⁴ Apparently, for easier porting of 32-bit C/C++ code to x64.

²⁵ There is a good document about the various name mangling conventions in different compilers: [Agner Fog, *Calling conventions* (2015)].

```

ZN1cC1Ev    public _ZN1cC1Ev ; weak
ZN1cC1Ev    proc near           ; CODE XREF: main+10
arg_0        = dword ptr  8
              push    ebp
              mov     ebp, esp
              mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
              mov     dword ptr [eax], 667
              mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
              mov     dword ptr [eax+4], 999
              pop    ebp
              retn
ZN1cC1Ev    endp

```

It just writes two numbers using the pointer passed in the first (and only) argument.

Second constructor:

```

ZN1cC1Eii    public _ZN1cC1Eii
ZN1cC1Eii    proc near
arg_0        = dword ptr  8
arg_4        = dword ptr  0Ch
arg_8        = dword ptr  10h
              push    ebp
              mov     ebp, esp
              mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
              mov     edx, [ebp+arg_4]
              mov     [eax], edx
              mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
              mov     edx, [ebp+arg_8]
              mov     [eax+4], edx
              pop    ebp
              retn
ZN1cC1Eii    endp

```

This is a function, the analog of which can look like this:

```

void ZN1cC1Eii (int *obj, int a, int b)
{
    *obj=a;
    *(obj+1)=b;
}

```

...and that is completely predictable.

Now the dump() function:

```

ZN1c4dumpEv  public _ZN1c4dumpEv
ZN1c4dumpEv  proc near

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

var_18      = dword ptr -18h
var_14      = dword ptr -14h
var_10      = dword ptr -10h
arg_0       = dword ptr  8

        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        sub     esp, 18h
        mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
        mov     edx, [eax+4]
        mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
        mov     eax, [eax]
        mov     [esp+18h+var_10], edx
        mov     [esp+18h+var_14], eax
        mov     [esp+18h+var_18], offset aDD ; "%d; %d\n"
        call    _printf
        leave
        retn
_endp
_ZN1c4dumpEv

```

This function in its *internal representation* has only one argument, used as pointer to the object (*this*).

This function could be rewritten in C like this:

```

void ZN1c4dumpEv (int *obj)
{
    printf ("%d; %d\n", *obj, *(obj+1));
}

```

Thus, if we base our judgment on these simple examples, the difference between MSVC and GCC is the style of the encoding of function names (*name mangling*) and the method for passing a pointer to the object (via the ECX register or via the first argument).

GCC: x86-64

The first 6 arguments, as we already know, are passed in the RDI, RSI, RDX, RCX, R8 and R9 ([Michael Matz, Jan Hubicka, Andreas Jaeger, Mark Mitchell, *System V Application Binary Interface. AMD64 Architecture Processor Supplement*, (2013)]²⁶) registers, and the pointer to *this* via the first one (RDI) and that is what we see here. The *int* data type is also 32-bit here.

The JMP instead of RET *hack* is also used here.

Listing 3.90: GCC 4.4.6 x64

```

; default ctor

_ZN1cC2Ev:

```

²⁶Also available as <https://software.intel.com/sites/default/files/article/402129/mpx-linux64-abi.pdf>

```

    mov  DWORD PTR [rdi], 667
    mov  DWORD PTR [rdi+4], 999
    ret

; c(int a, int b)

_ZN1cC2Eii:
    mov  DWORD PTR [rdi], esi
    mov  DWORD PTR [rdi+4], edx
    ret

; dump( )

_ZN1c4dumpEv:
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR [rdi+4]
    mov  esi, DWORD PTR [rdi]
    xor  eax, eax
    mov  edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0 ; "%d; %d\n"
    jmp  printf

```

Class inheritance

Inherited classes are similar to the simple structures we already discussed, but extended in inheritable classes.

Let's take this simple example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

class object
{
public:
    int color;
    object() { };
    object (int color) { this->color=color; };
    void print_color() { printf ("color=%d\n", color); };
};

class box : public object
{
private:
    int width, height, depth;
public:
    box(int color, int width, int height, int depth)
    {
        this->color=color;
        this->width=width;
        this->height=height;
        this->depth=depth;
    };
    void dump()
    {

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        printf ("this is a box. color=%d, width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d\n",
            color, width, height, depth);
    };
}

class sphere : public object
{
private:
    int radius;
public:
    sphere(int color, int radius)
    {
        this->color=color;
        this->radius=radius;
    };
    void dump()
    {
        printf ("this is sphere. color=%d, radius=%d\n", color, radius);
    };
};

int main()
{
    box b(1, 10, 20, 30);
    sphere s(2, 40);

    b.print_color();
    s.print_color();

    b.dump();
    s.dump();

    return 0;
};

```

Let's investigate the generated code of the `dump()` functions/methods and also `object::print_color()`, and see the memory layout for the structures-objects (for 32-bit code).

So, here are the `dump()` methods for several classes, generated by MSVC 2008 with `/Ox` and `/Ob0` options ²⁷.

Listing 3.91: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```

??_C@_09GCED0LPA@color?$DN?$CFd?6?$AA@ DB 'color=%d', 0aH, 00H ; `string'
?print_color@object@@QAEXXZ PROC ; object::print_color, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push eax

; 'color=%d', 0aH, 00H

```

²⁷The `/Ob0` option stands for disabling inline expansion since function inlining can make our experiment harder.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push OFFSET ??_C@_09GCEDOLPA@color?$DN?$CFd?6?$AA@
call _printf
add esp, 8
ret 0
?print_color@object@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; object::print_color

```

Listing 3.92: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```

?dump@box@@QAEXXZ PROC ; box::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+12]
    mov edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+8]
    push eax
    mov eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push edx
    push eax
    push ecx

;
'this is a box. color=%d, width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d', 0aH, 00H ; `string'
push OFFSET ??_C@_0DG@NCNGAADL@this?5is?5box?4?5color?$DN?$CFd?0?5width?
    ↴ ?$DN?$CFd?0@
    call _printf
    add esp, 20
    ret 0
?dump@box@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; box::dump

```

Listing 3.93: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```

?dump@sphere@@QAEXXZ PROC ; sphere::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push eax
    push ecx

;
'this is sphere. color=%d, radius=%d', 0aH, 00H
push OFFSET ??_C@_0CF@EFEDJLDC@this?5is?5sphere?4?5color?$DN?$CFd?0?5radius?
    ↴ radius@
    call _printf
    add esp, 12
    ret 0
?dump@sphere@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; sphere::dump

```

So, here is the memory layout:

(base class *object*)

offset	description
+0x0	int color

(inherited classes)

box:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

offset	description
+0x0	int color
+0x4	int width
+0x8	int height
+0xC	int depth

sphere:

offset	description
+0x0	int color
+0x4	int radius

Let's see `main()` function body:

Listing 3.94: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```
PUBLIC _main
_TEXT SEGMENT
_s$ = -24 ; size = 8
_b$ = -16 ; size = 16
_main PROC
    sub esp, 24
    push 30
    push 20
    push 10
    push 1
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+40]
    call ??0box@@QAE@HHH@Z ; box::box
    push 40
    push 2
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+32]
    call ??0sphere@@QAE@HH@Z ; sphere::sphere
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+24]
    call ?print_color@object@@QAEXXZ ; object::print_color
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+24]
    call ?print_color@object@@QAEXXZ ; object::print_color
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+24]
    call ?dump@box@@QAEXXZ ; box::dump
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+24]
    call ?dump@sphere@@QAEXXZ ; sphere::dump
    xor eax, eax
    add esp, 24
    ret 0
_main ENDP
```

The inherited classes must always add their fields after the base classes' fields, to make it possible for the base class methods to work with their own fields.

When the `object::print_color()` method is called, a pointers to both the `box` and `sphere` objects are passed as `this`, and it can work with these objects easily since the `color` field in these objects is always at the pinned address (at offset +0x0).

It can be said that the `object::print_color()` method is agnostic in relation to the input object type as long as the fields are *pinned* at the same addresses, and this condition is always true.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

And if you create inherited class of the *box* class, the compiler will add the new fields after the *depth* field, leaving the *box* class fields at the pinned addresses.

Thus, the *box* : : *dump()* method will work fine for accessing the *color*, *width*, *height* and *depths* fields, which are always pinned at known addresses.

The code generated by GCC is almost the same, with the sole exception of passing the *this* pointer (as it has been explained above, it is passed as the first argument instead of using the ECX register).

Encapsulation

Encapsulation is hiding the data in the *private* sections of the class, e.g. to allow access to them only from this class methods.

However, are there any marks in code about the fact that some field is private and some other—not?

No, there are no such marks.

Let's try this simple example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

class box
{
    private:
        int color, width, height, depth;
    public:
        box(int color, int width, int height, int depth)
        {
            this->color=color;
            this->width=width;
            this->height=height;
            this->depth=depth;
        };
        void dump()
        {
            printf ("this is a box. color=%d, width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d\n",
            color, width, height, depth);
        };
}
```

Let's compile it again in MSVC 2008 with /Ox and /Ob0 options and see the *box* : : *dump()* method code:

```
?dump@box@@QAEXXZ PROC ; box::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+12]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+8]
    push   eax
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push   edx
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push eax
push ecx
; 'this is a box. color=%d, width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d', 0aH, 00H
push OFFSET ??_C@_0DG@NCNGAADL@this?5is?5box?4?5color?$DN?$CFd?0?5width?
    ↴ ?$DN?$CFd?0@
call _printf
add esp, 20
ret 0
?dump@box@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; box::dump

```

Here is a memory layout of the class:

offset	description
+0x0	int color
+0x4	int width
+0x8	int height
+0xC	int depth

All fields are private and not allowed to be accessed from any other function, but knowing this layout, can we create code that modifies these fields?

To do this we'll add the `hack_oop_encapsulation()` function, which is not going to compile if it looked like this:

```

void hack_oop_encapsulation(class box * o)
{
    o->width=1; // that code can't be compiled:
                  // "error C2248: 'box::width' : cannot access private member
    declared in class 'box'"
}

```

Nevertheless, if we cast the `box` type to a *pointer to an int array*, and we modify the array of `int`-s that we have, we can succeed.

```

void hack_oop_encapsulation(class box * o)
{
    unsigned int *ptr_to_object=reinterpret_cast<unsigned int*>(o);
    ptr_to_object[1]=123;
}

```

This function's code is very simple—it can be said that the function takes a pointer to an array of `int`-s for input and writes 123 to the second `int`:

```

?hack_oop_encapsulation@@YAXPAVbox@@@Z PROC ; hack_oop_encapsulation
    mov eax, DWORD PTR _o$[esp-4]
    mov DWORD PTR [eax+4], 123
    ret 0
?hack_oop_encapsulation@@YAXPAVbox@@@Z ENDP ; hack_oop_encapsulation

```

Let's check how it works:

```

int main()
{
    box b(1, 10, 20, 30);
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```

    b.dump();

    hack_oop_encapsulation(&b);

    b.dump();

    return 0;
}

```

Let's run:

```

this is a box. color=1, width=10, height=20, depth=30
this is a box. color=1, width=123, height=20, depth=30

```

We see that the encapsulation is just protection of class fields only in the compilation stage.

The C++ compiler is not allowing the generation of code that modifies protected fields straightforwardly, nevertheless, it is possible with the help of *dirty hacks*.

Multiple inheritance

Multiple inheritance is creating a class which inherits fields and methods from two or more classes.

Let's write a simple example again:

```

#include <stdio.h>

class box
{
public:
    int width, height, depth;
    box() { };
    box(int width, int height, int depth)
    {
        this->width=width;
        this->height=height;
        this->depth=depth;
    };
    void dump()
    {
        printf ("this is a box. width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d\n", width,
        height, depth);
    };
    int get_volume()
    {
        return width * height * depth;
    };
};

class solid_object

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
{
public:
    int density;
    solid_object() { };
    solid_object(int density)
    {
        this->density=density;
    };
    int get_density()
    {
        return density;
    };
    void dump()
    {
        printf ("this is a solid_object. density=%d\n", density);
    };
};

class solid_box: box, solid_object
{
public:
    solid_box (int width, int height, int depth, int density)
    {
        this->width=width;
        this->height=height;
        this->depth=depth;
        this->density=density;
    };
    void dump()
    {
        printf ("this is a solid_box. width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d, \n"
        ↴ density=%d\n", width, height, depth, density);
    };
    int get_weight() { return get_volume() * get_density(); };
};

int main()
{
    box b(10, 20, 30);
    solid_object so(100);
    solid_box sb(10, 20, 30, 3);

    b.dump();
    so.dump();
    sb.dump();
    printf ("%d\n", sb.get_weight());

    return 0;
};
```

Let's compile it in MSVC 2008 with the /Ox and /Ob0 options and see the code of `box::dump()`, `solid_object::dump()` and `solid_box::dump()`:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Listing 3.95: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```
?dump@box@@QAEXXZ PROC ; box::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+8]
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    push eax
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push edx
    push eax
; 'this is a box. width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d', 0aH, 00H
    push OFFSET ??_C@_0CM@DIKPHDFI@this?5is?5box?4?5width?$DN?$CFd?0?5@
    ↴ height?$DN?$CFd@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 16
    ret  0
?dump@box@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; box::dump
```

Listing 3.96: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```
?dump@solid_object@@QAEXXZ PROC ; solid_object::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push eax
; 'this is a solid_object. density=%d', 0aH
    push OFFSET ??_C@_0CC@KICFJINL@this?5is?5solid_object?4?5density?$DN?@
    ↴ $CFd@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 8
    ret  0
?dump@solid_object@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; solid_object::dump
```

Listing 3.97: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```
?dump@solid_box@@QAEXXZ PROC ; solid_box::dump, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+12]
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+8]
    push eax
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    push edx
    push eax
    push ecx
; 'this is a solid_box. width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d, density=%d', 0aH
    push OFFSET ??_C@_0DO@HNCNIHNN@this?5is?5solid_box?4?5width?$DN?$CFd?0?5hei@
    ↴ ?0?5hei@
    call _printf
    add  esp, 20
    ret  0
?dump@solid_box@@QAEXXZ ENDP ; solid_box::dump
```

So, the memory layout for all three classes is:

box class:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

offset	description
+0x0	width
+0x4	height
+0x8	depth

solid_object class:

offset	description
+0x0	density

It can be said that the *solid_box* class memory layout is *united*:

solid_box class:

offset	description
+0x0	width
+0x4	height
+0x8	depth
+0xC	density

The code of the *box::get_volume()* and *solid_object::get_density()* methods is trivial:

Listing 3.98: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```
?get_volume@box@@QAEHZ PROC ; box::get_volume, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+8]
    imul eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+4]
    imul eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    ret  0
?get_volume@box@@QAEHZ ENDP ; box::get_volume
```

Listing 3.99: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```
?get_density@solid_object@@QAEHZ PROC ; solid_object::get_density, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    ret  0
?get_density@solid_object@@QAEHZ ENDP ; solid_object::get_density
```

But the code of the *solid_box::get_weight()* method is much more interesting:

Listing 3.100: Optimizing MSVC 2008 /Ob0

```
?get_weight@solid_box@@QAEHZ PROC ; solid_box::get_weight, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    push esi
    mov  esi, ecx
    push edi
    lea   ecx, DWORD PTR [esi+12]
    call ?get_density@solid_object@@QAEHZ ; solid_object::get_density
    mov  ecx, esi
    mov  edi, eax
    call ?get_volume@box@@QAEHZ ; box::get_volume
    imul eax, edi
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```

pop edi
pop esi
ret 0
?get_weight@solid_box@@QAEHZ ENDP ; solid_box::get_weight

```

`get_weight()` just calls two methods, but for `get_volume()` it just passes pointer to `this`, and for `get_density()` it passes a pointer to `this` incremented by 12 (or `0xC`) bytes, and there, in the `solid_box` class memory layout, the fields of the `solid_object` class start.

Thus, the `solid_object::get_density()` method will believe like it is dealing with the usual `solid_object` class, and the `box::get_volume()` method will work with its three fields, believing this is just the usual object of class `box`.

Thus, we can say, an object of a class, that inherits from several other classes, is representing in memory as a *united* class, that contains all inherited fields. And each inherited method is called with a pointer to the corresponding structure's part.

Virtual methods

Yet another simple example:

```

#include <stdio.h>

class object
{
public:
    int color;
    object() { };
    object (int color) { this->color=color; };
    virtual void dump()
    {
        printf ("color=%d\n", color);
    };
};

class box : public object
{
private:
    int width, height, depth;
public:
    box(int color, int width, int height, int depth)
    {
        this->color=color;
        this->width=width;
        this->height=height;
        this->depth=depth;
    };
    void dump()
    {
        printf ("this is a box. color=%d, width=%d, height=%d, depth=%d\n",
               color, width, height, depth);
    };
};

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

};

class sphere : public object
{
    private:
        int radius;
    public:
        sphere(int color, int radius)
        {
            this->color=color;
            this->radius=radius;
        };
        void dump()
        {
            printf ("this is sphere. color=%d, radius=%d\n", color, radius);
        ;
        };
};

int main()
{
    box b(1, 10, 20, 30);
    sphere s(2, 40);

    object *o1=&b;
    object *o2=&s;

    o1->dump();
    o2->dump();
    return 0;
}

```

Class *object* has a virtual method *dump()* that is being replaced in the inheriting *box* and *sphere* classes.

If we are in an environment where it is not known the type of an object, as in the *main()* function in example, where the virtual method *dump()* is called, the information about its type must be stored somewhere, to be able to call the relevant virtual method.

Let's compile it in MSVC 2008 with the */Ox* and */Ob0* options and see the code of *main()*:

```

_s$ = -32 ; size = 12
_b$ = -20 ; size = 20
_main PROC
    sub esp, 32
    push 30
    push 20
    push 10
    push 1
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+48]
    call ??0box@@QAE@HHHH@Z ; box::box
    push 40

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push 2
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+40]
call ??0sphere@@QAE@HH@Z ; sphere::sphere
mov eax, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+32]
mov edx, DWORD PTR [eax]
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _b$[esp+32]
call edx
mov eax, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+32]
mov edx, DWORD PTR [eax]
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s$[esp+32]
call edx
xor eax, eax
add esp, 32
ret 0
_main ENDP

```

A pointer to the `dump()` function is taken somewhere from the object. Where could we store the address of the new method? Only somewhere in the constructors: there is no other place since nothing else is called in the `main()` function.²⁸

Let's see the code of the constructor of the `box` class:

```

??_R0?AVbox@@8 DD FLAT:??_7type_info@@6B@ ; box `RTTI Type Descriptor'
    DD 00H
    DB '.?AVbox@@', 00H

??_R1A@?0A@EA@box@@8 DD FLAT:??_R0?AVbox@@8 ; box::`RTTI Base Class
Descriptor at (0,-1,0,64)
    DD 01H
    DD 00H
    DD 0xffffffffH
    DD 00H
    DD 040H
    DD FLAT:??_R3box@@8

??_R2box@@8 DD     FLAT:??_R1A@?0A@EA@box@@8 ; box::`RTTI Base Class Array'
    DD     FLAT:??_R1A@?0A@EA@object@@8

??_R3box@@8 DD     00H ; box::`RTTI Class Hierarchy Descriptor'
    DD 00H
    DD 02H
    DD FLAT:??_R2box@@8

??_R4box@@6B@ DD 00H ; box::`RTTI Complete Object Locator'
    DD 00H
    DD 00H
    DD FLAT:??_R0?AVbox@@8
    DD FLAT:??_R3box@@8

??_7box@@6B@ DD     FLAT:??_R4box@@6B@ ; box::`vftable'
    DD     FLAT:?dump@box@@UAEXXZ

```

²⁸You can read more about pointers to functions in the relevant section: ([1.33 on page 483](#))

```

_color$ = 8    ; size = 4
_width$ = 12   ; size = 4
_height$ = 16  ; size = 4
_depth$ = 20   ; size = 4
??0box@@QAE@HHHH@Z PROC ; box::box, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    push esi
    mov  esi, ecx
    call ??0object@@QAE@XZ ; object::object
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR _color$[esp]
    mov  ecx, DWORD PTR _width$[esp]
    mov  edx, DWORD PTR _height$[esp]
    mov  DWORD PTR [esi+4], eax
    mov  eax, DWORD PTR _depth$[esp]
    mov  DWORD PTR [esi+16], eax
    mov  DWORD PTR [esi], OFFSET ??_7box@@6B@
    mov  DWORD PTR [esi+8], ecx
    mov  DWORD PTR [esi+12], edx
    mov  eax, esi
    pop  esi
    ret  16
??0box@@QAE@HHHH@Z ENDP ; box::box

```

Here we see a slightly different memory layout: the first field is a pointer to some table `box::`vftable'` (the name has been set by the MSVC compiler).

In this table we see a link to a table named `box::`RTTI Complete Object Locator'` and also a link to the `box::dump()` method.

These are called virtual methods table and [RTTI](#)²⁹. The table of virtual methods has the addresses of methods and the [RTTI](#) table contains information about types.

By the way, the [RTTI](#) tables are used while calling `dynamic_cast` and `typeid` in C++. You can also see here the class name as a plain text string.

Thus, a method of the base `object` class may call the virtual method `object::dump()`, which in turn will call a method of an inherited class, since that information is present right in the object's structure.

Some additional CPU time is needed for doing look-ups in these tables and finding the right virtual method address, thus virtual methods are widely considered as slightly slower than common methods.

In GCC-generated code the [RTTI](#) tables are constructed slightly differently.

3.21.2 ostream

Let's start again with a "hello world" example, but now we are going to use `ostream`:

```
#include <iostream>
```

²⁹Run-Time Type Information

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```
int main()
{
    std::cout << "Hello, world!\n";
}
```

Almost any C++ textbook tells us that the `<<` operation can be defined (*overloaded*) for other types. That is what is done in *ostream*. We see that operator`<<` is called for *ostream*:

Listing 3.101: MSVC 2012 (reduced listing)

```
$SG37112 DB 'Hello, world!', 0aH, 00H

_main PROC
    push OFFSET $SG37112
    push OFFSET ?cout@std@@3V?$basic_ostream@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@@1@A ;
    std::cout
    call ??$?6U?$char_traits@D@std@@@std@@YAAV?$basic_ostream@DU?@
    ↴ $char_traits@D@std@@@0@AAV10@PBD@Z ;
    std::operator<<<std::char_traits<char> >
    add esp, 8
    xor eax, eax
    ret 0
_main ENDP
```

Let's modify the example:

```
#include <iostream>

int main()
{
    std::cout << "Hello, " << "world!\n";
}
```

And again, from many C++ textbooks we know that the result of each operator`<<` in *ostream* is forwarded to the next one. Indeed:

Listing 3.102: MSVC 2012

```
$SG37112 DB 'world!', 0aH, 00H
$SG37113 DB 'Hello, ', 00H

_main PROC
    push OFFSET $SG37113 ; 'Hello, '
    push OFFSET ?cout@std@@3V?$basic_ostream@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@@1@A ;
    std::cout
    call ??$?6U?$char_traits@D@std@@@std@@YAAV?$basic_ostream@DU?@
    ↴ $char_traits@D@std@@@0@AAV10@PBD@Z ;
    std::operator<<<std::char_traits<char> >
    add esp, 8

    push OFFSET $SG37112 ; 'world!'
    push eax           ; result of previous function execution
    call ??$?6U?$char_traits@D@std@@@std@@YAAV?$basic_ostream@DU?@
    ↴ $char_traits@D@std@@@0@AAV10@PBD@Z ;
    std::operator<<<std::char_traits<char> >
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

add esp, 8
xor eax, eax
ret 0
_main ENDP

```

If we would rename operator<< method name to f(), that code will looks like:

```
f(f(std::cout, "Hello, "), "world!");
```

GCC generates almost the same code as MSVC.

3.21.3 References

In C++, references are pointers ([3.23 on page 771](#)) as well, but they are called *safe*, because it is harder to make a mistake while dealing with them (C++11 8.3.2).

For example, reference must always be pointing to an object of the corresponding type and cannot be NULL [Marshall Cline, *C++ FAQ8.6*].

Even more than that, references cannot be changed, it is impossible to point them to another object (reseat) [Marshall Cline, *C++ FAQ8.5*].

If we are going to change the example with pointers ([3.23 on page 771](#)) to use references instead ...

```

void f2 (int x, int y, int & sum, int & product)
{
    sum=x+y;
    product=x*y;
}

```

...then we can see that the compiled code is just the same as in the pointers example ([3.23 on page 771](#)):

Listing 3.103: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```

_x$ = 8          ; size = 4
_y$ = 12         ; size = 4
_sum$ = 16        ; size = 4
_product$ = 20      ; size = 4
?f2@@YAXHAAH0@Z PROC    ; f2
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _y$[esp-4]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _x$[esp-4]
    lea     edx, DWORD PTR [eax+ecx]
    imul    eax, ecx
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _product$[esp-4]
    push   esi
    mov     esi, DWORD PTR _sum$[esp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [esi], edx
    mov     DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
    pop     esi
    ret     0
?f2@@YAXHAAH0@Z ENDP    ; f2

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

(The reason why C++ functions has such strange names is explained here: [3.21.1 on page 698](#).)

Hence, C++ references are as much efficient as usual pointers.

3.21.4 STL

N.B.: all examples here were checked only in 32-bit environment. x64 wasn't checked.

std::string

Internals

Many string libraries [Dennis Yurichev, *C/C++ programming language notes*2.2] implement a structure that contains a pointer to a string buffer, a variable that always contains the current string length (which is very convenient for many functions: [Dennis Yurichev, *C/C++ programming language notes*2.2.1]) and a variable containing the current buffer size.

The string in the buffer is usually terminated with zero, in order to be able to pass a pointer to the buffer into the functions that take usual C **ASCII** strings.

It is not specified in the C++ standard how `std::string` has to be implemented, however, it is usually implemented as explained above.

The C++ string is not a class (as `QString` in Qt, for instance) but a template (`basic_string`), this is made in order to support various character types: at least `char` and `wchar_t`.

So, `std::string` is a class with `char` as its base type.

And `std::wstring` is a class with `wchar_t` as its base type.

MSVC

The MSVC implementation may store the buffer in place instead of using a pointer to a buffer (if the string is shorter than 16 symbols).

This implies that a short string is to occupy at least $16 + 4 + 4 = 24$ bytes in 32-bit environment or at least $16 + 8 + 8 = 32$

bytes in 64-bit one, and if the string is longer than 16 characters, we also have to add the length of the string itself.

Listing 3.104: example for MSVC

```
#include <string>
#include <stdio.h>

struct std_string
{
    union
    {
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    char buf[16];
    char* ptr;
} u;
size_t size;      // AKA 'Mysize' in MSVC
size_t capacity; // AKA 'Myres' in MSVC
};

void dump_std_string(std::string s)
{
    struct std_string *p=(struct std_string*)&s;
    printf ("%[s] size:%d capacity:%d\n", p->size>16 ? p->u.ptr : p->u.buf, ↴
    ↴ p->size, p->capacity);
};

int main()
{
    std::string s1="a short string";
    std::string s2="a string longer than 16 bytes";

    dump_std_string(s1);
    dump_std_string(s2);

    // that works without using c_str()
    printf ("%s\n", &s1);
    printf ("%s\n", s2);
}

```

Almost everything is clear from the source code.

A couple of notes:

If the string is shorter than 16 symbols, a buffer for the string is not to be allocated in the [heap](#).

This is convenient because in practice, a lot of strings are short indeed.

Looks like that Microsoft's developers chose 16 characters as a good balance.

One very important thing here can be seen at the end of main(): we're not using the `c_str()` method, nevertheless, if we compile and run this code, both strings will appear in the console!

This is why it works.

In the first case the string is shorter than 16 characters and the buffer with the string is located in the beginning of the `std::string` object (it can be treated as a structure). `printf()` treats the pointer as a pointer to the null-terminated array of characters, hence it works.

Printing the second string (longer than 16 characters) is even more dangerous: it is a typical programmer's mistake (or typo) to forget to write `c_str()`.

This works because at the moment a pointer to buffer is located at the start of structure.

This may stay unnoticed for a long time, until a longer string appears there at some time, then the process will crash.

GCC

GCC's implementation of this structure has one more variable—reference count.

One interesting fact is that in GCC, a pointer to an instance of std::string instance points not to the beginning of the structure, but to the buffer pointer. In *libstdc++-v3\include\bits\basic_string.h* we can read that it was done for more convenient debugging:

- * The reason you want `_M_data` pointing to the character `%array` and
- * not the `_Rep` is so that the debugger can see the string
- * contents. (Probably we should add a non-inline member to get
- * the `_Rep` for the debugger to use, so users can check the actual
- * string length.)

[basic_string.h source code](#)

We consider this in our example:

Listing 3.105: example for GCC

```
#include <string>
#include <stdio.h>

struct std_string
{
    size_t length;
    size_t capacity;
    size_t refcount;
};

void dump_std_string(std::string s)
{
    char *p1=*(char**)&s; // GCC type checking workaround
    struct std_string *p2=(struct std_string*)(p1-offsetof(struct std_string) ↴
    ↴ );
    printf ("[%s] size:%d capacity:%d\n", p1, p2->length, p2->capacity);
}

int main()
{
    std::string s1="a short string";
    std::string s2="a string longer than 16 bytes";

    dump_std_string(s1);
    dump_std_string(s2);

    // GCC type checking workaround:
    printf ("%s\n", *(char**)&s1);
    printf ("%s\n", *(char**)&s2);
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
};
```

A trickery has to be used to imitate the mistake we already have seen above because GCC has stronger type checking, nevertheless, printf() works here without c_str() as well.

A more advanced example

```
#include <string>
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    std::string s1="Hello, ";
    std::string s2="world!\n";
    std::string s3=s1+s2;

    printf ("%s\n", s3.c_str());
}
```

Listing 3.106: MSVC 2012

```
$SG39512 DB 'Hello, ', 00H
$SG39514 DB 'world!', 0aH, 00H
$SG39581 DB '%s', 0aH, 00H

_s2$ = -72 ; size = 24
_s3$ = -48 ; size = 24
_s1$ = -24 ; size = 24
_main PROC
    sub esp, 72

    push 7
    push OFFSET $SG39512
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+80]
    mov DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+100], 15
    mov DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+96], 0
    mov BYTE PTR _s1$[esp+80], 0
    call ?assign@?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?`$allocator@D@2@@std@@QAEAAV12@PBDI@Z ;
    std::basic_string<char, std::char_traits<char>, std::allocator<char> >::assign

    push 7
    push OFFSET $SG39514
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+80]
    mov DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+100], 15
    mov DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+96], 0
    mov BYTE PTR _s2$[esp+80], 0
    call ?assign@?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?`$allocator@D@2@@std@@QAEAAV12@PBDI@Z ;
    std::basic_string<char, std::char_traits<char>, std::allocator<char> >::assign
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+72]
    push   eax
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+76]
    push   eax
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+80]
    push   eax
    call   ??$?HDU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@1@@std@@YA?AV?$
    ↴ $basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?$allocator@D@2@@@ABV10@0@Z ;
    std::operator<char,std::char_traits<char>,std::allocator<char> >

    ; inlined c_str() method:
    cmp    DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+104], 16
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+84]
    cmovae eax, DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+84]

    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG39581
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 20

    cmp    DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+92], 16
    jb    SHORT $LN119@main
    push  DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+72]
    call   ??3@YAXPAX@Z           ; operator delete
    add    esp, 4

$LN119@main:
    cmp    DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+92], 16
    mov   DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+92], 15
    mov   DWORD PTR _s3$[esp+88], 0
    mov   BYTE PTR _s3$[esp+72], 0
    jb    SHORT $LN151@main
    push  DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+72]
    call   ??3@YAXPAX@Z           ; operator delete
    add    esp, 4

$LN151@main:
    cmp    DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+92], 16
    mov   DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+92], 15
    mov   DWORD PTR _s2$[esp+88], 0
    mov   BYTE PTR _s2$[esp+72], 0
    jb    SHORT $LN195@main
    push  DWORD PTR _s1$[esp+72]
    call   ??3@YAXPAX@Z           ; operator delete
    add    esp, 4

$LN195@main:
    xor    eax, eax
    add    esp, 72
    ret    0
_main ENDP

```

The compiler does not construct strings statically: it would not be possible anyway if the buffer needs to be located in the [heap](#).

Instead, the [ASCII](#) strings are stored in the data segment, and later, at runtime,

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

with the help of the “assign” method, the s1 and s2 strings are constructed. And with the help of operator+, the s3 string is constructed.

Please note that there is no call to the `c_str()` method, because its code is tiny enough so the compiler inlined it right there: if the string is shorter than 16 characters, a pointer to buffer is left in EAX, otherwise the address of the string buffer located in the `heap` is fetched.

Next, we see calls to the 3 destructors, they are called if the string is longer than 16 characters: then the buffers in the `heap` have to be freed. Otherwise, since all three `std::string` objects are stored in the stack, they are freed automatically, when the function ends.

As a consequence, processing short strings is faster, because of less `heap` accesses.

GCC code is even simpler (because the GCC way, as we saw above, is to not store shorter strings right in the structure):

Listing 3.107: GCC 4.8.1

```
.LC0:
    .string "Hello, "
.LC1:
    .string "world!\n"
main:
    push ebp
    mov  ebp, esp
    push edi
    push esi
    push ebx
    and  esp, -16
    sub  esp, 32
    lea   ebx, [esp+28]
    lea   edi, [esp+20]
    mov  DWORD PTR [esp+8], ebx
    lea   esi, [esp+24]
    mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    mov  DWORD PTR [esp], edi

    call _ZNSsC1EPKcRKSaIcE

    mov  DWORD PTR [esp+8], ebx
    mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:.LC1
    mov  DWORD PTR [esp], esi

    call _ZNSsC1EPKcRKSaIcE

    mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], edi
    mov  DWORD PTR [esp], ebx

    call _ZNSsC1ERKSs

    mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], esi
    mov  DWORD PTR [esp], ebx
```

```

call _ZNSs6appendERKSs

; inlined c_str():
mov  eax, DWORD PTR [esp+28]
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], eax

call puts

mov  eax, DWORD PTR [esp+28]
lea   ebx, [esp+19]
mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], ebx
sub  eax, 12
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], eax
call _ZNSs4_Rep10_M_DisposeERKSaIcE
mov  eax, DWORD PTR [esp+24]
mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], ebx
sub  eax, 12
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], eax
call _ZNSs4_Rep10_M_DisposeERKSaIcE
mov  eax, DWORD PTR [esp+20]
mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], ebx
sub  eax, 12
mov  DWORD PTR [esp], eax
call _ZNSs4_Rep10_M_DisposeERKSaIcE
lea   esp, [ebp-12]
xor  eax, eax
pop  ebx
pop  esi
pop  edi
pop  ebp
ret

```

It can be seen that it's not a pointer to the object that is passed to destructors, but rather an address 12 bytes (or 3 words) before, i.e., a pointer to the real start of the structure.

std::string as a global variable

Experienced C++ programmers know that global variables of [STL³⁰](#) types can be defined without problems.

Yes, indeed:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <string>

std::string s="a string";

int main()
{

```

³⁰(C++) Standard Template Library

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```
    printf ("%s\n", s.c_str());
};
```

But how and where std::string constructor will be called?

In fact, this variable is to be initialized even before main() start.

Listing 3.108: MSVC 2012: here is how a global variable is constructed and also its destructor is registered

```
??_Es@@YAXXZ PROC
    push 8
    push OFFSET $SG39512 ; 'a string'
    mov  ecx, OFFSET ?s@?3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?@
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@A ;
    s
    call ?assign@?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?@
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@QAEAV12@PBDI@Z ;
    std::basic_string<char,std::char_traits<char>,std::allocator<char> >::assign
    push OFFSET ??__Fs@@YAXXZ ; `dynamic atexit destructor for 's''
    call _atexit
    pop  ecx
    ret  0
??_Es@@YAXXZ ENDP
```

Listing 3.109: MSVC 2012: here a global variable is used in main()

```
$SG39512 DB 'a string', 00H
$SG39519 DB '%s', 0aH, 00H

_main PROC
    cmp  DWORD PTR ?s@?3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?@
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@A+20, 16
    mov  eax, OFFSET ?s@?3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?@
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@A ;
    s
    cmovae eax, DWORD PTR ?s@?3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?@
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@A
    push eax
    push OFFSET $SG39519 ; '%s'
    call _printf
    add  esp, 8
    xor  eax, eax
    ret  0
_main ENDP
```

Listing 3.110: MSVC 2012: this destructor function is called before exit

```
??__Fs@@YAXXZ PROC
    push ecx
    cmp  DWORD PTR ?s@?3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?@
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@A+20, 16
    jb   SHORT $LN23@dynamic
    push esi
    mov  esi, DWORD PTR ?s@?3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?@
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@A
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR $T2[esp+8]
    call   ??0$_Wrap_alloc@V?$allocator@D@std@@@std@@QAE@XZ
    push   OFFSET ?s@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?_
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@A ;
    S
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR $T2[esp+12]
    call   ??$destroy@PAD@?$_Wrap_alloc@V?$allocator@D@std@@@std@@QAE@XZ
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR $T1[esp+8]
    call   ??0$_Wrap_alloc@V?$allocator@D@std@@@std@@QAE@XZ
    push   esi
    call   ??3@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
    add    esp, 4
    pop    esi
$LN23@dynamic:
    mov    DWORD PTR ?s@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?_
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@A+20, 15
    mov    DWORD PTR ?s@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?_
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@A+16, 0
    mov    BYTE PTR ?s@3V?$basic_string@DU?$char_traits@D@std@@V?_
    ↴ $allocator@D@2@@std@@A, 0
    pop    ecx
    ret    0
??_Fs@YAXXZ ENDP

```

In fact, a special function with all constructors of global variables is called from [CRT](#), before main().

More than that: with the help of atexit() another function is registered, which contain calls to all destructors of such global variables.

GCC works likewise:

Listing 3.111: GCC 4.8.1

```

main:
    push  ebp
    mov   ebp, esp
    and   esp, -16
    sub   esp, 16
    mov   eax, DWORD PTR s
    mov   DWORD PTR [esp], eax
    call  puts
    xor   eax, eax
    leave
    ret
.LC0:
    .string "a string"
_GLOBAL_sub_I_s:
    sub   esp, 44
    lea   eax, [esp+31]
    mov   DWORD PTR [esp+8], eax
    mov   DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    mov   DWORD PTR [esp], OFFSET FLAT:s
    call  _ZNSSC1EPKcRKSaIcE
    mov   DWORD PTR [esp+8], OFFSET FLAT:_dso_handle

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov  DWORD PTR [esp+4], OFFSET FLAT:s
mov  DWORD PTR [esp],  OFFSET FLAT:_ZNSsD1Ev
call _cxa_atexit
add  esp, 44
ret
.LFE645:
.size _GLOBAL__sub_I_s, .-_GLOBAL__sub_I_s
.section .init_array,"aw"
.align 4
.long _GLOBAL__sub_I_s
.globl s
.bss
.align 4
.type  s, @object
.size  s, 4
s:
.zero 4
.hidden __dso_handle

```

But it does not create a separate function for this, each destructor is passed to atexit(), one by one.

std::list

This is the well-known doubly-linked list: each element has two pointers, to the previous and next elements.

This implies that the memory footprint is enlarged by 2 [words](#) for each element (8 bytes in 32-bit environment or 16 bytes in 64-bit).

C++ STL just adds the “next” and “previous” pointers to the existing structure of the type that you want to unite in a list.

Let’s work out an example with a simple 2-variable structure that we want to store in a list.

Although the C++ standard does not say how to implement it, both MSVC’s and GCC’s implementations are straightforward and similar, so here is only one source code for both:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <list>
#include <iostream>

struct a
{
    int x;
    int y;
};

struct List_node
{
    struct List_node* _Next;
    struct List_node* _Prev;

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    int x;
    int y;
};

void dump_List_node (struct List_node *n)
{
    printf ("ptr=0x%p _Next=0x%p _Prev=0x%p x=%d y=%d\n",
            n, n->_Next, n->_Prev, n->x, n->y);
};

void dump_List_vals (struct List_node* n)
{
    struct List_node* current=n;

    for (;;)
    {
        dump_List_node (current);
        current=current->_Next;
        if (current==n) // end
            break;
    };
};

void dump_List_val (unsigned int *a)
{
#ifdef _MSC_VER
    // GCC implementation does not have "size" field
    printf ("_Myhead=0x%p, _Mysize=%d\n", a[0], a[1]);
#endif
    dump_List_vals ((struct List_node*)a[0]);
};

int main()
{
    std::list<struct a> l;

    printf ("* empty list:\n");
    dump_List_val((unsigned int*)(void*)&l);

    struct a t1;
    t1.x=1;
    t1.y=2;
    l.push_front (t1);
    t1.x=3;
    t1.y=4;
    l.push_front (t1);
    t1.x=5;
    t1.y=6;
    l.push_back (t1);

    printf ("* 3-elements list:\n");
    dump_List_val((unsigned int*)(void*)&l);
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    std::list<struct a>::iterator tmp;
    printf ("node at .begin:\n");
    tmp=l.begin();
    dump_List_node ((struct List_node *)*(void**)&tmp);
    printf ("node at .end:\n");
    tmp=l.end();
    dump_List_node ((struct List_node *)*(void**)&tmp);

    printf ("* let's count from the beginning:\n");
    std::list<struct a>::iterator it=l.begin();
    printf ("1st element: %d %d\n", (*it).x, (*it).y);
    it++;
    printf ("2nd element: %d %d\n", (*it).x, (*it).y);
    it++;
    printf ("3rd element: %d %d\n", (*it).x, (*it).y);
    it++;
    printf ("element at .end(): %d %d\n", (*it).x, (*it).y);

    printf ("* let's count from the end:\n");
    std::list<struct a>::iterator it2=l.end();
    printf ("element at .end(): %d %d\n", (*it2).x, (*it2).y);
    it2--;
    printf ("3rd element: %d %d\n", (*it2).x, (*it2).y);
    it2--;
    printf ("2nd element: %d %d\n", (*it2).x, (*it2).y);
    it2--;
    printf ("1st element: %d %d\n", (*it2).x, (*it2).y);

    printf ("removing last element...\n");
    l.pop_back();
    dump_List_val((unsigned int*)(void*)&l);
}

```

GCC

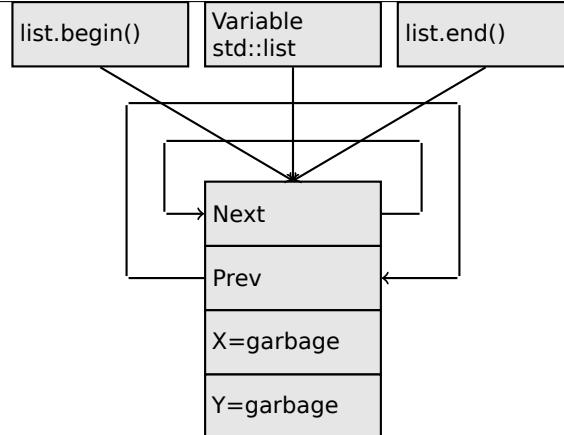
Let's start with GCC.

When we run the example, we'll see a long dump, let's work with it in pieces.

```
* empty list:
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x0028fe90 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=0
```

Here we see an empty list.

Despite the fact it is empty, it has one element with garbage ([AKA dummy node](#)) in *x* and *y*. Both the “next” and “prev” pointers are pointing to the self node:



At this moment, the .begin and .end iterators are equal to each other.

If we push 3 elements, the list internally will be:

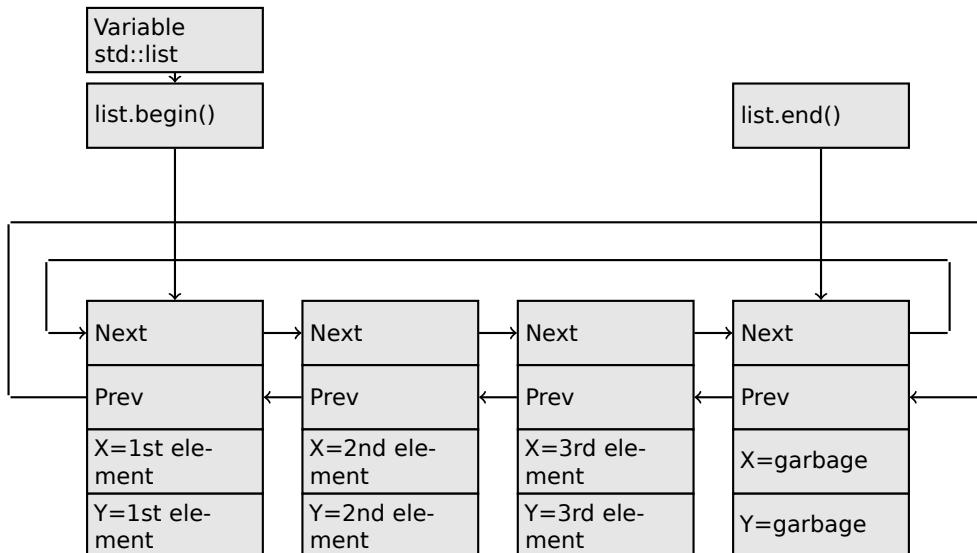
```

* 3-elements list:
ptr=0x000349a0 _Next=0x00034988 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=4
ptr=0x00034988 _Next=0x00034b40 _Prev=0x000349a0 x=1 y=2
ptr=0x00034b40 _Next=0x0028fe90 _Prev=0x00034988 x=5 y=6
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x000349a0 _Prev=0x00034b40 x=5 y=6
  
```

The last element is still at 0x0028fe90, it not to be moved until the list's disposal.

It still contain random garbage in *x* and *y* (5 and 6). By coincidence, these values are the same as in the last element, but it doesn't mean that they are meaningful.

Here is how these 3 elements are stored in memory:



The *l* variable always points to the first node.

The `.begin()` and `.end()` iterators are not variables, but functions, which when called return pointers to the corresponding nodes.

Having a dummy element (AKA *sentinel node*) is a very popular practice in implementing doubly-linked lists.

Without it, a lot of operations may become slightly more complex and, hence, slower.

The iterator is in fact just a pointer to a node. `list.begin()` and `list.end()` just return pointers.

```
node at .begin:  
ptr=0x000349a0 _Next=0x00034988 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=4  
node at .end:  
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x000349a0 _Prev=0x00034b40 x=5 y=6
```

The fact that the last element has a pointer to the first and the first element has a pointer to the last one remind us of circular lists.

This is very helpful here: having a pointer to the first list element, i.e., that is in the `l` variable, it is easy to get a pointer to the last one quickly, without the necessity to traverse the whole list.

Inserting an element at the end of the list is also quick, thanks to this feature.

`operator--` and `operator++` just set the current iterator's value to the `current_node->prev` or `current_node->next` values.

The reverse iterators (`.rbegin`, `.rend`) work just as the same, but in reverse.

`operator*` just returns a pointer to the point in the node structure, where the user's structure starts, i.e., a pointer to the first element of the structure (`x`).

The list insertion and deletion are trivial: just allocate a new node (or deallocate) and update all pointers to be valid.

That's why an iterator may become invalid after element deletion: it may still point to the node that has been already deallocated. This is also called a *dangling pointer*.

And of course, the information from the freed node (to which iterator still points) cannot be used anymore.

The GCC implementation (as of 4.8.1) doesn't store the current size of the list: this implies a slow `.size()` method: it has to traverse the whole list to count the elements, because it doesn't have any other way to get the information.

This means that this operation is $O(n)$, i.e., it steadily gets slower as the list grows.

Listing 3.112: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 -fno-inline-small-functions

```
main proc near
    push ebp
    mov  ebp, esp
    push esi
    push ebx
    and  esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
    sub  esp, 20h
    lea   ebx, [esp+10h]
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov dword ptr [esp], offset s ; /* empty list:*/
mov [esp+10h], ebx
mov [esp+14h], ebx
call puts
mov [esp], ebx
call _Z13dump_List_valPj ; dump_List_val(uint *)
lea esi, [esp+18h]
mov [esp+4], esi
mov [esp], ebx
mov dword ptr [esp+18h], 1 ; X for new element
mov dword ptr [esp+1Ch], 2 ; Y for new element
call _ZNSt4listIlaSaIS0_EE10push_frontERKS0_ ;
std::list<a, std::allocator<a>>::push_front(a const&)
mov [esp+4], esi
mov [esp], ebx
mov dword ptr [esp+18h], 3 ; X for new element
mov dword ptr [esp+1Ch], 4 ; Y for new element
call _ZNSt4listIlaSaIS0_EE10push_frontERKS0_ ;
std::list<a, std::allocator<a>>::push_front(a const&)
mov dword ptr [esp], 10h
mov dword ptr [esp+18h], 5 ; X for new element
mov dword ptr [esp+1Ch], 6 ; Y for new element
call _Znwj ; operator new(uint)
cmp eax, 0xFFFFFFFF8h
jz short loc_80002A6
mov ecx, [esp+1Ch]
mov edx, [esp+18h]
mov [eax+0Ch], ecx
mov [eax+8], edx

loc_80002A6: ; CODE XREF: main+86
    mov [esp+4], ebx
    mov [esp], eax
    call _ZNSt8_detail15_List_node_base7_M_hookEPS0_ ;
    std::detail::_List_node_base::M_hook(std::detail::_List_node_base*)
    mov dword ptr [esp], offset a3ElementsList ; /* 3-elements list:*/
    call puts
    mov [esp], ebx
    call _Z13dump_List_valPj ; dump_List_val(uint *)
    mov dword ptr [esp], offset aNodeAt_begin ; "node at .begin:"
    call puts
    mov eax, [esp+10h]
    mov [esp], eax
    call _Z14dump_List_nodeP9List_node ; dump_List_node(List_node *)
    mov dword ptr [esp], offset aNodeAt_end ; "node at .end:"
    call puts
    mov [esp], ebx
    call _Z14dump_List_nodeP9List_node ; dump_List_node(List_node *)
    mov dword ptr [esp], offset aLetSCountFromT ; /* let's count from the
beginning:*/
    call puts
    mov esi, [esp+10h]
    mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
    mov [esp+0Ch], eax

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov eax, [esi+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset alstElementDD ; "1st element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov esi, [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esi+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset a2ndElementDD ; "2nd element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov esi, [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esi+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset a3rdElementDD ; "3rd element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov eax, [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
mov edx, [eax+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], edx
mov eax, [eax+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset aElementAt_endD ;
"element at .end(): %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov dword ptr [esp], offset aLetSCountFro_0 ; "* let's count from the
end:"
call puts
mov eax, [esp+1Ch]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset aElementAt_endD ;
"element at .end(): %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esp+18h]
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov esi, [esp+14h]
mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esi+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset a3rdElementDD ; "3rd element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov esi, [esi+4] ; operator--: get ->prev pointer
mov eax, [esi+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], eax
mov eax, [esi+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset a2ndElementDD ; "2nd element: %d %d\n"

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov eax, [esi+4] ; operator--: get ->prev pointer
mov edx, [eax+0Ch]
mov [esp+0Ch], edx
mov eax, [eax+8]
mov dword ptr [esp+4], offset alstElementDD ; "1st element: %d %d\n"
mov dword ptr [esp], 1
mov [esp+8], eax
call __printf_chk
mov dword ptr [esp], offset aRemovingLastEl ; "removing last element..."
call puts
mov esi, [esp+14h]
mov [esp], esi
call _ZNSt8__detail15_List_node_base9_M_unhookEv ;
std::list::list_node_base::M_unhook(void)
mov [esp], esi ; void *
call _ZdlPv ; operator delete(void *)
mov [esp], ebx
call _Z13dump_List_valPj ; dump_List_val(uint *)
mov [esp], ebx
call _ZNSt10_List_baseI1aSaIS0_EE8_M_clearEv ;
std::list_base<a, std::allocator<a>>::M_clear(void)
lea esp, [ebp-8]
xor eax, eax
pop ebx
pop esi
pop ebp
retn
main endp

```

Listing 3.113: The whole output

```

* empty list:
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x0028fe90 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=0
* 3-elements list:
ptr=0x000349a0 _Next=0x00034988 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=4
ptr=0x00034988 _Next=0x00034b40 _Prev=0x000349a0 x=1 y=2
ptr=0x00034b40 _Next=0x0028fe90 _Prev=0x00034988 x=5 y=6
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x000349a0 _Prev=0x00034b40 x=5 y=6
node at .begin:
ptr=0x000349a0 _Next=0x00034988 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=4
node at .end:
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x000349a0 _Prev=0x00034b40 x=5 y=6
* let's count from the beginning:
1st element: 3 4
2nd element: 1 2
3rd element: 5 6
element at .end(): 5 6
* let's count from the end:
element at .end(): 5 6
3rd element: 5 6
2nd element: 1 2

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
1st element: 3 4
removing last element...
ptr=0x000349a0 _Next=0x00034988 _Prev=0x0028fe90 x=3 y=4
ptr=0x00034988 _Next=0x0028fe90 _Prev=0x000349a0 x=1 y=2
ptr=0x0028fe90 _Next=0x000349a0 _Prev=0x00034988 x=5 y=6
```

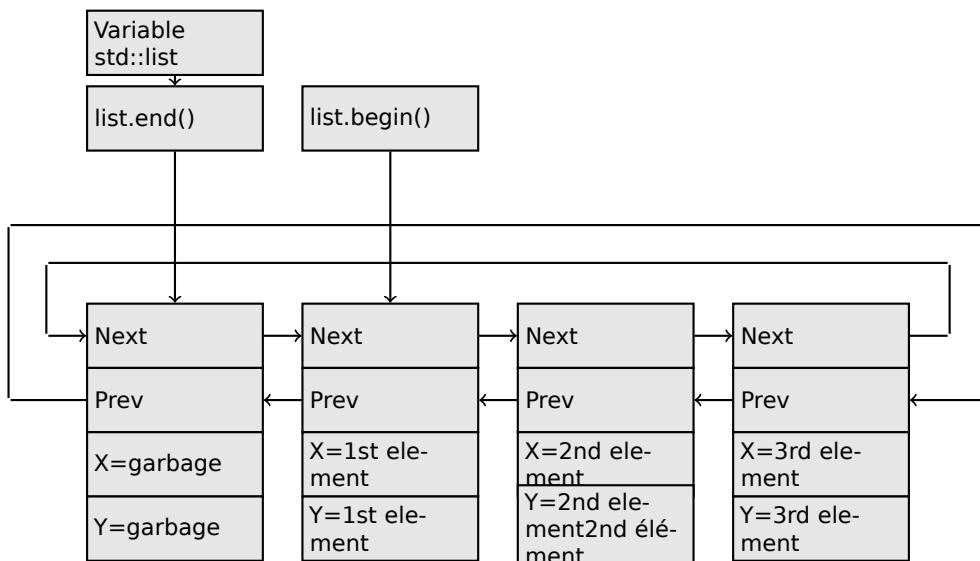
MSVC

MSVC's implementation (2012) is just the same, but it also stores the current size of the list.

This implies that the `.size()` method is very fast ($O(1)$): it just reads one value from memory.

On the other hand, the size variable must be updated at each insertion/deletion.

MSVC's implementation is also slightly different in the way it arranges the nodes:



GCC has its dummy element at the end of the list, while MSVC's is at the beginning.

Listing 3.114: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Fa2.asm /GS- /Ob1

```
_l$ = -16 ; size = 8
_t1$ = -8 ; size = 8
_main    PROC
    sub esp, 16
    push ebx
    push esi
    push edi
    push 0
    push 0
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+36]
    mov DWORD PTR _l$[esp+40], 0
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; allocate first garbage element
call ?_Buynode@?$_List_alloc@$0A@U?$_List_base_types@Ua@V? ↵
↳ $allocator@Ua@@@std@@@std@@@std@@@QAEPAU? ↵
↳ $_List_node@Ua@@@PAX@2@PAU32@0@Z ;
std:: List alloc<0,std:: List_base_types<a,std::allocator<a> >::_Buynode0
mov edi, DWORD PTR __imp_printf
mov ebx, eax
push OFFSET $SG40685 ; /* empty list: */
mov DWORD PTR _l$[esp+32], ebx
call edi ; printf
lea eax, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+32]
push eax
call ?dump_List_val@YAXPAI@Z ; dump_List_val
mov esi, DWORD PTR [ebx]
add esp, 8
lea eax, DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+28]
push eax
push DWORD PTR [esi+4]
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+36]
push esi
mov DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+40], 1 ; data for a new node
mov DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+44], 2 ; data for a new node
; allocate new node
call ??$_Buynode@ABUa@@@?$_List_buy@Ua@@V? ↵
↳ $allocator@Ua@@@std@@@std@@@QAEPAU? ↵
↳ $_List_node@Ua@@@PAX@1@PAU21@0ABUa@@@Z ;
std:: List_buy<a,std::allocator<a> >::_Buynode<a const &>
mov DWORD PTR [esi+4], eax
mov ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
mov DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+28], 3 ; data for a new node
mov DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
mov esi, DWORD PTR [ebx]
lea eax, DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+28]
push eax
push DWORD PTR [esi+4]
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+36]
push esi
mov DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+44], 4 ; data for a new node
; allocate new node
call ??$_Buynode@ABUa@@@?$_List_buy@Ua@@V? ↵
↳ $allocator@Ua@@@std@@@std@@@QAEPAU? ↵
↳ $_List_node@Ua@@@PAX@1@PAU21@0ABUa@@@Z ;
std:: List_buy<a,std::allocator<a> >::_Buynode<a const &>
mov DWORD PTR [esi+4], eax
mov ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
mov DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+28], 5 ; data for a new node
mov DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
lea eax, DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+28]
push eax
push DWORD PTR [ebx+4]
lea ecx, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+36]
push ebx
mov DWORD PTR _t1$[esp+44], 6 ; data for a new node
; allocate new node

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

call ??$_Buynode@ABUa@@@?$_List_buy@Ua@@V?@
↳ $allocator@Ua@@@std@@@std@@QAEPAU?@
↳ $_List_node@Ua@@@PAX@1@PAU21@0ABUa@@@Z ;
std:: _List_buy<a,std::allocator<a> >::_Buynode<a const &>
    mov    DWORD PTR [ebx+4], eax
    mov    ecx,  DWORD PTR [eax+4]
    push   OFFSET $SG40689 ; /* 3-elements list: */
    mov    DWORD PTR _l$[esp+36], 3
    mov    DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
    call   edi ; printf
    lea    eax,  DWORD PTR _l$[esp+32]
    push   eax
    call   ?dump_List_val@YAXPAI@Z ; dump_List_val
    push   OFFSET $SG40831 ; 'node at .begin:'
    call   edi ; printf
    push  DWORD PTR [ebx] ; get next field of node "l" variable points to
    call  ?dump_List_node@YAXPAUList_node@@@Z ; dump_List_node
    push  OFFSET $SG40835 ; 'node at .end:'
    call  edi ; printf
    push  ebx ; pointer to the node "l" variable points to!
    call  ?dump_List_node@@YAXPAUList_node@@@Z ; dump_List_node
    push  OFFSET $SG40839 ; /* let's count from the begin:*/
    call  edi ; printf
    mov   esi,  DWORD PTR [ebx] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
    push  DWORD PTR [esi+12]
    push  DWORD PTR [esi+8]
    push  OFFSET $SG40846 ; '1st element: %d %d'
    call  edi ; printf
    mov   esi,  DWORD PTR [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
    push  DWORD PTR [esi+12]
    push  DWORD PTR [esi+8]
    push  OFFSET $SG40848 ; '2nd element: %d %d'
    call  edi ; printf
    mov   esi,  DWORD PTR [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
    push  DWORD PTR [esi+12]
    push  DWORD PTR [esi+8]
    push  OFFSET $SG40850 ; '3rd element: %d %d'
    call  edi ; printf
    mov   eax,  DWORD PTR [esi] ; operator++: get ->next pointer
    add   esp, 64
    push  DWORD PTR [eax+12]
    push  DWORD PTR [eax+8]
    push  OFFSET $SG40852 ; 'element at .end(): %d %d'
    call  edi ; printf
    push  OFFSET $SG40853 ; /* let's count from the end:*/
    call  edi ; printf
    push  DWORD PTR [ebx+12] ; use x and y fields from the node "l" variable
    points to
    push  DWORD PTR [ebx+8]
    push  OFFSET $SG40860 ; 'element at .end(): %d %d'
    call  edi ; printf
    mov   esi,  DWORD PTR [ebx+4] ; operator--: get ->prev pointer
    push  DWORD PTR [esi+12]
    push  DWORD PTR [esi+8]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push OFFSET $SG40862 ; '3rd element: %d %d'
call edi ; printf
mov esi, DWORD PTR [esi+4] ; operator--: get ->prev pointer
push DWORD PTR [esi+12]
push DWORD PTR [esi+8]
push OFFSET $SG40864 ; '2nd element: %d %d'
call edi ; printf
mov eax, DWORD PTR [esi+4] ; operator--: get ->prev pointer
push DWORD PTR [eax+12]
push DWORD PTR [eax+8]
push OFFSET $SG40866 ; '1st element: %d %d'
call edi ; printf
add esp, 64
push OFFSET $SG40867 ; 'removing last element...'
call edi ; printf
mov edx, DWORD PTR [ebx+4]
add esp, 4

; prev=next?
; it is the only element, garbage one?
; if yes, do not delete it!
cmp edx, ebx
je SHORT $LN349@main
mov ecx, DWORD PTR [edx+4]
mov eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
mov DWORD PTR [ecx], eax
mov ecx, DWORD PTR [edx]
mov eax, DWORD PTR [edx+4]
push edx
mov DWORD PTR [ecx+4], eax
call ??3@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
add esp, 4
mov DWORD PTR _l$[esp+32], 2
$LN349@main:
lea eax, DWORD PTR _l$[esp+28]
push eax
call ?dump_List_val@@YAXPAI@Z ; dump_List_val
mov eax, DWORD PTR [ebx]
add esp, 4
mov DWORD PTR [ebx], ebx
mov DWORD PTR [ebx+4], ebx
cmp eax, ebx
je SHORT $LN412@main
$LL414@main:
mov esi, DWORD PTR [eax]
push eax
call ??3@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
add esp, 4
mov eax, esi
cmp esi, ebx
jne SHORT $LL414@main
$LN412@main:
push ebx

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

call ??3@YAXPAX@Z ; operator delete
add esp, 4
xor eax, eax
pop edi
pop esi
pop ebx
add esp, 16
ret 0
_main ENDP

```

Unlike GCC, MSVC's code allocates the dummy element at the start of the function with the help of the "Buynode" function, it is also used to allocate the rest of the nodes (GCC's code allocates the first element in the local stack).

Listing 3.115: The whole output

```

* empty list:
_Myhead=0x003CC258, _Mysize=0
ptr=0x003CC258 _Next=0x003CC258 _Prev=0x003CC258 x=6226002 y=4522072
* 3-elements list:
_Myhead=0x003CC258, _Mysize=3
ptr=0x003CC258 _Next=0x003CC288 _Prev=0x003CC2A0 x=6226002 y=4522072
ptr=0x003CC288 _Next=0x003CC270 _Prev=0x003CC258 x=3 y=4
ptr=0x003CC270 _Next=0x003CC2A0 _Prev=0x003CC288 x=1 y=2
ptr=0x003CC2A0 _Next=0x003CC258 _Prev=0x003CC270 x=5 y=6
node at .begin:
ptr=0x003CC288 _Next=0x003CC270 _Prev=0x003CC258 x=3 y=4
node at .end:
ptr=0x003CC258 _Next=0x003CC288 _Prev=0x003CC2A0 x=6226002 y=4522072
* let's count from the beginning:
1st element: 3 4
2nd element: 1 2
3rd element: 5 6
element at .end(): 6226002 4522072
* let's count from the end:
element at .end(): 6226002 4522072
3rd element: 5 6
2nd element: 1 2
1st element: 3 4
removing last element...
_Myhead=0x003CC258, _Mysize=2
ptr=0x003CC258 _Next=0x003CC288 _Prev=0x003CC270 x=6226002 y=4522072
ptr=0x003CC288 _Next=0x003CC270 _Prev=0x003CC258 x=3 y=4
ptr=0x003CC270 _Next=0x003CC258 _Prev=0x003CC288 x=1 y=2

```

C++11 std::forward_list

The same thing as std::list, but singly-linked one, i.e., having only the "next" field at each node.

It has a smaller memory footprint, but also don't offer the ability to traverse list backwards.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

std::vector

We would call `std::vector` a safe wrapper of the PODT³¹ C array. Internally it is somewhat similar to `std::string` ([3.21.4 on page 721](#)): it has a pointer to the allocated buffer, a pointer to the end of the array, and a pointer to the end of the allocated buffer.

The array's elements lie in memory adjacently to each other, just like in a normal array ([1.26 on page 330](#)). In C++11 there is a new method called `.data()`, that returns a pointer to the buffer, like `.c_str()` in `std::string`.

The buffer allocated in the `heap` can be larger than the array itself.

Both MSVC's and GCC's implementations are similar, just the names of the structure's fields are slightly different³², so here is one source code that works for both compilers. Here is again the C-like code for dumping the structure of `std::vector`:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <vector>
#include <algorithm>
#include <functional>

struct vector_of_ints
{
    // MSVC names:
    int *Myfirst;
    int *Mylast;
    int *Myend;

    // GCC structure is the same, but names are:
    _M_start, _M_finish, _M_end_of_storage
};

void dump(struct vector_of_ints *in)
{
    printf ("_Myfirst=%p, _Mylast=%p, _Myend=%p\n", in->Myfirst, in->Mylast,
           in->Myend);
    size_t size=(in->Mylast-in->Myfirst);
    size_t capacity=(in->Myend-in->Myfirst);
    printf ("size=%d, capacity=%d\n", size, capacity);
    for (size_t i=0; i<size; i++)
        printf ("element %d: %d\n", i, in->Myfirst[i]);
}

int main()
{
    std::vector<int> c;
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*)(void*)&c);
    c.push_back(1);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*)(void*)&c);
    c.push_back(2);
```

³¹(C++) Plain Old Data Type

³²GCC internals: <http://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/libstdc++/libstdc++-html-USERS-4.4/a01371.html>

```

    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*) (void*) &c);
    c.push_back(3);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*) (void*) &c);
    c.push_back(4);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*) (void*) &c);
    c.reserve(6);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*) (void*) &c);
    c.push_back(5);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*) (void*) &c);
    c.push_back(6);
    dump ((struct vector_of_ints*) (void*) &c);
    printf ("%d\n", c.at(5)); // with bounds checking
    printf ("%d\n", c[8]); // operator[], without bounds checking
};

}

```

Here is the output of this program when compiled in MSVC:

```

_Myfirst=00000000, _Mylast=00000000, _Myend=00000000
size=0, capacity=0
_Myfirst=0051CF48, _Mylast=0051CF4C, _Myend=0051CF4C
size=1, capacity=1
element 0: 1
_Myfirst=0051CF58, _Mylast=0051CF60, _Myend=0051CF60
size=2, capacity=2
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
_Myfirst=0051C278, _Mylast=0051C284, _Myend=0051C284
size=3, capacity=3
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
_Myfirst=0051C290, _Mylast=0051C2A0, _Myend=0051C2A0
size=4, capacity=4
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
_Myfirst=0051B180, _Mylast=0051B190, _Myend=0051B198
size=4, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
_Myfirst=0051B180, _Mylast=0051B194, _Myend=0051B198
size=5, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
element 4: 5
_Myfirst=0051B180, _Mylast=0051B198, _Myend=0051B198
size=6, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
element 4: 5
element 5: 6
6
6619158
```

As it can be seen, there is no allocated buffer when `main()` starts. After the first `push_back()` call, a buffer is allocated. And then, after each `push_back()` call, both array size and buffer size (*capacity*) are increased. But the buffer address changes as well, because `push_back()` reallocates the buffer in the [heap](#) each time. It is costly operation, that's why it is very important to predict the size of the array in the future and reserve enough space for it with the `.reserve()` method.

The last number is garbage: there are no array elements at this point, so a random number is printed. This illustrates the fact that `operator[]` of `std::vector` does not check if the index is in the array's bounds. The slower `.at()` method, however, does this checking and throws an `std::out_of_range` exception in case of error.

Let's see the code:

Listing 3.116: MSVC 2012 /GS- /Ob1

```
$SG52650 DB '%d', 0aH, 00H
$SG52651 DB '%d', 0aH, 00H

_this$ = -4 ; size = 4
_Pos$ = 8 ; size = 4
?at@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEAAHI@Z PROC ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::at, COMDAT
; _this$ = ecx
    push ebp
    mov ebp, esp
    push ecx
    mov DWORD PTR _this$[ebp], ecx
    mov eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
    mov ecx, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
    mov edx, DWORD PTR [eax+4]
    sub edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    sar edx, 2
    cmp edx, DWORD PTR __Pos$[ebp]
    ja SHORT $LN1@at
    push OFFSET ??_C@_0BM@NMJKDPP0@invalid?5vector?5DMT?5D0?5subscript?5AA@call DWORD PTR __imp_?_Xout_of_range@std@@YAXPBD@Z
$LN1@at:
    mov eax, DWORD PTR _this$[ebp]
    mov ecx, DWORD PTR [eax]
    mov edx, DWORD PTR __Pos$[ebp]
    lea eax, DWORD PTR [ecx+edx*4]
$LN3@at:
    mov esp, ebp
    pop ebp
    ret 4
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

?at@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEAAHI@Z ENDP ;
std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::at

_c$ = -36 ; size = 12
$T1 = -24 ; size = 4
$T2 = -20 ; size = 4
$T3 = -16 ; size = 4
$T4 = -12 ; size = 4
$T5 = -8 ; size = 4
$T6 = -4 ; size = 4
_main PROC
    push ebp
    mov ebp, esp
    sub esp, 36
    mov DWORD PTR _c$[ebp], 0      ; Myfirst
    mov DWORD PTR _c$[ebp+4], 0    ; Mylast
    mov DWORD PTR _c$[ebp+8], 0    ; Myend
    lea eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push eax
    call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add esp, 4
    mov DWORD PTR $T6[ebp], 1
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR $T6[ebp]
    push ecx
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call ?push_back@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAE$AQAH@Z ;
std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea edx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push edx
    call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add esp, 4
    mov DWORD PTR $T5[ebp], 2
    lea eax, DWORD PTR $T5[ebp]
    push eax
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call ?push_back@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAE$AQAH@Z ;
std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push ecx
    call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add esp, 4
    mov DWORD PTR $T4[ebp], 3
    lea edx, DWORD PTR $T4[ebp]
    push edx
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call ?push_back@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAE$AQAH@Z ;
std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push eax
    call ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add esp, 4
    mov DWORD PTR $T3[ebp], 4
    lea ecx, DWORD PTR $T3[ebp]
    push ecx

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call   ?push_back@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEX$$QAH@Z ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push   edx
    call   ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add    esp, 4
    push   6
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call   ?reserve@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEXI@Z ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::reserve
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push   eax
    call   ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add    esp, 4
    mov    DWORD PTR $T2[ebp], 5
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR $T2[ebp]
    push   ecx
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call   ?push_back@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEX$$QAH@Z ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea    edx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push   edx
    call   ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add    esp, 4
    mov    DWORD PTR $T1[ebp], 6
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR $T1[ebp]
    push   eax
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call   ?push_back@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEX$$QAH@Z ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::push_back
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    push   ecx
    call   ?dump@@YAXPAUvector_of_ints@@@Z ; dump
    add    esp, 4
    push   5
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call   ?at@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@QAEEAH@Z ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::at
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [eax]
    push   edx
    push   OFFSET $SG52650 ; '%d'
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add    esp, 8
    mov    eax, 8
    shl    eax, 2
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+eax]
    push   edx
    push   OFFSET $SG52651 ; '%d'
    call   DWORD PTR __imp__printf
    add    esp, 8
    lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    call   ?_Tidy@?$vector@HV?$allocator@H@std@@@std@@IAEXXZ ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int> >::_Tidy

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

xor  eax, eax
mov  esp, ebp
pop  ebp
ret  0
_main ENDP

```

We see how the `.at()` method checks the bounds and throws an exception in case of error. The number that the last `printf()` call prints is just taken from the memory, without any checks.

One may ask, why not use the variables like “size” and “capacity”, like it was done in `std::string`. Supposedly, this was done for faster bounds checking.

The code GCC generates is in general almost the same, but the `.at()` method is inlined:

Listing 3.117: GCC 4.8.1 -fno-inline-small-functions -O1

```

main proc near
    push ebp
    mov  ebp, esp
    push edi
    push esi
    push ebx
    and  esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
    sub  esp, 20h
    mov  dword ptr [esp+14h], 0
    mov  dword ptr [esp+18h], 0
    mov  dword ptr [esp+1Ch], 0
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
    mov  dword ptr [esp+10h], 1
    lea  eax, [esp+10h]
    mov  [esp+4], eax
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int>>::push_back(int const&)
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
    mov  dword ptr [esp+10h], 2
    lea  eax, [esp+10h]
    mov  [esp+4], eax
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int>>::push_back(int const&)
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
    mov  dword ptr [esp+10h], 3
    lea  eax, [esp+10h]
    mov  [esp+4], eax

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int>>::push_back(int const&)
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
    mov  dword ptr [esp+10h], 4
    lea  eax, [esp+10h]
    mov  [esp+4], eax
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int>>::push_back(int const&)
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
    mov  ebx, [esp+14h]
    mov  eax, [esp+1Ch]
    sub  eax, ebx
    cmp  eax, 17h
    ja   short loc_80001CF
    mov  edi, [esp+18h]
    sub  edi, ebx
    sar  edi, 2
    mov  dword ptr [esp], 18h
    call _Znwj          ; operator new(uint)
    mov  esi, eax
    test edi, edi
    jz   short loc_80001AD
    lea  eax, ds:0[edi*4]
    mov  [esp+8], eax    ; n
    mov  [esp+4], ebx    ; src
    mov  [esp], esi      ; dest
    call memmove

loc_80001AD: ; CODE XREF: main+F8
    mov  eax, [esp+14h]
    test eax, eax
    jz   short loc_80001BD
    mov  [esp], eax      ; void *
    call _ZdlPv          ; operator delete(void *)

loc_80001BD: ; CODE XREF: main+117
    mov  [esp+14h], esi
    lea  eax, [esi+edi*4]
    mov  [esp+18h], eax
    add  esi, 18h
    mov  [esp+1Ch], esi

loc_80001CF: ; CODE XREF: main+DD
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov  dword ptr [esp+10h], 5
    lea  eax, [esp+10h]
    mov  [esp+4], eax
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int>>::push_back(int const&)
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
    mov  dword ptr [esp+10h], 6
    lea  eax, [esp+10h]
    mov  [esp+4], eax
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _ZNSt6vectorIiSaIiEE9push_backERKi ;
    std::vector<int, std::allocator<int>>::push_back(int const&)
    lea  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  [esp], eax
    call _Z4dumpP14vector_of_ints ; dump(vector_of_ints *)
    mov  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  edx, [esp+18h]
    sub  edx, eax
    cmp  edx, 17h
    ja   short loc_8000246
    mov  dword ptr [esp], offset aVector_m_range ; "vector::_M_range_check"
    call _ZSt20__throw_out_of_rangePKc ;
    std::__throw_out_of_range(char const*)

loc_8000246:                                ; CODE XREF: main+19C
    mov  eax, [eax+14h]
    mov  [esp+8], eax
    mov  dword ptr [esp+4], offset aD ; "%d\n"
    mov  dword ptr [esp], 1
    call __printf_chk
    mov  eax, [esp+14h]
    mov  eax, [eax+20h]
    mov  [esp+8], eax
    mov  dword ptr [esp+4], offset aD ; "%d\n"
    mov  dword ptr [esp], 1
    call __printf_chk
    mov  eax, [esp+14h]
    test eax, eax
    jz   short loc_80002AC
    mov  [esp], eax      ; void *
    call _ZdlPv        ; operator delete(void *)
    jmp  short loc_80002AC

    mov  ebx, eax
    mov  edx, [esp+14h]
    test edx, edx
    jz   short loc_80002A4
    mov  [esp], edx      ; void *
    call _ZdlPv        ; operator delete(void *)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

loc_80002A4: ; CODE XREF: main+1FE
    mov    [esp], ebx
    call   _Unwind_Resume

loc_80002AC: ; CODE XREF: main+1EA
                ; main+1F4
    mov    eax, 0
    lea    esp, [ebp-0Ch]
    pop    ebx
    pop    esi
    pop    edi
    pop    ebp

locret_80002B8: ; DATA XREF: .eh_frame:08000510
                  ; .eh_frame:080005BC
    retn
main endp

```

.reserve() is inlined as well. It calls new() if the buffer is too small for the new size, calls memmove() to copy the contents of the buffer, and calls delete() to free the old buffer.

Let's also see what the compiled program outputs if compiled with GCC:

```

_Myfirst=0x(nil), _Mylast=0x(nil), _Myend=0x(nil)
size=0, capacity=0
_Myfirst=0x8257008, _Mylast=0x825700c, _Myend=0x825700c
size=1, capacity=1
element 0: 1
_Myfirst=0x8257018, _Mylast=0x8257020, _Myend=0x8257020
size=2, capacity=2
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
_Myfirst=0x8257028, _Mylast=0x8257034, _Myend=0x8257038
size=3, capacity=4
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
_Myfirst=0x8257028, _Mylast=0x8257038, _Myend=0x8257038
size=4, capacity=4
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
_Myfirst=0x8257040, _Mylast=0x8257050, _Myend=0x8257058
size=4, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
_Myfirst=0x8257040, _Mylast=0x8257054, _Myend=0x8257058
size=5, capacity=6

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
element 4: 5
_Myfirst=0x8257040, _Mylast=0x8257058, _Myend=0x8257058
size=6, capacity=6
element 0: 1
element 1: 2
element 2: 3
element 3: 4
element 4: 5
element 5: 6
6
0

```

We can spot that the buffer size grows in a different way than in MSVC.

Simple experimentation shows that in MSVC's implementation the buffer grows by ~50% each time it needs to be enlarged, while GCC's code enlarges it by 100% each time, i.e., doubles it.

std::map and std::set

The binary tree is another fundamental data structure.

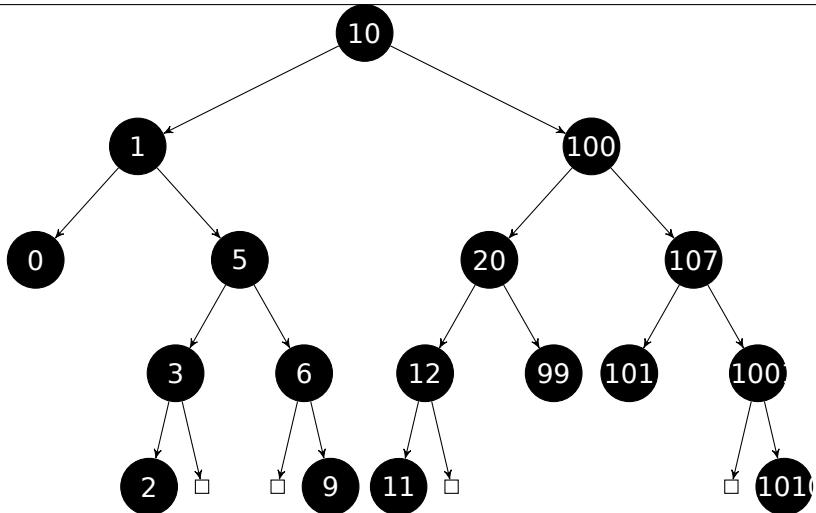
As its name states, this is a tree where each node has at most 2 links to other nodes. Each node has key and/or value: `std::set` provides only key at each node, `std::map` provides both key and value at each node.

Binary trees are usually the structure used in the implementation of "dictionaries" of key-values ([AKA](#) "associative arrays").

There are at least three important properties that a binary tree has:

- All keys are always stored in sorted form.
- Keys of any types can be stored easily. Binary tree algorithms are unaware of the key's type, only a key comparison function is required.
- Finding a specific key is relatively fast in comparison with lists and arrays.

Here is a very simple example: let's store these numbers in a binary tree: 0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 9, 10, 11, 12, 20, 99, 100, 101, 107, 1001, 1010.



All keys that are smaller than the node key's value are stored on the left side.

All keys that are bigger than the node key's value are stored on the right side.

Hence, the lookup algorithm is straightforward: if the value that you are looking for is smaller than the current node's key value: move left, if it is bigger: move right, stop if the value required is equal to the node key's value.

That is why the searching algorithm may search for numbers, text strings, etc., as long as a key comparison function is provided.

All keys have unique values.

Having that, one needs $\approx \log_2 n$ steps in order to find a key in a balanced binary tree with n keys. This implies that ≈ 10 steps are needed ≈ 1000 keys, or ≈ 13 steps for ≈ 10000 keys.

Not bad, but the tree has always to be balanced for this: i.e., the keys has to be distributed evenly on all levels. The insertion and removal operations do some maintenance to keep the tree in a balanced state.

There are several popular balancing algorithms available, including the AVL tree and the red-black tree.

The latter extends each node with a “color” value to simplify the balancing process, hence, each node may be “red” or “black”.

Both GCC’s and MSVC’s `std::map` and `std::set` template implementations use red-black trees.

`std::set` has only keys. `std::map` is the “extended” version of `std::set`: it also has a value at each node.

MSVC

```
#include <map>
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

{
    if (is_set)
        printf ("%d\n", n->first);
    else
        printf ("%d [%s]\n", n->first, n->second);
    if (n->Left->Isnil==0)
    {
        printf ("%.*sL-----", tabs, ALOT_OF_TABS);
        dump_as_tree (tabs+1, n->Left, is_set);
    };
    if (n->Right->Isnil==0)
    {
        printf ("%.*sR-----", tabs, ALOT_OF_TABS);
        dump_as_tree (tabs+1, n->Right, is_set);
    };
};

void dump_map_and_set(struct tree_struct *m, bool is_set)
{
    printf ("ptr=0x%p, Myhead=0x%p, Mysize=%d\n", m, m->Myhead, m->Mysize);
    dump_tree_node (m->Myhead, is_set, true);
    printf ("As a tree:\n");
    printf ("root----");
    dump_as_tree (1, m->Myhead->Parent, is_set);
};

int main()
{
    // map

    std::map<int, const char*> m;

    m[10]="ten";
    m[20]="twenty";
    m[3]="three";
    m[101]="one hundred one";
    m[100]="one hundred";
    m[12]="twelve";
    m[107]="one hundred seven";
    m[0]="zero";
    m[1]="one";
    m[6]="six";
    m[99]="ninety-nine";
    m[5]="five";
    m[11]="eleven";
    m[1001]="one thousand one";
    m[1010]="one thousand ten";
    m[2]="two";
    m[9]="nine";
    printf ("dumping m as map:\n");
    dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *) (void*)&m, false);

    std::map<int, const char*>::iterator it1=m.begin();
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

printf ("m.begin():\n");
dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *)*(void**)&it1, false, false);
it1=m.end();
printf ("m.end():\n");
dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *)*(void**)&it1, false, false);

// set

std::set<int> s;
s.insert(123);
s.insert(456);
s.insert(11);
s.insert(12);
s.insert(100);
s.insert(1001);
printf ("dumping s as set:\n");
dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *)(&s), true);
std::set<int>::iterator it2=s.begin();
printf ("s.begin():\n");
dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *)*(void**)&it2, true, false);
it2=s.end();
printf ("s.end():\n");
dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *)*(void**)&it2, true, false);
};

```

Listing 3.118: MSVC 2012

```

dumping m as map:
ptr=0x0020FE04, Myhead=0x005BB3A0, Mysize=17
ptr=0x005BB3A0 Left=0x005BB4A0 Parent=0x005BB3C0 Right=0x005BB580 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnul=1
ptr=0x005BB3C0 Left=0x005BB4C0 Parent=0x005BB3A0 Right=0x005BB440 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnul=0
first=10 second=[ten]
ptr=0x005BB4C0 Left=0x005BB4A0 Parent=0x005BB3C0 Right=0x005BB520 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnul=0
first=1 second=[one]
ptr=0x005BB4A0 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB4C0 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnul=0
first=0 second=[zero]
ptr=0x005BB520 Left=0x005BB400 Parent=0x005BB4C0 Right=0x005BB4E0 Color=0 ↴
    ↳ Isnul=0
first=5 second=[five]
ptr=0x005BB400 Left=0x005BB5A0 Parent=0x005BB520 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnul=0
first=3 second=[three]
ptr=0x005BB5A0 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB400 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=0 ↴
    ↳ Isnul=0
first=2 second=[two]
ptr=0x005BB4E0 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB520 Right=0x005BB5C0 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnul=0
first=6 second=[six]
ptr=0x005BB5C0 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB4E0 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=0 ↴
    ↳ Isnul=0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

first=9 second=[nine]
ptr=0x005BB440 Left=0x005BB3E0 Parent=0x005BB3C0 Right=0x005BB480 Color=1 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=100 second=[one hundred]
ptr=0x005BB3E0 Left=0x005BB460 Parent=0x005BB440 Right=0x005BB500 Color=0 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=20 second=[twenty]
ptr=0x005BB460 Left=0x005BB540 Parent=0x005BB3E0 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=12 second=[twelve]
ptr=0x005BB540 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB460 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=0 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=11 second=[eleven]
ptr=0x005BB500 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB3E0 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=99 second=[ninety-nine]
ptr=0x005BB480 Left=0x005BB420 Parent=0x005BB440 Right=0x005BB560 Color=0 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=107 second=[one hundred seven]
ptr=0x005BB420 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB480 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=101 second=[one hundred one]
ptr=0x005BB560 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB480 Right=0x005BB580 Color=1 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=1001 second=[one thousand one]
ptr=0x005BB580 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB560 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=0 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=1010 second=[one thousand ten]
As a tree:
root---10 [ten]
    L-----1 [one]
        L-----0 [zero]
        R-----5 [five]
            L-----3 [three]
                L-----2 [two]
                R-----6 [six]
                    R-----9 [nine]
    R-----100 [one hundred]
        L-----20 [twenty]
            L-----12 [twelve]
                L-----11 [eleven]
                R-----99 [ninety-nine]
    R-----107 [one hundred seven]
        L-----101 [one hundred one]
        R-----1001 [one thousand one]
            R-----1010 [one thousand ten]

m.begin():
ptr=0x005BB4A0 Left=0x005BB3A0 Parent=0x005BB4C0 Right=0x005BB3A0 Color=1 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=0 second=[zero]
m.end():
ptr=0x005BB3A0 Left=0x005BB4A0 Parent=0x005BB3C0 Right=0x005BB580 Color=1 ↵
    ↳ Isnil=1

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

dumping s as set:
ptr=0x0020FDFA, Myhead=0x005BB5E0, Mysize=6
ptr=0x005BB5E0 Left=0x005BB640 Parent=0x005BB600 Right=0x005BB6A0 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnil=1
ptr=0x005BB600 Left=0x005BB660 Parent=0x005BB5E0 Right=0x005BB620 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=123
ptr=0x005BB660 Left=0x005BB640 Parent=0x005BB600 Right=0x005BB680 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=12
ptr=0x005BB640 Left=0x005BB5E0 Parent=0x005BB660 Right=0x005BB5E0 Color=0 ↴
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=11
ptr=0x005BB680 Left=0x005BB5E0 Parent=0x005BB660 Right=0x005BB5E0 Color=0 ↴
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=100
ptr=0x005BB620 Left=0x005BB5E0 Parent=0x005BB600 Right=0x005BB6A0 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=456
ptr=0x005BB6A0 Left=0x005BB5E0 Parent=0x005BB620 Right=0x005BB5E0 Color=0 ↴
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=1001
As a tree:
root----123
    L-----12
        L-----11
        R-----100
    R-----456
        R-----1001
s.begin():
ptr=0x005BB640 Left=0x005BB5E0 Parent=0x005BB660 Right=0x005BB5E0 Color=0 ↴
    ↳ Isnil=0
first=11
s.end():
ptr=0x005BB5E0 Left=0x005BB640 Parent=0x005BB600 Right=0x005BB6A0 Color=1 ↴
    ↳ Isnil=1

```

The structure is not packed, so both *char* values occupy 4 bytes each.

As for `std::map`, `first` and `second` can be viewed as a single value of type `std::pair`. `std::set` has only one value at this address in the structure instead.

The current size of the tree is always present, as in the case of the implementation of `std::list` in MSVC ([3.21.4 on page 738](#)).

As in the case of `std::list`, the iterators are just pointers to nodes. The `.begin()` iterator points to the minimal key.

That pointer is not stored anywhere (as in lists), the minimal key of the tree is looked up every time. `operator--` and `operator++` move the current node pointer to the predecessor or successor respectively, i.e., the nodes which have the previous or next key.

The algorithms for all these operations are explained in [Cormen, Thomas H. and Leiserson, Charles E. and Rivest, Ronald L. and Stein, Clifford, *Introduction to Algorithms, Third Edition*, (2009)].

The `.end()` iterator points to the dummy node, it has 1 in `Isnil`, which implies that the node has no key and/or value. It can be viewed as a “landing zone” in [HDD³³](#) and often called *sentinel* [see N. Wirth, *Algorithms and Data Structures*, 1985]³⁴.

The “parent” field of the dummy node points to the root node, which serves as a vertex of the tree and contains information.

GCC

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <map>
#include <set>
#include <string>
#include <iostream>

struct map_pair
{
    int key;
    const char *value;
};

struct tree_node
{
    int M_color; // 0 - Red, 1 - Black
    struct tree_node *M_parent;
    struct tree_node *M_left;
    struct tree_node *M_right;
};

struct tree_struct
{
    int M_key_compare;
    struct tree_node M_header;
    size_t M_node_count;
};

void dump_tree_node (struct tree_node *n, bool is_set, bool traverse, bool ↴
    ↴ dump_keys_and_values)
{
    printf ("ptr=0x%p M_left=0x%p M_parent=0x%p M_right=0x%p M_color=%d\n",
            n, n->M_left, n->M_parent, n->M_right, n->M_color);

    void *point_after_struct=((char*)n)+sizeof(struct tree_node);

    if (dump_keys_and_values)
    {
```

³³Hard Disk Drive

³⁴<http://www.ethoberon.ethz.ch/WirthPubl/AD.pdf>


```

    dump_as_tree (1, m->M_header.M_parent, is_set);
}

int main()
{
    // map

    std::map<int, const char*> m;

    m[10] = "ten";
    m[20] = "twenty";
    m[3] = "three";
    m[101] = "one hundred one";
    m[100] = "one hundred";
    m[12] = "twelve";
    m[107] = "one hundred seven";
    m[0] = "zero";
    m[1] = "one";
    m[6] = "six";
    m[99] = "ninety-nine";
    m[5] = "five";
    m[11] = "eleven";
    m[1001] = "one thousand one";
    m[1010] = "one thousand ten";
    m[2] = "two";
    m[9] = "nine";

    printf ("dumping m as map:\n");
    dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *) (void*) &m, false);

    std::map<int, const char*>::iterator it1 = m.begin();
    printf ("m.begin():\n");
    dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *) * (void**) &it1, false, false, true);
    it1 = m.end();
    printf ("m.end():\n");
    dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *) * (void**) &it1, false, false, false) ↴ ;
}

// set

std::set<int> s;
s.insert(123);
s.insert(456);
s.insert(11);
s.insert(12);
s.insert(100);
s.insert(1001);
printf ("dumping s as set:\n");
dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *) (void*) &s, true);
std::set<int>::iterator it2 = s.begin();
printf ("s.begin():\n");
dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *) * (void**) &it2, true, false, true);
it2 = s.end();

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    printf ("s.end():\n");
    dump_tree_node ((struct tree_node *)*(void**)&it2, true, false, false);
}

```

Listing 3.119: GCC 4.8.1

```

dumping m as map:
ptr=0x0028FE3C M_key_compare=0x402b70, M_header=0x0028FE40, M_node_count ↴
    ↴ =17
ptr=0x007A4988 M_left=0x007A4C00 M_parent=0x0028FE40 M_right=0x007A4B80 ↵
    ↴ M_color=1
key=10 value=[ten]
ptr=0x007A4C00 M_left=0x007A4BE0 M_parent=0x007A4988 M_right=0x007A4C60 ↵
    ↴ M_color=1
key=1 value=[one]
ptr=0x007A4BE0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4C00 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↴ M_color=1
key=0 value=[zero]
ptr=0x007A4C60 M_left=0x007A4B40 M_parent=0x007A4C00 M_right=0x007A4C20 ↵
    ↴ M_color=0
key=5 value=[five]
ptr=0x007A4B40 M_left=0x007A4CE0 M_parent=0x007A4C60 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↴ M_color=1
key=3 value=[three]
ptr=0x007A4CE0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4B40 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↴ M_color=0
key=2 value=[two]
ptr=0x007A4C20 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4C60 M_right=0x007A4D00 ↵
    ↴ M_color=1
key=6 value=[six]
ptr=0x007A4D00 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4C20 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↴ M_color=0
key=9 value=[nine]
ptr=0x007A4B80 M_left=0x007A49A8 M_parent=0x007A4988 M_right=0x007A4BC0 ↵
    ↴ M_color=1
key=100 value=[one hundred]
ptr=0x007A49A8 M_left=0x007A4BA0 M_parent=0x007A4B80 M_right=0x007A4C40 ↵
    ↴ M_color=0
key=20 value=[twenty]
ptr=0x007A4BA0 M_left=0x007A4C80 M_parent=0x007A49A8 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↴ M_color=1
key=12 value=[twelve]
ptr=0x007A4C80 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4BA0 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↴ M_color=0
key=11 value=[eleven]
ptr=0x007A4C40 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A49A8 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↴ M_color=1
key=99 value=[ninety-nine]
ptr=0x007A4BC0 M_left=0x007A4B60 M_parent=0x007A4B80 M_right=0x007A4CA0 ↵
    ↴ M_color=0
key=107 value=[one hundred seven]
ptr=0x007A4B60 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4BC0 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↴ M_color=1
key=101 value=[one hundred one]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

ptr=0x007A4CA0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4BC0 M_right=0x007A4CC0 ↵
    ↳ M_color=1
key=1001 value=[one thousand one]
ptr=0x007A4CC0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4CA0 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↳ M_color=0
key=1010 value=[one thousand ten]
As a tree:
root----10 [ten]
    L-----1 [one]
        L-----0 [zero]
        R-----5 [five]
            L-----3 [three]
                L-----2 [two]
                R-----6 [six]
                R-----9 [nine]
        R-----100 [one hundred]
            L-----20 [twenty]
                L-----12 [twelve]
                    L-----11 [eleven]
                    R-----99 [ninety-nine]
            R-----107 [one hundred seven]
                L-----101 [one hundred one]
                R-----1001 [one thousand one]
                R-----1010 [one thousand ten]
m.begin():
ptr=0x007A4BE0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A4C00 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↳ M_color=1
key=0 value=[zero]
m.end():
ptr=0x0028FE40 M_left=0x007A4BE0 M_parent=0x007A4988 M_right=0x007A4CC0 ↵
    ↳ M_color=0

dumping s as set:
ptr=0x0028FE20, M_key_compare=0x8, M_header=0x0028FE24, M_node_count=6
ptr=0x007A1E80 M_left=0x01D5D890 M_parent=0x0028FE24 M_right=0x01D5D850 ↵
    ↳ M_color=1
key=123
ptr=0x01D5D890 M_left=0x01D5D870 M_parent=0x007A1E80 M_right=0x01D5D8B0 ↵
    ↳ M_color=1
key=12
ptr=0x01D5D870 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x01D5D890 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↳ M_color=0
key=11
ptr=0x01D5D8B0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x01D5D890 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↳ M_color=0
key=100
ptr=0x01D5D850 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x007A1E80 M_right=0x01D5D8D0 ↵
    ↳ M_color=1
key=456
ptr=0x01D5D8D0 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x01D5D850 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↳ M_color=0
key=1001
As a tree:

```

```

root----123
    L-----12
        L-----11
        R-----100
    R-----456
        R-----1001
s.begin():
ptr=0x01D5D870 M_left=0x00000000 M_parent=0x01D5D890 M_right=0x00000000 ↵
    ↴ M_color=0
key=11
s.end():
ptr=0x0028FE24 M_left=0x01D5D870 M_parent=0x007A1E80 M_right=0x01D5D8D0 ↵
    ↴ M_color=0

```

GCC's implementation is very similar ³⁵. The only difference is the absence of the `Isnil` field, so the structure occupies slightly less space in memory than its implementation in MSVC.

The dummy node is also used as a place to point the `.end()` iterator also has no key and/or value.

Rebalancing demo (GCC)

Here is also a demo showing us how a tree is rebalanced after some insertions.

Listing 3.120: GCC

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <map>
#include <set>
#include <string>
#include <iostream>

struct map_pair
{
    int key;
    const char *value;
};

struct tree_node
{
    int M_color; // 0 - Red, 1 - Black
    struct tree_node *M_parent;
    struct tree_node *M_left;
    struct tree_node *M_right;
};

struct tree_struct
{
    int M_key_compare;

```

³⁵http://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/libstdc++/libstdc++-html-USERS-4.1/stl_tree_8h-source.html


```
dump_map_and_set ((struct tree_struct *)(void*)&s);
printf ("\n");
};
```

Listing 3.121: GCC 4.8.1

```
123, 456 has been inserted
root----123
    R-----456

11, 12 has been inserted
root----123
    L-----11
        R-----12
    R-----456

100, 1001 has been inserted
root----123
    L-----12
        L-----11
        R-----100
    R-----456
        R-----1001

667, 1, 4, 7 has been inserted
root---12
    L-----4
        L-----1
        R-----11
            L-----7
    R-----123
        L-----100
        R-----667
            L-----456
            R-----1001
```

3.21.5 Memory

Sometimes you may hear from C++ programmers “allocate memory on stack” and/or “allocate memory on [heap](#)”.

Allocating object *on stack*:

```
void f()
{
    ...
    Class o=Class(...);
    ...
}
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The memory for object (or structure) is allocated in stack, using simple [SP](#) shift. The memory is deallocated upon function exit, or, more precisely, at the end of *scope*—[SP](#) is returning to its state (same as at the start of function) and destructor of *Class* is called. In the same manner, memory for allocated structure in C is deallocated upon function exit.

Allocating object on [heap](#):

```
void f1()
{
    ...
    Class *o=new Class(...);

    ...
};

void f2()
{
    ...
    delete o;
    ...
};
```

This is the same as allocating memory for a structure using *malloc()* call. In fact, *new* in C++ is wrapper for *malloc()*, and *delete* is wrapper for *free()*. Since memory block has been allocated in [heap](#), it must be deallocated explicitly, using *delete*. Class destructor will be automatically called right before that moment.

Which method is better? Allocating *on stack* is very fast, and good for small, short-lived object, which will be used only in the current function.

Allocating *on heap* is slower, and better for long-lived object, which will be used across many functions. Also, objects allocated in [heap](#) are prone to memory leakage, because they must to be freed explicitly, but one can forget about it.

Anyway, this is matter of taste.

3.22 Negative array indices

It's possible to address the space *before* an array by supplying a negative index, e.g., *array[-1]*.

3.22.1 Addressing string from the end

Python [PL](#) allows to address arrays and strings from the end. For example, *string[-1]* returns the last character, *string[-2]* returns penultimate, etc. Hard to believe, but this is also possible in C/C++:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
#include <string.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    char *s="Hello, world!";
    char *s_end=s+strlen(s);

    printf ("last character: %c\n", s_end[-1]);
    printf ("penultimate character: %c\n", s_end[-2]);
}
```

It works, but *s_end* must always have an address of terminating zero byte at the end of *s* string. If *s* string's size gets changed, *s_end* must be updated.

The trick is dubious, but again, this is a demonstration of negative indices.

3.22.2 Addressing some kind of block from the end

Let's first recall why stack grows backwards ([1.9.1 on page 41](#)). There is some kind of block in memory and you want to store both heap and stack there, and you are not sure, how big they both can grow during runtime.

You can set a *heap* pointer to the beginning of the block, then you can set a *stack* pointer to the end of the block (*heap + size_of_block*), and then you can address *n*th element of stack like *stack[-n]*. For example, *stack[-1]* for 1st element, *stack[-2]* for 2nd, etc.

This will work in the same fashion, as our trick of addressing string from the end.

You can easily check if the structures has not begun to overlap each other: just be sure that address of the last element in *heap* is below the address of the last element of *stack*.

Unfortunately, -0 as index will not work, since two's complement way of representing negative numbers ([2.2 on page 572](#)) don't allow negative zero, so it cannot be distinguished from positive zero.

This method is also mentioned in "Transaction processing", Jim Gray, 1993, "The Tuple-Oriented File System" chapter, p. 755.

3.22.3 Arrays started at 1

Fortran and Mathematica defined first element of array as 1th, probably because this is tradition in mathematics. Other *PLs* like C/C++ defined it as 0th. Which is better? Edsger W. Dijkstra argued that latter is better ^{[36](#)}.

But programmers may still have a habit after Fortran, so using this little trick, it's possible to address the first element in C/C++ using index 1:

³⁶See <https://www.cs.utexas.edu/users/EWD/transcriptions/EWD08xx/EWD831.html>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int random_value=0x11223344;
    unsigned char array[10];
    int i;
    unsigned char *fakearray=&array[-1];

    for (i=0; i<10; i++)
        array[i]=i;

    printf ("first element %d\n", fakearray[1]);
    printf ("second element %d\n", fakearray[2]);
    printf ("last element %d\n", fakearray[10]);

    printf ("array[-1]=%02X, array[-2]=%02X, array[-3]=%02X, array[-4]=%02X\n",
           array[-1],
           array[-2],
           array[-3],
           array[-4]);
}
```

Listing 3.122: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

```

1 $SG2751 DB      'first element %d', 0aH, 00H
2 $SG2752 DB      'second element %d', 0aH, 00H
3 $SG2753 DB      'last element %d', 0aH, 00H
4 $SG2754 DB      'array[-1]=%02X, array[-2]=%02X, array[-3]=%02X, array[-4]' 
5          DB      ']=%02X', 0aH, 00H
6
7 _fakearray$ = -24           ; size = 4
8 _random_value$ = -20       ; size = 4
9 _array$ = -16             ; size = 10
10 _i$ = -4                ; size = 4
11 _main    PROC
12     push    ebp
13     mov     ebp, esp
14     sub     esp, 24
15     mov     DWORD PTR _random_value$[ebp], 287454020 ; 11223344H
16     ; set fakearray[] one byte earlier before array[]
17     lea     eax, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
18     add     eax, -1 ; eax=eax-1
19     mov     DWORD PTR _fakearray$[ebp], eax
20     mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 0
21     jmp     SHORT $LN3@main
22     ; fill array[] with 0..9
23 $LN2@main:
24     mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
25     add     ecx, 1
26     mov     DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], ecx
27 $LN3@main:
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

28      cmp    DWORD PTR _i$[ebp], 10
29      jge    SHORT $LN1@main
30      mov    edx, DWORD PTR _i$[ebp]
31      mov    al, BYTE PTR _i$[ebp]
32      mov    BYTE PTR _array$[ebp+edx], al
33      jmp    SHORT $LN2@main
34 $LN1@main:
35      mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _fakearray$[ebp]
36      ; ecx=address of fakearray[0], ecx+1 is fakearray[1] or array[0]
37      movzx  edx, BYTE PTR [ecx+1]
38      push   edx
39      push   OFFSET $SG2751 ; 'first element %d'
40      call   _printf
41      add    esp, 8
42      mov    eax, DWORD PTR _fakearray$[ebp]
43      ; eax=address of fakearray[0], eax+2 is fakearray[2] or array[1]
44      movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [eax+2]
45      push   ecx
46      push   OFFSET $SG2752 ; 'second element %d'
47      call   _printf
48      add    esp, 8
49      mov    edx, DWORD PTR _fakearray$[ebp]
50      ; edx=address of fakearray[0], edx+10 is fakearray[10] or array[9]
51      movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [edx+10]
52      push   eax
53      push   OFFSET $SG2753 ; 'last element %d'
54      call   _printf
55      add    esp, 8
56      ; subtract 4, 3, 2 and 1 from pointer to array[0] in order to find
values before array[]
57      lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
58      movzx  edx, BYTE PTR [ecx-4]
59      push   edx
60      lea    eax, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
61      movzx  ecx, BYTE PTR [eax-3]
62      push   ecx
63      lea    edx, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
64      movzx  eax, BYTE PTR [edx-2]
65      push   eax
66      lea    ecx, DWORD PTR _array$[ebp]
67      movzx  edx, BYTE PTR [ecx-1]
68      push   edx
69      push   OFFSET $SG2754 ;
'array[-1]=%02X, array[-2]=%02X, array[-3]=%02X, array[-4]=%02X'
70      call   _printf
71      add    esp, 20
72      xor    eax, eax
73      mov    esp, ebp
74      pop    ebp
75      ret    0
76 _main ENDP

```

So we have array[] of ten elements, filled with 0...9 bytes.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Then we have the `fakearray[]` pointer, which points one byte before `array[]`.

`fakearray[1]` points exactly to `array[0]`. But we are still curious, what is there before `array[]`? We have added `random_value` before `array[]` and set it to `0x11223344`. The non-optimizing compiler allocated the variables in the order they were declared, so yes, the 32-bit `random_value` is right before the array.

We ran it, and:

```
first element 0
second element 1
last element 9
array[-1]=11, array[-2]=22, array[-3]=33, array[-4]=44
```

Here is the stack fragment we will copypaste from OllyDbg's stack window (with comments added by the author):

Listing 3.123: Non-optimizing MSVC 2010

CPU Stack	
Address	Value
001DFBCC	/001DFBD3 ; fakearray pointer
001DFBD0	11223344 ; random_value
001DFBD4	03020100 ; 4 bytes of array[]
001DFBD8	07060504 ; 4 bytes of array[]
001DFBDC	00CB0908 ; random garbage + 2 last bytes of array[]
001DFBEO	0000000A ; last i value after loop was finished
001DFBEO	001DFC2C ; saved EBP value
001DFBEO	\00CB129D ; Return Address

The pointer to the `fakearray[]` (`0x001DFBD3`) is indeed the address of `array[]` in the stack (`0x001DFBD4`), but minus 1 byte.

It's still very hackish and dubious trick. Doubtfully anyone should use it in production code, but as a demonstration, it fits perfectly here.

3.23 More about pointers

The way C handles pointers, for example, was a brilliant innovation; it solved a lot of problems that we had before in data structuring and made the programs look good afterwards.

Donald Knuth, interview (1993)

For those, who still have hard time understanding C/C++ pointers, here are more examples. Some of them are weird and serves only demonstration purpose: use them in production code only if you really know what you're doing.

3.23.1 Working with addresses instead of pointers

Pointer is just an address in memory. But why we write `char* string` instead of something like `address string`? Pointer variable is supplied with a type of the value to which pointer points. So then compiler will be able to catch data typization bugs during compilation.

To be pedantic, data typing in programming languages is all about preventing bugs and self-documentation. It's possible to use maybe two of data types like `int` (or `int64_t`) and `byte`—these are the only types which are available to assembly language programmers. But it's just very hard task to write big and practical assembly programs without nasty bugs. Any small typo can lead to hard-to-find bug.

Data type information is absent in a compiled code (and this is one of the main problems for decompilers), and I can demonstrate this.

This is what sane C/C++ programmer can write:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

void print_string (char *s)
{
    printf("(address: 0x%llx)\n", s);
    printf ("%s\n", s);
};

int main()
{
    char *s="Hello, world!";
    print_string (s);
};
```

This is what I can write:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

void print_string (uint64_t address)
{
    printf ("(address: 0x%llx)\n", address);
    puts ((char*)address);
};

int main()
{
    char *s="Hello, world!";
    print_string ((uint64_t)s);
};
```

I use `uint64_t` because I run this example on Linux x64. `int` would work for 32-bit OS-es. First, a pointer to character (the very first in the greeting string) is casted

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

to `uint64_t`, then it's passed further. `print_string()` function casts back incoming `uint64_t` value into pointer to a character.

What is interesting is that GCC 4.8.4 produces identical assembly output for both versions:

```
gcc 1.c -S -masm=intel -O3 -fno-inline
```

```
.LC0:
    .string "(address: 0x%llx)\n"
print_string:
    push    rbx
    mov     rdx, rdi
    mov     rbx, rdi
    mov     esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    mov     edi, 1
    xor     eax, eax
    call    __printf_chk
    mov     rdi, rbx
    pop     rbx
    jmp     puts
.LC1:
    .string "Hello, world!"
main:
    sub    rsp, 8
    mov     edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1
    call    print_string
    add    rsp, 8
    ret
```

(I've removed all insignificant GCC directives.)

I also tried UNIX `diff` utility and it shows no differences at all.

Let's continue to abuse C/C++ programming traditions heavily. Someone may write this:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

uint8_t load_byte_at_address (uint8_t* address)
{
    return *address;
    //this is also possible: return address[0];
};

void print_string (char *s)
{
    char* current_address=s;
    while (1)
    {
        char current_char=load_byte_at_address(current_address);
        if (current_char==0)
            break;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        printf ("%c", current_char);
        current_address++;
    };
};

int main()
{
    char *s="Hello, world!";
    print_string (s);
};

```

It can be rewritten like this:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

uint8_t load_byte_at_address (uint64_t address)
{
    return *(uint8_t*)address;
};

void print_string (uint64_t address)
{
    uint64_t current_address=address;
    while (1)
    {
        char current_char=load_byte_at_address(current_address);
        if (current_char==0)
            break;
        printf ("%c", current_char);
        current_address++;
    };
};

int main()
{
    char *s="Hello, world!";
    print_string ((uint64_t)s);
};

```

Both source codes resulting in the same assembly output:

```
gcc 1.c -S -masm=intel -O3 -fno-inline
```

```

load_byte_at_address:
    movzx   eax, BYTE PTR [rdi]
    ret
print_string:
.LFB15:
    push    rbx
    mov     rbx, rdi

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        jmp    .L4
.L7:
    movsx  edi, al
    add    rbx, 1
    call   putchar
.L4:
    mov    rdi, rbx
    call   load_byte_at_address
    test   al, al
    jne    .L7
    pop    rbx
    ret
.LC0:
    .string "Hello, world!"
main:
    sub    rsp, 8
    mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    call   print_string
    add    rsp, 8
    ret

```

(I have also removed all insignificant GCC directives.)

No difference: C/C++ pointers are essentially addresses, but supplied with type information, in order to prevent possible mistakes at the time of compilation. Types are not checked during runtime—it would be huge (and unneeded) overhead.

3.23.2 Passing values as pointers; tagged unions

Here is an example on how to pass values in pointers:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

uint64_t multiply1 (uint64_t a, uint64_t b)
{
    return a*b;
}

uint64_t* multiply2 (uint64_t *a, uint64_t *b)
{
    return (uint64_t*)((uint64_t)a*(uint64_t)b);
}

int main()
{
    printf ("%d\n", multiply1(123, 456));
    printf ("%d\n", (uint64_t)multiply2((uint64_t*)123, (uint64_t*)456));
}

```

It works smoothly and GCC 4.8.4 compiles both multiply1() and multiply2() functions identically!

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

multiply1:
    mov    rax, rdi
    imul   rax, rsi
    ret

multiply2:
    mov    rax, rdi
    imul   rax, rsi
    ret

```

As long as you do not dereference pointer (in other words, you don't read any data from the address stored in pointer), everything will work fine. Pointer is a variable which can store anything, like usual variable.

Signed multiplication instruction (IMUL) is used here instead of unsigned one (MUL), read more about it here: [2.2.1 on page 574](#).

By the way, it's well-known hack to abuse pointers a little called *tagged pointers*. In short, if all your pointers points to blocks of memory with size of, let's say, 16 bytes (or it is always aligned on 16-byte boundary), 4 lowest bits of pointer is always zero bits and this space can be used somehow. It's very popular in LISP compilers and interpreters. They store cell/object type in these unused bits, this can save some memory. Even more, you can judge about cell/object type using just pointer, with no additional memory access. Read more about it: [Dennis Yurichev, *C/C++ programming language notes*1.3].

3.23.3 Pointers abuse in Windows kernel

The resource section of PE executable file in Windows OS is a section containing pictures, icons, strings, etc. Early Windows versions allowed to address resources only by IDs, but then Microsoft added a way to address them using strings.

So then it would be possible to pass ID or string to [FindResource\(\)](#) function. Which is declared like this:

```

HRSRC WINAPI FindResource(
    _In_opt_ HMODULE hModule,
    _In_     LPCTSTR lpName,
    _In_     LPCTSTR lpType
);

```

lpName and *lpType* has *char** or *wchar** types, and when someone still wants to pass ID, he/she have to use [MAKEINTRESOURCE](#) macro, like this:

```
result = FindResource(...., MAKEINTRESOURCE(1234), ...);
```

It's interesting fact that [MAKEINTRESOURCE](#) is merely casting integer to pointer. In MSVC 2013, in the file

Microsoft SDKs\Windows\v7.1A\Include\Ks.h we can find this:

```
...
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```
#if (!defined( MAKEINTRESOURCE ))
#define MAKEINTRESOURCE( res ) ((ULONG_PTR) (USHORT) res)
#endif

...
```

Sounds insane. Let's peek into ancient leaked Windows NT4 source code. In *private/windows/base/client/module.c* we can find *FindResource()* source code:

```
HRSRC
FindResourceA(
    HMODULE hModule,
    LPCSTR lpName,
    LPCSTR lpType
)

...

{
    NTSTATUS Status;
    ULONG IdPath[ 3 ];
    PVOID p;

    IdPath[ 0 ] = 0;
    IdPath[ 1 ] = 0;
    try {
        if ((IdPath[ 0 ] = BaseDllMapResourceIdA( lpType )) == -1) {
            Status = STATUS_INVALID_PARAMETER;
        }
        else
            if ((IdPath[ 1 ] = BaseDllMapResourceIdA( lpName )) == -1) {
                Status = STATUS_INVALID_PARAMETER;
...
}
```

Let's proceed to *BaseDllMapResourceIdA()* in the same source file:

```
ULONG
BaseDllMapResourceIdA(
    LPCSTR lpId
)
{
    NTSTATUS Status;
    ULONG Id;
    UNICODE_STRING UnicodeString;
    ANSI_STRING AnsiString;
    PWSTR s;

    try {
        if (((ULONG)lpId & LDR_RESOURCE_ID_NAME_MASK) {
            if (*lpId == '#') {
                Status = RtlCharToInteger( lpId+1, 10, &Id );
                if (!NT_SUCCESS( Status ) || Id & LDR_RESOURCE_ID_NAME_MASK)
        } }
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        if (NT_SUCCESS( Status )) {
            Status = STATUS_INVALID_PARAMETER;
        }
        BaseSetLastNTErrror( Status );
        Id = (ULONG)-1;
    }
}
else {
    RtlInitAnsiString( &AnsiString, lpId );
    Status = RtlAnsiStringToUnicodeString( &UnicodeString,
                                          &AnsiString,
                                          TRUE
                                         );
    if (!NT_SUCCESS( Status )) {
        BaseSetLastNTErrror( Status );
        Id = (ULONG)-1;
    }
    else {
        s = UnicodeString.Buffer;
        while (*s != UNICODE_NULL) {
            *s = RtlUpcaseUnicodeChar( *s );
            s++;
        }

        Id = (ULONG)UnicodeString.Buffer;
    }
}
else {
    Id = (ULONG)lpId;
}
}
except (EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER) {
    BaseSetLastNTErrror( GetExceptionCode() );
    Id = (ULONG)-1;
}
return Id;
}

```

lpId is ANDed with *LDR_RESOURCE_ID_NAME_MASK*.
Which we can find in *public/sdk/inc/ntldr.h*:

```

...
#define LDR_RESOURCE_ID_NAME_MASK 0xFFFF0000
...

```

So *lpId* is ANDed with *0xFFFF0000* and if some bits beyond lowest 16 bits are still present, first half of function is executed (*lpId* is treated as an address of string). Otherwise—second half (*lpId* is treated as 16-bit value).

Still, this code can be found in Windows 7 kernel32.dll file:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```

....  

.text:0000000078D24510 ;  

    int64 __fastcall BaseDllMapResourceIdA(PCSZ SourceString)  

.text:0000000078D24510 BaseDllMapResourceIdA proc near ; CODE XREF:  

    FindResourceExA+34  

.text:0000000078D24510 ;  

    FindResourceExA+4B  

.text:0000000078D24510  

.text:0000000078D24510 var_38 = qword ptr -38h  

.text:0000000078D24510 var_30 = qword ptr -30h  

.text:0000000078D24510 var_28 = _UNICODE_STRING ptr -28h  

.text:0000000078D24510 DestinationString= _STRING ptr -18h  

.text:0000000078D24510 arg_8 = dword ptr 10h  

.text:0000000078D24510  

.text:0000000078D24510 ; FUNCTION CHUNK AT .text:0000000078D42FB4 SIZE  

    000000D5 BYTES  

.text:0000000078D24510  

.text:0000000078D24510 push rbx  

.text:0000000078D24512 sub rsp, 50h  

.text:0000000078D24516 cmp rcx, 10000h  

.text:0000000078D2451D jnb loc_78D42FB4  

.text:0000000078D24523 mov [rsp+58h+var_38], rcx  

.text:0000000078D24528 jmp short $+2  

.text:0000000078D2452A ;  

.text:0000000078D2452A  

.text:0000000078D2452A loc_78D2452A; CODE XREF:  

    BaseDllMapResourceIdA+18  

.text:0000000078D2452A ;  

    BaseDllMapResourceIdA+1EAD0  

.text:0000000078D2452A jmp short $+2  

.text:0000000078D2452C ;  

.text:0000000078D2452C loc_78D2452C; CODE XREF: BaseDllMapResourceIdA:loc_78D2452A  

.text:0000000078D2452C ;  

    BaseDllMapResourceIdA+1EB74  

.text:0000000078D2452C mov rax, rcx  

.text:0000000078D2452F add rsp, 50h  

.text:0000000078D24533 pop rbx  

.text:0000000078D24534 retn  

.text:0000000078D24534 ;  

.text:0000000078D24535 align 20h  

.text:0000000078D24535 BaseDllMapResourceIdA endp  

....  

.text:0000000078D42FB4 loc_78D42FB4; CODE XREF:  

    BaseDllMapResourceIdA+D  

.text:0000000078D42FB4 cmp byte ptr [rcx], '#'  

.text:0000000078D42FB7 jnz short loc_78D43005  

.text:0000000078D42FB9 inc rcx  

.text:0000000078D42FBC lea r8, [rsp+58h+arg_8]  

.text:0000000078D42FC1 mov edx, 0Ah

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:0000000078D42FC6          call   cs:_imp_RtlCharToInteger
.text:0000000078D42FCC         mov    ecx, [rsp+58h+arg_8]
.text:0000000078D42FD0         mov    [rsp+58h+var_38], rcx
.text:0000000078D42FD5         test   eax, eax
.text:0000000078D42FD7         js    short loc_78D42FE6
.text:0000000078D42FD9         test   rcx, 0xFFFFFFFFFFFF0000h
.text:0000000078D42FE0         jz    loc_78D2452A

.....

```

If value in input pointer is greater than 0x10000, jump to string processing is occurred. Otherwise, input value of *lpld* is returned as is. 0xFFFF0000 mask is not used here any more, because this is 64-bit code after all, but still, 0xFFFFFFFFFFFF0000 could work here.

Attentive reader may ask, what if address of input string is lower than 0x10000? This code relied on the fact that in Windows there are nothing on addresses below 0x10000, at least in Win32 realm.

Raymond Chen [writes](#) about this:

How does MAKEINTRESOURCE work? It just stashes the integer in the bottom 16 bits of a pointer, leaving the upper bits zero. This relies on the convention that the first 64KB of address space is never mapped to valid memory, a convention that is enforced starting in Windows 7.

In short words, this is dirty hack and probably one should use it only if there is a real necessity. Perhaps, *FindResource()* function in past had *SHORT* type for its arguments, and then Microsoft has added a way to pass strings there, but older code must also be supported.

Now here is my short distilled example:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>

void f(char* a)
{
    if (((uint64_t)a)>0x10000)
        printf ("Pointer to string has been passed: %s\n", a);
    else
        printf ("16-bit value has been passed: %d\n", (uint64_t)a);
}

int main()
{
    f("Hello!"); // pass string
    f((char*)1234); // pass 16-bit value
}

```

It works!

Pointers abuse in Linux kernel

As it has been noted in [comments on Hacker News](#), Linux kernel also has something like that.

For example, this function can return both error code and pointer:

```
struct kernfs_node *kernfs_create_link(struct kernfs_node *parent,
                                      const char *name,
                                      struct kernfs_node *target)
{
    struct kernfs_node *kn;
    int error;

    kn = kernfs_new_node(parent, name, S_IFLNK|S_IRWXUGO, KERNFS_LINK);
    if (!kn)
        return ERR_PTR(-ENOMEM);

    if (kernfs_ns_enabled(parent))
        kn->ns = target->ns;
    kn->symlink.target_kn = target;
    kernfs_get(target); /* ref owned by symlink */

    error = kernfs_add_one(kn);
    if (!error)
        return kn;

    kernfs_put(kn);
    return ERR_PTR(error);
}
```

(<https://github.com/torvalds/linux/blob/fceef393a538134f03b778c5d2519e670269342ffs/kernfs/symlink.c#L25>)

ERR_PTR is a macro to cast integer to pointer:

```
static inline void * __must_check ERR_PTR(long error)
{
    return (void *) error;
}
```

(<https://github.com/torvalds/linux/blob/61d0b5a4b2777dcf5daef245e212b3c1fa8091ca/tools/virtio/linux/err.h>)

This header file also has a macro helper to distinguish error code from pointer:

```
#define IS_ERR_VALUE(x) unlikely((x) >= (unsigned long)-MAX_ERRNO)
```

This means, error codes are the “pointers” which are very close to -1 and, hopefully, there are nothing in kernel memory on the addresses like 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFF, 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFE, 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFD, etc.

Much more popular solution is to return *NULL* in case of error and to pass error code via additional argument. Linux kernel authors don’t do that, but everyone who use

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

these functions must always keep in mind that returning pointer must always be checked with `IS_ERR_VALUE` before dereferencing.

For example:

```
fman->cam_offset = fman_muram_alloc(fman->muram, fman->cam_size);
if (IS_ERR_VALUE(fman->cam_offset)) {
    dev_err(fman->dev, "%s: MURAM alloc for DMA CAM failed\n",
            __func__);
    return -ENOMEM;
}
```

(<https://github.com/torvalds/linux/blob/aa00edc1287a693eadc7bc67a3d73555d969b35d/drivers/net/ethernet/freescale/fman/fman.c#L826>)

Pointers abuse in UNIX userland

`mmap()` function returns `-1` in case of error (or `MAP_FAILED`, which equals to `-1`). Some people say, `mmap()` can map a memory at zeroth address in rare situations, so it can't use `0` or `NULL` as error code.

3.23.4 Null pointers

“Null pointer assignment” error of MS-DOS era

Oldschool readers may recall a weird error message of MS-DOS era: “Null pointer assignment”. What does it mean?

It's not possible to write a memory at zero address in *NIX and Windows OSes, but it was possible to do so in MS-DOS due to absence of memory protection whatsoever.

So I've pulled my ancient Turbo C++ 3.0 (later it was renamed to Borland C++) from early 1990s and tried to compile this:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int *ptr=NULL;
    *ptr=1234;
    printf ("Now let's read at NULL\n");
    printf ("%d\n", *ptr);
}
```

Hard to believe, but it works, with error upon exit, though:

Listing 3.124: Ancient Turbo C 3.0

```
C:\TC30\BIN\1
Now let's read at NULL
1234
Null pointer assignment

C:\TC30\BIN>_
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

Let's dig deeper into the source code of [CRT](#) of Borland C++ 3.1, file *c0.asm*:

```
; _checknull()      check for null pointer zapping copyright message

...
; Check for null pointers before exit

__checknull      PROC    DIST
                PUBLIC   __checknull

IF      LDATA  EQ  false
IFNDEF  __TINY__
        push   si
        push   di
        mov    es, cs:DGROUP@@
        xor    ax, ax
        mov    si, ax
        mov    cx, lgth_CopyRight
ComputeChecksum label  near
        add   al, es:[si]
        adc   ah, 0
        inc   si
        loop  ComputeChecksum
        sub   ax, CheckSum
        jz   @@SumOK
        mov   cx, lgth_NullCheck
        mov   dx, offset DGROUP: NullCheck
        call  ErrorDisplay
@@SumOK:       pop   di
                pop   si
ENDIF
ENDIF

_DATA           SEGMENT

; Magic symbol used by the debug info to locate the data segment
; public DATASEG@
DATASEG@        label  byte

; The CopyRight string must NOT be moved or changed without
; changing the null pointer check logic

CopyRight        db      4 dup(0)
                db      'Borland C++ - Copyright 1991 Borland Intl.',0
lgth_CopyRight equ    $ - CopyRight

IF      LDATA  EQ  false
IFNDEF  __TINY__
CheckSum        equ    00D5Ch
NullCheck       db      'Null pointer assignment', 13, 10
lgth_NullCheck equ    $ - NullCheck
ENDIF
ENDIF
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

...

The MS-DOS memory model was really weird ([11.6 on page 1284](#)) and probably not worth looking into it unless you're fan of retrocomputing or retrogaming. One thing we have to keep in mind is that memory segment (included data segment) in MS-DOS is a memory segment in which code or data is stored, but unlike "serious" OSes, it's started at address 0.

And in Borland C++ [CRT](#), the data segment is started with 4 zero bytes and the copyright string "Borland C++ - Copyright 1991 Borland Intl.". The integrity of the 4 zero bytes and text string is checked upon exit, and if it's corrupted, the error message is displayed.

But why? Writing at null pointer is common mistake in C/C++, and if you do so in *NIX or Windows, your application will crash. MS-DOS has no memory protection, so [CRT](#) has to check this post-factum and warn about it upon exit. If you see this message, this means, your program at some point has written at address 0.

Our program did so. And this is why 1234 number has been read correctly: because it was written at the place of the first 4 zero bytes. Checksum is incorrect upon exit (because the number has been left there), so error message has been displayed.

Am I right? I've rewritten the program to check my assumptions:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
{
    int *ptr=NULL;
    *ptr=1234;
    printf ("Now let's read at NULL\n");
    printf ("%d\n", *ptr);
    *ptr=0; // psst, cover our tracks!
}
```

This program executes without error message upon exit.

Though method to warn about null pointer assignment is relevant for MS-DOS, perhaps, it can still be used today in low-cost [MCUs](#) with no memory protection and/or [MMU³⁷](#).

Why would anyone write at address 0?

But why would sane programmer write a code which writes something at address 0? It can be done accidentally: for example, a pointer must be initialized to newly allocated memory block and then passed to some function which returns data through pointer.

```
int *ptr=NULL;
```

³⁷Memory Management Unit

```
... we forgot to allocate memory and initialize ptr
strcpy (ptr, buf); // strcpy() terminates silently because MS-DOS has no
                     memory protection
```

Even worse:

```
int *ptr=malloc(1000);
...
... we forgot to check if memory has been really allocated: this is MS-DOS ↴
    ↴ after all and computers had small amount of RAM,
... and RAM shortage was very common.
... if malloc() returned NULL, the ptr will also be NULL.

strcpy (ptr, buf); // strcpy() terminates silently because MS-DOS has no
                     memory protection
```

Writing on 0th address on purpose

Here is an example from `dmalloc`³⁸, a portable way of generating core dump, if other ways are not available:

3.4 Generating a Core File on Errors

If the `error-abort' debug token has been enabled, when the library detects any problems with the heap memory, it will immediately attempt to dump a core file. *Note Debug Tokens::: Core files are a complete copy of the program and its state and can be used by a debugger to see specifically what is going on when the error occurred. *Note Using With a Debugger::: By default, the low, medium, and high arguments to the library utility enable the `error-abort' token. You can disable this feature by entering `dmalloc -m error-abort' (-m for minus) to remove the `error-abort' token and your program will just log errors and continue. You can also use the `error-dump' token which tries to dump core when it sees an error but still continue running. *Note Debug Tokens:::.

When a program dumps core, the system writes the program and all of its memory to a file on disk usually named `core'. If your program is called `foo' then your system may dump core as `foo.core'. If you are not getting a `core' file, make sure that your program has not changed to a new directory meaning that it may have written the core file in a different location. Also insure that your program has write privileges over the directory that it is in otherwise it will not be able to dump a core file. Core dumps are often security problems since they contain all program memory so systems often block their being produced. You will want to check your user and system's core dump size ulimit settings.

The library by default uses the `abort' function to dump core which

³⁸<http://dmalloc.com/>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

may or may not work depending on your operating system. If the following program does not dump core then this may be the problem. See 'KILL_PROCESS' definition in 'settings.dist'.

```
main()
{
    abort();
}
```

If 'abort' does work then you may want to try the following setting in 'settings.dist'. This code tries to generate a segmentation fault by dereferencing a 'NULL' pointer.

```
#define KILL_PROCESS { int *_int_p = 0L; *_int_p = 1; }
```

NULL in C/C++

NULL in C/C++ is just a macro which is often defined like this:

```
#define NULL ((void*)0)
```

([libio.h file](#))

`void*` is a data type reflecting the fact it's the pointer, but to a value of unknown data type (`void`).

NULL is usually used to show absence of an object. For example, you have a single-linked list, and each node has a `value` (or pointer to a value) and `next` pointer. To show that there are no next node, 0 is stored to `next` field. (Other solutions are just worse.) Perhaps, you may have some crazy environment where you need to allocate memory blocks at zero address. How would you indicate absence of the next node? Some kind of *magic number*? Maybe -1? Or maybe using additional bit?

In Wikipedia we may find this:

In fact, quite contrary to the zero page's original preferential use, some modern operating systems such as FreeBSD, Linux and Microsoft Windows[2] actually make the zero page inaccessible to trap uses of NULL pointers.

(https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zero_page)

Null pointer to function

It's possible to call function by its address. For example, I compile this by MSVC 2010 and run it in Windows 7:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main()
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```
{
    printf ("0x%x\n", &MessageBoxA);
};
```

The result is `0x7578feae` and doesn't change after several times I run it, because `user32.dll` (where `MessageBoxA` function resides) is always loaded at the same address. And also because [ASLR³⁹](#) is not enabled (result would be different each time in that case).

Let's call `MessageBoxA()` by address:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

typedef int (*msgboxtyp)(HWND hWnd, LPCTSTR lpText, LPCTSTR lpCaption, ↴
    ↴ UINT uType);

int main()
{
    msgboxtyp msgboxaddr=0x7578feae;

    // force to load DLL into process memory,
    // since our code doesn't use any function from user32.dll,
    // and DLL is not imported
    LoadLibrary ("user32.dll");

    msgboxaddr(NULL, "Hello, world!", "hello", MB_OK);
};
```

Weird, but works in Windows 7 x86.

This is commonly used in shellcodes, because it's hard to call DLL functions by name from there. And [ASLR](#) is a countermeasure.

Now what is really weird, some embedded C programmers may be familiar with a code like that:

```
int reset()
{
    void (*foo)(void) = 0;
    foo();
};
```

Who will want to call a function at address 0? This is portable way to jump at zero address. Many low-cost cheap microcontrollers also have no memory protection or [MMU](#) and after reset, they start to execute code at address 0, where some kind of initialization code is stored. So jumping to address 0 is a way to reset itself. One could use inline assembly, but if it's not possible, this portable method can be used.

It even compiles correctly by my GCC 4.8.4 on Linux x64:

³⁹Address Space Layout Randomization

```
reset:
    sub    rsp, 8
    xor    eax, eax
    call   rax
    add    rsp, 8
    ret
```

The fact that stack pointer is shifted is not a problem: initialization code in microcontrollers usually completely ignores registers and RAM state and boots from scratch.

And of course, this code will crash on *NIX or Windows because of memory protection and even in absence of protection, there are no code at address 0.

GCC even has non-standard extension, allowing to jump to a specific address rather than call a function there: <http://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/gcc/Labels-as-Values.html>.

3.23.5 Array as function argument

Someone may ask, what is the difference between declaring function argument type as array and as pointer?

As it seems, there are no difference at all:

```
void write_something1(int a[16])
{
    a[5]=0;
}

void write_something2(int *a)
{
    a[5]=0;
}

int f()
{
    int a[16];
    write_something1(a);
    write_something2(a);
}
```

Optimizing GCC 4.8.4:

```
write_something1:
    mov    DWORD PTR [rdi+20], 0
    ret

write_something2:
    mov    DWORD PTR [rdi+20], 0
    ret
```

But you may still declare array instead of pointer for self-documenting purposes, if the size of array is always fixed. And maybe, some static analysis tool will be able to warn you about possible buffer overflow. Or is it possible with some tools today?

Some people, including Linus Torvalds, criticizes this C/C++ feature: <https://lkml.org/lkml/2015/9/3/428>.

C99 standard also have *static* keyword [ISO/IEC 9899:TC3 (C C99 standard), (2007) 6.7.5.3]:

If the keyword *static* also appears within the [and] of the array type derivation, then for each call to the function, the value of the corresponding actual argument shall provide access to the first element of an array with at least as many elements as specified by the size expression.

3.23.6 Pointer to a function

A function name in C/C++ without brackets, like “printf” is a pointer to function of *void (*)()* type. Let's try to read function's contents and patch it:

```
#include <memory.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void print_something ()
{
    printf ("we are in %s()\n", __FUNCTION__);
}

int main()
{
    print_something();
    printf ("first 3 bytes: %x %x %x...\n",
            *(unsigned char*)print_something,
            *((unsigned char*)print_something+1),
            *((unsigned char*)print_something+2));

    *(unsigned char*)print_something=0xC3; // RET's opcode
    printf ("going to call patched print_something():\n");
    print_something();
    printf ("it must exit at this point\n");
}
```

It tells, that the first 3 bytes of functions are 55 89 e5. Indeed, these are opcodes of PUSH EBP and MOV EBP, ESP instructions (these are x86 opcodes). But then our program crashes, because *text* section is readonly.

We can recompile our example and make *text* section writable ⁴⁰:

⁴⁰<http://stackoverflow.com/questions/27581279/make-text-segment-writable-elf>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
gcc --static -g -Wl,--omagic -o example example.c
```

That works!

```
we are in print_something()
first 3 bytes: 55 89 e5...
going to call patched print_something():
it must exit at this point
```

3.23.7 Pointer to a function: copy protection

A software cracker can find a function that checks protection and return *true* or *false*. He/she then can put XOR EAX,EAX / RETN or MOV EAX, 1 / RETN there.

Can you check integrity of the function? As it turns out, this can be done easily.

According to objdump, the first 3 bytes of check_protection() are 0x55 0x89 0xE5 (given the fact this is non-optimizing GCC):

```
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int check_protection()
{
    // do something
    return 0;
    // or return 1;
};

int main()
{
    if (check_protection()==0)
    {
        printf ("no protection installed\n");
        exit(0);
    };

    // ...and then, at some very important point...
    if (*(((unsigned char*)check_protection)+0) != 0x55)
    {
        printf ("1st byte has been altered\n");
        // do something mean, add watermark, etc
    };
    if (*(((unsigned char*)check_protection)+1) != 0x89)
    {
        printf ("2nd byte has been altered\n");
        // do something mean, add watermark, etc
    };
    if (*(((unsigned char*)check_protection)+2) != 0xe5)
    {
        printf ("3rd byte has been altered\n");
        // do something mean, add watermark, etc
    };
}
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
    };
}
```

```
0000054d <check_protection>:
54d: 55          push   %ebp
54e: 89 e5        mov    %esp,%ebp
550: e8 b7 00 00 00 call   60c <__x86.get_pc_thunk.ax>
555: 05 7f 1a 00 00 add    $0x1a7f,%eax
55a: b8 00 00 00 00 mov    $0x0,%eax
55f: 5d          pop    %ebp
560: c3          ret
```

If someone would patch the beginning of the `check_protection()` function, your program can do something mean, maybe exit suddenly. To find such a trick, a cracker can set a memory read breakpoint on the address of the function's beginning. ([tracer](#) has BPMx options for that.)

3.23.8 Pointer to a function: a common bug (or typo)

A notorious bug/typo:

```
int expired()
{
    // check license key, current date/time, etc
};

int main()
{
    if (expired) // must be expired() here
    {
        print ("expired\n");
        exit(0);
    }
    else
    {
        // do something
    };
}
```

Since the function's name alone is interpreted as a pointer to function, or its address, the `if(function_name)` statement is like `if(true)`.

Unfortunately, a C/C++ compiler wouldn't issue a warning.

3.23.9 Pointer as object identifier

Both assembly language and C has no [OOP](#) features, but it's possible to write a code in [OOP](#) style (just treat structure as an object).

It's interesting, that sometimes, pointer to an object (or its address) is called as ID (in sense of data hiding/encapsulation).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

For example, `LoadLibrary()`, according to [MSDN⁴¹](#), returns “handle to the module” ⁴². Then you pass this “handle” to other functions like `GetProcAddress()`. But in fact, `LoadLibrary()` returns pointer to DLL file mapped into memory ⁴³. You can read two bytes from the address `LoadLibrary()` returns, and that would be “MZ” (first two bytes of any .EXE/.DLL file in Windows).

Apparently, Microsoft “hides” that fact to provide better forward compatibility. Also, `HMODULE` and `HINSTANCE` data types had another meaning in 16-bit Windows.

Probably, this is reason why `printf()` has “%p” modifier, which is used for printing pointers (32-bit integers on 32-bit architectures, 64-bit on 64-bit, etc) in hexadecimal form. Address of a structure dumped into debug log may help in finding it in another place of log.

Here is also from SQLite source code:

```

...
struct Pager {
    sqlite3_vfs *pVfs;           /* OS functions to use for IO */
    u8 exclusiveMode;           /* Boolean. True if locking_mode==EXCLUSIVE */
    ...
    u8 journalMode;             /* One of the PAGER_JOURNALMODE_* values */
    u8 useJournal;              /* Use a rollback journal on this file */
    u8 noSync;                  /* Do not sync the journal if true */
}

...
static int pagerLockDb(Pager *pPager, int eLock){
    int rc = SQLITE_OK;

    assert( eLock==SHARED_LOCK || eLock==RESERVED_LOCK || eLock==
        EXCLUSIVE_LOCK );
    if( pPager->eLock<eLock || pPager->eLock==UNKNOWN_LOCK ){
        rc = sqlite3OsLock(pPager->fd, eLock);
        if( rc==SQLITE_OK && (pPager->eLock!=UNKNOWN_LOCK||eLock==
            EXCLUSIVE_LOCK ) ){
            pPager->eLock = (u8)eLock;
            IOTRACE(("LOCK %p %d\n", pPager, eLock));
        }
    }
    return rc;
}
...
PAGER_INCR(sqlite3_page_readdb_count);
PAGER_INCR(pPager->nRead);
IOTRACE(("PGIN %p %d\n", pPager, pgno));
PAGERTRACE(("FETCH %d page %d hash(%08x)\n",

```

⁴¹Microsoft Developer Network

⁴²[https://msdn.microsoft.com/ru-ru/library/windows/desktop/ms684175\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/ru-ru/library/windows/desktop/ms684175(v=vs.85).aspx)

⁴³<https://blogs.msdn.microsoft.com/oldnewthing/20041025-00/?p=37483>

```
PAGERID(pPager), pgno, pager_pagehash(pPg));
```

1

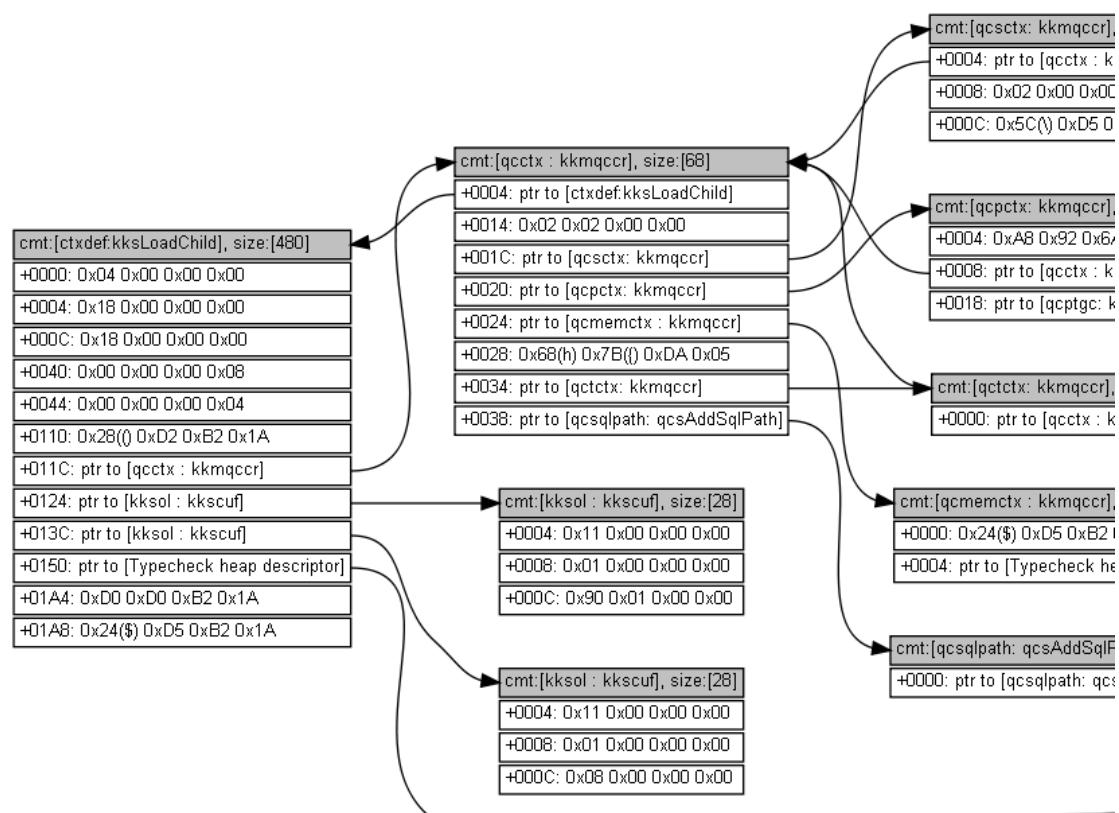
3.23.10 Oracle RDBMS and a simple garbage collector for C/C++

There was a time, when the author of these lines tried to learn more about Oracle RDBMS, searching for vulnerabilities, etc. This is a huge piece of software, and a typical function can take very large nested objects as arguments. And I wanted to dump these objects, as trees (or graphs).

Also, I tracked all memory allocations/deallocations by intercepting memory allocating/deallocating functions. And when a function to be intercepted getting a pointer to a block in memory, I search for the block in a list of blocks allocated. I'm getting its size + short name of block (this is like "tagging" in Windows OS kernel⁴⁴).

Given a block, I can scan it for 32-bit words (on 32-bit OS) or for 64-bit words (on 64-bit OS). Each word can be a pointer to another block. And if it is so (I find this another block in my records), I can process it recursively.

And then, using GraphViz, I could render such a diagrams:



⁴⁴Read more about comments in allocated blocks: Dennis Yurichev, *C/C++ programming language notes* <http://yurichev.com/C-book.html>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

Bigger pictures: [1](#), [2](#).

This is quite impressive, given the fact that I had no information about data types of all these structures. But I could get some information from it.

Now the garbage collector for C/C++: Boehm GC

If you use a block allocated in memory, its address has to be present somewhere, as a pointer in some structure/array in another allocated block, or in globally allocated structure, or in local variable in stack. If there are no pointer to a block, you can call it "orphan", and it will be a reason of memory leak.

And this is what [GC⁴⁵](#) does. It scans all blocks (because it keeps tabs on all blocks allocated) for pointers. It's important to understand, that it has no idea of data types of all these structure fields in blocks—this is important, [GC](#) has no information about types. It just scans blocks for 32-bit or 64-bit words and see, if they could be a pointers to another block(s). It also scans stack. It treats allocated blocks and stack as arrays of words, some of which may be pointers. And if it found a block allocated, which is "orphaned", i.e., there are no pointer(s) to it from another block(s) or stack, this block considered unneeded, to be freed. Scanning process takes time, and this is what [GCs](#) are criticized.

Also, [GC](#) like Boehm GC⁴⁶ (for pure C) has function like `GC_malloc_atomic()`—using it, you declare that the block allocated using this function will never contain any pointer(s) to other block(s). Maybe this could be a text string, or other type of data. (Indeed, `GC_strdup()` calls `GC_malloc_atomic()`.) [GC](#) will not scan it.

3.24 Loop optimizations

3.24.1 Weird loop optimization

This is a simplest ever `memcpy()` function implementation:

```
void memcpy (unsigned char* dst, unsigned char* src, size_t cnt)
{
    size_t i;
    for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
        dst[i]=src[i];
}
```

At least MSVC 6.0 from the end of 1990s till MSVC 2013 can produce a really weird code (this listing is generated by MSVC 2013 x86):

```
_dst$ = 8          ; size = 4
_src$ = 12         ; size = 4
_cnt$ = 16         ; size = 4
_memcpy PROC
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _cnt$[esp-4]
    test   edx, edx
```

⁴⁵Garbage Collector

⁴⁶<https://www.hboehm.info/gc/>

```

je      SHORT $LN1@f
mov    eax, DWORD PTR _dst$[esp-4]
push   esi
mov    esi, DWORD PTR _src$[esp]
sub    esi, eax
; ESI=src-dst, i.e., pointers difference
$LL8@f:
    mov    cl, BYTE PTR [esi+eax] ; load byte at "esi+dst" or at
    "src-dst+dst" at the beginning or at just "src"
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR [eax+1] ; dst++
    mov    BYTE PTR [eax-1], cl   ; store the byte at "(dst++)--" or at
just "dst" at the beginning
    dec    edx                  ; decrement counter until we finished
    jne    SHORT $LL8@f
    pop    esi
$LN1@f:
    ret    0
_memcpy ENDP

```

This is weird, because how humans work with two pointers? They store two addresses in two registers or two memory cells. MSVC compiler in this case stores two pointers as one pointer (*sliding dst* in EAX) and difference between *src* and *dst* pointers (left unchanged over the span of loop body execution in ESI). (By the way, this is a rare case when `ptrdiff_t` data type can be used.) When it needs to load a byte from *src*, it loads it at *diff + sliding dst* and stores byte at just *sliding dst*.

This has to be some optimization trick. But I've rewritten this function to:

```

_f2 PROC
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _cnt$[esp-4]
    test   edx, edx
    je     SHORT $LN1@f
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _dst$[esp-4]
    push   esi
    mov    esi, DWORD PTR _src$[esp]
; eax=dst; esi=src
$LL8@f:
    mov    cl, BYTE PTR [esi+edx]
    mov    BYTE PTR [eax+edx], cl
    dec    edx
    jne    SHORT $LL8@f
    pop    esi
$LN1@f:
    ret    0
_f2 ENDP

```

...and it works as efficient as the *optimized* version on my Intel Xeon E31220 @ 3.10GHz. Maybe, this optimization was targeted some older x86 CPUs of 1990s era, since this trick is used at least by ancient MS VC 6.0?

Any idea?

Hex-Rays 2.2 have a hard time recognizing patterns like that (hopefully, temporary?):

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

void __cdecl f1(char *dst, char *src, size_t size)
{
    size_t counter; // edx@1
    char *sliding_dst; // eax@2
    char tmp; // cl@3

    counter = size;
    if ( size )
    {
        sliding_dst = dst;
        do
        {
            tmp = (sliding_dst++)[src - dst];           // difference (src-dst) is
            calculated once, at the beginning
            *(sliding_dst - 1) = tmp;
            --counter;
        }
        while ( counter );
    }
}

```

Nevertheless, this optimization trick is often used by MSVC (not just in DIY⁴⁷ home-brew `memcpy()` routines, but in many loops which uses two or more arrays), so it's worth for reverse engineers to keep it in mind.

3.24.2 Another loop optimization

If you process all elements of some array which happens to be located in global memory, compiler can optimize it. For example, let's calculate a sum of all elements of array of 128 `int`'s:

```

#include <stdio.h>

int a[128];

int sum_of_a()
{
    int rt=0;

    for (int i=0; i<128; i++)
        rt=rt+a[i];

    return rt;
};

int main()
{
    // initialize
    for (int i=0; i<128; i++)
        a[i]=i;
}

```

⁴⁷Do It Yourself

```
// calculate the sum
printf ("%d\n", sum_of_a());
};
```

Optimizing GCC 5.3.1 (x86) can produce this ([IDA](#)):

```
.text:080484B0 sum_of_a    proc near
.text:080484B0          mov     edx, offset a
.text:080484B5          xor     eax, eax
.text:080484B7          mov     esi, esi
.text:080484B9          lea     edi, [edi+0]
.text:080484C0
.text:080484C0 loc_80484C0:      ; CODE XREF: sum_of_a+1B
.text:080484C0          add     eax, [edx]
.text:080484C2          add     edx, 4
.text:080484C5          cmp     edx, offset ↴
        ↴ __libc_start_main@@GLIBC_2_0
.text:080484CB          jnz     short loc_80484C0
.text:080484CD          rep     retn
.text:080484CD sum_of_a    endp
.text:080484CD

...
.bss:0804A040           public a
.bss:0804A040 a         dd 80h dup(?) ; DATA XREF: main:loc_8048338
.bss:0804A040           ; main+19
.bss:0804A040 _bss       ends
.bss:0804A040
extern:0804A240 ;
=====
extern:0804A240
extern:0804A240 ; Segment type: Externs
extern:0804A240 ; extern
extern:0804A240          extrn __libc_start_main@@GLIBC_2_0:near
extern:0804A240           ; DATA XREF: main+25
extern:0804A240           ; main+5D
extern:0804A244          extrn __printf_chk@@GLIBC_2_3_4:near
extern:0804A248          extrn __libc_start_main:near
extern:0804A248           ; CODE XREF: __libc_start_main
extern:0804A248           ; DATA XREF: .got.plt:off_804A00C
```

What the heck is `__libc_start_main@@GLIBC_2_0` at `0x080484C5`? This is a label just after end of `a[]` array. The function can be rewritten like this:

```
int sum_of_a_v2()
{
    int *tmp=a;
    int rt=0;

    do
    {
        rt=rt+(*tmp);
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        tmp++;
    }
    while (tmp<(a+128));

    return rt;
}

```

First version has *i* counter, and the address of each element of array is to be calculated at each iteration. The second version is more optimized: the pointer to each element of array is always ready and is sliding 4 bytes forward at each iteration. How to check if the loop is ended? Just compare the pointer with the address just behind array's end, which is, in our case, is happens to be address of imported `__libc_start_main()` function from Glibc 2.0. Sometimes code like this is confusing, and this is very popular optimizing trick, so that's why I made this example.

My second version is very close to what GCC did, and when I compile it, the code is almost the same as in first version, but two first instructions are swapped:

```

.text:080484D0          public sum_of_a_v2
.text:080484D0  sum_of_a_v2  proc near
.text:080484D0          xor    eax, eax
.text:080484D2          mov    edx, offset a
.text:080484D7          mov    esi, esi
.text:080484D9          lea    edi, [edi+0]
.text:080484E0
.text:080484E0  loc_80484E0:      ; CODE XREF: sum_of_a_v2+1B
.text:080484E0          add    eax, [edx]
.text:080484E2          add    edx, 4
.text:080484E5          cmp    edx, offset ↴
    ↴ __libc_start_main@@GLIBC_2_0
.text:080484EB          jnz    short loc_80484E0
.text:080484ED          rep    retn
.text:080484ED  sum_of_a_v2  endp

```

Needless to say, this optimization is possible if the compiler can calculate address of the end of array during compilation time. This happens if the array is global and its size is fixed.

However, if the address of array is unknown during compilation, but size is fixed, address of the label just behind array's end can be calculated at the beginning of the loop.

3.25 More about structures

3.25.1 Sometimes a C structure can be used instead of array

Arithmetic mean

```
#include <stdio.h>

int mean(int *a, int len)
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
{
    int sum=0;
    for (int i=0; i<len; i++)
        sum=sum+a[i];
    return sum/len;
};

struct five_ints
{
    int a0;
    int a1;
    int a2;
    int a3;
    int a4;
};

int main()
{
    struct five_ints a;
    a.a0=123;
    a.a1=456;
    a.a2=789;
    a.a3=10;
    a.a4=100;
    printf ("%d\n", mean(&a, 5));
    // test:
    https://www.wolframalpha.com/input/?i=mean(123,456,789,10,100)
};
```

This works: *mean()* function will never access behind the end of *five_ints* structure, because 5 is passed, meaning, only 5 integers will be accessed.

Putting string into structure

```
#include <stdio.h>

struct five_chars
{
    char a0;
    char a1;
    char a2;
    char a3;
    char a4;
} __attribute__ ((aligned (1),packed));

int main()
{
    struct five_chars a;
    a.a0='h';
    a.a1='i';
    a.a2='!';
    a.a3='\n';
    a.a4=0;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
    printf (&a); // prints "hi!"  
};
```

((aligned (1),packed)) attribute must be used, because otherwise, each structure field will be aligned on 4-byte or 8-byte boundary.

Summary

This is just another example of how structures and arrays are stored in memory. Perhaps, no sane programmer will do something like in this example, except in case of some specific hack. Or maybe in case of source code obfuscation?

3.25.2 Unsized array in C structure

In some win32 structures we can find ones with last field defined as an array of one element:

```
typedef struct _SYMBOL_INFO {  
    ULONG    SizeOfStruct;  
    ULONG    TypeIndex;  
  
    ...  
  
    ULONG    MaxNameLen;  
    TCHAR    Name[1];  
} SYMBOL_INFO, *PSYMBOL_INFO;
```

([https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms680686\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms680686(v=vs.85).aspx))

This is a hack, meaning, the last field is array of unknown size, which is to be calculated at the time of structure allocation.

Why: *Name* field may be short, so why to define it with some kind of *MAX_NAME* constant which can be 128, 256, or even bigger?

Why not to use pointer instead? Then you have to allocate two blocks: one for structure and the other one for string. This may be slower and may require larger memory overhead. Also, you need dereference pointer (i.e., read address of the string from the structure)—not a big deal, but some people say this is still surplus cost.

This is also known as *struct hack*: <http://c-faq.com/struct/structhack.html>.

Example:

```
#include <stdio.h>  
  
struct st  
{  
    int a;  
    int b;  
    char s[];
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```

};

void f (struct st *s)
{
    printf ("%d %d %s\n", s->a, s->b, s->s);
    // f() can't replace s[] with bigger string - size of allocated block
    // is unknown at this point
};

int main()
{
#define STRING "Hello!"
    struct st *s=malloc(sizeof(struct st)+strlen(STRING)+1); // incl.
    terminating zero
    s->a=1;
    s->b=2;
    strcpy (s->s, STRING);
    f(s);
}

```

In short, it works because C has no array boundary checks. Any array is treated as having infinite size.

Problem: after allocation, the whole size of allocated block for structure is unknown (except for memory manager), so you can't just replace string with larger string. You would still be able to do so if the field would be declared as something like `s[MAX_NAME]`.

In other words, you have a structure plus an array (or string) fused together in the single allocated memory block. Another problem is what you obviously can't declare two such arrays in single structure, or to declare another field after such array.

Older compilers require to declare array with at least one element: `s[1]`, newer allows to declare it as variable-sized array: `s[]`. This is also called *flexible array member* in C99 standard.

Read more about it in GCC documentation⁴⁸, MSDN documentation⁴⁹.

Dennis Ritchie (one of C creators) called this trick “unwarranted chumminess with the C implementation” (perhaps, acknowledging hackish nature of the trick).

Like it or not, use it or not: it is still another demonstration on how structures are stored in memory, that's why I write about it.

3.25.3 Version of C structure

Many Windows programmers have seen this in MSDN:

SizeOfStruct
The size of the structure, in bytes. This member must be set to <code>sizeof(↓ SYMBOL_INFO)</code> .

⁴⁸ <https://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/gcc/Zero-Length.html>

⁴⁹ <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/b6fae073.aspx>

([https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms680686\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms680686(v=vs.85).aspx))

Some structures like *SYMBOL_INFO* has started with this field indeed. Why? This is some kind of structure version.

Imagine you have a function which draws circle. It takes a single argument—a pointer to a structure with only three fields: X, Y and radius. And then color displays flooded a market, sometimes in 1980s. And you want to add *color* argument to the function. But, let's say, you cannot add another argument to it (a lot of software use your API⁵⁰ and cannot be recompiled). And if the old piece of software uses your API with color display, let your function draw a circle in (default) black and white colors.

Another day you add another feature: circle now can be filled, and brush type can be set.

Here is one solution to the problem:

```
#include <stdio.h>

struct ver1
{
    size_t SizeOfStruct;
    int coord_X;
    int coord_Y;
    int radius;
};

struct ver2
{
    size_t SizeOfStruct;
    int coord_X;
    int coord_Y;
    int radius;
    int color;
};

struct ver3
{
    size_t SizeOfStruct;
    int coord_X;
    int coord_Y;
    int radius;
    int color;
    int fill_brush_type; // 0 - do not fill circle
};

void draw_circle(struct ver3 *s) // latest struct version is used here
{
    //
    // we presume SizeOfStruct, coord_X and coord_Y fields are always present
}
```

⁵⁰Application Programming Interface

```

printf ("We are going to draw a circle at %d:%d\n", s->coord_X, s->
↳ coord_Y);

if (s->SizeOfStruct>=sizeof(int)*5)
{
    // this is at least ver2, color field is present
    printf ("We are going to set color %d\n", s->color);
}

if (s->SizeOfStruct>=sizeof(int)*6)
{
    // this is at least ver3, fill_brush_type field is present
    printf ("We are going to fill it using brush type %d\n", s-
↳ ->fill_brush_type);
}
};

// early software version
void call_as_ver1()
{
    struct ver1 s;
    s.SizeType=sizeof(s);
    s.coord_X=123;
    s.coord_Y=456;
    s.radius=10;
    printf ("** %s()\n", __FUNCTION__);
    draw_circle(&s);
};

// next software version
void call_as_ver2()
{
    struct ver2 s;
    s.SizeType=sizeof(s);
    s.coord_X=123;
    s.coord_Y=456;
    s.radius=10;
    s.color=1;
    printf ("** %s()\n", __FUNCTION__);
    draw_circle(&s);
};

// latest, the most extended version
void call_as_ver3()
{
    struct ver3 s;
    s.SizeType=sizeof(s);
    s.coord_X=123;
    s.coord_Y=456;
    s.radius=10;
    s.color=1;
    s.fill_brush_type=3;
    printf ("** %s()\n", __FUNCTION__);
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        draw_circle(&s);
    };

int main()
{
    call_as_ver1();
    call_as_ver2();
    call_as_ver3();
};

```

In other words, *SizeOfStruct* field takes a role of *version of structure* field. It could be enumerate type (1, 2, 3, etc.), but to set *SizeOfStruct* field to *sizeof(struct...)* is less prone to mistakes/bugs: we just write *s.SizeOfStruct=sizeof(...)* in caller's code.

In C++, this problem is solved using *inheritance* ([3.21.1 on page 705](#)). You just extend your base class (let's call it *Circle*), and then you will have *ColoredCircle* and then *FilledColoredCircle*, and so on. A current *version* of an object (or, more precisely, current *type*) will be determined using C++ [RTTI](#).

So when you see *SizeOfStruct* somewhere in [MSDN](#)—perhaps this structure was extended at least once in past.

3.25.4 High-score file in “Block out” game and primitive serialization

Many videogames has high-score file, sometimes called “Hall of fame”. Ancient “Block out”⁵¹ game (3D tetris from 1989) isn't exception, here is what we see at the end:

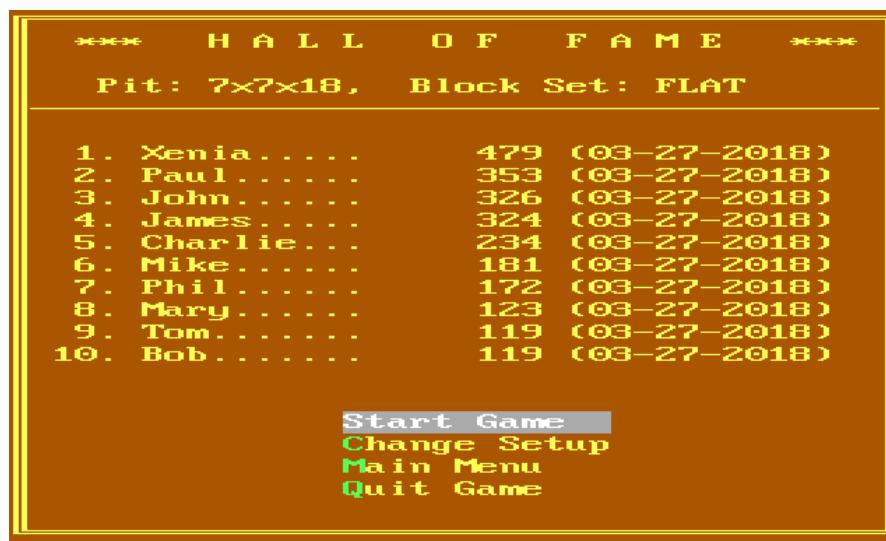


Figure 3.4: High score table

⁵¹<http://www.bestoldgames.net/eng/old-games/blockout.php>

Now we can see that the file has changed after we added our name is *BLSCORE.DAT*.

```
% xxd -g 1 BLSCORE.DAT
00000000: 0a 00 58 65 6e 69 61 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e 00 df 01 00 ..Xenia.....
00000010: 00 30 33 2d 32 37 2d 32 30 31 38 00 50 61 75 6c .03-27-2018.Paul
00000020: 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e 00 61 01 00 00 30 33 2d 32 37 .....a...03-27
00000030: 2d 32 30 31 38 00 4a 6f 68 6e 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e -2018.John.....
00000040: 00 46 01 00 00 30 33 2d 32 37 2d 32 30 31 38 00 .F...03-27-2018.
00000050: 4a 61 6d 65 73 2e 2e 2e 2e 00 44 01 00 00 30 James.....D...0
00000060: 33 2d 32 37 2d 32 30 31 38 00 43 68 61 72 6c 69 3-27-2018.Charli
00000070: 65 2e 2e 2e 00 ea 00 00 00 30 33 2d 32 37 2d 32 e.....03-27-2
00000080: 30 31 38 00 4d 69 6b 65 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e 00 b5 018.Mike.....
00000090: 00 00 00 30 33 2d 32 37 2d 32 30 31 38 00 50 68 ...03-27-2018.Ph
000000a0: 69 6c 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e 00 ac 00 00 00 30 33 2d il.....03-
000000b0: 32 37 2d 32 30 31 38 00 4d 61 72 79 2e 2e 2e 2e 27-2018.Mary....
000000c0: 2e 2e 00 7b 00 00 00 30 33 2d 32 37 2d 32 30 31 ...{...03-27-201
000000d0: 38 00 54 6f 6d 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e 00 77 00 00 8.Tom.....w..
000000e0: 00 30 33 2d 32 37 2d 32 30 31 38 00 42 6f 62 2e .03-27-2018.Bob.
000000f0: 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e 00 77 00 00 00 30 33 2d 32 37 .....w...03-27
00000100: 2d 32 30 31 38 00 -2018.
```

All entries are clearly visible. The very first byte is probably number of entries. Second is zero and, in fact, number of entries can be 16-bit value spanning over first two bytes.

Next, after “Xenia” name we see 0xDF and 0x01 bytes. Xenia has score of 479, and this is exactly 0x1DF in hexadecimal radix. So a high score value is probably 16-bit integer, or maybe 32-bit integer: there are two more zero bytes after.

Now let’s think about the fact that both array elements and structure elements are always placed in memory adjacently to each other. That enables us to write the whole array/structure to the file using simple *write()* or *fwrite()* function, and then restore it using *read()* or *fread()*, as simple as that. This is what is called *serialization* nowadays.

Read

Now let’s write C program to read highscore file:

```
#include <assert.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>
#include <string.h>

struct entry
{
    char name[11]; // incl. terminating zero
    uint32_t score;
    char date[11]; // incl. terminating zero
} __attribute__ ((aligned (1),packed));

struct highscore_file
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
{
    uint8_t count;
    uint8_t unknown;
    struct entry entries[10];
} __attribute__ ((aligned (1), packed));

struct highscore_file file;

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    FILE* f=fopen(argv[1], "rb");
    assert (f!=NULL);
    size_t got=fread(&file, 1, sizeof(struct highscore_file), f);
    assert (got==sizeof(struct highscore_file));
    fclose(f);
    for (int i=0; i<file.count; i++)
    {
        printf ("name=%s score=%d date=%s\n",
               file.entries[i].name,
               file.entries[i].score,
               file.entries[i].date);
    };
}
```

We need GCC *((aligned (1),packed))* attribute so that all structure fields will be packed on 1-byte boundary.

Of course it works:

```
name=Xenia..... score=479 date=03-27-2018
name=Paul..... score=353 date=03-27-2018
name=John..... score=326 date=03-27-2018
name=James..... score=324 date=03-27-2018
name=Charlie... score=234 date=03-27-2018
name=Mike..... score=181 date=03-27-2018
name=Phil..... score=172 date=03-27-2018
name=Mary..... score=123 date=03-27-2018
name=Tom..... score=119 date=03-27-2018
name=Bob..... score=119 date=03-27-2018
```

(Needless to say, each name is padded with dots, both on screen and in the file, perhaps, for æsthetical reasons.)

Write

Let's check if we right about width of score value. Is it really has 32 bits?

```
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    FILE* f=fopen(argv[1], "rb");
    assert (f!=NULL);
    size_t got=fread(&file, 1, sizeof(struct highscore_file), f);
    assert (got==sizeof(struct highscore_file));
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

fclose(f);

strcpy (file.entries[1].name, "Mallory...");
file.entries[1].score=12345678;
strcpy (file.entries[1].date, "08-12-2016");

f=fopen(argv[1], "wb");
assert (f!=NULL);
got=fwrite(&file, 1, sizeof(struct highscore_file), f);
assert (got==sizeof(struct highscore_file));
fclose(f);
};

```

Let's run Blockout:

*** H A L L O F F A M E ***			
Pit: 7x7x18, Block Set: FLAT			
1.	Xenia.....	479	(03-27-2018)
2.	Mallory....	345678	(08-12-2016)
3.	John.....	326	(03-27-2018)
4.	James.....	324	(03-27-2018)
5.	Charlie...	234	(03-27-2018)
6.	Mike.....	181	(03-27-2018)
7.	Phil.....	172	(03-27-2018)
8.	Mary.....	123	(03-27-2018)
9.		123	(03-27-2018)
10.	Tom.....	119	(03-27-2018)

Figure 3.5: High score table

First two digits (1 and 2) are truncated: 12345678 becomes 345678. Perhaps, this is formatting issues... but the number is almost correct. Now I'm changing it to 999999 and run again:

*** HALL OF FAME ***			
Pit: 7x7x18, Block Set: FLAT			
1.	Xenia.....	479	(03-27-2018)
2.	Mallory....	999999	(08-12-2016)
3.	John.....	326	(03-27-2018)
4.	James.....	324	(03-27-2018)
5.	Charlie....	234	(03-27-2018)
6.	Mike.....	181	(03-27-2018)
7.	Phil.....	172	(03-27-2018)
8.	133	(03-27-2018)
9.	132	(03-27-2018)
10.	Mary.....	123	(03-27-2018)

Figure 3.6: High score table

Now it's correct. Yes, high score value is 32-bit integer.

Is it serialization?

...almost. Serialization like this is highly popular in scientific and engineering software, where efficiency and speed is much more important than converting into [XML](#)⁵² or [JSON](#)⁵³ and back.

One important thing is that you obviously cannot serialize pointers, because each time you load the file into memory, all the structures may be allocated in different places.

But: if you work on some kind of low-cost [MCU](#) with simple [OS](#) on it and you have your structures allocated at always same places in memory, perhaps you can save and restore pointers as well.

Random noise

When I prepared this example, I had to run "Block out" many times and played for it a bit to fill high-score table with random names.

And when there were just 3 entries in the file, I saw this:

00000000: 03 00 54 6f 6d 61 73 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e 00 da 2a 00 ..Tomas.....*
00000010: 00 30 38 2d 31 32 2d 32 30 31 36 00 43 68 61 72 .08-12-2016.Char
00000020: 6c 69 65 2e 2e 2e 00 8b 1e 00 00 30 38 2d 31 32 lie.....08-12
00000030: 2d 32 30 31 36 00 4a 6f 68 6e 2e 2e 2e 2e 2e -2016.John.....
00000040: 00 80 00 00 00 30 38 2d 31 32 2d 32 30 31 36 0008-12-2016.
00000050: 00 00 57 c8 a2 01 06 01 ba f9 47 c7 05 00 f8 4f ..W.....G....0
00000060: 06 01 06 01 a6 32 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 002.....
00000070: 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

⁵²Extensible Markup Language

⁵³JavaScript Object Notation

000000080:	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
000000090:	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
0000000a0:	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	93	c6	a2	01	46	72	Fr
0000000b0:	8c	f9	f6	c5	05	00	f8	4f	00	02	06	01	a6	32	06	01	.	0	.	2	.
0000000c0:	00	00	98	f9	f2	c0	05	00	f8	4f	00	02	a6	32	a2	f9	.	0	.	2	.
0000000d0:	80	c1	a6	32	a6	32	f4	4f	aa	f9	39	c1	a6	32	06	01	.	2	.	0	.
0000000e0:	b4	f9	2b	c5	a6	32	e1	4f	c7	c8	a2	01	82	72	c6	f9	.	+	.	2	.
0000000f0:	30	c0	05	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	a6	32	d4	f9	76	2d	0	.	.	2	.
000001000:	a6	32	00	00	00	00	2	.	.	v

The first byte has value of 3, meaning there are 3 entries. And there are 3 entries present. But then we see a random noise at the second half of file.

The noise is probably has its origins in uninitialized data. Perhaps, “Block out” allocated memory for 10 entries somewhere in [heap](#), where, obviously, some pseudo-random noise (left from something else) was present. Then it set first/second byte, fill 3 entries, and then it never touched 7 entries left, so they are written to the file as is.

When "Block out" loads high score file at the next run, it reads number of entries from the first/second byte (3) and then completely ignores what is after it.

This is common problem. Not a problem in strict sense: it's not a bug, but information can be exposed outwards.

Microsoft Word versions from 1990s has been often left pieces of previously edited texts into the *.doc* files. It was some kind of amusement back then, to get a .doc file from someone, then open it in a hexadecimal editor and read something else, what has been edited on that computer before.

The problem can be even much more serious: Heartbleed bug in OpenSSL.

Homework

“Block out” has several polycubes (flat/basic/extended), size of pit can be configured, etc. And it seems, for each configuration, “Block out” has its own high score table. I’ve noticed that some information is probably stored in *BLSCORE.IDX* file. This can be a homework for hardcore “Block out” fans—to understand its structure as well.

The “Block out” files are here: <http://beginners.re/examples/blockout.zip> (including the binary high score files I’ve used in this example). You can use DosBox to run it.

3.26 memmove() and memcpy()

The difference between these standard functions is that `memcpy()` blindly copies a block to another place, while `memmove()` correctly handles overlapping blocks. For example, you want to tug a string two bytes back:

```
`|.|.|h|e|l|l|o|...` -> `|h|e|l|l|o|...`
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

memcpy() which copies 32-bit or 64-bit words at once, or even SIMD, will obviously fail here, a byte-wise copy routine must be used instead.

Now even more advanced example, insert two bytes in front of string:

```
`|h|e|l|l|o|...` -> `.|.|.|h|e|l|l|o|...`
```

Now even byte-wise memory copy routine will fail, you have to copy bytes starting at the end.

That's a rare case where DF x86 flag is to be set before REP MOVSB instruction: DF defines direction, and now we must move backwardly.

The typical *memmove()* routine works like this: 1) if source is below destination, copy forward; 2) if source is above destination, copy backward.

This is *memmove()* from uClibc:

```
void *memmove(void *dest, const void *src, size_t n)
{
    int eax, ecx, esi, edi;
    __asm__ __volatile__(
        "        movl    %%eax, %%edi\n"
        "        cmpl    %%esi, %%eax\n"
        "        je     2f\n" /* (optional) src == dest -> NOP */
        "        jb     1f\n" /* src > dest -> simple copy */
        "        leal    -1(%%esi,%%ecx), %%esi\n"
        "        leal    -1(%%eax,%%ecx), %%edi\n"
        "        std\n"
        "1:    rep; movsb\n"
        "        cld\n"
        "2:\n"
        : "&c" (ecx), "&S" (esi), "&a" (eax), "&D" (edi)
        : "0" (n), "1" (src), "2" (dest)
        : "memory"
    );
    return (void*)eax;
}
```

In the first case, REP MOVSB is called with DF flag cleared. In the second, DF is set, then cleared.

More complex algorithm has the following piece in it:

"if difference between *source* and *destination* is larger than width of word, copy using words rather than bytes, and use byte-wise copy to copy unaligned parts".

This how it happens in Glibc 2.24 in non-optimized C part.

Given all that, *memmove()* may be slower than *memcpy()*. But some people, including Linus Torvalds, argue⁵⁴ that *memcpy()* should be an alias (or synonym) of *memmove()*, and the latter function must just check at start, if the buffers are overlapping or not, and then behave as *memcpy()* or *memmove()*. Nowadays, check for overlapping buffers is very cheap, after all.

⁵⁴https://bugzilla.redhat.com/show_bug.cgi?id=638477#c132

3.26.1 Anti-debugging trick

I've heard about anti-debugging trick where all you need is just set DF to crash the process: the very next `memcpy()` routine will lead to crash because it copies backwardly. But I can't check this: it seems all memory copy routines clear/set DF as they want to. On the other hand, `memmove()` from uClibc I cited here, has no explicit clear of DF (it assumes DF is always clear?), so it can really crash.

3.27 setjmp/longjmp

`setjmp/longjmp` is a mechanism in C which is very similar to throw/catch mechanism in C++ and other higher-level [PLs](#). Here is an example from zlib:

```
...
/* return if bits() or decode() tries to read past available input */
if (setjmp(s.env) != 0) /* if came back here via longjmp(), */
    /*
     * err = 2; /* then skip decomp(), return */
     * error */
else
    err = decomp(&s); /* decompress */

...
/* load at least need bits into val */
val = s->bitbuf;
while (s->bitcnt < need) {
    if (s->left == 0) {
        s->left = s->infun(s->inhow, &(s->in));
        if (s->left == 0) longjmp(s->env, 1); /* out of input */

...
    if (s->left == 0) {
        s->left = s->infun(s->inhow, &(s->in));
        if (s->left == 0) longjmp(s->env, 1); /* out of input */
```

(zlib/contrib/blast/blast.c)

Call to `setjmp()` saves current [PC](#), [SP](#) and other registers into env structure, then it returns 0.

In case of error, `longjmp()` *teleporting* you into the point after right after `setjmp()` call, as if `setjmp()` call returned non-null value (which was passed to `longjmp()`). This reminds as `fork()` syscall in UNIX.

Now let's take a look on distilled example:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <setjmp.h>

jmp_buf env;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

void f2()
{
    printf ("%s() begin\n", __FUNCTION__);
    // something odd happened here
    longjmp (env, 1234);
    printf ("%s() end\n", __FUNCTION__);
}

void f1()
{
    printf ("%s() begin\n", __FUNCTION__);
    f2();
    printf ("%s() end\n", __FUNCTION__);
}

int main()
{
    int err=setjmp(env);
    if (err==0)
    {
        f1();
    }
    else
    {
        printf ("Error %d\n", err);
    };
}

```

If we run it, we will see:

```

f1() begin
f2() begin
Error 1234

```

`jmp_buf` structure usually comes undocumented, to preserve forward compatibility.

Let's see how `setjmp()` implemented in MSVC 2013 x64:

```

...
; RCX = address of jmp_buf

    mov    [rcx], rax
    mov    [rcx+8], rbx
    mov    [rcx+18h], rbp
    mov    [rcx+20h], rsi
    mov    [rcx+28h], rdi
    mov    [rcx+30h], r12
    mov    [rcx+38h], r13
    mov    [rcx+40h], r14
    mov    [rcx+48h], r15
    lea    r8, [rsp+arg_0]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov      [rcx+10h], r8
    mov      r8, [rsp+0]      ; get saved RA from stack
    mov      [rcx+50h], r8      ; save it
    stmxcsr dword ptr [rcx+58h]
    fnstcw word ptr [rcx+5Ch]
    movdqa xmmword ptr [rcx+60h], xmm6
    movdqa xmmword ptr [rcx+70h], xmm7
    movdqa xmmword ptr [rcx+80h], xmm8
    movdqa xmmword ptr [rcx+90h], xmm9
    movdqa xmmword ptr [rcx+0A0h], xmm10
    movdqa xmmword ptr [rcx+0B0h], xmm11
    movdqa xmmword ptr [rcx+0C0h], xmm12
    movdqa xmmword ptr [rcx+0D0h], xmm13
    movdqa xmmword ptr [rcx+0E0h], xmm14
    movdqa xmmword ptr [rcx+0F0h], xmm15
    retn

```

It just populates jmp_buf structure with current values of almost all registers. Also, current value of **RA** is taken from the stack and saved in jmp_buf: it will be used as new value of **PC** in future.

Now longjmp():

```

    ...
; RCX = address of jmp_buf

    mov      rax, rdx
    mov      rbx, [rcx+8]
    mov      rsi, [rcx+20h]
    mov      rdi, [rcx+28h]
    mov      r12, [rcx+30h]
    mov      r13, [rcx+38h]
    mov      r14, [rcx+40h]
    mov      r15, [rcx+48h]
    ldmxcsr dword ptr [rcx+58h]
    fncllex
    fldcw  word ptr [rcx+5Ch]
    movdqa xmm6, xmmword ptr [rcx+60h]
    movdqa xmm7, xmmword ptr [rcx+70h]
    movdqa xmm8, xmmword ptr [rcx+80h]
    movdqa xmm9, xmmword ptr [rcx+90h]
    movdqa xmm10, xmmword ptr [rcx+0A0h]
    movdqa xmm11, xmmword ptr [rcx+0B0h]
    movdqa xmm12, xmmword ptr [rcx+0C0h]
    movdqa xmm13, xmmword ptr [rcx+0D0h]
    movdqa xmm14, xmmword ptr [rcx+0E0h]
    movdqa xmm15, xmmword ptr [rcx+0F0h]
    mov      rdx, [rcx+50h]      ; get PC (RIP)
    mov      rbp, [rcx+18h]
    mov      rsp, [rcx+10h]
    jmp      rdx                  ; jump to saved PC

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

...

It just restores (almost) all registers, takes [RA](#) from structure and jumps there. This effectively works as if `setjmp()` returned to caller. Also, `RAX` is set to be equal to the second argument of `longjmp()`. This works as if `setjmp()` returned non-zero value at first place.

As a side effect of [SP](#) restoration, all values in stack which has been set and used between `setjmp()` and `longjmp()` calls are just dropped. They will not be used anymore. Hence, `longjmp()` usually jumps backwards ^{[55](#)}.

This implies that, unlike in throw/catch mechanism in C++, no memory will be freed, no destructors will be called, etc. Hence, this technique sometimes can be dangerous. Nevertheless, it's still quite popular. It's still used in Oracle RDBMS.

It also has unexpected side-effect: if some buffer has been overflowed inside of a function (maybe due to remote attack), and a function wants to report error, and it calls `longjmp()`, overwritten stack part just gets unused.

As an exercise, you can try to understand, why not all registers are saved. Why `XMM0-XMM5` and other registers are skipped?

3.28 Other weird stack hacks

3.28.1 Accessing arguments/local variables of caller

From C/C++ basics we know that this is impossible for a function to access arguments of caller function or its local variables.

Nevertheless, it's possible using dirty hacks. For example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f(char *text)
{
    // print stack
    int *tmp=&text;
    for (int i=0; i<20; i++)
    {
        printf ("0x%x\n", *tmp);
        tmp++;
    };

    void draw_text(int X, int Y, char* text)
    {
        f(text);

        printf ("We are going to draw [%s] at %d:%d\n", text, X, Y);
    }
}
```

⁵⁵However, there are some people who can use it for much more complicated things, imitating coroutines, etc: <https://www.embeddedrelated.com/showarticle/455.php>, <http://fanf.livejournal.com/105413.html>

```

};

int main()
{
    printf ("address of main()=0x%x\n", &main);
    printf ("address of draw_text()=0x%x\n", &draw_text);
    draw_text(100, 200, "Hello!");
}

```

On 32-bit Ubuntu 16.04 and GCC 5.4.0, I got this:

```

address of main()=0x80484f8
address of draw_text()=0x80484cb
0x8048645      first argument to f()
0x8048628
0xbfd8ab98
0xb7634590
0xb779eddc
0xb77e4918
0xbfd8aba8
0x8048547      return address into the middle of main()
0x64            first argument to draw_text()
0xc8            second argument to draw_text()
0x8048645      third argument to draw_text()
0x8048581
0xb779d3dc
0xbfd8abc0
0x0
0xb7603637
0xb779d000
0xb779d000
0x0
0xb7603637

```

(Comments are mine.)

Since *f()* starting to enumerate stack elements at its first argument, the first stack element is indeed a pointer to “Hello!” string. We see its address is also used as third argument to *draw_text()* function.

In *f()* we could read all functions arguments and local variables if we know exact stack layout, but it's always changed, from compiler to compiler. Various optimization levels affect stack layout greatly.

But if we can somehow detect information we need, we can use it and even modify it. As an example, I'll rework *f()* function:

```

void f(char *text)
{
    ...
    // find 100, 200 values pair and modify the second one
    tmp=&text;
    for (int i=0; i<20; i++)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

{
    if (*tmp==100 && *(tmp+1)==200)
    {
        printf ("found\n");
        *(tmp+1)=210; // change 200 to 210
        break;
    };
    tmp++;
};

}

```

Holy moly, it works:

```

found
We are going to draw [Hello!] at 100:210

```

Summary

It's extremely dirty hack, intended to demonstrate stack internals. I never ever seen or heard that anyone used this in a real code. But still, this is a good example.

Exercise

The example has been compiled without optimization on 32-bit Ubuntu using GCC 5.4.0 and it works. But when I turn on -O3 maximum optimization, it's failed. Try to find why.

Use your favorite compiler and OS, try various optimization levels, find if it works and if it doesn't, find why.

3.28.2 Returning string

This is classic bug from Brian W. Kernighan, Rob Pike, *Practice of Programming*, (1999):

```

#include <stdio.h>

char* amsg(int n, char* s)
{
    char buf[100];

    sprintf (buf, "error %d: %s\n", n, s) ;

    return buf;
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%s\n", amsg (1234, "something wrong!"));
};

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

It would crash. First, let's understand, why.

This is a stack state before amsg() return:

```
(lower addresses)

...
[amsg(): 100 bytes]
[RA]           <- current SP
[two amsg arguments]
[something else]
[main() local variables]

...
(upper addresses)
```

When amsg() returns control flow to main(), so far so good. But printf() is called from main(), which is, in turn, use stack for its own needs, zapping 100-byte buffer. A random garbage will be printed at the best.

Hard to believe, but I know how to fix this problem:

```
#include <stdio.h>

char* amsg(int n, char* s)
{
    char buf[100];

    sprintf (buf, "error %d: %s\n", n, s) ;

    return buf;
};

char* interim (int n, char* s)
{
    char large_buf[8000];
    // make use of local array.
    // it will be optimized away otherwise, as useless.
    large_buf[0]=0;
    return amsg (n, s);
};

int main()
{
    printf ("%s\n", interim (1234, "something wrong!"));
};
```

It will work if compiled by MSVC 2013 with no optimizations and with /GS- option⁵⁶. MSVC will warn: “warning C4172: returning address of local variable or temporary”,

⁵⁶Turn off buffer security check

but the code will run and message will be printed. Let's see stack state at the moment when `amsg()` returns control to `interim()`:

```
(lower addresses)

...
[amsg(): 100 bytes]                               <- current SP
[RA]
[two amsg() arguments]
[interim() stuff, incl. 8000 bytes]
[something else]
[main() local variables]

...
(upper addresses)
```

Now the stack state at the moment when `interim()` returns control to `main()`:

```
(lower addresses)

...
[amsg(): 100 bytes]
[RA]
[two amsg() arguments]
[interim() stuff, incl. 8000 bytes]                <- current SP
[something else]
[main() local variables]

...
(upper addresses)
```

So when `main()` calls `printf()`, it uses stack at the place where `interim()`'s buffer was allocated, and doesn't zap 100 bytes with error message inside, because 8000 bytes (or maybe much less) is just enough for everything `printf()` and other descending functions do!

It may also work if there are many functions between, like: `main() → f1() → f2() → f3() ... → amsg()`, and then the result of `amsg()` is used in `main()`. The distance between `SP` in `main()` and address of `buf[]` must be long enough,

This is why bugs like these are dangerous: sometimes your code works (and bug can be hiding unnoticed), sometimes not. Bugs like these are jokingly called *heisenbugs* or *schrödinbugs*.

3.29 OpenMP

OpenMP is one of the simplest ways to parallelize simple algorithms.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

As an example, let's try to build a program to compute a cryptographic *nonce*.

In my simplistic example, the *nonce* is a number added to the plain unencrypted text in order to produce a hash with some specific features.

For example, at some step, the Bitcoin protocol requires to find such *nonce* so the resulting hash contains a specific number of consecutive zeros. This is also called *proof of work* (i.e., the system proves that it did some intensive calculations and spent some time for it).

My example is not related to Bitcoin in any way, it will try to add numbers to the "hello, world!_" string in order to find such number that when "hello, world!_<number>" is hashed with the SHA512 algorithm, it will contain at least 3 zero bytes.

Let's limit our brute-force to the interval in 0..INT32_MAX-1 (i.e., 0x7FFFFFFE or 2147483646).

The algorithm is pretty straightforward:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <time.h>
#include "sha512.h"

int found=0;
int32_t checked=0;

int32_t* __min;
int32_t* __max;

time_t start;

#ifndef __GNUC__
#define min(X,Y) ((X) < (Y) ? (X) : (Y))
#define max(X,Y) ((X) > (Y) ? (X) : (Y))
#endif

void check_nonce (int32_t nonce)
{
    uint8_t buf[32];
    struct sha512_ctx ctx;
    uint8_t res[64];

    // update statistics
    int t=omp_get_thread_num();

    if (__min[t]==-1)
        __min[t]=nonce;
    if (__max[t]==-1)
        __max[t]=nonce;

    __min[t]=min(__min[t], nonce);
    __max[t]=max(__max[t], nonce);
```

```

// idle if valid nonce found
if (found)
    return;

memset (buf, 0, sizeof(buf));
sprintf (buf, "hello, world!_%d", nonce);

sha512_init_ctx (&ctx);
sha512_process_bytes (buf, strlen(buf), &ctx);
sha512_finish_ctx (&ctx, &res);
if (res[0]==0 && res[1]==0 && res[2]==0)
{
    printf ("found (thread %d): [%s]. seconds spent=%d\n", t, ↴
    ↵ buf, time(NULL)-start);
    found=1;
}
#pragma omp atomic
checked++;

#pragma omp critical
if ((checked % 100000)==0)
    printf ("checked=%d\n", checked);
};

int main()
{
    int32_t i;
    int threads=omp_get_max_threads();
    printf ("threads=%d\n", threads);

    __min=(int32_t*)malloc(threads*sizeof(int32_t));
    __max=(int32_t*)malloc(threads*sizeof(int32_t));
    for (i=0; i<threads; i++)
        __min[i]=__max[i]=-1;

    start=time(NULL);

    #pragma omp parallel for
    for (i=0; i<INT32_MAX; i++)
        check_nonce (i);

    for (i=0; i<threads; i++)
        printf ("__min[%d]=0x%08x __max[%d]=0x%08x\n", i, __min[i], ↴
    ↵ i, __max[i]);

    free(__min); free(__max);
};

```

The `check_nonce()` function just adds a number to the string, hashes it with the SHA512 algorithm and checks for 3 zero bytes in the result.

A very important part of the code is:

```
#pragma omp parallel for
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
for (i=0; i<INT32_MAX; i++)
    check_nonce (i);
```

Yes, that simple, without `#pragma` we just call `check_nonce()` for each number from 0 to `INT32_MAX` (`0xffffffff` or 2147483647). With `#pragma`, the compiler adds some special code which slices the loop interval into smaller ones, to run them on all **CPU** cores available ^{[57](#)}.

The example can be compiled ^{[58](#)} in MSVC 2012:

```
cl openmp_example.c sha512.obj /openmp /O1 /Zi /Faopenmp_example.asm
```

Or in GCC:

```
gcc -fopenmp 2.c sha512.c -S -masm=intel
```

3.29.1 MSVC

Now this is how MSVC 2012 generates the main loop:

Listing 3.125: MSVC 2012

```
push    OFFSET _main$omp$1
push    0
push    1
call    __vcomp_fork
add    esp, 16
```

All functions prefixed by `vcomp` are OpenMP-related and are stored in the `vcomp*.dll` file. So here a group of threads is started.

Let's take a look on `_mainomp1`:

Listing 3.126: MSVC 2012

```
$T1 = -8      ; size = 4
$T2 = -4      ; size = 4
_main$omp$1 PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    push    ecx
    push    esi
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR $T2[ebp]
    push    eax
    lea    eax, DWORD PTR $T1[ebp]
    push    eax
    push    1
    push    1
```

⁵⁷N.B.: This is intentionally simplest possible example, but in practice, the usage of OpenMP can be harder and more complex

⁵⁸sha512.(c|h) and u64.h files can be taken from the OpenSSL library: <http://www.openssl.org/source/>

```

push    2147483646      ; 7fffffffH
push    0
call    __vcomp_for_static_simple_init
mov     esi, DWORD PTR $T1[ebp]
add     esp, 24
jmp    SHORT $LN6@main$omp$1
$LL2@main$omp$1:
    push   esi
    call   __check_nonce
    pop    ecx
    inc    esi
$LN6@main$omp$1:
    cmp    esi, DWORD PTR $T2[ebp]
    jle    SHORT $LL2@main$omp$1
    call   __vcomp_for_static_end
    pop    esi
    leave
    ret    0
_main$omp$1 ENDP

```

This function is to be started n times in parallel, where n is the number of CPU cores. `vcomp_for_static_simple_init()` calculates the interval for the `for()` construct for the current thread, depending on the current thread's number.

The loop's start and end values are stored in the `$T1` and `$T2` local variables. You may also notice `7fffffff` (or `2147483646`) as an argument to the `vcomp_for_static_simple_init()` function—this is the number of iterations for the whole loop, to be divided evenly.

Then we see a new loop with a call to the `check_nonce()` function, which does all the work.

Let's also add some code at the beginning of the `check_nonce()` function to gather statistics about the arguments with which the function has been called.

This is what we see when we run it:

```

threads=4
...
checked=2800000
checked=3000000
checked=3200000
checked=3300000
found (thread 3): [hello, world!_1611446522]. seconds spent=3
__min[0]=0x00000000 __max[0]=0x1fffffff
__min[1]=0x20000000 __max[1]=0x3fffffff
__min[2]=0x40000000 __max[2]=0x5fffffff
__min[3]=0x60000000 __max[3]=0x7ffffffe

```

Yes, the result is correct, the first 3 bytes are zeros:

```

C:\...\sha512sum test
000000f4a8fac5a4ed38794da4c1e39f54279ad5d9bb3c5465cdf57adaf60403
df6e3fe6019f5764fc9975e505a7395fed780fee50eb38dd4c0279cb114672e2 *test

```

The running time is ≈ 2.3 seconds on 4-core Intel Xeon E3-1220 3.10 GHz. In the task manager we see 5 threads: 1 main thread + 4 more. No further optimizations are done to keep this example as small and clear as possible. But probably it can be done much faster. My CPU has 4 cores, that is why OpenMP started exactly 4 threads.

By looking at the statistics table we can clearly see how the loop has been sliced into 4 even parts. Oh well, almost even, if we don't consider the last bit.

There are also pragmas for [atomic operations](#).

Let's see how this code is compiled:

```
#pragma omp atomic
checked++;

#pragma omp critical
if ((checked % 100000)==0)
    printf ("checked=%d\n", checked);
```

Listing 3.127: MSVC 2012

```
push    edi
push    OFFSET _checked
call    __vcomp_atomic_add_i4
; Line 55
push    OFFSET _$vcomp$critsect$
call    __vcomp_enter_critsect
add    esp, 12
; Line 56
mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _checked
mov     eax, ecx
cdq
mov     esi, 100000      ; 000186a0H
idiv
test
jne    SHORT $LN1@check_nonc
; Line 57
push    ecx
push    OFFSET ??_C@_0M@NPNHLI00@checked?$DN?$CFd?6?$AA@
call    _printf
pop     ecx
pop     ecx
$LN1@check_nonc:
push    DWORD PTR _$vcomp$critsect$
call    __vcomp_leave_critsect
pop     ecx
```

As it turns out, the `vcomp_atomic_add_i4()` function in the `vcomp*.dll` is just a tiny function with the `LOCK XADD` instruction⁵⁹ in it.

⁵⁹Read more about `LOCK` prefix: [.1.6 on page 1317](#)

vcomp_enter_critsect() eventually calling win32 API function EnterCriticalSection() ⁶⁰.

3.29.2 GCC

GCC 4.8.1 produces a program which shows exactly the same statistics table, so, GCC's implementation divides the loop in parts in the same fashion.

Listing 3.128: GCC 4.8.1

```
mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:main._omp_fn.0
call   GOMP_parallel_start
mov    edi, 0
call   main._omp_fn.0
call   GOMP_parallel_end
```

Unlike MSVC's implementation, what GCC code does is to start 3 threads, and run the fourth in the current thread. So there are 4 threads instead of the 5 in MSVC.

Here is the `main._omp_fn.0` function:

Listing 3.129: GCC 4.8.1

```
main._omp_fn.0:
push   rbp
mov    rbp, rsp
push   rbx
sub    rsp, 40
mov    QWORD PTR [rbp-40], rdi
call   omp_get_num_threads
mov    ebx, eax
call   omp_get_thread_num
mov    esi, eax
mov    eax, 2147483647 ; 0x7FFFFFFF
cdq
idiv   ebx
mov    ecx, eax
mov    eax, 2147483647 ; 0x7FFFFFFF
cdq
idiv   ebx
mov    eax, edx
cmp    esi, eax
jl     .L15
.L18:
imul   esi, ecx
mov    edx, esi
add    eax, edx
lea    ebx, [rax+rcx]
cmp    eax, ebx
jge    .L14
mov    DWORD PTR [rbp-20], eax
.L17:
```

⁶⁰You can read more about critical sections here: [6.5.4 on page 1017](#)

```

    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [rbp-20]
    mov    edi, eax
    call   check_nonce
    add    DWORD PTR [rbp-20], 1
    cmp    DWORD PTR [rbp-20], ebx
    jl     .L17
    jmp   .L14
.L15:
    mov    eax, 0
    add    ecx, 1
    jmp   .L18
.L14:
    add    rsp, 40
    pop    rbx
    pop    rbp
    ret

```

Here we see the division clearly: by calling `omp_get_num_threads()` and `omp_get_thread_num()` we get the number of threads running, and also the current thread's number, and then determine the loop's interval. Then we run `check_nonce()`.

GCC also inserted the LOCK ADD

instruction right in the code, unlike MSVC, which generated a call to a separate DLL function:

Listing 3.130: GCC 4.8.1

```

lock add    DWORD PTR checked[rip], 1
call   GOMP_critical_start
mov    ecx, DWORD PTR checked[rip]
mov    edx, 351843721
mov    eax, ecx
imul   edx
sar    edx, 13
mov    eax, ecx
sar    eax, 31
sub    edx, eax
mov    eax, edx
imul   eax, eax, 100000
sub    ecx, eax
mov    eax, ecx
test   eax, eax
jne   .L7
mov    eax, DWORD PTR checked[rip]
mov    esi, eax
mov    edi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC2 ; "checked=%d\n"
mov    eax, 0
call   printf
.L7:
call   GOMP_critical_end

```

The functions prefixed with GOMP are from GNU OpenMP library. Unlike vcomp*.dll, its source code is freely available: [GitHub](#).

3.30 Signed division using shifts

Unsigned division by 2^n numbers is easy, just use bit shift right by n . Signed division by 2^n is easy as well, but some correction needs to be done before or after shift operation.

First, most CPU architectures support two right shift operations: logical and arithmetical. During logical shift right, free bit(s) at left are set to zero bit(s). This is SHR in x86. During arithmetical shift right, free bit(s) at left are set equal to the bit which was at the same place. Thus, it preserves sign bit while shifting. This is SAR in x86.

Interesting to know, there is no special instruction for arithmetical shift left, because it works just as logical shift left. So, SAL and SHL instructions in x86 are mapped to the same opcode. Many disassemblers don't even know about SAL instruction and decode this opcode as SHL.

Hence, arithmetical shift right is used for signed numbers. For example, if you shift -4 (11111100b) by 1 bit right, logical shift right operation will produce 01111110b, which is 126. Arithmetical shift right will produce 11111110b, which is -2. So far so good.

What if we need to divide -5 by 2? This is -2.5, or just -2 in integer arithmetic. -5 is 11111011b, by shifting this value by 1 bit right, we'll get 11111101b, which is -3. This is slightly incorrect.

Another example: $-\frac{1}{2} = -0.5$ or just 0 in integer arithmetic. But -1 is 11111111b, and 11111111b $\gg 1 = 11111111b$, which is -1 again. This is also incorrect.

One solution is to add 1 to the input value if it's negative.

That is why, if we compile $x/2$ expression, where x is *signed int*, GCC 4.8 will produce something like that:

```
mov    eax, edi
shr    eax, 31 ; isolate leftmost bit, which is 1 if the number is
               ; negative and 0 if positive
add    eax, edi ; add 1 to the input value if it's negative, do
               ; nothing otherwise
sar    eax      ; arithmetical shift right by one bit
ret
```

If you divide by 4, 3 needs to be added to the input value if it's negative. So this is what GCC 4.8 does for $x/4$:

```
lea    eax, [rdi+3] ; prepare x+3 value ahead of time
test   edi, edi

; if the sign is not negative (i.e., positive), move input value to
EAX
; if the sign is negative, x+3 value is left in EAX untouched
cmovns eax, edi
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
; do arithmetical shift right by 2 bits
sar    eax, 2
ret
```

If you divide by 8, 7 will be added to the input value, etc.

MSVC 2013 is slightly different. This is division by 2:

```
mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
; sign-extend input value to 64-bit value into EDX:EAX
; effectively, that means EDX will be set to 0xFFFFFFFF if the input
value is negative
; ... or to 0 if positive
cdq
; subtract -1 from input value if it's negative
; this is the same as adding 1
sub    eax, edx
; do arithmetical shift right
sar    eax, 1
ret    0
```

Division by 4 in MSVC 2013 is little more complex:

```
mov    eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
cdq
; now EDX is 0xFFFFFFFF if input value is negative
; EDX is 0 if it's positive
and    edx, 3
; now EDX is 3 if input is negative or 0 otherwise
; add 3 to input value if it's negative or do nothing otherwise:
add    eax, edx
; do arithmetical shift
sar    eax, 2
ret    0
```

Division by 8 in MSVC 2013 is similar, but 3 bits from EDX is taken instead of 2, producing correction value of 7 instead of 3.

Sometimes, Hex-Rays 6.8 can't handle such code correctly, and it may produce something like this:

```
int v0;
...
__int64 v14
...

v14 = ...;
v0 = ((signed int)v14 - HIDWORD(v14)) >> 1;
```

... it can be safely rewritten to $v0=v14/2$.

Hex-Rays 6.8 can also handle signed division by 4 like that:

```
result = ((BYTE4(v25) & 3) + (signed int)v25) >> 2;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

... can be rewritten to $v25 / 4$.

Also, such correction code is used often when division is replaced by multiplication by *magic numbers*: read Mathematics for Programmers⁶¹ about multiplicative inverse. And sometimes, additional shifting is used after multiplication. For example, when GCC optimizes $\frac{x}{10}$, it can't find multiplicative inverse for 10, because diophantine equation has no solutions. So it generates code for $\frac{x}{5}$ and then adds arithmetical shift right operation by 1 bit, to divide the result by 2. Of course, this is true only for signed integers.

So here is division by 10 by GCC 4.8:

```

    mov    eax, edi
    mov    edx, 1717986919 ; magic number
    sar    edi, 31         ; isolate leftmost bit (which reflects sign)
    imul   edx            ; multiplication by magic number (calculate
x/5)
    sar    edx, 2          ; now calculate (x/5)/2

    ; subtract -1 (or add 1) if the input value is negative.
    ; do nothing otherwise:
    sub    edx, edi
    mov    eax, edx
    ret

```

Summary: $2^n - 1$ must be added to input value before arithmetical shift, or 1 must be added to the final result after shift. Both operations are equivalent to each other, so compiler developers may choose what is more suitable to them. From the reverse engineer's point of view, this correction is a clear evidence that the value has signed type.

3.31 Another heisenbug

Sometimes, array (or buffer) can overflow due to *fencepost error*:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int array1[128];
int important_var1;
int important_var2;
int important_var3;
int important_var4;
int important_var5;

int main()
{
    important_var1=1;
    important_var2=2;
    important_var3=3;
```

⁶¹<https://yurichev.com/writings/Math-for-programmers.pdf>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```

important_var4=4;
important_var5=5;

array1[0]=123;
array1[128]=456; // BUG

printf ("important_var1=%d\n", important_var1);
printf ("important_var2=%d\n", important_var2);
printf ("important_var3=%d\n", important_var3);
printf ("important_var4=%d\n", important_var4);
printf ("important_var5=%d\n", important_var5);
};

```

This is what this program printed in my case (non-optimized GCC 5.4 x86 on Linux):

```

important_var1=1
important_var2=456
important_var3=3
important_var4=4
important_var5=5

```

As it happens, `important_var2` has been placed by compiler right after `array1[]`:

Listing 3.131: objdump -x

0804a040 g	0 .bss	00000200	array1
...			
0804a240 g	0 .bss	00000004	important_var2
0804a244 g	0 .bss	00000004	important_var4
...			
0804a248 g	0 .bss	00000004	important_var1
0804a24c g	0 .bss	00000004	important_var3
0804a250 g	0 .bss	00000004	important_var5

Another compiler can arrange variables in another order, and another variable would be zapped. This is also *heisenbug* ([3.28.2 on page 818](#))—bug may appear or may left unnoticed depending on compiler version and optimization switches.

If all variables and arrays are allocated in local stack, stack protection may be triggered, or may not. However, Valgrind can find bugs like these.

Related example in the book (Angband game): [1.27 on page 379](#).

3.32 The case of forgotten return

Let's revisit the “attempt to use the result of a function returning `void`” part: [1.15.1 on page 137](#).

This is a bug I once hit.

And this is also yet another demonstration, how C/C++ places return value into EAX/RAX register.

In the piece of code like that, I forgot to add `return`:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

struct color
{
    int R;
    int G;
    int B;
};

struct color* create_color (int R, int G, int B)
{
    struct color* rt=(struct color*)malloc(sizeof(struct color));

    rt->R=R;
    rt->G=G;
    rt->B=B;
    // must be "return rt;" here
};

int main()
{
    struct color* a=create_color(1,2,3);
    printf ("%d %d %d\n", a->R, a->G, a->B);
}
```

Non-optimizing GCC 5.4 silently compiles this with no warnings. And the code works! Let's see, why:

Listing 3.132: Non-optimizing GCC 5.4

```
create_color:
    push    rbp
    mov     rbp, rsp
    sub     rsp, 32
    mov     DWORD PTR [rbp-20], edi
    mov     DWORD PTR [rbp-24], esi
    mov     DWORD PTR [rbp-28], edx
    mov     edi, 12
    call    malloc
; RAX = pointer to newly allocated buffer
; now fill it with R/G/B:
    mov     QWORD PTR [rbp-8], rax
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rbp-20]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rax], edx
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rbp-24]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rax+4], edx
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rbp-28]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rax+8], edx
    nop
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    leave
; RAX hasn't been modified till that point!
    ret

```

If I add `return rt;`, only one instruction is added at the end, which is redundant:

Listing 3.133: Non-optimizing GCC 5.4

```

create_color:
    push    rbp
    mov     rbp, rsp
    sub     rsp, 32
    mov     DWORD PTR [rbp-20], edi
    mov     DWORD PTR [rbp-24], esi
    mov     DWORD PTR [rbp-28], edx
    mov     edi, 12
    call    malloc
; RAX = pointer to buffer
    mov     QWORD PTR [rbp-8], rax
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rbp-20]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rax], edx
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rbp-24]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rax+4], edx
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rbp-28]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rax+8], edx
; reload pointer to buffer into RAX again, and this is redundant operation...
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rbp-8] ; new instruction
    leave
    ret

```

Bugs like that are very dangerous, sometimes they appear, sometimes hide. It's like Heisenbug.

Now I'm trying optimizing GCC:

Listing 3.134: Optimizing GCC 5.4

```

create_color:
    rep    ret

main:
    xor    eax, eax
; as if create_color() was called and returned 0
    sub    rsp, 8
    mov    r8d, DWORD PTR ds:8
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR [rax+4]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [rax]
    mov    esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC1
    mov    edi, 1
    call   __printf_chk
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 8

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
ret
```

Compiler deducing that nothing returns from the function, so it optimizes the whole function away. And it assumes, that is returns 0 by default. The zero is then used as an address to a structure in main().. Of course, this code crashes.

GCC in C++ mode silent about it as well.

Let's try non-optimizing MSVC 2015 x86. It warns about the problem:

```
c:\tmp\3.c(19) : warning C4716: 'create_color': must return a value
```

And generates crashing code:

Listing 3.135: Non-optimizing MSVC 2015 x86

```
_rt$ = -4
_R$ = 8
_G$ = 12
_B$ = 16
_create_color PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    ecx
    push    12
    call    _malloc
; EAX = pointer to buffer
    add     esp, 4
    mov     DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp], eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _R$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax], ecx
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _G$[ebp]
; EAX is set to G argument:
    mov     DWORD PTR [edx+4], eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _rt$[ebp]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR _B$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [ecx+8], edx
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
; EAX = G at this point:
    ret    0
_create_color ENDP
```

Now optimizing MSVC 2015 x86 generates crashing code as well, but for the different reason:

Listing 3.136: Optimizing MSVC 2015 x86

```
_a$ = -4
_main  PROC
; this is inlined optimized version of create_color():
    push    ecx
    push    12
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

call    _malloc
mov     DWORD PTR [eax], 1
mov     DWORD PTR [eax+4], 2
mov     DWORD PTR [eax+8], 3
; EAX points to allocated buffer, and it's filled, OK
; now we reload pointer to buffer, hoping it's in "a" variable
; but inlined function didn't store pointer to "a" variable!
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp+8]
; EAX = some random garbage at this point
    push    DWORD PTR [eax+8]
    push    DWORD PTR [eax+4]
    push    DWORD PTR [eax]
    push    OFFSET $SG6074
    call    _printf
    xor     eax, eax
    add     esp, 24
    ret     0
_main   ENDP

_R$ = 8
_G$ = 12
_B$ = 16
_create_color PROC
    push    12
    call    _malloc
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _R$[esp]
    add     esp, 4
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax], ecx
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _G$[esp-4]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+4], ecx
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _B$[esp-4]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax+8], ecx
; EAX points to allocated buffer, OK
    ret     0
_create_color ENDP

```

However, non-optimizing MSVC 2015 x64 generates working code:

Listing 3.137: Non-optimizing MSVC 2015 x64

```

rt$ = 32
R$ = 64
G$ = 72
B$ = 80
create_color PROC
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+24], r8d
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+16], edx
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+8], ecx
    sub     rsp, 56
    mov     ecx, 12
    call    malloc
; RAX = allocated buffer
    mov     QWORD PTR rt$[rsp], rax
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR rt$[rsp]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR R$[rsp]
    mov    DWORD PTR [rax], ecx
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR rt$[rsp]
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR G$[rsp]
    mov    DWORD PTR [rax+4], ecx
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR rt$[rsp]
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR B$[rsp]
    mov    DWORD PTR [rax+8], ecx
    add    rsp, 56
; RAX didn't change down to this point
    ret    0
create_color ENDP

```

Optimizing MSVC 2015 x64 also inlines the function, as in case of x86, and the resulting code also crashes.

This is a real piece of code from my *octothorpe* library, that worked and all tests passed. It was so, without return for quite a time...

```

uint32_t LPHM_u32_hash(void *key)
{
    jenkins_one_at_a_time_hash_u32((uint32_t)key);
}

```

The moral of the story: warnings are very important, use `-Wall`, etc, etc... When return statement is absent, compiler can just silently do nothing at that point.

Such a bug left unnoticed can ruin a day.

Also, *shotgun debugging* is bad, because again, such a bug can left unnoticed ("everything works now, so be it, let's leave it as is").

See also: discussion at Hacker News⁶² and archived blog post⁶³.

3.33 Homework: more about function pointers and unions

This code was copypasted from *dwm*⁶⁴, probably, the smallest ever Linux window manager.

The problem: keystrokes from user must be dispatched to various functions inside of *dwm*. This is usually solved using a big *switch()*.

Usually, this is an important problem to be solved by a programmer of any videogame.

Supposedly, *dwm*'s creators wanted to make the code neat and modifiable by users:

⁶² <https://news.ycombinator.com/item?id=18671609>

⁶³ https://web.archive.org/web/20190317231721/https://yurichev.com/blog/no_return/

⁶⁴ <https://dwm.suckless.org/>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

...
typedef union {
    int i;
    unsigned int ui;
    float f;
    const void *v;
} Arg;

...
typedef struct {
    unsigned int mod;
    KeySym keysym;
    void (*func)(const Arg *);
    const Arg arg;
} Key;

...
static Key keys[] = {
    /* modifier      key      function      argument */
    { MODKEY,          XK_p,    spawn,        {.v = dmenucmd } },
    { MODKEY|ShiftMask, XK_Return, spawn,        {.v = termcmd } },
    { MODKEY,          XK_b,    togglebar,   {0} },
    { MODKEY,          XK_j,    focusstack,  {.i = +1 } },
    { MODKEY,          XK_k,    focusstack,  {.i = -1 } },
    { MODKEY,          XK_i,    incnmaster,  {.i = +1 } },
    { MODKEY,          XK_d,    incnmaster,  {.i = -1 } },
    { MODKEY,          XK_h,    setmfact,    {.f = -0.05} },
    { MODKEY,          XK_l,    setmfact,    {.f = +0.05} },
    { MODKEY,          XK_Return, zoom,        {0} },
    { MODKEY,          XK_Tab,   view,        {0} },
    { MODKEY|ShiftMask, XK_c,    killclient,  {0} },
    { MODKEY,          XK_t,    setlayout,   {.v = &layouts[0]} },
    { MODKEY,          XK_f,    setlayout,   {.v = &layouts[1]} },
    { MODKEY,          XK_m,    setlayout,   {.v = &layouts[2]} },
    ...
}

void
spawn(const Arg *arg)
{
    ...

void
focusstack(const Arg *arg)
{
    ...
}

```

For each keystroke (or shortcut) a function is defined. Even more: a parameters

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

(or arguments) to be passed to a function at each case. But parameters can have various type. So *union* is used here. A value of needed type is filled in the table. Each function takes what it needs.

As a homework, try to write a code like that, or get into *dwm*'s and see how *union* is passed into functions and handled.

3.34 Windows 16-bit

16-bit Windows programs are rare nowadays, but can be used in the cases of retro-computing or dongle hacking ([8.8 on page 1070](#)).

16-bit Windows versions were up to 3.11. 95/98/ME also support 16-bit code, as well as the 32-bit versions of the [Windows NT](#) line. The 64-bit versions of [Windows NT](#) line do not support 16-bit executable code at all.

The code resembles MS-DOS's one.

Executable files are of type NE-type (so-called “new executable”).

All examples considered here were compiled by the OpenWatcom 1.9 compiler, using these switches:

```
wcl.exe -i=C:/WATCOM/h/win/ -s -os -bt=windows -bcl=windows example.c
```

3.34.1 Example#1

```
#include <windows.h>

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                     HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                     LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                     int nCmdShow )
{
    MessageBeep(MB_ICONEXCLAMATION);
    return 0;
};
```

WinMain	proc near push bp mov bp, sp mov ax, 30h ; '0' ; MB_ICONEXCLAMATION constant push ax call MESSAGEBEEP xor ax, ax ; return 0 pop bp retn 0Ah
WinMain	endp

Seems to be easy, so far.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

3.34.2 Example #2

```
#include <windows.h>

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                     HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                     LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                     int nCmdShow )
{
    MessageBox (NULL, "hello, world", "caption", MB_YESNOCANCEL);
    return 0;
};
```

```
WinMain      proc near
            push    bp
            mov     bp, sp
            xor     ax, ax          ; NULL
            push    ax
            push    ds
            mov     ax, offset aHelloWorld ; 0x18. "hello, world"
            push    ax
            push    ds
            mov     ax, offset aCaption ; 0x10. "caption"
            push    ax
            mov     ax, 3             ; MB_YESNOCANCEL
            push    ax
            call    MESSAGEBOX
            xor     ax, ax          ; return 0
            pop     bp
            retn   0Ah
WinMain      endp

dseg02:0010 aCaption      db 'caption',0
dseg02:0018 aHelloWorld   db 'hello, world',0
```

Couple important things here: the PASCAL calling convention dictates passing the first argument first (MB_YESNOCANCEL), and the last argument—last (NULL). This convention also tells the [callee](#) to restore the [stack pointer](#): hence the RETN instruction has 0Ah as argument, which implies that the pointer has to be increased by 10 bytes when the function exits. It is like stdcall ([6.1.2 on page 947](#)), but the arguments are passed in “natural” order.

The pointers are passed in pairs: first the data segment is passed, then the pointer inside the segment. There is only one segment in this example, so DS always points to the data segment of the executable.

3.34.3 Example #3

```
#include <windows.h>

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                     HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        LPSTR lpCmdLine,
        int nCmdShow )
{
    int result=MessageBox (NULL, "hello, world", "caption", MB_YESNOCANCEL) ↴
    ↴ ;

    if (result==IDCANCEL)
        MessageBox (NULL, "you pressed cancel", "caption", MB_OK);
    else if (result==IDYES)
        MessageBox (NULL, "you pressed yes", "caption", MB_OK);
    else if (result==IDNO)
        MessageBox (NULL, "you pressed no", "caption", MB_OK);

    return 0;
}

```

```

WinMain proc near
    push    bp
    mov     bp, sp
    xor     ax, ax      ; NULL
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aHelloWorld ; "hello, world"
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aCaption ; "caption"
    push    ax
    mov     ax, 3         ; MB_YESNOCANCEL
    push    ax
    call    MESSAGEBOX
    cmp     ax, 2         ; IDCANCEL
    jnz    short loc_2F
    xor     ax, ax
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aYouPressedCanc ; "you pressed cancel"
    jmp    short loc_49

loc_2F:
    cmp     ax, 6         ; IDYES
    jnz    short loc_3D
    xor     ax, ax
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aYouPressedYes ; "you pressed yes"
    jmp    short loc_49

loc_3D:
    cmp     ax, 7         ; IDNO
    jnz    short loc_57
    xor     ax, ax
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aYouPressedNo ; "you pressed no"

loc_49:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        push    ax
        push    ds
        mov     ax, offset aCaption ; "caption"
        push    ax
        xor     ax, ax
        push    ax
        call    MESSAGEBOX
loc_57:
        xor     ax, ax
        pop     bp
        retn   0Ah
WinMain    endp

```

Somewhat extended example from the previous section .

3.34.4 Example #4

```

#include <windows.h>

int PASCAL func1 (int a, int b, int c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};

long PASCAL func2 (long a, long b, long c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};

long PASCAL func3 (long a, long b, long c, int d)
{
    return a*b+c-d;
};

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                    HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                    LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                    int nCmdShow )
{
    func1 (123, 456, 789);
    func2 (600000, 700000, 800000);
    func3 (600000, 700000, 800000, 123);
    return 0;
};

```

```

func1      proc near
c          = word ptr 4
b          = word ptr 6
a          = word ptr 8
                push    bp

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        mov    bp, sp
        mov    ax, [bp+a]
        imul   [bp+b]
        add    ax, [bp+c]
        pop    bp
        retn   6
func1      endp

func2      proc near

arg_0       = word ptr 4
arg_2       = word ptr 6
arg_4       = word ptr 8
arg_6       = word ptr 0Ah
arg_8       = word ptr 0Ch
arg_A       = word ptr 0Eh

        push   bp
        mov    bp, sp
        mov    ax, [bp+arg_8]
        mov    dx, [bp+arg_A]
        mov    bx, [bp+arg_4]
        mov    cx, [bp+arg_6]
        call   sub_B2 ; long 32-bit multiplication
        add    ax, [bp+arg_0]
        adc    dx, [bp+arg_2]
        pop    bp
        retn   12
func2      endp

func3      proc near

arg_0       = word ptr 4
arg_2       = word ptr 6
arg_4       = word ptr 8
arg_6       = word ptr 0Ah
arg_8       = word ptr 0Ch
arg_A       = word ptr 0Eh
arg_C       = word ptr 10h

        push   bp
        mov    bp, sp
        mov    ax, [bp+arg_A]
        mov    dx, [bp+arg_C]
        mov    bx, [bp+arg_6]
        mov    cx, [bp+arg_8]
        call   sub_B2 ; long 32-bit multiplication
        mov    cx, [bp+arg_2]
        add    cx, ax
        mov    bx, [bp+arg_4]           ; BX=high part, CX=low part
        adc    bx, dx                 ; AX=low part d, DX=high part d
        mov    ax, [bp+arg_0]
        cwd

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        sub    cx, ax
        mov    ax, cx
        sbb    bx, dx
        mov    dx, bx
        pop    bp
        retn   14
func3      endp

WinMain    proc near
        push   bp
        mov    bp, sp
        mov    ax, 123
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 456
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 789
        push   ax
        call   func1
        mov    ax, 9      ; high part of 600000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 27C0h ; low part of 600000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 0Ah    ; high part of 700000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 0AE60h ; low part of 700000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 0Ch    ; high part of 800000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 3500h ; low part of 800000
        push   ax
        call   func2
        mov    ax, 9      ; high part of 600000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 27C0h ; low part of 600000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 0Ah    ; high part of 700000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 0AE60h ; low part of 700000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 0Ch    ; high part of 800000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 3500h ; low part of 800000
        push   ax
        mov    ax, 7Bh    ; 123
        push   ax
        call   func3
        xor    ax, ax    ; return 0
        pop    bp
        retn   0Ah
WinMain    endp

```

32-bit values (the long data type implies 32 bits, while *int* is 16-bit) in 16-bit code (both MS-DOS and Win16) are passed in pairs. It is just like when 64-bit values are

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

used in a 32-bit environment ([1.34 on page 497](#)).

`sub_B2` here is a library function written by the compiler's developers that does "long multiplication", i.e., multiplies two 32-bit values. Other compiler functions that do the same are listed here: [.5 on page 1340](#), [.4 on page 1340](#).

The ADD/ADC instruction pair is used for addition of compound values: ADD may set/clear the CF flag, and ADC uses it after.

The SUB/SBB instruction pair is used for subtraction: SUB may set/clear the CF flag, SBB uses it after.

32-bit values are returned from functions in the DX:AX register pair.

Constants are also passed in pairs in `WinMain()` here.

The `int`-typed 123 constant is first converted according to its sign into a 32-bit value using the CWD instruction.

3.34.5 Example #5

```
#include <windows.h>

int PASCAL string_compare (char *s1, char *s2)
{
    while (1)
    {
        if (*s1!=*s2)
            return 0;
        if (*s1==0 || *s2==0)
            return 1; // end of string
        s1++;
        s2++;
    };
};

int PASCAL string_compare_far (char far *s1, char far *s2)
{
    while (1)
    {
        if (*s1!=*s2)
            return 0;
        if (*s1==0 || *s2==0)
            return 1; // end of string
        s1++;
        s2++;
    };
};

void PASCAL remove_digits (char *s)
{
    while (*s)
    {
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        if (*s>='0' && *s<='9')
            *s='-';
        s++;
    }

char str[]="hello 1234 world";

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                     HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                     LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                     int nCmdShow )
{
    string_compare ("asd", "def");
    string_compare_far ("asd", "def");
    remove_digits (str);
    MessageBox (NULL, str, "caption", MB_YESNOCANCEL);
    return 0;
}

```

```

string_compare proc near

arg_0 = word ptr 4
arg_2 = word ptr 6

    push    bp
    mov     bp, sp
    push    si
    mov     si, [bp+arg_0]
    mov     bx, [bp+arg_2]

loc_12: ; CODE XREF: string_compare+21j
    mov     al, [bx]
    cmp     al, [si]
    jz      short loc_1C
    xor     ax, ax
    jmp     short loc_2B

loc_1C: ; CODE XREF: string_compare+Ej
    test    al, al
    jz      short loc_22
    jnz    short loc_27

loc_22: ; CODE XREF: string_compare+16j
    mov     ax, 1
    jmp     short loc_2B

loc_27: ; CODE XREF: string_compare+18j
    inc     bx
    inc     si
    jmp     short loc_12

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

loc_2B: ; CODE XREF: string_compare+12j
          ; string_compare+1Dj
    pop     si
    pop     bp
    retn     4
string_compare  endp

string_compare_far proc near ; CODE XREF: WinMain+18p

arg_0 = word ptr 4
arg_2 = word ptr 6
arg_4 = word ptr 8
arg_6 = word ptr 0Ah

    push     bp
    mov      bp, sp
    push     si
    mov      si, [bp+arg_0]
    mov      bx, [bp+arg_4]

loc_3A: ; CODE XREF: string_compare_far+35j
    mov      es, [bp+arg_6]
    mov      al, es:[bx]
    mov      es, [bp+arg_2]
    cmp      al, es:[si]
    jz       short loc_4C
    xor      ax, ax
    jmp     short loc_67

loc_4C: ; CODE XREF: string_compare_far+16j
    mov      es, [bp+arg_6]
    cmp      byte ptr es:[bx], 0
    jz       short loc_5E
    mov      es, [bp+arg_2]
    cmp      byte ptr es:[si], 0
    jnz     short loc_63

loc_5E: ; CODE XREF: string_compare_far+23j
    mov      ax, 1
    jmp     short loc_67

loc_63: ; CODE XREF: string_compare_far+2Cj
    inc      bx
    inc      si
    jmp     short loc_3A

loc_67: ; CODE XREF: string_compare_far+1Aj
          ; string_compare_far+31j

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

pop    si
pop    bp
retn   8
string_compare_far endp

remove_digits proc near ; CODE XREF: WinMain+1Fp
arg_0 = word ptr 4

    push    bp
    mov     bp, sp
    mov     bx, [bp+arg_0]

loc_72: ; CODE XREF: remove_digits+18j
    mov     al, [bx]
    test   al, al
    jz    short loc_86
    cmp     al, 30h ; '0'
    jb     short loc_83
    cmp     al, 39h ; '9'
    ja     short loc_83
    mov     byte ptr [bx], 2Dh ; '-'

loc_83: ; CODE XREF: remove_digits+Ej
        ; remove_digits+12j
    inc     bx
    jmp     short loc_72

loc_86: ; CODE XREF: remove_digits+Aj
    pop    bp
    retn   2
remove_digits endp

WinMain proc near ; CODE XREF: start+EDp
    push    bp
    mov     bp, sp
    mov     ax, offset aAsd ; "asd"
    push    ax
    mov     ax, offset aDef ; "def"
    push    ax
    call    string_compare
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aAsd ; "asd"
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aDef ; "def"
    push    ax
    call    string_compare_far
    mov     ax, offset aHello1234World ; "hello 1234 world"
    push    ax
    call    remove_digits
    xor     ax, ax

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push    ax
push    ds
mov     ax, offset aHello1234World ; "hello 1234 world"
push    ax
push    ds
mov     ax, offset aCaption ; "caption"
push    ax
mov     ax, 3 ; MB_YESNOCANCEL
push    ax
call   MESSAGEBOX
xor    ax, ax
pop    bp
retn  0Ah
WinMain endp

```

Here we see a difference between the so-called “near” pointers and the “far” pointers: another weird artifact of segmented memory in 16-bit 8086.

You can read more about it here: [11.6 on page 1284](#).

“near” pointers are those which point within the current data segment. Hence, the `string_compare()` function takes only two 16-bit pointers, and accesses the data from the segment that DS points to (The `mov al, [bx]` instruction actually works like `mov al, ds:[bx]` — DS is implicit here).

“far” pointers are those which may point to data in another memory segment. Hence `string_compare_far()` takes the 16-bit pair as a pointer, loads the high part of it in the ES segment register and accesses the data through it (`mov al, es:[bx]`). “far” pointers are also used in my `MessageBox()` win16 example: [3.34.2 on page 837](#). Indeed, the Windows kernel is not aware which data segment to use when accessing text strings, so it need the complete information.

The reason for this distinction is that a compact program may use just one 64kb data segment, so it doesn’t need to pass the high part of the address, which is always the same. A bigger program may use several 64kb data segments, so it needs to specify the segment of the data each time.

It’s the same story for code segments. A compact program may have all executable code within one 64kb-segment, then all functions in it will be called using the CALL NEAR instruction, and the code flow will be returned using RETN. But if there are several code segments, then the address of the function is to be specified by a pair, it is to be called using the CALL FAR instruction, and the code flow is to be returned using RETF.

This is what is set in the compiler by specifying “memory model”.

The compilers targeting MS-DOS and Win16 have specific libraries for each memory model: they differ by pointer types for code and data.

3.34.6 Example #6

```
#include <windows.h>
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```
#include <time.h>
#include <stdio.h>

char strbuf[256];

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                    HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                    LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                    int nCmdShow )
{
    struct tm *t;
    time_t unix_time;

    unix_time=time(NULL);

    t=localtime (&unix_time);

    sprintf (strbuf, "%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d", t->tm_year+1900, \
             t->tm_mon, t->tm_mday, \
             t->tm_hour, t->tm_min, t->tm_sec);

    MessageBox (NULL, strbuf, "caption", MB_OK);
    return 0;
}
```

```
WinMain    proc near

var_4      = word ptr -4
var_2      = word ptr -2

    push    bp
    mov     bp, sp
    push    ax
    push    ax
    xor    ax, ax
    call   time_
    mov     [bp+var_4], ax    ; low part of UNIX time
    mov     [bp+var_2], dx    ; high part of UNIX time
    lea     ax, [bp+var_4]    ; take a pointer of high part
    call   localtime_
    mov     bx, ax            ; t
    push    word ptr [bx]     ; second
    push    word ptr [bx+2]    ; minute
    push    word ptr [bx+4]    ; hour
    push    word ptr [bx+6]    ; day
    push    word ptr [bx+8]    ; month
    mov     ax, [bx+0Ah]       ; year
    add    ax, 1900
    push    ax
    mov     ax, offset a04d02d02d02 ;
    "%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d"
    push    ax
    mov     ax, offset strbuf
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push    ax
call    sprintf_
add    sp, 10h
xor    ax, ax          ; NULL
push    ax
push    ds
mov    ax, offset strbuf
push    ax
push    ds
mov    ax, offset aCaption ; "caption"
push    ax
xor    ax, ax          ; MB_OK
push    ax
call    MESSAGEBOX
xor    ax, ax
mov    sp, bp
pop    bp
retn  0Ah
WinMain endp

```

UNIX time is a 32-bit value, so it is returned in the DX:AX register pair and stored in two local 16-bit variables. Then a pointer to the pair is passed to the `localtime()` function. The `localtime()` function has a `struct tm` allocated somewhere in the guts of the C library, so only a pointer to it is returned.

By the way, this also implies that the function cannot be called again until its results are used.

For the `time()` and `localtime()` functions, a Watcom calling convention is used here: the first four arguments are passed in the AX, DX, BX and CX, registers, and the rest arguments are via the stack.

The functions using this convention are also marked by underscore at the end of their name.

`sprintf()` does not use the PASCAL calling convention, nor the Watcom one, so the arguments are passed in the normal *cdecl* way ([6.1.1 on page 947](#)).

Global variables

This is the same example, but now these variables are global:

```

#include <windows.h>
#include <time.h>
#include <stdio.h>

char strbuf[256];
struct tm *t;
time_t unix_time;

int PASCAL WinMain( HINSTANCE hInstance,
                     HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                     LPSTR lpCmdLine,
                     int nCmdShow )

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
{
    unix_time=time(NULL);

    t=localtime (&unix_time);

    sprintf (strbuf, "%04d-%02d-%02d %02d:%02d:%02d", t->tm_year+1900, \
        t->tm_mon, t->tm_mday,
        t->tm_hour, t->tm_min, t->tm_sec);

    MessageBox (NULL, strbuf, "caption", MB_OK);
    return 0;
};
```

```
unix_time_low    dw 0
unix_time_high   dw 0
t                dw 0

WinMain          proc near
    push    bp
    mov     bp, sp
    xor     ax, ax
    call    time_
    mov     unix_time_low, ax
    mov     unix_time_high, dx
    mov     ax, offset unix_time_low
    call    localtime_
    mov     bx, ax
    mov     t, ax           ; will not be used in future...
    push    word ptr [bx]   ; seconds
    push    word ptr [bx+2]  ; minutes
    push    word ptr [bx+4]  ; hour
    push    word ptr [bx+6]  ; day
    push    word ptr [bx+8]  ; month
    mov     ax, [bx+0Ah]     ; year
    add    ax, 1900
    push    ax
    mov     ax, offset a04d02d02d02d02 ;
    "%04d-%02d-%02d:%02d:%02d"
    push    ax
    mov     ax, offset strbuf
    push    ax
    call    sprintf_
    add    sp, 10h
    xor     ax, ax          ; NULL
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset strbuf
    push    ax
    push    ds
    mov     ax, offset aCaption ; "caption"
    push    ax
    xor     ax, ax          ; MB_OK
    push    ax
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
call    MESSAGEBOX
xor    ax, ax           ; return 0
pop    bp
retn  0Ah
WinMain endp
```

t is not to be used, but the compiler emitted the code which stores the value. Because it is not sure, maybe that value will eventually be used in some other module.

Chapter 4

Java

4.1 Java

4.1.1 Introduction

There are some well-known decompilers for Java (or **JVM** bytecode in general) ¹.

The reason is the decompilation of **JVM**-bytecode is somewhat easier than for lower level x86 code:

- There is much more information about the data types.
- The **JVM** memory model is much more rigorous and outlined.
- The Java compiler don't do any optimizations (the **JVM JIT**² does them at run-time), so the bytecode in the class files is usually pretty readable.

When can the knowledge of **JVM** be useful?

- Quick-and-dirty patching tasks of class files without the need to recompile the decompiler's results.
- Analyzing obfuscated code.
- Analyzing of a code generated by newer Java compiler for which no updated decompiler exists yet.
- Building your own obfuscator.
- Building a compiler codegenerator (back-end) targeting **JVM** (like Scala, Clojure, etc. ³).

Let's start with some simple pieces of code. JDK 1.7 is used everywhere, unless mentioned otherwise.

¹For example, JAD: <http://varaneckas.com/jad/>

²Just-In-Time compilation

³Full list: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_JVM_languages

This is the command used to decompile class files everywhere:
`javap -c -verbose`.

This is the book I used while preparing all examples: [Tim Lindholm, Frank Yellin, Gilad Bracha, Alex Buckley, *The Java(R) Virtual Machine Specification / Java SE 7 Edition*] ⁴.

4.1.2 Returning a value

Probably the simplest Java function is the one which returns some value.

Oh, and we must keep in mind that there are no “free” functions in Java in common sense, they are “methods”.

Each method is related to some class, so it’s not possible to define a method outside of a class.

But we’ll call them “functions” anyway, for simplicity.

```
public class ret
{
    public static int main(String[] args)
    {
        return 0;
    }
}
```

Let’s compile it:

```
javac ret.java
```

...and decompile it using the standard Java utility:

```
javap -c -verbose ret.class
```

And we get:

Listing 4.1: JDK 1.7 (excerpt)

```
public static int main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
  0: iconst_0
  1: ireturn
```

The Java developers decided that 0 is one of the busiest constants in programming, so there is a separate short one-byte `iconst_0` instruction which pushes 0

⁵. There are also `iconst_1` (which pushes 1), `iconst_2`, etc., up to `iconst_5`.

⁴Also available as <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/specs/jvms/se7/jvms7.pdf>; <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/specs/jvms/se7/html/>

⁵Just like in MIPS, where a separate register for zero constant exists: [1.5.4 on page 35](#).

There is also `iconst_m1` which pushes -1.

The stack is used in JVM for passing data to called functions and also for return values. So `iconst_0` pushes 0 into the stack. `ireturn` returns an integer value (*i* in name means *integer*) from the [TOS⁶](#).

Let's rewrite our example slightly, now we return 1234:

```
public class ret
{
    public static int main(String[] args)
    {
        return 1234;
    }
}
```

...we get:

Listing 4.2: JDK 1.7 (excerpt)

```
public static int main(java.lang.String[]);
  flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
  Code:
    stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
      0: sipush      1234
      3: ireturn
```

`sipush (short integer)` pushes 1234 into the stack. *short* in name implies a 16-bit value is to be pushed. The number 1234 indeed fits well in a 16-bit value.

What about larger values?

```
public class ret
{
    public static int main(String[] args)
    {
        return 12345678;
    }
}
```

Listing 4.3: Constant pool

```
...
#2 = Integer      12345678
...
```

```
public static int main(java.lang.String[]);
  flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
  Code:
    stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
      0: ldc          #2                  // int 12345678
      2: ireturn
```

⁶Top of Stack

It's not possible to encode a 32-bit number in a JVM instruction opcode, the developers didn't leave such possibility.

So the 32-bit number 12345678 is stored in so called "constant pool" which is, let's say, the library of most used constants (including strings, objects, etc.).

This way of passing constants is not unique to JVM.

MIPS, ARM and other RISC CPUs also can't encode a 32-bit number in a 32-bit opcode, so the RISC CPU code (including MIPS and ARM) has to construct the value in several steps, or to keep it in the data segment: [1.39.3 on page 556](#), [1.40.1 on page 561](#).

MIPS code also traditionally has a constant pool, named "literal pool", the segments are called ".lit4" (for 32-bit single precision floating point number constants) and ".lit8" (for 64-bit double precision floating point number constants).

Let's try some other data types!

Boolean:

```
public class ret
{
    public static boolean main(String[] args)
    {
        return true;
    }
}
```

```
public static boolean main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
  0: iconst_1
  1: ireturn
```

This JVM bytecode is no different from one returning integer 1.

32-bit data slots in the stack are also used here for boolean values, like in C/C++.

But one could not use returned boolean value as integer or vice versa — type information is stored in the class file and checked at runtime.

It's the same story with a 16-bit *short*:

```
public class ret
{
    public static short main(String[] args)
    {
        return 1234;
    }
}
```

```
public static short main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

0: sipush	1234
3: ireturn	

...and *char*!

```
public class ret
{
    public static char main(String[] args)
    {
        return 'A';
    }
}
```

```
public static char main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
0: bipush      65
2: ireturn
```

bipush means “push byte”. Needless to say that a *char* in Java is 16-bit UTF-16 character, and it’s equivalent to *short*, but the ASCII code of the “A” character is 65, and it’s possible to use the instruction for pushing a byte in the stack.

Let’s also try a *byte*:

```
public class retc
{
    public static byte main(String[] args)
    {
        return 123;
    }
}
```

```
public static byte main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
0: bipush      123
2: ireturn
```

One may ask, why bother with a 16-bit *short* data type which internally works as a 32-bit integer?

Why use a *char* data type if it is the same as a *short* data type?

The answer is simple: for data type control and source code readability.

A *char* may essentially be the same as a *short*, but we quickly grasp that it’s a placeholder for an UTF-16 character, and not for some other integer value.

When using *short*, we show everyone that the variable’s range is limited by 16 bits.

It's a very good idea to use the *boolean* type where needed to, instead of the C-style *int*.

There is also a 64-bit integer data type in Java:

```
public class ret3
{
    public static long main(String[] args)
    {
        return 1234567890123456789L;
    }
}
```

Listing 4.4: Constant pool

```
...
#2 = Long          1234567890123456789L
...

public static long main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=1, args_size=1
0: ldc2_w          #2                      // long 1234567890123456789L
3: lreturn
```

The 64-bit number is also stored in a constant pool, `ldc2_w` loads it and `lreturn` (*long return*) returns it.

The `ldc2_w` instruction is also used to load double precision floating point numbers (which also occupy 64 bits) from a constant pool:

```
public class ret
{
    public static double main(String[] args)
    {
        return 123.456d;
    }
}
```

Listing 4.5: Constant pool

```
...
#2 = Double        123.456d
...

public static double main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=1, args_size=1
0: ldc2_w          #2                      // double 123.456d
3: dreturn
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

dreturn stands for “return double”.

And finally, a single precision floating point number:

```
public class ret
{
    public static float main(String[] args)
    {
        return 123.456f;
    }
}
```

Listing 4.6: Constant pool

```
...
#2 = Float          123.456f
...
```

```
public static float main(java.lang.String[]);
  flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
  Code:
    stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
      0: ldc           #2                  // float 123.456f
      2: freturn
```

The ldc instruction used here is the same one as for loading 32-bit integer numbers from a constant pool.

freturn stands for “return float”.

Now what about function that return nothing?

```
public class ret
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        return;
    }
}
```

```
public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
  flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
  Code:
    stack=0, locals=1, args_size=1
      0: return
```

This means that the return instruction is used to return control without returning an actual value.

Knowing all this, it's very easy to deduce the function's (or method's) returning type from the last instruction.

4.1.3 Simple calculating functions

Let's continue with a simple calculating functions.

```
public class calc
{
    public static int half(int a)
    {
        return a/2;
    }
}
```

Here's the output when the `iconst_2` instruction is used:

```
public static int half(int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=1, args_size=1
0: iload_0
1: iconst_2
2: idiv
3: ireturn
```

`iload_0` takes the zeroth function argument and pushes it to the stack.

`iconst_2` pushes 2 in the stack. After the execution of these two instructions, this is how stack looks like:

```
+---+
TOS ->| 2 |
+---+
| a |
+---+
```

`idiv` just takes the two values at the `TOS`, divides one by the other and leaves the result at `TOS`:

```
+-----+
TOS ->| result |
+-----+
```

`ireturn` takes it and returns.

Let's proceed with double precision floating point numbers:

```
public class calc
{
    public static double half_double(double a)
    {
        return a/2.0;
    }
}
```

Listing 4.7: Constant pool

```
...
#2 = Double          2.0d
...

public static double half_double(double);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=4, locals=2, args_size=1
0: dload_0
1: ldc2_w           #2                      // double 2.0d
4: ddiv
5: dreturn
```

It's the same, but the `ldc2_w` instruction is used to load the constant 2.0 from the constant pool.

Also, the other three instructions have the *d* prefix, meaning they work with *double* data type values.

Let's now use a function with two arguments:

```
public class calc
{
    public static int sum(int a, int b)
    {
        return a+b;
}
```

```
public static int sum(int, int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=2, args_size=2
0: iload_0
1: iload_1
2: iadd
3: ireturn
```

`iload_0` loads the first function argument (a), `iload_1`—second (b).

Here is the stack after the execution of both instructions:

```
+---+
TOS ->| b |
+---+
| a |
+---+
```

`iadd` adds the two values and leaves the result at `TOS`:

```
+-----+
TOS ->| result |
+-----+
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Let's extend this example to the *long* data type:

```
public static long lsum(long a, long b)
{
    return a+b;
}
```

...we got:

```
public static long lsum(long, long);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=4, locals=4, args_size=2
0: lload_0
1: lload_2
2: ladd
3: lreturn
```

The second `lload` instruction takes the second argument from the 2nd slot.

That's because a 64-bit *long* value occupies exactly two 32-bit slots.

Slightly more advanced example:

```
public class calc
{
    public static int mult_add(int a, int b, int c)
    {
        return a*b+c;
    }
}
```

```
public static int mult_add(int, int, int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=3, args_size=3
0: iload_0
1: iload_1
2: imul
3: iload_2
4: iadd
5: ireturn
```

The first step is multiplication. The product is left at the [TOS](#):

```
+-----+
TOS ->| product |
+-----+
```

`iload_2` loads the third argument (*c*) in the stack:

```
+-----+
TOS ->|   c   |
+-----+
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

product
+-----+

Now the `iadd` instruction can add the two values.

4.1.4 JVM memory model

x86 and other low-level environments use the stack for argument passing and as a local variables storage.

JVM is slightly different.

It has:

- Local variable array (LVA⁷). Used as storage for incoming function arguments and local variables.

Instructions like `iload_0` load values from it.

`istore` stores values in it. At the beginning the function arguments are stored: starting at 0 or at 1 (if the zeroth argument is occupied by *this* pointer).

Then the local variables are allocated.

Each slot has size of 32-bit.

Hence, values of *long* and *double* data types occupy two slots.

- Operand stack (or just “stack”). It’s used for computations and passing arguments while calling other functions.

Unlike low-level environments like x86, it’s not possible to access the stack without using instructions which explicitly pushes or pops values to/from it.

- Heap. It is used as storage for objects and arrays.

These 3 areas are isolated from each other.

4.1.5 Simple function calling

`Math.random()` returns a pseudorandom number in range of [0.0 ...1.0], but let’s say that for some reason we need to devise a function that returns a number in range of [0.0 ...0.5]:

```
public class HalfRandom
{
    public static double f()
    {
        return Math.random()/2;
    }
}
```

⁷(Java) Local Variable Array

Listing 4.8: Constant pool

```
...
#2 = Methodref      #18.#19    //  java/lang/Math.random:()D
#3 = Double         2.0d
...
#12 = Utf8          ()D
...
#18 = Class          #22       //  java/lang/Math
#19 = NameAndType   #23:#12    //  random:()D
#22 = Utf8          java/lang/Math
#23 = Utf8          random
```

```
public static double f();
  flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
  Code:
    stack=4, locals=0, args_size=0
      0: invokestatic #2           // Method java/lang/Math.random:()D
      3: ldc2_w        #3           // double 2.0d
      6: ddiv
      7: dreturn
```

`invokestatic` calls the `Math.random()` function and leaves the result at the [TOS](#).

Then the result is divided by 2.0 and returned.

But how is the function name encoded?

It's encoded in the constant pool using a `Methodref` expression.

It defines the class and method names.

The first field of `Methodref` points to a `Class` expression which, in turn, points to the usual text string ("java/lang/Math").

The second `Methodref` expression points to a `NameAndType` expression which also has two links to the strings.

The first string is "random", which is the name of the method.

The second string is "()D", which encodes the function's type. It means that it returns a *double* value (hence the *D* in the string).

This is the way 1) JVM can check data for type correctness; 2) Java decompilers can restore data types from a compiled class file.

Now let's try the "Hello, world!" example:

```
public class HelloWorld
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Hello, World");
    }
}
```

Listing 4.9: Constant pool

```

...
#2 = Fieldref          #16.#17      //  java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
↳ /PrintStream;
#3 = String            #18        //  Hello, World
#4 = Methodref         #19.#20      //  java/io/PrintStream.println:(L
↳ java/lang/String;)V

...
#16 = Class            #23        //  java/lang/System
#17 = NameAndType      #24:#25     //  out:Ljava/io/PrintStream;
#18 = Utf8              Hello, World
#19 = Class            #26        //  java/io/PrintStream
#20 = NameAndType      #27:#28     //  println:(Ljava/lang/String;)V

...
#23 = Utf8              java/lang/System
#24 = Utf8              out
#25 = Utf8              Ljava/io/PrintStream;
#26 = Utf8              java/io/PrintStream
#27 = Utf8              println
#28 = Utf8              (Ljava/lang/String;)V
...

```



```

public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
  stack=2, locals=1, args_size=1
    0: getstatic   #2          // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
↳ PrintStream;
    3: ldc         #3          // String Hello, World
    5: invokevirtual #4        // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(L
↳ java/lang/String;)V
    8: return

```

ldc at offset 3 takes a pointer to the “Hello, World” string in the constant pool and pushes in the stack.

It’s called a *reference* in the Java world, but it’s rather a pointer, or an address

⁸

The familiar invokevirtual instruction takes the information about the println function (or method) from the constant pool and calls it.

As we may know, there are several println methods, one for each data type.

Our case is the version of println intended for the *String* data type.

But what about the first getstatic instruction?

This instruction takes a *reference* (or address of) a field of the object System.out and pushes it in the stack.

This value is acts like the *this* pointer for the println method.

⁸About difference in pointers and *reference*’s in C++ see: [3.21.3 on page 720](#).

Thus, internally, the `println` method takes two arguments for input: 1) `this`, i.e., a pointer to an object; 2) the address of the “Hello, World” string.

Indeed, `println()` is called as a method within an initialized `System.out` object.

For convenience, the `javap` utility writes all this information in the comments.

4.1.6 Calling beep()

This is a simple calling of two functions without arguments:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    java.awt.Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().beep();
}
```

```
public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
  0: invokestatic #2          // Method java.awt.Toolkit.<
  ↴ getDefaultToolkit:()Ljava.awt.Toolkit;
  3: invokevirtual #3         // Method java.awt.Toolkit.beep:()V
  6: return
```

First `invokestatic` at offset 0 calls

`java.awt.Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit()`, which returns a reference to an object of class `Toolkit`.

The `invokevirtual` instruction at offset 3 calls the `beep()` method of this class.

4.1.7 Linear congruent PRNG

Let's try a simple pseudorandom numbers generator, which we already considered once in the book ([1.29 on page 424](#)):

```
public class LCG
{
    public static int rand_state;

    public void my_srand (int init)
    {
        rand_state=init;
    }

    public static int RNG_a=1664525;
    public static int RNG_c=1013904223;

    public int my_rand ()
    {
        rand_state=rand_state*RNG_a;
        rand_state=rand_state+RNG_c;
        return rand_state & 0x7fff;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
}
```

There are couple of class fields which are initialized at start.

But how? In javap output we can find the class constructor:

```
static {};
flags: ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=0, args_size=0
  0: ldc           #5           // int 1664525
  2: putstatic     #3           // Field RNG_a:I
  5: ldc           #6           // int 1013904223
  7: putstatic     #4           // Field RNG_c:I
10: return
```

That's the way variables are initialized.

RNG_a occupies the 3rd slot in the class and RNG_c—4th, and putstatic puts the constants there.

The my_srand() function just stores the input value in rand_state:

```
public void my_srand(int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=2, args_size=2
  0: iload_1
  1: putstatic    #2           // Field rand_state:I
  4: return
```

iload_1 takes the input value and pushes it into stack. But why not iload_0?

It's because this function may use fields of the class, and so *this* is also passed to the function as a zeroth argument.

The field rand_state occupies the 2nd slot in the class, so putstatic copies the value from the [TOS](#) into the 2nd slot.

Now my_rand():

```
public int my_rand();
flags: ACC_PUBLIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=1, args_size=1
  0: getstatic    #2           // Field rand_state:I
  3: getstatic    #3           // Field RNG_a:I
  6: imul
  7: putstatic    #2           // Field rand_state:I
10: getstatic    #2           // Field rand_state:I
13: getstatic    #4           // Field RNG_c:I
16: iadd
17: putstatic    #2           // Field rand_state:I
20: getstatic    #2           // Field rand_state:I
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

23: sipush      32767
26: iand
27: ireturn

```

It just loads all the values from the object's fields, does the operations and updates `rand_state`'s value using the `putstatic` instruction.

At offset 20, `rand_state` is reloaded again (because it has been dropped from the stack before, by `putstatic`).

This looks like non-efficient code, but be sure, the [JVM](#) is usually good enough to optimize such things really well.

4.1.8 Conditional jumps

Now let's proceed to conditional jumps.

```

public class abs
{
    public static int abs(int a)
    {
        if (a<0)
            return -a;
        return a;
    }
}

```

```

public static int abs(int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
0: iload_0
1: ifge      7
4: iload_0
5: ineg
6: ireturn
7: iload_0
8: ireturn

```

`ifge` jumps to offset 7 if the value at [TOS](#) is greater or equal to 0.

Don't forget, any `ifXX` instruction pops the value (to be compared) from the stack.

`ineg` just negates value at [TOS](#).

Another example:

```

public static int min (int a, int b)
{
    if (a>b)
        return b;
    return a;
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

We get:

```
public static int min(int, int);
  flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
  stack=2, locals=2, args_size=2
    0: iload_0
    1: iload_1
    2: if_icmple    7
    5: iload_1
    6: ireturn
    7: iload_0
    8: ireturn
```

`if_icmple` pops two values and compares them. If the second one is lesser than (or equal to) the first, a jump to offset 7 is performed.

When we define `max()` function ...

```
public static int max (int a, int b)
{
    if (a>b)
        return a;
    return b;
}
```

...the resulting code is the same, but the last two `iload` instructions (at offsets 5 and 7) are swapped:

```
public static int max(int, int);
  flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
  stack=2, locals=2, args_size=2
    0: iload_0
    1: iload_1
    2: if_icmple    7
    5: iload_0
    6: ireturn
    7: iload_1
    8: ireturn
```

A more advanced example:

```
public class cond
{
    public static void f(int i)
    {
        if (i<100)
            System.out.print("<100");
        if (i==100)
            System.out.print("==100");
        if (i>100)
            System.out.print(">100");
        if (i==0)
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        }
    }

System.out.print("==0");
}

```

```

public static void f(int);
  flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
  Code:
    stack=2, locals=1, args_size=1
      0: iload_0
      1: bipush      100
      3: if_icmpge   14
      6: getstatic   #2      // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
    ↳ PrintStream;
      9: ldc         #3      // String <100
     11: invokevirtual #4      // Method java/io/PrintStream.print:(L
    ↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
      14: iload_0
      15: bipush      100
      17: if_icmpne   28
      20: getstatic   #2      // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
    ↳ PrintStream;
      23: ldc         #5      // String ==100
      25: invokevirtual #4      // Method java/io/PrintStream.print:(L
    ↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
      28: iload_0
      29: bipush      100
      31: if_icmple   42
      34: getstatic   #2      // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
    ↳ PrintStream;
      37: ldc         #6      // String >100
      39: invokevirtual #4      // Method java/io/PrintStream.print:(L
    ↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
      42: iload_0
      43: ifne        54
      46: getstatic   #2      // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
    ↳ PrintStream;
      49: ldc         #7      // String ==0
      51: invokevirtual #4      // Method java/io/PrintStream.print:(L
    ↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
      54: return

```

`if_icmpge` pops two values and compares them. If the second one is larger or equal than the first, a jump to offset 14 is performed.

`if_icmpne` and `if_icmple` work just the same, but implement different conditions.

There is also a `ifne` instruction at offset 43.

Its name is misnomer, it would've be better to name it `ifnz` (jump if the value at **TOS** is not zero).

And that is what it does: it jumps to offset 54 if the input value is not zero.

If zero, the execution flow proceeds to offset 46, where the “`==0`” string is printed.

N.B.: **JVM** has no unsigned data types, so the comparison instructions operate only on signed integer values.

4.1.9 Passing arguments

Let's extend our `min()`/`max()` example:

```
public class minmax
{
    public static int min (int a, int b)
    {
        if (a>b)
            return b;
        return a;
    }

    public static int max (int a, int b)
    {
        if (a>b)
            return a;
        return b;
    }

    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int a=123, b=456;
        int max_value=max(a, b);
        int min_value=min(a, b);
        System.out.println(min_value);
        System.out.println(max_value);
    }
}
```

Here is `main()` function code:

```
public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=5, args_size=1
 0: bipush      123
 2: istore_1
 3: sipush      456
 6: istore_2
 7: iload_1
 8: iload_2
 9: invokestatic #2          // Method max:(II)I
12: istore_3
13: iload_1
14: iload_2
15: invokestatic #3          // Method min:(II)I
18: istore      4
20: getstatic   #4          // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/PrintStream;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

23: iload      4
25: invokevirtual #5    // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(I)V
↳ )V
28: getstatic   #4    // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/PrintStream;
↳ PrintStream;
31: iload_3
32: invokevirtual #5    // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(I)V
↳ )V
35: return

```

Arguments are passed to the other function in the stack, and the return value is left on [TOS](#).

4.1.10 Bitfields

All bit-wise operations work just like in any other ISA:

```

public static int set (int a, int b)
{
    return a | 1<<b;
}

public static int clear (int a, int b)
{
    return a & (~(1<<b));
}

```

```

public static int set(int, int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=3, locals=2, args_size=2
0: iload_0
1: iconst_1
2: iload_1
3: ishl
4: ior
5: ireturn

public static int clear(int, int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=3, locals=2, args_size=2
0: iload_0
1: iconst_1
2: iload_1
3: ishl
4: iconst_m1
5: ixor
6: iand
7: ireturn

```

`iconst_m1` loads -1 in the stack, it's the same as the `0xFFFFFFFF` number.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

XORing with `0xFFFFFFFF` has the same effect of inverting all bits ([2.6 on page 582](#)).

Let's extend all data types to 64-bit *long*:

```
public static long lset (long a, int b)
{
    return a | 1<<b;
}

public static long lclear (long a, int b)
{
    return a & (~(1<<b));
}
```

```
public static long lset(long, int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=4, locals=3, args_size=2
0: lload_0
1: iconst_1
2: iload_2
3: ishl
4: i2l
5: lor
6: lreturn

public static long lclear(long, int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=4, locals=3, args_size=2
0: lload_0
1: iconst_1
2: iload_2
3: ishl
4: iconst_m1
5: ixor
6: i2l
7: land
8: lreturn
```

The code is the same, but instructions with *l* prefix are used, which operate on 64-bit values.

Also, the second argument type of the function is still *int*, and when the 32-bit value in it needs to be promoted to 64-bit value the *i2l* instruction is used, which essentially extend the value of an *integer* type to a *long* one.

4.1.11 Loops

```
public class Loop
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
    {
        System.out.println(i);
    }
}

```

```

public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
    stack=2, locals=2, args_size=1
    0:  iconst_1
    1:  istore_1
    2:  iload_1
    3:  bipush      10
    5:  if_icmpgt   21           // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/PrintStream;
    \ /PrintStream;
    11: iload_1
    12: invokevirtual #3          // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(I)V
    \ :(I)V
    15: iinc         1, 1
    18: goto         2
    21: return

```

`iconst_1` loads 1 into **TOS**, `istore_1` stores it in the **LVA** at slot 1.

Why not the zeroth slot? Because the `main()` function has one argument (array of `String`) and a pointer to it (or *reference*) is now in the zeroth slot.

So, the *i* local variable will always be in 1st slot.

Instructions at offsets 3 and 5 compare *i* with 10.

If *i* is larger, execution flow passes to offset 21, where the function ends.

If it's not, `println` is called.

i is then reloaded at offset 11, for `println`.

By the way, we call the `println` method for an *integer*, and we see this in the comments: "(I)V" (*I* means *integer* and *V* means the return type is *void*).

When `println` finishes, *i* is incremented at offset 15.

The first operand of the instruction is the number of a slot (1), the second is the number (1) to add to the variable.

`goto` is just GOTO, it jumps to the beginning of the loop's body offset 2.

Let's proceed with a more complex example:

```

public class Fibonacci
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int limit = 20, f = 0, g = 1;

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        for (int i = 1; i <= limit; i++)
    {
        f = f + g;
        g = f - g;
        System.out.println(f);
    }
}

```

```

public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=5, args_size=1
  0: bipush      20
  2: istore_1
  3: iconst_0
  4: istore_2
  5: iconst_1
  6: istore_3
  7: iconst_1
  8: istore      4
 10: iload       4
 12: iload_1
 13: if_icmpgt   37
 16: iload_2
 17: iload_3
 18: iadd
 19: istore_2
 20: iload_2
 21: iload_3
 22: isub
 23: istore_3
 24: getstatic    #2          // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/PrintStream;
↳ /PrintStream;
 27: iload_2
 28: invokevirtual #3         // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(I)V
↳ :(I)V
 31: iinc        4, 1
 34: goto        10
 37: return

```

Here is a map of the LVA slots:

- 0 — the sole argument of `main()`
- 1 — *limit*, always contains 20
- 2 — *f*
- 3 — *g*
- 4 — *i*

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

We can see that the Java compiler allocates variables in LVA slots in the same order they were declared in the source code.

There are separate `istore` instructions for accessing slots 0, 1, 2 and 3, but not for 4 and larger, so there is `istore` with an additional operand at offset 8 which takes the slot number as an operand.

It's the same with `iload` at offset 10.

But isn't it dubious to allocate another slot for the *limit* variable, which always contains 20 (so it's a constant in essence), and reload its value so often?

[JVM JIT](#) compiler is usually good enough to optimize such things.

Manual intervention in the code is probably not worth it.

4.1.12 switch()

The `switch()` statement is implemented with the `tableswitch` instruction:

```
public static void f(int a)
{
    switch (a)
    {
        case 0: System.out.println("zero"); break;
        case 1: System.out.println("one\n"); break;
        case 2: System.out.println("two\n"); break;
        case 3: System.out.println("three\n"); break;
        case 4: System.out.println("four\n"); break;
        default: System.out.println("something unknown\n"); break;
    }
}
```

As simple, as possible:

```
public static void f(int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=1, args_size=1
  0: iload_0
  1: tableswitch { // 0 to 4
      0: 36
      1: 47
      2: 58
      3: 69
      4: 80
      default: 91
    }
  36: getstatic #2          // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/PrintStream;
  ↳ PrintStream;
  39: ldc                 #3          // String zero
  41: invokevirtual #4      // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(Ljava/lang/String;)V
  ↳ Ljava/lang/String;)
  44: goto               99
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

 47: getstatic    #2    // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/⤦
↳ PrintStream;
 50: ldc          #5    // String one\n
 52: invokevirtual #4    // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(⤦
↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
 55: goto         99
 58: getstatic    #2    // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/⤦
↳ PrintStream;
 61: ldc          #6    // String two\n
 63: invokevirtual #4    // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(⤦
↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
 66: goto         99
 69: getstatic    #2    // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/⤦
↳ PrintStream;
 72: ldc          #7    // String three\n
 74: invokevirtual #4    // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(⤦
↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
 77: goto         99
 80: getstatic    #2    // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/⤦
↳ PrintStream;
 83: ldc          #8    // String four\n
 85: invokevirtual #4    // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(⤦
↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
 88: goto         99
 91: getstatic    #2    // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/⤦
↳ PrintStream;
 94: ldc          #9    // String something unknown\n
 96: invokevirtual #4    // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(⤦
↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
 99: return

```

4.1.13 Arrays

Simple example

Let's first create an array of 10 integers and fill it:

```

public static void main(String[] args)
{
    int a[]=new int[10];
    for (int i=0; i<10; i++)
        a[i]=i;
    dump (a);
}

```

```

public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=3, locals=3, args_size=1
 0: bipush      10
 2: newarray     int
 4: astore_1

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

5:  iconst_0
6:  istore_2
7:  iload_2
8:  bipush      10
10: if_icmpge   23
13: aload_1
14: iload_2
15: iload_2
16: iastore
17: iinc       2, 1
20: goto      7
23: aload_1
24: invokestatic #4      // Method dump:([I)V
27: return

```

The newarray instruction creates an array object of 10 *int* elements.

The array's size is set with bipush and left at [TOS](#).

The array's type is set in newarray instruction's operand.

After newarray's execution, a *reference* (or pointer) to the newly created array in the heap is left at the [TOS](#).

`astore_1` stores the *reference* to the 1st slot in [LVA](#).

The second part of the `main()` function is the loop which stores *i* into the corresponding array element.

`aload_1` gets a *reference* of the array and places it in the stack.

`iastore` then stores the integer value from the stack in the array, *reference* of which is currently in [TOS](#).

The third part of the `main()` function calls the `dump()` function.

An argument for it is prepared by `aload_1` (offset 23).

Now let's proceed to the `dump()` function:

```

public static void dump(int a[])
{
    for (int i=0; i<a.length; i++)
        System.out.println(a[i]);
}

```

```

public static void dump(int[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=3, locals=2, args_size=1
0: iconst_0
1: istore_1
2: iload_1
3: aload_0
4: arraylength
5: if_icmpge   23

```

```

 8: getstatic      #2      // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/⤦
↳ PrintStream;
 11: aload_0
 12: iload_1
 13: iaload
 14: invokevirtual #3      // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(I)⤦
↳ v
 17: iinc          1, 1
 20: goto          2
 23: return

```

The incoming reference to the array is in the zeroth slot.

The `a.length` expression in the source code is converted to an `arraylength` instruction: it takes a *reference* to the array and leaves the array size at [TOS](#).

`iaload` at offset 13 is used to load array elements, it requires an array *reference* to be present in the stack (prepared by `aload_0` at 11), and also an index (prepared by `iload_1` at offset 12).

Needless to say, instructions prefixed with `a` may be mistakenly comprehended as *array* instructions.

It's not correct. These instructions works with *references* to objects.

And arrays and strings are objects too.

Summing elements of array

Another example:

```

public class ArraySum
{
    public static int f (int[] a)
    {
        int sum=0;
        for (int i=0; i<a.length; i++)
            sum=sum+a[i];
        return sum;
    }
}

```

```

public static int f(int[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=3, locals=3, args_size=1
  0:  iconst_0
  1:  istore_1
  2:  iconst_0
  3:  istore_2
  4:  iload_2
  5:  aload_0
  6:  arraylength
  7:  if_icmpge    22

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

10: iload_1
11: aload_0
12: iload_2
13: iaload
14: iadd
15: istore_1
16: iinc      2, 1
19: goto      4
22: iload_1
23: ireturn

```

LVA slot 0 contains a *reference* to the input array.

LVA slot 1 contains the local variable *sum*.

The only argument of the main() function is an array too

We'll be using the only argument of the main() function, which is an array of strings:

```

public class UseArgument
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.print("Hi, ");
        System.out.print(args[1]);
        System.out.println(". How are you?");
    }
}

```

The zeroth argument is the program's name (like in C/C++ , etc.), so the 1st argument supplied by the user is 1st.

```

public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
  stack=3, locals=1, args_size=1
    0: getstatic #2      // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
    ↴ PrintStream;
      3: ldc       #3      // String Hi,
      5: invokevirtual #4      // Method java/io/PrintStream.print:(L
    ↴ java/lang/String;)V
      8: getstatic #2      // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
    ↴ PrintStream;
      11: aload_0
      12: iconst_1
      13: aaload
      14: invokevirtual #4      // Method java/io/PrintStream.print:(L
    ↴ java/lang/String;)V
      17: getstatic #2      // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
    ↴ PrintStream;
      20: ldc       #5      // String . How are you?
      22: invokevirtual #6      // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(L
    ↴ java/lang/String;)V

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

25: return

aload_0 at 11 loads a *reference* of the zeroth LVA slot (1st and only main() argument).

iconst_1 and aaload at 12 and 13 take a *reference* to the first (counting at 0) element of array.

The *reference* to the string object is at TOS at offset 14, and it is taken from there by println method.

Pre-initialized array of strings

```
class Month
{
    public static String[] months =
    {
        "January",
        "February",
        "March",
        "April",
        "May",
        "June",
        "July",
        "August",
        "September",
        "October",
        "November",
        "December"
    };

    public String get_month (int i)
    {
        return months[i];
    }
}
```

The get_month() function is simple:

```
public java.lang.String get_month(int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=2, args_size=2
  0: getstatic   #2          // Field months:[Ljava/lang/String;
  3: iload_1
  4: aaload
  5: areturn
```

aaload operates on an array of *references*.

Java String are objects, so the a-instructions are used to operate on them.

areturn returns a *reference* to a String object.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

How is the months[] array initialized?

```

static {};
flags: ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=4, locals=0, args_size=0
 0: bipush      12
 2: anewarray   #3          // class java/lang/String
 5: dup
 6: iconst_0
 7: ldc         #4          // String January
 9: aastore
10: dup
11: iconst_1
12: ldc         #5          // String February
14: aastore
15: dup
16: iconst_2
17: ldc         #6          // String March
19: aastore
20: dup
21: iconst_3
22: ldc         #7          // String April
24: aastore
25: dup
26: iconst_4
27: ldc         #8          // String May
29: aastore
30: dup
31: iconst_5
32: ldc         #9          // String June
34: aastore
35: dup
36: bipush      6
38: ldc         #10         // String July
40: aastore
41: dup
42: bipush      7
44: ldc         #11         // String August
46: aastore
47: dup
48: bipush      8
50: ldc         #12         // String September
52: aastore
53: dup
54: bipush      9
56: ldc         #13         // String October
58: aastore
59: dup
60: bipush      10
62: ldc         #14         // String November
64: aastore
65: dup
66: bipush      11

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

68: ldc           #15      // String December
70: aastore
71: putstatic    #2       // Field months:[Ljava/lang/String;
74: return

```

`anewarray` creates a new array of *references* (hence a prefix).

The object's type is defined in the `anewarray`'s operand, it is the "java/lang/String" string.

The `bipush 12` before `anewarray` sets the array's size.

We see here a new instruction for us: `dup`.

It's a standard instruction in stack computers (including the Forth programming language) which just duplicates the value at [TOS](#).

By the way, FPU 80x87 is also a stack computer and it has similar instruction - FDUP.

It is used here to duplicate a *reference* to an array, because the `aastore` instruction pops the *reference* to array from the stack, but subsequent `aastore` will need it again.

The Java compiler concluded that it's better to generate a `dup` instead of generating a `getstatic` instruction before each array store operation (i.e., 11 times).

`aastore` puts a *reference* (to string) into the array at an index which is taken from [TOS](#).

Finally, `putstatic` puts *reference* to the newly created array into the second field of our object, i.e., *months* field.

Variadic functions

Variadic functions actually use arrays:

```

public static void f(int... values)
{
    for (int i=0; i<values.length; i++)
        System.out.println(values[i]);
}

public static void main(String[] args)
{
    f (1,2,3,4,5);
}

```

```

public static void f(int...);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC, ACC_VARARGS
Code:
stack=3, locals=2, args_size=1
0:  iconst_0
1:  istore_1
2:  iload_1
3:  aload_0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

4: arraylength
5: if_icmpge    23
8: getstatic     #2      // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/PrintStream;
↳ PrintStream;
11: aload_0
12: iload_1
13: iaload
14: invokevirtual #3      // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(I)V
↳ )V
17: iinc          1, 1
20: goto          2
23: return

```

f() just takes an array of integers using `aload_0` at offset 3.

Then it gets the array's size, etc.

```

public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
  flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
  stack=4, locals=1, args_size=1
    0: iconst_5
    1: newarray      int
    3: dup
    4: iconst_0
    5: iconst_1
    6: iastore
    7: dup
    8: iconst_1
    9: iconst_2
   10: iastore
   11: dup
   12: iconst_2
   13: iconst_3
   14: iastore
   15: dup
   16: iconst_3
   17: iconst_4
   18: iastore
   19: dup
   20: iconst_4
   21: iconst_5
   22: iastore
   23: invokestatic #4      // Method f:([I)V
   26: return

```

The array is constructed in `main()` using the `newarray` instruction, then it's filled, and `f()` is called.

Oh, by the way, array object is not destroyed at the end of `main()`.

There are no destructors in Java at all, because the JVM has a garbage collector which does this automatically, when it feels it needs to.

What about the `format()` method?

It takes two arguments at input: a string and an array of objects:

```
public PrintStream format(String format, Object... args)
```

(<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/tutorial/java/data/numberformat.html>)

Let's see:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    int i=123;
    double d=123.456;
    System.out.format("int: %d double: %f.%n", i, d);
}
```

```
public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=7, locals=4, args_size=1
  0: bipush      123
  2: istore_1
  3: ldc2_w       #2          // double 123.456d
  6: dstore_2
  7: getstatic     #4          // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/PrintStream;
   ↴ /PrintStream;
  10: ldc          #5          // String int: %d double: %f.%n
  12: iconst_2
  13: anewarray     #6          // class java/lang/Object
  16: dup
  17: iconst_0
  18: iload_1
  19: invokestatic  #7          // Method java/lang/Integer.valueOf:(I)Ljava/lang/Integer;
   ↴ Ljava/lang/Integer;
  22: aastore
  23: dup
  24: iconst_1
  25: dload_2
  26: invokestatic  #8          // Method java/lang/Double.valueOf:(D)Ljava/lang/Double;
   ↴ Ljava/lang/Double;
  29: aastore
  30: invokevirtual #9          // Method java/io/PrintStream.format:(Ljava/lang/String;[Ljava/lang/Object;)V
   ↴ Ljava/lang/String;[Ljava/lang/Object;)Ljava/io/PrintStream;
  33: pop
  34: return
```

So values of the `int` and `double` types are first promoted to `Integer` and `Double` objects using the `valueOf` methods.

The `format()` method needs objects of type `Object` at input, and since the `Integer` and `Double` classes are derived from the root `Object` class, they suitable for elements in the input array.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

On the other hand, an array is always homogeneous, i.e., it can't hold elements of different types, which makes it impossible to push *int* and *double* values in it.

An array of *Object* objects is created at offset 13, an *Integer* object is added to the array at offset 22, and a *Double* object is added to the array at offset 29.

The penultimate pop instruction discards the element at *TOS*, so when *return* is executed, the stack becomes empty (or balanced).

Two-dimensional arrays

Two-dimensional arrays in Java are just one-dimensional arrays of *references* to another one-dimensional arrays.

Let's create a two-dimensional array:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    int[][] a = new int[5][10];
    a[1][2]=3;
}
```

```
public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=3, locals=2, args_size=1
0:  iconst_5
1:  bipush      10
3:  multianewarray #2,  2      // class "[[I"
7:  astore_1
8:  aload_1
9:  iconst_1
10: aaload
11: iconst_2
12: iconst_3
13: iastore
14: return
```

It's created using the *multianewarray* instruction: the object's type and dimensionality are passed as operands.

The array's size (10*5) is left in stack (using the instructions *iconst_5* and *bipush*).

A *reference* to row #1 is loaded at offset 10 (*iconst_1* and *aaload*).

The column is chosen using *iconst_2* at offset 11.

The value to be written is set at offset 12.

iastore at 13 writes the array's element.

How it is an element accessed?

```
public static int get12 (int[][] in)
{
    return in[1][2];
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
}
```

```
public static int get12(int[][][]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=1, args_size=1
0: aload_0
1: iconst_1
2: aaload
3: iconst_2
4: iaload
5: ireturn
```

A *Reference* to the array's row is loaded at offset 2, the column is set at offset 3, then *iaload* loads the array's element.

Three-dimensional arrays

Three-dimensional arrays are just one-dimensional arrays of *references* to one-dimensional arrays of *references* to one-dimensional arrays.

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    int[][][] a = new int[5][10][15];
    a[1][2][3]=4;
    get_elem(a);
}
```

```
public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=3, locals=2, args_size=1
0: iconst_5
1: bipush      10
3: bipush      15
5: multianewarray #2,  3      // class "[[[I"
9: astore_1
10: aload_1
11: iconst_1
12: aaload
13: iconst_2
14: aaload
15: iconst_3
16: iconst_4
17: iastore
18: aload_1
19: invokestatic #3      // Method get_elem:([[[I)I
22: pop
23: return
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Now it takes two aaload instructions to find right reference:

```
public static int get_elem (int[][][] a)
{
    return a[1][2][3];
}
```

```
public static int get_elem(int[][][]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=1, args_size=1
  0: aload_0
  1: iconst_1
  2: aaload
  3: iconst_2
  4: aaload
  5: iconst_3
  6: iaload
  7: ireturn
```

Summary

Is it possible to do a buffer overflow in Java?

No, because the array's length is always present in an array object, array bounds are controlled, and an exception is to be raised in case of out-of-bounds access.

There are no multi-dimensional arrays in Java in the C/C++ sense, so Java is not very suited for fast scientific computations.

4.1.14 Strings

First example

Strings are objects and are constructed in the same way as other objects (and arrays).

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    System.out.println("What is your name?");
    String input = System.console().readLine();
    System.out.println("Hello, "+input);
}
```

```
public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=3, locals=2, args_size=1
  0: getstatic      #2          // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
  ↴ PrintStream;
  3: ldc            #3          // String What is your name?
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

5: invokevirtual #4          // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(L
↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
8: invokestatic #5          // Method java/lang/System.console:()V
↳ Ljava/io/Console;
11: invokevirtual #6          // Method java/io/Console.readLine:()V
↳ Ljava/lang/String;
14: astore_1
15: getstatic    #2          // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
↳ PrintStream;
18: new           #7          // class java/lang/StringBuilder
21: dup
22: invokespecial #8          // Method java/lang/StringBuilder."<-
↳ init>":()V
25: ldc            #9          // String Hello,
27: invokevirtual #10         // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.append:(L
↳ java/lang/String;)Ljava/lang/StringBuilder;
30: aload_1
31: invokevirtual #10         // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.append:(L
↳ java/lang/String;)Ljava/lang/StringBuilder;
34: invokevirtual #11         // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.toString:()
↳ Ljava/lang/String;
37: invokevirtual #4          // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(L
↳ java/lang/String;)V
40: return

```

The `readLine()` method is called at offset 11, a *reference* to string (which is supplied by the user) is then stored at [TOS](#).

At offset 14 the *reference* to string is stored in slot 1 of [LVA](#).

The string the user entered is reloaded at offset 30 and concatenated with the “Hello,” string using the `StringBuilder` class.

The constructed string is then printed using `println` at offset 37.

Second example

Another example:

```

public class strings
{
    public static char test (String a)
    {
        return a.charAt(3);
    }

    public static String concat (String a, String b)
    {
        return a+b;
    }
}

```

```
public static char test(java.lang.String);
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
  stack=2, locals=1, args_size=1
  0: aload_0
  1: iconst_3
  2: invokevirtual #2          // Method java/lang/String.charAt:(I)C
  5: ireturn

```

The string concatenation is performed using `StringBuilder`:

```

public static java.lang.String concat(java.lang.String, java.lang.String) {
    ...
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
  stack=2, locals=2, args_size=2
  0: new           #3      // class java/lang/StringBuilder
  3: dup
  4: invokespecial #4      // Method java/lang/StringBuilder."<"
  \ init>":()V
  7: aload_0
  8: invokevirtual #5      // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.>
  \ append:(Ljava/lang/String;)Ljava/lang/StringBuilder;
  11: aload_1
  12: invokevirtual #5      // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.>
  \ append:(Ljava/lang/String;)Ljava/lang/StringBuilder;
  15: invokevirtual #6      // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.>
  \ toString:()Ljava/lang/String;
  18: areturn

```

Another example:

```

public static void main(String[] args)
{
    String s="Hello!";
    int n=123;
    System.out.println("s=" + s + " n=" + n);
}

```

And again, the strings are constructed using the `StringBuilder` class and its `append` method, then the constructed string is passed to `println`:

```

public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
  stack=3, locals=3, args_size=1
  0: ldc           #2      // String Hello!
  2: astore_1
  3: bipush        123
  5: istore_2
  6: getstatic     #3      // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
  \ PrintStream;
  9: new           #4      // class java/lang/StringBuilder
  12: dup

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

13: invokespecial #5          // Method java/lang/StringBuilder."<"
↳ init>":()V
16: ldc           #6          // String s=
18: invokevirtual #7          // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.<
↳ append:(Ljava/lang/String;)Ljava/lang/StringBuilder;
21: aload_1
22: invokevirtual #7          // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.<
↳ append:(Ljava/lang/String;)Ljava/lang/StringBuilder;
25: ldc           #8          // String n=
27: invokevirtual #7          // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.<
↳ append:(Ljava/lang/String;)Ljava/lang/StringBuilder;
30: iload_2
31: invokevirtual #9          // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.<
↳ append:(I)Ljava/lang/StringBuilder;
34: invokevirtual #10         // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.<
↳ toString:()Ljava/lang/String;
37: invokevirtual #11         // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(<
↳ Ljava/lang/String;)V
40: return

```

4.1.15 Exceptions

Let's rework our *Month* example ([4.1.13 on page 879](#)) a bit:

Listing 4.10: IncorrectMonthException.java

```

public class IncorrectMonthException extends Exception
{
    private int index;

    public IncorrectMonthException(int index)
    {
        this.index = index;
    }
    public int getIndex()
    {
        return index;
    }
}

```

Listing 4.11: Month2.java

```

class Month2
{
    public static String[] months =
    {
        "January",
        "February",
        "March",
        "April",
        "May",
        "June",
        "July",

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        "August",
        "September",
        "October",
        "November",
        "December"
    };

    public static String get_month (int i) throws ↵
↳ IncorrectMonthException
    {
        if (i<0 || i>11)
            throw new IncorrectMonthException(i);
        return months[i];
    };

    public static void main (String[] args)
    {
        try
        {
            System.out.println(get_month(100));
        }
        catch(IncorrectMonthException e)
        {
            System.out.println("incorrect month index: "+ e.↗
↳ getIndex());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    };
}

```

Essentially, `IncorrectMonthException.class` has just an object constructor and one getter method.

The `IncorrectMonthException` class is derived from `Exception`, so the `IncorrectMonthException` constructor first calls the constructor of the `Exception` class, then it puts incoming integer value into the sole `IncorrectMonthException` class field:

```

public IncorrectMonthException(int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=2, args_size=2
  0: aload_0
  1: invokespecial #1           // Method java/lang/Exception."<init>"
↳ >"():V
  4: aload_0
  5: iload_1
  6: putfield      #2           // Field index:I
  9: return

```

`getIndex()` is just a getter. A *reference* to `IncorrectMonthException` is passed in the zeroth [LVA](#) slot (`this`), `aload_0` takes it, `getfield` loads an integer value from the object, `ireturn` returns it.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

public int getIndex();
flags: ACC_PUBLIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
0: aload_0
1: getfield    #2           // Field index:I
4: ireturn

```

Now let's take a look at `get_month()` in `Month2.class`:

Listing 4.12: Month2.class

```

public static java.lang.String get_month(int) throws ↴
↳ IncorrectMonthException;
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=3, locals=1, args_size=1
0: iload_0
1: iflt      10
4: iload_0
5: bipush    11
7: if_icmple  19
10: new       #2           // class IncorrectMonthException
13: dup
14: iload_0
15: invokespecial #3      // Method IncorrectMonthException."<"
↳ init>:(I)V
18: athrow
19: getstatic   #4           // Field months:[Ljava/lang/String;
22: iload_0
23: aaload
24: areturn

```

`iflt` at offset 1 is *if less than*.

In case of invalid index, a new object is created using the `new` instruction at offset 10.

The object's type is passed as an operand to the instruction (which is `IncorrectMonthException`).

Then its constructor is called, and index is passed via [TOS](#) (offset 15).

When the control flow is offset 18, the object is already constructed, so now the `athrow` instruction takes a *reference* to the newly constructed object and signals to [JVM](#) to find the appropriate exception handler.

The `athrow` instruction doesn't return the control flow here, so at offset 19 there is another [basic block](#), not related to exceptions business, where we can get from offset 7.

How do handlers work?

`main()` in `Month2.class`:

Listing 4.13: Month2.class

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
  flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
  stack=3, locals=2, args_size=1
    0: getstatic      #5           // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
    ↴ PrintStream;
      3: bipush        100
      5: invokestatic  #6           // Method get_month:(I)Ljava/lang/
    ↴ String;
      8: invokevirtual #7           // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(V
    ↴ Ljava/lang/String;)V
      11: goto         47
      14: astore_1
      15: getstatic      #5           // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/
    ↴ PrintStream;
      18: new           #8           // class java/lang/StringBuilder
      21: dup
      22: invokespecial #9           // Method java/lang/StringBuilder."<"
    ↴ init>":()V
      25: ldc           #10          // String incorrect month index:
      27: invokevirtual #11          // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.>
    ↴ append:(Ljava/lang/String;)Ljava/lang/StringBuilder;
      30: aload_1
      31: invokevirtual #12          // Method IncorrectMonthException.>
    ↴ getIndex():I
      34: invokevirtual #13          // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.>
    ↴ append:(I)Ljava/lang/StringBuilder;
      37: invokevirtual #14          // Method java/lang/StringBuilder.>
    ↴ toString():Ljava/lang/String;
      40: invokevirtual #7           // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(V
    ↴ Ljava/lang/String;)V
      43: aload_1
      44: invokevirtual #15          // Method IncorrectMonthException.>
    ↴ printStackTrace():V
      47: return
Exception table:
  from   to   target type
    0     11    14   Class IncorrectMonthException

```

Here is the Exception table, which defines that from offsets 0 to 11 (inclusive) an exception

IncorrectMonthException may happen, and if it does, the control flow is to be passed to offset 14.

Indeed, the main program ends at offset 11.

At offset 14 the handler starts. It's not possible to get here, there are no conditional/unconditional jumps to this area.

But **JVM** will transfer the execution flow here in case of an exception.

The very first astore_1 (at 14) takes the incoming reference to the exception object and stores it in **LVA** slot 1.

Later, the `getIndex()` method (of this exception object) will be called at offset 31.

The *reference* to the current exception object is passed right before that (offset 30).

The rest of the code is does just string manipulation: first the integer value returned by `getIndex()` is converted to string by the `toString()` method, then it's concatenated with the “incorrect month index: ” text string (like we saw before), then `println()` and `printStackTrace()` are called.

After `printStackTrace()` finishes, the exception is handled and we can continue with the normal execution.

At offset 47 there is a return which finishes the `main()` function, but there could be any other code which would execute as if no exceptions were raised.

Here is an example on how IDA shows exception ranges:

Listing 4.14: from some random .class file found on the author’s computer

```
.catch java/io/FileNotFoundException from met001_335 to met001_360\
using met001_360
    .catch java/io/FileNotFoundException from met001_185 to met001_214\
using met001_214
        .catch java/io/FileNotFoundException from met001_181 to met001_192\
using met001_195
            .catch java/io/FileNotFoundException from met001_155 to met001_176\
using met001_176
                .catch java/io/FileNotFoundException from met001_83 to met001_129 using \
                \ \
met001_129
                .catch java/io/FileNotFoundException from met001_42 to met001_66 using \
                \ \
met001_69
                .catch java/io/FileNotFoundException from met001_begin to met001_37\
using met001_37
```

4.1.16 Classes

Simple class:

Listing 4.15: test.java

```
public class test
{
    public static int a;
    private static int b;

    public test()
    {
        a=0;
        b=0;
    }
    public static void set_a (int input)
    {
        a=input;
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        }
    public static int get_a ()
    {
        return a;
    }
    public static void set_b (int input)
    {
        b=input;
    }
    public static int get_b ()
    {
        return b;
    }
}

```

The constructor just sets both fields to zero:

```

public test();
flags: ACC_PUBLIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
0: aload_0
1: invokespecial #1           // Method java/lang/Object."<init>":()
↳ V
4: iconst_0
5: putstatic    #2           // Field a:I
8: iconst_0
9: putstatic    #3           // Field b:I
12: return

```

Setter of a:

```

public static void set_a(int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
0: iload_0
1: putstatic    #2           // Field a:I
4: return

```

Getter of a:

```

public static int get_a();
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=0, args_size=0
0: getstatic    #2           // Field a:I
3: ireturn

```

Setter of b:

```

public static void set_b(int);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

Code:
stack=1, locals=1, args_size=1
 0: iload_0
 1: putstatic    #3           // Field b:I
 4: return

```

Getter of b:

```

public static int get_b();
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=1, locals=0, args_size=0
 0: getstatic    #3           // Field b:I
 3: ireturn

```

There is no difference in the code which works with public and private fields.

But this type information is present in the .class file, and it's not possible to access private fields from everywhere.

Let's create an object and call its method:

Listing 4.16: ex1.java

```

public class ex1
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        test obj=new test();
        obj.set_a (1234);
        System.out.println(obj.a);
    }
}

```

```

public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
flags: ACC_PUBLIC, ACC_STATIC
Code:
stack=2, locals=2, args_size=1
 0: new           #2           // class test
 3: dup
 4: invokespecial #3          // Method test."<init>":()V
 7: astore_1
 8: aload_1
 9: pop
10: sipush      1234
13: invokestatic #4          // Method test.set_a:(I)V
16: getstatic   #5          // Field java/lang/System.out:Ljava/io/PrintStream;
↳ PrintStream;
19: aload_1
20: pop
21: getstatic   #6          // Field test.a:I
24: invokevirtual #7         // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(I)V
↳ I)V
27: return

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The new instruction creates an object, but doesn't call the constructor (it is called at offset 4).

The `set_a()` method is called at offset 16.

The `a` field is accessed using the `getstatic` instruction at offset 21.

4.1.17 Simple patching

First example

Let's proceed with a simple code patching task.

```
public class nag
{
    public static void nag_screen()
    {
        System.out.println("This program is not registered");
    };
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Greetings from the mega-software");
        nag_screen();
    }
}
```

How would we remove the printing of "This program is not registered" string?

Let's load the .class file into IDA:

```
; Segment type: Pure code
.method public static nag_screen()V
.limit stack 2
.line 4
• 178 000 002 | getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream; ; CODE XREF: main+8jP
• 018 003     ldc "This program is not registered"
• 182 000 004     invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
.line 5
• 177         return
??? ??? ???+ .end method
??? ??? ???+
???
;

; Segment type: Pure code
.method public static main([Ljava/lang/String;)V
.limit stack 2
.limit locals 1
.line 8
• 178 000 002     getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
• 018 005     ldc "Greetings from the mega-software"
• 182 000 004     invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
.line 9
• 184 000 006     invokestatic nag.nag_screen()V
.line 10
• 177         return
???
```

Figure 4.1: IDA

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Let's patch the first byte of the function to 177 (which is the return instruction's opcode):

```

; Segment type: Pure code
.method public static nag_screen()V
.limit stack 2
.line 4

nag_screen:
    return
177 000      0 ; 0x00
002          2 ; 0x02
018 003      ldc "This program is not registered"
018 004      invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
.line 5
177          return
??? ??? ???+ .end method
??? ??? ???+
???
;
```

Figure 4.2: IDA

But that doesn't work (JRE 1.7):

```

Exception in thread "main" java.lang.VerifyError: Expecting a stack map 
↳ frame
Exception Details:
  Location:
    nag.nag_screen()V @1: nop
  Reason:
    Error exists in the bytecode
  Bytecode:
    00000000: b100 0212 03b6 0004 b1

    at java.lang.Class.getDeclaredMethods0(Native Method)
    at java.lang.Class.privateGetDeclaredMethods(Class.java:2615)
    at java.lang.Class.getMethod0(Class.java:2856)
    at java.lang.Class.getMethod(Class.java:1668)
    at sun.launcher.LauncherHelper.getMainMethod(LauncherHelper.java:2
↳ :494)
    at sun.launcher.LauncherHelper.checkAndLoadMain(LauncherHelper.java
↳ :486)
;
```

Perhaps JVM has some other checks related to the stack maps.

OK, let's patch it differently by removing the call to nag():

```

; Segment type: Pure code
.method public static main([Ljava/lang/String;)V
.limit stack 2
.limit locals 1
.line 8
• 178 000 002    getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
• 018 005        ldc "Greetings from the mega-software"
• 182 000 004    invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
.line 9
• 000          nop
• 000          nop
• 000          nop
• 177          .line 10
• 177          return
• ; =====

```

Figure 4.3: IDA

0 is the opcode for **NOP**.

Now that works!

Second example

Another simple crackme example:

```

public class password
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Please enter the password");
        String input = System.console().readLine();
        if (input.equals("secret"))
            System.out.println("password is correct");
        else
            System.out.println("password is not correct");
    }
}

```

Let's load it in IDA:

```

; Segment type: Pure code
.method public static main([Ljava/lang/String;)V
.limit stack 2
.limit locals 2
.line 3
• 178 000 002      getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
• 018 003          ldc "Please enter the password"
• 182 000 004      invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
.line 4
• 184 000 005      invokestatic java/lang/System.console()Ljava/io/Console;
• 182 000 006      invokevirtual java/io/Console.readLine()Ljava/lang/String;
• 076              astore_1 ; met002_slot001
.line 5
• 043              aload_1 ; met002_slot001
• 018 007          ldc "secret"
• 182 000 008      invokevirtual java/lang/String.equals(Ljava/lang/Object;)Z
• 153 000 014      ifeq met002_35
.line 6
• 178 000 002      getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
• 018 009          ldc "password is correct"
• 182 000 004      invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
• 167 000 011      goto met002_43
.line 8

met002_35:                                ; CODE XREF: main+21↑j
178 000 002      .stack use locals
                      locals Object java/lang/String
                      .end stack
                      getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
                      ldc "password is not correct"
                      invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
.line 9

```

Figure 4.4: IDA

We see here the `ifeq` instruction which does the job.

Its name stands for *if equal*, and this is misnomer, a better name would be `ifz` (*if zero*), i.e., if value at `TOS` is zero, then do the jump.

In our example, it jumps if the password is not correct (the `equals` method returns `False`, which is 0).

The very first idea is to patch this instruction.

There are two bytes in `ifeq` opcode, which encode the jump offset.

To make this instruction a NOP, we must set the 3rd byte to the value of 3 (because by adding 3 to the current address we will always jump to the next instruction, since the `ifeq` instruction's length is 3 bytes):

900

```
; Segment type: Pure code
.method public static main([Ljava/lang/String;)V
.limit stack 2
.limit locals 2
.line 3
• 178 000 002     getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
• 018 003         ldc "Please enter the password"
• 182 000 004     invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
.line 4
• 184 000 005     invokestatic java/lang/System.console()Ljava/io/Console;
• 182 000 006     invokevirtual java/io/Console.readLine()Ljava/lang/String;
• 076             astore_1 ; met002_slot001
.line 5
• 043             aload_1 ; met002_slot001
• 018 007         ldc "secret"
• 182 000 008     invokevirtual java/lang/String.equals(Ljava/lang/Object;)Z
• 153 000 003     ifeq met002_24
.line 6

met002_24:                                     ; CODE XREF: main+21↑j
• 178 000 002     getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
• 018 009         ldc "password is correct"
• 182 000 004     invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
• 167 000 011     goto met002_43
.line 8
178 000 002     .stack use locals
                  locals Object java/lang/String
                  .end stack
• 018 010         getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
• 018 011         ldc "password is not correct"
• 182 000 004     invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
.line 9
```

Figure 4.5: IDA

That doesn't work (JRE 1.7):

```
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.VerifyError: Expecting a stackmap
  ↳ frame at branch target 24
Exception Details:
  Location:
    password.main([Ljava/lang/String;)V @21: ifeq
  Reason:
    Expected stackmap frame at this location.
  Bytecode:
    0000000: b200 0212 03b6 0004 b800 05b6 0006 4c2b
    0000010: 1207 b600 0899 0003 b200 0212 09b6 0004
    0000020: a700 0bb2 0002 120a b600 04b1
  Stackmap Table:
    append_frame(@35, Object[#20])
    same_frame(@43)

    at java.lang.Class.getDeclaredMethods0(Native Method)
    at java.lang.Class.privateGetDeclaredMethods(Class.java:2615)
    at java.lang.Class.getMethod0(Class.java:2856)
    at java.lang.Class.getMethod(Class.java:1668)
    at sun.launcher.LauncherHelper.getMainMethod(LauncherHelper.java:2
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

↳ :494)
    at sun.launcher.LauncherHelper.checkAndLoadMain(LauncherHelper.java:494)
↳ :486)

```

But it must be mentioned that it worked in JRE 1.6.

We can also try to replace all 3 ifeq opcode bytes with zero bytes (**NOP**), and it still won't work.

Seems like there are more stack map checks in JRE 1.7.

OK, we'll replace the whole call to the equals method with the `iconst_1` instruction plus a pack of `NOPs`:

```

; Segment type: Pure code
.method public static main([Ljava/lang/String;)V
.limit stack 2
.limit locals 2
.line 3
• 178 000 002    getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
• 018 003        ldc "Please enter the password"
• 182 000 004    invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
.line 4
• 184 000 005    invokestatic java/lang/System.console()Ljava/io/Console;
• 182 000 006    invokevirtual java/io/Console.readLine()Ljava/lang/String;
• 076             astore_1 ; met002_slot001
.line 5
• 004             iconst_1
• 000             nop
• 153 000 014    ifeq met002_35
.line 6
• 178 000 002    getstatic java/lang/System.out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
• 018 009        ldc "password is correct"
• 182 000 004    invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream.println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
• 167 000 011    goto met002_43
.line 8

met002_35:                                ; CODE XREF: main+21↑j
178 000 002    .stack use locals
            locals Object java/lang/String
            .end stack

```

Figure 4.6: IDA

1 needs always to be in the **TOS** when the `ifeq` instruction is executed, so `ifeq` would never jump.

This works.

4.1.18 Summary

What is missing in Java in comparison to C/C++?

- Structures: use classes.
- Unions: use class hierarchies.
- Unsigned data types. By the way, this makes cryptographic algorithms somewhat harder to implement in Java.
- Function pointers.

Chapter 5

Finding important/interesting stuff in the code

Minimalism it is not a prominent feature of modern software.

But not because the programmers are writing a lot, but because a lot of libraries are commonly linked statically to executable files. If all external libraries were shifted into an external DLL files, the world would be different. (Another reason for C++ are the [STL](#) and other template libraries.)

Thus, it is very important to determine the origin of a function, if it is from standard library or well-known library (like [Boost](#)¹, [libpng](#)²), or if it is related to what we are trying to find in the code.

It is just absurd to rewrite all code in C/C++ to find what we're looking for.

One of the primary tasks of a reverse engineer is to find quickly the code he/she needs, and what is not that important.

The [IDA](#) disassembler allow us to search among text strings, byte sequences and constants. It is even possible to export the code to .lst or .asm text files and then use grep, awk, etc.

When you try to understand what some code is doing, this easily could be some open-source library like libpng. So when you see some constants or text strings which look familiar, it is always worth to *google* them. And if you find the opensource project where they are used, then it's enough just to compare the functions. It may solve some part of the problem.

For example, if a program uses XML files, the first step may be determining which XML library is used for processing, since the standard (or well-known) libraries are usually used instead of self-made one.

For example, the author of these lines once tried to understand how the compression/decompression of network packets works in SAP 6.0. It is a huge software, but

¹<http://www.boost.org/>

²<http://www.libpng.org/pub/png/libpng.html>

a detailed .PDB with debugging information is present, and that is convenient. He finally came to the idea that one of the functions, that was called *CsDecomprLZC*, was doing the decompression of network packets. Immediately he tried to google its name and he quickly found the function was used in MaxDB (it is an open-source SAP project)³.

<http://www.google.com/search?q=CsDecomprLZC>

Astoundingly, MaxDB and SAP 6.0 software shared likewise code for the compression/decompression of network packets.

5.1 Identification of executable files

5.1.1 Microsoft Visual C++

MSVC versions and DLLs that can be imported:

Marketing ver.	Internal ver.	CL.EXE ver.	DLLs imported	Release date
6	6.0	12.00	msvcrt.dll msvcp60.dll	June 1998
.NET (2002)	7.0	13.00	msvcr70.dll msvcp70.dll	February 13, 2002
.NET 2003	7.1	13.10	msvcr71.dll msvcp71.dll	April 24, 2003
2005	8.0	14.00	msvcr80.dll msvcp80.dll	November 7, 2005
2008	9.0	15.00	msvcr90.dll msvcp90.dll	November 19, 2007
2010	10.0	16.00	msvcr100.dll msvcp100.dll	April 12, 2010
2012	11.0	17.00	msvcr110.dll msvcp110.dll	September 12, 2012
2013	12.0	18.00	msvcr120.dll msvcp120.dll	October 17, 2013

msvcp*.dll has C++-related functions, so if it is imported, this is probably a C++ program.

Name mangling

The names usually start with the ? symbol.

You can read more about MSVC's [name mangling](#) here: [3.21.1 on page 698](#).

5.1.2 GCC

Aside from *NIX targets, GCC is also present in the win32 environment, in the form of Cygwin and MinGW.

³More about it in relevant section ([8.12.1 on page 1127](#))

Name mangling

Names usually start with the _Z symbols.

You can read more about GCC's name mangling here: [3.21.1 on page 698](#).

Cygwin

cygwin1.dll is often imported.

MinGW

msvcrt.dll may be imported.

5.1.3 Intel Fortran

libifcoremd.dll, libifportmd.dll and libiomp5md.dll (OpenMP support) may be imported.

libifcoremd.dll has a lot of functions prefixed with for_, which means *Fortran*.

5.1.4 Watcom, OpenWatcom

Name mangling

Names usually start with the W symbol.

For example, that is how the method named "method" of the class "class" that does not have any arguments and returns void is encoded:

```
W?method$_class$n__v
```

5.1.5 Borland

Here is an example of Borland Delphi's and C++Builder's name mangling:

```
@TApplication@IdleAction$qv
@TApplication@ProcessMDIAccels$qp6tagMSG
@TModule@$bctr$qpcpvt1
@TModule@$bdtr$qv
@TModule@ValidWindow$qp14TWindowsObject
@TrueColorTo8BitN$qpviiiiitliiiii
@TrueColorTo16BitN$qpviiiiitliiiii
@DIB24BitTo8BitBitmap$qpviiiiitliiiii
@TrueBitmap@$bctr$qpcl
@TrueBitmap@$bctr$qpvl
@TrueBitmap@$bctr$qiilll
```

The names always start with the @ symbol, then we have the class name came, method name, and encoded the types of the arguments of the method.

These names can be in the .exe imports, .dll exports, debug data, etc.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Borland Visual Component Libraries (VCL) are stored in .bpl files instead of .dll ones, for example, vcl50.dll, rtl60.dll.

Another DLL that might be imported: BORLNDMM.DLL.

Delphi

Almost all Delphi executables has the “Boolean” text string at the beginning of the code segment, along with other type names.

This is a very typical beginning of the CODE segment of a Delphi program, this block came right after the win32 PE file header:

04 10 40 00 03 07 42 6f 6f 6c 65 61 6e 01 00 00	..@...Boolean...
00 00 01 00 00 00 10 40 00 05 46 61 6c 73 65@..False
04 54 72 75 65 8d 40 00 2c 10 40 00 09 08 57 69	.True.@...@...Wi
64 65 43 68 61 72 03 00 00 00 00 ff ff 00 00 90	deChar.....
44 10 40 00 02 04 43 68 61 72 01 00 00 00 00 ff	D.@...Char.....
00 00 00 90 58 10 40 00 01 08 53 6d 61 6c 6c 69X.@...Smalli
6e 74 02 00 80 ff ff ff 7f 00 00 90 70 10 40 00	nt.....p.@.
01 07 49 6e 74 65 67 65 72 04 00 00 00 80 ff ff	..Integer.....
ff 7f 8b c0 88 10 40 00 01 04 42 79 74 65 01 00@...Byte..
00 00 00 ff 00 00 00 90 9c 10 40 00 01 04 57 6f@...Wo
72 64 03 00 00 00 00 ff ff 00 00 90 b0 10 40 00	rd.....@.
01 08 43 61 72 64 69 6e 61 6c 05 00 00 00 00 ff	..Cardinal.....
ff ff ff 90 c8 10 40 00 10 05 49 6e 74 36 34 00@...Int64.
00 00 00 00 00 80 ff ff ff ff ff ff 7f 90
e4 10 40 00 04 08 45 78 74 65 6e 64 65 64 02 90	..@...Extended..
f4 10 40 00 04 06 44 6f 75 62 6c 65 01 8d 40 00	..@...Double..@.
04 11 40 00 04 08 43 75 72 72 65 6e 63 79 04 90	..@...Currency..
14 11 40 00 0a 06 73 74 72 69 6e 67 20 11 40 00	..@...string ..@.
0b 0a 57 69 64 65 53 74 72 69 6e 67 30 11 40 00	..WideString@..@.
0c 07 56 61 72 69 61 6e 74 8d 40 00 40 11 40 00	..Variant.@..@.
0c 0a 4f 6c 65 56 61 72 69 61 6e 74 98 11 40 00	..OleVariant..@.
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 98 11 40 00@.
04 00 00 00 00 00 00 18 4d 40 00 24 4d 40 00M@.\$M@.
28 4d 40 00 2c 4d 40 00 20 4d 40 00 68 4a 40 00	(M@.,M@. M@.hJ@.
84 4a 40 00 c0 4a 40 00 07 54 4f 62 6a 65 63 74	.J@..J@..TObject
a4 11 40 00 07 07 54 4f 62 6a 65 63 74 98 11 40	..@..TObject..@
00 00 00 00 00 00 06 53 79 73 74 65 6d 00 00System..
c4 11 40 00 0f 0a 49 49 6e 74 65 72 66 61 63 65	..@...IInterface
00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 c0 00 00
00 00 00 00 46 06 53 79 73 74 65 6d 03 00 ff ffF.System....
f4 11 40 00 0f 09 49 44 69 73 70 61 74 63 68 c0	..@...IDispatch.
11 40 00 01 00 04 02 00 00 00 00 c0 00 00 00	..@.....
00 00 00 46 06 53 79 73 74 65 6d 04 00 ff ff 90F.System....
cc 83 44 24 04 f8 e9 51 6c 00 00 83 44 24 04 f8	..D\$...Ql...D\$..
e9 6f 6c 00 00 83 44 24 04 f8 e9 79 6c 00 00 cc	.ol...D\$...yl...
cc 21 12 40 00 2b 12 40 00 35 12 40 00 01 00 00	..!.@.+.@.5.@...
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 c0 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
46 41 12 40 00 08 00 00 00 00 00 00 8d 40 00	FA.@.....@.
bc 12 40 00 4d 12 40 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	..@.M.@.....
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

bc 12 40 00 0c 00 00 00 4c 11 40 00 18 4d 40 00	..@.....L.@..M@.
50 7e 40 00 5c 7e 40 00 2c 4d 40 00 20 4d 40 00	P~@.\~@.,M@. M@.
6c 7e 40 00 84 4a 40 00 c0 4a 40 00 11 54 49 6e	l~@..J@..J@..TIn
74 65 72 66 61 63 65 64 4f 62 6a 65 63 74 8b c0	terfacedObject..
d4 12 40 00 07 11 54 49 6e 74 65 72 66 61 63 65	..@...TInterface
64 4f 62 6a 65 63 74 bc 12 40 00 a0 11 40 00 00	dObject..@...@..
00 06 53 79 73 74 65 6d 00 00 8b c0 00 13 40 00	..System.....@.
11 0b 54 42 6f 75 6e 64 41 72 72 61 79 04 00 00	..TBoundArray....
00 00 00 00 03 00 00 00 6c 10 40 00 06 53 79l.@..Sy
73 74 65 6d 28 13 40 00 04 09 54 44 61 74 65 54	stem(.@...TDateT
69 6d 65 01 ff 25 48 e0 c4 00 8b c0 ff 25 44 e0	ime..%H.....%D.

The first 4 bytes of the data segment (DATA) can be 00 00 00 00, 32 13 8B C0 or FF FF FF FF.

This information can be useful when dealing with packed/encrypted Delphi executables.

5.1.6 Other known DLLs

- vcomp*.dll—Microsoft’s implementation of OpenMP.

5.2 Communication with outer world (function level)

It’s often advisable to track function arguments and return values in debugger or DBI. For example, the author once tried to understand meaning of some obscure function, which happens to be incorrectly implemented bubble sort⁴. (It worked correctly, but slower.) Meanwhile, watching inputs and outputs of this function helps instantly to understand what it does.

Often, when you see division by multiplication ([3.12 on page 636](#)), but forgot all details about its mechanics, you can just observe input and output and quickly find divisor.

5.3 Communication with the outer world (win32)

Sometimes it’s enough to observe some function’s inputs and outputs in order to understand what it does. That way you can save time.

Files and registry access: for the very basic analysis, Process Monitor⁵ utility from SysInternals can help.

For the basic analysis of network accesses, Wireshark⁶ can be useful.

But then you will have to look inside anyway.

⁴https://yurichev.com/blog/weird_sort_KLEE/

⁵<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/sysinternals/bb896645.aspx>

⁶<http://www.wireshark.org/>

The first thing to look for is which functions from the OS's APIs and standard libraries are used.

If the program is divided into a main executable file and a group of DLL files, sometimes the names of the functions in these DLLs can help.

If we are interested in exactly what can lead to a call to `MessageBox()` with specific text, we can try to find this text in the data segment, find the references to it and find the points from which the control may be passed to the `MessageBox()` call we're interested in.

If we are talking about a video game and we're interested in which events are more or less random in it, we may try to find the `rand()` function or its replacements (like the Mersenne twister algorithm) and find the places from which those functions are called, and more importantly, how are the results used. One example: [8.3 on page 1033](#).

But if it is not a game, and `rand()` is still used, it is also interesting to know why. There are cases of unexpected `rand()` usage in data compression algorithms (for encryption imitation): blog.yurichev.com.

5.3.1 Often used functions in the Windows API

These functions may be among the imported. It is worth to note that not every function might be used in the code that was written by the programmer. A lot of functions might be called from library functions and [CRT](#) code.

Some functions may have the `-A` suffix for the ASCII version and `-W` for the Unicode version.

- Registry access (`advapi32.dll`): `RegEnumKeyEx`, `RegEnumValue`, `RegGetValue`, `RegOpenKeyEx`, `RegQueryValueEx`.
- Access to text .ini-files (`kernel32.dll`): `GetPrivateProfileString`.
- Dialog boxes (`user32.dll`): `MessageBox`, `MessageBoxEx`, `CreateDialog`, `SetDlgItemText`, `GetDlgItemText`.
- Resources access ([6.5.2 on page 986](#)): (`user32.dll`): `LoadMenu`.
- TCP/IP networking (`ws2_32.dll`): `WSARecv`, `WSASend`.
- File access (`kernel32.dll`): `CreateFile`, `ReadFile`, `ReadFileEx`, `WriteFile`, `WriteFileEx`.
- High-level access to the Internet (`wininet.dll`): `WinHttpOpen`.
- Checking the digital signature of an executable file (`wintrust.dll`): `WinVerifyTrust`.
- The standard MSVC library (if it's linked dynamically) (`msvcr*.dll`): `assert`, `itoa`, `Itoa`, `open`, `printf`, `read`, `strcmp`, `atol`, `atoi`, `fopen`, `fread`, `fwrite`, `memcmp`, `rand`, `strlen`, `strchr`, `strchr`.

5.3.2 Extending trial period

Registry access functions are frequent targets for those who try to crack trial period of some software, which may save installation date/time into registry.

Another popular target are GetLocalTime() and GetSystemTime() functions: a trial software, at each startup, must check current date/time somehow anyway.

5.3.3 Removing nag dialog box

A popular way to find out what causing popping nag dialog box is intercepting MessageBox(), CreateDialog() and CreateWindow() functions.

5.3.4 tracer: Intercepting all functions in specific module

There are INT3 breakpoints in the [tracer](#), that are triggered only once, however, they can be set for all functions in a specific DLL.

```
--one-time-INT3-bp:somedll.dll!.*
```

Or, let's set INT3 breakpoints on all functions with the `xml` prefix in their name:

```
--one-time-INT3-bp:somedll.dll!xml.*
```

On the other side of the coin, such breakpoints are triggered only once. Tracer will show the call of a function, if it happens, but only once. Another drawback—it is impossible to see the function's arguments.

Nevertheless, this feature is very useful when you know that the program uses a DLL, but you do not know which functions are actually used. And there are a lot of functions.

For example, let's see, what does the `uptime` utility from cygwin use:

```
tracer -l:uptime.exe --one-time-INT3-bp:cygwin1.dll!.*
```

Thus we may see all that `cygwin1.dll` library functions that were called at least once, and where from:

```
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!__main (called from uptime.exe!0EP+0x6d (0x40106d))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_geteuid32 (called from uptime.exe!0EP+0xba3 (0x401ba3))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_getuid32 (called from uptime.exe!0EP+0xbba (0x401baa))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_getegid32 (called from uptime.exe!0EP+0xcb7 (0x401cb7))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_getgid32 (called from uptime.exe!0EP+0xcbe (0x401cbe))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!sysconf (called from uptime.exe!0EP+0x735 (0x401735))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!setlocale (called from uptime.exe!0EP+0x7b2 (0x4017b2))
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_open64 (called from uptime.exe!0EP+0x
    ↴ x994 (0x401994))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!_lseek64 (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ +0x7ea (0x4017ea))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!read (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ x809 (0x401809))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!sscanf (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ x839 (0x401839))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!uname (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ x139 (0x401139))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!time (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ x22e (0x40122e))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!localtime (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ +0x236 (0x401236))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!sprintf (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ x25a (0x40125a))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!setutent (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ +0x3b1 (0x4013b1))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!getutent (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ +0x3c5 (0x4013c5))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!endutent (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ +0x3e6 (0x4013e6))
One-time INT3 breakpoint: cygwin1.dll!puts (called from uptime.exe!0EP+
    ↴ x4c3 (0x4014c3))

```

5.4 Strings

5.4.1 Text strings

C/C++

The normal C strings are zero-terminated ([ASCIIZ](#)-strings).

The reason why the C string format is as it is (zero-terminated) is apparently historical. In [Dennis M. Ritchie, *The Evolution of the Unix Time-sharing System*, (1979)] we read:

A minor difference was that the unit of I/O was the word, not the byte, because the PDP-7 was a word-addressed machine. In practice this meant merely that all programs dealing with character streams ignored null characters, because null was used to pad a file to an even number of characters.

In Hiew or FAR Manager these strings look like this:

```

int main()
{
    printf ("Hello, world!\n");
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

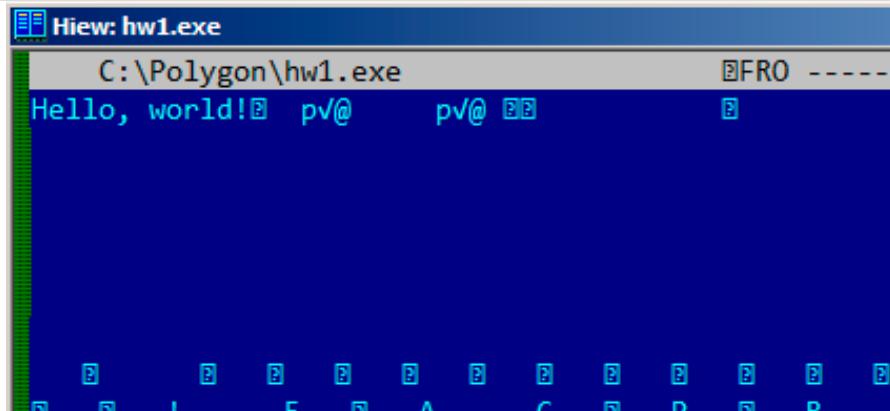


Figure 5.1: Hiew

Borland Delphi

The string in Pascal and Borland Delphi is preceded by an 8-bit or 32-bit string length. For example:

Listing 5.1: Delphi

```

CODE:00518AC8          dd 19h
CODE:00518ACC aLoading__Plea db 'Loading... , please wait.',0
...
CODE:00518AFC          dd 10h
CODE:00518B00 aPreparingRun__ db 'Preparing run... ',0

```

Unicode

Often, what is called Unicode is a methods for encoding strings where each character occupies 2 bytes or 16 bits. This is a common terminological mistake. Unicode is a standard for assigning a number to each character in the many writing systems of the world, but does not describe the encoding method.

The most popular encoding methods are: UTF-8 (is widespread in Internet and *NIX systems) and UTF-16LE (is used in Windows).

UTF-8

UTF-8 is one of the most successful methods for encoding characters. All Latin symbols are encoded just like in ASCII, and the symbols beyond the ASCII table are encoded using several bytes. 0 is encoded as before, so all standard C string functions work with UTF-8 strings just like any other string.

Let's see how the symbols in various languages are encoded in UTF-8 and how it looks like in FAR, using the 437 codepage⁷:

How much? 100€?

(English) I can eat glass and it doesn't hurt me.
 (Greek) Μπορώ να φάω σπασμένα γυαλιά χωρίς να πάθω τίποτα.
 (Hungarian) Meg tudom enni az üveget, nem lesz tőle bajom.
 (Icelandic) Ég get etið gler án þess að meiða mig.
 (Polish) Mogę jeść szkło i mi nie szkodzi.
 (Russian) Я могу есть стекло, оно мне не вредит.
 (Arabic): أَنَا قَادِرٌ عَلَى أَكْل الزَّجاج وَهَذَا لَا يُؤْمِنُ.
 (Hebrew): אָנוּ יוּכְלָה לְאַכְלָה זֶבֶחַ וְזֹה לֹא מִזְרָחֵן.
 (Chinese) 我能吞下玻璃而不伤身体。
 (Japanese) 私はガラスを食べられます。それは私を傷つけません。
 (Hindi) मैं काँच खा सकता हूँ और मुझे उससे कोई घोट नहीं पहुंचती.

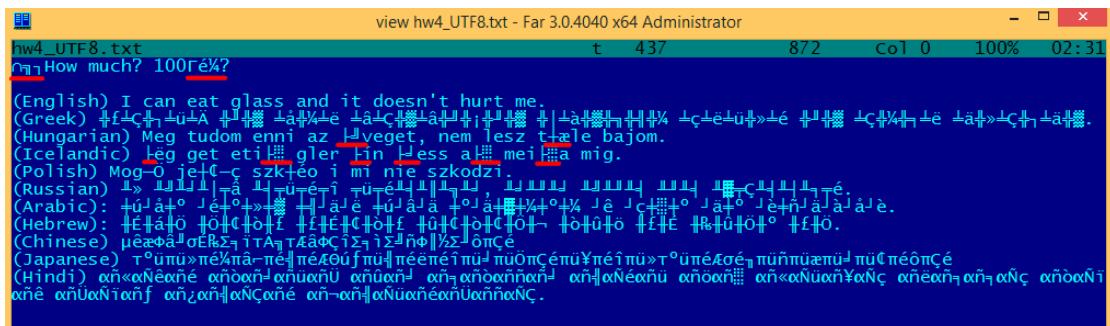


Figure 5.2: FAR: UTF-8

As you can see, the English language string looks the same as it is in ASCII.

The Hungarian language uses some Latin symbols plus symbols with diacritic marks.

These symbols are encoded using several bytes, these are underscored with red. It's the same story with the Icelandic and Polish languages.

There is also the “Euro” currency symbol at the start, which is encoded with 3 bytes.

The rest of the writing systems here have no connection with Latin.

At least in Russian, Arabic, Hebrew and Hindi we can see some recurring bytes, and that is not surprise: all symbols from a writing system are usually located in the same Unicode table, so their code begins with the same numbers.

At the beginning, before the “How much?” string we see 3 bytes, which are in fact the **BOM**⁸. The **BOM** defines the encoding system to be used.

⁷The example and translations was taken from here: <http://www.columbia.edu/~fdc/utf8/>

⁸Byte Order Mark

UTF-16LE

Many win32 functions in Windows have the suffixes -A and -W. The first type of functions works with normal strings, the other with UTF-16LE strings (*wide*).

In the second case, each symbol is usually stored in a 16-bit value of type *short*.

The Latin symbols in UTF-16 strings look in Hiew or FAR like they are interleaved with zero byte:

```
int wmain()
{
    wprintf (L"Hello, world!\n");
}
```

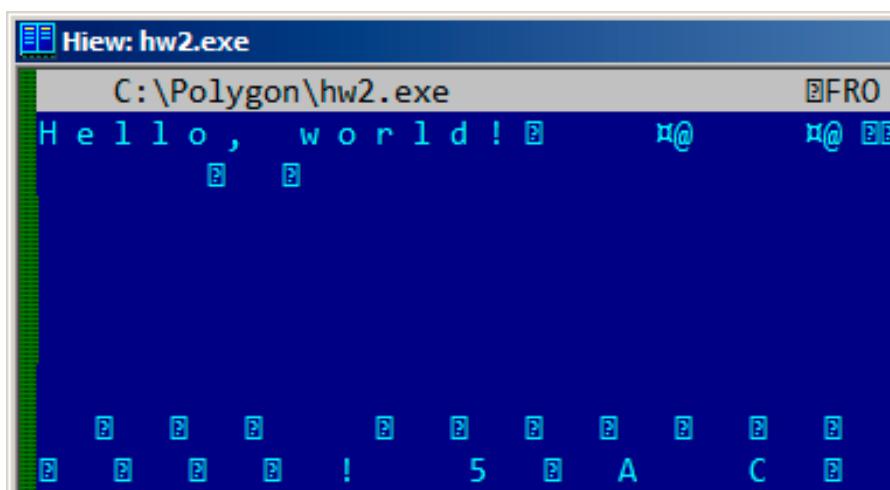


Figure 5.3: Hiew

We can see this often in Windows NT system files:

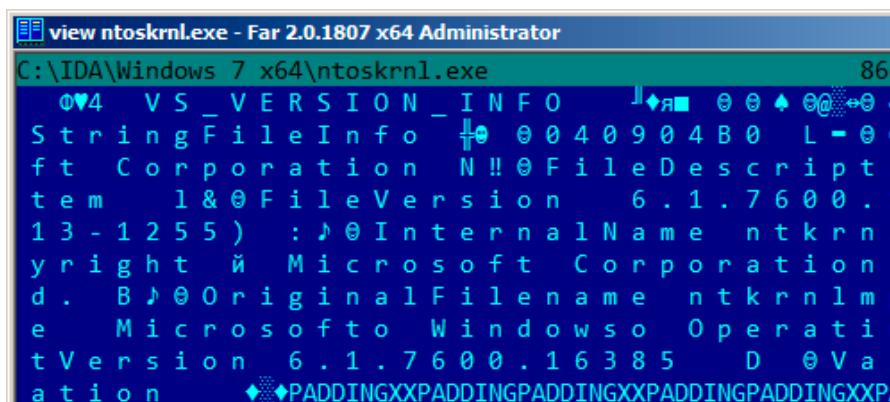


Figure 5.4: Hiew

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Strings with characters that occupy exactly 2 bytes are called “Unicode” in [IDA](#):

```
.data:0040E000 aHelloWorld:  
.data:0040E000          unicode 0, <Hello, world!>  
.data:0040E000          dw 0Ah, 0
```

Here is how the Russian language string is encoded in UTF-16LE:

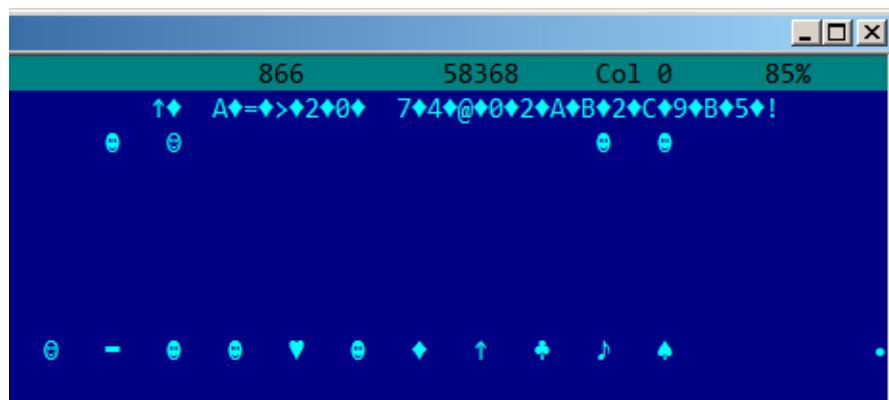


Figure 5.5: Hiew: UTF-16LE

What we can easily spot is that the symbols are interleaved by the diamond character (which has the ASCII code of 4). Indeed, the Cyrillic symbols are located in the fourth Unicode plane. Hence, all Cyrillic symbols in UTF-16LE are located in the 0x400-0x4FF range.

Let's go back to the example with the string written in multiple languages. Here is how it looks like in UTF-16LE.

```
hw4_UTF16le.txt      view hw4_UTF16le.txt - Far 3.0.4040 x64 Administrator      - □ ×  
■ How much? 1 0 0 %?  
  
(English) I can eat glass and it doesn't hurt me.  
(Greek) Ελέγχω το γυαλί με τη γλώσσα μου και δεν παίρνει ούτε ένα πόνο.  
(Hungarian) Meg tudom enni az nveget, nem lesz tqelé bajom.  
(Icelandic) Eg get eti is gler Bn uss ais mei is a mig.  
(Polish) Mogę je [eœ s z k B e o i mi nie s z k o d z i .  
(Russian) /♦ <♦>♦3♦C♦ 5♦A♦B♦L♦ A♦B♦5♦:♦;♦>♦, >♦=&gt;♦ <♦=&gt;♦ =♦5♦ =♦5♦ 2♦@5♦4♦8♦B♦.  
(Arabic) : #ؑFؑ'ؑ Bؑ'ؑ#ؑ 9ؑDؑIؑ #ؑCؑDؑ 'ؑDؑ2ؑ,ؑ'ؑ,ؑ Hؑ Gؑ0ؑ'ؑ Dؑ'ؑ Jؑ$ؑDؑEؑFؑJؑ.  
  
(Hebrew) : יְהִי־תְּהִלָּה תְּהִלָּה תְּהִלָּה תְּהִלָּה תְּהִלָּה  
(Chinese) 中国汉字  
NS0%AS0@0  
(Japanese) ジャパン語  
(Hindi) . H § > 0 > A - G 8 §  
$ 8 * 9 G § → $ @ . 9 @ §  
8 * 9 A § → $ @ . 9 @ §
```

Figure 5.6: FAR: UTF-16LE

Here we can also see the **BOM** at the beginning. All Latin characters are interleaved with a zero byte.

Some characters with diacritic marks (Hungarian and Icelandic languages) are also underscored in red.

Base64

The base64 encoding is highly popular for the cases when you have to transfer binary data as a text string.

In essence, this algorithm encodes 3 binary bytes into 4 printable characters: all 26 Latin letters (both lower and upper case), digits, plus sign ("+") and slash sign ("/"), 64 characters in total.

One distinctive feature of base64 strings is that they often (but not always) end with 1 or 2 [padding](#) equality symbol(s) ("="), for example:

AVjbbVSVfcUMu1xvjaMgjNtueRwBbxnyJw8dpGnLW8ZW8aKG3v4Y0icuQT+qEJAp9lA0uWs=

WVjbbVSVfcUMu1xvjaMgjNtueRwBbxnyJw8dpGnLW8ZW8aKG3v4Y0icuQT+qEJAp9lA0uQ==

The equality sign ("=") is never encountered in the middle of base64-encoded strings.
Now example of manual encoding. Let's encode 0x00, 0x11, 0x22, 0x33 hexadecimal bytes into base64 string:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
hook@beginners-re.com. Thanks!

```
$ echo -n "\x00\x11\x22\x33" | base64
ABEiMw==
```

Let's put all 4 bytes in binary form, then regroup them into 6-bit groups:

00 11 22 33			
0000000000100010010001000110011?????????????????			
A B E i M w	=	=	=

Three first bytes (0x00, 0x11, 0x22) can be encoded into 4 base64 characters ("ABEi"), but the last one (0x33) — cannot be, so it's encoded using two characters ("Mw") and **padding** symbol ("=") is added twice to pad the last group to 4 characters. Hence, length of all correct base64 strings are always divisible by 4.

Base64 is often used when binary data needs to be stored in XML. "Armored" (i.e., in text form) PGP keys and signatures are encoded using base64.

Some people tries to use base64 to obfuscate strings: <http://blog.sec-consult.com/2016/01/deliberately-hidden-backdoor-account-in.html>⁹.

There are utilities for scanning an arbitrary binary files for base64 strings. One such utility is [base64scanner](#)¹⁰.

Another encoding system which was much more popular in UseNet and FidoNet is Uuencoding. Binary files are still encoded in Uuencode format in Phrack magazine. It offers mostly the same features, but is different from base64 in the sense that file name is also stored in header.

By the way: there is also close sibling to base64: base32, alphabet of which has 10 digits and 26 Latin characters. One well-known usage of it is onion addresses ¹¹, like:

<http://3g2upl4pq6kufc4m.onion/>. URL can't have mixed-case Latin characters, so apparently, this is why Tor developers used base32.

5.4.2 Finding strings in binary

Actually, the best form of Unix documentation is frequently running the **strings** command over a program's object code. Using **strings**, you can get a complete list of the program's hard-coded file name, environment variables, undocumented options, obscure error messages, and so forth.

The Unix-Haters Handbook

The standard UNIX *strings* utility is quick-n-dirty way to see strings in file. For example, these are some strings from OpenSSH 7.2 sshd executable file:

⁹<http://archive.is/nDCas>

¹⁰<https://github.com/DennisYurichev/base64scanner>

¹¹<https://trac.torproject.org/projects/tor/wiki/doc/HiddenServiceNames>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

...
0123
0123456789
0123456789abcdefABCDEF.:/
%02x
...
%.100s, line %lu: Bad permitopen specification <%.100s>
%.100s, line %lu: invalid criteria
%.100s, line %lu: invalid tun device
...
%.200s/.ssh/environment
...
2886173b9c9b6fdbdeda7a247cd636db38deaa.debug
$2a$06$r3.juUahZDlIbQa02dS9FuYxL1W9M81R1Tc92PoSNmzvpEqLkLGtK
...
3des-cbc
...
Bind to port %s on %s.
Bind to port %s on %s failed: %.200s.
/bin/login
/bin/sh
/bin/sh /etc/ssh/sshrc
...
D$4PQWR1
D$4PUj
D$4PV
D$4PVj
D$4PW
D$4PWj
D$4X
D$4XZj
D$4Y
...
diffie-hellman-group-exchange-sha1
diffie-hellman-group-exchange-sha256
digests
D$iPV
direct-streamlocal
direct-streamlocal@openssh.com
...
FFFFFFFFFFFFFC90FDAA22168C234C4C6628B80DC1CD129024E088A6...
...

```

There are options, error messages, file paths, imported dynamic modules and functions, some other strange strings (keys?) There is also unreadable noise—x86 code sometimes has chunks consisting of printable ASCII characters, up to 8 characters.

Of course, OpenSSH is open-source program. But looking at readable strings inside of some unknown binary is often a first step of analysis.

grep can be applied as well.

Hiew has the same capability (Alt-F6), as well as Sysinternals ProcessMonitor.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

5.4.3 Error/debug messages

Debugging messages are very helpful if present. In some sense, the debugging messages are reporting what's going on in the program right now. Often these are `printf()`-like functions, which write to log-files, or sometimes do not writing anything but the calls are still present since the build is not a debug one but *release* one.

If local or global variables are dumped in debug messages, it might be helpful as well since it is possible to get at least the variable names. For example, one of such function in Oracle RDBMS is `ksdwrt()`.

Meaningful text strings are often helpful. The [IDA](#) disassembler may show from which function and from which point this specific string is used. Funny cases sometimes happen^{[12](#)}.

The error messages may help us as well. In Oracle RDBMS, errors are reported using a group of functions.

You can read more about them here: blog.yurichev.com.

It is possible to find quickly which functions report errors and in which conditions.

By the way, this is often the reason why copy-protection systems use inarticulate cryptic error messages or just error numbers. No software author is happy if the software cracker can quickly understands copy-protection's inner workings judging by error messages it can produce.

One example of encrypted error messages is here: [8.8.2 on page 1080](#).

5.4.4 Suspicious magic strings

Some magic strings which are usually used in backdoors look pretty suspicious.

For example, there was a backdoor in the TP-Link WR740 home router^{[13](#)}. The backdoor can activated using the following URL:

http://192.168.0.1/userRpmNatDebugRpm26525557/start_art.html.

Indeed, the “userRpmNatDebugRpm26525557” string is present in the firmware.

This string was not googleable until the wide disclosure of information about the backdoor.

You would not find this in any [RFC](#)^{[14](#)}.

You would not find any computer science algorithm which uses such strange byte sequences.

And it doesn't look like an error or debugging message.

¹²blog.yurichev.com

¹³<http://sekurak.pl/tp-link-httptftp-backdoor/>

¹⁴Request for Comments

So it's a good idea to inspect the usage of such weird strings.

Sometimes, such strings are encoded using base64.

So it's a good idea to decode them all and to scan them visually, even a glance should be enough.

More precise, this method of hiding backdoors is called “security through obscurity”.

5.5 Calls to assert()

Sometimes the presence of the assert() macro is useful too: commonly this macro leaves source file name, line number and condition in the code.

The most useful information is contained in the assert's condition, we can deduce variable names or structure field names from it. Another useful piece of information are the file names—we can try to deduce what type of code is there. Also it is possible to recognize well-known open-source libraries by the file names.

Listing 5.2: Example of informative assert() calls

```
.text:107D4B29 mov dx, [ecx+42h]
.text:107D4B2D cmp edx, 1
.text:107D4B30 jz short loc_107D4B4A
.text:107D4B32 push 1ECh
.text:107D4B37 push offset aWrite_c ; "write.c"
.text:107D4B3C push offset aTdTd_planarcon ;
    "td->td_planarconfig == PLANARCONFIG_CON"...
.text:107D4B41 call ds:_assert

...
.text:107D52CA mov edx, [ebp-4]
.text:107D52CD and edx, 3
.text:107D52D0 test edx, edx
.text:107D52D2 jz short loc_107D52E9
.text:107D52D4 push 58h
.text:107D52D6 push offset aDumpmode_c ; "dumpmode.c"
.text:107D52DB push offset aN30      ; "(n & 3) == 0"
.text:107D52E0 call ds:_assert

...
.text:107D6759 mov cx, [eax+6]
.text:107D675D cmp ecx, 0Ch
.text:107D6760 jle short loc_107D677A
.text:107D6762 push 2D8h
.text:107D6767 push offset aLzw_c ; "lzw.c"
.text:107D676C push offset aSpLzw_nbitsBit ; "sp->lzw_nbits <= BITS_MAX"
.text:107D6771 call ds:_assert
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

It is advisable to “google” both the conditions and file names, which can lead us to an open-source library. For example, if we “google” “sp->lzw_nbits <= BITS_MAX”, this predictably gives us some open-source code that’s related to the LZW compression.

5.6 Constants

Humans, including programmers, often use round numbers like 10, 100, 1000, in real life as well as in the code.

The practicing reverse engineer usually know them well in hexadecimal representation: 10=0xA, 100=0x64, 1000=0x3E8, 10000=0x2710.

The constants 0xAAAAAAA (0b101) and 0x55555555 (0b01) are also popular—those are composed of alternating bits.

That may help to distinguish some signal from a signal where all bits are turned on (0b1111 ...) or off (0b0000 ...). For example, the 0x55AA constant is used at least in the boot sector, [MBR¹⁵](#), and in the [ROM](#) of IBM-compatible extension cards.

Some algorithms, especially cryptographical ones use distinct constants, which are easy to find in code using [IDA](#).

For example, the MD5 algorithm initializes its own internal variables like this:

```
var int h0 := 0x67452301
var int h1 := 0xEFCDAB89
var int h2 := 0x98BADCFE
var int h3 := 0x10325476
```

If you find these four constants used in the code in a row, it is highly probable that this function is related to MD5.

Another example are the CRC16/CRC32 algorithms, whose calculation algorithms often use precomputed tables like this one:

Listing 5.3: linux/lib/crc16.c

```
/** CRC table for the CRC-16. The poly is 0x8005 (x^16 + x^15 + x^2 + 1) */
u16 const crc16_table[256] = {
    0x0000, 0xC0C1, 0xC181, 0x0140, 0xC301, 0x03C0, 0x0280, 0xC241,
    0xC601, 0x06C0, 0x0780, 0xC741, 0x0500, 0xC5C1, 0xC481, 0x0440,
    0xCC01, 0x0CC0, 0xD800, 0xCD41, 0xF000, 0xCFC1, 0xCE81, 0xE400,
    ...
```

See also the precomputed table for CRC32: [3.8 on page 616](#).

In tableless CRC algorithms well-known polynomials are used, for example, 0xEDB88320 for CRC32.

¹⁵Master Boot Record

5.6.1 Magic numbers

A lot of file formats define a standard file header where a *magic number(s)* is used, single one or even several.

For example, all Win32 and MS-DOS executables start with the two characters “MZ”.

At the beginning of a MIDI file the “MThd” signature must be present. If we have a program which uses MIDI files for something, it’s very likely that it must check the file for validity by checking at least the first 4 bytes.

This could be done like this: (*buf* points to the beginning of the loaded file in memory)

```
cmp [buf], 0x6468544D ; "MThd"
jnz _error_not_a_MIDI_file
```

...or by calling a function for comparing memory blocks like `memcmp()` or any other equivalent code up to a `CMPSB` ([.1.6 on page 1324](#)) instruction.

When you find such point you already can say where the loading of the MIDI file starts, also, we could see the location of the buffer with the contents of the MIDI file, what is used from the buffer, and how.

Dates

Often, one may encounter number like `0x19870116`, which is clearly looks like a date (year 1987, 1th month (January), 16th day). This may be someone’s birthday date (a programmer, his/her relative, child), or some other important date. The date may also be written in a reverse order, like `0x16011987`. American-style dates are also popular, like `0x01161987`.

Well-known example is `0x19540119` (magic number used in UFS2 superblock structure), which is a birthday date of Marshall Kirk McKusick, prominent FreeBSD contributor.

Stuxnet uses the number “19790509” (not as 32-bit number, but as string, though), and this led to speculation that the malware is connected to Israel^{[16](#)}.

Also, numbers like those are very popular in amateur-grade cryptography, for example, excerpt from the *secret function* internals from HASP3 dongle^{[17](#)}:

```
void xor_pwd(void)
{
    int i;

    pwd^=0x09071966;
    for(i=0;i<8;i++)
    {
        al_buf[i]= pwd & 7; pwd = pwd >> 3;
    }
};
```

¹⁶This is a date of execution of Habib Elghanian, persian jew.

¹⁷<https://web.archive.org/web/20160311231616/http://www.woodmann.com/fravia/bayu3.htm>

```

void emulate_func2(unsigned short seed)
{
    int i, j;
    for(i=0;i<8;i++)
    {
        ch[i] = 0;

        for(j=0;j<8;j++)
        {
            seed *= 0x1989;
            seed += 5;
            ch[i] |= (tab[(seed>>9)&0x3f]) << (7-j);
        }
    }
}

```

DHCP

This applies to network protocols as well. For example, the DHCP protocol's network packets contains the so-called *magic cookie*: 0x63538263. Any code that generates DHCP packets somewhere must embed this constant into the packet. If we find it in the code we may find where this happens and, not only that. Any program which can receive DHCP packet must verify the *magic cookie*, comparing it with the constant.

For example, let's take the `dhcpcore.dll` file from Windows 7 x64 and search for the constant. And we can find it, twice: it seems that the constant is used in two functions with descriptive names

`DhcpExtractOptionsForValidation()` and `DhcpExtractFullOptions()`:

Listing 5.4: `dhcpcore.dll` (Windows 7 x64)

<code>.rdata:000007FF6483CBE8 dword_7FF6483CBE8 dd 63538263h</code>	<code>; DATA XREF:</code>
<code>DhcpExtractOptionsForValidation+79</code>	
<code>.rdata:000007FF6483CBEC dword_7FF6483CBEC dd 63538263h</code>	<code>; DATA XREF:</code>
<code>DhcpExtractFullOptions+97</code>	

And here are the places where these constants are accessed:

Listing 5.5: `dhcpcore.dll` (Windows 7 x64)

<code>.text:000007FF6480875F mov eax, [rsi]</code>
<code>.text:000007FF64808761 cmp eax, cs:dword_7FF6483CBE8</code>
<code>.text:000007FF64808767 jnz loc_7FF64817179</code>

And:

Listing 5.6: `dhcpcore.dll` (Windows 7 x64)

<code>.text:000007FF648082C7 mov eax, [r12]</code>
<code>.text:000007FF648082CB cmp eax, cs:dword_7FF6483CBEC</code>
<code>.text:000007FF648082D1 jnz loc_7FF648173AF</code>

5.6.2 Specific constants

Sometimes, there is a specific constant for some type of code. For example, the author once dug into a code, where number 12 was encountered suspiciously often. Size of many arrays is 12, or multiple of 12 (24, etc). As it turned out, that code takes 12-channel audio file at input and process it.

And vice versa: for example, if a program works with text field which has length of 120 bytes, there has to be a constant 120 or 119 somewhere in the code. If UTF-16 is used, then 2·120. If a code works with network packets of fixed size, it's good idea to search for this constant in the code as well.

This is also true for amateur cryptography (license keys, etc). If encrypted block has size of n bytes, you may want to try to find occurrences of this number throughout the code. Also, if you see a piece of code which is been repeated n times in loop during execution, this may be encryption/decryption routine.

5.6.3 Searching for constants

It is easy in [IDA](#): Alt-B or Alt-I. And for searching for a constant in a big pile of files, or for searching in non-executable files, there is a small utility called *binary grep*¹⁸.

5.7 Finding the right instructions

If the program is utilizing FPU instructions and there are very few of them in the code, one can try to check each one manually with a debugger.

For example, we may be interested how Microsoft Excel calculates the formulae entered by user. For example, the division operation.

If we load excel.exe (from Office 2010) version 14.0.4756.1000 into [IDA](#), make a full listing and to find every FDIV instruction (except the ones which use constants as a second operand—obviously, they do not suit us):

```
cat EXCEL.lst | grep fdiv | grep -v dbl_ > EXCEL.fdiv
```

...then we see that there are 144 of them.

We can enter a string like =(1/3) in Excel and check each instruction.

By checking each instruction in a debugger or [tracer](#) (one may check 4 instruction at a time), we get lucky and the sought-for instruction is just the 14th:

```
.text:3011E919 DC 33          fdiv    qword ptr [ebx]
```

```
PID=13944|TID=28744|(0) 0x2f64e919 (Excel.exe!BASE+0x11e919)
EAX=0x02088006 EBX=0x02088018 ECX=0x00000001 EDX=0x00000001
ESI=0x02088000 EDI=0x00544804 EBP=0x0274FA3C ESP=0x0274F9F8
EIP=0x2F64E919
FLAGS=PF IF
```

¹⁸[GitHub](#)

```
FPU ControlWord=IC RC=NEAR PC=64bits PM UM OM ZM DM IM
FPU StatusWord=
FPU ST(0): 1.000000
```

ST(0) holds the first argument (1) and second one is in [EBX].

The instruction after FDIV (FSTP) writes the result in memory:

```
.text:3011E91B DD 1E          fstp    qword ptr [esi]
```

If we set a breakpoint on it, we can see the result:

```
PID=32852|TID=36488|(0) 0x2f40e91b (Excel.exe!BASE+0x11e91b)
EAX=0x00598006 EBX=0x00598018 ECX=0x00000001 EDX=0x00000001
ESI=0x00598000 EDI=0x00294804 EBP=0x026CF93C ESP=0x026CF8F8
EIP=0x2F40E91B
FLAGS=PF IF
FPU ControlWord=IC RC=NEAR PC=64bits PM UM OM ZM DM IM
FPU StatusWord=C1 P
FPU ST(0): 0.333333
```

Also as a practical joke, we can modify it on the fly:

```
tracer -l:excel.exe bpx=excel.exe!BASE+0x11E91B, set(st0,666)
```

```
PID=36540|TID=24056|(0) 0x2f40e91b (Excel.exe!BASE+0x11e91b)
EAX=0x00680006 EBX=0x00680018 ECX=0x00000001 EDX=0x00000001
ESI=0x00680000 EDI=0x00395404 EBP=0x0290FD9C ESP=0x0290FD58
EIP=0x2F40E91B
FLAGS=PF IF
FPU ControlWord=IC RC=NEAR PC=64bits PM UM OM ZM DM IM
FPU StatusWord=C1 P
FPU ST(0): 0.333333
Set ST0 register to 666.000000
```

Excel shows 666 in the cell, finally convincing us that we have found the right point.

A screenshot of Microsoft Excel. The ribbon at the top shows the 'Clipboard' tab selected. The font toolbar indicates 'Calibri' font, size '11'. The formula bar shows the formula $= (123/456)$. The spreadsheet area has a single row and six columns labeled A through F. Row 1 contains the formula in cell A1 and the result '666' in cell B1. Rows 2 through 6 are empty.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	666					
2						
3						
4						
5						
6						

Figure 5.7: The practical joke worked

If we try the same Excel version, but in x64, we will find only 12 FDIV instructions there, and the one we looking for is the third one.

```
tracer.exe -l:excel.exe bpx=excel.exe!BASE+0x1B7FCC, set(st0,666)
```

It seems that a lot of division operations of *float* and *double* types, were replaced by the compiler with SSE instructions like DIVSD (DIVSD is present 268 times in total).

5.8 Suspicious code patterns

5.8.1 XOR instructions

Instructions like XOR op, op (for example, XOR EAX, EAX) are usually used for setting the register value to zero, but if the operands are different, the “exclusive or” operation is executed.

This operation is rare in common programming, but widespread in cryptography, including amateur one. It’s especially suspicious if the second operand is a big number.

This may point to encrypting/decrypting, checksum computing, etc.

One exception to this observation worth noting is the “canary” ([1.26.3 on page 348](#)). Its generation and checking are often done using the XOR instruction.

This AWK script can be used for processing IDA listing (.lst) files:

```
gawk -e '$2=="xor" { tmp=substr($3, 0, length($3)-1); if (tmp!=$4) if($4!="\` esp") if ($4!="ebp") { print $1, $2, tmp, ", ", $4 } }' filename.lst
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

It is also worth noting that this kind of script can also match incorrectly disassembled code ([5.11.1 on page 939](#)).

5.8.2 Hand-written assembly code

Modern compilers do not emit the L0OP and RCL instructions. On the other hand, these instructions are well-known to coders who like to code directly in assembly language. If you spot these, it can be said that there is a high probability that this fragment of code was hand-written. Such instructions are marked as (M) in the instructions list in this appendix: [.1.6 on page 1317](#).

Also the function prologue/epilogue are not commonly present in hand-written assembly.

Commonly there is no fixed system for passing arguments to functions in the hand-written code.

Example from the Windows 2003 kernel (ntoskrnl.exe file):

```
MultiplyTest proc near ; CODE XREF: Get386Stepping
    xor    cx, cx
loc_620555:           ; CODE XREF: MultiplyTest+E
    push   cx
    call   Multiply
    pop    cx
    jb    short locret_620563
    loop  loc_620555
    clc
locret_620563:         ; CODE XREF: MultiplyTest+C
    retn
MultiplyTest endp

Multiply     proc near ; CODE XREF: MultiplyTest+5
    mov    ecx, 81h
    mov    eax, 417A000h
    mul    ecx
    cmp    edx, 2
    stc
    jnz    short locret_62057F
    cmp    eax, 0FE7A000h
    stc
    jnz    short locret_62057F
    clc
locret_62057F:          ; CODE XREF: Multiply+10
                        ; Multiply+18
    retn
Multiply     endp
```

Indeed, if we look in the [WRK¹⁹](#) v1.2 source code, this code can be found easily in file [WRK-v1.2\base\ntos\ke\i386\cpu.asm](#).

¹⁹Windows Research Kernel

As of RCL instruction, I can find it in the ntoskrnl.exe file in Windows 2003 x86 (compiled with MS Visual C compiler). It is occurred only once there, in `RtlExtendedLargeIntegerDivide()` function, and this might be inline assembler code case.

5.9 Using magic numbers while tracing

Often, our main goal is to understand how the program uses a value that has been either read from file or received via network. The manual tracing of a value is often a very labor-intensive task. One of the simplest techniques for this (although not 100% reliable) is to use your own *magic number*.

This resembles X-ray computed tomography in some sense: a radiocontrast agent is injected into the patient's blood, which is then used to improve the visibility of the patient's internal structure in to the X-rays. It is well known how the blood of healthy humans percolates in the kidneys and if the agent is in the blood, it can be easily seen on tomography, how blood is percolating, and are there any stones or tumors.

We can take a 32-bit number like `0x0badf00d`, or someone's birth date like `0x11101979` and write this 4-byte number to some point in a file used by the program we investigate.

Then, while tracing this program with [tracer](#) in code coverage mode, with the help of `grep` or just by searching in the text file (of tracing results), we can easily see where the value has been used and how.

Example of *grepable* [tracer](#) results in cc mode:

```
0x150bf66 (_kziaia+0x14), e=      1 [MOV EBX, [EBP+8]] [EBP+8]=0xf59c934
0x150bf69 (_kziaia+0x17), e=      1 [MOV EDX, [69AEB08h]] [69AEB08h]=0
0x150bf6f (_kziaia+0x1d), e=      1 [FS: MOV EAX, [2Ch]]
0x150bf75 (_kziaia+0x23), e=      1 [MOV ECX, [EAX+EDX*4]] [EAX+EDX*4]=0x
    ↴ xf1ac360
0x150bf78 (_kziaia+0x26), e=      1 [MOV [EBP-4], ECX] ECX=0xf1ac360
```

This can be used for network packets as well. It is important for the *magic number* to be unique and not to be present in the program's code.

Aside of the [tracer](#), DosBox (MS-DOS emulator) in heavydebug mode is able to write information about all registers' states for each executed instruction of the program to a plain text file²⁰, so this technique may be useful for DOS programs as well.

5.10 Loops

Whenever your program works with some kind of file, or buffer of some size, it has to be some kind of decrypting/processing loop inside of the code.

This is a real example of [tracer](#) tool output. There was a code which loads some kind of encrypted file of 258 bytes. I run it with the intention to get each instruction counts

²⁰See also my blog post about this DosBox feature: blog.yurichev.com

(a [DBI](#) tool will serve much better these days). And I quickly found a piece of code, which executed 259/258 times:

```

...
0x45a6b5 e= 1 [FS: MOV [0], EAX] EAX=0x218fb08
0x45a6bb e= 1 [MOV [EBP-254h], ECX] ECX=0x218fb08
0x45a6c1 e= 1 [MOV EAX, [EBP-254h]] [EBP-254h]=0x218fb08
0x45a6c7 e= 1 [CMP [EAX+14h], 0] [EAX+14h]=0x102
0x45a6cb e= 1 [JZ 45A9F2h] ZF=false
0x45a6d1 e= 1 [MOV [EBP-0Dh], 1]
0x45a6d5 e= 1 [XOR ECX, ECX] ECX=0x218fb08
0x45a6d7 e= 1 [MOV [EBP-14h], CX] CX=0
0x45a6db e= 1 [MOV [EBP-18h], 0]
0x45a6e2 e= 1 [JMP 45A6EDh]
0x45a6e4 e= 258 [MOV EDX, [EBP-18h]] [EBP-18h]=0..5 (248 items skipped) 0x
    ↴ xfd..0x101
0x45a6e7 e= 258 [ADD EDX, 1] EDX=0..5 (248 items skipped) 0xfd..0x101
0x45a6ea e= 258 [MOV [EBP-18h], EDX] EDX=1..6 (248 items skipped) 0x
    ↴ xfe..0x
0x45a6ed e= 259 [MOV EAX, [EBP-254h]] [EBP-254h]=0x218fb08
0x45a6f3 e= 259 [MOV ECX, [EBP-18h]] [EBP-18h]=0..5 (249 items skipped) 0x
    ↴ xfe..0x102
0x45a6f6 e= 259 [CMP ECX, [EAX+14h]] ECX=0..5 (249 items skipped) 0x
    ↴ xfe..0x
0x45a6f9 e= 259 [JNB 45A727h] CF=false,true
0x45a6fb e= 258 [MOV EDX, [EBP-254h]] [EBP-254h]=0x218fb08
0x45a701 e= 258 [MOV EAX, [EDX+10h]] [EDX+10h]=0x21ee4c8
0x45a704 e= 258 [MOV ECX, [EBP-18h]] [EBP-18h]=0..5 (248 items skipped) 0x
    ↴ xfd..0x101
0x45a707 e= 258 [ADD ECX, 1] ECX=0..5 (248 items skipped) 0xfd..0x101
0x45a70a e= 258 [IMUL ECX, ECX, 1Fh] ECX=1..6 (248 items skipped) 0x
    ↴ xfe..0x
0x45a70d e= 258 [MOV EDX, [EBP-18h]] [EBP-18h]=0..5 (248 items skipped) 0x
    ↴ xfd..0x101
0x45a710 e= 258 [MOVZX EAX, [EAX+EDX]] [EAX+EDX]=1..6 (156 items skipped) 0x
    ↴ xf3, 0xf8, 0xf9, 0xfc, 0xfd
0x45a714 e= 258 [XOR EAX, ECX] EAX=1..6 (156 items skipped) 0xf3, 0xf8, 0x
    ↴ xf9, 0xfc, 0xfd ECX=0x1f, 0x3e, 0x5d, 0x7c, 0x9b (248 items skipped) 0x
    ↴ 0x1ec2, 0x1ee1, 0x1f00, 0x1f1f, 0x1f3e
0x45a716 e= 258 [MOV ECX, [EBP-254h]] [EBP-254h]=0x218fb08
0x45a71c e= 258 [MOV EDX, [ECX+10h]] [ECX+10h]=0x21ee4c8
0x45a71f e= 258 [MOV ECX, [EBP-18h]] [EBP-18h]=0..5 (248 items skipped) 0x
    ↴ xfd..0x101
0x45a722 e= 258 [MOV [EDX+ECX], AL] AL=0..5 (77 items skipped) 0xe2, 0xee, 0x
    ↴ xef, 0xf7, 0xfc
0x45a725 e= 258 [JMP 45A6E4h]
0x45a727 e= 1 [PUSH 5]
0x45a729 e= 1 [MOV ECX, [EBP-254h]] [EBP-254h]=0x218fb08
0x45a72f e= 1 [CALL 45B500h]
0x45a734 e= 1 [MOV ECX, EAX] EAX=0x218fb08
0x45a736 e= 1 [CALL 45B710h]
0x45a73b e= 1 [CMP EAX, 5] EAX=5

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

...

As it turns out, this is the decrypting loop.

5.10.1 Some binary file patterns

All examples here were prepared on the Windows with active code page 437 in console. Binary files internally may look visually different if another code page is set.

Arrays

Sometimes, we can clearly spot an array of 16/32/64-bit values visually, in hex editor.

Here is an example of array of 16-bit values. We see that the first byte in pair is 7 or 8, and the second looks random:

Figure 5.8: FAR: array of 16-bit values

I used a file containing 12-channel signal digitized using 16-bit ADC²¹.

²¹Analog-to-Digital Converter

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

And here is an example of very typical MIPS code.

As we may recall, every MIPS (and also ARM in ARM mode or ARM64) instruction has size of 32 bits (or 4 bytes), so such code is array of 32-bit values.

By looking at this screenshot, we may see some kind of pattern.

Vertical red lines are added for clarity:

Figure 5.9: Hiew: very typical MIPS code

Another example of such pattern here is book: [9.5 on page 1245](#).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Sparse files

This is sparse file with data scattered amidst almost empty file. Each space character here is in fact zero byte (which looks like space). This is a file to program FPGA (Altera Stratix GX device). Of course, files like these can be compressed easily, but formats like this one are very popular in scientific and engineering software where efficient access is important while compactness is not.

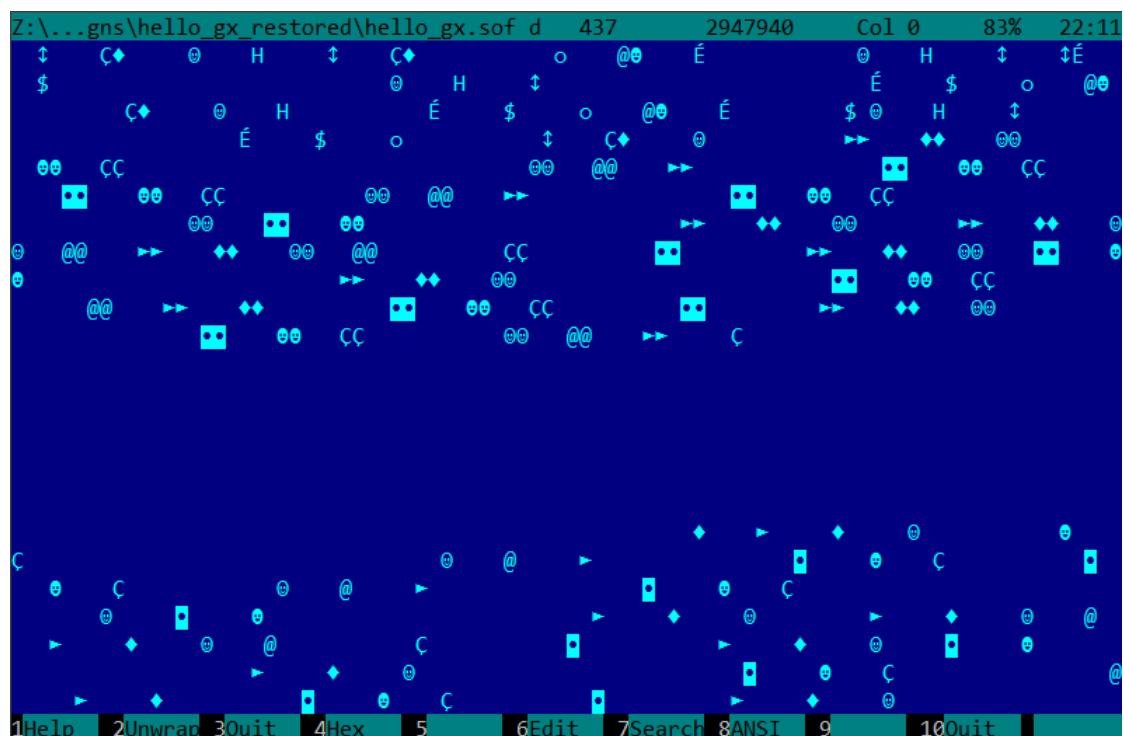


Figure 5.10: FAR: Sparse file

Compressed file

This file is just some compressed archive. It has relatively high entropy and visually looks just chaotic. This is how compressed and/or encrypted files looks like.

Figure 5.11: FAR: Compressed file

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

CDFs²²

OS installations are usually distributed as ISO files which are copies of CD/DVD discs. Filesystem used is named **CDFS**, here is you see file names mixed with some additional data. This can be file sizes, pointers to another directories, file attributes, etc. This is how typical filesystems may look internally.

Figure 5.12: FAR: ISO file: Ubuntu 15 installation CD²³

22 Compact Disc File System

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

32-bit x86 executable code

This is how 32-bit x86 executable code looks like. It has not very high entropy, because some bytes occurred more often than others.

Figure 5.13: FAR: Executable 32-bit x86 code

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

BMP graphics files

BMP files are not compressed, so each byte (or group of bytes) describes each pixel. I've found this picture somewhere inside my installed Windows 8.1:



Figure 5.14: Example picture

You see that this picture has some pixels which unlikely can be compressed very good (around center), but there are long one-color lines at top and bottom. Indeed, lines like these also looks as lines during viewing the file:

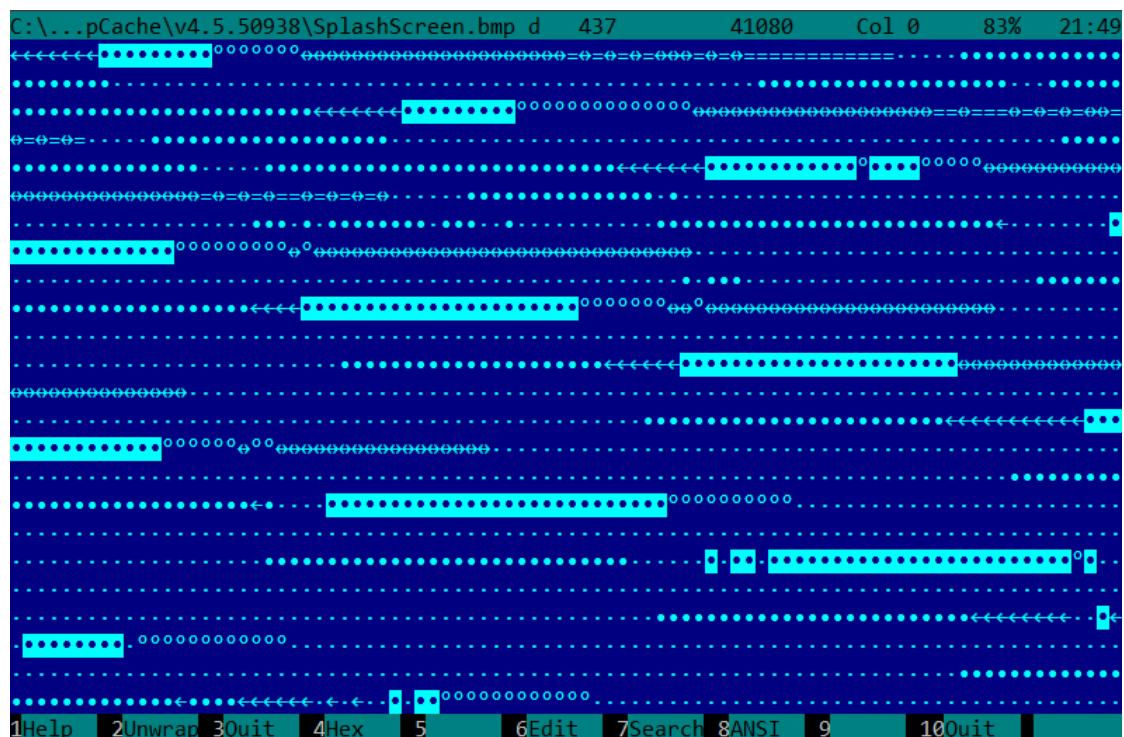


Figure 5.15: BMP file fragment

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

5.10.2 Memory “snapshots” comparing

The technique of the straightforward comparison of two memory snapshots in order to see changes was often used to hack 8-bit computer games and for hacking “high score” files.

For example, if you had a loaded game on an 8-bit computer (there isn’t much memory on these, but the game usually consumes even less memory) and you know that you have now, let’s say, 100 bullets, you can do a “snapshot” of all memory and back it up to some place. Then shoot once, the bullet count goes to 99, do a second “snapshot” and then compare both: it must be a byte somewhere which has been 100 at the beginning, and now it is 99.

Considering the fact that these 8-bit games were often written in assembly language and such variables were global, it can be said for sure which address in memory has holding the bullet count. If you searched for all references to the address in the disassembled game code, it was not very hard to find a piece of code **decrementing** the bullet count, then to write a **NOP** instruction there, or a couple of **NOP**-s, and then have a game with 100 bullets forever. Games on these 8-bit computers were commonly loaded at the constant address, also, there were not much different versions of each game (commonly just one version was popular for a long span of time), so enthusiastic gamers knew which bytes must be overwritten (using the BASIC’s instruction **POKE**) at which address in order to hack it. This led to “cheat” lists that contained **POKE** instructions, published in magazines related to 8-bit games.

Likewise, it is easy to modify “high score” files, this does not work with just 8-bit games. Notice your score count and back up the file somewhere. When the “high score” count gets different, just compare the two files, it can even be done with the DOS utility FC²⁴ (“high score” files are often in binary form).

There will be a point where a couple of bytes are different and it is easy to see which ones are holding the score number. However, game developers are fully aware of such tricks and may defend the program against it.

Somewhat similar example in this book is: [9.3 on page 1231](#).

A real story from 1999

There was a time of ICQ messenger’s popularity, at least in ex-USSR countries. The messenger had a peculiarity — some users didn’t want to share their online status with everyone. And you had to ask an *authorization* from that user. That user could allow you seeing his/her status, or maybe not.

This is what the author of these lines did:

- Added a user.
- A user appeared in a contact-list, in a “wait for authorization” section.
- Closed ICQ.
- Backed up the ICQ database.

²⁴MS-DOS utility for comparing binary files

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

-
- Loaded ICQ again.
 - User *authorized*.
 - Closed ICQ and compared two databases.

It turned out: two database differed by only one byte. In the first version: RESU\x03, in the second: RESU\x02. ("RESU", presumably, means "USER", i.e., a header of a structure where all the information about user was stored.) That means the information about authorization was stored not at the server, but at the client. Presumably, 2/3 value reflected *authorization* status.

Windows registry

It is also possible to compare the Windows registry before and after a program installation.

It is a very popular method of finding which registry elements are used by the program. Perhaps, this is the reason why the "windows registry cleaner" shareware is so popular.

By the way, this is how to dump Windows registry to text files:

```
reg export HKLM HKLM.reg
reg export HKCU HKCU.reg
reg export HKCR HKCR.reg
reg export HKU HKU.reg
reg export HKCC HKCC.reg
```

They can be compared using diff...

Engineering software, CADs, etc

If a software uses proprietary files, you can also investigate something here as well. You save file. Then you add a dot or line or another primitive. Save file, compare. Or move dot, save file, compare.

Blink-comparator

Comparison of files or memory snapshots remind us blink-comparator ²⁵: a device used by astronomers in past, intended to find moving celestial objects.

Blink-comparator allows to switch quickly between two photographies shot in different time, so astronomer would spot the difference visually.

By the way, Pluto was discovered by blink-comparator in 1930.

²⁵https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blink_comparator

5.11 ISA detection

Often, you can deal with a binary file for an unknown ISA. Perhaps, easiest way to detect ISA is to try various ones in IDA, objdump or another disassembler.

To achieve this, one should understand a difference between incorrectly disassembled code and correctly one.

5.11.1 Incorrectly disassembled code

Practicing reverse engineers often have to deal with incorrectly disassembled code.

Disassembling from an incorrect start (x86)

Unlike ARM and MIPS (where any instruction has a length of 2 or 4 bytes), x86 instructions have variable size, so any disassembler that starts in the middle of a x86 instruction may produce incorrect results.

As an example:

```

add    [ebp-31F7Bh], cl
dec    dword ptr [ecx-3277Bh]
dec    dword ptr [ebp-2CF7Bh]
inc    dword ptr [ebx-7A76F33Ch]
fdiv   st(4), st
db 0FFh
dec    dword ptr [ecx-21F7Bh]
dec    dword ptr [ecx-22373h]
dec    dword ptr [ecx-2276Bh]
dec    dword ptr [ecx-22B63h]
dec    dword ptr [ecx-22F4Bh]
dec    dword ptr [ecx-23343h]
jmp    dword ptr [esi-74h]
xchg   eax, ebp
clc
std
db 0FFh
db 0FFh
mov    word ptr [ebp-214h], cs ; <- disassembler finally found right track
here
mov    word ptr [ebp-238h], ds
mov    word ptr [ebp-23Ch], es
mov    word ptr [ebp-240h], fs
mov    word ptr [ebp-244h], gs
pushf
pop    dword ptr [ebp-210h]
mov    eax, [ebp+4]
mov    [ebp-218h], eax
lea    eax, [ebp+4]
mov    [ebp-20Ch], eax
mov    dword ptr [ebp-2D0h], 10001h
mov    eax, [eax-4]
mov    [ebp-21Ch], eax

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

mov    eax, [ebp+0Ch]
mov    [ebp-320h], eax
mov    eax, [ebp+10h]
mov    [ebp-31Ch], eax
mov    eax, [ebp+4]
mov    [ebp-314h], eax
call   ds:IsDebuggerPresent
mov    edi, eax
lea    eax, [ebp-328h]
push   eax
call   sub_407663
pop    ecx
test   eax, eax
jnz    short loc_402D7B

```

There are incorrectly disassembled instructions at the beginning, but eventually the disassembler gets on the right track.

How does random noise looks disassembled?

Common properties that can be spotted easily are:

- Unusually big instruction dispersion. The most frequent x86 instructions are PUSH, MOV, CALL, but here we see instructions from all instruction groups: **FPU** instructions, IN/OUT instructions, rare and system instructions, everything mixed up in one single place.
- Big and random values, offsets and immediates.
- Jumps having incorrect offsets, often jumping in the middle of another instructions.

Listing 5.7: random noise (x86)

```

mov    bl, 0Ch
mov    ecx, 0D38558Dh
mov    eax, ds:2C869A86h
db    67h
mov    dl, 0CCh
insb
movsb
push   eax
xor    [edx-53h], ah
fcom  qword ptr [edi-45A0EF72h]
pop    esp
pop    ss
in     eax, dx
dec    ebx
push   esp
lds   esp, [esi-41h]
retf
rcl   dword ptr [eax], cl
mov    cl, 9Ch
mov    ch, 0DFh

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

push    cs
insb
mov     esi, 0D9C65E4Dh
imul    ebp, [ecx], 66h
pushf
sal     dword ptr [ebp-64h], cl
sub     eax, 0AC433D64h
out    8Ch, eax
pop     ss
sbb     [eax], ebx
aas
xchg   cl, [ebx+ebx*4+14B31Eh]
jecxz  short near ptr loc_58+1
xor    al, 0C6h
inc     edx
db      36h
pusha
stosb
test   [ebx], ebx
sub    al, 0D3h ; 'L'
pop     eax
stosb

loc_58: ; CODE XREF: seg000:00000004A
test   [esi], eax
inc    ebp
das
db     64h
pop    ecx
das
hlt

pop    edx
out    0B0h, al
lodsb
push   ebx
cdq
out    dx, al
sub    al, 0Ah
sti
outsd
add    dword ptr [edx], 96FCBE4Bh
and    eax, 0E537EE4Fh
inc    esp
stosd
cdq
push   ecx
in     al, 0CBh
mov    ds:0D114C45Ch, al
mov    esi, 659D1985h

```

Listing 5.8: random noise (x86-64)

lea esi, [rax+rdx*4+43558D29h]

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

loc_AF3: ; CODE XREF: seg000:00000000000000B46
    rcl    byte ptr [rsi+rax*8+29BB423Ah], 1
    lea    ecx, cs:0FFFFFFFB2A6780Fh
    mov    al, 96h
    mov    ah, 0CEh
    push   rsp
    lodsl  byte ptr [esi]

    db 2Fh ; /

    pop   rsp
    db    64h
    retf  0E993h

    cmp   ah, [rax+4Ah]
    movzx rsi, dword ptr [rbp-25h]
    push   4Ah
    movzx rdi, dword ptr [rdi+rdx*8]

    db 9Ah

    rcr   byte ptr [rax+1Dh], cl
    lodsd
    xor   [rbp+6CF20173h], edx
    xor   [rbp+66F8B593h], edx
    push  rbx
    sbb   ch, [rbx-0Fh]
    stosd
    int   87h
    db    46h, 4Ch
    out   33h, rax
    xchg  eax, ebp
    test  ecx, ebp
    movsd
    leave
    push   rsp

    db 16h

    xchg  eax, esi
    pop   rdi

loc_B3D: ; CODE XREF: seg000:00000000000000B5F
    mov   ds:93CA685DF98A90F9h, eax
    jnz   short near ptr loc_AF3+6
    out   dx, eax
    cwd
    mov   bh, 5Dh ; ']'
    movsb
    pop   rbp

```

Listing 5.9: random noise (ARM (ARM mode))

```

BLNE    0xFE16A9D8
BGE     0x1634D0C
SVCCS   0x450685
STRNVT  R5, [PC],#-0x964
LDCGE   p6, c14, [R0],#0x168
STCCSL  p9, c9, [LR],#0x14C
CMNHIP  PC, R10,LSL#22
FLDMIADNV LR!, {D4}
MCR     p5, 2, R2,c15,c6, 4
BLGE    0x1139558
BLGT    0xFF9146E4
STRNEB  R5, [R4],#0xCA2
STMNEIB R5, {R0,R4,R6,R7,R9-SP,PC}
STMIA   R8, {R0,R2-R4,R7,R8,R10,SP,LR}^
STRB    SP, [R8],PC,ROR#18
LDCCS   p9, c13, [R6,#0x1BC]
LDRGE   R8, [R9,#0x66E]
STRNEB  R5, [R8],#-0x8C3
STCCSL  p15, c9, [R7,#-0x84]
RSBLS   LR, R2, R11,ASR LR
SVCGT   0x9B0362
SVCGT   0xA73173
STMNEDB R11!, {R0,R1,R4-R6,R8,R10,R11,SP}
STR     R0, [R3],#-0xCE4
LDCGT   p15, c8, [R1,#0x2CC]
LDRCCB  R1, [R11],-R7,ROR#30
BLLT   0xFED9D58C
BL      0x13E60F4
LDMVSIB R3!, {R1,R4-R7}^
USATNE  R10, #7, SP,LSL#11
LDRGEB  LR, [R1],#0xE56
STRPLT  R9, [LR],#0x567
LDRLT   R11, [R1],#-0x29B
SVCNV   0x12DB29
MVNNVS  R5, SP,LSL#25
LDCL    p8, c14, [R12,#-0x288]
STCNEL   p2, c6, [R6,#-0xBC]!
SVCNV   0x2E5A2F
BLX    0x1A8C97E
TEQGE   R3, #0x1100000
STMLSIA R6, {R3,R6,R10,R11,SP}
BICPLS  R12, R2, #0x5800
BNE    0x7CC408
TEQGE   R2, R4,LSL#20
SUBS    R1, R11, #0x28C
BICVS   R3, R12, R7,ASR R0
LDRMI   R7, [LR],R3,LSL#21
BLMI    0x1A79234
STMVCDB R6, {R0-R3,R6,R7,R10,R11}
EORMI   R12, R6, #0xC5
MCRRCS  p1, 0xF, R1,R3,c2

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 5.10: random noise (ARM (Thumb mode))

```

LSRS    R3, R6, #0x12
LDRH    R1, [R7,#0x2C]
SUBS    R0, #0x55 ; 'U'
ADR     R1, loc_3C
LDR     R2, [SP,#0x218]
CMP     R4, #0x86
SXTB    R7, R4
LDR     R4, [R1,#0x4C]
STR     R4, [R4,R2]
STR     R0, [R6,#0x20]
BGT    0xFFFFFFF72
LDRH    R7, [R2,#0x34]
LDRSH   R0, [R2,R4]
LDRB    R2, [R7,R2]

DCB 0x17
DCB 0xED

STRB   R3, [R1,R1]
STR     R5, [R0,#0x6C]
LDMIA   R3, {R0-R5,R7}
ASRS    R3, R2, #3
LDR     R4, [SP,#0x2C4]
SVC     0xB5
LDR     R6, [R1,#0x40]
LDR     R5, =0xB2C5CA32
STMIA   R6, {R1-R4,R6}
LDR     R1, [R3,#0x3C]
STR     R1, [R5,#0x60]
BCC    0xFFFFFFF70
LDR     R4, [SP,#0x1D4]
STR     R5, [R5,#0x40]
ORRS    R5, R7

loc_3C ; DATA XREF: ROM:00000006
B      0xFFFFFFF98

```

Listing 5.11: random noise (MIPS little endian)

```

lw      $t9, 0xCB3($t5)
sb      $t5, 0x3855($t0)
sltiu  $a2, $a0, -0x657A
ldr     $t4, -0x4D99($a2)
daddi  $s0, $s1, 0x50A4
lw      $s7, -0x2353($s4)
bgtzl $a1, 0x17C5C

.byte 0x17
.byte 0xED
.byte 0x4B  # K
.byte 0x54  # T

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

lwc2	\$31, 0x66C5(\$sp)
lwu	\$s1, 0x10D3(\$a1)
ldr	\$t6, -0x204B(\$zero)
lwc1	\$f30, 0x4DBE(\$s2)
daddiu	\$t1, \$s1, 0x6BD9
lwu	\$s5, -0x2C64(\$v1)
cop0	0x13D642D
bne	\$gp, \$t4, 0xFFFF9EF0
lh	\$ra, 0x1819(\$s1)
sdl	\$fp, -0x6474(\$t8)
jal	0x78C0050
ori	\$v0, \$s2, 0xC634
blez	\$gp, 0xFFEA9D4
swl	\$t8, -0x2CD4(\$s2)
sltiu	\$a1, \$k0, 0x685
sdc1	\$f15, 0x5964(\$at)
sw	\$s0, -0x19A6(\$a1)
sltiu	\$t6, \$a3, -0x66AD
lb	\$t7, -0x4F6(\$t3)
sd	\$fp, 0x4B02(\$a1)

It is also important to keep in mind that cleverly constructed unpacking and decryption code (including self-modifying) may look like noise as well, but still execute correctly.

5.11.2 Correctly disassembled code

Each ISA has a dozen of most used instructions, all the rest are used much less often.

As of x86, it is interesting to know that the fact that function calls (PUSH/CALL/ADD) and MOV instructions are the most frequently executed pieces of code in almost all programs we use. In other words, CPU is very busy passing information between levels of abstractions, or, it can be said, it's very busy switching between these levels. Regardless type of ISA. This is a cost of splitting problems into several levels of abstractions (so humans could work with them easier).

5.12 Other things

5.12.1 General idea

A reverse engineer should try to be in programmer's shoes as often as possible. To take his/her viewpoint and ask himself, how would one solve some task the specific case.

5.12.2 Order of functions in binary code

All functions located in a single .c or .cpp-file are compiled into corresponding object (.o) file. Later, a linker puts all object files it needs together, not changing order of

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

functions in them. As a consequence, if you see two or more consecutive functions, it means, that they were placed together in a single source code file (unless you're on border of two object files, of course.) This means these functions have something in common, that they are from the same API level, from the same library, etc.

This is a real story from practice: once upon a time, the author searched for Twofish-related functions in a program with CryptoPP library linked, especially encryption/de-cryption functions.

I found the `Twofish::Base::UncheckedSetKey()` function, but not others. After peeking into the `twofish.cpp` source code ²⁶, it became clear that all functions are located in one module (`twofish.cpp`).

So I tried all function that followed `Twofish::Base::UncheckedSetKey()`—as it happened,
one was `Twofish::Enc::ProcessAndXorBlock()`,
another—`Twofish::Dec::ProcessAndXorBlock()`.

5.12.3 Tiny functions

Tiny functions like empty functions ([1.3 on page 7](#)) or function which returns just “true” (1) or “false” (0) ([1.4 on page 10](#)) are very common, and almost all decent compilers tend to put only one such function into resulting executable code even if there were several similar functions in source code. So, whenever you see a tiny function consisting just of `mov eax, 1 / ret` which is referenced (and can be called) from many places, which are seems unconnected to each other, this may be a result of such optimization.

5.12.4 C++

`RTTI` ([3.21.1 on page 718](#))-data may be also useful for C++ class identification.

5.12.5 Crash on purpose

Often you need to know, which function has been executed, and which is not. You can use a debugger, but on exotic architectures there may not be the one, so easiest way is to put there an invalid opcode, or something like `INT3 (0xCC)`. The crash would signal about the very fact this instruction has been executed.

Another example of crashing on purpose: [3.23.4 on page 785](#).

²⁶<https://github.com/weidaill/cryptopp/blob/b613522794a7633aa2bd81932a98a0b0a51bc04f/twofish.cpp>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Chapter 6

OS-specific

6.1 Arguments passing methods (calling conventions)

6.1.1 cdecl

This is the most popular method for passing arguments to functions in the C/C++ languages.

The caller also must return the value of the [stack pointer](#) (ESP) to its initial state after the [callee](#) function exits.

Listing 6.1: cdecl

```
push arg3  
push arg2  
push arg1  
call function  
add esp, 12 ; returns ESP
```

6.1.2 stdcall

It's almost the same as *cdecl*, with the exception that the [callee](#) must set ESP to the initial state by executing the RET x instruction instead of RET, where x = arguments number * sizeof(int)¹. The [caller](#) is not adjusting the [stack pointer](#), there are no add esp, x instruction.

Listing 6.2: stdcall

```
push arg3  
push arg2  
push arg1  
call function  
  
function:
```

¹The size of an *int* type variable is 4 in x86 systems and 8 in x64 systems

```
;... do something ...
ret 12
```

The method is ubiquitous in win32 standard libraries, but not in win64 (see below about win64).

For example, we can take the function from [1.90 on page 125](#) and change it slightly by adding the `__stdcall` modifier:

```
int __stdcall f2 (int a, int b, int c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};
```

It is to be compiled in almost the same way as [1.91 on page 125](#), but you will see RET 12 instead of RET. SP is not updated in the caller.

As a consequence, the number of function arguments can be easily deduced from the RETN n instruction: just divide n by 4.

Listing 6.3: MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8           ; size = 4
_b$ = 12          ; size = 4
_c$ = 16          ; size = 4
_f2@12 PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    imul   eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    add    eax, DWORD PTR _c$[ebp]
    pop    ebp
    ret    12
_f2@12 ENDP

; ...
    push    3
    push    2
    push    1
    call    _f2@12
    push    eax
    push    OFFSET $SG81369
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 8
```

Functions with variable number of arguments

`printf()`-like functions are, probably, the only case of functions with a variable number of arguments in C/C++, but it is easy to illustrate an important difference between `cdecl` and `stdcall` with their help. Let's start with the idea that the compiler knows the argument count of each `printf()` function call.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

However, the called `printf()`, which is already compiled and located in `MSVCRT.DLL` (if we talk about Windows), does not have any information about how much arguments were passed, however it can determine it from the format string.

Thus, if `printf()` would be a `stdcall` function and restored `stack pointer` to its initial state by counting the number of arguments in the format string, this could be a dangerous situation, when one programmer's typo can provoke a sudden program crash. Thus it is not suitable for such functions to use `stdcall`, `cdecl` is better.

6.1.3 fastcall

That's the general naming for the method of passing some arguments via registers and the rest via the stack. It worked faster than `cdecl/stdcall` on older CPUs (because of smaller stack pressure). It may not help to gain any significant performance on latest (much more complex) CPUs, however.

It is not standardized, so the various compilers can do it differently. It's a well known caveat: if you have two DLLs and the one uses another one, and they are built by different compilers with different `fastcall` calling conventions, you can expect problems.

Both MSVC and GCC pass the first and second arguments via ECX and EDX and the rest of the arguments via the stack.

The `stack pointer` must be restored to its initial state by the `callee` (like in `stdcall`).

Listing 6.4: fastcall

```
push arg3
mov edx, arg2
mov ecx, arg1
call function

function:
.. do something ..
ret 4
```

For example, we may take the function from [1.90 on page 125](#) and change it slightly by adding a `__fastcall` modifier:

```
int __fastcall f3 (int a, int b, int c)
{
    return a*b+c;
};
```

Here is how it is to be compiled:

Listing 6.5: Optimizing MSVC 2010 /Ob0

```
_c$ = 8          ; size = 4
@f3@12  PROC
; _a$ = ecx
; _b$ = edx
    mov     eax, ecx
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

imul    eax, edx
add     eax, DWORD PTR _c$[esp-4]
ret     4
@f3@12 ENDP

; ...

mov     edx, 2
push    3
lea     ecx, DWORD PTR [edx-1]
call    @f3@12
push    eax
push    OFFSET $SG81390
call    _printf
add     esp, 8

```

We see that the **callee** returns **SP** by using the RETN instruction with an operand.

Which implies that the number of arguments can be deduced easily here as well.

GCC regparm

It is the evolution of *fastcall*² in some sense. With the -mregparm option it is possible to set how many arguments are to be passed via registers (3 is the maximum). Thus, the EAX, EDX and ECX registers are to be used.

Of course, if the number of arguments is less than 3, not all 3 registers are to be used.

The **caller** restores the **stack pointer** to its initial state.

For example, see ([1.28.1 on page 384](#)).

Watcom/OpenWatcom

Here it is called “register calling convention”. The first 4 arguments are passed via the EAX, EDX, EBX and ECX registers. All the rest—via the stack.

These functions have an underscore appended to the function name in order to distinguish them from those having a different calling convention.

6.1.4 thiscall

This is passing the object’s *this* pointer to the function-method, in C++.

In MSVC, *this* is usually passed in the ECX register.

In GCC, the *this* pointer is passed as the first function-method argument. Thus it will be visible that all functions in assembly code have an extra argument, in comparison with the source code.

For an example, see ([3.21.1 on page 698](#)).

²<http://www.ohse.de/uwe/articles/gcc-attributes.html#func-regparm>

6.1.5 x86-64

Windows x64

The method of passing arguments in Win64 somewhat resembles fastcall. The first 4 arguments are passed via RCX, RDX, R8 and R9, the rest—via the stack. The **caller** also must prepare space for 32 bytes or 4 64-bit values, so then the **callee** can save there the first 4 arguments. Short functions may use the arguments' values just from the registers, but larger ones may save their values for further use.

The **caller** also must return the **stack pointer** into its initial state.

This calling convention is also used in Windows x86-64 system DLLs (instead of *stdcall* in win32).

Example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f1(int a, int b, int c, int d, int e, int f, int g)
{
    printf ("%d %d %d %d %d %d %d\n", a, b, c, d, e, f, g);
}

int main()
{
    f1(1,2,3,4,5,6,7);
}
```

Listing 6.6: MSVC 2012 /0b

```
$SG2937 DB      '%d %d %d %d %d %d %d', 0aH, 00H

main PROC
    sub    rsp, 72

    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+48], 7
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+40], 6
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+32], 5
    mov    r9d, 4
    mov    r8d, 3
    mov    edx, 2
    mov    ecx, 1
    call   f1

    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 72
    ret    0
main ENDP

a$ = 80
b$ = 88
c$ = 96
d$ = 104
e$ = 112
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

f$ = 120
g$ = 128
f1      PROC
$LN3:
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+32], r9d
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+24], r8d
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+16], edx
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+8], ecx
    sub    rsp, 72

    mov     eax, DWORD PTR g$[rsp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+56], eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR f$[rsp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+48], eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR e$[rsp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+40], eax
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR d$[rsp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+32], eax
    mov     r9d, DWORD PTR c$[rsp]
    mov     r8d, DWORD PTR b$[rsp]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR a$[rsp]
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2937
    call   printf

    add    rsp, 72
    ret    0
f1      ENDP

```

Here we clearly see how 7 arguments are passed: 4 via registers and the remaining 3 via the stack.

The code of the f1() function's prologue saves the arguments in the “scratch space”—a space in the stack intended exactly for this purpose.

This is arranged so because the compiler cannot be sure that there will be enough registers to use without these 4, which will otherwise be occupied by the arguments until the function's execution end.

The “scratch space” allocation in the stack is the caller's duty.

Listing 6.7: Optimizing MSVC 2012 /Ob

```

$SG2777 DB      '%d %d %d %d %d %d %d', 0aH, 00H

a$ = 80
b$ = 88
c$ = 96
d$ = 104
e$ = 112
f$ = 120
g$ = 128
f1      PROC
$LN3:
    sub    rsp, 72

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    eax, DWORD PTR g$[rsp]
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+56], eax
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR f$[rsp]
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+48], eax
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR e$[rsp]
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+40], eax
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+32], r9d
    mov    r9d, r8d
    mov    r8d, edx
    mov    edx, ecx
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2777
    call   printf

    add    rsp, 72
    ret    0
f1    ENDP

main PROC
    sub    rsp, 72

    mov    edx, 2
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+48], 7
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+40], 6
    lea    r9d, QWORD PTR [rdx+2]
    lea    r8d, QWORD PTR [rdx+1]
    lea    ecx, QWORD PTR [rdx-1]
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+32], 5
    call   f1

    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 72
    ret    0
main ENDP

```

If we compile the example with optimizations, it is to be almost the same, but the “scratch space” will not be used, because it won’t be needed.

Also take a look on how MSVC 2012 optimizes the loading of primitive values into registers by using LEA ([1.6 on page 1319](#)). MOV would be 1 byte longer here (5 instead of 4).

Another example of such thing is: [8.2.1 on page 1032](#).

Windows x64: Passing *this* (C/C++)

The *this* pointer is passed in RCX, the first argument of the method is in RDX, etc. For an example see: [3.21.1 on page 701](#).

Linux x64

The way arguments are passed in Linux for x86-64 is almost the same as in Windows, but 6 registers are used instead of 4 (RDI, RSI, RDX, RCX, R8, R9) and there is no

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

"scratch space", although the [callee](#) may save the register values in the stack, if it needs/wants to.

Listing 6.8: Optimizing GCC 4.7.3

```
.LC0:
    .string "%d %d %d %d %d %d\n"
f1:
    sub    rsp, 40
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [rsp+48]
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+8], r9d
    mov    r9d, ecx
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp], r8d
    mov    ecx, esi
    mov    r8d, edx
    mov    esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0
    mov    edx, edi
    mov    edi, 1
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp+16], eax
    xor    eax, eax
    call   __printf_chk
    add    rsp, 40
    ret
main:
    sub    rsp, 24
    mov    r9d, 6
    mov    r8d, 5
    mov    DWORD PTR [rsp], 7
    mov    ecx, 4
    mov    edx, 3
    mov    esi, 2
    mov    edi, 1
    call   f1
    add    rsp, 24
    ret
```

N.B.: here the values are written into the 32-bit parts of the registers (e.g., EAX) but not in the whole 64-bit register (RAX). This is because each write to the low 32-bit part of a register automatically clears the high 32 bits. Supposedly, it was decided in AMD to do so to simplify porting code to x86-64.

6.1.6 Return values of *float* and *double* type

In all conventions except in Win64, the values of type *float* or *double* are returned via the FPU register ST(0).

In Win64, the values of *float* and *double* types are returned in the low 32 or 64 bits of the XMM0 register.

6.1.7 Modifying arguments

Sometimes, C/C++ programmers (not limited to these [PLs](#), though), may ask, what can happen if they modify the arguments?

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The answer is simple: the arguments are stored in the stack, that is where the modification takes place.

The calling functions is not using them after the **callee's** exit (the author of these lines has never seen any such case in his practice).

```
#include <stdio.h>

void f(int a, int b)
{
    a=a+b;
    printf ("%d\n", a);
}
```

Listing 6.9: MSVC 2012

```
_a$ = 8                                ; size = 4
_b$ = 12                                ; size = 4
_f      PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    add     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR _a$[ebp], eax
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[ebp]
    push    ecx
    push    OFFSET $SG2938 ; '%d', 0aH
    call    _printf
    add     esp, 8
    pop     ebp
    ret     0
_f      ENDP
```

So yes, one can modify the arguments easily. Of course, if it is not references in C++ ([3.21.3 on page 720](#)), and if you don't modify data to which a pointer points to, then the effect will not propagate outside the current function.

Theoretically, after the **callee's** return, the **caller** could get the modified argument and use it somehow. Maybe if it is written directly in assembly language.

For example, code like this will be generated by usual C/C++ compiler:

```
push    456      ; will be b
push    123      ; will be a
call    f         ; f() modifies its first argument
add     esp, 2*4
```

We can rewrite this code like:

```
push    456      ; will be b
push    123      ; will be a
call    f         ; f() modifies its first argument
pop     eax
add     esp, 4
; EAX=1st argument of f() modified in f()
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Hard to imagine, why anyone would need this, but this is possible in practice. Nevertheless, the C/C++ languages standards don't offer any way to do so.

6.1.8 Taking a pointer to function argument

...even more than that, it's possible to take a pointer to the function's argument and pass it to another function:

```
#include <stdio.h>

// located in some other file
void modify_a (int *a);

void f (int a)
{
    modify_a (&a);
    printf ("%d\n", a);
};
```

It's hard to understand how it works until we can see the code:

Listing 6.10: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
$SG2796 DB      '%d',  0aH,  00H

_a$ = 8
_f      PROC
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4] ; just get the address of value in
    local_stack
    push    eax                      ; and pass it to modify_a()
    call    _modify_a
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp]   ; reload it from the local stack
    push    ecx                      ; and pass it to printf()
    push    OFFSET $SG2796           ; '%d'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 12
    ret    0
_f      ENDP
```

The address of the place in the stack where *a* has been passed is just passed to another function. It modifies the value addressed by the pointer and then `printf()` prints the modified value.

The observant reader might ask, what about calling conventions where the function's arguments are passed in registers?

That's a situation where the *Shadow Space* is used.

The input value is copied from the register to the *Shadow Space* in the local stack, and then this address is passed to the other function:

Listing 6.11: Optimizing MSVC 2012 x64

```
$SG2994 DB      '%d',  0aH,  00H
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
a$ = 48
f      PROC
        mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+8], ecx    ; save input value in Shadow Space
        sub     rsp, 40
        lea     rcx, QWORD PTR a$[rsp]   ; get address of value and pass it
        to modify_a()
            call    modify_a
            mov     edx, DWORD PTR a$[rsp]  ; reload value from Shadow Space and
pass it to printf()
            lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG2994 ; '%d'
            call    printf
            add     rsp, 40
            ret     0
f      ENDP
```

GCC also stores the input value in the local stack:

Listing 6.12: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 x64

```
.LC0:
        .string "%d\n"
f:
        sub     rsp, 24
        mov     DWORD PTR [rsp+12], edi  ; store input value to the local
stack
        lea     rdi, [rsp+12]           ; take an address of the value and
pass it to modify_a()
        call    modify_a
        mov     edx, DWORD PTR [rsp+12]  ; reload value from the local stack
and pass it to printf()
        mov     esi, OFFSET FLAT:.LC0   ; '%d'
        mov     edi, 1
        xor     eax, eax
        call    __printf_chk
        add     rsp, 24
        ret
```

GCC for ARM64 does the same, but this space is called *Register Save Area* here:

Listing 6.13: Optimizing GCC 4.9.1 ARM64

```
f:
        stp     x29, x30, [sp, -32]!
        add     x29, sp, 0          ; setup FP
        add     x1, x29, 32        ; calculate address of variable in
Register Save Area
        str     w0, [x1,-4]!       ; store input value there
        mov     x0, x1             ; pass address of variable to the
modify_a()
        bl     modify_a
        ldr     w1, [x29,28]       ; load value from the variable and pass it
        to printf()
        adrp   x0, .LC0           ; '%d'
        add     x0, x0, :lo12:.LC0
        bl     printf             ; call printf()
        ldp     x29, x30, [sp], 32
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    ret
.LC0:
    .string "%d\n"

```

By the way, a similar usage of the *Shadow Space* is also considered here: [3.17.1 on page 667](#).

6.1.9 Python ctypes problem (x86 assembly homework)

A Python `ctypes` module can call external functions in DLLs, .so's, etc. But calling convention (for 32-bit environment) must be specified explicitly:

`"ctypes"` exports the `*cdll*`, and on Windows `*windll*` and `*oledll*` objects, for loading dynamic link libraries.

You load libraries by accessing them as attributes of these objects. `*cdll*` loads libraries which export functions using the standard `"cdecl"` calling convention, while `*windll*` libraries call functions using the `"stdcall"` calling convention.

(<https://docs.python.org/3/library/ctypes.html>)

In fact, we can modify `ctypes` module (or any other caller code), so that it will successfully call external `cdecl` or `stdcall` functions, without knowledge, which is where. (Number of arguments, however, is to be specified).

This is possible to solve using maybe 5-10 x86 assembly instructions in caller. Try to find out these.

6.1.10 Cdecl example: a DLL

Let's back to the fact that this is not very important how to declare the `main()` function: [1.9.2 on page 44](#).

This is a real story: once upon a time I wanted to replace an original DLL file in some software by mine. First I enumerated names of all DLL exports and made a function in my own replacement DLL for each function in the original DLL, like:

```

void function1 ()
{
    write_to_log ("function1() called\n");
}

```

I wanted to see, which functions are called during run, and when. However, I was in hurry and had no time to deduce arguments count for each function, let alone data types. So each function in my replacement DLL had no argument whatsoever. But everything worked, because all functions had `cdecl` calling convention. (It wouldn't work if functions had `stdcall` calling convention.) It also worked for x64 version.

And then I did a next step: I deduced argument types for some functions. But I made several mistakes, for example, the original function took 3 arguments, but I knew only about 2, etc.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Still, it worked. At the beginning, my replacement DLL just ignored all arguments. Then, it ignored the 3rd argument.

6.2 Thread Local Storage

TLS is a data area, specific to each thread. Every thread can store what it needs there. One well-known example is the C standard global variable *errno*.

Multiple threads may simultaneously call functions which return an error code in *errno*, so a global variable will not work correctly here for multi-threaded programs, so *errno* must be stored in the [TLS](#).

In the C++11 standard, a new *thread_local* modifier was added, showing that each thread has its own version of the variable, it can be initialized, and it is located in the [TLS](#)³:

Listing 6.14: C++11

```
#include <iostream>
#include <thread>

thread_local int tmp=3;

int main()
{
    std::cout << tmp << std::endl;
}
```

Compiled in MinGW GCC 4.8.1, but not in MSVC 2012.

If we talk about PE files, in the resulting executable file, the *tmp* variable is to be allocated in the section devoted to the [TLS](#).

6.2.1 Linear congruent generator revisited

The pseudorandom number generator we considered earlier [1.29 on page 424](#) has a flaw: it's not thread-safe, because it has an internal state variable which can be read and/or modified in different threads simultaneously.

Win32

Uninitialized TLS data

One solution is to add `_declspec(thread)` modifier to the global variable, then it will be allocated in the [TLS](#) (line 9):

```
1 #include <stdint.h>
2 #include <windows.h>
3 #include <winnt.h>
```

³ C11 also has thread support, optional though

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

```

4 // from the Numerical Recipes book:
5 #define RNG_a 1664525
6 #define RNG_c 1013904223
7
8 __declspec( thread ) uint32_t rand_state;
9
10 void my_srand (uint32_t init)
11 {
12     rand_state = init;
13 }
14
15
16 int my_rand ()
17 {
18     rand_state = rand_state * RNG_a;
19     rand_state = rand_state + RNG_c;
20     return rand_state & 0x7fff;
21 }
22
23 int main()
24 {
25     my_srand(0x12345678);
26     printf ("%d\n", my_rand());
27 }

```

Hiew shows us that there is a new PE section in the executable file: .tls.

Listing 6.15: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x86

```

_TLS    SEGMENT
_rand_state DD 01H DUP (?)
_TLS    ENDS

_DATA   SEGMENT
$SG84851 DB      '%d', 0aH, 00H
_DATA   ENDS
_TEXT   SEGMENT

_init$ = 8      ; size = 4
_my_srand PROC
; FS:0=address of TIB
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR fs:_tls_array ; displayed in IDA as FS:2Ch
; EAX=address of TLS of process
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _tls_index
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+ecx*4]
; ECX=current TLS segment
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _init$[esp-4]
    mov     DWORD PTR _rand_state[ecx], eax
    ret     0
_my_srand ENDP

_my_rand PROC
; FS:0=address of TIB
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR fs:_tls_array ; displayed in IDA as FS:2Ch

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

; EAX=address of TLS of process
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _tls_index
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR [eax+ecx*4]
; ECX=current TLS segment
    imul   eax, DWORD PTR _rand_state[ecx], 1664525
    add    eax, 1013904223           ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov    DWORD PTR _rand_state[ecx], eax
    and    eax, 32767              ; 00007fffH
    ret    0
_my_rand ENDP

_TEXT    ENDS

```

`rand_state` is now in the [TLS](#) segment, and each thread has its own version of this variable.

Here is how it's accessed: load the address of the [TIB](#) from FS:2Ch, then add an additional index (if needed), then calculate the address of the [TLS](#) segment.

Then it's possible to access the `rand_state` variable through the ECX register, which points to an unique area in each thread.

The FS: selector is familiar to every reverse engineer, it is specially used to always point to [TIB](#), so it would be fast to load the thread-specific data.

The GS: selector is used in Win64 and the address of the [TLS](#) is 0x58:

Listing 6.16: Optimizing MSVC 2013 x64

```

_TLS    SEGMENT
rand_state DD  01H DUP (?)
_TLS    ENDS

_DATA   SEGMENT
$SG85451 DB    '%d', 0aH, 00H
_DATA   ENDS

_TEXT   SEGMENT

init$ = 8
my_srand PROC
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR _tls_index
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR gs:88 ; 58h
    mov    r8d, OFFSET FLAT:rand_state
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR [rax+r8d*8]
    mov    DWORD PTR [r8+rax], ecx
    ret    0
my_srand ENDP

my_rand PROC
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR gs:88 ; 58h
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR _tls_index
    mov    edx, OFFSET FLAT:rand_state
    mov    rcx, QWORD PTR [rax+rcx*8]
    imul   eax, DWORD PTR [rcx+r8d], 1664525 ; 0019660dH

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    add    eax, 1013904223      ; 3c6ef35fH
    mov    DWORD PTR [rcx+rdx], eax
    and    eax, 32767          ; 00007fffH
    ret    0
my_rand ENDP

_TEXT    ENDS

```

Initialized TLS data

Let's say, we want to set some fixed value to `rand_state`, so in case the programmer forgets to, the `rand_state` variable would be initialized to some constant anyway (line 9):

```

1 #include <stdint.h>
2 #include <windows.h>
3 #include <winnt.h>
4
5 // from the Numerical Recipes book:
6 #define RNG_a 1664525
7 #define RNG_c 1013904223
8
9 __declspec( thread ) uint32_t rand_state=1234;
10
11 void my_srand (uint32_t init)
12 {
13     rand_state = init;
14 }
15
16 int my_rand ()
17 {
18     rand_state = rand_state*RNG_a;
19     rand_state = rand_state+RNG_c;
20     return rand_state & 0x7fff;
21 }
22
23 int main()
24 {
25     printf ("%d\n", my_rand());
26 }

```

The code is not different from what we already saw, but in IDA we see:

```

.tls:00404000 ; Segment type: Pure data
.tls:00404000 ; Segment permissions: Read/Write
.tls:00404000 _tls           segment para public 'DATA' use32
.tls:00404000                         assume cs:_tls
.tls:00404000                         ;org 404000h
.tls:00404000 TlsStart            db    0          ; DATA XREF:
    .rdata:TlsDirectory
.tls:00404001            db    0
.tls:00404002            db    0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
.tls:00404003          db    0
.tls:00404004          dd 1234
.tls:00404008 TlsEnd      db    0           ; DATA XREF: .rdata:TlsEnd_ptr
...
```

1234 is there and every time a new thread starts, a new **TLS** is allocated for it, and all this data, including 1234, will be copied there.

This is a typical scenario:

- Thread A is started. A **TLS** is created for it, 1234 is copied to `rand_state`.
- The `my_rand()` function is called several times in thread A. `rand_state` is different from 1234.
- Thread B is started. A **TLS** is created for it, 1234 is copied to `rand_state`, while thread A has a different value in the same variable.

TLS callbacks

But what if the variables in the **TLS** have to be filled with some data that must be prepared in some unusual way?

Let's say, we've got the following task: the programmer can forget to call the `my_srand()` function to initialize the **PRNG**, but the generator has to be initialized at start with something truly random, instead of 1234. This is a case in which **TLS** callbacks can be used.

The following code is not very portable due to the hack, but nevertheless, you get the idea.

What we do here is define a function (`tls_callback()`) which is to be called *before* the process and/or thread start.

The function initializes the **PRNG** with the value returned by `GetTickCount()` function.

```
#include <stdint.h>
#include <windows.h>
#include <winnt.h>

// from the Numerical Recipes book:
#define RNG_a 1664525
#define RNG_c 1013904223

__declspec( thread ) uint32_t rand_state;

void my_srand (uint32_t init)
{
    rand_state=init;
}

void NTAPI tls_callback(PVOID a, DWORD dwReason, PVOID b)
{
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        my_srand (GetTickCount());
}

#pragma data_seg(".CRT$XLB")
PIMAGE_TLS_CALLBACK p_thread_callback = tls_callback;
#pragma data_seg()

int my_rand ()
{
    rand_state=rand_state*RNG_a;
    rand_state=rand_state+RNG_c;
    return rand_state & 0xffff;
}

int main()
{
    // rand_state is already initialized at the moment (using
    // GetTickCount())
    printf ("%d\n", my_rand());
}

```

Let's see it in IDA:

Listing 6.17: Optimizing MSVC 2013

```

.text:00401020 TlsCallback_0    proc near             ; DATA XREF:
    .rdata:TlsCallbacks
    call    ds:GetTickCount
    push   eax
    call   my_srand
    pop    ecx
    retn   0Ch
    .text:0040102D TlsCallback_0    endp

...
.rdata:004020C0 TlsCallbacks      dd offset TlsCallback_0 ; DATA XREF:
    .rdata:TlsCallbacks_ptr
...
.rdata:00402118 TlsDirectory     dd offset TlsStart
.rdata:0040211C TlsEnd_ptr       dd offset TlsEnd
.rdata:00402120 TlsIndex_ptr     dd offset TlsIndex
.rdata:00402124 TlsCallbacks_ptr dd offset TlsCallbacks
.rdata:00402128 TlsSizeOfZeroFill dd 0
.rdata:0040212C TlsCharacteristics dd 300000h

```

TLS callback functions are sometimes used in unpacking routines to obscure their processing.

Some people may be confused and be in the dark that some code executed right before the [OEP⁴](#).

⁴Original Entry Point

Linux

Here is how a thread-local global variable is declared in GCC:

```
__thread uint32_t rand_state=1234;
```

This is not the standard C/C++ modifier, but a rather GCC-specific one ⁵.

The GS: selector is also used to access the [TLS](#), but in a somewhat different way:

Listing 6.18: Optimizing GCC 4.8.1 x86

```
.text:08048460 my_srand      proc near
.text:08048460
.text:08048460 arg_0         = dword ptr  4
.text:08048460
.text:08048460             mov     eax, [esp+arg_0]
.text:08048464             mov     gs:0FFFFFFFCh, eax
.text:0804846A             retn
.text:0804846A my_srand      endp

.text:08048470 my_rand       proc near
.text:08048470             imul   eax, gs:0FFFFFFFCh, 19660Dh
.text:0804847B             add    eax, 3C6EF35Fh
.text:08048480             mov    gs:0FFFFFFFCh, eax
.text:08048486             and    eax, 7FFFh
.text:0804848B             retn
.text:0804848B my_rand       endp
```

More about it: [Ulrich Drepper, *ELF Handling For Thread-Local Storage*, (2013)]⁶.

6.3 System calls (`syscall`s)

As we know, all running processes inside an [OS](#) are divided into two categories: those having full access to the hardware (“kernel space”) and those that do not (“user space”).

The [OS](#) kernel and usually the drivers are in the first category.

All applications are usually in the second category.

For example, Linux kernel is in *kernel space*, but Glibc in *user space*.

This separation is crucial for the safety of the [OS](#): it is very important not to give to any process the possibility to screw up something in other processes or even in the [OS](#) kernel. On the other hand, a failing driver or error inside the [OS](#)’s kernel usually leads to a kernel panic or [BSOD](#)⁷.

The protection in the x86 processors allows to separate everything into 4 levels of protection (rings), but both in Linux and in Windows only two are used: ring0 (“kernel space”) and ring3 (“user space”).

⁵<https://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/gcc-3.3/gcc/C99-Thread-Local-Edits.html>

⁶Also available as <http://www.akkadia.org/drepper/tls.pdf>

⁷Blue Screen of Death

System calls (syscall-s) are a point where these two areas are connected.

It can be said that this is the main [API](#) provided to applications.

As in [Windows NT](#), the syscalls table resides in the [SSDT⁸](#).

The usage of syscalls is very popular among shellcode and computer viruses authors, because it is hard to determine the addresses of needed functions in the system libraries, but it is easier to use syscalls. However, much more code has to be written due to the lower level of abstraction of the [API](#).

It is also worth noting that the syscall numbers may be different in various OS versions.

6.3.1 Linux

In Linux, a syscall is usually called via `int 0x80`. The call's number is passed in the `EAX` register, and any other parameters —in the other registers.

Listing 6.19: A simple example of the usage of two syscalls

```
section .text
global _start

_start:
    mov    edx,len ; buffer len
    mov    ecx,msg ; buffer
    mov    ebx,1   ; file descriptor. 1 is for stdout
    mov    eax,4   ; syscall number. 4 is for sys_write
    int    0x80

    mov    eax,1   ; syscall number. 1 is for sys_exit
    int    0x80

section .data

msg    db  'Hello, world!',0xa
len    equ $ - msg
```

Compilation:

```
nasm -f elf32 1.s
ld 1.o
```

The full list of syscalls in Linux: <http://syscalls.kernelgrok.com/>.

For system calls interception and tracing in Linux, strace([7.2.3 on page 1022](#)) can be used.

6.3.2 Windows

Here they are called via `int 0x2e` or using the special x86 instruction SYSENTER.

⁸System Service Dispatch Table

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The full list of syscalls in Windows: <http://j00ru.vexillium.org/ntapi/>.

Further reading:

“Windows Syscall Shellcode” by Piotr Bania: <http://www.symantec.com/connect/articles/windows-syscall-shellcode>.

6.4 Linux

6.4.1 Position-independent code

While analyzing Linux shared (.so) libraries, one may frequently spot this code pattern:

Listing 6.20: libc-2.17.so x86

```
.text:0012D5E3 __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx proc near ; CODE XREF: sub_17350+3
.text:0012D5E3                         ; sub_173CC+4 ...
.text:0012D5E3     mov     ebx, [esp+0]
.text:0012D5E6     retn
.text:0012D5E6 __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx endp

...
.text:000576C0 sub_576C0      proc near ; CODE XREF: tmpfile+73
...

.text:000576C0     push    ebp
.text:000576C1     mov     ecx, large gs:0
.text:000576C8     push    edi
.text:000576C9     push    esi
.text:000576CA     push    ebx
.text:000576CB     call    __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx
.text:000576D0     add    ebx, 157930h
.text:000576D6     sub    esp, 9Ch

...
.text:000579F0     lea    eax, (a__gen_tempname - 1AF000h)[ebx] ;
"__gen_tempname"
.text:000579F6     mov    [esp+0ACh+var_A0], eax
.text:000579FA     lea    eax, (a__SysdepsPosix - 1AF000h)[ebx] ;
"../sysdeps posix/tempname.c"
.text:00057A00     mov    [esp+0ACh+var_A8], eax
.text:00057A04     lea    eax, (aInvalidKindIn_ - 1AF000h)[ebx] ;
"! \"invalid KIND in __gen_tempname\""
.text:00057A0A     mov    [esp+0ACh+var_A4], 14Ah
.text:00057A12     mov    [esp+0ACh+var_AC], eax
.text:00057A15     call   __assert_fail
```

All pointers to strings are corrected by some constants and the value in EBX, which is calculated at the beginning of each function.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

This is the so-called [PIC](#), it is intended to be executable if placed at any random point of memory, that is why it cannot contain any absolute memory addresses.

[PIC](#) was crucial in early computer systems and is still crucial today in embedded systems without virtual memory support (where all processes are placed in a single continuous memory block).

It is also still used in *NIX systems for shared libraries, since they are shared across many processes while loaded in memory only once. But all these processes can map the same shared library at different addresses, so that is why a shared library has to work correctly without using any absolute addresses.

Let's do a simple experiment:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int global_variable=123;

int f1(int var)
{
    int rt=global_variable+var;
    printf ("returning %d\n", rt);
    return rt;
}
```

Let's compile it in GCC 4.7.3 and see the resulting .so file in [IDA](#):

```
gcc -fPIC -shared -O3 -o 1.so 1.c
```

Listing 6.21: GCC 4.7.3

```
.text:00000440          public __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx
.text:00000440  __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx proc near             ;
  CODE XREF: _init_proc+4
|.text:00000440          ;  

| deregister_tm_clones+4 ...
|.text:00000440          mov      ebx, [esp+0]
|.text:00000443          retn
.text:00000443  __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx endp

.text:00000570          public f1
.text:00000570  f1      proc near
|.text:00000570          ;  

|.text:00000570  var_1C    = dword ptr -1Ch
|.text:00000570  var_18    = dword ptr -18h
|.text:00000570  var_14    = dword ptr -14h
|.text:00000570  var_8     = dword ptr -8
|.text:00000570  var_4     = dword ptr -4
|.text:00000570  arg_0     = dword ptr 4
|.text:00000570          sub      esp, 1Ch
|.text:00000573          mov      [esp+1Ch+var_8], ebx
|.text:00000577          call    __x86_get_pc_thunk_bx
|.text:0000057C          add      ebx, 1A84h
|.text:00000582          mov      [esp+1Ch+var_4], esi
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

.text:00000586	mov	eax, ds:(global_variable_ptr - 2000h) ↴ [ebx]
.text:0000058C	mov	esi, [eax]
.text:0000058E	lea	eax, (aReturningD - 2000h)[ebx] ;
"returning %d\n"		
.text:00000594	add	esi, [esp+1Ch+arg_0]
.text:00000598	mov	[esp+1Ch+var_18], eax
.text:0000059C	mov	[esp+1Ch+var_1C], 1
.text:000005A3	mov	[esp+1Ch+var_14], esi
.text:000005A7	call	__printf_chk
.text:000005AC	mov	eax, esi
.text:000005AE	mov	ebx, [esp+1Ch+var_8]
.text:000005B2	mov	esi, [esp+1Ch+var_4]
.text:000005B6	add	esp, 1Ch
.text:000005B9	retn	
.text:000005B9 f1	endp	

That's it: the pointers to «*returning %d\n*» and *global_variable* are to be corrected at each function execution.

The `__x86_get_pc_thunk_bx()` function returns in EBX the address of the point after a call to itself (0x57C here).

That's a simple way to get the value of the program counter (EIP) at some point. The 0x1A84 constant is related to the difference between this function's start and the so-called *Global Offset Table Procedure Linkage Table* (GOT PLT), the section right after the *Global Offset Table* (GOT), where the pointer to *global_variable* is. [IDA](#) shows these offsets in their processed form to make them easier to understand, but in fact the code is:

.text:00000577	call	<code>__x86_get_pc_thunk_bx</code>
.text:0000057C	add	ebx, 1A84h
.text:00000582	mov	[esp+1Ch+var_4], esi
.text:00000586	mov	eax, [ebx-0Ch]
.text:0000058C	mov	esi, [eax]
.text:0000058E	lea	eax, [ebx-1A30h]

Here EBX points to the GOT PLT section and to calculate a pointer to *global_variable* (which is stored in the GOT), 0xC must be subtracted.

To calculate pointer to the «*returning %d\n*» string, 0x1A30 must be subtracted.

By the way, that is the reason why the AMD64 instruction set supports RIP⁹-relative addressing — to simplify PIC-code.

Let's compile the same C code using the same GCC version, but for x64.

[IDA](#) would simplify the resulting code but would suppress the RIP-relative addressing details, so we are going to use `objdump` instead of IDA to see everything:

00000000000000720 <f1>:		
720: 48 8b 05 b9 08 20 00	mov	rax,QWORD PTR [rip+0x2008b9]
↴ ;		
200fe0 <_DYNAMIC+0x1d0>		

⁹program counter in AMD64

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

727:	53	push	rbx
728:	89 fb	mov	ebx,edi
72a:	48 8d 35 20 00 00 00	lea	rsi,[rip+0x20]
751 <_fini+0x9>			;
731:	bf 01 00 00 00	mov	edi,0x1
736:	03 18	add	ebx,DWORD PTR [rax]
738:	31 c0	xor	eax, eax
73a:	89 da	mov	edx, ebx
73c:	e8 df fe ff ff	call	620 <_printf_chk@plt>
741:	89 d8	mov	eax,ebx
743:	5b	pop	rbx
744:	c3	ret	

0x2008b9 is the difference between the address of the instruction at 0x720 and *global_variable*, and 0x20 is the difference between the address of the instruction at 0x72A and the «*returning %d\n*» string.

As you might see, the need to recalculate addresses frequently makes execution slower (it is better in x64, though).

So it is probably better to link statically if you care about performance [see: Agner Fog, *Optimizing software in C++* (2015)].

Windows

The PIC mechanism is not used in Windows DLLs. If the Windows loader needs to load DLL on another base address, it “patches” the DLL in memory (at the *FIXUP* places) in order to correct all addresses.

This implies that several Windows processes cannot share an once loaded DLL at different addresses in different process’ memory blocks — since each instance that’s loaded in memory is *fixed* to work only at these addresses..

6.4.2 *LD_PRELOAD* hack in Linux

This allows us to load our own dynamic libraries before others, even before system ones, like *libc.so.6*.

This, in turn, allows us to “substitute” our written functions before the original ones in the system libraries. For example, it is easy to intercept all calls to *time()*, *read()*, *write()*, etc.

Let’s see if we can fool the *uptime* utility. As we know, it tells how long the computer has been working. With the help of *strace* ([7.2.3 on page 1022](#)), it is possible to see that the utility takes this information the */proc/uptime* file:

```
$ strace uptime
...
open("/proc/uptime", O_RDONLY)      = 3
lseek(3, 0, SEEK_SET)              = 0
read(3, "416166.86 414629.38\n", 2047) = 20
...
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

It is not a real file on disk, it is a virtual one and its contents are generated on fly in the Linux kernel. There are just two numbers:

```
$ cat /proc/uptime
416690.91 415152.03
```

What we can learn from Wikipedia ¹⁰:

The first number is the total number of seconds the system has been up. The second number is how much of that time the machine has spent idle, in seconds.

Let's try to write our own dynamic library with the open(), read(), close() functions working as we need.

At first, our open() will compare the name of the file to be opened with what we need and if it is so, it will write down the descriptor of the file opened.

Second, read(), if called for this file descriptor, will substitute the output, and in the rest of the cases will call the original read() from libc.so.6. And also close(), will note if the file we are currently following is to be closed.

We are going to use the dlopen() and dlsym() functions to determine the original function addresses in libc.so.6.

We need them because we must pass control to the “real” functions.

On the other hand, if we intercepted strcmp() and monitored each string comparisons in the program, then we would have to implement our version of strcmp(), and not use the original function ¹¹, that would be easier.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdbool.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include <dlfcn.h>
#include <string.h>

void *libc_handle = NULL;
int (*open_ptr)(const char *, int) = NULL;
int (*close_ptr)(int) = NULL;
ssize_t (*read_ptr)(int, void*, size_t) = NULL;

bool init = false;

_Noreturn void die (const char * fmt, ...)
{
    va_list va;
    va_start (va, fmt);
```

¹⁰<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Uptime>

¹¹For example, here is how simple strcmp() interception works in this article ¹² written by Yong Huang

```

    vprintf (fmt, va);
    exit(0);
}

static void find_original_functions ()
{
    if (initied)
        return;

    libc_handle = dlopen ("libc.so.6", RTLD_LAZY);
    if (libc_handle==NULL)
        die ("can't open libc.so.6\n");

    open_ptr = dlsym (libc_handle, "open");
    if (open_ptr==NULL)
        die ("can't find open()\n");

    close_ptr = dlsym (libc_handle, "close");
    if (close_ptr==NULL)
        die ("can't find close()\n");

    read_ptr = dlsym (libc_handle, "read");
    if (read_ptr==NULL)
        die ("can't find read()\n");

    initied = true;
}

static int opened_fd=0;

int open(const char *pathname, int flags)
{
    find_original_functions();

    int fd=(*open_ptr)(pathname, flags);
    if (strcmp(pathname, "/proc/uptime")==0)
        opened_fd=fd; // that's our file! record its file descriptor
    else
        opened_fd=0;
    return fd;
};

int close(int fd)
{
    find_original_functions();

    if (fd==opened_fd)
        opened_fd=0; // the file is not opened anymore
    return (*close_ptr)(fd);
};

ssize_t read(int fd, void *buf, size_t count)
{

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

find_original_functions();

if (opened_fd!=0 && fd==opened_fd)
{
    // that's our file!
    return sprintf (buf, count, "%d %d", 0x7fffffff, 0x
    ↴ x7fffffff)+1;
}
// not our file, go to real read() function
return (*read_ptr)(fd, buf, count);
};

```

([Source code](#))

Let's compile it as common dynamic library:

```
gcc -fPIC -shared -Wall -o fool_uptime.so fool_uptime.c -ldl
```

Let's run *uptime* while loading our library before the others:

```
LD_PRELOAD=`pwd`/fool_uptime.so uptime
```

And we see:

```
01:23:02 up 24855 days, 3:14, 3 users, load average: 0.00, 0.01, 0.05
```

If the *LD_PRELOAD*

environment variable always points to the filename and path of our library, it is to be loaded for all starting programs.

More examples:

- Very simple interception of the `strcmp()` (Yong Huang) https://yurichev.com/mirrors/LD_PRELOAD/Yong%20Huang%20LD_PRELOAD.txt
- Kevin Pulo—Fun with *LD_PRELOAD*. A lot of examples and ideas. yurichev.com
- File functions interception for compression/decompression files on fly (zlib). [ftp://metalab.unc.edu/pub/Linux/libs/compression](http://metalab.unc.edu/pub/Linux/libs/compression)

6.5 Windows NT

6.5.1 CRT (win32)

Does the program execution start right at the `main()` function? No, it does not.

If we would open any executable file in *IDA* or *HIEW*, we can see *OEP* pointing to some another code block.

This code is doing some maintenance and preparations before passing control flow to our code. It is called startup-code or CRT code (C RunTime).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The `main()` function takes an array of the arguments passed on the command line, and also one with environment variables. But in fact a generic string is passed to the program, the CRT code finds the spaces in it and cuts it in parts. The CRT code also prepares the environment variables array `envp`.

As for [GUI¹³](#) win32 applications, `WinMain` is used instead of `main()`, having its own arguments:

```
int CALLBACK WinMain(
    _In_ HINSTANCE hInstance,
    _In_ HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
    _In_ LPSTR lpCmdLine,
    _In_ int nCmdShow
);
```

The CRT code prepares them as well.

Also, the number returned by the `main()` function is the exit code.

It may be passed in CRT to the `ExitProcess()` function, which takes the exit code as an argument.

Usually, each compiler has its own CRT code.

Here is a typical CRT code for MSVC 2008.

```
1  __tmainCRTStartup proc near
2
3  var_24 = dword ptr -24h
4  var_20 = dword ptr -20h
5  var_1C = dword ptr -1Ch
6  ms_exc = CPPEH_RECORD ptr -18h
7
8      push    14h
9      push    offset stru_4092D0
10     call    __SEH_prolog4
11     mov     eax, 5A4Dh
12     cmp     ds:400000h, ax
13     jnz    short loc_401096
14     mov     eax, ds:40003Ch
15     cmp     dword ptr [eax+400000h], 4550h
16     jnz    short loc_401096
17     mov     ecx, 10Bh
18     cmp     [eax+400018h], cx
19     jnz    short loc_401096
20     cmp     dword ptr [eax+400074h], 0Eh
21     jbe    short loc_401096
22     xor     ecx, ecx
23     cmp     [eax+4000E8h], ecx
24     setnz  cl
25     mov     [ebp+var_1C], ecx
26     jmp    short loc_40109A
```

¹³Graphical User Interface

```

27
28
29 loc_401096: ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+18
30     ; __tmainCRTStartup+29 ...
31     and    [ebp+var_1C], 0
32
33 loc_40109A: ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+50
34     push   1
35     call   __heap_init
36     pop    ecx
37     test   eax, eax
38     jnz    short loc_4010AE
39     push   1Ch
40     call   _fast_error_exit
41     pop    ecx
42
43 loc_4010AE: ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+60
44     call   __mtinit
45     test   eax, eax
46     jnz    short loc_4010BF
47     push   10h
48     call   _fast_error_exit
49     pop    ecx
50
51 loc_4010BF: ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+71
52     call   sub_401F2B
53     and    [ebp+ms_exc.disabled], 0
54     call   __ioinit
55     test   eax, eax
56     jge    short loc_4010D9
57     push   1Bh
58     call   __amsg_exit
59     pop    ecx
60
61 loc_4010D9: ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+8B
62     call   ds:GetCommandLineA
63     mov    dword_40B7F8, eax
64     call   __crtGetEnvironmentStringsA
65     mov    dword_40AC60, eax
66     call   __setargv
67     test   eax, eax
68     jge    short loc_4010FF
69     push   8
70     call   __amsg_exit
71     pop    ecx
72
73 loc_4010FF: ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+B1
74     call   __setenvp
75     test   eax, eax
76     jge    short loc_401110
77     push   9
78     call   __amsg_exit
79     pop    ecx

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

80
81 loc_401110: ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+C2
82     push    1
83     call    _cinit
84     pop    ecx
85     test    eax, eax
86     jz     short loc_401123
87     push    eax
88     call    __amsg_exit
89     pop    ecx
90
91 loc_401123: ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+D6
92     mov     eax, envp
93     mov     dword_40AC80, eax
94     push    eax          ; envp
95     push    argv          ; argv
96     push    argc          ; argc
97     call    _main
98     add     esp, 0Ch
99     mov     [ebp+var_20], eax
100    cmp    [ebp+var_1C], 0
101    jnz    short $LN28
102    push    eax          ; uExitCode
103    call    $LN32
104
105 $LN28:      ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+105
106    call    __cexit
107    jmp     short loc_401186
108
109
110 $LN27:      ; DATA XREF: .rdata:stru_4092D0
111    mov     eax, [ebp+ms_exc.exc_ptr] ; Exception filter 0 for function
112    401044
113    mov     ecx, [eax]
114    mov     ecx, [ecx]
115    mov     [ebp+var_24], ecx
116    push    eax
117    push    ecx
118    call    __XcptFilter
119    pop     ecx
120    pop     ecx
121 $LN24:
122     retn
123
124
125 $LN14:      ; DATA XREF: .rdata:stru_4092D0
126    mov     esp, [ebp+ms_exc.old_esp] ; Exception handler 0 for function
127    401044
128    mov     eax, [ebp+var_24]
129    mov     [ebp+var_20], eax
130    cmp     [ebp+var_1C], 0
131    jnz    short $LN29
132    push    eax          ; int

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

132     call    __exit
133
134
135 $LN29:      ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+135
136     call    __c_exit
137
138 loc_401186: ; CODE XREF: __tmainCRTStartup+112
139     mov     [ebp+ms_exc.disabled], 0FFFFFFFEh
140     mov     eax, [ebp+var_20]
141     call    __SEH_epilog4
142     retn

```

Here we can see calls to `GetCommandLineA()` (line 62), then to `setargv()` (line 66) and `setenvp()` (line 74), which apparently fill the global variables `argc`, `argv`, `envp`.

Finally, `main()` is called with these arguments (line 97).

There are also calls to functions with self-describing names like `heap_init()` (line 35), `ioinit()` (line 54).

The `heap` is indeed initialized in the [CRT](#). If you try to use `malloc()` in a program without CRT, it will exit abnormally with the following error:

```

runtime error R6030
- CRT not initialized

```

Global object initializations in C++ is also occur in the [CRT](#) before the execution of `main()`: [3.21.4 on page 727](#).

The value that `main()` returns is passed to `cexit()`, or in `$LN32`, which in turn calls `doexit()`.

Is it possible to get rid of the [CRT](#)? Yes, if you know what you are doing.

The [MSVC](#)'s linker has the `/ENTRY` option for setting an entry point.

```

#include <windows.h>

int main()
{
    MessageBox (NULL, "hello, world", "caption", MB_OK);
}

```

Let's compile it in MSVC 2008.

```

cl no_crt.c user32.lib /link /entry:main

```

We are getting a runnable .exe with size 2560 bytes, that has a PE header in it, instructions calling `MessageBox`, two strings in the data segment, the `MessageBox` function imported from `user32.dll` and nothing else.

This works, but you cannot write `WinMain` with its 4 arguments instead of `main()`.

To be precise, you can, but the arguments are not prepared at the moment of execution.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

By the way, it is possible to make the .exe even shorter by aligning the PE sections at less than the default 4096 bytes.

```
cl no_crt.c user32.lib /link /entry:main /align:16
```

Linker says:

```
LINK : warning LNK4108: /ALIGN specified without /DRIVER; image may not run
```

We get an .exe that's 720 bytes. It can be executed in Windows 7 x86, but not in x64 (an error message will be shown when you try to execute it).

With even more efforts, it is possible to make the executable even shorter, but as you can see, compatibility problems arise quickly.

6.5.2 Win32 PE

PE is an executable file format used in Windows. The difference between .exe, .dll and .sys is that .exe and .sys usually do not have exports, only imports.

A DLL¹⁴, just like any other PE-file, has an entry point (OEP) (the function DllMain() is located there) but this function usually does nothing. .sys is usually a device driver. As of drivers, Windows requires the checksum to be present in the PE file and for it to be correct ¹⁵.

Starting at Windows Vista, a driver's files must also be signed with a digital signature. It will fail to load otherwise.

Every PE file begins with tiny DOS program that prints a message like "This program cannot be run in DOS mode."—if you run this program in DOS or Windows 3.1 (OS-es which are not aware of the PE format), this message will be printed.

Terminology

- Module—a separate file, .exe or .dll.
- Process—a program loaded into memory and currently running. Commonly consists of one .exe file and bunch of .dll files.
- Process memory—the memory a process works with. Each process has its own. There usually are loaded modules, memory of the stack, heap(s), etc.
- VA¹⁶—an address which is to be used in program while runtime.
- Base address (of module)—the address within the process memory at which the module is to be loaded. OS loader may change it, if the base address is already occupied by another module just loaded before.
- RVA¹⁷—the VA-address minus the base address.

Many addresses in PE-file tables use RVA-addresses.

¹⁴Dynamic-Link Library

¹⁵For example, Hiew([7.1 on page 1020](#)) can calculate it

¹⁶Virtual Address

¹⁷Relative Virtual Address

-
- [IAT¹⁸](#)—an array of addresses of imported symbols ¹⁹. Sometimes, the IMAGE_DIRECTORY_ENTRY_IAT data directory points at the [IAT](#). It is worth noting that [IDA](#) (as of 6.1) may allocate a pseudo-section named .idata for [IAT](#), even if the [IAT](#) is a part of another section!
 - [INT²⁰](#)—an array of names of symbols to be imported²¹.

Base address

The problem is that several module authors can prepare DLL files for others to use and it is not possible to reach an agreement which addresses is to be assigned to whose modules.

So that is why if two necessary DLLs for a process have the same base address, one of them will be loaded at this base address, and the other—at some other free space in process memory, and each virtual addresses in the second DLL will be corrected.

With [MSVC](#) the linker often generates the .exe files with a base address of 0x4000000²², and with the code section starting at 0x401000. This means that the [RVA](#) of the start of the code section is 0x1000.

DLLs are often generated by MSVC's linker with a base address of 0x10000000²³.

There is also another reason to load modules at various base addresses, in this case random ones. It is [ASLR](#).

A shellcode trying to get executed on a compromised system must call system functions, hence, know their addresses.

In older OS (in [Windows NT](#) line: before Windows Vista), system DLL (like kernel32.dll, user32.dll) were always loaded at known addresses, and if we also recall that their versions rarely changed, the addresses of functions were fixed and shellcode could call them directly.

In order to avoid this, the [ASLR](#) method loads your program and all modules it needs at random base addresses, different every time.

[ASLR](#) support is denoted in a PE file by setting the flag IMAGE_DLL_CHARACTERISTICS_DYNAMIC_BASE [see Mark Russinovich, *Microsoft Windows Internals*].

Subsystem

There is also a *subsystem* field, usually it is:

- native²⁴ (.sys-driver),
- console (console application) or

¹⁸Import Address Table

¹⁹Matt Pietrek, *An In-Depth Look into the Win32 Portable Executable File Format*, (2002)]

²⁰Import Name Table

²¹Matt Pietrek, *An In-Depth Look into the Win32 Portable Executable File Format*, (2002)]

²²The origin of this address choice is described here: [MSDN](#)

²³This can be changed by the /BASE linker option

²⁴Meaning, the module use Native API instead of Win32

-
- [GUI](#) (non-console).

OS version

A PE file also specifies the minimal Windows version it needs in order to be loadable.

The table of version numbers stored in the PE file and corresponding Windows code-names is here²⁵.

For example, [MSVC](#) 2005 compiles .exe files for running on Windows NT4 (version 4.00), but [MSVC](#) 2008 does not (the generated files have a version of 5.00, at least Windows 2000 is needed to run them).

[MSVC](#) 2012 generates .exe files of version 6.00 by default, targeting at least Windows Vista. However, by changing the compiler's options²⁶, it is possible to force it to compile for Windows XP.

Sections

Division in sections, as it seems, is present in all executable file formats.

It is devised in order to separate code from data, and data—from constant data.

- Either the *IMAGE_SCN_CNT_CODE* or *IMAGE_SCN_MEM_EXECUTE* flags will be set on the code section—this is executable code.
- On data section—*IMAGE_SCN_CNT_INITIALIZED_DATA*, *IMAGE_SCN_MEM_READ* and *IMAGE_SCN_MEM_WRITE* flags.
- On an empty section with uninitialized data—*IMAGE_SCN_CNT_UNINITIALIZED_DATA*, *IMAGE_SCN_MEM_READ* and *IMAGE_SCN_MEM_WRITE*.
- On a constant data section (one that's protected from writing), the flags *IMAGE_SCN_CNT_INITIALIZED_DATA* and *IMAGE_SCN_MEM_READ* can be set, but not *IMAGE_SCN_MEM_WRITE*. A process going to crash if it tries to write to this section.

Each section in PE-file may have a name, however, it is not very important. Often (but not always) the code section is named `.text`, the data section—`.data`, the constant data section — `.rdata` (*readable data*) (perhaps, `.rdata` means *read-only-data*). Other popular section names are:

- `.idata`—imports section. [IDA](#) may create a pseudo-section named like this: [6.5.2 on the previous page](#).
- `.edata`—exports section (rare)
- `.pdata`—section holding all information about exceptions in Windows NT for MIPS, IA64 and x64: [6.5.3 on page 1012](#)
- `.reloc`—relocs section

²⁵[Wikipédia](#)

²⁶[MSDN](#)

- .bss—uninitialized data ([BSS](#))
- .tls—thread local storage ([TLS](#))
- .rsrc—resources
- .CRT—may present in binary files compiled by ancient MSVC versions

PE file packers/encryptors often garble section names or replace the names with their own.

[MSVC](#) allows you to declare data in arbitrarily named section ²⁷.

Some compilers and linkers can add a section with debugging symbols and other debugging information (MinGW for instance). However it is not so in latest versions of [MSVC](#) (separate [PDB](#) files are used there for this purpose).

That is how a PE section is described in the file:

```
typedef struct _IMAGE_SECTION_HEADER {
    BYTE Name[IMAGE_SIZEOF_SHORT_NAME];
    union {
        DWORD PhysicalAddress;
        DWORD VirtualSize;
    } Misc;
    DWORD VirtualAddress;
    DWORD SizeOfRawData;
    DWORD PointerToRawData;
    DWORD PointerToRelocations;
    DWORD PointerToLinenumbers;
    WORD NumberOfRelocations;
    WORD NumberOfLinenumbers;
    DWORD Characteristics;
} IMAGE_SECTION_HEADER, *PIMAGE_SECTION_HEADER;
```

²⁸

A word about terminology: *PointerToRawData* is called “Offset” in Hiew and *VirtualAddress* is called “RVA” there.

Data section

Data section in file can be smaller than in memory. For example, some variables can be initialized, some are not. Compiler and linker will collect them all into one section, but the first part of it is initialized and allocated in file, while another is absent in file (of course, to make it smaller). *VirtualSize* will be equal to the size of section in memory, and *SizeOfRawData* — to size of section in file.

IDA can show the border between initialized and not initialized parts like that:

```
...
```

²⁷ [MSDN](#)

²⁸ [MSDN](#)

.data:10017FFA	db	0
.data:10017FFB	db	0
.data:10017FFC	db	0
.data:10017FFD	db	0
.data:10017FFE	db	0
.data:10017FFF	db	0
.data:10018000	db	? ;
.data:10018001	db	? ;
.data:10018002	db	? ;
.data:10018003	db	? ;
.data:10018004	db	? ;
.data:10018005	db	? ;
...		

.rdata — read-only data section

Strings are usually located here (because they have `const char*` type), other variables marked as *const*, imported function names.

See also: [3.3 on page 597](#).

Relocations (relocs)

AKA FIXUP-s (at least in Hiew).

They are also present in almost all executable file formats ²⁹. Exceptions are shared dynamic libraries compiled with PIC, or any other PIC-code.

What are they for?

Obviously, modules can be loaded on various base addresses, but how to deal with global variables, for example? They must be accessed by address. One solution is position-independent code ([6.4.1 on page 967](#)). But it is not always convenient.

That is why a relocations table is present. There the addresses of points that must be corrected are enumerated, in case of loading at a different base address.

For example, there is a global variable at address 0x410000 and this is how it is accessed:

A1 00 00 41 00	mov	eax, [000410000]
----------------	-----	------------------

The base address of the module is 0x400000, the RVA of the global variable is 0x10000.

If the module is loaded at base address 0x500000, the real address of the global variable must be 0x510000.

As we can see, the address of variable is encoded in the instruction MOV, after the byte 0xA1.

That is why the address of the 4 bytes after 0xA1, is written in the relocs table.

²⁹Even in .exe files for MS-DOS

If the module is loaded at a different base address, the [OS](#) loader enumerates all addresses in the table,

finds each 32-bit word the address points to, subtracts the original base address from it (we get the [RVA](#) here), and adds the new base address to it.

If a module is loaded at its original base address, nothing happens.

All global variables can be treated like that.

Relocs may have various types, however, in Windows for x86 processors, the type is usually

IMAGE_REL_BASED_HIGHLOW.

By the way, relocs are darkened in Hiew, for example: [fig.1.21](#). (You have to circumvent these bytes during patching.)

OllyDbg underlines the places in memory to which relocs are to be applied, for example: [fig.1.52](#).

Exports and imports

As we all know, any executable program must use the [OS](#)'s services and other DLL-libraries somehow.

It can be said that functions from one module (usually DLL) must be connected somehow to the points of their calls in other modules (.exe-file or another DLL).

For this, each DLL has an “exports” table, which consists of functions plus their addresses in a module.

And every .exe file or DLL has “imports”, a table of functions it needs for execution including list of DLL filenames.

After loading the main .exe-file, the [OS](#) loader processes imports table: it loads the additional DLL-files, finds function names among the DLL exports and writes their addresses down in the [IAT](#) of the main .exe-module.

As we can see, during loading the loader must compare a lot of function names, but string comparison is not a very fast procedure, so there is a support for “ordinals” or “hints”, which are function numbers stored in the table, instead of their names.

That is how they can be located faster when loading a DLL. Ordinals are always present in the “export” table.

For example, a program using the [MFC³⁰](#) library usually loads mfc*.dll by ordinals, and in such programs there are no [MFC](#) function names in [INT](#).

When loading such programs in [IDA](#), it will ask for a path to the mfc*.dll files in order to determine the function names.

If you don't tell [IDA](#) the path to these DLLs, there will be *mfc80_123* instead of function names.

³⁰Microsoft Foundation Classes

Imports section

Often a separate section is allocated for the imports table and everything related to it (with name like `.idata`), however, this is not a strict rule.

Imports are also a confusing subject because of the terminological mess. Let's try to collect all information in one place.

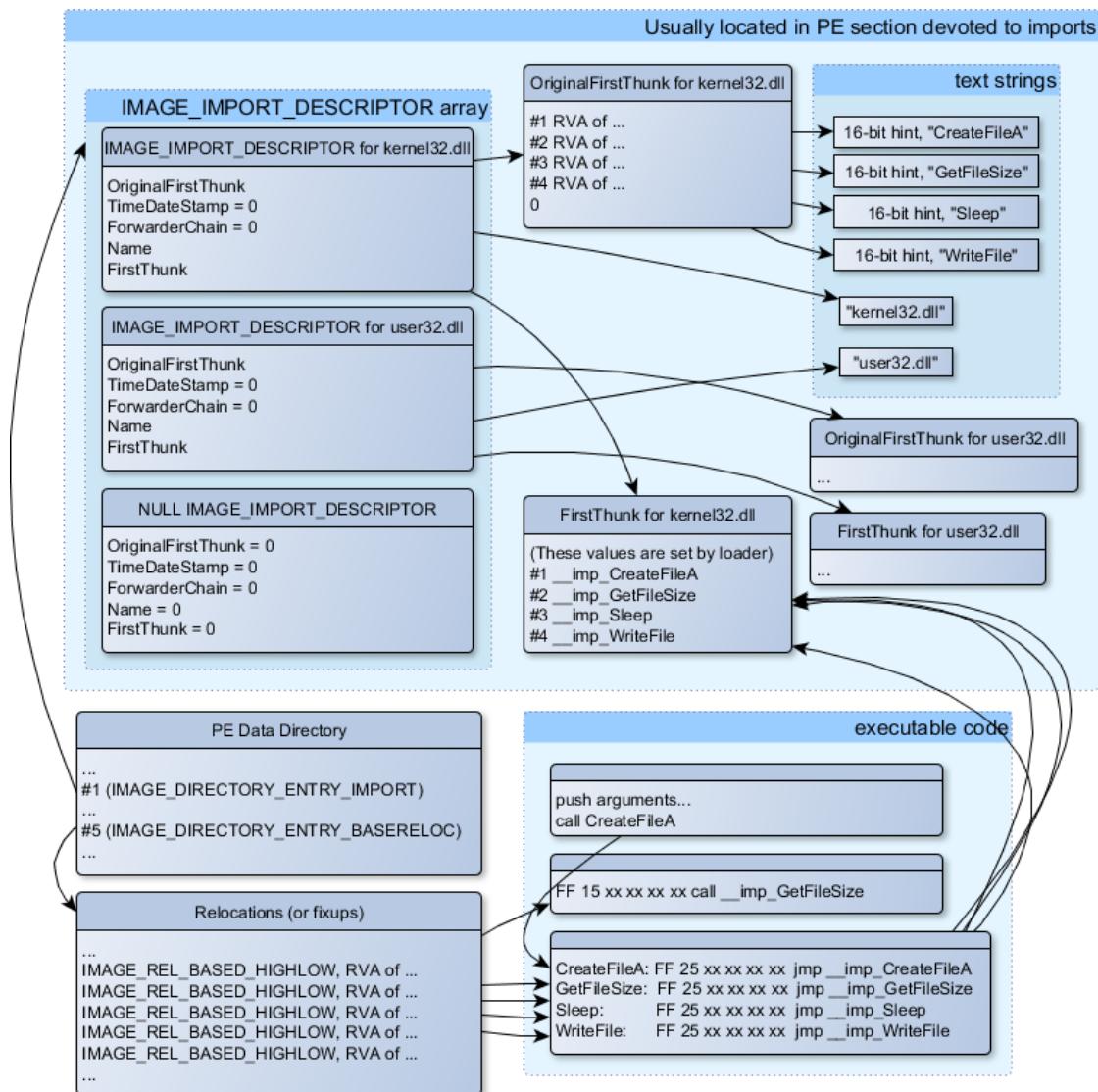


Figure 6.1: A scheme that unites all PE-file structures related to imports

The main structure is the array `IMAGE_IMPORT_DESCRIPTOR`. Each element for each DLL being imported.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
`<book@beginners.re>`. Thanks!

Each element holds the [RVA](#) address of the text string (DLL name) (*Name*).

OriginalFirstThunk is the [RVA](#) address of the [INT](#) table. This is an array of [RVA](#) addresses, each of which points to a text string with a function name. Each string is prefixed by a 16-bit integer (“hint”)—“ordinal” of function.

While loading, if it is possible to find a function by ordinal, then the strings comparison will not occur. The array is terminated by zero.

There is also a pointer to the [IAT](#) table named *FirstThunk*, it is just the [RVA](#) address of the place where the loader writes the addresses of the resolved functions.

The points where the loader writes addresses are marked by [IDA](#) like this: `_imp_CreateFileA`, etc.

There are at least two ways to use the addresses written by the loader.

- The code will have instructions like `call _imp_CreateFileA`, and since the field with the address of the imported function is a global variable in some sense, the address of the `call` instruction (plus 1 or 2) is to be added to the relocs table, for the case when the module is loaded at a different base address.

But, obviously, this may enlarge relocs table significantly.

Because there are might be a lot of calls to imported functions in the module.

Furthermore, large relocs table slows down the process of loading modules.

- For each imported function, there is only one jump allocated, using the `JMP` instruction plus a reloc to it. Such points are also called “thunks”.

All calls to the imported functions are just `CALL` instructions to the corresponding “thunk”. In this case, additional relocs are not necessary because these `CALL`-s have relative addresses and do not need to be corrected.

These two methods can be combined.

Possible, the linker creates individual “thunk”s if there are too many calls to the function, but not done by default.

By the way, the array of function addresses to which *FirstThunk* is pointing is not necessary to be located in the [IAT](#) section. For example, the author of these lines once wrote the `PE_add_import31` utility for adding imports to an existing .exe-file.

Some time earlier, in the previous versions of the utility, at the place of the function you want to substitute with a call to another DLL, my utility wrote the following code:

```
MOV EAX, [yourdll.dll!function]
JMP EAX
```

FirstThunk points to the first instruction. In other words, when loading `yourdll.dll`, the loader writes the address of the *function* function right in the code.

It also worth noting that a code section is usually write-protected, so my utility adds the

³¹yurichev.com

IMAGE_SCN_MEM_WRITE flag for code section. Otherwise, the program to crash while loading with error code 5 (access denied).

One might ask: what if I supply a program with a set of DLL files which is not supposed to change (including addresses of all DLL functions), is it possible to speed up the loading process?

Yes, it is possible to write the addresses of the functions to be imported into the FirstThunk arrays in advance.

The *Timestamp* field is present in the *IMAGE_IMPORT_DESCRIPTOR* structure.

If a value is present there, then the loader compares this value with the date-time of the DLL file.

If the values are equal, then the loader does not do anything, and the loading of the process can be faster. This is called “old-style binding” ³².

The BIND.EXE utility in Windows SDK is for this. For speeding up the loading of your program, Matt Pietrek in Matt Pietrek, *An In-Depth Look into the Win32 Portable Executable File Format*, (2002)]³³, suggests to do the binding shortly after your program installation on the computer of the end user.

PE-files packers/encryptors may also compress/encrypt imports table.

In this case, the Windows loader, of course, will not load all necessary DLLs.

Therefore, the packer/encryptor does this on its own, with the help of *LoadLibrary()* and the *GetProcAddress()* functions.

That is why these two functions are often present in *IAT* in packed files.

In the standard DLLs from the Windows installation, *IAT* often is located right at the beginning of the PE file. Supposedly, it is made so for optimization.

While loading, the .exe file is not loaded into memory as a whole (recall huge install programs which are started suspiciously fast), it is “mapped”, and loaded into memory in parts as they are accessed.

Probably, Microsoft developers decided it will be faster.

Resources

Resources in a PE file are just a set of icons, pictures, text strings, dialog descriptions.

Perhaps they were separated from the main code, so all these things could be multilingual, and it would be simpler to pick text or picture for the language that is currently set in the *OS*.

As a side effect, they can be edited easily and saved back to the executable file, even if one does not have special knowledge, by using the ResHack editor, for example ([6.5.2 on the next page](#)).

³²MSDN. There is also the “new-style binding”.

³³Also available as <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/magazine/bb985992.aspx>

.NET

.NET programs are not compiled into machine code but into a special bytecode. Strictly speaking, there is bytecode instead of the usual x86 code in the .exe file, however, the entry point ([OEP](#)) points to this tiny fragment of x86 code:

jmp mscoree.dll!_CorExeMain

The .NET loader is located in mscoree.dll, which processes the PE file.

It was so in all pre-Windows XP [OSes](#). Starting from XP, the [OS](#) loader is able to detect the .NET file and run it without executing that JMP instruction ^{[34](#)}.

TLS

This section holds initialized data for the [TLS](#)([6.2 on page 959](#)) (if needed). When a new thread start, its [TLS](#) data is initialized using the data from this section.

Aside from that, the PE file specification also provides initialization of the [TLS](#) section, the so-called TLS callbacks.

If they are present, they are to be called before the control is passed to the main entry point ([OEP](#)).

This is used widely in the PE file packers/encryptors.

Tools

- objdump (present in cygwin) for dumping all PE-file structures.
- Hiew([7.1 on page 1020](#)) as editor.
- pefile—Python-library for PE-file processing ^{[35](#)}.
- ResHack [AKA](#) Resource Hacker—resources editor^{[36](#)}.
- PE_add_import^{[37](#)} — simple tool for adding symbol(s) to PE executable import table.
- PE_patcher^{[38](#)}—simple tool for patching PE executables.
- PE_search_str_refs^{[39](#)}—simple tool for searching for a function in PE executables which use some text string.

³⁴[MSDN](#)

³⁵<https://code.google.com/p/pefile/>

³⁶<https://code.google.com/p/pefile/>

³⁷http://yurichev.com/PE_add_imports.html

³⁸yurichev.com

³⁹yurichev.com

Further reading

- Daniel Pistelli—The .NET File Format ⁴⁰

6.5.3 Windows SEH

Let's forget about MSVC

In Windows, the **SEH** is intended for exceptions handling, nevertheless, it is language-agnostic, not related to C++ or **OOP** in any way.

Here we are going to take a look at **SEH** in its isolated (from C++ and MSVC extensions) form.

Each running process has a chain of **SEH** handlers, each **TIB** has the address of the most recently defined handler.

When an exception occurs (division by zero, incorrect address access, user exception triggered by calling the `RaiseException()` function), the **OS** finds the last handler in the **TIB** and calls it, passing exception kind and all information about the **CPU** state (register values, etc.) at the moment of the exception.

The exception handler considering the exception, does it see something familiar? If so, it handles the exception.

If not, it signals to the **OS** that it cannot handle it and the **OS** calls the next handler in the chain, until a handler which is able to handle the exception is found.

At the very end of the chain there a standard handler that shows the well-known dialog box, informing the user about a process crash, some technical information about the **CPU** state at the time of the crash, and offering to collect all information and send it to developers in Microsoft.

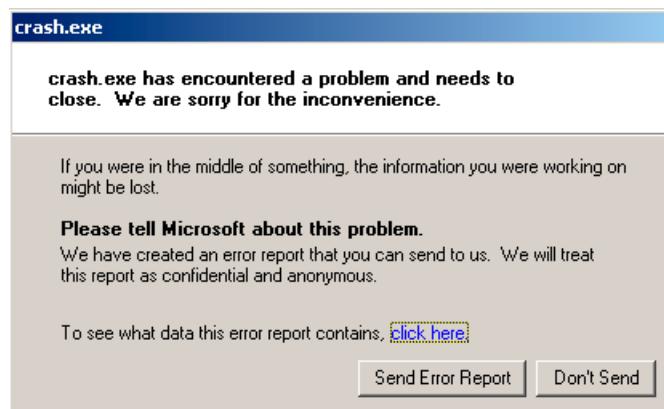


Figure 6.2: Windows XP

⁴⁰<http://www.codeproject.com/Articles/12585/The-NET-File-Format>

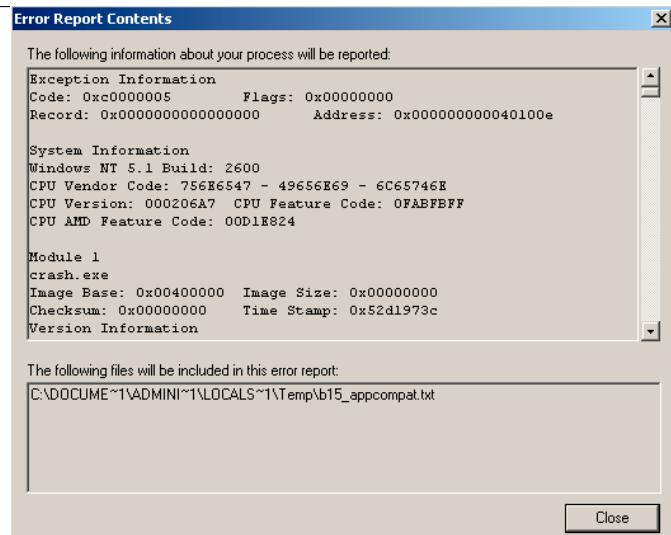


Figure 6.3: Windows XP

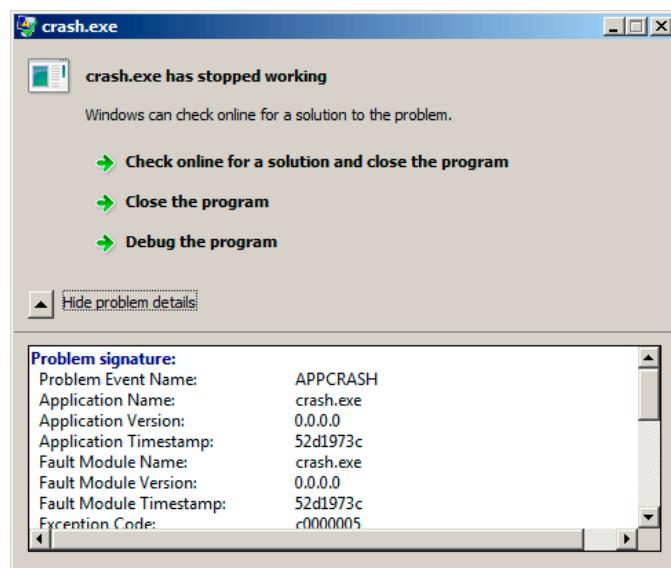


Figure 6.4: Windows 7

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

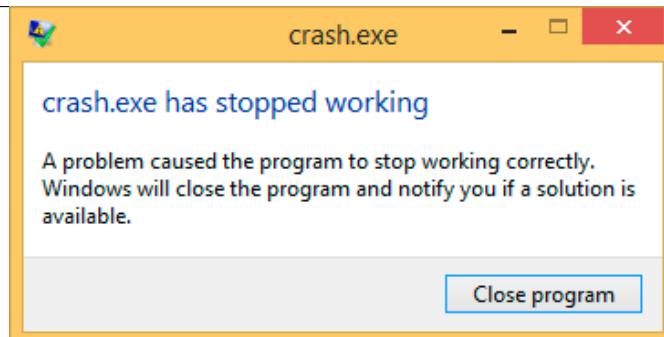


Figure 6.5: Windows 8.1

Earlier, this handler was called Dr. Watson.

By the way, some developers make their own handler that sends information about the program crash to themselves. It is registered with the help of `SetUnhandledExceptionFilter()` and to be called if the OS does not have any other way to handle the exception. An example is Oracle RDBMS—it saves huge dumps reporting all possible information about the CPU and memory state.

Let's write our own primitive exception handler. This example is based on the example from [Matt Pietrek, *A Crash Course on the Depths of Win32™ Structured Exception Handling*, (1997)]⁴¹. It must be compiled with the `SAFESEH` option: `cl seh1.cpp /link /safeseh:no`. More about `SAFESEH` here: [MSDN](#).

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>

DWORD new_value=1234;

EXCEPTION_DISPOSITION __cdecl except_handler(
    struct _EXCEPTION_RECORD *ExceptionRecord,
    void * EstablisherFrame,
    struct _CONTEXT *ContextRecord,
    void * DispatcherContext )
{
    unsigned i;

    printf ("%s\n", __FUNCTION__);
    printf ("ExceptionRecord->ExceptionCode=0x%p\n", ExceptionRecord->⤦
    ↴ ExceptionCode);
    printf ("ExceptionRecord->ExceptionFlags=0x%p\n", ExceptionRecord->⤦
    ↴ ExceptionFlags);
    printf ("ExceptionRecord->ExceptionAddress=0x%p\n", ExceptionRecord->⤦
    ↴ ->ExceptionAddress);

    if (ExceptionRecord->ExceptionCode==0xE1223344)
    {
        printf ("That's for us\n");
    }
}
```

⁴¹Also available as <http://www.microsoft.com/msj/0197/Exception/Exception.aspx>

```

        // yes, we "handled" the exception
        return ExceptionContinueExecution;
    }
    else if (ExceptionRecord->ExceptionCode==EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION)
    {
        printf ("ContextRecord->Eax=0x%08X\n", ContextRecord->Eax);
        // will it be possible to 'fix' it?
        printf ("Trying to fix wrong pointer address\n");
        ContextRecord->Eax=(DWORD)&new_value;
        // yes, we "handled" the exception
        return ExceptionContinueExecution;
    }
    else
    {
        printf ("We do not handle this\n");
        // someone else's problem
        return ExceptionContinueSearch;
    };
}

int main()
{
    DWORD handler = (DWORD)except_handler; // take a pointer to our
    handler

    // install exception handler
    __asm
    {
        record:                                // make EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION
        push    handler           // address of handler function
        push    FS:[0]            // address of previous handler
        mov     FS:[0],ESP        // add new EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION
    }

    RaiseException (0xE1223344, 0, 0, NULL);

    // now do something very bad
    int* ptr=NULL;
    int val=0;
    val=*ptr;
    printf ("val=%d\n", val);

    // deinstall exception handler
    __asm
    {
        record                                // remove our EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION
        mov     eax,[ESP]          // get pointer to previous record
        mov     FS:[0], EAX         // install previous record
        add     esp, 8              // clean our EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION
    off stack
    }

    return 0;
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

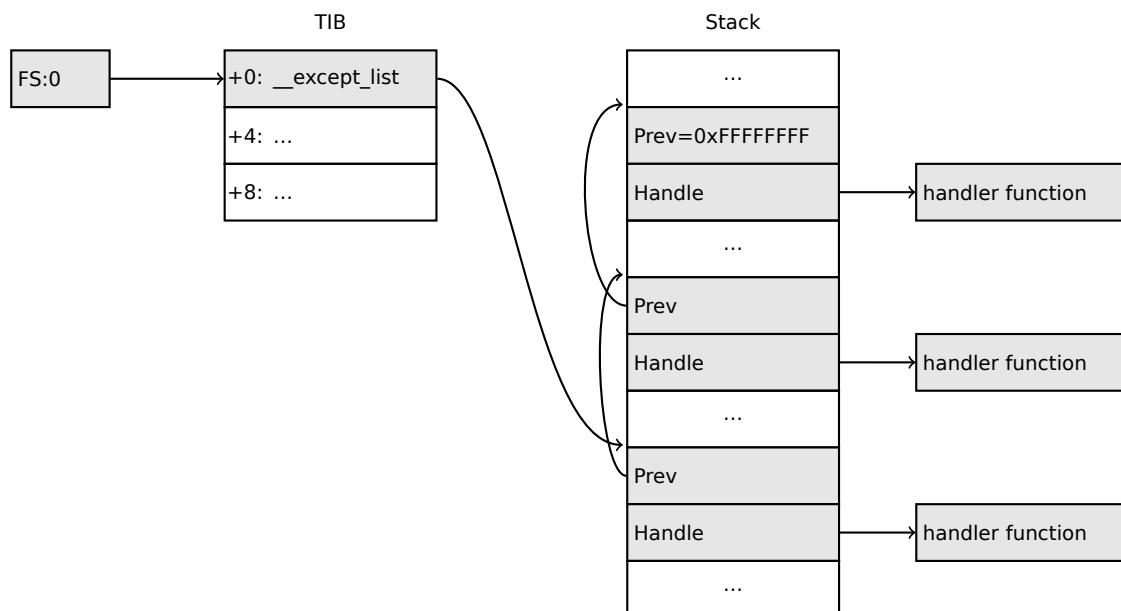
The FS: segment register is pointing to the TIB in win32.

The very first element in the TIB is a pointer to the last handler in the chain. We save it in the stack and store the address of our handler there. The structure is named `_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION`, it is a simple singly-linked list and its elements are stored right in the stack.

Listing 6.22: MSVC/VC/crt/src/exsup.inc

```
_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION struct
    prev    dd      ?
    handler dd      ?
_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION ends
```

So each “handler” field points to a handler and an each “prev” field points to the previous record in the chain of exception handlers. The last record has `0xFFFFFFFF` (-1) in the “prev” field.



After our handler is installed, we call `RaiseException()`⁴². This is an user exception. The handler checks the code. If the code is `0xE1223344`, it returning `ExceptionContinueExecution`, which means that handler corrected the CPU state (it is usually a correction of the EIP/ESP registers) and the OS can resume the execution of the thread. If you alter slightly the code so the handler returns `ExceptionContinueSearch`,

then the OS will call the other handlers, and it's unlikely that one who can handle it will be found, since no one will have any information about it (rather about its code). You will see the standard Windows dialog about a process crash.

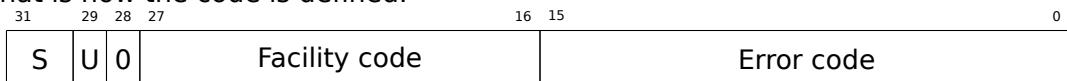
What is the difference between a system exceptions and a user one? Here are the system ones:

⁴²[MSDN](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

as defined in WinBase.h	as defined in ntstatus.h	value
EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION	STATUS_ACCESS_VIOLATION	0xC0000005
EXCEPTION_DATATYPE_MISALIGNMENT	STATUS_DATATYPE_MISALIGNMENT	0x80000002
EXCEPTION_BREAKPOINT	STATUS_BREAKPOINT	0x80000003
EXCEPTION_SINGLE_STEP	STATUS_SINGLE_STEP	0x80000004
EXCEPTION_ARRAY_BOUNDS_EXCEEDED	STATUS_ARRAY_BOUNDS_EXCEEDED	0xC000008C
EXCEPTION_FLT_DENORMAL_OPERAND	STATUS_FLOAT_DENORMAL_OPERAND	0xC000008D
EXCEPTION_FLT_DIVIDE_BY_ZERO	STATUS_FLOAT_DIVIDE_BY_ZERO	0xC000008E
EXCEPTION_FLT_INEXACT_RESULT	STATUS_FLOAT_INEXACT_RESULT	0xC000008F
EXCEPTION_FLT_INVALID_OPERATION	STATUS_FLOAT_INVALID_OPERATION	0xC0000090
EXCEPTION_FLT_OVERFLOW	STATUS_FLOAT_OVERFLOW	0xC0000091
EXCEPTION_FLT_STACK_CHECK	STATUS_FLOAT_STACK_CHECK	0xC0000092
EXCEPTION_FLT_UNDERFLOW	STATUS_FLOAT_UNDERFLOW	0xC0000093
EXCEPTION_INT_DIVIDE_BY_ZERO	STATUS_INTEGER_DIVIDE_BY_ZERO	0xC0000094
EXCEPTION_INT_OVERFLOW	STATUS_INTEGER_OVERFLOW	0xC0000095
EXCEPTION_PRIV_INSTRUCTION	STATUS_PRIVILEGED_INSTRUCTION	0xC0000096
EXCEPTION_IN_PAGE_ERROR	STATUS_IN_PAGE_ERROR	0xC0000006
EXCEPTION_ILLEGAL_INSTRUCTION	STATUS_ILLEGAL_INSTRUCTION	0xC000001D
EXCEPTION_NONCONTINUABLE_EXCEPTION	STATUS_NONCONTINUABLE_EXCEPTION	0xC0000025
EXCEPTION_STACK_OVERFLOW	STATUS_STACK_OVERFLOW	0xC00000FD
EXCEPTION_INVALID_DISPOSITION	STATUS_INVALID_DISPOSITION	0xC0000026
EXCEPTION_GUARD_PAGE	STATUS_GUARD_PAGE_VIOLATION	0x80000001
EXCEPTION_INVALID_HANDLE	STATUS_INVALID_HANDLE	0xC0000008
EXCEPTION_POSSIBLE_DEADLOCK	STATUS_POSSIBLE_DEADLOCK	0xC0000194
CONTROL_C_EXIT	STATUS_CONTROL_C_EXIT	0xC000013A

That is how the code is defined:



S is a basic status code: 11—error; 10—warning; 01—informational; 00—success.
U—whether the code is user code.

That is why we chose 0xE1223344—E₁₆ (1110₂) 0xE (1110b) means that it is 1) user exception; 2) error.

But to be honest, this example works fine without these high bits.

Then we try to read a value from memory at address 0.

Of course, there is nothing at this address in win32, so an exception is raised.

The very first handler is to be called—yours, and it will know about it first, by checking the code if it's equal to the EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION constant.

The code that's reading from memory at address 0 is looks like this:

Listing 6.23: MSVC 2010

```

...
xor    eax, eax
mov    eax, DWORD PTR [eax] ; exception will occur here
push   eax
push   OFFSET msg

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

call    _printf
add    esp, 8
...

```

Will it be possible to fix this error “on the fly” and to continue with program execution?

Yes, our exception handler can fix the EAX value and let the [OS](#) execute this instruction once again. So that is what we do. `printf()` prints 1234, because after the execution of our handler EAX is not 0, but contains the address of the global variable `new_value`. The execution will resume.

That is what is going on: the memory manager in the [CPU](#) signals about an error, the [CPU](#) suspends the thread, finds the exception handler in the Windows kernel, which, in turn, starts to call all handlers in the [SEH](#) chain, one by one.

We use MSVC 2010 here, but of course, there is no any guarantee that EAX will be used for this pointer.

This address replacement trick is showy, and we considering it here as an illustration of [SEH](#)’s internals. Nevertheless, it’s hard to recall any case where it is used for “on-the-fly” error fixing.

Why SEH-related records are stored right in the stack instead of some other place?

Supposedly because the [OS](#) is not needing to care about freeing this information, these records are simply disposed when the function finishes its execution. This is somewhat like `alloca()`: ([1.9.2 on page 47](#)).

Now let’s get back to MSVC

Supposedly, Microsoft programmers needed exceptions in C, but not in C++ (for use in Windows NT kernel, which is written in C), so they added a non-standard C extension to MSVC⁴³. It is not related to C++ [PL](#) exceptions.

```

try
{
    ...
}
except(filter code)
{
    handler code
}

```

“Finally” block may be instead of handler code:

```

try
{
    ...
}
finally
{
    ...
}

```

⁴³[MSDN](#)

```
{}
```

The filter code is an expression, telling whether this handler code corresponds to the exception raised.

If your code is too big and cannot fit into one expression, a separate filter function can be defined.

There are a lot of such constructs in the Windows kernel. Here are a couple of examples from there ([WRK](#)):

Listing 6.24: WRK-v1.2/base/ntos/ob/obwait.c

```
try {

    KeReleaseMutant( (PKMUTANT)SignalObject,
                      MUTANT_INCREMENT,
                      FALSE,
                      TRUE );

} except((GetExceptionCode () == STATUS_ABANDONED ||
          GetExceptionCode () == STATUS_MUTANT_NOT_OWNED)?
          EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER :
          EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_SEARCH) {
    Status = GetExceptionCode();

    goto WaitExit;
}
```

Listing 6.25: WRK-v1.2/base/ntos/cache/cachesub.c

```
try {

    RtlCopyBytes( (PVOID)((PCHAR)CacheBuffer + PageOffset),
                  UserBuffer,
                  MorePages ?
                  (PAGE_SIZE - PageOffset) :
                  (ReceivedLength - PageOffset) );

} except( CcCopyReadExceptionFilter( GetExceptionInformation(),
                                    &Status ) ) {
```

Here is also a filter code example:

Listing 6.26: WRK-v1.2/base/ntos/cache/copysup.c

```
LONG
CcCopyReadExceptionFilter(
    IN PEXCEPTION_POINTERS ExceptionPointer,
    IN PNTSTATUS ErrorCode
)

/*++
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Routine Description:

This routine serves as an exception filter and has the special job of extracting the "real" I/O error when Mm raises STATUS_IN_PAGE_ERROR beneath us.

Arguments:

ExceptionPointer - A pointer to the exception record that contains the real Io Status.

ExceptionCode - A pointer to an NTSTATUS that is to receive the real status.

Return Value:

```
EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER
--*/
{
    *ExceptionCode = ExceptionPointer->ExceptionRecord->ExceptionCode;

    if ( (*ExceptionCode == STATUS_IN_PAGE_ERROR) &&
        (ExceptionPointer->ExceptionRecord->NumberParameters >= 3) ) {

        *ExceptionCode = (NTSTATUS) ExceptionPointer->ExceptionRecord->
        ↓ ExceptionInformation[2];
    }

    ASSERT( !NT_SUCCESS(*ExceptionCode) );

    return EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER;
}
```

Internally, SEH is an extension of the OS-supported exceptions. But the handler function is `_except_handler3` (for SEH3) or `_except_handler4` (for SEH4).

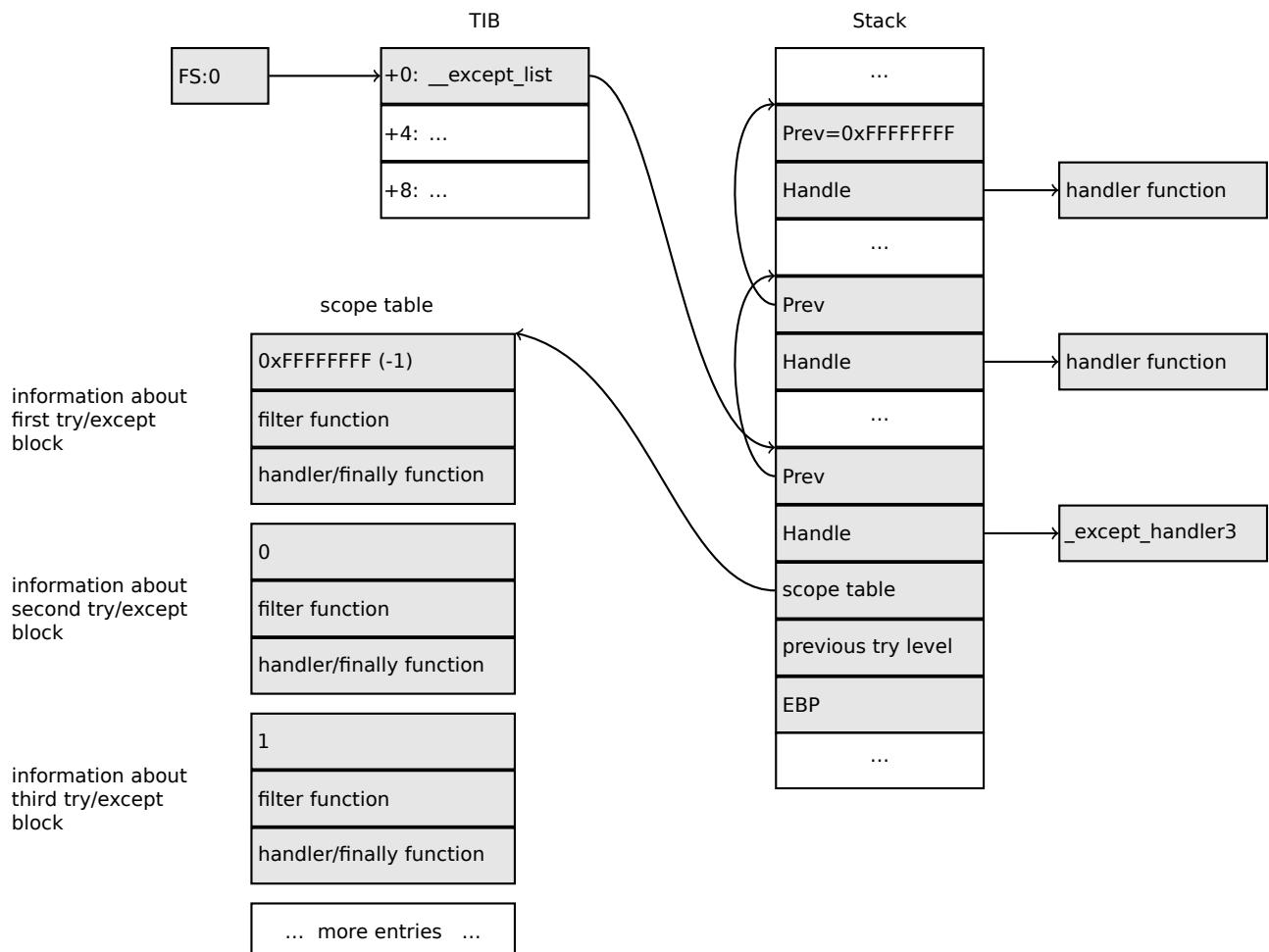
The code of this handler is MSVC-related, it is located in its libraries, or in `msvcr*.dll`. It is very important to know that SEH is a MSVC thing.

Other win32-compilers may offer something completely different.

SEH3

SEH3 has `_except_handler3` as a handler function, and extends the `_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION` table, adding a pointer to the *scope table* and *previous try level* variable. SEH4 extends the *scope table* by 4 values for buffer overflow protection.

The *scope table* is a table that consists of pointers to the filter and handler code blocks, for each nested level of *try/except*.



Again, it is very important to understand that the OS takes care only of the *prev/handle* fields, and nothing more.

It is the job of the `_except_handler3` function to read the other fields and *scope table*, and decide which handler to execute and when.

The source code of the `_except_handler3` function is closed.

However, Sanos OS, which has a win32 compatibility layer, has the same functions reimplemented, which are somewhat equivalent to those in Windows⁴⁴. Another reimplementation is present in Wine⁴⁵ and ReactOS⁴⁶.

If the *filter* pointer is NULL, the *handler* pointer is the pointer to the *finally* code block.

⁴⁴<https://code.google.com/p/sanos/source/browse/src/win32/msvcrt/except.c>

⁴⁵[GitHub](#)

⁴⁶http://doxygen.reactos.org/d4/df2/lib_2sdk_2crt_2except_2except_8c_source.html

During execution, the *previous try level* value in the stack changes, so `_except_handler3` can get information about the current level of nestedness, in order to know which *scope table* entry to use.

SEH3: one try/except block example

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <windows.h>
#include <excpt.h>

int main()
{
    int* p = NULL;
    __try
    {
        printf("hello #1!\n");
        *p = 13;      // causes an access violation exception;
        printf("hello #2!\n");
    }
    __except(GetExceptionCode() == EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION ?
             EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER : EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_SEARCH)
    {
        printf("access violation, can't recover\n");
    }
}
```

Listing 6.27: MSVC 2003

```
$SG74605 DB      'hello #1!', 0Ah, 00H
$SG74606 DB      'hello #2!', 0Ah, 00H
$SG74608 DB      'access violation, can't recover', 0Ah, 00H
_DATA    ENDS

; scope table:
CONST    SEGMENT
$T74622  DD      0xffffffffH ; previous try level
          DD      FLAT:$L74617 ; filter
          DD      FLAT:$L74618 ; handler

CONST    ENDS
_TEXT    SEGMENT
$T74621 = -32 ; size = 4
_p$ = -28      ; size = 4
__$SEHRec$ = -24 ; size = 24
_main    PROC NEAR
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    -1                      ; previous try level
    push    OFFSET FLAT:$T74622    ; scope table
    push    OFFSET FLAT:_except_handler3 ; handler
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR fs:_except_list
    push    eax                      ; prev
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    DWORD PTR fs:_except_list, esp
    add    esp, -16
; 3 registers to be saved:
    push   ebx
    push   esi
    push   edi
    mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp], esp
    mov    DWORD PTR _p$[ebp], 0
    mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; previous try level
    push   OFFSET FLAT:$SG74605 ; 'hello #1!'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _p$[ebp]
    mov    DWORD PTR [eax], 13
    push   OFFSET FLAT:$SG74606 ; 'hello #2!'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -1 ; previous try level
    jmp   SHORT $L74616

; filter code:
$L74617:
$L74627:
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    mov    DWORD PTR $T74621[ebp], eax
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR $T74621[ebp]
    sub    eax, -1073741819; c0000005H
    neg    eax
    sbb    eax, eax
    inc    eax
$L74619:
$L74626:
    ret    0

; handler code:
$L74618:
    mov    esp, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp]
    push  OFFSET FLAT:$SG74608 ; 'access violation, can't recover'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -1 ; setting previous try level back
    to -1
$L74616:
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+8]
    mov    DWORD PTR fs:_except_list, ecx
    pop    edi
    pop    esi
    pop    ebx
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    ret    0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
_main    ENDP
_TEXT    ENDS
END
```

Here we see how the SEH frame is constructed in the stack. The *scope table* is located in the CONST segment—indeed, these fields are not to be changed. An interesting thing is how the *previous try level* variable has changed. The initial value is 0xFFFFFFFF (-1). The moment when the body of the try statement is opened is marked with an instruction that writes 0 to the variable. The moment when the body of the try statement is closed, -1 is written back to it. We also see the addresses of filter and handler code.

Thus we can easily see the structure of the *try/except* constructs in the function.

Since the SEH setup code in the function prologue may be shared between many functions, sometimes the compiler inserts a call to the `SEH_prolog()` function in the prologue, which does just that.

The SEH cleanup code is in the `SEH_epilog()` function.

Let's try to run this example in [tracer](#):

```
tracer.exe -l:2.exe --dump-seh
```

Listing 6.28: tracer.exe output

```
EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION at 2.exe!main+0x44 (0x401054) ↴
  ↳ ExceptionInformation[0]=1
EAX=0x00000000 EBX=0x7efde000 ECX=0x0040cbc8 EDX=0x0008e3c8
ESI=0x00001db1 EDI=0x00000000 EBP=0x0018feac ESP=0x0018fe80
EIP=0x00401054
FLAGS=AF IF RF
* SEH frame at 0x18fe9c prev=0x18ff78 handler=0x401204 (2.exe!) ↴
  ↳ __except_handler3)
SEH3 frame. previous trylevel=0
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-1, filter=0x401070 (2.exe!main+0x
  ↳ x60) handler=0x401088 (2.exe!main+0x78)
* SEH frame at 0x18ff78 prev=0x18ffc4 handler=0x401204 (2.exe!) ↴
  ↳ __except_handler3)
SEH3 frame. previous trylevel=0
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-1, filter=0x401531 (2.exe!
  ↳ mainCRTStartup+0x18d) handler=0x401545 (2.exe!mainCRTStartup+0x1a1)
* SEH frame at 0x18ffc4 prev=0x18ffe4 handler=0x771f71f5 (ntdll.dll!) ↴
  ↳ __except_handler4)
SEH4 frame. previous trylevel=0
SEH4 header:   GSCookieOffset=0xffffffff GSCookieXOROffset=0x0
                EHCookieOffset=0xfffffffcc EHCookieXOROffset=0x0
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-2, filter=0x771f74d0 (ntdll.dll!) ↴
  ↳ __safe_se_handler_table+0x20) handler=0x771f90eb (ntdll.dll!) ↴
  ↳ _TppTerminateProcess@4+0x43)
* SEH frame at 0x18ffe4 prev=0xffffffff handler=0x77247428 (ntdll.dll!) ↴
  ↳ _FinalExceptionHandler@16)
```

We see that the SEH chain consists of 4 handlers.

The first two are located in our example. Two? But we made only one? Yes, another one has been set up in the [CRT](#) function `_mainCRTStartup()`, and as it seems that it handles at least [FPU](#) exceptions. Its source code can be found in the MSVC installation: `crt/src/winxfltr.c`.

The third is the SEH4 one in `ntdll.dll`, and the fourth handler is not MSVC-related and is located in `ntdll.dll`, and has a self-describing function name.

As you can see, there are 3 types of handlers in one chain:

one is not related to MSVC at all (the last one) and two MSVC-related: SEH3 and SEH4.

SEH3: two try/except blocks example

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <windows.h>
#include <excpt.h>

int filter_user_exceptions (unsigned int code, struct _EXCEPTION_POINTERS *ep)
{
    printf("in filter. code=0x%08X\n", code);
    if (code == 0x112233)
    {
        printf("yes, that is our exception\n");
        return EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER;
    }
    else
    {
        printf("not our exception\n");
        return EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_SEARCH;
    };
}
int main()
{
    int* p = NULL;
    __try
    {
        __try
        {
            printf ("hello!\n");
            RaiseException (0x112233, 0, 0, NULL);
            printf ("0x112233 raised. now let's crash\n");
            *p = 13;      // causes an access violation exception;
        }
        __except(GetExceptionCode()==EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION ?
                 EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER : EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_SEARCH)
        {
            printf("access violation, can't recover\n");
        }
    }
}
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        }
    }  

    __except(filter_user_exceptions(GetExceptionCode(), ↴  

        GetExceptionInformation()))  

    {  

        // the filter_user_exceptions() function answering to the question  

        // "is this exception belongs to this block?"  

        // if yes, do the follow:  

        printf("user exception caught\n");
    }
}

```

Now there are two try blocks. So the *scope table* now has two entries, one for each block. *Previous try level* changes as execution flow enters or exits the try block.

Listing 6.29: MSVC 2003

```

$SG74606 DB      'in filter. code=0x%08X', 0aH, 00H
$SG74608 DB      'yes, that is our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG74610 DB      'not our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG74617 DB      'hello!', 0aH, 00H
$SG74619 DB      '0x112233 raised. now let's crash', 0aH, 00H
$SG74621 DB      'access violation, can't recover', 0aH, 00H
$SG74623 DB      'user exception caught', 0aH, 00H

_code$ = 8      ; size = 4
_ep$ = 12      ; size = 4
_filter_user_exceptions PROC NEAR
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _code$[ebp]
    push    eax
    push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74606 ; 'in filter. code=0x%08X'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 8
    cmp    DWORD PTR _code$[ebp], 1122867; 00112233H
    jne    SHORT $L74607
    push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74608 ; 'yes, that is our exception'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov     eax, 1
    jmp    SHORT $L74605
$L74607:
    push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74610 ; 'not our exception'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    xor    eax, eax
$L74605:
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_filter_user_exceptions ENDP

; scope table:
CONST   SEGMENT

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

$T74644 DD 0xffffffffH ; previous try level for outer block
          DD FLAT:$L74634 ; outer block filter
          DD FLAT:$L74635 ; outer block handler
          DD 00H           ; previous try level for inner block
          DD FLAT:$L74638 ; inner block filter
          DD FLAT:$L74639 ; inner block handler
CONST    ENDS

$T74643 = -36      ; size = 4
$T74642 = -32      ; size = 4
_p$ = -28          ; size = 4
__$SEHRec$ = -24   ; size = 24
_main    PROC NEAR
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    -1 ; previous try level
    push    OFFSET FLAT:$T74644
    push    OFFSET FLAT:_except_handler3
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR fs:_except_list
    push    eax
    mov     DWORD PTR fs:_except_list, esp
    add    esp, -20
    push    ebx
    push    esi
    push    edi
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp], esp
    mov     DWORD PTR _p$[ebp], 0
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; outer try block entered. set
    previous try level to 0
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 1 ; inner try block entered. set
    previous try level to 1
    push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74617 ; 'hello!'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    push    0
    push    0
    push    0
    push    1122867 ; 00112233H
    call    DWORD PTR __imp_RaiseException@16
    push    OFFSET FLAT:$SG74619 ; '0x112233 raised. now let's crash'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _p$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax], 13
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; inner try block exited. set
    previous try level back to 0
    jmp    SHORT $L74615

; inner block filter:
$L74638:
$L74650:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    DWORD PTR $T74643[ebp], eax
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR $T74643[ebp]
    sub    eax, -1073741819; c0000005H
    neg    eax
    sbb    eax, eax
    inc    eax
$L74640:
$L74648:
    ret    0

; inner block handler:
$L74639:
    mov    esp, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp]
    push   OFFSET FLAT:$SG74621 ; 'access violation, can't recover'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; inner try block exited. set
previous try level back to 0

$L74615:
    mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -1 ; outer try block exited, set
previous try level back to -1
    jmp   SHORT $L74633

; outer block filter:
$L74634:
$L74651:
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    mov    DWORD PTR $T74642[ebp], eax
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    push   ecx
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR $T74642[ebp]
    push   edx
    call   _filter_user_exceptions
    add    esp, 8
$L74636:
$L74649:
    ret    0

; outer block handler:
$L74635:
    mov    esp, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp]
    push   OFFSET FLAT:$SG74623 ; 'user exception caught'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -1 ; both try blocks exited. set
previous try level back to -1
$L74633:
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+8]
    mov    DWORD PTR fs:_except_list, ecx
    pop    edi

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

pop    esi
pop    ebx
mov    esp, ebp
pop    ebp
ret    0
_main  ENDP

```

If we set a breakpoint on the `printf()` function, which is called from the handler, we can also see how yet another SEH handler is added.

Perhaps it's another machinery inside the SEH handling process. Here we also see our *scope table* consisting of 2 entries.

```
tracer.exe -l:3.exe bpx=3.exe!printf --dump-seh
```

Listing 6.30: tracer.exe output

```

(0) 3.exe!printf
EAX=0x00000001b EBX=0x000000000 ECX=0x0040cc58 EDX=0x0008e3c8
ESI=0x000000000 EDI=0x000000000 EBP=0x0018f840 ESP=0x0018f838
EIP=0x004011b6
FLAGS=PF ZF IF
* SEH frame at 0x18f88c prev=0x18fe9c handler=0x771db4ad (ntdll.dll!
  ↳ ExecuteHandler2@20+0x3a)
* SEH frame at 0x18fe9c prev=0x18ff78 handler=0x4012e0 (3.exe!
  ↳ _except_handler3)
SEH3 frame. previous trylevel=1
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-1, filter=0x401120 (3.exe!main+0x
  ↳ xb0) handler=0x40113b (3.exe!main+0xcb)
scopetable entry[1]. previous try level=0, filter=0x4010e8 (3.exe!main+0x78
  ↳ ) handler=0x401100 (3.exe!main+0x90)
* SEH frame at 0x18ff78 prev=0x18ffc4 handler=0x4012e0 (3.exe!
  ↳ _except_handler3)
SEH3 frame. previous trylevel=0
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-1, filter=0x40160d (3.exe!
  ↳ mainCRTStartup+0x18d) handler=0x401621 (3.exe!mainCRTStartup+0x1a1)
* SEH frame at 0x18ffc4 prev=0x18ffe4 handler=0x771f71f5 (ntdll.dll!
  ↳ _except_handler4)
SEH4 frame. previous trylevel=0
SEH4 header:   GSCookieOffset=0xffffffff GSCookieXOROffset=0x0
               EHCookieOffset=0xffffffffcc EHCookieXOROffset=0x0
scopetable entry[0]. previous try level=-2, filter=0x771f74d0 (ntdll.dll!
  ↳ __safe_se_handler_table+0x20) handler=0x771f90eb (ntdll.dll!
  ↳ _TppTerminateProcess@4+0x43)
* SEH frame at 0x18ffe4 prev=0xffffffff handler=0x77247428 (ntdll.dll!
  ↳ _FinalExceptionHandler@16)

```

SEH4

During a buffer overflow ([1.26.2 on page 340](#)) attack, the address of the *scope table* can be rewritten, so starting from MSVC 2005, SEH3 was upgraded to SEH4 in order

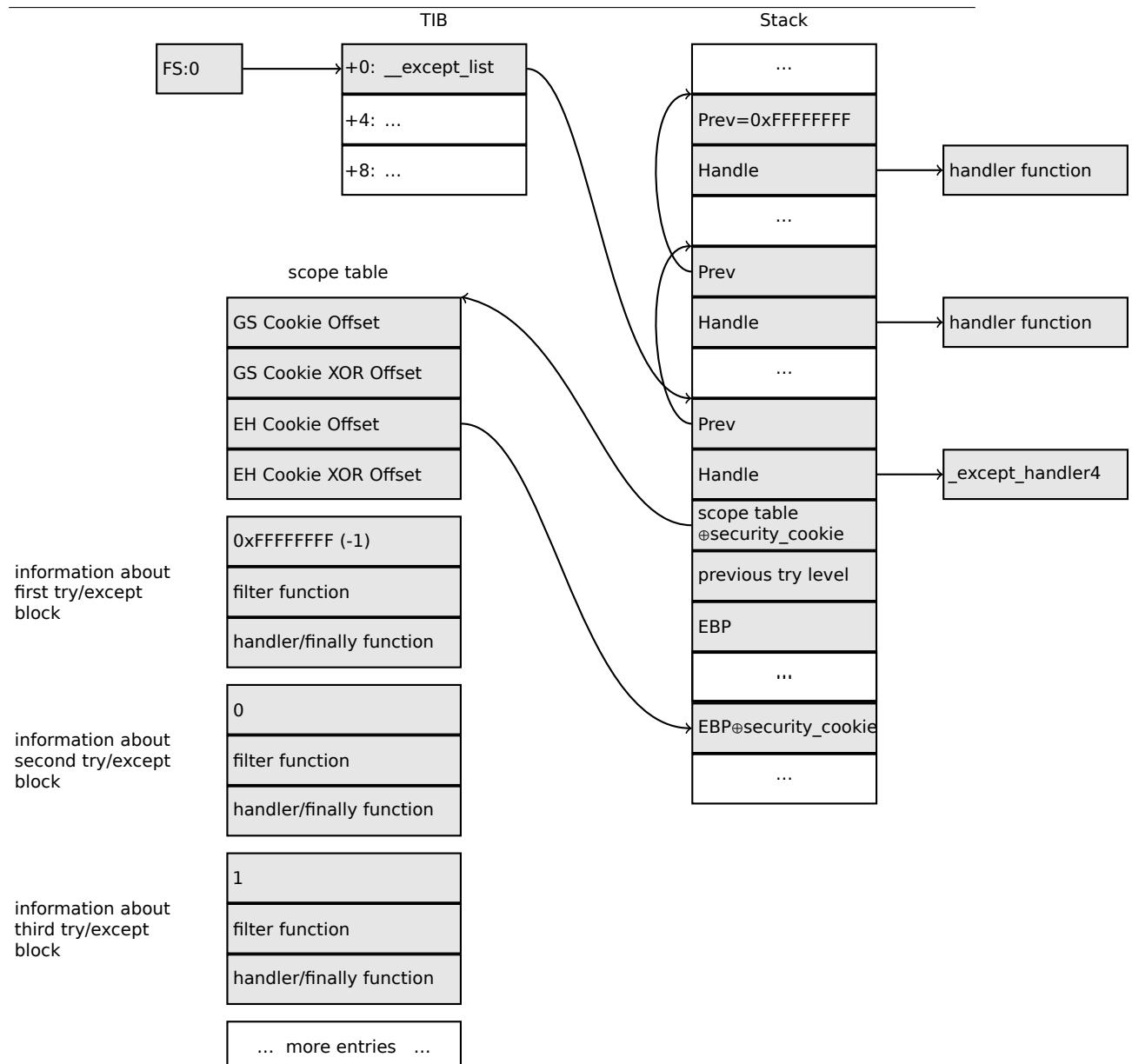
If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

to have buffer overflow protection. The pointer to the *scope table* is now **xored** with a **security cookie**. The *scope table* was extended to have a header consisting of two pointers to *security cookies*.

Each element has an offset inside the stack of another value: the address of the **stack frame** (EBP) **xored** with the *security_cookie*, placed in the stack.

This value will be read during exception handling and checked for correctness. The *security cookie* in the stack is random each time, so hopefully a remote attacker can't predict it.

The initial *previous try level* is -2 in SEH4 instead of -1.



Here are both examples compiled in MSVC 2012 with SEH4:

Listing 6.31: MSVC 2012: one try block example

```
$SG85485 DB      'hello #1!', 0aH, 00H
$SG85486 DB      'hello #2!', 0aH, 00H
$SG85488 DB      'access violation, can''t recover', 0aH, 00H

; scope table:
xdata$x          SEGMENT
__sehtable$_main DD 0fffffeH    ; GS Cookie Offset
                      DD 00H           ; GS Cookie XOR Offset
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

DD      0xffffffffcH    ; EH Cookie Offset
DD      00H             ; EH Cookie XOR Offset
DD      0xfffffffffeH   ; previous try level
DD      FLAT:$LN12@main ; filter
DD      FLAT:$LN8@main  ; handler
xdata$x          ENDS

$T2 = -36           ; size = 4
_p$ = -32           ; size = 4
tv68 = -28          ; size = 4
__$SEHRec$ = -24   ; size = 24
_main    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    -2
    push    OFFSET __sehtable$_main
    push    OFFSET __except_handler4
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR fs:0
    push    eax
    add    esp, -20
    push    ebx
    push    esi
    push    edi
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR __security_cookie
    xor    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+16], eax ; xored pointer to scope table
    xor    eax, ebp
    push    eax           ; ebp ^ security_cookie
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+8] ;
pointer to VC_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION_RECORD
    mov     DWORD PTR fs:0, eax
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp], esp
    mov     DWORD PTR _p$[ebp], 0
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; previous try level
    push    OFFSET $SG85485 ; 'hello #1!'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _p$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax], 13
    push    OFFSET $SG85486 ; 'hello #2!'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -2 ; previous try level
    jmp    SHORT $LN6@main

; filter:
$LN7@main:
$LN12@main:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    mov     DWORD PTR $T2[ebp], eax
    cmp     DWORD PTR $T2[ebp], -1073741819 ; c0000005H
    jne    SHORT $LN4@main
    mov     DWORD PTR tv68[ebp], 1

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    jmp      SHORT $LN5@main
$LN4@main:
    mov      DWORD PTR tv68[ebp], 0
$LN5@main:
    mov      eax, DWORD PTR tv68[ebp]
$LN9@main:
$LN11@main:
    ret      0

; handler:
$LN8@main:
    mov      esp, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp]
    push     OFFSET $SG85488 ; 'access violation, can't recover'
    call     _printf
    add     esp, 4
    mov      DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -2 ; previous try level
$LN6@main:
    xor     eax, eax
    mov      ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+8]
    mov      DWORD PTR fs:0, ecx
    pop     ecx
    pop     edi
    pop     esi
    pop     ebx
    mov      esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    ret      0
_main    ENDP

```

Listing 6.32: MSVC 2012: two try blocks example

```

$SG85486 DB      'in filter. code=0x%08X', 0aH, 00H
$SG85488 DB      'yes, that is our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG85490 DB      'not our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG85497 DB      'hello!!', 0aH, 00H
$SG85499 DB      '0x112233 raised. now let's crash', 0aH, 00H
$SG85501 DB      'access violation, can't recover', 0aH, 00H
$SG85503 DB      'user exception caught', 0aH, 00H

xdata$x      SEGMENT
__sehtable$_main DD 0xfffffffffeH           ; GS Cookie Offset
                  DD 00H                 ; GS Cookie XOR Offset
                  DD 0xfffffffffc8H       ; EH Cookie Offset
                  DD 00H                 ; EH Cookie Offset
                  DD 0xfffffffffeH       ; previous try level for outer block
                  DD FLAT:$LN19@main ; outer block filter
                  DD FLAT:$LN9@main ; outer block handler
                  DD 00H                 ; previous try level for inner block
                  DD FLAT:$LN18@main ; inner block filter
                  DD FLAT:$LN13@main ; inner block handler
xdata$x      ENDS

$T2 = -40        ; size = 4
$T3 = -36        ; size = 4

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

_p$ = -32          ; size = 4
tv72 = -28         ; size = 4
__$SEHRec$ = -24 ; size = 24
_main    PROC
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    -2      ; initial previous try level
    push    OFFSET __sehtable$_main
    push    OFFSET __except_handler4
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR fs:0
    push    eax ; prev
    add     esp, -24
    push    ebx
    push    esi
    push    edi
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR __security_cookie
    xor     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+16], eax      ; xored pointer to scope
    table
    xor     eax, ebp                         ; ebp ^ security_cookie
    push    eax
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+8]      ;
pointer to VC_EXCEPTION_REGISTRATION_RECORD
    mov     DWORD PTR fs:0, eax
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp], esp
    mov     DWORD PTR _p$[ebp], 0
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; entering outer try block,
setting previous try level=0
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 1 ; entering inner try block,
setting previous try level=1
    push    OFFSET $SG85497 ; 'hello!'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    push    0
    push    0
    push    0
    push    1122867 ; 00112233H
    call    DWORD PTR __imp_RaiseException@16
    push    OFFSET $SG85499 ; '0x112233 raised. now let's crash'
    call    _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _p$[ebp]
    mov     DWORD PTR [eax], 13
    mov     DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; exiting inner try block, set
previous try level back to 0
    jmp    SHORT $LN2@main

; inner block filter:
$LN12@main:
$LN18@main:
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    mov     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    mov     DWORD PTR $T3[ebp], eax
    cmp     DWORD PTR $T3[ebp], -1073741819 ; c0000005H
    jne    SHORT $LN5@main

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov    DWORD PTR tv72[ebp], 1
    jmp    SHORT $LN6@main
$LN5@main:
    mov    DWORD PTR tv72[ebp], 0
$LN6@main:
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR tv72[ebp]
$LN14@main:
$LN16@main:
    ret    0

; inner block handler:
$LN13@main:
    mov    esp, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp]
    push   OFFSET $SG85501 ; 'access violation, can't recover'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], 0 ; exiting inner try block, setting
    previous try level back to 0
$LN2@main:
    mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -2 ; exiting both blocks, setting
    previous try level back to -2
    jmp    SHORT $LN7@main

; outer block filter:
$LN8@main:
$LN19@main:
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR [ecx]
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR [edx]
    mov    DWORD PTR $T2[ebp], eax
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+4]
    push   ecx
    mov    edx, DWORD PTR $T2[ebp]
    push   edx
    call   _filter_user_exceptions
    add    esp, 8
$LN10@main:
$LN17@main:
    ret    0

; outer block handler:
$LN9@main:
    mov    esp, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp]
    push   OFFSET $SG85503 ; 'user exception caught'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov    DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+20], -2 ; exiting both blocks, setting
    previous try level back to -2
$LN7@main:
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    ecx, DWORD PTR __$SEHRec$[ebp+8]
    mov    DWORD PTR fs:0, ecx
    pop    ecx
    pop    edi

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

pop    esi
pop    ebx
mov    esp, ebp
pop    ebp
ret    0
_main   ENDP

_code$ = 8 ; size = 4
_ep$ = 12 ; size = 4
_filter_user_exceptions PROC
    push   ebp
    mov    ebp, esp
    mov    eax, DWORD PTR _code$[ebp]
    push   eax
    push   OFFSET $SG85486 ; 'in filter. code=0x%08X'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 8
    cmp    DWORD PTR _code$[ebp], 1122867 ; 00112233H
    jne    SHORT $LN2@filter_use
    push   OFFSET $SG85488 ; 'yes, that is our exception'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
    mov    eax, 1
    jmp    SHORT $LN3@filter_use
    jmp    SHORT $LN3@filter_use
$LN2@filter_use:
    push   OFFSET $SG85490 ; 'not our exception'
    call   _printf
    add    esp, 4
    xor    eax, eax
$LN3@filter_use:
    pop    ebp
    ret    0
_filter_user_exceptions ENDP

```

Here is the meaning of the *cookies*: Cookie Offset is the difference between the address of the saved EBP value in the stack and the $EBP \oplus security_cookie$ value in the stack. Cookie XOR Offset is an additional difference between the $EBP \oplus security_cookie$ value and what is stored in the stack.

If this equation is not true, the process is to halt due to stack corruption:

$$security_cookie \oplus (CookieXOROffset + address_of_saved_EBP) == stack[address_of_saved_EBP + CookieOffset]$$

If Cookie Offset is -2, this implies that it is not present.

Windows x64

As you might think, it is not very fast to set up the SEH frame at each function prologue. Another performance problem is changing the *previous try level* value many times during the function's execution.

So things are changed completely in x64: now all pointers to try blocks, filter and handler functions are stored in another PE segment .pdata, and from there the OS's exception handler takes all the information.

Here are the two examples from the previous section compiled for x64:

Listing 6.33: MSVC 2012

```
$SG86276 DB      'hello #1!', 0aH, 00H
$SG86277 DB      'hello #2!', 0aH, 00H
$SG86279 DB      'access violation, can''t recover', 0aH, 00H

pdata  SEGMENT
$pdata$main DD  imagerel $LN9
          DD  imagerel $LN9+61
          DD  imagerel $unwind$main
pdata  ENDS
pdata  SEGMENT
$pdata$main$filter$0 DD imagerel main$filter$0
          DD  imagerel main$filter$0+32
          DD  imagerel $unwind$main$filter$0
pdata  ENDS
xdata  SEGMENT
$unwind$main DD 020609H
          DD  030023206H
          DD  imagerel __C_specific_handler
          DD  01H
          DD  imagerel $LN9+8
          DD  imagerel $LN9+40
          DD  imagerel main$filter$0
          DD  imagerel $LN9+40
$unwind$main$filter$0 DD 020601H
          DD  050023206H
xdata  ENDS

_TEXT  SEGMENT
main  PROC
$LN9:
    push   rbx
    sub    rsp, 32
    xor    ebx, ebx
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86276 ; 'hello #1!'
    call   printf
    mov    DWORD PTR [rbx], 13
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86277 ; 'hello #2!'
    call   printf
    jmp    SHORT $LN8@main
$LN6@main:
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86279 ; 'access violation, can''t
    recover'
    call   printf
    npad  1 ; align next label
$LN8@main:
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 32
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        pop    rbx
        ret    0
main    ENDP
_TEXT   ENDS

text$x SEGMENT
main$filter$0 PROC
    push   rbp
    sub    rsp, 32
    mov    rbp, rdx
$LN5@main$filter$:
    mov    rax, QWORD PTR [rcx]
    xor    ecx, ecx
    cmp    DWORD PTR [rax], -1073741819; c0000005H
    sete   cl
    mov    eax, ecx
$LN7@main$filter$:
    add    rsp, 32
    pop    rbp
    ret    0
    int    3
main$filter$0 ENDP
text$x ENDS

```

Listing 6.34: MSVC 2012

```

$SG86277 DB      'in filter. code=0x%08X', 0aH, 00H
$SG86279 DB      'yes, that is our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG86281 DB      'not our exception', 0aH, 00H
$SG86288 DB      'hello!', 0aH, 00H
$SG86290 DB      '0x112233 raised. now let's crash', 0aH, 00H
$SG86292 DB      'access violation, can't recover', 0aH, 00H
$SG86294 DB      'user exception caught', 0aH, 00H

pdata   SEGMENT
$pdata$filter_user_exceptions DD imagerel $LN6
    DD    imagerel $LN6+73
    DD    imagerel $unwind$filter_user_exceptions
$pdata$main DD imagerel $LN14
    DD    imagerel $LN14+95
    DD    imagerel $unwind$main
pdata   ENDS
pdata   SEGMENT
$pdata$main$filter$0 DD imagerel main$filter$0
    DD    imagerel main$filter$0+32
    DD    imagerel $unwind$main$filter$0
$pdata$main$filter$1 DD imagerel main$filter$1
    DD    imagerel main$filter$1+30
    DD    imagerel $unwind$main$filter$1
pdata   ENDS

xdata   SEGMENT
$unwind$filter_user_exceptions DD 020601H
    DD    030023206H

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

$unwind$main DD 020609H
    DD 030023206H
    DD imagerel __C_specific_handler
    DD 02H
    DD imagerel $LN14+8
    DD imagerel $LN14+59
    DD imagerel main$filter$0
    DD imagerel $LN14+59
    DD imagerel $LN14+8
    DD imagerel $LN14+74
    DD imagerel main$filter$1
    DD imagerel $LN14+74
$unwind$main$filter$0 DD 020601H
    DD 050023206H
$unwind$main$filter$1 DD 020601H
    DD 050023206H
xdata ENDS

_TEXT SEGMENT
main PROC
$LN14:
    push rbx
    sub  rsp, 32
    xor  ebx, ebx
    lea   rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86288 ; 'hello!'
    call printf
    xor  r9d, r9d
    xor  r8d, r8d
    xor  edx, edx
    mov  ecx, 1122867 ; 00112233H
    call QWORD PTR __imp_RaiseException
    lea   rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86290 ; '0x112233 raised. now let''s
    crash'
    call printf
    mov  DWORD PTR [rbx], 13
    jmp  SHORT $LN13@main
$LN11@main:
    lea   rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86292 ; 'access violation, can''t
    recover'
    call printf
    npad 1 ; align next label
$LN13@main:
    jmp  SHORT $LN9@main
$LN7@main:
    lea   rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86294 ; 'user exception caught'
    call printf
    npad 1 ; align next label
$LN9@main:
    xor  eax, eax
    add  rsp, 32
    pop  rbx
    ret  0
main ENDP

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

text$ SEGMENT
main$filter$0 PROC
    push    rbp
    sub     rsp, 32
    mov     rbp, rdx
$LN10@main$filter$:
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rcx]
    xor     ecx, ecx
    cmp     DWORD PTR [rax], -1073741819; c0000005H
    sete   cl
    mov     eax, ecx
$LN12@main$filter$:
    add     rsp, 32
    pop    rbp
    ret    0
    int    3
main$filter$0 ENDP

main$filter$1 PROC
    push    rbp
    sub     rsp, 32
    mov     rbp, rdx
$LN6@main$filter$:
    mov     rax, QWORD PTR [rcx]
    mov     rdx, rcx
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [rax]
    call    filter_user_exceptions
    npad   1 ; align next label
$LN8@main$filter$:
    add     rsp, 32
    pop    rbp
    ret    0
    int    3
main$filter$1 ENDP
text$ ENDS

_TEXT  SEGMENT
code$ = 48
ep$ = 56
filter_user_exceptions PROC
$LN6:
    push    rbx
    sub     rsp, 32
    mov     ebx, ecx
    mov     edx, ecx
    lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86277 ; 'in filter. code=0x%08X'
    call    printf
    cmp     ebx, 1122867; 00112233H
    jne    SHORT $LN2@filter_use
    lea     rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86279 ; 'yes, that is our exception'
    call    printf
    mov     eax, 1
    add     rsp, 32

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

pop    rbx
ret    0
$LN2@filter_use:
    lea    rcx, OFFSET FLAT:$SG86281 ; 'not our exception'
    call   printf
    xor    eax, eax
    add    rsp, 32
    pop    rbx
    ret    0
filter_user_exceptions ENDP
_TEXT  ENDS

```

Read [Igor Skochinsky, *Compiler Internals: Exceptions and RTTI*, (2012)]⁴⁷ for more detailed information about this.

Aside from exception information, .pdata is a section that contains the addresses of almost all function starts and ends, hence it may be useful for a tools targeted at automated analysis.

Read more about SEH

[Matt Pietrek, *A Crash Course on the Depths of Win32™ Structured Exception Handling*, (1997)]⁴⁸, [Igor Skochinsky, *Compiler Internals: Exceptions and RTTI*, (2012)]⁴⁹.

6.5.4 Windows NT: Critical section

Critical sections in any OS are very important in multithreaded environment, mostly for giving a guarantee that only one thread can access some data in a single moment of time, while blocking other threads and interrupts.

That is how a CRITICAL_SECTION structure is declared in Windows NT line OS:

Listing 6.35: (Windows Research Kernel v1.2) public/sdk/inc/nturtl.h

```

typedef struct _RTL_CRITICAL_SECTION {
    PRTL_CRITICAL_SECTION_DEBUG DebugInfo;

    //
    // The following three fields control entering and exiting the critical
    // section for the resource
    //

    LONG LockCount;
    LONG RecursionCount;
    HANDLE OwningThread;           // from the thread's ClientId->UniqueThread
    HANDLE LockSemaphore;

```

⁴⁷Also available as <http://yurichev.com/mirrors/RE/Recon-2012-Skochinsky-Compiler-Internals.pdf>

⁴⁸Also available as <http://www.microsoft.com/msj/0197/Exception/Exception.aspx>

⁴⁹Also available as <http://yurichev.com/mirrors/RE/Recon-2012-Skochinsky-Compiler-Internals.pdf>

```
    ULONG_PTR SpinCount;           // force size on 64-bit systems when packed
} RTL_CRITICAL_SECTION, *PRTL_CRITICAL_SECTION;
```

That's how EnterCriticalSection() function works:

Listing 6.36: Windows 2008/ntdll.dll/x86 (begin)

```
_RtlEnterCriticalSection@4

var_C      = dword ptr -0Ch
var_8      = dword ptr -8
var_4      = dword ptr -4
arg_0      = dword ptr 8

        mov     edi, edi
        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        sub     esp, 0Ch
        push    esi
        push    edi
        mov     edi, [ebp+arg_0]
        lea     esi, [edi+4] ; LockCount
        mov     eax, esi
        lock btr dword ptr [eax], 0
        jnb    wait ; jump if CF=0

loc_7DE922DD:
        mov     eax, large fs:18h
        mov     ecx, [eax+24h]
        mov     [edi+0Ch], ecx
        mov     dword ptr [edi+8], 1
        pop     edi
        xor     eax, eax
        pop     esi
        mov     esp, ebp
        pop     ebp
        retn   4

... skipped
```

The most important instruction in this code fragment is BTR (prefixed with LOCK):
the zeroth bit is stored in the CF flag and cleared in memory. This is an [atomic operation](#),
blocking all other CPUs' access to this piece of memory (see the LOCK prefix before
the BTR instruction). If the bit at LockCount is 1,
fine, reset it and return from the function: we are in a critical section.
If not—the critical section is already occupied by other thread, so wait.
The wait is performed there using WaitForSingleObject().

And here is how the LeaveCriticalSection() function works:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 6.37: Windows 2008/ntdll.dll/x86 (begin)

```

_RtlLeaveCriticalSection@4 proc near

arg_0          = dword ptr  8

        mov     edi, edi
        push    ebp
        mov     ebp, esp
        push    esi
        mov     esi, [ebp+arg_0]
        add     dword ptr [esi+8], 0FFFFFFFh ; RecursionCount
        jnz    short loc_7DE922B2
        push    ebx
        push    edi
        lea     edi, [esi+4]      ; LockCount
        mov     dword ptr [esi+0Ch], 0
        mov     ebx, 1
        mov     eax, edi
        lock xadd [eax], ebx
        inc     ebx
        cmp     ebx, 0FFFFFFFh
        jnz    loc_7DEA8EB7

loc_7DE922B0:
        pop     edi
        pop     ebx

loc_7DE922B2:
        xor     eax, eax
        pop     esi
        pop     ebp
        retn   4

... skipped

```

XADD is “exchange and add”.

In this case, it adds 1 to LockCount, meanwhile saves initial value of LockCount in the EBX register. However, value in EBX is to be incremented with a help of subsequent INC EBX, and it also will be equal to the updated value of LockCount.

This operation is atomic since it is prefixed by LOCK as well, meaning that all other CPUs or CPU cores in system are blocked from accessing this point in memory.

The LOCK prefix is very important:

without it two threads, each of which works on separate CPU or CPU core can try to enter a critical section and to modify the value in memory, which will result in non-deterministic behavior.

Chapter 7

Tools

Now that Dennis Yurichev has made this book free (libre), it is a contribution to the world of free knowledge and free education. However, for our freedom's sake, we need free (libre) reverse engineering tools to replace the proprietary tools described in this book.

Richard M. Stallman

7.1 Binary analysis

Tools you use when you don't run any process.

- (Free, open-source) *ent*¹: entropy analyzing tool. Read more about entropy: [9.2 on page 1216](#).
- *Hiew*²: for small modifications of code in binary files. Has assembler/disassembler.
- (Free, open-source) *GHex*³: simple hexadecimal editor for Linux.
- (Free, open-source) *xxd* and *od*: standard UNIX utilities for dumping.
- (Free, open-source) *strings*: *NIX tool for searching for ASCII strings in binary files, including executable ones. Sysinternals has alternative⁴ supporting wide char strings (UTF-16, widely used in Windows).
- (Free, open-source) *Binwalk*⁵: analyzing firmware images.

¹<http://www.fourmilab.ch/random/>

²hiew.ru

³<https://wiki.gnome.org/Apps/Ghex>

⁴<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/sysinternals/strings>

⁵<http://binwalk.org/>

-
- (Free, open-source) *binary grep*: a small utility for searching any byte sequence in a big pile of files, including non-executable ones: [GitHub](#). There is also rafind2 in rada.re for the same purpose.

7.1.1 Disassemblers

- *IDA*. An older freeware version is available for download ⁶. Hot-keys cheat-sheet: [.6.1 on page 1341](#)
- *Ghidra*⁷ — free alternative to IDA from [NSA](#).
- *Binary Ninja*⁸
- (Free, open-source) *zynamics BinNavi*⁹
- (Free, open-source) *objdump*: simple command-line utility for dumping and disassembling.
- (Free, open-source) *readelf*¹⁰: dump information about ELF file.

7.1.2 Decompilers

The best known is *Hex-Rays*: <http://hex-rays.com/products/decompiler/>. Read more about it: [11.8 on page 1288](#).

There is also a free alternative from [NSA](#): *Ghidra*¹¹.

7.1.3 Patch comparison/diffing

You may want to use it when you compare original version of some executable and patched one, in order to find what has been patched and why.

- (Free) *zynamics BinDiff*¹²
- (Free, open-source) *Diaphora*¹³

7.2 Live analysis

Tools you use on a live system or during running of a process.

⁶hex-rays.com/products/ida/support/download_freeware.shtml

⁷<https://ghidra-sre.org/>

⁸<http://binary.ninja/>

⁹<https://www.zynamics.com/binnavi.html>

¹⁰<https://sourcery.mentor.com/binutils/docs/binutils/readelf.html>

¹¹<https://ghidra-sre.org/>

¹²<https://www.zynamics.com/software.html>

¹³<https://github.com/joxeankoret/diaphora>

7.2.1 Debuggers

- (Free) *OllyDbg*. Very popular user-mode win32 debugger¹⁴. Hot-keys cheat-sheet: [.6.2 on page 1341](#)
- (Free, open-source) *GDB*. Not quite popular debugger among reverse engineers, because it's intended mostly for programmers. Some commands: [.6.5 on page 1342](#). There is a visual interface for GDB, "GDB dashboard"¹⁵.
- (Free, open-source) *LLDB*¹⁶.
- *WinDbg*¹⁷: kernel debugger for Windows.
- *IDA* has internal debugger.
- (Free, open-source) *Radare AKA rada.re AKA r2*¹⁸. A GUI also exists: *ragui*¹⁹.
- (Free, open-source) *tracer*. The author often uses *tracer*²⁰ instead of a debugger.

The author of these lines stopped using a debugger eventually, since all he needs from it is to spot function arguments while executing, or registers state at some point. Loading a debugger each time is too much, so a small utility called *tracer* was born. It works from command line, allows intercepting function execution, setting breakpoints at arbitrary places, reading and changing registers state, etc.

N.B.: the *tracer* isn't evolving, because it was developed as a demonstration tool for this book, not as everyday tool.

7.2.2 Library calls tracing

*ltrace*²¹.

7.2.3 System calls tracing

strace / dtruss

It shows which system calls (syscalls([6.3 on page 965](#))) are called by a process right now.

For example:

```
# strace df -h
...

```

¹⁴ollydbg.de

¹⁵<https://github.com/cyrus-and/gdb-dashboard>

¹⁶<http://lldb.llvm.org/>

¹⁷<https://developer.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/hardware/windows-driver-kit>

¹⁸<http://rada.re/r/>

¹⁹<http://radare.org/ragui/>

²⁰yurichev.com

²¹<http://www.ltrace.org/>

Mac OS X has dtruss for doing the same.

Cygwin also has strace, but as far as it's known, it works only for .exe-files compiled for the cygwin environment itself.

7.2.4 Network sniffing

Sniffing is intercepting some information you may be interested in.

(Free, open-source) *Wireshark*²² for network sniffing. It has also capability for USB sniffing²³.

Wireshark has a younger (or older) brother *tcpdump*²⁴, simpler command-line tool.

7.2.5 Sysinternals

(Free) Sysinternals (developed by Mark Russinovich)²⁵. At least these tools are important and worth studying: Process Explorer, Handle, VMMap, TCPView, Process Monitor.

7.2.6 Valgrind

(Free, open-source) a powerful tool for detecting memory leaks: <http://valgrind.org/>. Due to its powerful JIT mechanism, Valgrind is used as a framework for other tools.

7.2.7 Emulators

- (Free, open-source) *QEMU*²⁶: emulator for various CPUs and architectures.
 - (Free, open-source) *DosBox*²⁷: MS-DOS emulator, mostly used for retrogaming.
 - (Free, open-source) *SimH*²⁸: emulator of ancient computers, mainframes, etc.

²²<https://www.wireshark.org/>

²³<https://wiki.wireshark.org/CaptureSetup/USB>

²⁴<http://www.tcpdump.org/>

²⁵<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/sysinternals/bb842062>

²⁶<http://qemu.org>

27 <https://www.dosbox.com/>

28 <http://simh.trailing-edge.com/>

7.3 Other tools

*Microsoft Visual Studio Express*²⁹: Stripped-down free version of Visual Studio, convenient for simple experiments.

Some useful options: [.6.3 on page 1342](#).

There is a website named “Compiler Explorer”, allowing to compile small code snippets and see output in various GCC versions and architectures (at least x86, ARM, MIPS): <http://godbolt.org/>—I would have used it myself for the book if I would know about it!

7.3.1 SMT solvers

From the reverse engineer’s perspective, SMT solvers are used when dealing with amateur cryptography, symbolic/concolic execution, ROP chains generation.

For more information, read: https://yurichev.com/writings/SAT_SMT_by_example.pdf.

7.3.2 Calculators

Good calculator for reverse engineer’s needs should support at least decimal, hexadecimal and binary bases, as well as many important operations like XOR and shifts.

- IDA has built-in calculator (“?”).
- rada.re has *rax2*.
- <https://yurichev.com/progcalc/>
- As a last resort, standard calculator in Windows has programmer’s mode.

7.4 Do You Think Something Is Missing Here?

If you know a great tool not listed here, please drop a note:
 <book@beginners.re>.

²⁹visualstudio.com/en-US/products/visual-studio-express-vs

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Chapter 8

Case studies

Instead of epigraph:

Peter Seibel: How do you tackle reading source code? Even reading something in a programming language you already know is a tricky problem.

Donald Knuth: But it's really worth it for what it builds in your brain. So how do I do it? There was a machine called the Bunker Ramo 300 and somebody told me that the Fortran compiler for this machine was really amazingly fast, but nobody had any idea why it worked. I got a copy of the source-code listing for it. I didn't have a manual for the machine, so I wasn't even sure what the machine language was.

But I took it as an interesting challenge. I could figure out BEGIN and then I would start to decode. The operation codes had some two-letter mnemonics and so I could start to figure out "This probably was a load instruction, this probably was a branch." And I knew it was a Fortran compiler, so at some point it looked at column seven of a card, and that was where it would tell if it was a comment or not.

After three hours I had figured out a little bit about the machine. Then I found these big, branching tables. So it was a puzzle and I kept just making little charts like I'm working at a security agency trying to decode a secret code. But I knew it worked and I knew it was a Fortran compiler—it wasn't encrypted in the sense that it was intentionally obscure; it was only in code because I hadn't gotten the manual for the machine.

Eventually I was able to figure out why this compiler was so fast. Unfortunately it wasn't because the algorithms were brilliant; it was just because they had used unstructured programming and hand optimized the code to the hilt.

It was just basically the way you solve some kind of an unknown puzzle—make tables and charts and get a little more information here and make a hypothesis. In general when I'm reading a technical paper, it's the same challenge. I'm trying to get into the author's mind, trying

to figure out what the concept is. The more you learn to read other people's stuff, the more able you are to invent your own in the future, it seems to me.

(Peter Seibel — Coders at Work: Reflections on the Craft of Programming)

8.1 Mahjong solitaire prank (Windows 7)

Mahjong solitaire is a great game, but can we make it harder, by disabling the *Hint* menu item?

In Windows 7, I can find Mahjong.dll and Mahjong.exe in:

```
C:\Windows\winsxs\  
x86_microsoft-windows-s..inboxgames-shanghai_31bf3856ad364e35_6.1.7600.16385_none\  
c07a51d9507d9398.
```

Also, the Mahjong.exe.mui file in:

```
C:\Windows\winsxs\  
x86_microsoft-windows-s..shanghai.resources_31bf3856ad364e35_6.1.7600.16385_en-us  
_c430954533c66bf3
```

and in

```
C:\Windows\winsxs\  
x86_microsoft-windows-s..shanghai.resources_31bf3856ad364e35_6.1.7600.16385_ru-ru  
_0d51acf984cb679a.
```

I'm using English Windows, but with Russian language support, so there are might be resource files for two languages. By opening Mahjong.exe.mui in Resource Hacker, there we can see a menu definition:

Listing 8.1: Menu resources in Mahjong.exe.mui

```
103 MENU  
LANGUAGE LANG_ENGLISH, SUBLANG_ENGLISH_US  
{  
    POPUP "&Game"  
    {  
        MENUITEM "&New Game\tF2", 40000  
        MENUITEM SEPARATOR  
        MENUITEM "&Undo\tCtrl+Z", 40001  
        MENUITEM "&Hint\tH", 40002  
        MENUITEM SEPARATOR  
        MENUITEM "&Statistics\tF4", 40003  
        MENUITEM "&Options\tF5", 40004  
        MENUITEM "Change &Appearance\tF7", 40005  
        MENUITEM SEPARATOR  
        MENUITEM "E&xit", 40006  
    }  
    POPUP "&Help"  
    {  
        MENUITEM "&View Help\tF1", 40015
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    MENUITEM "&About Mahjong Titans", 40016
    MENUITEM SEPARATOR
    MENUITEM "Get &More Games Online", 40020
}
}

```

The *Hint* submenu has the 40002 code. Now I'm opening Mahjong.exe in IDA and find the 40002 value.

(I'm writing this in November 2019. Somehow, IDA can't get PDBs from Microsoft servers. Maybe Windows 7 is unsupported anymore? Anyway, I can't get function names...)

Listing 8.2: Mahjong.exe

.text:010205C8 6A 03	push	3
.text:010205CA 85 FF	test	edi, edi
.text:010205CC 5B	pop	ebx
 ...		
.text:01020625 57	push	edi ; uIDEnableItem
.text:01020626 FF 35 C8 97 08 01	push	hmenu ; hMenu
.text:0102062C FF D6	call	esi ; EnableMenuItem
.text:0102062E 83 7D 08 01	cmp	[ebp+arg_0], 1
.text:01020632 BF 42 9C 00 00	mov	edi, 40002
.text:01020637 75 18	jnz	short loc_1020651 ; must jump always
.text:01020639 6A 00	push	0 ; uEnable
.text:0102063B 57	push	edi ; uIDEnableItem
.text:0102063C FF 35 B4 8B 08 01	push	hMenu ; hMenu
.text:01020642 FF D6	call	esi ; EnableMenuItem
.text:01020644 6A 00	push	0 ; uEnable
.text:01020646 57	push	edi ; uIDEnableItem
.text:01020647 FF 35 C8 97 08 01	push	hmenu ; hMenu
.text:0102064D FF D6	call	esi ; EnableMenuItem
.text:0102064F EB 1A	jmp	short loc_102066B
.text:01020651		
.text:01020651	loc_1020651:	; CODE XREF: sub_1020581+B6
.text:01020651 53	push	ebx ; 3
.text:01020652 57	push	edi ; uIDEnableItem
.text:01020653 FF 35 B4 8B 08 01	push	hMenu ; hMenu
.text:01020659 FF D6	call	esi ; EnableMenuItem
.text:0102065B 53	push	ebx ; 3
.text:0102065C 57	push	edi ; uIDEnableItem
.text:0102065D FF 35 C8 97 08 01	push	hmenu ; hMenu
.text:01020663 FF D6	call	esi ; EnableMenuItem

This piece of code enables or disables the *Hint* menu item.

And according to MSDN¹:

MF_DISABLED | MF_GRAYED = 3 and MF_ENABLED = 0.

¹<https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/win32/api/winuser/nf-winuser-enablemenuitem>

I think, this function enables or disables several menu items (*Hint*, *Undo*, etc), according to the value in `arg_0`. Because at start, when a user choose solitaire type, *Hint* and *Undo* items are disabled. They are enabled when the game has begun.

So I'm patching the `Mahjong.exe` file at `0x01020637` by replacing `0x75` with `0xEB` byte, making this `JNZ` jump working always. Effectively, this will make calling `EnableMenuItem(..., . . .)` always. Now the *Hint* submenu is always disabled.

Also, somehow, the `EnableMenuItem()` function called twice, for `hMenu` and for `hmenu`. Perhaps, the program has two menus, and maybe switching them?

As a homework, try to disable *Undo* menu item, to make the game even harder.

8.2 Task manager practical joke (Windows Vista)

Let's see if it's possible to hack Task Manager slightly so it would detect more [CPU](#) cores.

Let us first think, how does the Task Manager know the number of cores?

There is the `GetSystemInfo()` win32 function present in `win32` userspace which can tell us this. But it's not imported in `taskmgr.exe`.

There is, however, another one in [NTAPI](#), `NtQuerySystemInformation()`, which is used in `taskmgr.exe` in several places.

To get the number of cores, one has to call this function with the `SystemBasicInformation` constant as a first argument (which is zero ^{[2](#)}).

The second argument has to point to the buffer which is getting all the information.

So we have to find all calls to the

`NtQuerySystemInformation(0, ?, ?, ?, ?)` function. Let's open `taskmgr.exe` in IDA.

What is always good about Microsoft executables is that IDA can download the corresponding [PDB](#) file for this executable and show all function names.

It is visible that Task Manager is written in C++ and some of the function names and classes are really speaking for themselves. There are classes `CAdapter`, `CNetPage`, `CPerfPage`, `CProcInfo`, `CProcPage`, `CSvcPage`, `CTaskPage`, `CUserPage`.

Apparently, each class corresponds to each tab in Task Manager.

Let's visit each call and add comment with the value which is passed as the first function argument. We will write "not zero" at some places, because the value there was clearly not zero, but something really different (more about this in the second part of this chapter).

And we are looking for zero passed as argument, after all.

²[MSDN](#)

Dire...	T.	Address	Text
Up	p	wWinMain+50E	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 0
Up	p	wWinMain+542	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 2
Up	p	CPerPage::TimerEvent(void)+200	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; not zero
Up	p	InitPerfInfo(void)+2C	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 0
D...	p	InitPerfInfo(void)+F0	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 8
D...	p	CalcCpuTime(int)+5F	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 8
D...	p	CalcCpuTime(int)+248	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 2
D...	p	CPerPage::CalcPhysicalMem(unsigned ...)	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; not zero
D...	p	CPerPage::CalcPhysicalMem(unsigned ...)	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; not zero
D...	p	CProcPage::GetProcessInfo(void)+2B	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 5
D...	p	CProcPage::UpdateProcInfoArray(void)+...	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 0
D...	p	CProcPage::UpdateProcInfoArray(void)+...	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 2
D...	p	CProcPage::Initialize(HWND __ *)+201	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 0
D...	p	CProcPage::GetTaskListEx(void)+3C	call cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation; 5

Figure 8.1: IDA: cross references to NtQuerySystemInformation()

Yes, the names are really speaking for themselves.

When we closely investigate each place where `NtQuerySystemInformation(0, ?, ?, ?)` is called, we quickly find what we need in the `InitPerfInfo()` function:

Listing 8.3: taskmgr.exe (Windows Vista)

```
.text:10000B4B3 xor    r9d, r9d
.text:10000B4B6 lea    rdx, [rsp+0C78h+var_C58] ; buffer
.text:10000B4BB xor    ecx, ecx
.text:10000B4BD lea    ebp, [r9+40h]
.text:10000B4C1 mov    r8d, ebp
.text:10000B4C4 call   cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation ; 0
.text:10000B4CA xor    ebx, ebx
.text:10000B4CC cmp    eax, ebx
.text:10000B4CE jge   short loc_10000B4D7
.text:10000B4D0
.text:10000B4D0 loc_10000B4D0: ; CODE XREF:
    InitPerfInfo(void)+97
.text:10000B4D0
    InitPerfInfo(void)+AF
.text:10000B4D0 xor    al, al
.text:10000B4D2 jmp   loc_10000B5EA
.text:10000B4D7 ;
.text:10000B4D7
.text:10000B4D7 loc_10000B4D7: ; CODE XREF:
    InitPerfInfo(void)+36
.text:10000B4D7 mov    eax, [rsp+0C78h+var_C50]
.text:10000B4DB mov    esi, ebx
.text:10000B4DD mov    r12d, 3E80h
.text:10000B4E3 mov    cs:?g_PageSize@@3KA, eax ; ulong g_PageSize
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:10000B4E9    shr    eax, 0Ah
.text:10000B4EC    lea    r13, __ImageBase
.text:10000B4F3    imul   eax, [rsp+0C78h+var_C4C]
.text:10000B4F8    cmp    [rsp+0C78h+var_C20], bpl
.text:10000B4FD    mov    cs:?g_MEMMax@@3_JA, rax ; __int64 g_MEMMax
.text:10000B504    movzx  eax, [rsp+0C78h+var_C20] ; number of CPUs
.text:10000B509    cmova eax, ebp
.text:10000B50C    cmp    al, bl
.text:10000B50E    mov    cs:?g_cProcessors@@3EA, al ;
        uchar g_cProcessors

```

`g_cProcessors` is a global variable, and this name has been assigned by IDA according to the [PDB](#) loaded from Microsoft's symbol server.

The byte is taken from `var_C20`. And `var_C58` is passed to `NtQuerySystemInformation()` as a pointer to the receiving buffer. The difference between `0xC20` and `0xC58` is `0x38` (56).

Let's take a look at format of the return structure, which we can find in MSDN:

```

typedef struct _SYSTEM_BASIC_INFORMATION {
    BYTE Reserved1[24];
    PVOID Reserved2[4];
    CCHAR NumberOfProcessors;
} SYSTEM_BASIC_INFORMATION;

```

This is a x64 system, so each `PVOID` takes 8 bytes.

All *reserved* fields in the structure take $24 + 4 * 8 = 56$ bytes.

Oh yes, this implies that `var_C20` is the local stack is exactly the `NumberOfProcessors` field of the `SYSTEM_BASIC_INFORMATION` structure.

Let's check our guess. Copy `taskmgr.exe` from `C:\Windows\System32` to some other folder (so the *Windows Resource Protection* will not try to restore the patched `taskmgr.exe`).

Let's open it in Hiew and find the place:

01`0000B4F8: 40386C2458	cmp	[rsp][058],bp
01`0000B4FD: 48890544A00100	mov	[00000001 00025548],rax
01`0000B504: 0FB6442458	movzx	eax,b,[rsp][058]
01`0000B509: 0F47C5	cmova	eax,ebp
01`0000B50C: 3AC3	cmp	al,bl
01`0000B50E: 880574950100	mov	[00000001 00024A88],al
01`0000B514: 7645	jbe	.00000001 0000B55B --3
01`0000B516: 488BFB	mov	rdi,rbx
01`0000B519: 498BD4	5mov	rdx,r12
01`0000B51C: 8BCD	mov	ecx,ebp

Figure 8.2: Hiew: find the place to be patched

Let's replace the `MOVZX` instruction with ours. Let's pretend we've got 64 CPU cores.

Add one additional [NOP](#) (because our instruction is shorter than the original one):

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

00`0000A8F8: 40386C2458      cmp      [rsp][058], bp]
00`0000A8FD: 48890544A00100    mov      [000024948], rax
00`0000A904: 66B84000      mov      ax, 00040 ; '@'
00`0000A908: 90             nop
00`0000A909: 0F47C5        cmova  eax, ebp
00`0000A90C: 3AC3          cmp     al, bl
00`0000A90E: 880574950100    mov      [000023E88], al
00`0000A914: 7645          jbe     00000A95B
00`0000A916: 488BFB        mov      rdi, rbx
00`0000A919: 498BD4        mov      rdx, r12
00`0000A91C: 8BCD          mov      ecx, ebp

```

Figure 8.3: Hiew: patch it

And it works! Of course, the data in the graphs is not correct.

At times, Task Manager even shows an overall CPU load of more than 100%.

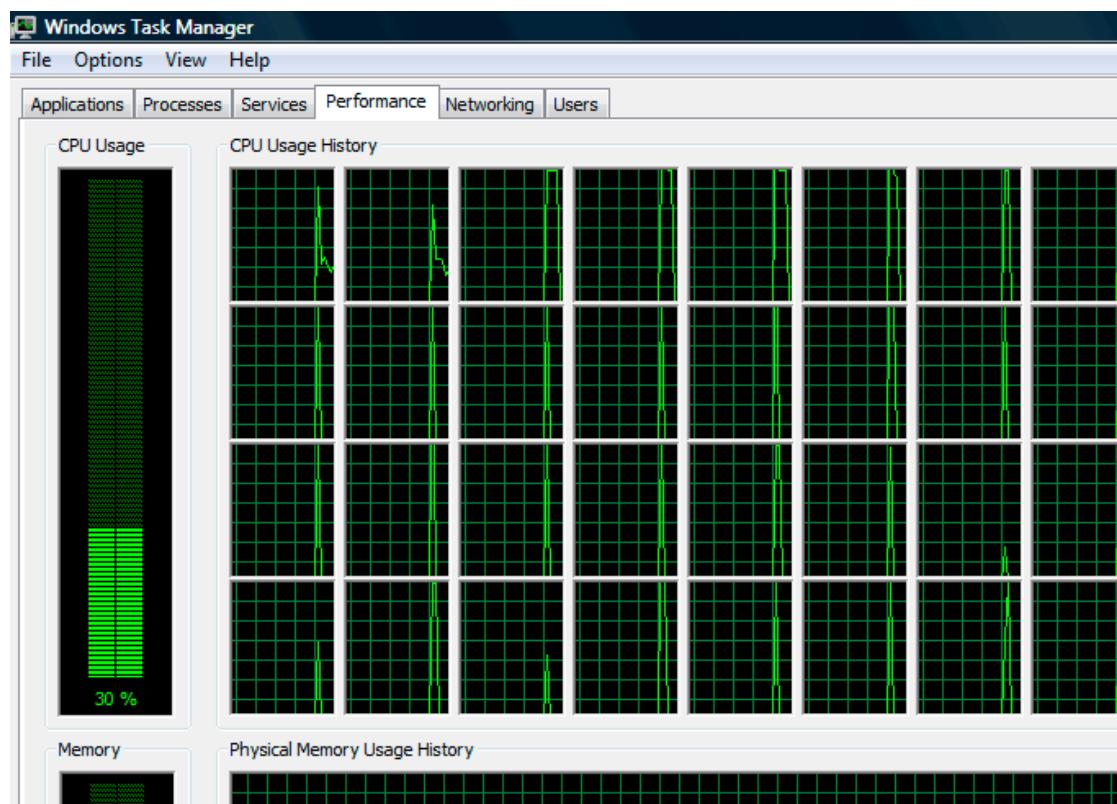


Figure 8.4: Fooled Windows Task Manager

The biggest number Task Manager does not crash with is 64.

Apparently, Task Manager in Windows Vista was not tested on computers with a large number of cores.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

So there are probably some static data structure(s) inside it limited to 64 cores.

8.2.1 Using LEA to load values

Sometimes, LEA is used in taskmgr.exe instead of MOV to set the first argument of NtQuerySystemInformation():

Listing 8.4: taskmgr.exe (Windows Vista)

```

xor    r9d, r9d
div    dword ptr [rsp+4C8h+WndClass.lpfnWndProc]
lea    rdx, [rsp+4C8h+VersionInformation]
lea    ecx, [r9+2]      ; put 2 to ECX
mov    r8d, 138h
mov    ebx, eax
; ECX=SystemPerformanceInformation
call   cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation ; 2

...
mov    r8d, 30h
lea    r9, [rsp+298h+var_268]
lea    rdx, [rsp+298h+var_258]
lea    ecx, [r8-2Dh]    ; put 3 to ECX
; ECX=SystemTimeOfDayInformation
call   cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation ; not zero

...
mov    rbp, [rsi+8]
mov    r8d, 20h
lea    r9, [rsp+98h+arg_0]
lea    rdx, [rsp+98h+var_78]
lea    ecx, [r8+2Fh]    ; put 0x4F to ECX
mov    [rsp+98h+var_60], ebx
mov    [rsp+98h+var_68], rbp
; ECX=SystemSuperfetchInformation
call   cs:_imp_NtQuerySystemInformation ; not zero

```

Perhaps [MSVC](#) did so because machine code of LEA is shorter than MOV REG, 5 (would be 5 instead of 4).

LEA with offset in -128..127 range (offset will occupy 1 byte in opcode) with 32-bit registers is even shorter (for lack of REX prefix)—3 bytes.

Another example of such thing is: [6.1.5 on page 953](#).

8.3 Color Lines game practical joke

This is a very popular game with several implementations in existence. We can take one of them, called BallTriX, from 1997, available freely at https://archive.org/details/BallTriX_1020³. Here is how it looks:

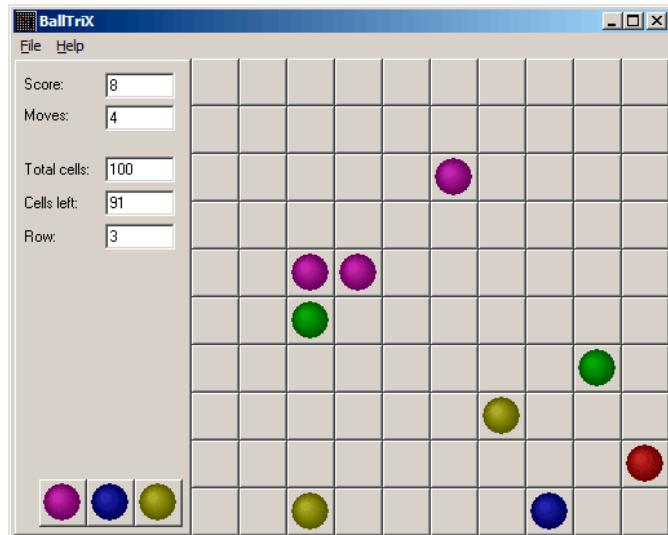


Figure 8.5: This is how the game is usually looks like

³Or at <https://web.archive.org/web/20141110053442/http://www.download-central.ws/Win32/Games/B/BallTriX/> or <http://www.benya.com/balltrix/>.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

So let's see, is it be possible to find the random generator and do some trick with it.
 IDA quickly recognize the standard _rand function in balltrix.exe at 0x00403DA0.
 IDA also shows that it is called only from one place:

```
.text:00402C9C sub_402C9C      proc near               ;
  CODE XREF: sub_402ACA+52
  .text:00402C9C                           ; sub_402ACA+64 ...
  .text:00402C9C
  .text:00402C9C arg_0          = dword ptr  8
  .text:00402C9C
  .text:00402C9C         push    ebp
  .text:00402C9D         mov     ebp, esp
  .text:00402C9F         push    ebx
  .text:00402CA0         push    esi
  .text:00402CA1         push    edi
  .text:00402CA2         mov     eax, dword_40D430
  .text:00402CA7         imul   eax, dword_40D440
  .text:00402CAE         add    eax, dword_40D5C8
  .text:00402CB4         mov     ecx, 32000
  .text:00402CB9         cdq
  .text:00402CBA         idiv   ecx
  .text:00402CBC         mov     dword_40D440, edx
  .text:00402CC2         call    _rand
  .text:00402CC7         cdq
  .text:00402CC8         idiv   [ebp+arg_0]
  .text:00402CCB         mov     dword_40D430, edx
  .text:00402CD1         mov     eax, dword_40D430
  .text:00402CD6         jmp    $+5
  .text:00402CDB         pop    edi
  .text:00402CDC         pop    esi
  .text:00402CDD         pop    ebx
  .text:00402CDE         leave
  .text:00402CDF         retn
  .text:00402CDF sub_402C9C      endp
```

We'll call it "random". Let's not to dive into this function's code yet.

This function is referred from 3 places.

Here are the first two:

```
.text:00402B16         mov     eax, dword_40C03C ; 10 here
.text:00402B1B         push   eax
.text:00402B1C         call   random
.text:00402B21         add    esp, 4
.text:00402B24         inc    eax
.text:00402B25         mov    [ebp+var_C], eax
.text:00402B28         mov    eax, dword_40C040 ; 10 here
.text:00402B2D         push   eax
.text:00402B2E         call   random
.text:00402B33         add    esp, 4
```

Here is the third one:

.text:00402BBB	mov	eax, dword_40C058 ; 5 here
.text:00402BC0	push	eax
.text:00402BC1	call	random
.text:00402BC6	add	esp, 4
.text:00402BC9	inc	eax

So the function has only one argument.

10 is passed in first two cases and 5 in third. We can also notice that the board has a size of 10×10 and there are 5 possible colors. This is it! The standard `rand()` function returns a number in the $0 \dots 0x7FFF$ range and this is often inconvenient, so many programmers implement their own random functions which returns a random number in a specified range. In our case, the range is $0..n - 1$ and n is passed as the sole argument of the function. We can quickly check this in any debugger.

So let's fix the third function call to always return zero. First, we will replace three instructions (`PUSH/CALL/ADD`) by `NOPs`. Then we'll add `XOR EAX, EAX` instruction, to clear the `EAX` register.

.00402BB8: 83C410	add	esp,010
.00402BBB: A158C04000	mov	eax,[00040C058]
.00402BC0: 31C0	xor	eax, eax
.00402BC2: 90	nop	
.00402BC3: 90	nop	
.00402BC4: 90	nop	
.00402BC5: 90	nop	
.00402BC6: 90	nop	
.00402BC7: 90	nop	
.00402BC8: 90	nop	
.00402BC9: 40	inc	eax
.00402BCA: 8B4DF8	mov	ecx,[ebp][-8]
.00402BCD: 8D0C49	lea	ecx,[ecx][ecx]*2
.00402BD0: 8B15F4D54000	mov	edx,[00040D5F4]

So what we did is we replaced a call to the `random()` function by a code which always returns zero.

Let's run it now:

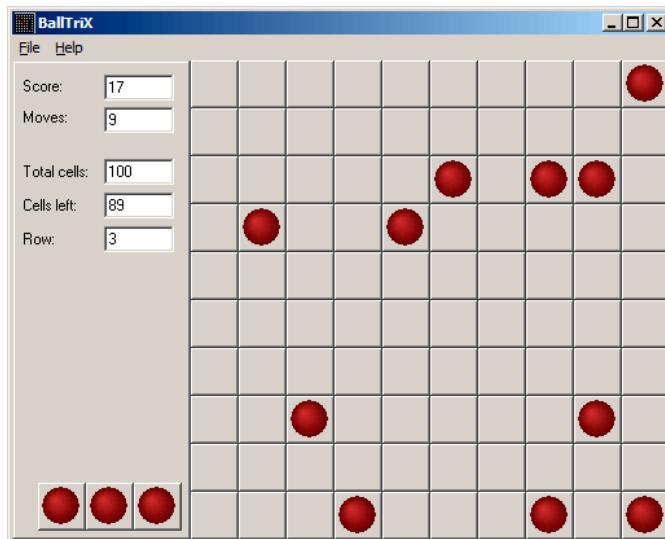


Figure 8.6: Practical joke works

Oh yes, it works⁴.

But why are the arguments to the `random()` functions global variables? That's just because it's possible to change the board size in the game's settings, so these values are not hardcoded. The 10 and 5 values are just defaults.

8.4 Minesweeper (Windows XP)

For those who are not very good at playing Minesweeper, we could try to reveal the hidden mines in the debugger.

As we know, Minesweeper places mines randomly, so there has to be some kind of random number generator or a call to the standard `rand()` C-function.

What is really cool about reversing Microsoft products is that there are [PDB](#) file with symbols (function names, etc). When we load `winmine.exe` into [IDA](#), it downloads the [PDB](#) file exactly for this executable and shows all names.

So here it is, the only call to `rand()` is this function:

```
.text:01003940 ; __stdcall Rnd(x)
.text:01003940 _Rnd@4          proc near               ; CODE XREF:
    StartGame()+53
.text:01003940
.text:01003940
.text:01003940 arg_0           = dword ptr  4
```

⁴Author of this book once did this as a joke for his coworkers with the hope that they would stop playing. They didn't.

```
.text:01003940          call    ds:_imp__rand
.text:01003940          cdq
.text:01003940          idiv   [esp+arg_0]
.text:0100394B          mov    eax, edx
.text:0100394D          retn   4
.text:0100394D _Rnd@4    endp
```

IDA named it so, and it was the name given to it by Minesweeper's developers.

The function is very simple:

```
int Rnd(int limit)
{
    return rand() % limit;
};
```

(There is no "limit" name in the PDB file; we manually named this argument like this.)

So it returns a random value from 0 to a specified limit.

Rnd() is called only from one place, a function called StartGame(), and as it seems, this is exactly the code which place the mines:

```
.text:010036C7          push   _xBoxMac
.text:010036CD          call   _Rnd@4           ; Rnd(x)
.text:010036D2          push   _yBoxMac
.text:010036D8          mov    esi, eax
.text:010036DA          inc    esi
.text:010036DB          call   _Rnd@4           ; Rnd(x)
.text:010036E0          inc    eax
.text:010036E1          mov    ecx, eax
.text:010036E3          shl    ecx, 5            ; ECX=ECX*32
.text:010036E6          test   _rgBlk[ecx+esi], 80h
.text:010036EE          jnz   short loc_10036C7
.text:010036F0          shl    eax, 5            ; EAX=EAX*32
.text:010036F3          lea    eax, _rgBlk[eax+esi]
.text:010036FA          or     byte ptr [eax], 80h
.text:010036FD          dec    _cBombStart
.text:01003703          jnz   short loc_10036C7
```

Minesweeper allows you to set the board size, so the X (xBoxMac) and Y (yBoxMac) of the board are global variables. They are passed to Rnd() and random coordinates are generated. A mine is placed by the OR instruction at 0x010036FA. And if it has been placed before (it's possible if the pair of Rnd() generates a coordinates pair which has been already generated), then TEST and JNZ at 0x010036E6 jumps to the generation routine again.

cBombStart is the global variable containing total number of mines. So this is loop.

The width of the array is 32 (we can conclude this by looking at the SHL instruction, which multiplies one of the coordinates by 32).

The size of the rgBlk global array can be easily determined by the difference between the rgBlk label in the data segment and the next known one. It is 0x360 (864):

.data:01005340 rgBlk	db 360h dup(?)	; DATA XREF:
MainWndProc(x,x,x,x)+574		
.data:01005340		; DisplayBlk(x,x)+23
.data:010056A0 Preferences	dd ?	; DATA XREF:
FixMenus() +2		
...		

$864/32 = 27$.

So the array size is $27 * 32$? It is close to what we know: when we try to set board size to $100 * 100$ in Minesweeper settings, it fallbacks to a board of size $24 * 30$. So this is the maximal board size here. And the array has a fixed size for any board size.

So let's see all this in OllyDbg. We will ran Minesweeper, attaching OllyDbg to it and now we can see the memory dump at the address of the rgBlk array (0x01005340)⁵.

So we got this memory dump of the array:

Address	Hex dump
01005340	10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005350	0F
01005360	10 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005370	0F
01005380	10 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005390	0F
010053A0	10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 8F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
010053B0	0F
010053C0	10 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
010053D0	0F
010053E0	10 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
010053F0	0F
01005400	10 0F 0F 8F 0F 0F 8F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005410	0F
01005420	10 8F 0F 0F 8F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005430	0F
01005440	10 8F 0F 0F 0F 0F 8F 0F 0F 0F 8F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005450	0F
01005460	10 0F 0F 0F 0F 8F 0F 0F 0F 8F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005470	0F
01005480	10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005490	0F
010054A0	0F
010054B0	0F
010054C0	0F

OllyDbg, like any other hexadecimal editor, shows 16 bytes per line. So each 32-byte array row occupies exactly 2 lines here.

⁵All addresses here are for Minesweeper for Windows XP SP3 English. They may differ for other service packs.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

This is beginner level (9*9 board).

There is some square structure can be seen visually (0x10 bytes).

We will click “Run” in OllyDbg to unfreeze the Minesweeper process, then we’ll click randomly at the Minesweeper window and trapped into mine, but now all mines are visible:

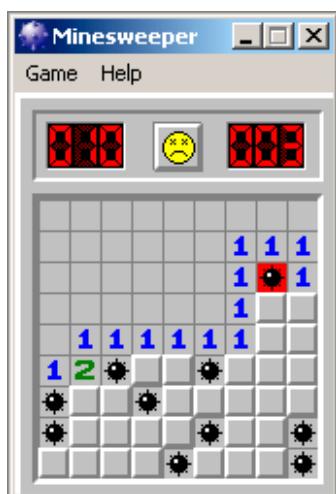


Figure 8.7: Mines

By comparing the mine places and the dump, we can conclude that 0x10 stands for border, 0x0F—empty block, 0x8F—mine. Perhaps, 0x10 is just a *sentinel value*.

Now we’ll add comments and also enclose all 0x8F bytes into square brackets:

```

border:
01005340 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005350 0F 0F
line #1:
01005360 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005370 0F 0F
line #2:
01005380 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005390 0F 0F
line #3:
010053A0 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F [8F]0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
010053B0 0F 0F
line #4:
010053C0 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
010053D0 0F 0F
line #5:
010053E0 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
010053F0 0F 0F
line #6:
01005400 10 0F 0F [8F]0F 0F [8F]0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005410 0F 0F

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

line #7:
01005420 10[8F]0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005430 0F 0F
line #8:
01005440 10[8F]0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F 0F[8F]10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005450 0F 0F
line #9:
01005460 10 0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F[8F]10 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005470 0F 0F
border:
01005480 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 0F 0F 0F 0F
01005490 0F 0F

```

Now we'll remove all *border bytes* (0x10) and what's beyond those:

```

0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F
0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F 0F
0F 0F[8F]0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F
[8F]0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F 0F
[8F]0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F 0F[8F]
0F 0F 0F 0F[8F]0F 0F 0F[8F]

```

Yes, these are mines, now it can be clearly seen and compared with the screenshot.

What is interesting is that we can modify the array right in OllyDbg. We can remove all mines by changing all 0x8F bytes by 0x0F, and here is what we'll get in Minesweeper:

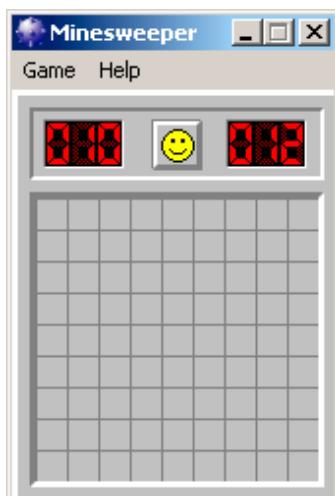


Figure 8.8: All mines are removed in debugger

We can also move all of them to the first line:

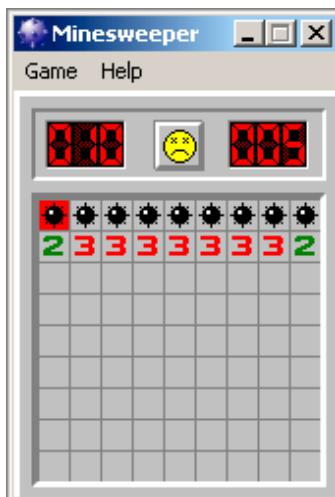


Figure 8.9: Mines set in debugger

Well, the debugger is not very convenient for eavesdropping (which is our goal anyway), so we'll write a small utility to dump the contents of the board:

```
// Windows XP MineSweeper cheater
// written by dennis(a)yurichev.com for http://beginners.re/ book
#include <windows.h>
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

#include <assert.h>
#include <stdio.h>

int main (int argc, char * argv[])
{
    int i, j;
    HANDLE h;
    DWORD PID, address, rd;
    BYTE board[27][32];

    if (argc!=3)
    {
        printf ("Usage: %s <PID> <address>\n", argv[0]);
        return 0;
    };

    assert (argv[1]!=NULL);
    assert (argv[2]!=NULL);

    assert (sscanf (argv[1], "%d", &PID)==1);
    assert (sscanf (argv[2], "%x", &address)==1);

    h=OpenProcess (PROCESS_VM_OPERATION | PROCESS_VM_READ | ↴
↳ PROCESS_VM_WRITE, FALSE, PID);

    if (h==NULL)
    {
        DWORD e=GetLastError();
        printf ("OpenProcess error: %08X\n", e);
        return 0;
    };

    if (ReadProcessMemory (h, (LPVOID)address, board, sizeof(board), &↖
↳ rd)!=TRUE)
    {
        printf ("ReadProcessMemory() failed\n");
        return 0;
    };

    for (i=1; i<26; i++)
    {
        if (board[i][0]==0x10 && board[i][1]==0x10)
            break; // end of board
        for (j=1; j<31; j++)
        {
            if (board[i][j]==0x10)
                break; // board border
            if (board[i][j]==0x8F)
                printf ("*");
            else
                printf (" ");
        };
    };
}

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
        printf ("\n");
    };
    CloseHandle (h);
};
```

Just set the PID⁶ ⁷ and the address of the array (0x01005340 for Windows XP SP3 English) and it will dump it⁸.

It attaches itself to a win32 process by [PID](#) and just reads process memory at the address.

8.4.1 Finding grid automatically

This is kind of nuisance to set address each time when we run our utility. Also, various Minesweeper versions may have the array on different address. Knowing the fact that there is always a border (0x10 bytes), we can just find it in memory:

⁶Program/process ID

⁷PID it can be seen in Task Manager (enable it in “View → Select Columns”)

⁸The compiled executable is here: beginners.re

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

```
    printf ("Found frame and grid at 0x%x\n", address);
};
```

Full source code: https://beginners.re/current-tree/examples/minesweeper/minesweeper_cheater2.c.

8.4.2 Exercises

- Why do the *border bytes* (or *sentinel values*) (0x10) exist in the array? What they are for if they are not visible in Minesweeper's interface? How could it work without them?
- As it turns out, there are more values possible (for open blocks, for flagged by user, etc). Try to find the meaning of each one.
- Modify my utility so it can remove all mines or set them in a fixed pattern that you want in the Minesweeper process currently running.

8.5 Hacking Windows clock

Sometimes I do some kind of first April prank for my coworkers.

Let's find, if we could do something with Windows clock? Can we force to go clock hands backwards?

First of all, when you click on date/time in status bar, a C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM32\TIMEDATE.CPL module gets executed, which is usual executable PE-file.

Let's see, how it draw hands? When I open the file (from Windows 7) in Resource Hacker, there are clock faces, but with no hands:

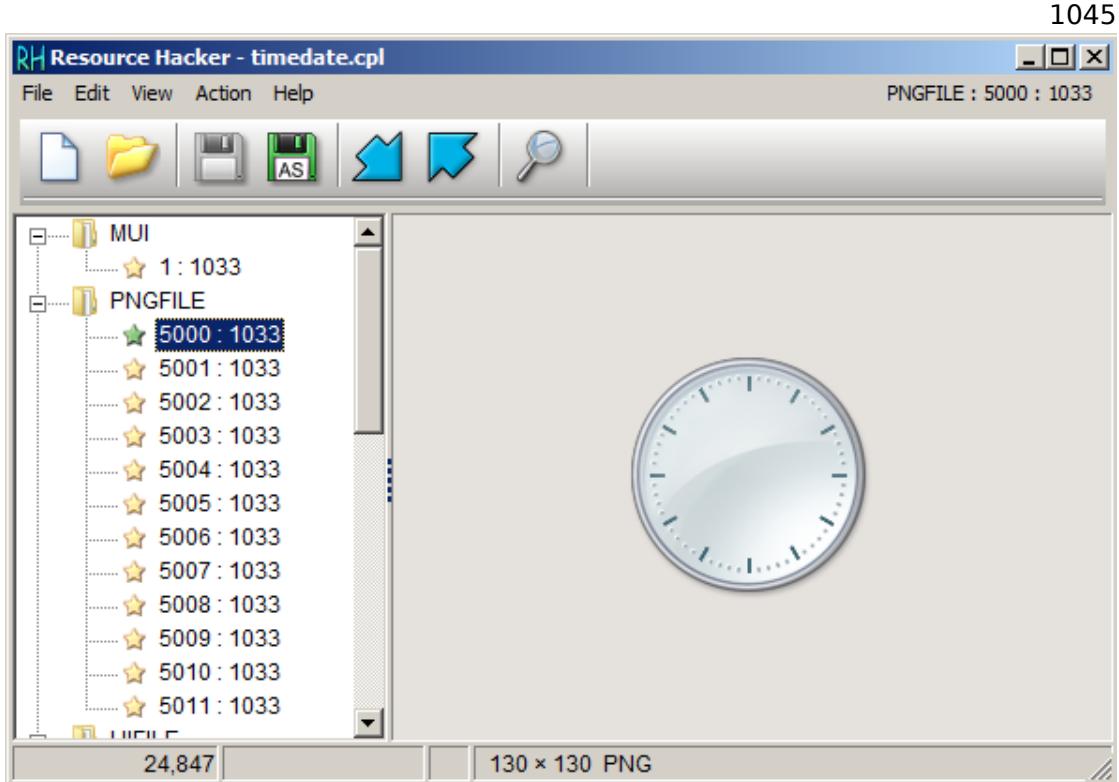


Figure 8.10: Resource Hacker

OK, what we know? How to draw a clock hand? All they are started at the middle of circle, ending with its border. Hence, we must calculate coordinates of a point on circle's border. From school-level mathematics we may recall that we have to use sine/cosine functions to draw circle, or at least square root. There are no such things in *TIMEDATE.CPL*, at least at first glance. But, thanks to Microsoft debugging PDB files, I can find a function named *CAnalogClock::DrawHand()*, which calls *Gdiplus::Graphics::DrawLine()* at least twice.

Here is its code:

```
.text:6EB9DBC7 ; private: enum Gdiplus::Status __thiscall
    CAnalogClock::_DrawHand(class Gdiplus::Graphics *, int, struct ClockHand
    const &, class Gdiplus::Pen *)
.text:6EB9DBC7 ?_DrawHand@CAnalogClock@@AAE?2
    ↳ AW4Status@Gdiplus@@PAVGraphics@3@HABUClockHand@@PAVPen@3@Z proc near
.text:6EB9DBC7      ; CODE XREF: CAnalogClock::_ClockPaint(HDC__ *)+163
.text:6EB9DBC7      ; CAnalogClock::_ClockPaint(HDC__ *)+18B
.text:6EB9DBC7
.text:6EB9DBC7 var_10          = dword ptr -10h
.text:6EB9DBC7 var_C           = dword ptr -0Ch
.text:6EB9DBC7 var_8           = dword ptr -8
.text:6EB9DBC7 var_4           = dword ptr -4
.text:6EB9DBC7 arg_0           = dword ptr 8
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:6EB9DBC7 arg_4      = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:6EB9DBC7 arg_8      = dword ptr 10h
.text:6EB9DBC7 arg_C      = dword ptr 14h
.text:6EB9DBC7
.text:6EB9DBC7             mov     edi, edi
.text:6EB9DBC9             push    ebp
.text:6EB9DBCA             mov     ebp, esp
.text:6EB9DBCC             sub     esp, 10h
.text:6EB9DBCF             mov     eax, [ebp+arg_4]
.text:6EB9DBD2             push    ebx
.text:6EB9DBD3             push    esi
.text:6EB9DBD4             push    edi
.text:6EB9DBD5             cdq
.text:6EB9DBD6             push    3Ch
.text:6EB9DBD8             mov     esi, ecx
.text:6EB9DBDA             pop     ecx
.text:6EB9DBDB             idiv   ecx
.text:6EB9DBDD             push    2
.text:6EB9DBDF             lea    ebx, table[edx*8]
.text:6EB9DBE6             lea    eax, [edx+1Eh]
.text:6EB9DBE9             cdq
.text:6EB9DBEA             idiv   ecx
.text:6EB9DBEC             mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:6EB9DBEF             mov     [ebp+var_4], ebx
.text:6EB9DBF2             lea    eax, table[edx*8]
.text:6EB9DBF9             mov     [ebp+arg_4], eax
.text:6EB9DBFC             call   ?
    ↳ SetInterpolationMode@Graphics@Gdiplus@@QAE??
    ↳ AW4Status@2@W4InterpolationMode@2@Z ;
    Gdiplus::Graphics::SetInterpolationMode(Gdiplus::InterpolationMode)
.text:6EB9DC01             mov     eax, [esi+70h]
.text:6EB9DC04             mov     edi, [ebp+arg_8]
.text:6EB9DC07             mov     [ebp+var_10], eax
.text:6EB9DC0A             mov     eax, [esi+74h]
.text:6EB9DC0D             mov     [ebp+var_C], eax
.text:6EB9DC10             mov     eax, [edi]
.text:6EB9DC12             sub    eax, [edi+8]
.text:6EB9DC15             push   8000          ; nDenominator
.text:6EB9DC1A             push   eax           ; nNumerator
.text:6EB9DC1B             push   dword ptr [ebx+4] ; nNumber
.text:6EB9DC1E             mov    ebx, ds:_imp_MulDiv@12 ;
    MulDiv(x,x,x)
.text:6EB9DC24             call   ebx ; MulDiv(x,x,x) ; MulDiv(x,x,x)
.text:6EB9DC26             add    eax, [esi+74h]
.text:6EB9DC29             push   8000          ; nDenominator
.text:6EB9DC2E             mov    [ebp+arg_8], eax
.text:6EB9DC31             mov    eax, [edi]
.text:6EB9DC33             sub    eax, [edi+8]
.text:6EB9DC36             push   eax           ; nNumerator
.text:6EB9DC37             mov    eax, [ebp+var_4]
.text:6EB9DC3A             push   dword ptr [eax] ; nNumber
.text:6EB9DC3C             call   ebx ; MulDiv(x,x,x) ; MulDiv(x,x,x)
.text:6EB9DC3E             add    eax, [esi+70h]
.text:6EB9DC41             mov    ecx, [ebp+arg_0]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:6EB9DC44          mov    [ebp+var_8], eax
.text:6EB9DC47          mov    eax, [ebp+arg_8]
.text:6EB9DC4A          mov    [ebp+var_4], eax
.text:6EB9DC4D          lea    eax, [ebp+var_8]
.text:6EB9DC50          push   eax
.text:6EB9DC51          lea    eax, [ebp+var_10]
.text:6EB9DC54          push   eax
.text:6EB9DC55          push   [ebp+arg_C]
.text:6EB9DC58          call   ?DrawLine@Graphics@Gdiplus@@QAE?_
                           ↳ AW4Status@2@PBVPen@2@ABVPoint@2@1@Z ;
                           Gdiplus::Graphics::DrawLine(Gdiplus::Pen const *,Gdiplus::Point const
                           &,Gdiplus::Point const &)
.text:6EB9DC5D          mov    ecx, [edi+8]
.text:6EB9DC60          test   ecx, ecx
.text:6EB9DC62          jbe   short loc_6EB9DCAA
.text:6EB9DC64          test   eax, eax
.text:6EB9DC66          jnz   short loc_6EB9DCAA
.text:6EB9DC68          mov    eax, [ebp+arg_4]
.text:6EB9DC6B          push   8000      ; nDenominator
.text:6EB9DC70          push   ecx       ; nNumerator
.text:6EB9DC71          push   dword ptr [eax+4] ; nNumber
                           ebx ; MulDiv(x,x,x) ; MulDiv(x,x,x)
.text:6EB9DC74          call   eax, [esi+74h]
.text:6EB9DC76          add    eax, [esi+74h]
.text:6EB9DC79          push   8000      ; nDenominator
                           dword ptr [edi+8] ; nNumerator
.text:6EB9DC7E          push   [ebp+arg_8], eax
.text:6EB9DC81          mov    eax, [ebp+arg_4]
.text:6EB9DC84          push   dword ptr [eax] ; nNumber
                           ebx ; MulDiv(x,x,x) ; MulDiv(x,x,x)
.text:6EB9DC87          add    eax, [esi+70h]
.text:6EB9DC8B          mov    ecx, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:6EB9DC8E          mov    [ebp+var_8], eax
.text:6EB9DC91          mov    eax, [ebp+arg_8]
.text:6EB9DC94          mov    [ebp+var_4], eax
.text:6EB9DC97          lea    eax, [ebp+var_8]
.text:6EB9DC9A          push   eax
.text:6EB9DC9D          lea    eax, [ebp+var_10]
.text:6EB9DC9E          push   eax
.text:6EB9DCA1          push   [ebp+arg_C]
.text:6EB9DCA2          call   ?DrawLine@Graphics@Gdiplus@@QAE?_
                           ↳ AW4Status@2@PBVPen@2@ABVPoint@2@1@Z ;
                           Gdiplus::Graphics::DrawLine(Gdiplus::Pen const *,Gdiplus::Point const
                           &,Gdiplus::Point const &)
.text:6EB9DCAA          ; CODE XREF:
                           CAnalogClock::_DrawHand(Gdiplus::Graphics *,int,ClockHand const
                           &,Gdiplus::Pen *)+9B
.text:6EB9DCAA          ; CAnalogClock::_DrawHand(Gdiplus::Graphics
                           *,int,ClockHand const &,Gdiplus::Pen *)+9F
.pop    edi
.pop    esi
.pop    ebx
.leave
.ret    10h
.text:6EB9DCAE          ?_DrawHand@CAnalogClock@@AAE?_

```

```
↳ AW4Status@Gdiplus@@PAVGraphics@3@HABUClockHand@@PAVPen@3@@Z endp
.text:6EB9DCAE
```

We can see that *DrawLine()* arguments are dependent on result of *MulDiv()* function and a *table[]* table (name is mine), which has 8-byte elements (look at LEA's second operand).

What is inside of *table[]*?

```
.text:6EB87890 ; int table[]
.text:6EB87890 table          dd 0
.text:6EB87894          dd 0FFFFE0C1h
.text:6EB87898          dd 344h
.text:6EB8789C          dd 0FFFFE0ECh
.text:6EB878A0          dd 67Fh
.text:6EB878A4          dd 0xFFFFE16Fh
.text:6EB878A8          dd 9A8h
.text:6EB878AC          dd 0xFFFFE248h
.text:6EB878B0          dd 0CB5h
.text:6EB878B4          dd 0xFFFFE374h
.text:6EB878B8          dd 0F9Fh
.text:6EB878BC          dd 0xFFFFE4F0h
.text:6EB878C0          dd 125Eh
.text:6EB878C4          dd 0xFFFFE6B8h
.text:6EB878C8          dd 14E9h

...
```

It's referenced only from *DrawHand()* function. It has 120 32-bit words or 60 32-bit pairs... wait, 60? Let's take a closer look at these values. First of all, I'll zap 6 pairs or 12 32-bit words with zeros, and then I'll put patched *TIMEDATE.CPL* into *C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM32*. (You may need to set owner of the **TIMEDATE.CPL** file to your primary user account (instead of *TrustedInstaller*), and also, boot in safe mode with command prompt so you can copy the file, which is usually locked.)

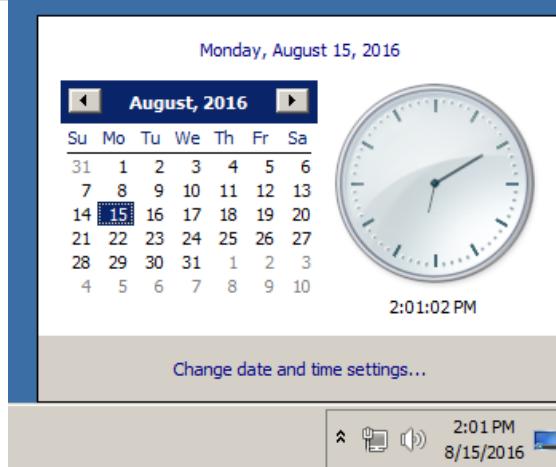


Figure 8.11: Attempt to run

Now when any hand is located at 0..5 seconds/minutes, it's invisible! However, opposite (shorter) part of second hand is visible and moving. When any hand is outside of this area, hand is visible as usual.

Let's take even closer look at the table in Mathematica. I have copy-pasted table from the *TIMEDATE.CPL* to a *tbl* file (480 bytes). We will take for granted the fact that these are signed values, because half of elements are below zero (0xFFFFE0C1h, etc.). If these values would be unsigned, they would be suspiciously huge.

```
In[]:= tbl = BinaryReadList["~/.../tbl", "Integer32"]

Out[]={0, -7999, 836, -7956, 1663, -7825, 2472, -7608, 3253, -7308, 3999, 
-6928, 4702, -6472, 5353, -5945, 5945, -5353, 6472, -4702, 6928, 
-4000, 7308, -3253, 7608, -2472, 7825, -1663, 7956, -836, 8000, 0, 
7956, 836, 7825, 1663, 7608, 2472, 7308, 3253, 6928, 4000, 6472, 
4702, 5945, 5353, 5353, 5945, 4702, 6472, 3999, 6928, 3253, 7308, 
2472, 7608, 1663, 7825, 836, 7956, 0, 7999, -836, 7956, -1663, 7825, 
-2472, 7608, -3253, 7308, -4000, 6928, -4702, 6472, -5353, 5945, 
-5945, 5353, -6472, 4702, -6928, 3999, -7308, 3253, -7608, 2472, 
-7825, 1663, -7956, 836, -7999, 0, -7956, -836, -7825, -1663, -7608, 
-2472, -7308, -3253, -6928, -4000, -6472, -4702, -5945, -5353, -5353, 
-5945, -4702, -6472, -3999, -6928, -3253, -7308, -2472, -7608, -1663, 
-7825, -836, -7956}

In[]:= Length(tbl]
Out[]= 120
```

Let's treat two consecutive 32-bit values as pair:

```
In[]:= pairs = Partition[tbl, 2]
Out[]={{0, -7999}, {836, -7956}, {1663, -7825}, {2472, -7608}, 
{3253, -7308}, {3999, -6928}, {4702, -6472}, {5353, -5945}, {5945, 
-5353}, {6472, -4702}, {6928, -4000}, {7308, -3253}, {7608, -2472}, \
```

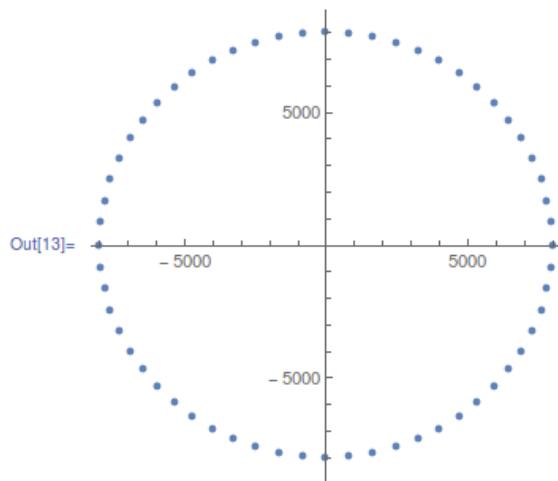
If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
{7825, -1663}, {7956, -836}, {8000, 0}, {7956, 836}, {7825,  
1663}, {7608, 2472}, {7308, 3253}, {6928, 4000}, {6472,  
4702}, {5945, 5353}, {5353, 5945}, {4702, 6472}, {3999,  
6928}, {3253, 7308}, {2472, 7608}, {1663, 7825}, {836, 7956}, {0,  
7999}, {-836, 7956}, {-1663, 7825}, {-2472, 7608}, {-3253,  
7308}, {-4000, 6928}, {-4702, 6472}, {-5353, 5945}, {-5945,  
5353}, {-6472, 4702}, {-6928, 3999}, {-7308, 3253}, {-7608,  
2472}, {-7825, 1663}, {-7956, 836}, {-7999,  
0}, {-7956, -836}, {-7825, -1663}, {-7608, -2472}, {-7308, -3253}, \  
{-6928, -4000}, {-6472, -4702}, {-5945, -5353}, {-5353, -5945}, \  
{-4702, -6472}, {-3999, -6928}, {-3253, -7308}, {-2472, -7608}, \  
{-1663, -7825}, {-836, -7956}}
```

In[]:= Length[pairs]
Out[]= 60

Let's try to treat each pair as X/Y coordinate and draw all 60 pairs, and also first 15 pairs:

```
In[13]:= ListPlot[pairs, AspectRatio -> Full, ImageSize -> {300, 300}]
```



```
In[27]:= ListPlot[pairs[[1 ;; 15]], AspectRatio -> Full, ImageSize -> {300, 300}]
```

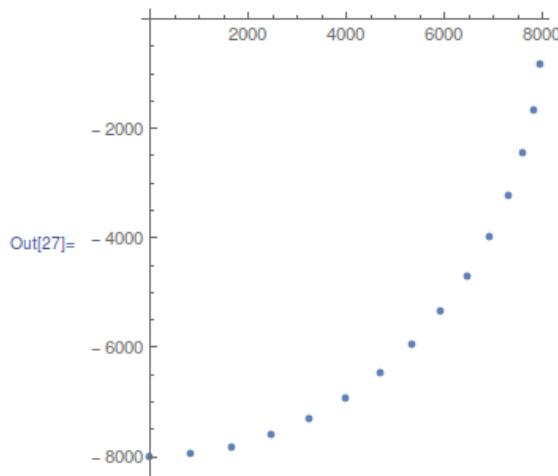


Figure 8.12: Mathematica

Now this is something! Each pair is just coordinate. First 15 pairs are coordinates for $\frac{1}{4}$ of circle.

Perhaps, Microsoft developers precalculated all coordinates and put them into table. This is widespread, though somewhat old school practice – precalculated table access is faster than calling relatively slow sine/cosine functions⁹. Sine/cosine operations are not that expensive anymore...

Now I can understand why when I zapped first 6 pairs, hands were invisible at that area: in fact, hands were drawn, they just had zero length, because hand started at

⁹Today this is known as *memoization*

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

0:0 coordinate and ended there.

The prank (practical joke)

Given all that, how would we force hands to go counterclockwise? In fact, this is simple, we need just to rotate the table, so each hand, instead of drawing at place of zeroth second, would be drawing at place of 59th second.

I made the patcher a long time ago, at the very beginning of 2000s, for Windows 2000. Hard to believe, it still works for Windows 7, perhaps, the table hasn't been changed since then!

The patcher source code: https://beginners.re/current-tree/examples/timedate/time_pt.c.

Now I can see all hands goes backwards:

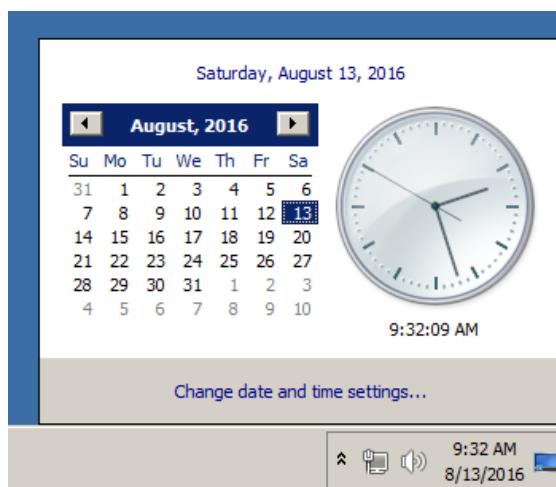


Figure 8.13: Now it works

Well, there is no animation in this book, but if you look closer, you can see, that hands are in fact shows correct time, but the whole clock face is rotated vertically, like we see it from the inside of clock.

Windows 2000 leaked source code

So I did the patcher and then Windows 2000 source code has been leaked (I can't force you to trust me, though). Let's take a look on source code if that function and table.

The file is *win2k/private/shell/cpls/utc/clock.c*:

```
//  
// Array containing the sine and cosine values for hand positions.  
//  
POINT rCircleTable[] =
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

{
    { 0,      -7999},
    { 836,    -7956},
    { 1663,   -7825},
    { 2472,   -7608},
    { 3253,   -7308},
    ...
    { -4702,  -6472},
    { -3999,  -6928},
    { -3253,  -7308},
    { -2472,  -7608},
    { -1663,  -7825},
    { -836 ,  -7956},
};

///////////////////////////////
// DrawHand
// Draws the hands of the clock.
//
///////////////////////////////

void DrawHand(
    HDC hDC,
    int pos,
    HPEN hPen,
    int scale,
    int patMode,
    PCLOCKSTR np)
{
    LPPPOINT lppt;
    int radius;

    MoveTo(hDC, np->clockCenter.x, np->clockCenter.y);
    radius = MulDiv(np->clockRadius, scale, 100);
    lppt = rCircleTable + pos;
    SetROP2(hDC, patMode);
    SelectObject(hDC, hPen);

    LineTo( hDC,
            np->clockCenter.x + MulDiv(lppt->x, radius, 8000),
            np->clockCenter.y + MulDiv(lppt->y, radius, 8000) );
}

```

Now it's clear: coordinates has been precalculated as if clock face has height and width of $2 \cdot 8000$, and then it's rescaled to current clock face radius using *MulDiv()* function.

POINT structure¹⁰ is a structure of two 32-bit values, first is x, second is y.

¹⁰[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/dd162805\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/dd162805(v=vs.85).aspx)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

8.6 (Windows 7) Solitaire: practical jokes

8.6.1 51 cards

This is a joke I did once for my coworkers who played a Solitaire game too much. I was wondering, if it's possible to remove some cards, or maybe add (duplicates).

I opened Solitaire.exe in IDA disassembler, which asked if to download PDB file for it from Microsoft servers. This is usually a rule for many Windows executables and DLLs. At least, PDB has all function names.

Then I tried to find a 52 number in all functions (because this card game uses 52 cards). As it turned out, only 2 functions has it.

The first is:

```
.text:00000001000393B4 ; __int64 __fastcall SolitaireGame::OnMoveComplete(
    ↴ SolitaireGame *this)
.text:00000001000393B4 ?OnMoveComplete@SolitaireGame@@QEAAHZ proc near
...
...
```

The second is the function with self-describing name (name pulled from PDB by IDA): InitialDeal():

```
.text:00000001000365F8 ; void __fastcall SolitaireGame::InitialDeal(
    ↴ SolitaireGame *_hidden this)
.text:00000001000365F8 ?InitialDeal@SolitaireGame@@QEAXXZ proc near
.text:00000001000365F8
.text:00000001000365F8 var_58          = byte ptr -58h
.text:00000001000365F8 var_48          = qword ptr -48h
.text:00000001000365F8 var_40          = dword ptr -40h
.text:00000001000365F8 var_3C          = dword ptr -3Ch
.text:00000001000365F8 var_38          = dword ptr -38h
.text:00000001000365F8 var_30          = qword ptr -30h
.text:00000001000365F8 var_28          = xmmword ptr -28h
.text:00000001000365F8 var_18          = byte ptr -18h
.text:00000001000365F8
.text:00000001000365F8 ; FUNCTION CHUNK AT .text:00000001000A55C2 SIZE ↴
    ↴ 00000018 BYTES
.text:00000001000365F8
.text:00000001000365F8 ; __unwind { // __CxxFrameHandler3
.text:00000001000365F8     mov      rax, rsp
.text:00000001000365FB     push     rdi
.text:00000001000365FC     push     r12
.text:00000001000365FE     push     r13
.text:0000000100036600     sub      rsp, 60h
.text:0000000100036604     mov      [rsp+78h+var_48], 0
    ↴ FFFFFFFFFFFFFFEh
.text:000000010003660D     mov      [rax+8], rbx
.text:0000000100036611     mov      [rax+10h], rbp
.text:0000000100036615     mov      [rax+18h], rsi
.text:0000000100036619     movaps  xmmword ptr [rax-28h], xmm6
.text:000000010003661D     mov      rsi, rcx
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:0000000100036620 xor edx, edx ; struct <
    ↳ Card *
.text:0000000100036622 call ?<
    ↳ SetSelectedCard@SolitaireGame@@QEAXPEAVCard@@@Z ; SolitaireGame::<
        ↳ SetSelectedCard(Card *)
.text:0000000100036627 and qword ptr [rsi+0F0h], 0
.text:000000010003662F mov rax, cs:<
    ↳ g_pSolitaireGame@@3PEAVSolitaireGame@@EA ; SolitaireGame * <
        ↳ g_pSolitaireGame
.text:0000000100036636 mov rdx, [rax+48h]
.text:000000010003663A cmp byte ptr [rdx+51h], 0
.text:000000010003663E jz short loc_10003664E
.text:0000000100036640 xor r8d, r8d ; bool
.text:0000000100036643 mov dl, 1 ; int
.text:0000000100036645 lea ecx, [r8+3] ; this
.text:0000000100036649 call ?<
    ↳ PlaySoundProto@GameAudio@@YA_NH_NPEAI@Z ; GameAudio::PlaySoundProto(<
        ↳ int, bool, uint *)
.text:000000010003664E
.text:000000010003664E loc_10003664E: ; CODE XREF:<
    ↳ SolitaireGame::InitialDeal(void)+46
.text:000000010003664E mov rbx, [rsi+88h]
.text:0000000100036655 mov r8d, 4
.text:000000010003665B lea rdx, aCardstackCreat ; <
    ↳ CardStack::CreateDeck()::uiNumSuits == "...<
.text:0000000100036662 mov ebp, 10000h
.text:0000000100036667 mov ecx, ebp ; unsigned <
    ↳ int
.text:0000000100036669 call ?Log@@YAXIPEBGZZ ; Log(uint,<
    ↳ ushort const *,...)
.text:000000010003666E mov r8d, 52 ; ---
.text:0000000100036674 lea rdx, aCardstackCreat_0 ; <
    ↳ CardStack::CreateDeck()::uiNumCards == "...<
.text:000000010003667B mov ecx, ebp ; unsigned <
    ↳ int
.text:000000010003667D call ?Log@@YAXIPEBGZZ ; Log(uint,<
    ↳ ushort const *,...)
.text:0000000100036682 xor edi, edi

.text:0000000100036684 loc_100036684: ; CODE XREF:<
    ↳ SolitaireGame::InitialDeal(void)+C0
.text:0000000100036684 mov eax, 4EC4EC4Fh
.text:0000000100036689 mul edi
.text:000000010003668B mov r8d, edx
.text:000000010003668E shr r8d, 4 ; unsigned <
    ↳ int
.text:0000000100036692 mov eax, r8d
.text:0000000100036695 imul eax, 52 ; ---
.text:0000000100036698 mov edx, edi
.text:000000010003669A sub edx, eax ; unsigned <
    ↳ int
.text:000000010003669C mov rcx, [rbx+128h] ; this
.text:00000001000366A3 call ?<

```

```

↳ CreateCard@CardTable@@IEAAPPEAVCard@@II@Z ; CardTable::CreateCard(uint,
    ↳ ,uint)
.text:00000001000366A8          mov     rdx,  rax      ; struct ↵
    ↳ Card *
.text:00000001000366AB          mov     rcx,  rbx      ; this
.text:00000001000366AE          call    ?↗
    ↳ Push@CardStack@@QEAXPEAVCard@@@Z ; CardStack::Push(Card *)
.text:00000001000366B3          inc     edi
.text:00000001000366B5          cmp     edi,  52       ; ---
.text:00000001000366B8          jb     short loc_100036684

.text:00000001000366BA          xor     r8d,  r8d      ; bool
.text:00000001000366BD          xor     edx,  edx      ; bool
.text:00000001000366BF          mov     rcx,  rbx      ; this
.text:00000001000366C2          call    ?↗
    ↳ Arrange@CardStack@@QEAX_N0@Z ; CardStack::Arrange(bool,bool)
.text:00000001000366C7          mov     r13, [rsi+88h]
.text:00000001000366CE          lea     rdx,  aCardstackShuff ; "↗
    ↳ CardStack::Shuffle()"
.text:00000001000366D5          mov     ecx,  ebp      ; unsigned ↵
    ↳ int
.text:00000001000366D7          call    ?Log@@YAXIPEBGZZ ; Log(uint, ↵
    ↳ ushort const *,...)
.text:00000001000366DC          and    [rsp+78h+var_40], 0
.text:00000001000366E1          and    [rsp+78h+var_3C], 0
.text:00000001000366E6          mov     [rsp+78h+var_38], 10h
.text:00000001000366EE          xor     ebx,  ebx
.text:00000001000366F0          mov     [rsp+78h+var_30], rbx

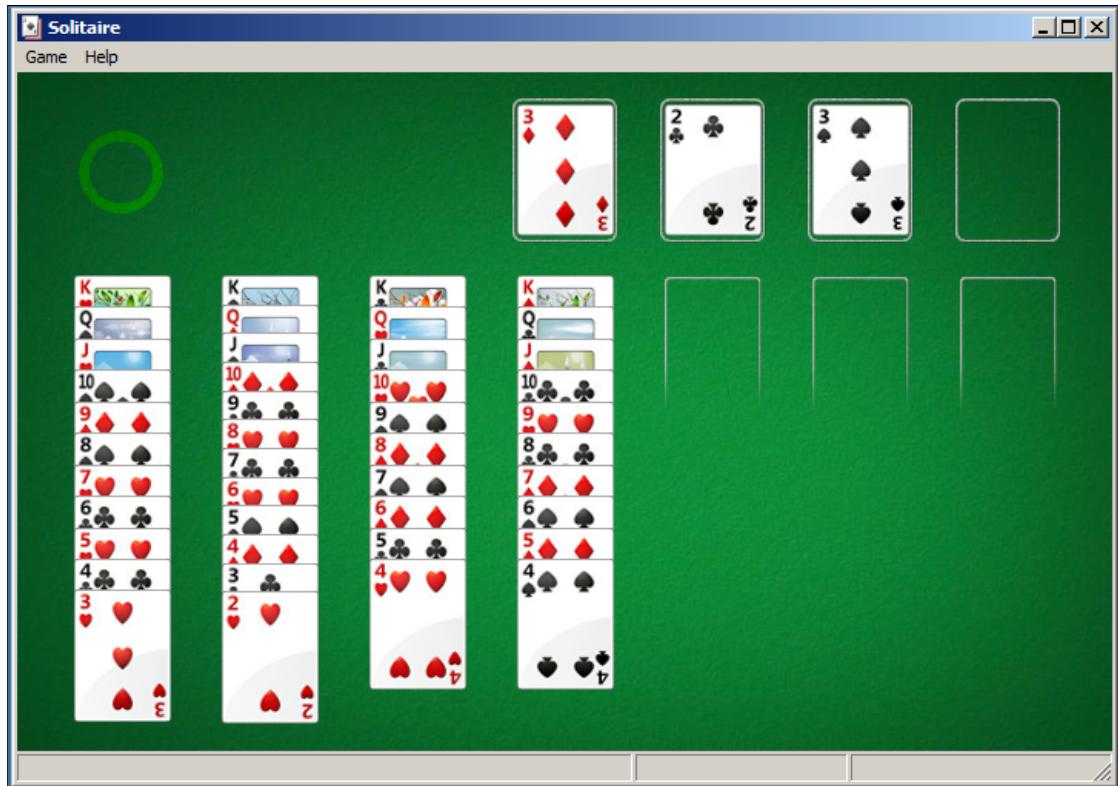
...

```

Anyway, we clearly see a loop of 52 iterations. A loop body has calls to `CardTable()::CreateCard()` and `CardStack::Push()`.

The `CardTable::CreateCard()` eventually calls `Card::Init()` with values in 0..51 range, as one of its arguments. This can be easily checked using debugger.

So I tried just to change the 52 (0x34) number to 51 (0x33) in the `cmp edi, 52` instruction at `0x1000366B5` and run it. At first glance, nothing happened, but I noticed that now it's hard to solve the game. I spent almost an hour to reach this position:



Ace of hearts is missing. Perhaps, internally, this card is numbered as 51th (if to number them from zero).

In the other place I found all card names. Maybe names to be used to fetch card graphics from resources?

```
.data:00000001000B6970 ?CARD_NAME@Card@@2PAPEBGA dq offset aTwoofclubs
.data:00000001000B6970
    ↴ TwoOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B6978
    ↴ ThreeOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B6980
    ↴ FourOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B6988
    ↴ FiveOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B6990
    ↴ SixOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B6998
    ↴ SevenOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B69A0
    ↴ EightOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B69A8
    ↴ NineOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B69B0
    ↴ TenOfClubs"
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.data:00000001000B69B8          dq offset aJackofclubs ; "↙
    ↳ JackOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B69C0          dq offset aQueenofclubs ; "↙
    ↳ QueenOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B69C8          dq offset aKingofclubs ; "↙
    ↳ KingOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B69D0          dq offset aAcefclubs ; "↙
    ↳ AceOfClubs"
.data:00000001000B69D8          dq offset aTwoofdiamonds ; "↙
    ↳ TwoOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B69E0          dq offset aThreeofdiamond ; "↙
    ↳ ThreeOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B69E8          dq offset aFourofdiamonds ; "↙
    ↳ FourOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B69F0          dq offset aFiveofdiamonds ; "↙
    ↳ FiveOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B69F8          dq offset aSixofdiamonds ; "↙
    ↳ SixOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B6A00          dq offset aSevenofdiamond ; "↙
    ↳ SevenOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B6A08          dq offset aEightofdiamond ; "↙
    ↳ EightOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B6A10          dq offset aNineofdiamonds ; "↙
    ↳ NineOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B6A18          dq offset aTenofdiamonds ; "↙
    ↳ TenOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B6A20          dq offset aJackofdiamonds ; "↙
    ↳ JackOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B6A28          dq offset aQueenofdiamond ; "↙
    ↳ QueenOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B6A30          dq offset aKingofdiamonds ; "↙
    ↳ KingOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B6A38          dq offset aAcefdiamonds ; "↙
    ↳ AceOfDiamonds"
.data:00000001000B6A40          dq offset aTwoofspades ; "↙
    ↳ TwoOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A48          dq offset aThreeofspades ; "↙
    ↳ ThreeOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A50          dq offset aFourofspades ; "↙
    ↳ FourOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A58          dq offset aFiveofspades ; "↙
    ↳ FiveOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A60          dq offset aSixofspades ; "↙
    ↳ SixOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A68          dq offset aSevenofspades ; "↙
    ↳ SevenOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A70          dq offset aEightofspades ; "↙
    ↳ EightOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A78          dq offset aNineofspades ; "↙
    ↳ NineOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A80          dq offset aTenofspades ; "↙
    ↳ TenOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A88          dq offset aJackofspades ; "↙
    ↳ JackOfSpades"

```

```

    ↳ JackOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A90      dq offset aQueenofspades ; "↙
    ↳ QueenOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6A98      dq offset aKingofspades ; "↙
    ↳ KingOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6AA0      dq offset aAceofspades ; "↙
    ↳ AceOfSpades"
.data:00000001000B6AA8      dq offset aTwoofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ TwoOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6AB0      dq offset aThreeofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ ThreeOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6AB8      dq offset aFourofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ FourOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6AC0      dq offset aFiveofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ FiveOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6AC8      dq offset aSixofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ SixOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6AD0      dq offset aSevenofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ SevenOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6AD8      dq offset aEightofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ EightOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6AE0      dq offset aNineofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ NineOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6AE8      dq offset aTenofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ TenOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6AF0      dq offset aJackofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ JackOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6AF8      dq offset aQueenofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ QueenOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6B00      dq offset aKingofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ KingOfHearts"
.data:00000001000B6B08      dq offset aAceofhearts ; "↙
    ↳ AceOfHearts"

.data:00000001000B6B10 ; public: static unsigned short const * near * Card ↵
    ↳ ::CARD_HUMAN_NAME
.data:00000001000B6B10 ?CARD_HUMAN_NAME@Card@@2PAPEBGA dq offset ↵
    ↳ a54639Cardnames
.data:00000001000B6B10 ; "||54639| ↵
    ↳ CardNames|Two Of Clubs"
.data:00000001000B6B18      dq offset a64833Cardnames ; "|64833| ↵
    ↳ CardNames|Three Of Clubs"
.data:00000001000B6B20      dq offset a62984Cardnames ; "|62984| ↵
    ↳ CardNames|Four Of Clubs"
.data:00000001000B6B28      dq offset a65200Cardnames ; "|65200| ↵
    ↳ CardNames|Five Of Clubs"
.data:00000001000B6B30      dq offset a52967Cardnames ; "|52967| ↵
    ↳ CardNames|Six Of Clubs"
.data:00000001000B6B38      dq offset a42781Cardnames ; "|42781| ↵
    ↳ CardNames|Seven Of Clubs"
.data:00000001000B6B40      dq offset a49217Cardnames ; "|49217| ↵
    ↳ CardNames|Eight Of Clubs"
.data:00000001000B6B48      dq offset a44682Cardnames ; "|44682| ↵

```

<pre> ↳ CardNames Nine Of Clubs" .data:00000001000B6B50 ↳ CardNames Ten Of Clubs" .data:00000001000B6B58 ↳ CardNames Jack Of Clubs" .data:00000001000B6B60 ↳ CardNames Queen Of Clubs" .data:00000001000B6B68 ↳ CardNames King Of Clubs" .data:00000001000B6B70 ↳ CardNames Ace Of Clubs" .data:00000001000B6B78 ↳ CardNames Two Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6B80 ↳ CardNames Three Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6B88 ↳ CardNames Four Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6B90 ↳ CardNames Five Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6B98 ↳ CardNames Six Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6BA0 ↳ CardNames Seven Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6BA8 ↳ CardNames Eight Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6BB0 ↳ CardNames Nine Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6BB8 ↳ CardNames Ten Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6BC0 ↳ CardNames Jack Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6BC8 ↳ CardNames Queen Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6BD0 ↳ CardNames King Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6BD8 ↳ CardNames Ace Of Diamonds" .data:00000001000B6BE0 ↳ CardNames Two Of Spades" .data:00000001000B6BE8 ↳ CardNames Three Of Spades" .data:00000001000B6BF0 ↳ CardNames Four Of Spades" .data:00000001000B6BF8 ↳ CardNames Five Of Spades" .data:00000001000B6C00 ↳ CardNames Six Of Spades" .data:00000001000B6C08 ↳ CardNames Seven Of Spades" .data:00000001000B6C10 ↳ CardNames Eight Of Spades" .data:00000001000B6C18 ↳ CardNames Nine Of Spades" </pre>	dq offset a51853Cardnames ; " 51853 \r\n dq offset a46368Cardnames ; " 46368 \r\n dq offset a61344Cardnames ; " 61344 \r\n dq offset a65017Cardnames ; " 65017 \r\n dq offset a57807Cardnames ; " 57807 \r\n dq offset a48455Cardnames ; " 48455 \r\n dq offset a44156Cardnames ; " 44156 \r\n dq offset a51672Cardnames ; " 51672 \r\n dq offset a45972Cardnames ; " 45972 \r\n dq offset a47206Cardnames ; " 47206 \r\n dq offset a48399Cardnames ; " 48399 \r\n dq offset a47847Cardnames ; " 47847 \r\n dq offset a48606Cardnames ; " 48606 \r\n dq offset a61278Cardnames ; " 61278 \r\n dq offset a52038Cardnames ; " 52038 \r\n dq offset a54643Cardnames ; " 54643 \r\n dq offset a48902Cardnames ; " 48902 \r\n dq offset a46672Cardnames ; " 46672 \r\n dq offset a41049Cardnames ; " 41049 \r\n dq offset a49327Cardnames ; " 49327 \r\n dq offset a51933Cardnames ; " 51933 \r\n dq offset a42651Cardnames ; " 42651 \r\n dq offset a65342Cardnames ; " 65342 \r\n dq offset a53644Cardnames ; " 53644 \r\n dq offset a54466Cardnames ; " 54466 \r\n dq offset a56874Cardnames ; " 56874 \r\n
--	---

.data:00000001000B6C20	dq offset a46756Cardnames ; " 46756 ↴
↳ CardNames Ten Of Spades"	
.data:00000001000B6C28	dq offset a62876Cardnames ; " 62876 ↴
↳ CardNames Jack Of Spades"	
.data:00000001000B6C30	dq offset a64633Cardnames ; " 64633 ↴
↳ CardNames Queen Of Spades"	
.data:00000001000B6C38	dq offset a46215Cardnames ; " 46215 ↴
↳ CardNames King Of Spades"	
.data:00000001000B6C40	dq offset a60450Cardnames ; " 60450 ↴
↳ CardNames Ace Of Spades"	
.data:00000001000B6C48	dq offset a51010Cardnames ; " 51010 ↴
↳ CardNames Two Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6C50	dq offset a64948Cardnames ; " 64948 ↴
↳ CardNames Three Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6C58	dq offset a43079Cardnames ; " 43079 ↴
↳ CardNames Four Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6C60	dq offset a57131Cardnames ; " 57131 ↴
↳ CardNames Five Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6C68	dq offset a58953Cardnames ; " 58953 ↴
↳ CardNames Six Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6C70	dq offset a45105Cardnames ; " 45105 ↴
↳ CardNames Seven Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6C78	dq offset a47775Cardnames ; " 47775 ↴
↳ CardNames Eight Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6C80	dq offset a41825Cardnames ; " 41825 ↴
↳ CardNames Nine Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6C88	dq offset a41501Cardnames ; " 41501 ↴
↳ CardNames Ten Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6C90	dq offset a47108Cardnames ; " 47108 ↴
↳ CardNames Jack Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6C98	dq offset a55659Cardnames ; " 55659 ↴
↳ CardNames Queen Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6CA0	dq offset a44572Cardnames ; " 44572 ↴
↳ CardNames King Of Hearts"	
.data:00000001000B6CA8	dq offset a44183Cardnames ; " 44183 ↴
↳ CardNames Ace Of Hearts"	

If you want to do this to someone, be sure his/her mental health is stable.

Aside of function names from PDB file, there are lots of Log() function calls that can help significantly, because the Solitaire game reports about what it's doing right now.

Homework: try to remove several cards or two of clubs. And what if to swap card names in arrays of strings?

I also tried to pass a numbers like 0, 0..50 to Card:Init() (so to have 2 zeroes in a list of 52 numbers). Then I saw two *two of clubs* cards at one moment, but Solitaire behaves erratically.

This is patched Windows 7 Solitaire: [Solitaire51.exe](#).

8.6.2 53 cards

Now take a look on the first part of the loop:

```
.text:0000000100036684 loc_100036684: ; CODE XREF: ↴
    ↳ SolitaireGame::InitialDeal(void)+↓C0j
.text:0000000100036684      mov     eax, 4EC4EC4Fh
.text:0000000100036689      mul     edi
.text:000000010003668B      mov     r8d, edx
.text:000000010003668E      shr     r8d, 4      ; unsigned ↴
    ↳ int
.text:0000000100036692      mov     eax, r8d
.text:0000000100036695      imul   eax, 52
.text:0000000100036698      mov     edx, edi
.text:000000010003669A      sub     edx, eax      ; unsigned ↴
    ↳ int
.text:000000010003669C      mov     rcx, [rbx+128h] ; this
.text:00000001000366A3      call   ?↗
    ↳ CreateCard@CardTable@@IEAAPPEAVCard@II@Z ; CardTable::CreateCard(uint, ↴
    ↳ ,uint)
.text:00000001000366A8      mov     rdx, rax      ; struct ↴
    ↳ Card *
.text:00000001000366AB      mov     rcx, rbx      ; this
.text:00000001000366AE      call   ?↗
    ↳ Push@CardStack@@QEAXPEAVCard@@@Z ; CardStack::Push(Card *)
.text:00000001000366B3      inc     edi
.text:00000001000366B5      cmp     edi, 52
.text:00000001000366B8      jb      short loc_100036684
```

What is with multiplication by 4EC4EC4Fh? Surely, this is division by multiplication. And what Hex-Rays can say:

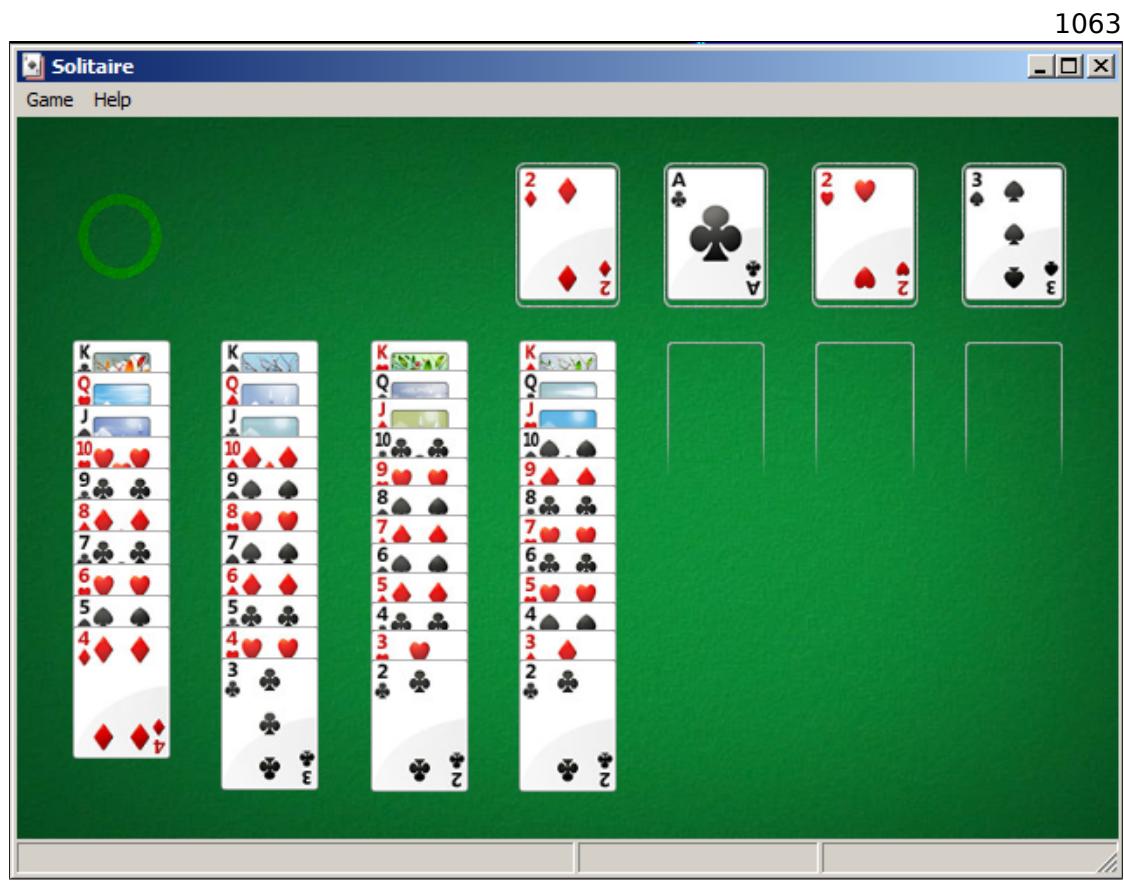
```
v5 = 0;
do
{
    v6 = CardTable::CreateCard(v4[37], v5 % 0x34, v5 / 0x34);
    CardStack::Push((CardStack *)v4, v6);
    ++v5;
}
while ( v5 < 0x34 );
```

Somehow, CreateCard() functions takes two arguments: iterator divided by 52 and a remainder of the division operation. Hard to say, why they did so. Solitaire can't allow more than 52 cards, so the last argument is senseless, it's always zero.

But when I patch cmp edi, 52 instruction at 0x1000366B5 to be cmp edi, 53, I found that there are now 53 cards. The last one is *two of clubs*, because it's numbered as 0th card.

During the last iteration, 0x52 is divided by 0x52, remainder is zero, so 0th card is added twice.

What a frustration, there are two *two of clubs*:



This is patched Windows 7 Solitaire: [Solitaire53](#).

8.7 FreeCell prank (Windows 7)

This is a prank I once played for my coworkers who played FreeCell solitaire too much. Can we make FreeCell always deal the same game each time? Like, you know, in “Groundhog Day” movie?

(I’m writing this in November 2019. Somehow, IDA can’t get PDBs from Microsoft servers. Maybe Windows 7 is unsupported anymore? Anyway, I can’t get function names...)

8.7.1 Part I

So I loaded FreeCell.exe into IDA and found that both rand(), srand() and time() are imported from msvcrt.dll. time() is indeed used as a seed for srand():

.text:01029612	sub_1029612	proc near	; CODE
XREF: sub_102615C+149			
.text:01029612			;
sub_1029DA6+67			

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1064

```
.text:01029612 8B FF          mov    edi, edi
.text:01029614 56             push   esi
.text:01029615 57             push   edi
.text:01029616 6A 00           push   0          ; Time
.text:01029618 8B F9           mov    edi, ecx
.text:0102961A FF 15 80 16 00+ call   ds:time
.text:01029620 50             push   eax         ; Seed
.text:01029621 FF 15 84 16 00+ call   ds:srand
.text:01029627 8B 35 AC 16 00+ mov    esi, ds:rand
.text:0102962D 59             pop    ecx
.text:0102962E 59             pop    ecx
.text:0102962F FF D6           call   esi ; rand
.text:01029631 FF D6           call   esi ; rand
.text:01029633
.text:01029633                 loc_1029633:          ; CODE
    XREF: sub_1029612+26
.text:01029633                 sub_1029612+2D
    sub_1029612+2D
.text:01029633 FF D6           call   esi ; rand
.text:01029635 83 F8 01           cmp   eax, 1
.text:01029638 7C F9           jl    short loc_1029633
.text:0102963A 3D 40 42 0F 00     cmp   eax, 1000000
.text:0102963F 7F F2           jg    short loc_1029633
.text:01029641 6A 01           push  1
.text:01029643 50             push  eax
.text:01029644 8B CF           mov   ecx, edi
.text:01029646 E8 2D F8 FF FF     call  sub_1028E78
.text:0102964B 5F             pop   edi
.text:0102964C 5E             pop   esi
.text:0102964D C3             retn
.text:0102964D                 sub_1029612        endp
```

Several (redundant) calls to rand() are funny, that reminds me:

“In the morning you will send for a hansom, desiring your man to take neither the first nor the second which may present itself.” (The Memoirs of Sherlock Holmes, by Arthur Conan Doyle¹¹)

There is another call of time() and srand() pair, but my tracer showed that this is the point of our interest:

```
tracer.exe -l:FreeCell.exe bpf=msvcrt.dll!time bpf=msvcrt.dll!srand,args:1

...
TID=5340|(0) msvcrt.dll!time() (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x29620 (0x209620))
TID=5340|(0) msvcrt.dll!time() -> 0x5ddb68aa
TID=5340|(1) msvcrt.dll!srand(0x5ddb68aa) (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x29627 (0x209627))
TID=5340|(1) msvcrt.dll!srand() -> 0x5507e0
TID=5340|(1) msvcrt.dll!srand(0x399f) (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x27d3a (0x207d3a))
```

¹¹<http://www.gutenberg.org/files/834/834-0.txt>

1065

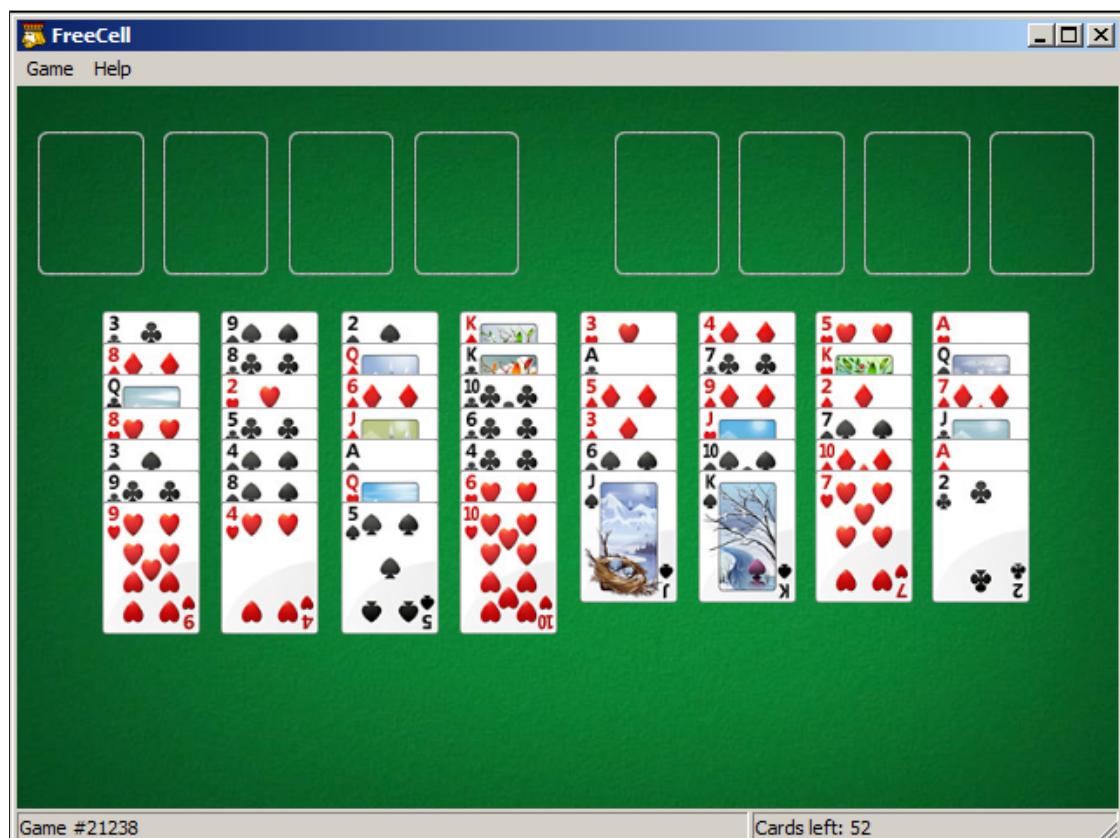
```
TID=5340|(1) msrvct.dll!srand() -> 0x5507e0
```

You see, the time() function returned 0x5ddb68aa and the very same value is used as an argument for srand().

Let's try to force time() to always return 0:

```
tracer.exe -l:FreeCell.exe bpf=msvcrt.dll!time,rt:0 bpf=msvcrt.dll!srand, ↴
    ↴ args:1
...
TID=2104|(0) msrvct.dll!time() (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x29620 (0x
    ↴ xb19620))
TID=2104|(0) msrvct.dll!time() -> 0x5ddb68f6
TID=2104|(0) Modifying EAX register to 0x0
TID=2104|(1) msrvct.dll!srand(0x0) (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x29627 (0x
    ↴ (0xb19627)))
TID=2104|(1) msrvct.dll!srand() -> 0x3707e0
TID=2104|(1) msrvct.dll!srand(0x52f6) (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x29627 (0x
    ↴ x27d3a (0xb19627)))
TID=2104|(1) msrvct.dll!srand() -> 0x3707e0
```

Now I'm seeing the same game each time I'm running FreeCell using [tracer](#):



If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Now how to patch the executable?

We want to pass 0 as an argument to `srand()` at `0x01029620`. But there is a one-byte instruction: `PUSH EAX`. `PUSH 0` is two-byte instruction. How to squeeze it into?

What is in other registers at this moment? Using [tracer](#) I'm dumping all them:

```
tracer.exe -l:FreeCell.exe bpx=FreeCell.exe!0x01029620

...
TID=4448|(0) FreeCell.exe!0x1029620
EAX=0x5ddb6ac4 EBX=0x00000000 ECX=0x00000000 EDX=0x00000000
ESI=0x054732d0 EDI=0x054732d0 EBP=0x0020f2bc ESP=0x0020f298
EIP=0x00899620
FLAGS=PF ZF IF
TID=4448|(0) FreeCell.exe!0x1029620
EAX=0x5ddb6ac8 EBX=0x00000002 ECX=0x00000000 EDX=0x00000000
ESI=0xfffffff11 EDI=0x054732d0 EBP=0x0020da78 ESP=0x0020d9d4
EIP=0x00899620
FLAGS=PF ZF IF
TID=4448|(0) FreeCell.exe!0x1029620
EAX=0x5ddb6aca EBX=0x00000002 ECX=0x00000000 EDX=0x00000000
ESI=0x7740c460 EDI=0x054732d0 EBP=0x0020da78 ESP=0x0020d9d4
EIP=0x00899620
FLAGS=PF ZF IF
...
```

No matter how often I restart the game, ECX and EDX are seems to be always 0. So I patching `PUSH EAX` at `0x01029620` to `PUSH EDX` (also one-byte instruction), and now FreeCell always shows the same game to the player.

However, other options could exist. As a matter of fact, we don't need to pass 0 to `srand()`. Rather, we want to pass a *constant* to `srand()` to make game the same each time. As we can see, EDI's value hasn't been changing. Maybe we could try it as well.

Now a bit harder patching. Let's open FreeCell.exe in Hiew:

Hiew: FreeCell.exe

```
C:\tmp\FreeCell.exe
.01029612: 8BFF          mov      edi,edi
.01029614: 56             push     esi
.01029615: 57             push     edi
.01029616: 6A00           push     0
.01029618: 8BF9           mov      edi,ecx
.0102961A: FF1580160001   call    time
.01029620: 50             push     eax
.01029621: FF1584160001   call    srand
.01029627: 8B35AC160001   mov      esi,rand --@1
.0102962D: 59             pop     ecx
.0102962E: 59             pop     ecx
.0102962F: FFD6           call    esi
.01029631: FFD6           call    esi
.01029633: FFD6           2call   esi
```

We have no space to replace one-byte PUSH EAX with two-byte PUSH 0. And we can't simply fill CALL ds:time with NOPs, because there is a FIXUP (address of time() function in msrvct.dll). (Hiew marked these 4 bytes are gray bytes.) So what I'm doing: patching first 2 bytes to EB 04. This is a JMP to bypass 4 FIXUP-ed bytes:

Hiew: FreeCell.exe

```
C:\tmp\FreeCell.exe
.01029612: 8BFF          mov      edi,edi
.01029614: 56             push     esi
.01029615: 57             push     edi
.01029616: 6A00           push     0
.01029618: 8BF9           mov      edi,ecx
.0102961A: EB04           jmps   .001029620 --@1
.0102961C: 801600           adc    b,[esi],0
.0102961F: 0190FF158416   add    [eax][0168415FF],edx
.01029625: 0001           add    [ecx],al
.01029627: 8B35AC160001   mov    esi,rand --@2
.0102962D: 59             pop     ecx
.0102962E: 90             nop
.0102962F: FFD6           call   esi
.01029631: FFD6           ..
```

Then I replace PUSH EAX with NOP. So that srand() would have its zeroes arguments from PUSH 0 above. Also, I patch one of POP ECX to NOP, because I removed one PUSH.

```
C:\tmp\FreeCell.exe
.01029620: 90          nop
.01029621: FF1584160001 call    srand
.01029627: 8B35AC160001 mov    esi,rand -0x1
.0102962D: 59          pop    ecx
.0102962E: 90          nop
.0102962F: FFD6        call    esi
.01029631: FFD6        call    esi
.01029633: FFD6        2call   esi
.01029635: 83E801       cmp    eax,1
```

Now Windows loader will write 4-byte FIXUP at 0x0102961C, but we don't care: time()'s address will not be used anymore.

8.7.2 Part II: breaking the Select Game submenu

The user can still choose different game in the menu. Let's see if srand() is still called. I'm trying to enter 1/2/3 in "Select Game" dialog box:

```
tracer.exe -l:FreeCell.exe bpf=msvcrt.dll!srand,args:1
...
TID=4936|(0) msvcrt.dll!srand(0x5ddb6df9) (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x29627 (0xb49627))
TID=4936|(0) msvcrt.dll!srand() -> 0x5907e0
TID=4936|(0) msvcrt.dll!srand(0x2b40) (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x27d3a (0xb47d3a))
TID=4936|(0) msvcrt.dll!srand() -> 0x5907e0
TID=4936|(0) msvcrt.dll!srand(0x1) (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x27d3a (0xb47d3a))
TID=4936|(0) msvcrt.dll!srand() -> 0x5907e0
TID=4936|(0) msvcrt.dll!srand(0x2) (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x27d3a (0xb47d3a))
TID=4936|(0) msvcrt.dll!srand() -> 0x5907e0
TID=4936|(0) msvcrt.dll!srand(0x3) (called from FreeCell.exe!BASE+0x27d3a (0xb47d3a))
TID=4936|(0) msvcrt.dll!srand() -> 0x5907e0
```

Yes, the number user enters is just an argument for srand(). Where it is called?

```
.text:01027CBA          loc_1027CBA: ; 
    ↳ CODE XREF: sub\1027AC6+179
.text:01027CBA 83 FF FC      cmp    edi, 0FFFFFFFCh
.text:01027CBD 75 74        jnz    short loc_1027D33
...
.text:01027D33          loc_1027D33: ; 
    ↳ CODE XREF: sub\1027AC6+1F7
```

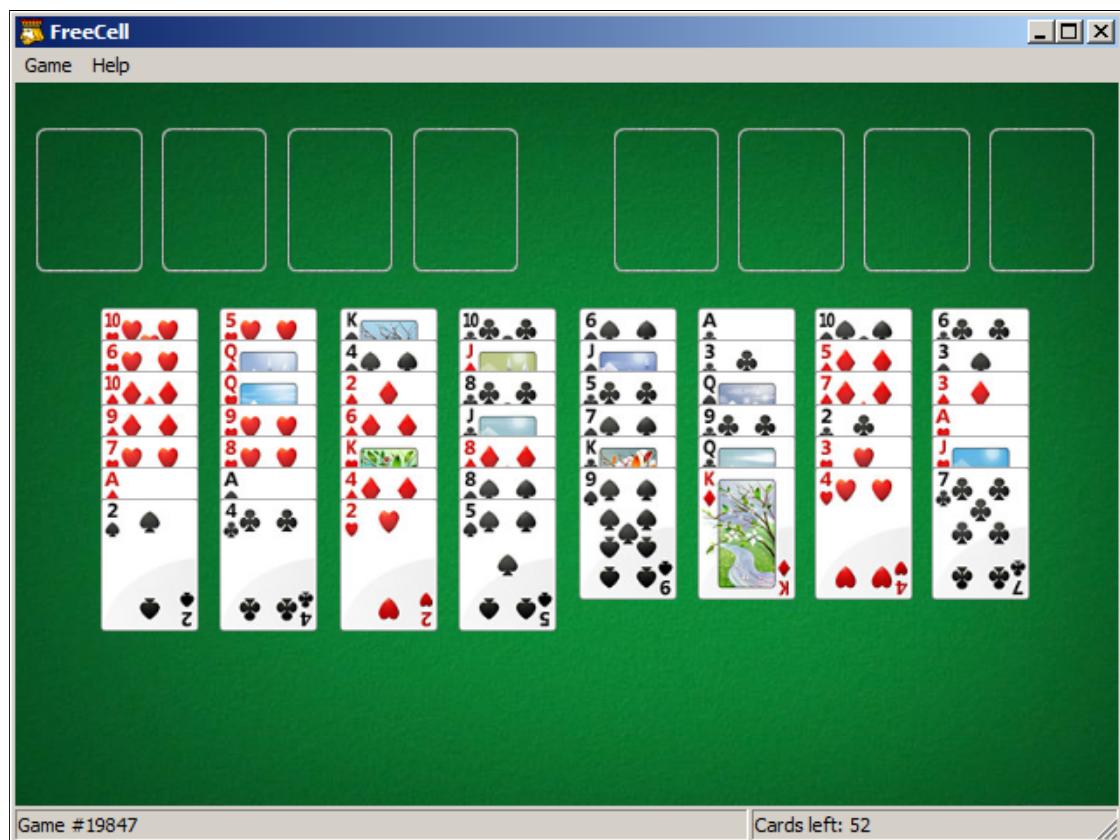
1069

```
.text:01027D33 57          push    edi      ; ↵
    ↳ Seed
.text:01027D34 FF 15 84 16 00+    call    ds:srand
.text:01027D3A 59          pop     ecx
.text:01027D3B 6A 34          push    34h
.text:01027D3D 5B          pop     ebx
.text:01027D3E 33 C0          xor     eax, eax
```

I couldn't patch one-byte PUSH EDI to two-byte PUSH 0. But I see that there is only one single jump to loc_1027D33 from the above.

I'm patching CMP EDI, ... to XOR EDI, EDI, padding the 3rd byte to NOP. I'm patching also JNZ to JMP, so that jump will always occur.

Now FreeCell ignores the number user enters, but suddenly, there is also the same game at start:



It seems that the code we patched in part I is somehow connected to a code after 0x01027CBD, that executes if EDI==0xFFFFFFFFC. Anyway, our goal is accomplished — the game is always the same at the start and the user can't choose another using the menu.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

8.8 Dongles

The author of these lines, occasionally did software copy-protection [dongle](#) replacements, or “dongle emulators” and here are couple examples of how it’s happening.

About one of the cases about Rocket and Z3 that is not present here, you can read here: http://yurichev.com/tmp/SAT_SMT_DRAFT.pdf.

8.8.1 Example #1: MacOS Classic and PowerPC

Here is an example of a program for MacOS Classic ^{[12](#)}, for PowerPC. The company who developed the software product has disappeared a long time ago, so the (legal) customer was afraid of physical dongle damage.

While running without a dongle connected, a message box with the text “Invalid Security Device” appeared.

Luckily, this text string could easily be found in the executable binary file.

Let’s pretend we are not very familiar both with Mac OS Classic and PowerPC, but will try anyway.

[IDA](#) opened the executable file smoothly, reported its type as “PEF (Mac OS or Be OS executable)” (indeed, it is a standard Mac OS Classic file format).

By searching for the text string with the error message, we’ve got into this code fragment:

```
...
seg000:000C87FC 38 60 00 01    li      %r3, 1
seg000:000C8800 48 03 93 41    bl      check1
seg000:000C8804 60 00 00 00    nop
seg000:000C8808 54 60 06 3F    clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 24
seg000:000C880C 40 82 00 40    bne     OK
seg000:000C8810 80 62 9F D8    lwz     %r3, TC_aInvalidSecurityDevice
...
...
```

Yes, this is PowerPC code.

The CPU is a very typical 32-bit [RISC](#) of 1990s era.

Each instruction occupies 4 bytes (just as in MIPS and ARM) and the names somewhat resemble MIPS instruction names.

`check1()` is a function name we’ll give to it later. `BL` is *Branch Link* instruction, e.g., intended for calling subroutines.

The crucial point is the `BNE` instruction which jumps if the dongle protection check passes or not if an error occurs: then the address of the text string gets loaded into the `r3` register for the subsequent passing into a message box routine.

¹²pre-UNIX MacOS

From the [Steve Zucker, SunSoft and Kari Karhi, IBM, *SYSTEM V APPLICATION BINARY INTERFACE: PowerPC Processor Supplement*, (1995)]¹³ we will find out that the r3 register is used for return values (and r4, in case of 64-bit values).

Another yet unknown instruction is CLRLWI. From [*PowerPC(tm) Microprocessor Family: The Programming Environments for 32-Bit Microprocessors*, (2000)]¹⁴ we'll learn that this instruction does both clearing and loading. In our case, it clears the 24 high bits from the value in r3 and puts them in r0, so it is analogical to MOVZX in x86 ([1.23.1 on page 255](#)), but it also sets the flags, so **BNE** can check them afterwards.

Let's take a look into the `check1()` function:

```
seg000:00101B40          check1: # CODE XREF: seg000:00063E7Cp
seg000:00101B40          # sub_64070+160p ...
seg000:00101B40
seg000:00101B40          .set arg_8, 8
seg000:00101B40
seg000:00101B40 7C 08 02 A6      mflr    %r0
seg000:00101B44 90 01 00 08      stw     %r0, arg_8(%sp)
seg000:00101B48 94 21 FF C0      stwu   %sp, -0x40(%sp)
seg000:00101B4C 48 01 6B 39      bl      check2
seg000:00101B50 60 00 00 00      nop
seg000:00101B54 80 01 00 48      lwz     %r0, 0x40+arg_8(%sp)
seg000:00101B58 38 21 00 40      addi   %sp, %sp, 0x40
seg000:00101B5C 7C 08 03 A6      mtlr   %r0
seg000:00101B60 4E 80 00 20      blr
seg000:00101B60          # End of function check1
```

As you can see in **IDA**, that function is called from many places in the program, but only the r3 register's value is checked after each call.

All this function does is to call the other function, so it is a **thunk function**: there are function prologue and epilogue, but the r3 register is not touched, so `check1()` returns what `check2()` returns.

BLR¹⁵ looks like the return from the function, but since **IDA** does the function layout, we probably do not need to care about this.

Since it is a typical **RISC**, it seems that subroutines are called using a **link register**, just like in ARM.

The `check2()` function is more complex:

```
seg000:00118684          check2: # CODE XREF: check1+Cp
seg000:00118684
seg000:00118684          .set var_18, -0x18
seg000:00118684          .set var_C, -0xC
seg000:00118684          .set var_8, -8
seg000:00118684          .set var_4, -4
seg000:00118684          .set arg_8, 8
seg000:00118684
```

¹³Also available as http://yurichev.com/mirrors/PowerPC/elfspec_ppc.pdf

¹⁴Also available as http://yurichev.com/mirrors/PowerPC/6xx_pem.pdf

¹⁵(PowerPC) Branch to Link Register

```

seg000:00118684 93 E1 FF FC    stw      %r31, var_4(%sp)
seg000:00118688 7C 08 02 A6    mflr     %r0
seg000:0011868C 83 E2 95 A8    lwz      %r31, off_1485E8 # dword_24B704
seg000:00118690          .using dword_24B704, %r31
seg000:00118690 93 C1 FF F8    stw      %r30, var_8(%sp)
seg000:00118694 93 A1 FF F4    stw      %r29, var_C(%sp)
seg000:00118698 7C 7D 1B 78    mr       %r29, %r3
seg000:0011869C 90 01 00 08    stw      %r0, arg_8(%sp)
seg000:001186A0 54 60 06 3E    clrlwi   %r0, %r3, 24
seg000:001186A4 28 00 00 01    cmplwi   %r0, 1
seg000:001186A8 94 21 FF B0    stwu     %sp, -0x50(%sp)
seg000:001186AC 40 82 00 0C    bne      loc_1186B8
seg000:001186B0 38 60 00 01    li       %r3, 1
seg000:001186B4 48 00 00 6C    b        exit
seg000:001186B8
seg000:001186B8          loc_1186B8: # CODE XREF: check2+28j
seg000:001186B8 48 00 03 D5    bl       sub_118A8C
seg000:001186BC 60 00 00 00    nop
seg000:001186C0 3B C0 00 00    li       %r30, 0
seg000:001186C4
seg000:001186C4          skip:     # CODE XREF: check2+94j
seg000:001186C4 57 C0 06 3F    clrlwi   %r0, %r30, 24
seg000:001186C8 41 82 00 18    beq      loc_1186E0
seg000:001186CC 38 61 00 38    addi     %r3, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:001186D0 80 9F 00 00    lwz      %r4, dword_24B704
seg000:001186D4 48 00 C0 55    bl       .RBEFINDNEXT
seg000:001186D8 60 00 00 00    nop
seg000:001186DC 48 00 00 1C    b        loc_1186F8
seg000:001186E0
seg000:001186E0          loc_1186E0: # CODE XREF: check2+44j
seg000:001186E0 80 BF 00 00    lwz      %r5, dword_24B704
seg000:001186F4 38 81 00 38    addi     %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:001186E8 38 60 08 C2    li       %r3, 0x1234
seg000:001186EC 48 00 BF 99    bl       .RBEFINDFIRST
seg000:001186F0 60 00 00 00    nop
seg000:001186F4 3B C0 00 01    li       %r30, 1
seg000:001186F8
seg000:001186F8          loc_1186F8: # CODE XREF: check2+58j
seg000:001186F8 54 60 04 3F    clrlwi   %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:001186FC 41 82 00 0C    beq      must_jump
seg000:00118700 38 60 00 00    li       %r3, 0           # error
seg000:00118704 48 00 00 1C    b        exit
seg000:00118708
seg000:00118708          must_jump: # CODE XREF: check2+78j
seg000:00118708 7F A3 EB 78    mr       %r3, %r29
seg000:0011870C 48 00 00 31    bl       check3
seg000:00118710 60 00 00 00    nop
seg000:00118714 54 60 06 3F    clrlwi   %r0, %r3, 24
seg000:00118718 41 82 FF AC    beq      skip
seg000:0011871C 38 60 00 01    li       %r3, 1
seg000:00118720
seg000:00118720          exit:    # CODE XREF: check2+30j
seg000:00118720          # check2+80j

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

seg000:00118720 80 01 00 58    lwz      %r0, 0x50+arg_8(%sp)
seg000:00118724 38 21 00 50    addi     %sp, %sp, 0x50
seg000:00118728 83 E1 FF FC    lwz      %r31, var_4(%sp)
seg000:0011872C 7C 08 03 A6    mtlr    %r0
seg000:00118730 83 C1 FF F8    lwz      %r30, var_8(%sp)
seg000:00118734 83 A1 FF F4    lwz      %r29, var_C(%sp)
seg000:00118738 4E 80 00 20    blr
seg000:00118738               # End of function check2

```

We are lucky again: some function names are left in the executable (debug symbols section)?

Hard to say while we are not very familiar with the file format, maybe it is some kind of PE exports? ([6.5.2](#)), like `.RBEFINDNEXT()` and `.RBEFINDFIRST()`.

Eventually these functions call other functions with names like `.GetNextDeviceViaUSB()`, `.USBSendPKT()`, so these are clearly dealing with an USB device.

There is even a function named `.GetNextEve3Device()`—sounds familiar, there was a Sentinel Eve3 dongle for ADB port (present on Macs) in 1990s.

Let's first take a look on how the r3 register is set before return, while ignoring everything else.

We know that a “good” r3 value has to be non-zero, zero r3 leads the execution flow to the message box with an error message.

There are two `li %r3, 1` instructions present in the function and one `li %r3, 0` (*Load Immediate*, i.e., loading a value into a register). The first instruction is at `0x001186B0`—and frankly speaking, it's hard to say what it means.

What we see next is, however, easier to understand: `.RBEFINDFIRST()` is called: if it fails, 0 is written into r3 and we jump to `exit`, otherwise another function is called (`check3()`)—if it fails too, `.RBEFINDNEXT()` is called, probably in order to look for another USB device.

N.B.: `clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16` it is analogical to what we already saw, but it clears 16 bits, i.e.,

`.RBEFINDFIRST()` probably returns a 16-bit value.

B (stands for *branch*) unconditional jump.

BEQ is the inverse instruction of **BNE**.

Let's see `check3()`:

```

seg000:0011873C          check3: # CODE XREF: check2+88p
seg000:0011873C
seg000:0011873C          .set var_18, -0x18
seg000:0011873C          .set var_C, -0xC
seg000:0011873C          .set var_8, -8
seg000:0011873C          .set var_4, -4
seg000:0011873C          .set arg_8, 8
seg000:0011873C
seg000:0011873C 93 E1 FF FC  stw      %r31, var_4(%sp)
seg000:00118740 7C 08 02 A6  mflr    %r0

```

```

seg000:00118744 38 A0 00 00    li      %r5, 0
seg000:00118748 93 C1 FF F8    stw    %r30, var_8(%sp)
seg000:0011874C 83 C2 95 A8    lwz    %r30, off_1485E8 # dword_24B704
seg000:00118750          .using dword_24B704, %r30
seg000:00118750 93 A1 FF F4    stw    %r29, var_C(%sp)
seg000:00118754 3B A3 00 00    addi   %r29, %r3, 0
seg000:00118758 38 60 00 00    li      %r3, 0
seg000:0011875C 90 01 00 08    stw    %r0, arg_8(%sp)
seg000:00118760 94 21 FF B0    stwu   %sp, -0x50(%sp)
seg000:00118764 80 DE 00 00    lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:00118768 38 81 00 38    addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:0011876C 48 00 C0 5D    bl     .RBREAD
seg000:00118770 60 00 00 00    nop
seg000:00118774 54 60 04 3F    clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118778 41 82 00 0C    beq    loc_118784
seg000:0011877C 38 60 00 00    li      %r3, 0
seg000:00118780 48 00 02 F0    b      exit
seg000:00118784
seg000:00118784          loc_118784: # CODE XREF: check3+3Cj
seg000:00118784 A0 01 00 38    lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118788 28 00 04 B2    cmplwi %r0, 0x1100
seg000:0011878C 41 82 00 0C    beq    loc_118798
seg000:00118790 38 60 00 00    li      %r3, 0
seg000:00118794 48 00 02 DC    b      exit
seg000:00118798
seg000:00118798          loc_118798: # CODE XREF: check3+50j
seg000:00118798 80 DE 00 00    lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:0011879C 38 81 00 38    addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:001187A0 38 60 00 01    li      %r3, 1
seg000:001187A4 38 A0 00 00    li      %r5, 0
seg000:001187A8 48 00 C0 21    bl     .RBREAD
seg000:001187AC 60 00 00 00    nop
seg000:001187B0 54 60 04 3F    clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:001187B4 41 82 00 0C    beq    loc_1187C0
seg000:001187B8 38 60 00 00    li      %r3, 0
seg000:001187BC 48 00 02 B4    b      exit
seg000:001187C0
seg000:001187C0          loc_1187C0: # CODE XREF: check3+78j
seg000:001187C0 A0 01 00 38    lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:001187C4 28 00 06 4B    cmplwi %r0, 0x09AB
seg000:001187C8 41 82 00 0C    beq    loc_1187D4
seg000:001187CC 38 60 00 00    li      %r3, 0
seg000:001187D0 48 00 02 A0    b      exit
seg000:001187D4
seg000:001187D4          loc_1187D4: # CODE XREF: check3+8Cj
seg000:001187D4 4B F9 F3 D9    bl     sub_B7BAC
seg000:001187D8 60 00 00 00    nop
seg000:001187DC 54 60 06 3E    clrlwi %r0, %r3, 24
seg000:001187E0 2C 00 00 05    cmpwi  %r0, 5
seg000:001187E4 41 82 01 00    beq    loc_1188E4
seg000:001187E8 40 80 00 10    bge    loc_1187F8
seg000:001187EC 2C 00 00 04    cmpwi  %r0, 4
seg000:001187F0 40 80 00 58    bge    loc_118848

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

seg000:001187F4 48 00 01 8C   b      loc_118980
seg000:001187F8
seg000:001187F8          loc_1187F8: # CODE XREF: check3+ACj
seg000:001187F8 2C 00 00 0B   cmpwi   %r0, 0xB
seg000:001187FC 41 82 00 08   beq     loc_118804
seg000:00118800 48 00 01 80   b       loc_118980
seg000:00118804
seg000:00118804          loc_118804: # CODE XREF: check3+C0j
seg000:00118804 80 DE 00 00   lwz     %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:00118808 38 81 00 38   addi    %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:0011880C 38 60 00 08   li      %r3, 8
seg000:00118810 38 A0 00 00   li      %r5, 0
seg000:00118814 48 00 BF B5   bl      .RBERead
seg000:00118818 60 00 00 00   nop
seg000:0011881C 54 60 04 3F   clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118820 41 82 00 0C   beq     loc_11882C
seg000:00118824 38 60 00 00   li      %r3, 0
seg000:00118828 48 00 02 48   b       exit
seg000:0011882C
seg000:0011882C          loc_11882C: # CODE XREF: check3+E4j
seg000:0011882C A0 01 00 38   lhz     %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118830 28 00 11 30   cmplwi  %r0, 0xFEAO
seg000:00118834 41 82 00 0C   beq     loc_118840
seg000:00118838 38 60 00 00   li      %r3, 0
seg000:0011883C 48 00 02 34   b       exit
seg000:00118840
seg000:00118840          loc_118840: # CODE XREF: check3+F8j
seg000:00118840 38 60 00 01   li      %r3, 1
seg000:00118844 48 00 02 2C   b       exit
seg000:00118848
seg000:00118848          loc_118848: # CODE XREF: check3+B4j
seg000:00118848 80 DE 00 00   lwz     %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:0011884C 38 81 00 38   addi    %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:00118850 38 60 00 0A   li      %r3, 0xA
seg000:00118854 38 A0 00 00   li      %r5, 0
seg000:00118858 48 00 BF 71   bl      .RBERead
seg000:0011885C 60 00 00 00   nop
seg000:00118860 54 60 04 3F   clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118864 41 82 00 0C   beq     loc_118870
seg000:00118868 38 60 00 00   li      %r3, 0
seg000:0011886C 48 00 02 04   b       exit
seg000:00118870
seg000:00118870          loc_118870: # CODE XREF: check3+128j
seg000:00118870 A0 01 00 38   lhz     %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118874 28 00 03 F3   cmplwi  %r0, 0xA6E1
seg000:00118878 41 82 00 0C   beq     loc_118884
seg000:0011887C 38 60 00 00   li      %r3, 0
seg000:00118880 48 00 01 F0   b       exit
seg000:00118884
seg000:00118884          loc_118884: # CODE XREF: check3+13Cj
seg000:00118884 57 BF 06 3E   clrlwi  %r31, %r29, 24
seg000:00118888 28 1F 00 02   cmplwi  %r31, 2
seg000:0011888C 40 82 00 0C   bne     loc_118898

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

seg000:00118890 38 60 00 01 li      %r3, 1
seg000:00118894 48 00 01 DC b       exit
seg000:00118898
seg000:00118898 loc_118898: # CODE XREF: check3+150j
seg000:00118898 80 DE 00 00 lwz     %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:0011889C 38 81 00 38 addi    %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:001188A0 38 60 00 0B li      %r3, 0xB
seg000:001188A4 38 A0 00 00 li      %r5, 0
seg000:001188A8 48 00 BF 21 bl      .RBERead
seg000:001188AC 60 00 00 00 nop
seg000:001188B0 54 60 04 3F clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:001188B4 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_1188C0
seg000:001188B8 38 60 00 00 li      %r3, 0
seg000:001188BC 48 00 01 B4 b       exit
seg000:001188C0
seg000:001188C0 loc_1188C0: # CODE XREF: check3+178j
seg000:001188C0 A0 01 00 38 lhz     %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:001188C4 28 00 23 1C cmplwi %r0, 0x1C20
seg000:001188C8 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_1188D4
seg000:001188CC 38 60 00 00 li      %r3, 0
seg000:001188D0 48 00 01 A0 b       exit
seg000:001188D4
seg000:001188D4 loc_1188D4: # CODE XREF: check3+18Cj
seg000:001188D4 28 1F 00 03 cmplwi %r31, 3
seg000:001188D8 40 82 01 94 bne    error
seg000:001188DC 38 60 00 01 li      %r3, 1
seg000:001188E0 48 00 01 90 b       exit
seg000:001188E4
seg000:001188E4 loc_1188E4: # CODE XREF: check3+A8j
seg000:001188E4 80 DE 00 00 lwz     %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:001188E8 38 81 00 38 addi    %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:001188EC 38 60 00 0C li      %r3, 0xC
seg000:001188F0 38 A0 00 00 li      %r5, 0
seg000:001188F4 48 00 BE D5 bl      .RBERead
seg000:001188F8 60 00 00 00 nop
seg000:001188FC 54 60 04 3F clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118900 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_11890C
seg000:00118904 38 60 00 00 li      %r3, 0
seg000:00118908 48 00 01 68 b       exit
seg000:0011890C
seg000:0011890C loc_11890C: # CODE XREF: check3+1C4j
seg000:0011890C A0 01 00 38 lhz     %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118910 28 00 1F 40 cmplwi %r0, 0x40FF
seg000:00118914 41 82 00 0C beq    loc_118920
seg000:00118918 38 60 00 00 li      %r3, 0
seg000:0011891C 48 00 01 54 b       exit
seg000:00118920
seg000:00118920 loc_118920: # CODE XREF: check3+1D8j
seg000:00118920 57 BF 06 3E clrlwi %r31, %r29, 24
seg000:00118924 28 1F 00 02 cmplwi %r31, 2
seg000:00118928 40 82 00 0C bne    loc_118934
seg000:0011892C 38 60 00 01 li      %r3, 1
seg000:00118930 48 00 01 40 b       exit

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

seg000:00118934
seg000:00118934          loc_118934: # CODE XREF: check3+1ECj
seg000:00118934 80 DE 00 00    lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:00118938 38 81 00 38    addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:0011893C 38 60 00 0D    li     %r3, 0xD
seg000:00118940 38 A0 00 00    li     %r5, 0
seg000:00118944 48 00 BE 85    bl     .RBERead
seg000:00118948 60 00 00 00    nop
seg000:0011894C 54 60 04 3F    clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118950 41 82 00 0C    beq    loc_11895C
seg000:00118954 38 60 00 00    li     %r3, 0
seg000:00118958 48 00 01 18    b      exit
seg000:0011895C
seg000:0011895C          loc_11895C: # CODE XREF: check3+214j
seg000:0011895C A0 01 00 38    lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118960 28 00 07 CF    cmplwi %r0, 0xFC7
seg000:00118964 41 82 00 0C    beq    loc_118970
seg000:00118968 38 60 00 00    li     %r3, 0
seg000:0011896C 48 00 01 04    b      exit
seg000:00118970
seg000:00118970          loc_118970: # CODE XREF: check3+228j
seg000:00118970 28 1F 00 03    cmplwi %r31, 3
seg000:00118974 40 82 00 F8    bne    error
seg000:00118978 38 60 00 01    li     %r3, 1
seg000:0011897C 48 00 00 F4    b      exit
seg000:00118980
seg000:00118980          loc_118980: # CODE XREF: check3+B8j
seg000:00118980          # check3+C4j
seg000:00118980 80 DE 00 00    lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:00118984 38 81 00 38    addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:00118988 3B E0 00 00    li     %r31, 0
seg000:0011898C 38 60 00 04    li     %r3, 4
seg000:00118990 38 A0 00 00    li     %r5, 0
seg000:00118994 48 00 BE 35    bl     .RBERead
seg000:00118998 60 00 00 00    nop
seg000:0011899C 54 60 04 3F    clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:001189A0 41 82 00 0C    beq    loc_1189AC
seg000:001189A4 38 60 00 00    li     %r3, 0
seg000:001189A8 48 00 00 C8    b      exit
seg000:001189AC
seg000:001189AC          loc_1189AC: # CODE XREF: check3+264j
seg000:001189AC A0 01 00 38    lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:001189B0 28 00 1D 6A    cmplwi %r0, 0xAED0
seg000:001189B4 40 82 00 0C    bne    loc_1189C0
seg000:001189B8 3B E0 00 01    li     %r31, 1
seg000:001189BC 48 00 00 14    b      loc_1189D0
seg000:001189C0
seg000:001189C0          loc_1189C0: # CODE XREF: check3+278j
seg000:001189C0 28 00 18 28    cmplwi %r0, 0x2818
seg000:001189C4 41 82 00 0C    beq    loc_1189D0
seg000:001189C8 38 60 00 00    li     %r3, 0
seg000:001189CC 48 00 00 A4    b      exit
seg000:001189D0

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

seg000:001189D0          loc_1189D0: # CODE XREF: check3+280j
seg000:001189D0          # check3+288j
seg000:001189D0 57 A0 06 3E  clrlwi %r0, %r29, 24
seg000:001189D4 28 00 00 02  cmplwi %r0, 2
seg000:001189D8 40 82 00 20  bne    loc_1189F8
seg000:001189DC 57 E0 06 3F  clrlwi. %r0, %r31, 24
seg000:001189E0 41 82 00 10  beq    good2
seg000:001189E4 48 00 4C 69  bl     sub_11D64C
seg000:001189E8 60 00 00 00  nop
seg000:001189EC 48 00 00 84  b      exit
seg000:001189F0
seg000:001189F0          good2:   # CODE XREF: check3+2A4j
seg000:001189F0 38 60 00 01  li     %r3, 1
seg000:001189F4 48 00 00 7C  b      exit
seg000:001189F8
seg000:001189F8          loc_1189F8: # CODE XREF: check3+29Cj
seg000:001189F8 80 DE 00 00  lwz    %r6, dword_24B704
seg000:001189FC 38 81 00 38  addi   %r4, %sp, 0x50+var_18
seg000:00118A00 38 60 00 05  li     %r3, 5
seg000:00118A04 38 A0 00 00  li     %r5, 0
seg000:00118A08 48 00 BD C1  bl     .RBEREAD
seg000:00118A0C 60 00 00 00  nop
seg000:00118A10 54 60 04 3F  clrlwi. %r0, %r3, 16
seg000:00118A14 41 82 00 0C  beq    loc_118A20
seg000:00118A18 38 60 00 00  li     %r3, 0
seg000:00118A1C 48 00 00 54  b      exit
seg000:00118A20
seg000:00118A20          loc_118A20: # CODE XREF: check3+2D8j
seg000:00118A20 A0 01 00 38  lhz    %r0, 0x50+var_18(%sp)
seg000:00118A24 28 00 11 D3  cmplwi %r0, 0xD300
seg000:00118A28 40 82 00 0C  bne    loc_118A34
seg000:00118A2C 3B E0 00 01  li     %r31, 1
seg000:00118A30 48 00 00 14  b      good1
seg000:00118A34
seg000:00118A34          loc_118A34: # CODE XREF: check3+2ECj
seg000:00118A34 28 00 1A EB  cmplwi %r0, 0xEBA1
seg000:00118A38 41 82 00 0C  beq    good1
seg000:00118A3C 38 60 00 00  li     %r3, 0
seg000:00118A40 48 00 00 30  b      exit
seg000:00118A44
seg000:00118A44          good1:   # CODE XREF: check3+2F4j
seg000:00118A44          # check3+2FCj
seg000:00118A44 57 A0 06 3E  clrlwi %r0, %r29, 24
seg000:00118A48 28 00 00 03  cmplwi %r0, 3
seg000:00118A4C 40 82 00 20  bne    error
seg000:00118A50 57 E0 06 3F  clrlwi. %r0, %r31, 24
seg000:00118A54 41 82 00 10  beq    good
seg000:00118A58 48 00 4B F5  bl     sub_11D64C
seg000:00118A5C 60 00 00 00  nop
seg000:00118A60 48 00 00 10  b      exit
seg000:00118A64
seg000:00118A64          good:    # CODE XREF: check3+318j
seg000:00118A64 38 60 00 01  li     %r3, 1

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

seg000:00118A68 48 00 00 08    b      exit
seg000:00118A6C
seg000:00118A6C           error:      # CODE XREF: check3+19Cj
seg000:00118A6C           # check3+238j ...
seg000:00118A6C 38 60 00 00    li      %r3, 0
seg000:00118A70
seg000:00118A70           exit:      # CODE XREF: check3+44j
seg000:00118A70           # check3+58j ...
seg000:00118A70 80 01 00 58    lwz     %r0, 0x50+arg_8(%sp)
seg000:00118A74 38 21 00 50    addi    %sp, %sp, 0x50
seg000:00118A78 83 E1 FF FC    lwz     %r31, var_4(%sp)
seg000:00118A7C 7C 08 03 A6    mtlr    %r0
seg000:00118A80 83 C1 FF F8    lwz     %r30, var_8(%sp)
seg000:00118A84 83 A1 FF F4    lwz     %r29, var_C(%sp)
seg000:00118A88 4E 80 00 20    blr
seg000:00118A88           # End of function check3

```

There are a lot of calls to `.RBEREAD()`.

Perhaps, the function returns some values from the dongle, so they are compared here with some hard-coded variables using `CMPLWI`.

We also see that the `r3` register is also filled before each call to `.RBEREAD()` with one of these values: 0, 1, 8, 0xA, 0xB, 0xC, 0xD, 4, 5. Probably a memory address or something like that?

Yes, indeed, by googling these function names it is easy to find the Sentinel Eve3 dongle manual!

Perhaps we don't even have to learn any other PowerPC instructions: all this function does is just call `.RBEREAD()`, compare its results with the constants and returns 1 if the comparisons are fine or 0 otherwise.

OK, all we've got is that `check1()` has always to return 1 or any other non-zero value.

But since we are not very confident in our knowledge of PowerPC instructions, we are going to be careful: we will patch the jumps in `check2()` at `0x001186FC` and `0x00118718`.

At `0x001186FC` we'll write bytes `0x48` and `0` thus converting the `BEQ` instruction in an `B` (unconditional jump): we can spot its opcode in the code without even referring to *[PowerPC(tm) Microprocessor Family: The Programming Environments for 32-Bit Microprocessors, (2000)]¹⁶*.

At `0x00118718` we'll write `0x60` and 3 zero bytes, thus converting it to a `NOP` instruction: Its opcode we could spot in the code too.

And now it all works without a dongle connected.

In summary, such small modifications can be done with `IDA` and minimal assembly language knowledge.

¹⁶Also available as http://yurichev.com/mirrors/PowerPC/6xx_pem.pdf

8.8.2 Example #2: SCO OpenServer

An ancient software for SCO OpenServer from 1997 developed by a company that disappeared a long time ago.

There is a special dongle driver to be installed in the system, that contains the following text strings: "Copyright 1989, Rainbow Technologies, Inc., Irvine, CA" and "Sentinel Integrated Driver Ver. 3.0".

After the installation of the driver in SCO OpenServer, these device files appear in the /dev filesystem:

```
/dev/rbsl8
/dev/rbsl9
/dev/rbsl10
```

The program reports an error without dongle connected, but the error string cannot be found in the executables.

Thanks to [IDA](#), it is easy to load the COFF executable used in SCO OpenServer.

Let's also try to find "rbsl" string and indeed, found it in this code fragment:

```
.text:00022AB8      public SSQC
.text:00022AB8 SSQC    proc near ; CODE XREF: SSQ+7p
.text:00022AB8
.text:00022AB8 var_44 = byte ptr -44h
.text:00022AB8 var_29 = byte ptr -29h
.text:00022AB8 arg_0  = dword ptr  8
.text:00022AB8
.text:00022AB8         push   ebp
.text:00022AB9         mov    ebp, esp
.text:00022ABB         sub    esp, 44h
.text:00022ABE         push   edi
.text:00022ABF         mov    edi, offset unk_4035D0
.text:00022AC4         push   esi
.text:00022AC5         mov    esi, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:00022AC8         push   ebx
.text:00022AC9         push   esi
.text:00022ACA         call   strlen
.text:00022ACF         add    esp, 4
.text:00022AD2         cmp    eax, 2
.text:00022AD7         jnz   loc_22BA4
.text:00022ADD         inc    esi
.text:00022ADE         mov    al, [esi-1]
.text:00022AE1         movsx eax, al
.text:00022AE4         cmp    eax, '3'
.text:00022AE9         jz    loc_22B84
.text:00022AEF         cmp    eax, '4'
.text:00022AF4         jz    loc_22B94
.text:00022AFA         cmp    eax, '5'
.text:00022AFF         jnz   short loc_22B6B
.text:00022B01         movsx ebx, byte ptr [esi]
.text:00022B04         sub    ebx, '0'
.text:00022B07         mov    eax, 7
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:00022B0C      add    eax, ebx
.text:00022B0E      push   eax
.text:00022B0F      lea    eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022B12      push   offset aDevS1D ; "/dev/sl%d"
.text:00022B17      push   eax
.text:00022B18      call   nl_sprintf
.text:00022B1D      push   0          ; int
.text:00022B1F      push   offset aDevRbs18 ; char *
.text:00022B24      call   _access
.text:00022B29      add    esp, 14h
.text:00022B2C      cmp    eax, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:00022B31      jz    short loc_22B48
.text:00022B33      lea    eax, [ebx+7]
.text:00022B36      push   eax
.text:00022B37      lea    eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022B3A      push   offset aDevRbs1D ; "/dev/rbsl%d"
.text:00022B3F      push   eax
.text:00022B40      call   nl_sprintf
.text:00022B45      add    esp, 0Ch
.text:00022B48      loc_22B48: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+79j
.text:00022B48      mov    edx, [edi]
.text:00022B4A      test   edx, edx
.text:00022B4C      jle    short loc_22B57
.text:00022B4E      push   edx          ; int
.text:00022B4F      call   _close
.text:00022B54      add    esp, 4
.text:00022B57      loc_22B57: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+94j
.text:00022B57      push   2          ; int
.text:00022B59      lea    eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022B5C      push   eax          ; char *
.text:00022B5D      call   _open
.text:00022B62      add    esp, 8
.text:00022B65      test   eax, eax
.text:00022B67      mov    [edi], eax
.text:00022B69      jge    short loc_22B78
.text:00022B6B      loc_22B6B: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+47j
.text:00022B6B      mov    eax, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:00022B70      pop    ebx
.text:00022B71      pop    esi
.text:00022B72      pop    edi
.text:00022B73      mov    esp, ebp
.text:00022B75      pop    ebp
.text:00022B76      retn
.text:00022B78      loc_22B78: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+B1j
.text:00022B78      pop    ebx
.text:00022B79      pop    esi
.text:00022B7A      pop    edi
.text:00022B7B      xor    eax, eax
.text:00022B7D      mov    esp, ebp

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:00022B7F      pop    ebp
.text:00022B80      retn
.text:00022B84
.text:00022B84 loc_22B84: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+31j
.text:00022B84      mov     al, [esi]
.text:00022B86      pop    ebx
.text:00022B87      pop    esi
.text:00022B88      pop    edi
.text:00022B89      mov     ds:byte_407224, al
.text:00022B8E      mov     esp, ebp
.text:00022B90      xor    eax, eax
.text:00022B92      pop    ebp
.text:00022B93      retn
.text:00022B94
.text:00022B94 loc_22B94: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+3Cj
.text:00022B94      mov     al, [esi]
.text:00022B96      pop    ebx
.text:00022B97      pop    esi
.text:00022B98      pop    edi
.text:00022B99      mov     ds:byte_407225, al
.text:00022B9E      mov     esp, ebp
.text:00022BA0      xor    eax, eax
.text:00022BA2      pop    ebp
.text:00022BA3      retn
.text:00022BA4
.text:00022BA4 loc_22BA4: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+1Fj
.text:00022BA4      movsx  eax, ds:byte_407225
.text:00022BAB      push   esi
.text:00022BAC      push   eax
.text:00022BAD      movsx  eax, ds:byte_407224
.text:00022BB4      push   eax
.text:00022BB5      lea    eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022BB8      push   offset a46CCS    ; "46%C%C%S"
.text:00022BBB0      push   eax
.text:00022BBE      call   nl_sprintf
.text:00022BC3      lea    eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022BC6      push   eax
.text:00022BC7      call   strlen
.text:00022BCC      add    esp, 18h
.text:00022BCF      cmp    eax, 1Bh
.text:00022BD4      jle    short loc_22BDA
.text:00022BD6      mov    [ebp+var_29], 0
.text:00022BDA
.text:00022BDA loc_22BDA: ; CODE XREF: SSQC+11Cj
.text:00022BDA      lea    eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022BDD      push   eax
.text:00022BDE      call   strlen
.text:00022BE3      push   eax          ; unsigned int
.text:00022BE4      lea    eax, [ebp+var_44]
.text:00022BE7      push   eax          ; void *
.text:00022BE8      mov    eax, [edi]
.text:00022BEA      push   eax          ; int
.text:00022BEB      call   _write

```

```
.text:00022BF0      add    esp, 10h
.text:00022BF3      pop    ebx
.text:00022BF4      pop    esi
.text:00022BF5      pop    edi
.text:00022BF6      mov    esp, ebp
.text:00022BF8      pop    ebp
.text:00022BF9      retn
.text:00022BFA      db    0Eh dup(90h)
.text:00022BFA SSQC  endp
```

Yes, indeed, the program needs to communicate with the driver somehow.

The only place where the SSQC() function is called is the [thunk function](#):

```
.text:0000DBE8      public SSQ
.text:0000DBE8 SSQ   proc near ; CODE XREF: sys_info+A9p
.text:0000DBE8           ; sys_info+CBp ...
.text:0000DBE8
.text:0000DBE8 arg_0  = dword ptr 8
.text:0000DBE8
.text:0000DBE8 push   ebp
.text:0000DBE9      mov    ebp, esp
.text:0000DBEB      mov    edx, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:0000DBEE      push   edx
.text:0000DBEF      call   SSQC
.text:0000DBF4      add    esp, 4
.text:0000DBF7      mov    esp, ebp
.text:0000DBF9      pop    ebp
.text:0000DBFA      retn
.text:0000DBFB SSQ   endp
```

SSQ() can be called from at least 2 functions.

One of these is:

```
.data:0040169C _51_52_53      dd offset aPressAnyKeyT_0 ;
    DATA XREF: init_sys+392r
.data:0040169C                 ; sys_info+A1r
.data:0040169C                 ; "PRESS ANY KEY TO"
    CONTINUE: "
.data:004016A0                 dd offset a51          ; "51"
.data:004016A4                 dd offset a52          ; "52"
.data:004016A8                 dd offset a53          ; "53"

...
.data:004016B8 _3C_or_3E      dd offset a3c          ; DATA XREF:
    sys_info:loc_D67Br
.data:004016B8                 ; "3C"
.data:004016BC                 dd offset a3e          ; "3E"

; these names we gave to the labels:
.data:004016C0 answers1       dd 6B05h          ; DATA XREF:
    sys_info+E7r
.data:004016C4                 dd 3D87h
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1084

```
| .data:004016C8 answers2          dd 3Ch           ; DATA XREF:  
|     sys_info+F2r  
| .data:004016CC                 dd 832h         ; DATA XREF:  
| .data:004016D0 _C_and_B        db 0Ch           ; DATA XREF:  
|     sys_info+BAR  
| .data:004016D0  
| .data:004016D1 byte_4016D1      db 0Bh           ; sys_info:OKr  
|     DATA XREF: sys_info+FDr  
| .data:004016D2                 db    0             ;  
  
| ...  
  
.text:0000D652          xor    eax, eax  
.text:0000D654          mov    al, ds:ctl_port  
.text:0000D659          mov    ecx, _51_52_53[eax*4]  
.text:0000D660          push   ecx  
.text:0000D661          call   SSQ  
.text:0000D666          add    esp, 4  
.text:0000D669          cmp    eax, 0xFFFFFFFF  
.text:0000D66E          jz    short loc_D6D1  
.text:0000D670          xor    ebx, ebx  
.text:0000D672          mov    al, _C_and_B  
.text:0000D677          test   al, al  
.text:0000D679          jz    short loc_D6C0  
.text:0000D67B          .text:0000D67B loc_D67B: ; CODE XREF: sys_info+106j  
                      mov    eax, _3C_or_3E[ebx*4]  
.text:0000D682          push   eax  
.text:0000D683          call   SSQ  
.text:0000D688          push   offset a4g      ; "4G"  
.text:0000D68D          call   SSQ  
.text:0000D692          push   offset a0123456789 ; "0123456789"  
.text:0000D697          call   SSQ  
.text:0000D69C          add    esp, 0Ch  
.text:0000D69F          mov    edx, answers1[ebx*4]  
.text:0000D6A6          cmp    eax, edx  
.text:0000D6A8          jz    short OK  
.text:0000D6AA          mov    ecx, answers2[ebx*4]  
.text:0000D6B1          cmp    eax, ecx  
.text:0000D6B3          jz    short OK  
.text:0000D6B5          mov    al, byte_4016D1[ebx]  
.text:0000D6BB          inc    ebx  
.text:0000D6BC          test   al, al  
.text:0000D6BE          jnz   short loc_D67B  
.text:0000D6C0          .text:0000D6C0 loc_D6C0: ; CODE XREF: sys_info+C1j  
                      inc    ds:ctl_port  
.text:0000D6C6          xor    eax, eax  
.text:0000D6C8          mov    al, ds:ctl_port  
.text:0000D6CD          cmp    eax, edi  
.text:0000D6CF          jle   short loc_D652  
.text:0000D6D1          .text:0000D6D1 loc_D6D1: ; CODE XREF: sys_info+98j  
                      ; sys_info+B6j
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:0000D6D1          mov     edx, [ebp+var_8]
.text:0000D6D4          inc     edx
.text:0000D6D5          mov     [ebp+var_8], edx
.text:0000D6D8          cmp     edx, 3
.text:0000D6DB          jle     loc_D641
.text:0000D6E1
.text:0000D6E1 loc_D6E1: ; CODE XREF: sys_info+16j
.text:0000D6E1           ; sys_info+51j ...
.text:0000D6E1           pop    ebx
.text:0000D6E2           pop    edi
.text:0000D6E3           mov    esp, ebp
.text:0000D6E5           pop    ebp
.text:0000D6E6           retn
.text:0000D6E8 OK:       ; CODE XREF: sys_info+F0j
.text:0000D6E8           ; sys_info+FBj
.text:0000D6E8           mov    al, _C_and_B[ebx]
.text:0000D6EE           pop    ebx
.text:0000D6EF           pop    edi
.text:0000D6F0           mov    ds:ctl_model, al
.text:0000D6F5           mov    esp, ebp
.text:0000D6F7           pop    ebp
.text:0000D6F8           retn
.text:0000D6F8 sys_info   endp

```

“3C” and “3E” sound familiar: there was a Sentinel Pro dongle by Rainbow with no memory, providing only one crypto-hashing secret function.

You can read a short description of what hash function is here: [2.11 on page 590](#).

But let's get back to the program.

So the program can only check the presence or absence of a connected dongle.

No other information can be written to such dongle, as it has no memory. The two-character codes are commands (we can see how the commands are handled in the SSQC() function) and all other strings are hashed inside the dongle, being transformed into a 16-bit number. The algorithm was secret, so it was not possible to write a driver replacement or to remake the dongle hardware that would emulate it perfectly.

However, it is always possible to intercept all accesses to it and to find what constants the hash function results are compared to.

But we need to say that it is possible to build a robust software copy protection scheme based on secret cryptographic hash-function: let it encrypt/decrypt the data files your software uses.

But let's get back to the code.

Codes 51/52/53 are used for LPT printer port selection. 3x/4x are used for “family” selection (that's how Sentinel Pro dongles are differentiated from each other: more than one dongle can be connected to a LPT port).

The only non-2-character string passed to the hashing function is “0123456789”.

Then, the result is compared against the set of valid results.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

If it is correct, 0xC or 0xB is to be written into the global variable `ctl_model`.

Another text string that gets passed is "PRESS ANY KEY TO CONTINUE: ", but the result is not checked. Hard to say why, probably by mistake ¹⁷.

Let's see where the value from the global variable `ctl_model` is used.

One such place is:

```
.text:0000D708 prep_sys proc near ; CODE XREF: init_sys+46Ap
.text:0000D708
.text:0000D708 var_14     = dword ptr -14h
.text:0000D708 var_10     = byte ptr -10h
.text:0000D708 var_8      = dword ptr -8
.text:0000D708 var_2      = word ptr -2
.text:0000D708
.text:0000D708         push    ebp
.text:0000D709         mov     eax, ds:net_env
.text:0000D70E         mov     ebp, esp
.text:0000D710         sub     esp, 1Ch
.text:0000D713         test    eax, eax
.text:0000D715         jnz    short loc_D734
.text:0000D717         mov     al, ds:ctl_model
.text:0000D71C         test    al, al
.text:0000D71E         jnz    short loc_D77E
.text:0000D720         mov     [ebp+var_8], offset aIeCvulnvv0kgT_
    "Ie-cvulnV\\b0KG]T"
.text:0000D727         mov     edx, 7
.text:0000D72C         jmp     loc_D7E7

...
.text:0000D7E7 loc_D7E7: ; CODE XREF: prep_sys+24j
.text:0000D7E7           ; prep_sys+33j
.text:0000D7E7         push    edx
.text:0000D7E8         mov     edx, [ebp+var_8]
.text:0000D7EB         push    20h
.text:0000D7ED         push    edx
.text:0000D7EE         push    16h
.text:0000D7F0         call    err_warn
.text:0000D7F5         push    offset station_sem
.text:0000D7FA         call    ClosSem
.text:0000D7FF         call    startup_err
```

If it is 0, an encrypted error message is passed to a decryption routine and printed.

The error string decryption routine seems a simple [xor-ing](#):

```
.text:0000A43C err_warn      proc near          ; CODE XREF:
    prep_sys+E8p
.text:0000A43C
.text:0000A43C
.text:0000A43C var_55       = byte ptr -55h
.text:0000A43C var_54       = byte ptr -54h
```

¹⁷What a strange feeling: to find bugs in such ancient software.

```

.text:0000A43C arg_0          = dword ptr  8
.text:0000A43C arg_4          = dword ptr  0Ch
.text:0000A43C arg_8          = dword ptr  10h
.text:0000A43C arg_C          = dword ptr  14h
.text:0000A43C
.text:0000A43C                push    ebp
.text:0000A43D                mov     ebp, esp
.text:0000A43F                sub     esp, 54h
.text:0000A442                push    edi
.text:0000A443                mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_8]
.text:0000A446                xor     edi, edi
.text:0000A448                test    ecx, ecx
.text:0000A44A                push    esi
.text:0000A44B                jle    short loc_A466
.text:0000A44D                mov     esi, [ebp+arg_C] ; key
.text:0000A450                mov     edx, [ebp+arg_4] ; string
.text:0000A453
.text:0000A453 loc_A453:      ; CODE XREF:
    err_warn+28j
.text:0000A453                xor     eax, eax
.text:0000A455                mov     al, [edx+edi]
.text:0000A458                xor     eax, esi
.text:0000A45A                add     esi, 3
.text:0000A45D                inc     edi
.text:0000A45E                cmp     edi, ecx
.text:0000A460                mov     [ebp+edi+var_55], al
.text:0000A464                jl    short loc_A453
.text:0000A466
.text:0000A466 loc_A466:      ; CODE XREF:
    err_warn+Fj
.text:0000A466                mov     [ebp+edi+var_54], 0
.text:0000A46B                mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:0000A46E                cmp     eax, 18h
.text:0000A473                jnz    short loc_A49C
.text:0000A475                lea     eax, [ebp+var_54]
.text:0000A478                push   eax
.text:0000A479                call   status_line
.text:0000A47E                add    esp, 4
.text:0000A481
.text:0000A481 loc_A481:      ; CODE XREF:
    err_warn+72j
.text:0000A481                push   50h
.text:0000A483                push   0
.text:0000A485                lea    eax, [ebp+var_54]
.text:0000A488                push   eax
.text:0000A489                call   memset
.text:0000A48E                call   pcv_refresh
.text:0000A493                add    esp, 0Ch
.text:0000A496                pop    esi
.text:0000A497                pop    edi
.text:0000A498                mov    esp, ebp
.text:0000A49A                pop    ebp
.text:0000A49B                retn
.text:0000A49C

```

.text:0000A49C loc_A49C:	; CODE XREF:
err_warn+37j	
.text:0000A49C	push 0
.text:0000A49E	lea eax, [ebp+var_54]
.text:0000A4A1	mov edx, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:0000A4A4	push edx
.text:0000A4A5	push eax
.text:0000A4A6	call pcv_lputs
.text:0000A4AB	add esp, 0Ch
.text:0000A4AE	jmp short loc_A481
.text:0000A4AE err_warn	endp

That's why we were unable to find the error messages in the executable files, because they are encrypted (which is popular practice).

Another call to the SSQ() hashing function passes the "offln" string to it and compares the result with 0xFE81 and 0x12A9.

If they don't match, it works with some timer() function (maybe waiting for a poorly connected dongle to be reconnected and check again?) and then decrypts another error message to dump.

.text:0000DA55 loc_DA55:	; CODE XREF:
sync_sys+24Cj	
.text:0000DA55	push offset aOffln ; "offln"
.text:0000DA5A	call SSQ
.text:0000DA5F	add esp, 4
.text:0000DA62	mov dl, [ebx]
.text:0000DA64	mov esi, eax
.text:0000DA66	cmp dl, 0Bh
.text:0000DA69	jnz short loc_DA83
.text:0000DA6B	cmp esi, 0FE81h
.text:0000DA71	jz OK
.text:0000DA77	cmp esi, 0FFFFF8EFh
.text:0000DA7D	jz OK
.text:0000DA83	
.text:0000DA83 loc_DA83:	; CODE XREF:
sync_sys+201j	
.text:0000DA83	mov cl, [ebx]
.text:0000DA85	cmp cl, 0Ch
.text:0000DA88	jnz short loc_DA9F
.text:0000DA8A	cmp esi, 12A9h
.text:0000DA90	jz OK
.text:0000DA96	cmp esi, 0FFFFFF5h
.text:0000DA99	jz OK
.text:0000DA9F loc_DA9F:	; CODE XREF:
sync_sys+220j	
.text:0000DA9F	mov eax, [ebp+var_18]
.text:0000DAA2	test eax, eax
.text:0000DAA4	jz short loc_DAB0
.text:0000DAA6	push 24h
.text:0000DAA8	call timer
.text:0000DAAAD	add esp, 4
.text:0000DAB0	

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

|.text:0000DAB0 loc_DAB0: ; CODE XREF:
    sync_sys+23Cj
|.text:0000DAB0          inc     edi
|.text:0000DAB1          cmp     edi, 3
|.text:0000DAB4          jle     short loc_DA55
|.text:0000DAB6          mov     eax, ds:net_env
|.text:0000DABB          test    eax, eax
|.text:0000DABD          jz      short error

...
; this name we gave to label:
;.text:0000DAF7 error: ; CODE XREF:
    sync_sys+255j
;.text:0000DAF7          mov     [ebp+var_8], offset \
    ↳ encrypted_error_message2 ; sync_sys+274j ...
;.text:0000DAF7          mov     [ebp+var_C], 17h ; decrypting key
;.text:0000DB05          jmp     decrypt_end_print_message

...
; this name we gave to label:
;.text:0000D9B6 decrypt_end_print_message: ; CODE XREF:
    sync_sys+29Dj
;.text:0000D9B6          mov     eax, [ebp+var_18] ; sync_sys+2ABj
;.text:0000D9B6          test    eax, eax
;.text:0000D9B9          jnz     short loc_D9FB
;.text:0000D9BB          mov     edx, [ebp+var_C] ; key
;.text:0000D9BD          mov     ecx, [ebp+var_8] ; string
;.text:0000D9C0          push    edx
;.text:0000D9C3          push    20h
;.text:0000D9C4          push    ecx
;.text:0000D9C6          push    18h
;.text:0000D9C7          push    18h
;.text:0000D9C9          call    err_warn
;.text:0000D9CE          push    0Fh
;.text:0000D9D0          push    190h
;.text:0000D9D5          call    sound
;.text:0000D9DA          mov     [ebp+var_18], 1
;.text:0000D9E1          add     esp, 18h
;.text:0000D9E4          call    pcv_kbhit
;.text:0000D9E9          test    eax, eax
;.text:0000D9EB          jz      short loc_D9FB

...
; this name we gave to label:
;.data:00401736 encrypted_error_message2 db 74h, 72h, 78h, 43h, 48h, 6, 5Ah, \
    ↳ 49h, 4Ch, 2 dup(47h)
;.data:00401736          db 51h, 4Fh, 47h, 61h, 20h, 22h, 3Ch, 24h, \
    ↳ 33h, 36h, 76h
;.data:00401736          db 3Ah, 33h, 31h, 0Ch, 0, 0Bh, 1Fh, 7, 1Eh, \
    ↳ 1Ah

```

Bypassing the dongle is pretty straightforward: just patch all jumps after the relevant CMP instructions.

Another option is to write our own SCO OpenServer driver, containing a table of questions and answers, all of those which present in the program.

Decrypting error messages

By the way, we can also try to decrypt all error messages. The algorithm that is located in the err_warn() function is very simple, indeed:

Listing 8.5: Decryption function

```
.text:0000A44D          mov    esi, [ebp+arg_C] ; key
.text:0000A450          mov    edx, [ebp+arg_4] ; string
.text:0000A453 loc_A453:
.text:0000A453          xor    eax, eax
.text:0000A455          mov    al, [edx+edi] ; load encrypted byte
.text:0000A458          xor    eax, esi      ; decrypt it
.text:0000A45A          add    esi, 3       ; change key for the
                        next byte
.text:0000A45D          inc    edi
.text:0000A45E          cmp    edi, ecx
.text:0000A460          mov    [ebp+edi+var_55], al
.text:0000A464          jl     short loc_A453
```

As we can see, not just string is supplied to the decryption function, but also the key:

```
.text:0000DAF7 error:                                ; CODE XREF:
    sync_sys+255j
.text:0000DAF7
.text:0000DAF7          mov    [ebp+var_8], offset ↴ ; sync_sys+274j ...
    ↴ encrypted_error_message2
.text:0000DAFE          mov    [ebp+var_C], 17h ; decrypting key
.text:0000DB05          jmp    decrypt_end_print_message

...
; this name we gave to label manually:
.text:0000D9B6 decrypt_end_print_message:           ; CODE XREF:
    sync_sys+29Dj
.text:0000D9B6
.text:0000D9B6          mov    eax, [ebp+var_18] ; sync_sys+2ABj
.text:0000D9B9          test   eax, eax
.text:0000D9BB          jnz    short loc_D9FB
.text:0000D9BD          mov    edx, [ebp+var_C] ; key
.text:0000D9C0          mov    ecx, [ebp+var_8] ; string
.text:0000D9C3          push   edx
.text:0000D9C4          push   20h
.text:0000D9C6          push   ecx
.text:0000D9C7          push   18h
.text:0000D9C9          call   err_warn
```

The algorithm is a simple [xor-ing](#): each byte is xored with a key, but the key is increased by 3 after the processing of each byte.

We can write a simple Python script to check our hypothesis:

Listing 8.6: Python 3.x

```
#!/usr/bin/python
import sys

msg=[0x74, 0x72, 0x78, 0x43, 0x48, 0x6, 0x5A, 0x49, 0x4C, 0x47, 0x47,
0x51, 0x4F, 0x47, 0x61, 0x20, 0x22, 0x3C, 0x24, 0x33, 0x36, 0x76,
0x3A, 0x33, 0x31, 0x0C, 0x0, 0x0B, 0x1F, 0x7, 0x1E, 0x1A]

key=0x17
tmp=key
for i in msg:
    sys.stdout.write ("%c" % (i^tmp))
    tmp=tmp+3
sys.stdout.flush()
```

And it prints: “check security device connection”. So yes, this is the decrypted message.

There are also other encrypted messages with their corresponding keys. But needless to say, it is possible to decrypt them without their keys. First, we can see that the key is in fact a byte. It is because the core decryption instruction (XOR) works on byte level. The key is located in the ESI register, but only one byte part of ESI is used. Hence, a key may be greater than 255, but its value is always to be rounded.

As a consequence, we can just try brute-force, trying all possible keys in the 0..255 range. We are also going to skip the messages that has unprintable characters.

Listing 8.7: Python 3.x

```
#!/usr/bin/python
import sys, curses.ascii

msgs=[
[0x74, 0x72, 0x78, 0x43, 0x48, 0x6, 0x5A, 0x49, 0x4C, 0x47, 0x47,
0x51, 0x4F, 0x47, 0x61, 0x20, 0x22, 0x3C, 0x24, 0x33, 0x36, 0x76,
0x3A, 0x33, 0x31, 0x0C, 0x0, 0x0B, 0x1F, 0x7, 0x1E, 0x1A], 

[0x49, 0x65, 0x2D, 0x63, 0x76, 0x75, 0x6C, 0x6E, 0x76, 0x56, 0x5C,
8, 0x4F, 0x4B, 0x47, 0x5D, 0x54, 0x5F, 0x1D, 0x26, 0x2C, 0x33,
0x27, 0x28, 0x6F, 0x72, 0x75, 0x78, 0x7B, 0x7E, 0x41, 0x44], 

[0x45, 0x61, 0x31, 0x67, 0x72, 0x79, 0x68, 0x52, 0x4A, 0x52, 0x50,
0x0C, 0x4B, 0x57, 0x43, 0x51, 0x58, 0x5B, 0x61, 0x37, 0x33, 0x2B,
0x39, 0x39, 0x3C, 0x38, 0x79, 0x3A, 0x30, 0x17, 0x0B, 0x0C], 

[0x40, 0x64, 0x79, 0x75, 0x7F, 0x6F, 0x0, 0x4C, 0x40, 0x9, 0x4D, 0x5A,
0x46, 0x5D, 0x57, 0x49, 0x57, 0x3B, 0x21, 0x23, 0x6A, 0x38, 0x23,
0x36, 0x24, 0x2A, 0x7C, 0x3A, 0x1A, 0x6, 0x0D, 0x0E, 0x0A, 0x14,
0x10],
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
[0x72, 0x7C, 0x72, 0x79, 0x76, 0x0,
0x50, 0x43, 0x4A, 0x59, 0x5D, 0x5B, 0x41, 0x41, 0x1B, 0x5A,
0x24, 0x32, 0x2E, 0x29, 0x28, 0x70, 0x20, 0x22, 0x38, 0x28, 0x36,
0x0D, 0x0B, 0x48, 0x4B, 0x4E]

def is_string_printable(s):
    return all(list(map(lambda x: curses.ascii.isprint(x), s)))

cnt=1
for msg in msgs:
    print ("message #%" % cnt)
    for key in range(0,256):
        result=[]
        tmp=key
        for i in msg:
            result.append (i^tmp)
            tmp=tmp+3
        if is_string_printable (result):
            print ("key=", key, "value=", ''.join(list(map(chr, ↵
        result))))
    cnt=cnt+1
```

And we get:

Listing 8.8: Results

```
message #1
key= 20 value= `eb^h%|``hudw|_af{n~f%ljmSbnwlpk
key= 21 value= ajc]i"}cawtgv{^bgto}g"millcmvkqh
key= 22 value= bkd\j#rbbvsfuz!cduh|d#bhomdlujni
key= 23 value= check security device connection
key= 24 value= lifbl!pd|tqhsx#ejwjbb!`nQofbshlo
message #2
key= 7 value= No security device found
key= 8 value= An#rbbvsVuz!cduhld#ghtme?#!'!#!'
message #3
key= 7 value= Bk<waoqNUpu$`yreoa\wpmpusj,bkIjh
key= 8 value= Mj?vfnr0jqv%gxqd``_vwlstlk/cLHi
key= 9 value= Lm>ugasLkvw&fgpgag^uvcrwml.`mwhj
key= 10 value= Ol!td`tMhwx'efwfbf!tubuvnm!anvok
key= 11 value= No security device station found
key= 12 value= In#rjbvsnuz!{duhdd#r{\`whho#gPtme
message #4
key= 14 value= Number of authorized users exceeded
key= 15 value= Ovlmdq!hg#`juknuhydk!vrbsp!Zy`dbe
message #5
key= 17 value= check security device station
key= 18 value= `ijbh!td`tmhwx'efwfbf!tubuVnm!'!
```

There is some garbage, but we can quickly find the English-language messages!

By the way, since the algorithm is a simple xor-ing encryption, the very same function

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

can be used to encrypt messages. If needed, we can encrypt our own messages, and patch the program by inserting them.

8.8.3 Example #3: MS-DOS

Another very old software for MS-DOS from 1995 also developed by a company that disappeared a long time ago.

In the pre-DOS extenders era, all the software for MS-DOS mostly relied on 16-bit 8086 or 80286 CPUs, so the code was 16-bit en masse.

The 16-bit code is mostly same as you already saw in this book, but all registers are 16-bit and there are less instructions available.

The MS-DOS environment has no system drivers, and any program can deal with the bare hardware via ports, so here you can see the OUT/IN instructions, which are present in mostly in drivers in our times (it is impossible to access ports directly in [user mode](#) on all modern OSes).

Given that, the MS-DOS program which works with a dongle has to access the LPT printer port directly.

So we can just search for such instructions. And yes, here they are:

```
seg030:0034          out_port proc far ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+22p
seg030:0034
seg030:0034
seg030:0034          arg_0    = byte ptr 6
seg030:0034
seg030:0034 55      push     bp
seg030:0035 8B EC   mov      bp, sp
seg030:0037 8B 16 7E E7  mov      dx, _out_port ; 0x378
seg030:003B 8A 46 06  mov      al, [bp+arg_0]
seg030:003E EE      out      dx, al
seg030:003F 5D      pop      bp
seg030:0040 CB      retf
seg030:0040          out_port endp
```

(All label names in this example were given by me).

`out_port()` is referenced only in one function:

```
seg030:0041          sent_pro proc far ; CODE XREF: check_dongle+34p
seg030:0041
seg030:0041          var_3    = byte ptr -3
seg030:0041          var_2    = word ptr -2
seg030:0041          arg_0    = dword ptr 6
seg030:0041
seg030:0041 C8 04 00 00  enter   4, 0
seg030:0045 56      push     si
seg030:0046 57      push     di
seg030:0047 8B 16 82 E7  mov      dx, _in_port_1 ; 0x37A
seg030:004B EC      in       al, dx
seg030:004C 8A D8    mov      bl, al
seg030:004E 80 E3 FE  and     bl, 0FEh
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

seg030:0051	80 CB 04	or	bl, 4
seg030:0054	8A C3	mov	al, bl
seg030:0056	88 46 FD	mov	[bp+var_3], al
seg030:0059	80 E3 1F	and	bl, 1Fh
seg030:005C	8A C3	mov	al, bl
seg030:005E	EE	out	dx, al
seg030:005F	68 FF 00	push	0FFh
seg030:0062	0E	push	cs
seg030:0063	E8 CE FF	call	near ptr out_port
seg030:0066	59	pop	cx
seg030:0067	68 D3 00	push	0D3h
seg030:006A	0E	push	cs
seg030:006B	E8 C6 FF	call	near ptr out_port
seg030:006E	59	pop	cx
seg030:006F	33 F6	xor	si, si
seg030:0071	EB 01	jmp	short loc_359D4
seg030:0073			
seg030:0073		loc_359D3:	; CODE XREF: sent_pro+37j
seg030:0073	46	inc	si
seg030:0074			
seg030:0074		loc_359D4:	; CODE XREF: sent_pro+30j
seg030:0074	81 FE 96 00	cmp	si, 96h
seg030:0078	7C F9	jl	short loc_359D3
seg030:007A	68 C3 00	push	0C3h
seg030:007D	0E	push	cs
seg030:007E	E8 B3 FF	call	near ptr out_port
seg030:0081	59	pop	cx
seg030:0082	68 C7 00	push	0C7h
seg030:0085	0E	push	cs
seg030:0086	E8 AB FF	call	near ptr out_port
seg030:0089	59	pop	cx
seg030:008A	68 D3 00	push	0D3h
seg030:008D	0E	push	cs
seg030:008E	E8 A3 FF	call	near ptr out_port
seg030:0091	59	pop	cx
seg030:0092	68 C3 00	push	0C3h
seg030:0095	0E	push	cs
seg030:0096	E8 9B FF	call	near ptr out_port
seg030:0099	59	pop	cx
seg030:009A	68 C7 00	push	0C7h
seg030:009D	0E	push	cs
seg030:009E	E8 93 FF	call	near ptr out_port
seg030:00A1	59	pop	cx
seg030:00A2	68 D3 00	push	0D3h
seg030:00A5	0E	push	cs
seg030:00A6	E8 8B FF	call	near ptr out_port
seg030:00A9	59	pop	cx
seg030:00AA	BF FF FF	mov	di, 0FFFFh
seg030:00AD	EB 40	jmp	short loc_35A4F
seg030:00AF			
seg030:00AF		loc_35A0F:	; CODE XREF: sent_pro+BDj
seg030:00AF	BE 04 00	mov	si, 4
seg030:00B2			

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

seg030:00B2	loc_35A12: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+ACj
seg030:00B2 D1 E7	shl di, 1
seg030:00B4 8B 16 80 E7	mov dx, _in_port_2 ; 0x379
seg030:00B8 EC	in al, dx
seg030:00B9 A8 80	test al, 80h
seg030:00BB 75 03	jnz short loc_35A20
seg030:00BD 83 CF 01	or di, 1
seg030:00C0	
seg030:00C0 F7 46 FE 08+	test [bp+var_2], 8
seg030:00C5 74 05	jz short loc_35A2C
seg030:00C7 68 D7 00	push 0D7h ; '+'
seg030:00CA EB 0B	jmp short loc_35A37
seg030:00CC	
seg030:00CC 68 C3 00	push 0C3h
seg030:00CF 0E	push cs
seg030:00D0 E8 61 FF	call near ptr out_port
seg030:00D3 59	pop cx
seg030:00D4 68 C7 00	push 0C7h
seg030:00D7	
seg030:00D7 0E	push cs
seg030:00D8 E8 59 FF	call near ptr out_port
seg030:00DB 59	pop cx
seg030:00DC 68 D3 00	push 0D3h
seg030:00DF 0E	push cs
seg030:00E0 E8 51 FF	call near ptr out_port
seg030:00E3 59	pop cx
seg030:00E4 8B 46 FE	mov ax, [bp+var_2]
seg030:00E7 D1 E0	shl ax, 1
seg030:00E9 89 46 FE	mov [bp+var_2], ax
seg030:00EC 4E	dec si
seg030:00ED 75 C3	jnz short loc_35A12
seg030:00EF	
seg030:00EF C4 5E 06	loc_35A4F: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+6Cj
seg030:00F2 FF 46 06	les bx, [bp+arg_0]
seg030:00F5 26 8A 07	inc word ptr [bp+arg_0]
seg030:00F8 98	mov al, es:[bx]
seg030:00F9 89 46 FE	cbw
seg030:00FC 0B C0	mov [bp+var_2], ax
seg030:00FE 75 AF	or ax, ax
seg030:0100 68 FF 00	jnz short loc_35A0F
seg030:0103 0E	push 0FFh
seg030:0104 E8 2D FF	push cs
seg030:0107 59	call near ptr out_port
seg030:0108 8B 16 82 E7	pop cx
seg030:010C EC	mov dx, _in_port_1 ; 0x37A
seg030:010D 8A C8	in al, dx
seg030:010F 80 E1 5F	mov cl, al
seg030:0112 8A C1	and cl, 5Fh
seg030:0114 EE	mov al, cl
	out dx, al

seg030:0115 EC	in	al, dx
seg030:0116 8A C8	mov	cl, al
seg030:0118 F6 C1 20	test	cl, 20h
seg030:011B 74 08	jz	short loc_35A85
seg030:011D 8A 5E FD	mov	bl, [bp+var_3]
seg030:0120 80 E3 DF	and	bl, 0DFh
seg030:0123 EB 03	jmp	short loc_35A88
seg030:0125		
seg030:0125 8A 5E FD	loc_35A85: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+DAj	
seg030:0125	mov	bl, [bp+var_3]
seg030:0128		
seg030:0128 8A C3	loc_35A88: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+E2j	
seg030:0128 F6 C1 80	test	cl, 80h
seg030:012B 74 03	jz	short loc_35A90
seg030:012D 80 E3 7F	and	bl, 7Fh
seg030:0130		
seg030:0130 8B 16 82 E7	loc_35A90: ; CODE XREF: sent_pro+EAj	
seg030:0134 8A C3	mov	dx, _in_port_1 ; 0x37A
seg030:0136 EE	mov	al, bl
seg030:0137 8B C7	out	dx, al
seg030:0139 5F	mov	ax, di
seg030:013A 5E	pop	di
seg030:013B C9	pop	si
seg030:013C CB	leave	
seg030:013C	retf	
seg030:013C	sent_pro	endp

This is again a Sentinel Pro “hashing” dongle as in the previous example. It is noticeably because text strings are passed here, too, and 16 bit values are returned and compared with others.

So that is how Sentinel Pro is accessed via ports.

The output port address is usually 0x378, i.e., the printer port, where the data to the old printers in pre-USB era was passed to.

The port is uni-directional, because when it was developed, no one imagined that someone will need to transfer information from the printer ¹⁸.

The only way to get information from the printer is a status register on port 0x379, which contains such bits as “paper out”, “ack”, “busy”—thus the printer may signal to the host computer if it is ready or not and if paper is present in it.

So the dongle returns information from one of these bits, one bit at each iteration.

_in_port_2 contains the address of the status word (0x379) and _in_port_1 contains the control register address (0x37A).

It seems that the dongle returns information via the “busy” flag at seg030:00B9: each bit is stored in the DI register, which is returned at the end of the function.

What do all these bytes sent to output port mean? Hard to say. Perhaps, commands to the dongle.

¹⁸If we consider Centronics only. The following IEEE 1284 standard allows the transfer of information from the printer.

But generally speaking, it is not necessary to know: it is easy to solve our task without that knowledge.

Here is the dongle checking routine:

```

00000000 struct_0      struct ; (sizeof=0x1B)
00000000 field_0       db 25 dup(?)           ; string(C)
00000019 _A            dw ?
0000001B struct_0       ends

dseg:3CBC 61 63 72 75+_Q  struct_0 <'hello', 01122h>
dseg:3CBC 6E 00 00 00+    ; DATA XREF: check_dongle+2Eo

... skipped ...

dseg:3E00 63 6F 66 66+    struct_0 <'coffee', 7EB7h>
dseg:3E1B 64 6F 67 00+    struct_0 <'dog', 0FFADh>
dseg:3E36 63 61 74 00+    struct_0 <'cat', 0FF5Fh>
dseg:3E51 70 61 70 65+    struct_0 <'paper', 0FFDFh>
dseg:3E6C 63 6F 6B 65+    struct_0 <'coke', 0F568h>
dseg:3E87 63 6C 6F 63+    struct_0 <'clock', 55EAh>
dseg:3EA2 64 69 72 00+    struct_0 <'dir', 0FFAEh>
dseg:3EBD 63 6F 70 79+    struct_0 <'copy', 0F557h>

seg030:0145             check_dongle proc far ; CODE XREF: sub_3771D+3EP
seg030:0145
seg030:0145             var_6 = dword ptr -6
seg030:0145             var_2 = word ptr -2
seg030:0145
seg030:0145 C8 06 00 00   enter   6, 0
seg030:0149 56            push     si
seg030:014A 66 6A 00       push     large 0          ; newtime
seg030:014D 6A 00            push     0                 ; cmd
seg030:014F 9A C1 18 00+    call     _biostime
seg030:0154 52            push     dx
seg030:0155 50            push     ax
seg030:0156 66 58            pop     eax
seg030:0158 83 C4 06       add     sp, 6
seg030:015B 66 89 46 FA     mov     [bp+var_6], eax
seg030:015F 66 3B 06 D8+    cmp     eax, _expiration
seg030:0164 7E 44            jle     short loc_35B0A
seg030:0166 6A 14            push     14h
seg030:0168 90            nop
seg030:0169 0E            push     cs
seg030:016A E8 52 00       call     near ptr get_rand
seg030:016D 59            pop     cx
seg030:016E 8B F0            mov     si, ax
seg030:0170 6B C0 1B       imul    ax, 1Bh
seg030:0173 05 BC 3C       add     ax, offset _Q
seg030:0176 1E            push     ds
seg030:0177 50            push     ax
seg030:0178 0E            push     cs
seg030:0179 E8 C5 FE       call     near ptr sent_pro

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

seg030:017C 83 C4 04	add	sp, 4
seg030:017F 89 46 FE	mov	[bp+var_2], ax
seg030:0182 8B C6	mov	ax, si
seg030:0184 6B C0 12	imul	ax, 18
seg030:0187 66 0F BF C0	movsx	eax, ax
seg030:018B 66 8B 56 FA	mov	edx, [bp+var_6]
seg030:018F 66 03 D0	add	edx, eax
seg030:0192 66 89 16 D8+	mov	_expiration, edx
seg030:0197 8B DE	mov	bx, si
seg030:0199 6B DB 1B	imul	bx, 27
seg030:019C 8B 87 D5 3C	mov	ax, _Q._A[bx]
seg030:01A0 3B 46 FE	cmp	ax, [bp+var_2]
seg030:01A3 74 05	jz	short loc_35B0A
seg030:01A5 B8 01 00	mov	ax, 1
seg030:01A8 EB 02	jmp	short loc_35B0C
seg030:01AA		
seg030:01AA		loc_35B0A: ; CODE XREF: check_dongle+1Fj
seg030:01AA		; check_dongle+5Ej
seg030:01AA 33 C0	xor	ax, ax
seg030:01AC		
seg030:01AC		loc_35B0C: ; CODE XREF: check_dongle+63j
seg030:01AC 5E	pop	si
seg030:01AD C9		leave
seg030:01AE CB		retf
seg030:01AE		check_dongle endp

Since the routine can be called very frequently, e.g., before the execution of each important software feature, and accessing the dongle is generally slow (because of the slow printer port and also slow **MCU** in the dongle), they probably added a way to skip some dongle checks, by checking the current time in the `biostime()` function.

The `get_rand()` function uses the standard C function:

seg030:01BF	get_rand	proc far ; CODE XREF: check_dongle+25p
seg030:01BF		
seg030:01BF	arg_0	= word ptr 6
seg030:01BF		
seg030:01BF 55	push	bp
seg030:01C0 8B EC	mov	bp, sp
seg030:01C2 9A 3D 21 00+	call	_rand
seg030:01C7 66 0F BF C0	movsx	eax, ax
seg030:01CB 66 0F BF 56+	movsx	edx, [bp+arg_0]
seg030:01D0 66 0F AF C2	imul	eax, edx
seg030:01D4 66 BB 00 80+	mov	ebx, 8000h
seg030:01DA 66 99	cdq	
seg030:01DC 66 F7 FB	idiv	ebx
seg030:01DF 5D	pop	bp
seg030:01E0 CB		retf
seg030:01E0	get_rand	endp

So the text string is selected randomly, passed into the dongle, and then the result of the hashing is compared with the correct value.

The text strings seem to be constructed randomly as well, during software development.

And this is how the main dongle checking function is called:

```

seg033:087B 9A 45 01 96+  call    check_dongle
seg033:0880 0B C0          or      ax, ax
seg033:0882 74 62          jz     short OK
seg033:0884 83 3E 60 42+  cmp     word_620E0, 0
seg033:0889 75 5B          jnz    short OK
seg033:088B FF 06 60 42  inc     word_620E0
seg033:088F 1E             push   ds
seg033:0890 68 22 44          push   offset aTrupcRequiresA ;
                                "This Software Requires a Software Lock\n"
seg033:0893 1E             push   ds
seg033:0894 68 60 E9          push   offset byte_6C7E0 ; dest
seg033:0897 9A 79 65 00+  call    _strcpy
seg033:089C 83 C4 08          add    sp, 8
seg033:089F 1E             push   ds
seg033:08A0 68 42 44          push   offset aPleaseContactA ; "Please Contact
                                "
seg033:08A3 1E             push   ds
seg033:08A4 68 60 E9          push   offset byte_6C7E0 ; dest
seg033:08A7 9A CD 64 00+  call    _strcat

```

Bypassing the dongle is easy, just force the `check_dongle()` function to always return 0.

For example, by inserting this code at its beginning:

```

mov ax, 0
retf

```

The observant reader might recall that the `strcpy()` C function usually requires two pointers in its arguments, but we see that 4 values are passed:

```

seg033:088F 1E             push   ds
seg033:0890 68 22 44          push   offset aTrupcRequiresA ;
                                "This Software Requires a Software Lock\n"
seg033:0893 1E             push   ds
seg033:0894 68 60 E9          push   offset byte_6C7E0 ; dest
seg033:0897 9A 79 65 00+  call    _strcpy
seg033:089C 83 C4 08          add    sp, 8

```

This is related to MS-DOS' memory model. You can read more about it here: [11.6 on page 1284](#).

So as you may see, `strcpy()` and any other function that take pointer(s) in arguments work with 16-bit pairs.

Let's get back to our example. DS is currently set to the data segment located in the executable, that is where the text string is stored.

In the `sent_pro()` function, each byte of the string is loaded at `seg030:00EF`: the LES instruction loads the ES:BX pair simultaneously from the passed argument.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The MOV at seg030:00F5 loads the byte from the memory at which the ES:BX pair points.

8.9 Encrypted database case #1

(This part has been first appeared in my blog at 26-Aug-2015. Some discussion: <https://news.ycombinator.com/item?id=10128684>.)

8.9.1 Base64 and entropy

I've got the XML file containing some encrypted data. Perhaps, it's related to some orders and/or customers information.

```
<?xml version = "1.0" encoding = "UTF-8"?>
<Orders>
    <Order>
        <OrderID>1</OrderID>
        <Data>yjmjhXUhbB/5MV45chPsXZWAJwIh1S0aD9lFn3XuJMSxJ3/E+,
        ↴ UE3hsnH</Data>
    </Order>
    <Order>
        <OrderID>2</OrderID>
        <Data>0KGe/wnypFBjsy+U0C2P9fC5nDZP3XDZLMPCRaiBw90jIk6Tu5U,
        ↴ ==</Data>
    </Order>
    <Order>
        <OrderID>3</OrderID>
        <Data>mqkXfdzvQKvEArdzh+zD9oETVGBFvcTBLs2ph1b5bYddExzp</
        ↴ Data>
    </Order>
    <Order>
        <OrderID>4</OrderID>
        <Data>FCx6JhIDqnESyT3HAepyE1BJ3cJd7wCk+APCRUeuNtZdpCvQ2MR/7,
        ↴ kLXtfUHuA==</Data>
    </Order>
...
...
```

The file is available [here](#).

This is clearly base64-encoded data, because all strings consisting of Latin characters, digits, plus (+) and slash (/) symbols. There can be 1 or 2 padding symbols (=), but they are never occurred in the middle of string. Keeping in mind these base64 properties, it's very easy to recognize them.

Let's decode them and calculate entropies ([9.2 on page 1216](#)) of these blocks in Wolfram Mathematica:

```
In[]:= ListOfBase64Strings =
  Map[First[[3]] &, Cases[Import["encrypted.xml"], XMLElement["Data", _, _],
  ↴ _, Infinity]];
In[]:= BinaryStrings =
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

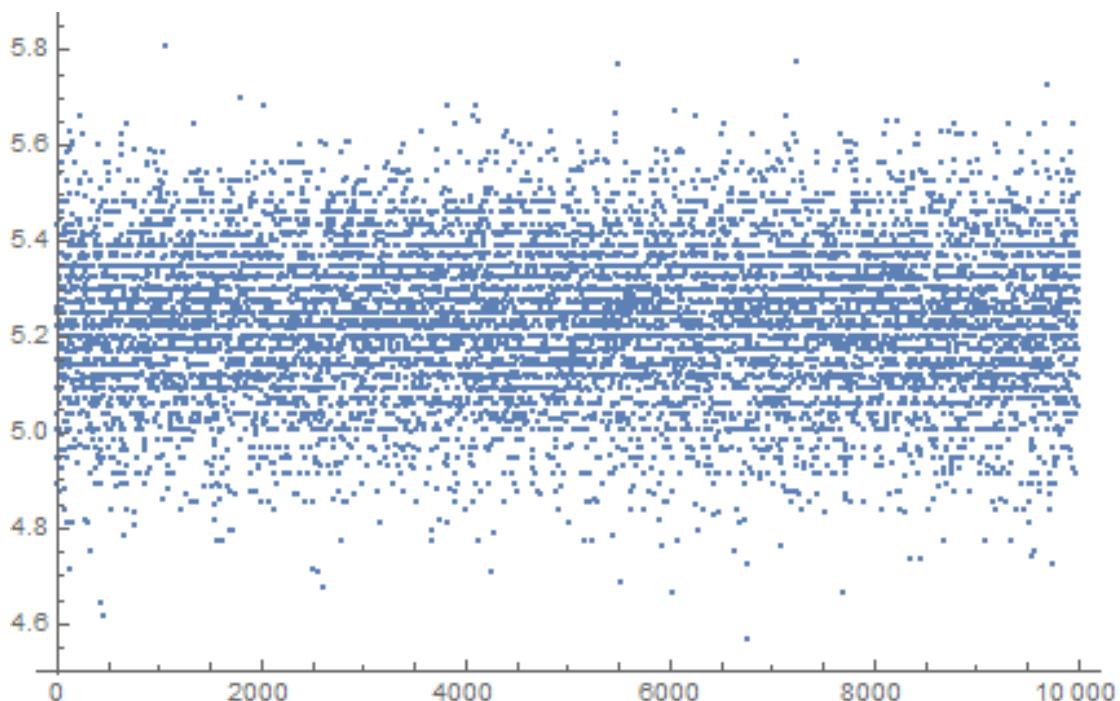
```

Map[ImportString[#, {"Base64", "String"}] &, ListOfBase64Strings];
In[]:= Entropies = Map[N[Entropy[2, #]] &, BinaryStrings];
In[]:= Variance[Entropies]
Out[] = 0.0238614

```

Variance is low. This means the entropy values are not very different from each other. This is visible on graph:

```
In[]:= ListPlot[Entropies]
```



Most values are between 5.0 and 5.4. This is a sign that the data is compressed and/or encrypted.

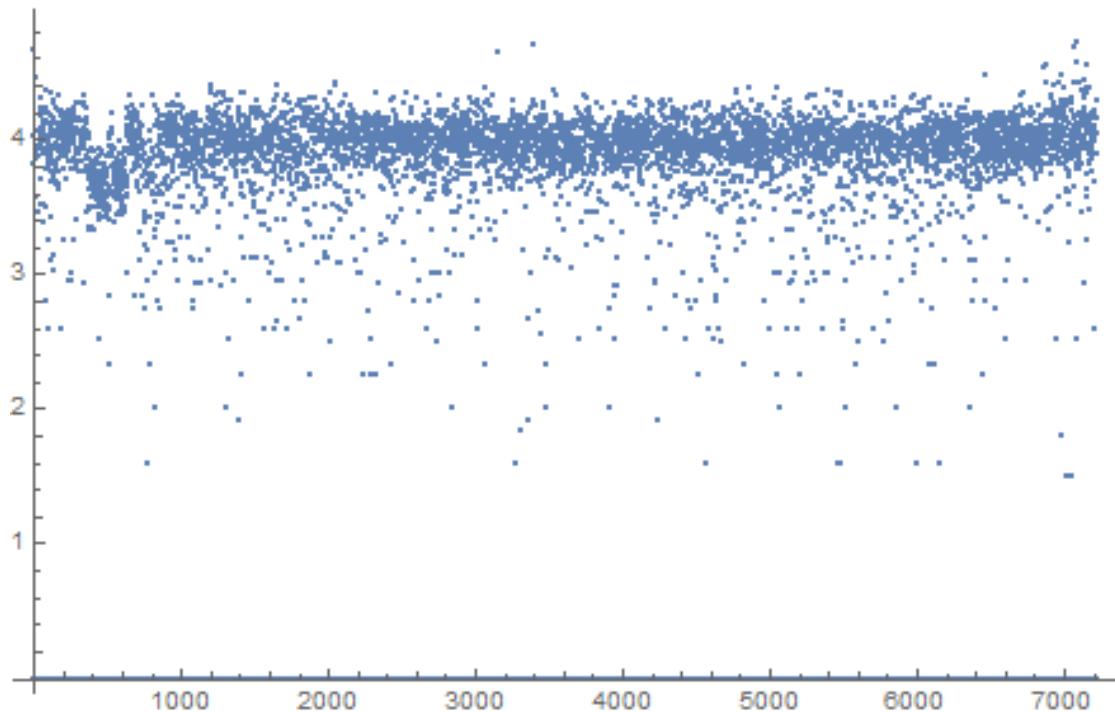
To understand variance, let's calculate entropies of all lines in Conan Doyle's *The Hound of the Baskervilles* book:

```

In[]:= BaskervillesLines = Import["http://www.gutenberg.org/cache/epub/2852/pg2852.txt", "List"];
In[]:= EntropiesT = Map[N[Entropy[2, #]] &, BaskervillesLines];
In[]:= Variance[EntropiesT]
Out[] = 2.73883
In[]:= ListPlot[EntropiesT]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!



Most values are gathered around value of 4, but there are also values which are smaller, and they are influenced final variance value.

Perhaps, shortest strings has smaller entropy, let's take short string from the Conan Doyle's book:

```
In[]:= Entropy[2, "Yes, sir."] // N
Out[]= 2.9477
```

Let's try even shorter:

```
In[]:= Entropy[2, "Yes"] // N
Out[]= 1.58496

In[]:= Entropy[2, "No"] // N
Out[]= 1.
```

8.9.2 Is data compressed?

OK, so our data is compressed and/or encrypted. Is it compressed? Almost all data compressors put some header at the start, signature, or something like that. As we can see, there are no consistent data at the start of each block. It's still possible that this is a handmade data compressor, but they are very rare. On the other hand, handmade cryptoalgorithms are much more popular, because it's very easy to make it work. Even primitive keyless cryptosystems like *memfrob()*¹⁹ and ROT13 works

¹⁹<http://linux.die.net/man/3/memfrob>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

fine without errors. It's a serious challenge to write data compressor from scratch using only fantasy and imagination in a way so it will have no evident bugs. Some programmers implements data compression functions by reading textbooks, but this is also rare. The most popular two ways are: 1) just take open-source library like zlib; 2) copy&paste something from somewhere. Open-source data compressions algorithms usually puts some kind of header, and so do algorithms from sites like <http://www.codeproject.com/>.

8.9.3 Is data encrypted?

Major data encryption algorithms process data in blocks. DES—8 bytes, AES—16 bytes. If the input buffer is not divided evenly by block size, it's padded by zeroes (or something else), so encrypted data will be aligned by cryptoalgorithm's block size. This is not our case.

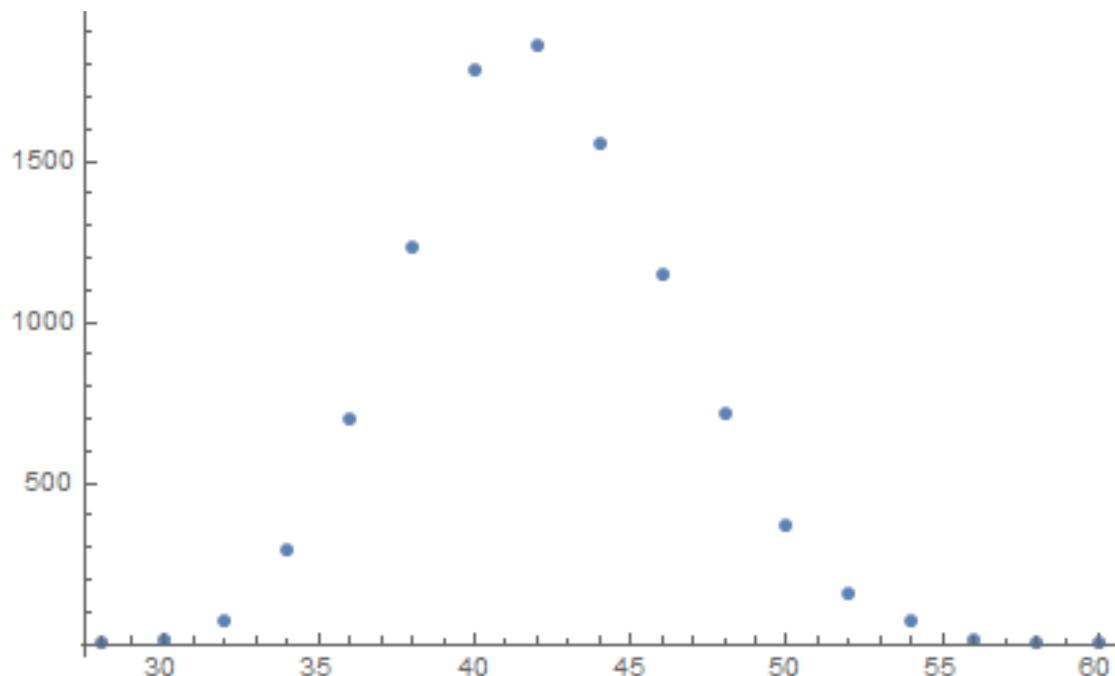
Using Wolfram Mathematica, I analyzed block's lengths:

```
In[]:= Counts[Map[StringLength[#] &, BinaryStrings]]
Out[]=<|42 -> 1858, 38 -> 1235, 36 -> 699, 46 -> 1151, 40 -> 1784,
44 -> 1558, 50 -> 366, 34 -> 291, 32 -> 74, 56 -> 15, 48 -> 716,
30 -> 13, 52 -> 156, 54 -> 71, 60 -> 3, 58 -> 6, 28 -> 4|>
```

1858 blocks has size of 42 bytes, 1235 blocks has size of 38 bytes, etc.

I made a graph:

```
ListPlot[Counts[Map[StringLength[#] &, BinaryStrings]]]
```



So, most blocks has size between ~36 and ~48. There is also another thing to notice: all block sizes are even. No single block with odd size.

There are, however, stream ciphers which can operate on byte level or even on bit level.

8.9.4 CryptoPP

The program which can browse this encrypted database is written C# and the .NET code is heavily obfuscated. Nevertheless, there is DLL with x86 code, which, after brief examination, has parts of the CryptoPP popular open-source library! (I just spotted “CryptoPP” strings inside.) Now it’s very easy to find all functions inside of DLL because CryptoPP library is open-source.

CryptoPP library has a lot of crypto-functions, including AES (AKA Rijndael). Newer x86 CPUs has AES helper instructions like AESENC, AESDEC and AESKEYGENASSIST²⁰. They are not performing encryption/decryption completely, but they do significant amount of job. And newer CryptoPP versions use them. For example, here: [1](#), [2](#). To my surprise, during decryption, AESENC gets executed, while AESDEC is not (I just checked with my tracer utility, but any debugger can be used). I checked, if my CPU really supports AES instructions. Some Intel i3 CPUs are not. And if not, CryptoPP library falling back to AES functions implemented in old way²¹. But my CPU supports them. Why AESDEC is still not executed? Why the program use AES encryption in order to decrypt database?

OK, it’s not a problem to find a function which encrypts block. It is called *CryptoPP::Rijndael::Enc::ProcessAndXorBlock*: [src](#), and it can call another function: *Rijndael::Enc::AdvancedProcessBlocks()* [src](#), which, in turn, can call two other functions ([AESNI_Enc_Block](#) and [AESNI_Enc_4_Blocks](#)) which has AESENC instructions.

So, judging by CryptoPP internals, *CryptoPP::Rijndael::Enc::ProcessAndXorBlock()* encrypts one 16-byte block. Let’s set breakpoint on it and see, what happens during decryption. I use my simple tracer tool again. The software must decrypt first data block now. Oh, by the way, here is the first data block converted from base64 encoding to hexadecimal data, let’s have it at hand:

```
00000000: CA 39 B1 85 75 1B 84 1F F9 31 5E 39 72 13 EC 5D .9..u....1^9r ↵
    ↴ ..]
00000010: 95 80 27 02 21 D5 2D 1A 0F D9 45 9F 75 EE 24 C4 ..'!.-.E.u.$ ↵
    ↴ .
00000020: B1 27 7F 84 FE 41 37 86 C9 C0 .'.A7...
```

These are also arguments of the function from CryptoPP source files:

```
size_t Rijndael::Enc::AdvancedProcessBlocks(const byte *inBlocks, const ↵
    ↴ byte *xorBlocks, byte *outBlocks, size_t length, word32 flags);
```

So it has 5 arguments. Possible flags are:

²⁰https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/AES_instruction_set

²¹<https://github.com/mross/cryptopp/blob/2772f7b57182b31a41659b48d5f35a7b6cedd34d/src/rijndael.cpp#L355>

```
enum {BT_InBlockIsCounter=1, BT_DontIncrementInOutPointers=2, BT_XorInput,
    ↴ =4, BT_ReverseDirection=8, BT_AllowParallel=16} ↴
    ↴ FlagsForAdvancedProcessBlocks;
```

OK, run tracer on *ProcessAndXorBlock()* function:

```
... tracer.exe -l:filename.exe bpf=filename.exe!0x4339a0,args:5,dump_args:0 ↴
    ↴ x10

Warning: no tracer.cfg file.
PID=1984|New process software.exe
no module registered with image base 0x77320000
no module registered with image base 0x76e20000
no module registered with image base 0x77320000
no module registered with image base 0x77220000
Warning: unknown (to us) INT3 breakpoint at ntdll.dll! ↴
    ↴ LdrVerifyImageMatchesChecksum+0x96c (0x776c103b)
(0) software.exe!0x4339a0(0x38b920, 0x0, 0x38b978, 0x10, 0x0) (called from ↴
    ↴ software.exe!.text+0x33c0d (0x13e4c0d))
Argument 1/5
0038B920: 01 00 00 00 FF FF FF-79 C1 69 0B 67 C1 04 7D ".....y.i.g" ↴
    ↴ ..
Argument 3/5
0038B978: CD CD CD CD CD CD CD CD-CD CD CD CD CD CD CD CD CD ↴
    ↴ "....."
(0) software.exe!0x4339a0() -> 0x0
Argument 3/5 difference
00000000: C7 39 4E 7B 33 1B D6 1F-B8 31 10 39 39 13 A5 5D ".9N" ↴
    ↴ {3....1.99..}
(0) software.exe!0x4339a0(0x38a828, 0x38a838, 0x38bb40, 0x0, 0x8) (called ↴
    ↴ from software.exe!.text+0x3a407 (0x13eb407))
Argument 1/5
0038A828: 95 80 27 02 21 D5 2D 1A-0F D9 45 9F 75 EE 24 C4 "...!.-...E.u.$" ↴
    ↴ ..
Argument 2/5
0038A838: B1 27 7F 84 FE 41 37 86-C9 C0 00 CD CD CD CD CD ".'...A7" ↴
    ↴ .....
Argument 3/5
0038BB40: CD CD CD CD CD CD CD CD-CD CD CD CD CD CD CD CD ↴
    ↴ "....."
(0) software.exe!0x4339a0() -> 0x0
(0) software.exe!0x4339a0(0x38b920, 0x38a828, 0x38bb30, 0x10, 0x0) (called ↴
    ↴ from software.exe!.text+0x33c0d (0x13e4c0d))
Argument 1/5
0038B920: CA 39 B1 85 75 1B 84 1F-F9 31 5E 39 72 13 EC 5D ".9..u....1^9r" ↴
    ↴ ..
Argument 2/5
0038A828: 95 80 27 02 21 D5 2D 1A-0F D9 45 9F 75 EE 24 C4 "...!.-...E.u.$" ↴
    ↴ ..
Argument 3/5
0038BB30: CD CD CD CD CD CD CD CD-CD CD CD CD CD CD CD CD ↴
    ↴ "....."
(0) software.exe!0x4339a0() -> 0x0
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

Argument 3/5 difference
00000000: 45 00 20 00 4A 00 4F 00-48 00 4E 00 53 00 00 00 "E. .J.O.H.N.S"
    ↴ ...
(0) software.exe!0x4339a0(0x38b920, 0x0, 0x38b978, 0x10, 0x0) (called from ↴
    ↴ software.exe!.text+0x33c0d (0x13e4c0d))
Argument 1/5
0038B920: 95 80 27 02 21 D5 2D 1A-0F D9 45 9F 75 EE 24 C4 "...!.-...E.u.$"
    ↴ ...
Argument 3/5
0038B978: 95 80 27 02 21 D5 2D 1A-0F D9 45 9F 75 EE 24 C4 "...!.-...E.u.$"
    ↴ ...
(0) software.exe!0x4339a0() -> 0x0
Argument 3/5 difference
00000000: B1 27 7F E4 9F 01 E3 81-CF C6 12 FB B9 7C F1 BC ↴
    ↴ "...|..."
PID=1984|Process software.exe exited. ExitCode=0 (0x0)

```

Here we can see inputs to the *ProcessAndXorBlock()* function, and outputs from it.

This is output from the function during first call:

```

00000000: C7 39 4E 7B 33 1B D6 1F-B8 31 10 39 39 13 A5 5D ".9N"
    ↴ {3....1.99..}"
```

Then the *ProcessAndXorBlock()* is called with zero-length block,
but with 8 flag (*BT_ReverseDirection*).

Second call:

```

00000000: 45 00 20 00 4A 00 4F 00-48 00 4E 00 53 00 00 00 "E. .J.O.H.N.S"
    ↴ ..."
```

Wow, there is some string familiar to us!

Third call:

```

00000000: B1 27 7F E4 9F 01 E3 81-CF C6 12 FB B9 7C F1 BC ↴
    ↴ "...|..."
```

The first output is very similar to the first 16 bytes of the encrypted buffer.

Output of the first call of *ProcessAndXorBlock()*:

```

00000000: C7 39 4E 7B 33 1B D6 1F-B8 31 10 39 39 13 A5 5D ".9N"
    ↴ {3....1.99..}"
```

First 16 bytes of encrypted buffer:

```

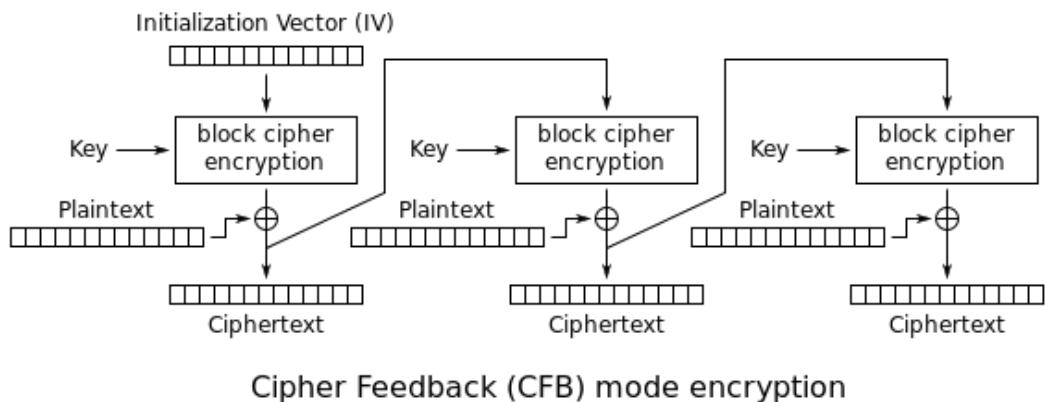
00000000: CA 39 B1 85 75 1B 84 1F F9 31 5E 39 72 13 EC 5D .9..u....1^9r..]
```

There are too much equal bytes! How come AES encryption result can be very similar
to the encrypted buffer while this is not encryption but rather decryption?!

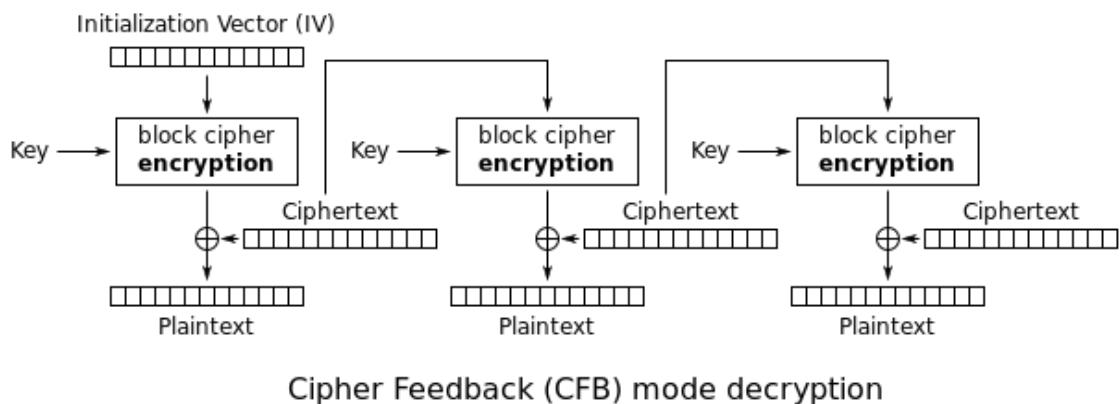
8.9.5 Cipher Feedback mode

The answer is [CFB²²](#): in this mode, AES algorithm used not as encryption algorithm, but as a device which generates cryptographically secure random data. The actual encryption is happening using simple XOR operation.

Here is encryption algorithm (images are taken from Wikipedia):



And decryption:



Now let's see: AES encryption operation generates 16 bytes (or 128 bits) of *random* data to be used while XOR-ing, who forces us to use all 16 bytes? If at the last iteration we've got 1 byte of data, let's xor 1 byte of data with 1 byte of generated *random* data? This leads to important property of [CFB](#) mode: data can be not padded, data of arbitrary size can be encrypted and decrypted.

²²Cipher Feedback

Oh, that's why all encrypted blocks are not padded. And that's why AESDEC instruction is never called.

Let's try to decrypt first block manually, using Python. CFB mode also use **IV**, as a seed for **CSPRNG²³**. In our case, **IV** is the block which is encrypted at first iteration:

```
0038B920: 01 00 00 00 FF FF FF FF-79 C1 69 0B 67 C1 04 7D ".....y.i.g"
↳ ..}"
```

Oh, and we also have to recover encryption key. There is AESKEYGENASSIST is DLL, and it is called, and it is used in the *Rijndael::Base::UncheckedSetKey()* function: [src](#). It's easy to find it in IDA and set breakpoint. Let's see:

```
... tracer.exe -l:filename.exe bpf=filename.exe!0x435c30,args:3,dump_args:0
↳ x10

Warning: no tracer.cfg file.
PID=2068|New process software.exe
no module registered with image base 0x77320000
no module registered with image base 0x76e20000
no module registered with image base 0x77320000
no module registered with image base 0x77220000
Warning: unknown (to us) INT3 breakpoint at ntdll.dll!
↳ LdrVerifyImageMatchesChecksum+0x96c (0x776c103b)
(0) software.exe!0x435c30(0x15e8000, 0x10, 0x14f808) (called from software.exe!
↳ .text+0x22fa1 (0x13d3fa1))
Argument 1/3
015E8000: CD C5 7E AD 28 5F 6D E1-CE 8F CC 29 B1 21 88 8E "...(_m....)
↳ .!."
Argument 3/3
0014F808: 38 82 58 01 C8 B9 46 00-01 D1 3C 01 00 F8 14 00 "8.X...F
↳ ...<...."
Argument 3/3 +0x0: software.exe!.rdata+0x5238
Argument 3/3 +0x8: software.exe!.text+0x1c101
(0) software.exe!0x435c30() -> 0x13c2801
PID=2068|Process software.exe exited. ExitCode=0 (0x0)
```

So this is the key: *CD C5 7E AD 28 5F 6D E1-CE 8F CC 29 B1 21 88 8E*.

During manual decryption we've got this:

```
00000000: 0D 00 FF FE 46 00 52 00 41 00 4E 00 4B 00 49 00 ....F.R.A.N.K.I
↳ .
00000010: 45 00 20 00 4A 00 4F 00 48 00 4E 00 53 00 66 66 E. .J.O.H.N.S.
↳ ff
00000020: 66 66 66 9E 61 40 D4 07 06 01
                                             fff.a@....
```

Now this is something readable! And now we can see why there were so many equal bytes at the first decryption iteration: because plaintext has so many zero bytes!

Let's decrypt the second block:

²³Cryptographically Secure Pseudorandom Number Generator

00000000: 17 98 D0 84 3A E9 72 4F DB 82 3F AD E9 3E 2A A8: .r0	2
↳ ..?..>*.	
00000010: 41 00 52 00 52 00 4F 00 4E 00 CD CC CC CC CC CC A.R.R.O.N	2
↳	
00000020: 1B 40 D4 07 06 01	.@....

Third, fourth and fifth:

00000000: 5D 90 59 06 EF F4 96 B4 7C 33 A7 4A BE FF 66 AB].Y..... 3.J..f	2
↳ ..	
00000010: 49 00 47 00 47 00 53 00 00 00 00 00 00 C0 65 40 I.G.G.S.....	2
↳ e@	
00000020: D4 07 06 01

00000000: D3 15 34 5D 21 18 7C 6E AA F8 2D FE 38 F9 D7 4E ..4]!. n...-8...	2
↳ N	
00000010: 41 00 20 00 44 00 4F 00 48 00 45 00 52 00 54 00 A. .D.O.H.E.R.T	2
↳ ..	
00000020: 59 00 48 E1 7A 14 AE FF 68 40 D4 07 06 02	Y.H.z...h@....

00000000: 1E 8B 90 0A 17 7B C5 52 31 6C 4E 2F DE 1B 27 19{.R1lN	2
↳ ...	
00000010: 41 00 52 00 43 00 55 00 53 00 00 00 00 00 00 60 A.R.C.U.S	2
↳	
00000020: 66 40 D4 07 06 03	f@....

All blocks decrypted seems correct except of first 16 bytes part.

8.9.6 Initializing Vector

What can affect first 16 bytes?

Let's back to [CFB decryption algorithm again: 8.9.5 on page 1107](#).

We can see that **IV** can affect to first block decryption operation, but not the second, because during the second iteration, ciphertext from the first iteration is used, and in case of decryption, it's the same, no matter what **IV** has!

So probably, **IV** is different each time. Using my tracer, I'll take a look at the first input during decryption of the second block of [XML](#) file:

0038B920: 02 00 00 00 FE FF FF FF-79 C1 69 0B 67 C1 04 7D ".....y.i.g	2
↳ ..}"	

...third:

0038B920: 03 00 00 00 FD FF FF FF-79 C1 69 0B 67 C1 04 7D ".....y.i.g	2
↳ ..}"	

It seems, first and fifth byte are changed each time. I finally concluded that the first 32-bit integer is just OrderID from the [XML](#) file, and the second 32-bit integer is also

OrderID, but negated. All other 8 bytes are same for each operation. Now I have decrypted the whole database: https://beginners.re/current-tree/examples/encrypted_DB1/decrypted.full.txt.

The Python script used for this is: https://beginners.re/current-tree/examples/encrypted_DB1/decrypt_blocks.py.

Perhaps, the author wanted each block encrypted differently, so he/she used OrderID as part of key. It would be also possible to make different AES key instead of IV.

So now we know that IV only affects first block during decryption in CFB mode, this is feature of it. All other blocks can be decrypted without knowledge IV, but using the key.

OK, so why CFB mode? Apparently, because the very first AES example on CryptoPP wiki uses CFB mode: http://www.cryptopp.com/wiki/Advanced_Encryption_Standard#Encrypting_and_Decrypting_Using_AES. Supposedly, developer choose it for simplicity: the example can encrypt/decrypt text strings with arbitrary lengths, without padding.

It is very likely, program's author(s) just copypasted the example from CryptoPP wiki page. Many programmers do so.

The only difference that IV is chosen randomly in CryptoPP wiki example, while this indeterminism wasn't allowable to programmers of the software we are dissecting now, so they choose to initialize IV using Order ID.

Now we can proceed to analyzing matter of each byte in the decrypted block.

8.9.7 Structure of the buffer

Let's take first four decrypted blocks:

00000000: 0D 00 FF FE 46 00 52 00	41 00 4E 00 4B 00 49 00F.R.A.N.K.I.
↓ .		
00000010: 45 00 20 00 4A 00 4F 00	48 00 4E 00 53 00 66 66	E. .J.O.H.N.S.
↓ ff		
00000020: 66 66 66 9E 61 40 D4 07	06 01	fff.a@....
00000000: 0B 00 FF FE 4C 00 4F 00	52 00 49 00 20 00 42 00L.O.R.I. .B.
↓ .		
00000010: 41 00 52 00 52 00 4F 00	4E 00 CD CC CC CC CC	A.R.R.O.N.
↓		
00000020: 1B 40 D4 07 06 01		.@....
00000000: 0A 00 FF FE 47 00 41 00	52 00 59 00 20 00 42 00G.A.R.Y. .B.
↓ .		
00000010: 49 00 47 00 47 00 53 00	00 00 00 00 00 C0 65 40	I.G.G.S.....
↓ e@		
00000020: D4 07 06 01	
00000000: 0F 00 FF FE 4D 00 45 00	4C 00 49 00 4E 00 44 00M.E.L.I.N.D.
↓ .		
00000010: 41 00 20 00 44 00 4F 00	48 00 45 00 52 00 54 00	A. .D.O.H.E.R.T.
↓ .		

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

1111

00000020: 59 00 48 E1 7A 14 AE FF 68 40 D4 07 06 02	Y.H.z...h@....
---	----------------

UTF-16 encoded text strings are clearly visible, these are names and surnames. The first byte (or 16-bit word) is seems string length, we can visually check it. *FF FE* is seems Unicode **BOM**.

There are 12 more bytes after each string.

Using this script (https://beginners.re/current-tree/examples/encrypted_DB1/dump_buffer_rest.py) I've got random selection of the *tails*:

```
dennis@...:$ python decrypt.py encrypted.xml | shuf | head -20
00000000: 48 E1 7A 14 AE 5F 62 40 DD 07 05 08 H.z..._b@....
00000000: 00 00 00 00 00 40 5A 40 DC 07 08 18 .....@Z@....
00000000: 00 00 00 00 00 80 56 40 D7 07 0B 04 .....V@....
00000000: 00 00 00 00 00 60 61 40 D7 07 0C 1C .....a@....
00000000: 00 00 00 00 00 20 63 40 D9 07 05 18 .....c@....
00000000: 3D 0A D7 A3 70 FD 34 40 D7 07 07 11 =...p.4@....
00000000: 00 00 00 00 00 A0 63 40 D5 07 05 19 .....c@....
00000000: CD CC CC CC 3C 5C 40 D7 07 08 11 .....@....
00000000: 66 66 66 66 FE 62 40 D4 07 06 05 fffff.b@....
00000000: 1F 85 EB 51 B8 FE 40 40 D6 07 09 1E ...Q..@@....
00000000: 00 00 00 00 40 5F 40 DC 07 02 18 .....@_@....
00000000: 48 E1 7A 14 AE 9F 67 40 D8 07 05 12 H.z...g@....
00000000: CD CC CC CC 3C 5E 40 DC 07 01 07 .....^@....
00000000: 00 00 00 00 00 00 67 40 D4 07 0B 0E .....g@....
00000000: 00 00 00 00 40 51 40 DC 07 04 0B .....@Q@....
00000000: 00 00 00 00 40 56 40 D7 07 07 0A .....@V@....
00000000: 8F C2 F5 28 5C 7F 55 40 DB 07 01 16 ...(.U@....
00000000: 00 00 00 00 00 32 40 DB 07 06 09 .....2@....
00000000: 66 66 66 66 7E 66 40 D9 07 0A 06 fffff~f@....
00000000: 48 E1 7A 14 AE DF 68 40 D5 07 07 16 H.z...h@....
```

We first see the 0x40 and 0x07 bytes present in each *tail*. The very last byte is always in 1..0x1F (1..31) range, I've checked. The penultimate byte is always in 1..0xC (1..12) range. Wow, that looks like a date! Year can be represented as 16-bit value, and maybe last 4 bytes is date (16 bits for year, 8 bits for month and 8 more for day)? 0x7DD is 2013, 0x7D5 is 2005, etc. Seems fine. This is a date. There are 8 more bytes. Judging by the fact this is database named *orders*, maybe some kind of sum is present here? I made attempt to interpret it as double-precision IEEE 754 floating point and dump all values!

Some are:

71.0 134.0 51.95 53.0 121.99 96.95 98.95 15.95 85.95 184.99
--

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

94.95
29.95
85.0
36.0
130.99
115.95
87.99
127.95
114.0
150.95

Looks like real!

Now we can dump names, sums and dates.

```
plain:
00000000: 0D 00 FF FE 46 00 52 00 41 00 4E 00 4B 00 49 00 ....F.R.A.N.K.I.
    ↴ .
00000010: 45 00 20 00 4A 00 4F 00 48 00 4E 00 53 00 66 66 E. .J.O.H.N.S.
    ↴ ff
00000020: 66 66 66 9E 61 40 D4 07 06 01 fff.a@...
OrderID= 1 name= FRANKIE JOHNS sum= 140.95 date= 2004 / 6 / 1

plain:
00000000: 0B 00 FF FE 4C 00 4F 00 52 00 49 00 20 00 42 00 ....L.O.R.I. .B.
    ↴ .
00000010: 41 00 52 00 52 00 4F 00 4E 00 CD CC CC CC CC A.R.R.O.N.
    ↴ .....
00000020: 1B 40 D4 07 06 01 .@....
OrderID= 2 name= LORI BARRON sum= 6.95 date= 2004 / 6 / 1

plain:
00000000: 0A 00 FF FE 47 00 41 00 52 00 59 00 20 00 42 00 ....G.A.R.Y. .B.
    ↴ .
00000010: 49 00 47 00 47 00 53 00 00 00 00 00 C0 65 40 I.G.G.S.....
    ↴ e@
00000020: D4 07 06 01 .....
OrderID= 3 name= GARY BIGGS sum= 174.0 date= 2004 / 6 / 1

plain:
00000000: 0F 00 FF FE 4D 00 45 00 4C 00 49 00 4E 00 44 00 ....M.E.L.I.N.D.
    ↴ .
00000010: 41 00 20 00 44 00 4F 00 48 00 45 00 52 00 54 00 A. .D.O.H.E.R.T.
    ↴ .
00000020: 59 00 48 E1 7A 14 AE FF 68 40 D4 07 06 02 Y.H.z...h@...
OrderID= 4 name= MELINDA DOHERTY sum= 199.99 date= 2004 / 6 / 2

plain:
00000000: 0B 00 FF FE 4C 00 45 00 4E 00 41 00 20 00 4D 00 ....L.E.N.A. .M.
    ↴ .
00000010: 41 00 52 00 43 00 55 00 53 00 00 00 00 00 60 A.R.C.U.S.
    ↴ .....
00000020: 66 40 D4 07 06 03 f@....
OrderID= 5 name= LENA MARCUS sum= 179.0 date= 2004 / 6 / 3
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

See more: https://beginners.re/current-tree/examples/encrypted_DB1/decrypted.full.with_data.txt. Or filtered: https://beginners.re/current-tree/examples/encrypted_DB1/decrypted.short.txt. Seems correct.

This is some kind of [OOP](#) serialization, i.e., packing differently typed values into binary buffer for storing and/or transmitting.

8.9.8 Noise at the end

The only question remaining is that sometimes, *tail* is bigger:

```
00000000: 0E 00 FF FE 54 00 48 00 45 00 52 00 45 00 53 00 ....T.H.E.R.E.S<
  ↓ .
00000010: 45 00 20 00 54 00 55 00 54 00 54 00 4C 00 45 00 E. .T.U.T.T.L.E<
  ↓ .
00000020: 66 66 66 66 66 1E 63 40 D4 07 07 1A 00 07 07 19 fffff.c@<
  ↓ .....
OrderID= 172 name= THERESE TUTTLE sum= 152.95 date= 2004 / 7 / 26
```

(00 07 07 19 bytes are not used and is ballast.)

```
00000000: 0C 00 FF FE 4D 00 45 00 4C 00 41 00 4E 00 49 00 ....M.E.L.A.N.I.<
  ↓ .
00000010: 45 00 20 00 4B 00 49 00 52 00 4B 00 00 00 00 00 E. .K.I.R.K<
  ↓ .....
00000020: 00 20 64 40 D4 07 09 02 00 02 . d@.....
OrderID= 286 name= MELANIE KIRK sum= 161.0 date= 2004 / 9 / 2
```

(00 02 are not used.)

After close examination, we can see, that the noise at the end of *tail* is just left from previous encryption!

Here are two subsequent buffers:

```
00000000: 10 00 FF FE 42 00 4F 00 4E 00 4E 00 49 00 45 00 ....B.O.N.N.I.E.<
  ↓ .
00000010: 20 00 47 00 4F 00 4C 00 44 00 53 00 54 00 45 00 .G.O.L.D.S.T.E<
  ↓ .
00000020: 49 00 4E 00 9A 99 99 99 99 79 46 40 D4 07 07 19 I.N.....yF@<
  ↓ .....
OrderID= 171 name= BONNIE GOLDSTEIN sum= 44.95 date= 2004 / 7 / 25

00000000: 0E 00 FF FE 54 00 48 00 45 00 52 00 45 00 53 00 ....T.H.E.R.E.S<
  ↓ .
00000010: 45 00 20 00 54 00 55 00 54 00 54 00 4C 00 45 00 E. .T.U.T.T.L.E<
  ↓ .
00000020: 66 66 66 66 66 1E 63 40 D4 07 07 1A 00 07 07 19 fffff.c@<
  ↓ .....
OrderID= 172 name= THERESE TUTTLE sum= 152.95 date= 2004 / 7 / 26
```

(The last 07 07 19 bytes are copied from the previous plaintext buffer.)

Another two subsequent buffers:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

00000000: 0D 00 FF FE 4C 00 4F 00 52 00 45 00 4E 00 45 00 ....L.O.R.E.N.E.
    ↴ .
00000010: 20 00 4F 00 54 00 4F 00 4F 00 4C 00 45 00 CD CC .O.T.O.O.L.E.
    ↴ ...
00000020: CC CC CC 3C 5E 40 D4 07 09 02 ...<^@....
OrderID= 285 name= LORENE OTTOOLE sum= 120.95 date= 2004 / 9 / 2

00000000: 0C 00 FF FE 4D 00 45 00 4C 00 41 00 4E 00 49 00 ....M.E.L.A.N.I.
    ↴ .
00000010: 45 00 20 00 4B 00 49 00 52 00 4B 00 00 00 00 00 E. .K.I.R.K.
    ↴ .....
00000020: 00 20 64 40 D4 07 09 02 00 02 . d@.....
OrderID= 286 name= MELANIE KIRK sum= 161.0 date= 2004 / 9 / 2

```

The last 02 byte has been copied from the previous plaintext buffer.

It's possible if the buffer used while encrypting is global and/or isn't clearing before each encryption. The final buffer size is also chaotic, nevertheless, the bug left uncaught because it doesn't affect decrypting process, which just ignores noise at the end. This is common mistake. It's been present in OpenSSL (Heartbleed bug).

8.9.9 Conclusion

Summary: every practicing reverse engineer should be familiar with major crypto algorithms and also major cryptographical modes. Some books about it: [12.1.10 on page 1303](#).

Encrypted database contents has been artificially constructed by me for the sake of demonstration. I've got most popular USA names and surnames from there: <http://stackoverflow.com/questions/1803628/raw-list-of-person-names>, and combined them randomly. Dates and sums were also generated randomly.

All files used in this part are here: https://beginners.re/current-tree/examples/encrypted_DB1.

Nevertheless, many features like these I've observed in real-world software applications. This example is based on them.

8.9.10 Post Scriptum: brute-forcing IV

The case you have just seen has been artificially constructed, but is based on a real application I've reverse engineered. When I've been working on it, I first noticed that **IV** has been generating using some 32-bit number, and I wasn't able to find a link between this value and OrderID. So I prepared to use brute-force, which is indeed possible here.

It's not a problem to enumerate all 32-bit values and try each as a base for **IV**. Then you decrypt the first 16-byte block and check for zero bytes, which are always at fixed places.

8.10 Overclocking Cointerra Bitcoin miner

There was Cointerra Bitcoin miner, looking like that:

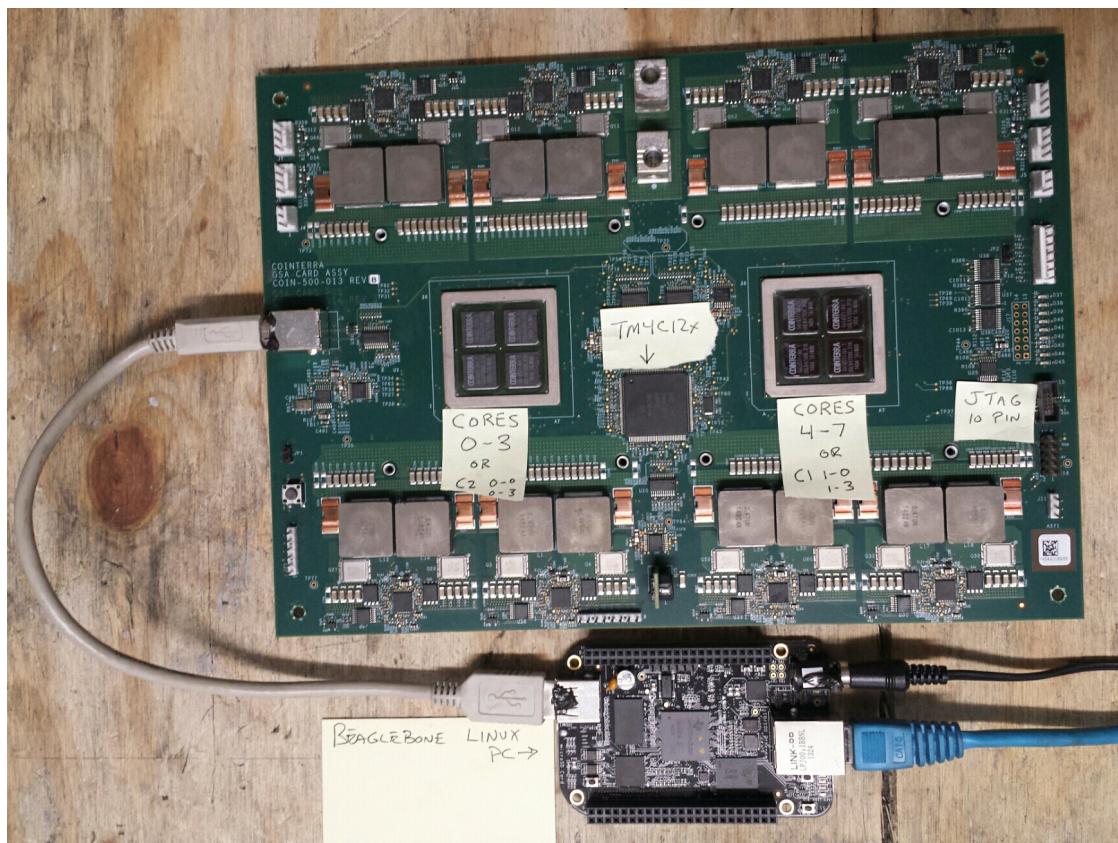


Figure 8.14: Board

And there was also (possibly leaked) utility²⁴ which can set clock rate for the board. It runs on additional BeagleBone Linux ARM board (small board at bottom of the picture).

And the author was once asked, is it possible to hack this utility to see, which frequency can be set and which are not. And it is possible to tweak it?

The utility must be executed like that: `./cointool-overclock 0 0 900`, where 900 is frequency in MHz. If the frequency is too high, utility will print “Error with arguments” and exit.

This is a fragment of code around reference to “Error with arguments” text string:

²⁴Can be downloaded here: https://beginners.re/current-tree/examples/bitcoin_miner/files/cointool-overclock

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note: <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

...
.text:0000ABC4      STR     R3, [R11,#var_28]
.text:0000ABC8      MOV     R3, #optind
.text:0000ABD0      LDR     R3, [R3]
.text:0000ABD4      ADD     R3, R3, #1
.text:0000ABD8      MOV     R3, R3,LSL#2
.text:0000ABDC      LDR     R2, [R11,#argv]
.text:0000ABE0      ADD     R3, R2, R3
.text:0000ABE4      LDR     R3, [R3]
.text:0000ABE8      MOV     R0, R3 ; nptr
.text:0000ABEC      MOV     R1, #0 ; endptr
.text:0000ABF0      MOV     R2, #0 ; base
.text:0000ABF4      BL      strtoll
.text:0000ABF8      MOV     R2, R0
.text:0000ABFC      MOV     R3, R1
.text:0000AC00      MOV     R3, R2
.text:0000AC04      STR     R3, [R11,#var_2C]
.text:0000AC08      MOV     R3, #optind
.text:0000AC10      LDR     R3, [R3]
.text:0000AC14      ADD     R3, R3, #2
.text:0000AC18      MOV     R3, R3,LSL#2
.text:0000AC1C      LDR     R2, [R11,#argv]
.text:0000AC20      ADD     R3, R2, R3
.text:0000AC24      LDR     R3, [R3]
.text:0000AC28      MOV     R0, R3 ; nptr
.text:0000AC2C      MOV     R1, #0 ; endptr
.text:0000AC30      MOV     R2, #0 ; base
.text:0000AC34      BL      strtoll
.text:0000AC38      MOV     R2, R0
.text:0000AC3C      MOV     R3, R1
.text:0000AC40      MOV     R3, R2
.text:0000AC44      STR     R3, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000AC48      LDR     R3, [R11,#var_28]
.text:0000AC4C      CMP     R3, #0
.text:0000AC50      BLT    errors_with_arguments
.text:0000AC54      LDR     R3, [R11,#var_28]
.text:0000AC58      CMP     R3, #1
.text:0000AC5C      BGT    errors_with_arguments
.text:0000AC60      LDR     R3, [R11,#var_2C]
.text:0000AC64      CMP     R3, #0
.text:0000AC68      BLT    errors_with_arguments
.text:0000AC6C      LDR     R3, [R11,#var_2C]
.text:0000AC70      CMP     R3, #3
.text:0000AC74      BGT    errors_with_arguments
.text:0000AC78      LDR     R3, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000AC7C      CMP     R3, #0x31
.text:0000AC80      BLE    errors_with_arguments
.text:0000AC84      LDR     R2, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000AC88      MOV     R3, #950
.text:0000AC8C      CMP     R2, R3
.text:0000AC90      BGT    errors_with_arguments
.text:0000AC94      LDR     R2, [R11,#third_argument]

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:0000AC98      MOV     R3, #0x51EB851F
.text:0000ACA0      SMULL   R1, R3, R3, R2
.text:0000ACA4      MOV     R1, R3, ASR#4
.text:0000ACA8      MOV     R3, R2, ASR#31
.text:0000ACAC      RSB     R3, R3, R1
.text:0000ACB0      MOV     R1, #50
.text:0000ACB4      MUL     R3, R1, R3
.text:0000ACB8      RSB     R3, R3, R2
.text:0000ACBC      CMP     R3, #0
.text:0000ACC0      BEQ     loc_ACEC
.text:0000ACC4
.text:0000ACC4 errors_with_arguments
.text:0000ACC4
.text:0000ACC4      LDR     R3, [R11,#argv]
.text:0000ACC8      LDR     R3, [R3]
.text:0000ACCC      MOV     R0, R3 ; path
.text:0000ACD0      BL      __xpg_basename
.text:0000ACD4      MOV     R3, R0
.text:0000ACD8      MOV     R0, #aSErrorWithArgu ; format
.text:0000ACE0      MOV     R1, R3
.text:0000ACE4      BL      printf
.text:0000ACE8      B      loc_ADD4
.text:0000ACEC ;
.text:0000ACEC loc_ACEC ; CODE XREF: main+66C
.text:0000ACEC      LDR     R2, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000ACF0      MOV     R3, #499
.text:0000ACF4      CMP     R2, R3
.text:0000ACF8      BGT    loc_AD08
.text:0000ACFC      MOV     R3, #0x64
.text:0000AD00      STR     R3, [R11,#unk_constant]
.text:0000AD04      B      jump_to_write_power
.text:0000AD08 ;
.text:0000AD08 loc_AD08 ; CODE XREF: main+6A4
.text:0000AD08      LDR     R2, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000AD0C      MOV     R3, #799
.text:0000AD10      CMP     R2, R3
.text:0000AD14      BGT    loc_AD24
.text:0000AD18      MOV     R3, #0x5F
.text:0000AD1C      STR     R3, [R11,#unk_constant]
.text:0000AD20      B      jump_to_write_power
.text:0000AD24 ;
.text:0000AD24 loc_AD24 ; CODE XREF: main+6C0
.text:0000AD24      LDR     R2, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000AD28      MOV     R3, #899
.text:0000AD2C      CMP     R2, R3
.text:0000AD30      BGT    loc_AD40
.text:0000AD34      MOV     R3, #0x5A
.text:0000AD38      STR     R3, [R11,#unk_constant]
.text:0000AD3C      B      jump_to_write_power
.text:0000AD40 ;

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:0000AD40 loc_AD40          ; CODE XREF: main+6DC
.text:0000AD40     LDR      R2, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000AD44     MOV      R3, #999
.text:0000AD48     CMP      R2, R3
.text:0000AD4C     BGT      loc_AD5C
.text:0000AD50     MOV      R3, #0x55
.text:0000AD54     STR      R3, [R11,#unk_constant]
.text:0000AD58     B       jump_to_write_power
.text:0000AD5C ; -----
.text:0000AD5C loc_AD5C          ; CODE XREF: main+6F8
.text:0000AD5C     LDR      R2, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000AD60     MOV      R3, #1099
.text:0000AD64     CMP      R2, R3
.text:0000AD68     BGT      jump_to_write_power
.text:0000AD6C     MOV      R3, #0x50
.text:0000AD70     STR      R3, [R11,#unk_constant]
.text:0000AD74     jump_to_write_power           ; CODE XREF: main+6B0
.text:0000AD74           ; main+6CC ...
.text:0000AD74     LDR      R3, [R11,#var_28]
.text:0000AD78     UXTB    R1, R3
.text:0000AD7C     LDR      R3, [R11,#var_2C]
.text:0000AD80     UXTB    R2, R3
.text:0000AD84     LDR      R3, [R11,#unk_constant]
.text:0000AD88     UXTB    R3, R3
.text:0000AD8C     LDR      R0, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000AD90     UXTH    R0, R0
.text:0000AD94     STR      R0, [SP,#0x44+var_44]
.text:0000AD98     LDR      R0, [R11,#var_24]
.text:0000AD9C     BL       write_power
.text:0000ADA0     LDR      R0, [R11,#var_24]
.text:0000ADA4     MOV      R1, #0x5A
.text:0000ADA8     BL       read_loop
.text:0000ADAC     B       loc_ADD4

...
.rodata:0000B378 aSErrorWithArgu DCB "%s: Error with arguments",0xA,0 ; DATA
XREF: main+684
...

```

Function names were present in debugging information of the original binary, like `write_power`, `read_loop`. But labels inside functions were named by me.

`optind` name looks familiar. It is from `getopt` *NIX library intended for command-line parsing—well, this is exactly what happens inside. Then, the 3rd argument (where frequency value is to be passed) is converted from a string to a number using a call to `strtol()` function.

The value is then checked against various constants. At `0xACEC`, it's checked, if it is lesser or equal to `499`, and if it is so, `0x64` is to be passed to `write_power()` function

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
`<book@beginners.re>`. Thanks!

(which sends a command through USB using `send_msg()`). If it is greater than 499, jump to 0xAD08 is occurred.

At 0xAD08 it's checked, if it's lesser or equal to 799. 0x5F is then passed to `write_power()` function in case of success.

There are more checks: for 899 at 0xAD24, for 0x999 at 0xAD40 and finally, for 1099 at 0xAD5C. If the input frequency is lesser or equal to 1099, 0x50 will be passed (at 0xAD6C) to `write_power()` function. And there is some kind of bug. If the value is still greater than 1099, the value itself is passed into `write_power()` function. Oh, it's not a bug, because we can't get here: value is checked first against 950 at 0xAC88, and if it is greater, error message will be displayed and the utility will finish.

Now the table between frequency in MHz and value passed to `write_power()` function:

MHz	hexadecimal	decimal
499MHz	0x64	100
799MHz	0x5f	95
899MHz	0x5a	90
999MHz	0x55	85
1099MHz	0x50	80

As it seems, a value passed to the board is gradually decreasing during frequency increasing.

Now we see that value of 950MHz is a hardcoded limit, at least in this utility. Can we trick it?

Let's back to this piece of code:

```
.text:0000AC84      LDR    R2, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000AC88      MOV    R3, #950
.text:0000AC8C      CMP    R2, R3
.text:0000AC90      BGT    errors_with_arguments ; I've patched here to 00
00 00 00
```

We must disable BGT branch instruction at 0xAC90 somehow. And this is ARM in ARM mode, because, as we see, all addresses are increasing by 4, i.e., each instruction has size of 4 bytes. NOP (no operation) instruction in ARM mode is just four zero bytes: 00 00 00 00. So by writing four zeros at 0xAC90 address (or physical offset in file 0x2C90) we can disable the check.

Now it's possible to set frequencies up to 1050MHz. Even more is possible, but due to the bug, if input value is greater than 1099, a value *as is* in MHz will be passed to the board, which is incorrect.

I didn't go further, but if I had to, I would try to decrease a value which is passed to `write_power()` function.

Now the scary piece of code which I skipped at first:

```

.text:0000AC94      LDR      R2, [R11,#third_argument]
.text:0000AC98      MOV      R3, #0x51EB851F
.text:0000ACA0      SMULL   R1, R3, R3, R2 ; R3=3rg_arg/3.125
.text:0000ACA4      MOV      R1, R3, ASR#4 ; R1=R3/16=3rg_arg/50
.text:0000ACA8      MOV      R3, R2, ASR#31 ; R3=MSB(3rg_arg)
.text:0000ACAC      RSB      R3, R3, R1 ; R3=3rd_arg/50
.text:0000ACB0      MOV      R1, #50
.text:0000ACB4      MUL      R3, R1, R3 ; R3=50*(3rd_arg/50)
.text:0000ACB8      RSB      R3, R3, R2
.text:0000ACBC      CMP      R3, #0
.text:0000ACC0      BEQ      loc_ACEC
.text:0000ACC4      errors_with_arguments

```

Division via multiplication is used here, and constant is 0x51EB851F. I wrote a simple programmer's calculator²⁵ for myself. And I have there a feature to calculate modulo inverse.

```

modinv32(0x51EB851F)
Warning, result is not integer: 3.125000
(unsigned) dec: 3 hex: 0x3 bin: 11

```

That means that SMULL instruction at 0xACA0 is basically divides 3rd argument by 3.125. In fact, all modinv32() function in my calculator does, is this:

$$\frac{1}{\frac{\text{input}}{2^{32}}} = \frac{2^{32}}{\text{input}}$$

Then there are additional shifts and now we see than 3rg argument is just divided by 50. And then it's multiplied by 50 again. Why? This is simplest check, if the input value is can be divided by 50 evenly. If the value of this expression is non-zero, x can't be divided by 50 evenly:

$$x - ((\frac{x}{50}) \cdot 50)$$

This is in fact simple way to calculate remainder of division.

And then, if the remainder is non-zero, error message is displayed. So this utility takes frequency values in form like 850, 900, 950, 1000, etc., but not 855 or 911.

That's it! If you do something like that, please be warned that you may damage your board, just as in case of overclocking other devices like CPUs, GPU²⁶s, etc. If you have a Cointerra board, do this on your own risk!

²⁵<https://yurichev.com/progcalc/>

²⁶Graphics Processing Unit

8.11 Breaking simple executable code encryptor

We've got an executable file which is encrypted by relatively simple encryption. [Here is it](#) (only executable section is left here).

First, all encryption function does is just adds number of position in buffer to the byte. Here is how this can be encoded:

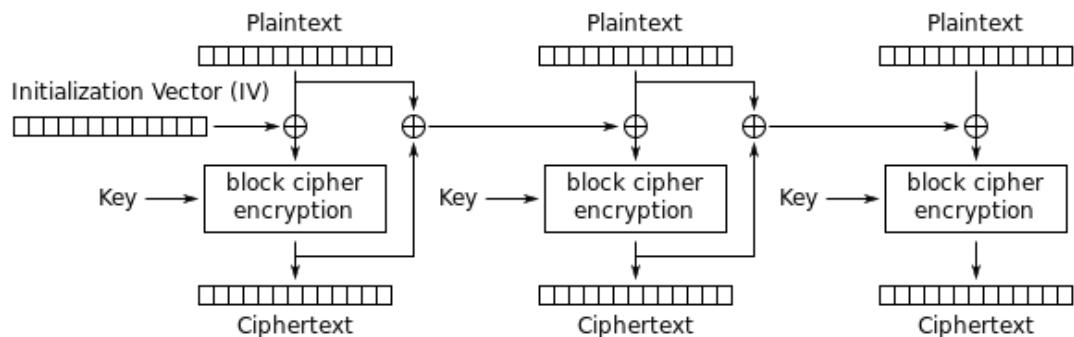
Listing 8.9: Python script

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
def e(i, k):
    return chr ((ord(i)+k) % 256)

def encrypt(buf):
    return e(buf[0], 0)+ e(buf[1], 1)+ e(buf[2], 2) + e(buf[3], 3)+ e(buf[4], 4)+ e(buf[5], 5)+ e(buf[6], 6)+ e(buf[7], 7)+ e(buf[8], 8)+ e(buf[9], 9)+ e(buf[10], 10)+ e(buf[11], 11)+ e(buf[12], 12)+ e(buf[13], 13)+ e(buf[14], 14)+ e(buf[15], 15)
```

Hence, if you encrypt buffer with 16 zeros, you'll get 0, 1, 2, 3 ... 12, 13, 14, 15.

Propagating Cipher Block Chaining (PCBC) is also used, here is how it works:



Propagating Cipher Block Chaining (PCBC) mode encryption

Figure 8.15: Propagating Cipher Block Chaining encryption (image is taken from Wikipedia article)

The problem is to recover **IV**. Brute-force is also not an option, because **IV** is too long (16 bytes). Let's see, if it's possible to recover **IV** for arbitrary encrypted executable file?

Let's try simple frequency analysis. This is 32-bit x86 executable code, so let's gather statistics about most frequent bytes and opcodes. I tried huge oracle.exe file from Oracle RDBMS version 11.2 for windows x86 and I've found that the most frequent byte (no surprise) is zero (10%). The next most frequent byte is (again, no surprise) 0xFF (5%). The next is 0x8B (5%).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

0x8B is opcode for MOV, this is indeed one of the most busy x86 instructions. Now what about popularity of zero byte? If compiler needs to encode value bigger than 127, it has to use 32-bit displacement instead of 8-bit one, but large values are very rare ([2.1.8 on page 570](#)), so it is padded by zeros. This is at least in LEA, MOV, PUSH, CALL.

For example:

8D B0 28 01 00 00	lea	esi, [eax+128h]
8D BF 40 38 00 00	lea	edi, [edi+3840h]

Displacements bigger than 127 are very popular, but they are rarely exceeds 0x10000 (indeed, such large memory buffers/structures are also rare).

Same story with MOV, large constants are rare, the most heavily used are 0, 1, 10, 100, 2^n , and so on. Compiler has to pad small constants by zeros to represent them as 32-bit values:

BF 02 00 00 00	mov	edi, 2
BF 01 00 00 00	mov	edi, 1

Now about 00 and 0xFF bytes combined: jumps (including conditional) and calls can pass execution flow forward or backwards, but very often, within the limits of the current executable module. If forward, displacement is not very big and also padded with zeros. If backwards, displacement is represented as negative value, so padded with 0xFF bytes. For example, transfer execution flow forward:

E8 43 0C 00 00	call	_function1
E8 5C 00 00 00	call	_function2
0F 84 F0 0A 00 00	jz	loc_4F09A0
0F 84 EB 00 00 00	jz	loc_4EFBB8

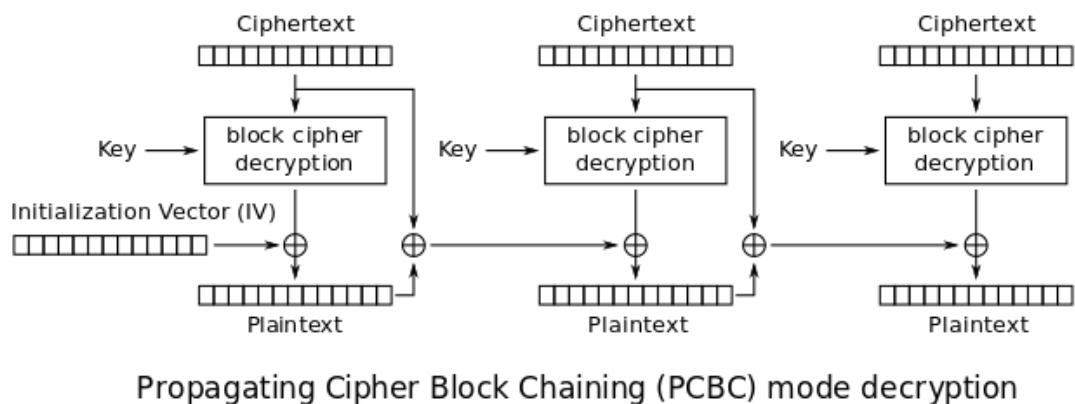
Backwards:

E8 79 0C FE FF	call	_function1
E8 F4 16 FF FF	call	_function2
0F 84 F8 FB FF FF	jz	loc_8212BC
0F 84 06 FD FF FF	jz	loc_FF1E7D

0xFF byte is also very often occurred in negative displacements like these:

8D 85 1E FF FF FF	lea	eax, [ebp-0E2h]
8D 95 F8 5C FF FF	lea	edx, [ebp-0A308h]

So far so good. Now we have to try various 16-byte keys, decrypt executable section and measure how often 0, 0xFF and 0x8B bytes are occurred. Let's also keep in sight how PCBC decryption works:



Propagating Cipher Block Chaining (PCBC) mode decryption

Figure 8.16: Propagating Cipher Block Chaining decryption (image is taken from Wikipedia article)

The good news is that we don't really have to decrypt whole piece of data, but only slice by slice, this is exactly how I did in my previous example: [9.1.5 on page 1209](#).

Now I'm trying all possible bytes (0..255) for each byte in key and just pick the byte producing maximal amount of 0/0xFF/0x8B bytes in a decrypted slice:

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
import sys, hexdump, array, string, operator

KEY_LEN=16

def chunks(l, n):
    # split l by n-byte chunks
    # https://stackoverflow.com/q/312443
    n = max(1, n)
    return [l[i:i + n] for i in range(0, len(l), n)]

def read_file(fname):
    file=open(fname, mode='rb')
    content=file.read()
    file.close()
    return content

def decrypt_byte(c, key):
    return chr((ord(c)-key) % 256)

def XOR_PCBC_step(IV, buf, k):
    prev=IV
    rt=""
    for c in buf:
        new_c=decrypt_byte(c, k)
        plain=chr(ord(new_c)^ord(prev))
        prev=chr(ord(c)^ord(plain))
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        rt=rt+plain
        return rt

each_Nth_byte=[""]*KEY_LEN

content=read_file(sys.argv[1])
# split input by 16-byte chunks:
all_chunks=chunks(content, KEY_LEN)
for c in all_chunks:
    for i in range(KEY_LEN):
        each_Nth_byte[i]=each_Nth_byte[i] + c[i]

# try each byte of key
for N in range(KEY_LEN):
    print "N=", N
    stat={}
    for i in range(256):
        tmp_key=chr(i)
        tmp=XOR_PCBC_step(tmp_key,each_Nth_byte[N], N)
        # count 0, FFs and 8Bs in decrypted buffer:
        important_bytes=tmp.count('\x00')+tmp.count('\xFF')+tmp.count('\x8B')
        ↴ ')
        stat[i]=important_bytes
    sorted_stat = sorted(stat.iteritems(), key=operator.itemgetter(1), ↴
    ↴ reverse=True)
    print sorted_stat[0]

```

(Source code can be downloaded [here](#).)

I run it and here is a key for which 0/0xFF/0x8B bytes presence in decrypted buffer is maximal:

```

N= 0
(147, 1224)
N= 1
(94, 1327)
N= 2
(252, 1223)
N= 3
(218, 1266)
N= 4
(38, 1209)
N= 5
(192, 1378)
N= 6
(199, 1204)
N= 7
(213, 1332)
N= 8
(225, 1251)
N= 9
(112, 1223)
N= 10
(143, 1177)

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
N= 11
(108, 1286)
N= 12
(10, 1164)
N= 13
(3, 1271)
N= 14
(128, 1253)
N= 15
(232, 1330)
```

Let's write decryption utility with the key we got:

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
import sys, hexdump, array

def xor_strings(s,t):
    # https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XOR_cipher#Example_implementation
    """xor two strings together"""
    return "".join(chr(ord(a)^ord(b)) for a,b in zip(s,t))

IV=array.array('B', [147, 94, 252, 218, 38, 192, 199, 213, 225, 112, 143,
                     ↴ 108, 10, 3, 128, 232]).tostring()

def chunks(l, n):
    n = max(1, n)
    return [l[i:i + n] for i in range(0, len(l), n)]

def read_file(fname):
    file=open(fname, mode='rb')
    content=file.read()
    file.close()
    return content

def decrypt_byte(i, k):
    return chr ((ord(i)-k) % 256)

def decrypt(buf):
    return "".join(decrypt_byte(buf[i], i) for i in range(16))

fout=open(sys.argv[2], mode='wb')

prev=IV
content=read_file(sys.argv[1])
tmp=chunks(content, 16)
for c in tmp:
    new_c=decrypt(c)
    p=xor_strings (new_c, prev)
    prev=xor_strings(c, p)
    fout.write(p)
fout.close()
```

(Source code can be downloaded [here](#).)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Let's check resulting file:

```
$ objdump -b binary -m i386 -D decrypted.bin

...
5: 8b ff          mov    %edi,%edi
7: 55             push   %ebp
8: 8b ec          mov    %esp,%ebp
a: 51             push   %ecx
b: 53             push   %ebx
c: 33 db          xor    %ebx,%ebx
e: 43             inc    %ebx
f: 84 1d a0 e2 05 01 test   %bl,0x105e2a0
15: 75 09          jne    0x20
17: ff 75 08          pushl  0x8(%ebp)
1a: ff 15 b0 13 00 01 call   *0x10013b0
20: 6a 6c          push   $0x6c
22: ff 35 54 d0 01 01 pushl  0x101d054
28: ff 15 b4 13 00 01 call   *0x10013b4
2e: 89 45 fc          mov    %eax,-0x4(%ebp)
31: 85 c0          test   %eax,%eax
33: 0f 84 d9 00 00 00 je    0x112
39: 56             push   %esi
3a: 57             push   %edi
3b: 6a 00          push   $0x0
3d: 50             push   %eax
3e: ff 15 b8 13 00 01 call   *0x10013b8
44: 8b 35 bc 13 00 01 mov    0x10013bc,%esi
4a: 8b f8          mov    %eax,%edi
4c: a1 e0 e2 05 01 mov    0x105e2e0,%eax
51: 3b 05 e4 e2 05 01 cmp    0x105e2e4,%eax
57: 75 12          jne    0x6b
59: 53             push   %ebx
5a: 6a 03          push   $0x3
5c: 57             push   %edi
5d: ff d6          call   *%esi
...
...
```

Yes, this is seems correctly disassembled piece of x86 code. The whole decrypted file can be downloaded [here](#).

In fact, this is text section from regedit.exe from Windows 7. But this example is based on a real case I encountered, so just executable is different (and key), algorithm is the same.

8.11.1 Other ideas to consider

What if I would fail with such simple frequency analysis? There are other ideas on how to measure correctness of decrypted/decompressed x86 code:

- Many modern compilers aligns beginnings of functions at 16-byte border. So

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

the space left before is filled with NOPs (0x90) or other NOP instructions with known opcodes: [.1.7 on page 1333](#). Or INT3 instructions (0xCC).

- Perhaps, the most frequent pattern in any assembly language is function call: PUSH chain / CALL / ADD ESP, X. This sequence can easily detected and found. I've even gathered statistics about average number of function arguments: [11.2 on page 1277](#). (Hence, this is average length of PUSH instructions chain.)

Read more about incorrectly/correctly disassembled code: [5.11 on page 939](#).

8.12 SAP

8.12.1 About SAP client network traffic compression

(This article first appeared in my blog, in 13-Jul-2010.)

(Tracing the connection between the TDW_NOCOMPRESS SAPGUI²⁷ environment variable and the pesky annoying pop-up window and the actual data compression routine.)

It is known that the network traffic between SAPGUI and SAP is not encrypted by default, but compressed (see here²⁸ and here²⁹).

It is also known that by setting the environment variable *TDW_NOCOMPRESS* to 1, it is possible to turn the network packet compression off.

But you will see an annoying pop-up window that cannot be closed:

²⁷SAP GUI client

²⁸<http://blog.yurichev.com/node/44>

²⁹blog.yurichev.com

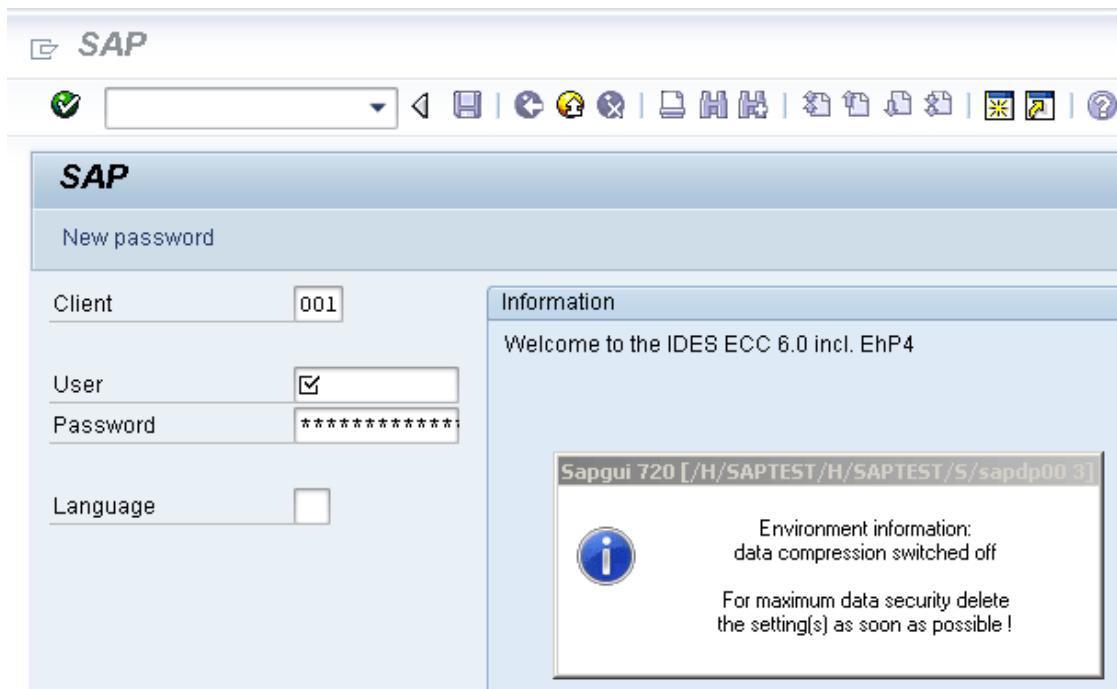


Figure 8.17: Screenshot

Let's see if we can remove the window somehow.

But before this, let's see what we already know.

First: we know that the environment variable *TDW_NOCOMPRESS* is checked somewhere inside the SAPGUI client.

Second: a string like "data compression switched off" must be present somewhere in it.

With the help of the FAR file manager³⁰ we can find that both of these strings are stored in the SAPguilib.dll file.

So let's open SAPguilib.dll in **IDA** and search for the *TDW_NOCOMPRESS* string. Yes, it is present and there is only one reference to it.

We see the following fragment of code (all file offsets are valid for SAPGUI 720 win32, SAPguilib.dll file version 7200,1,0,9009):

.text:6440D51B	lea	eax, [ebp+2108h+var_211C]
.text:6440D51E	push	eax ; int
.text:6440D51F	push	offset aTdw_nocompress ;
"TDW_NOCOMPRESS"		
.text:6440D524	mov	byte ptr [edi+15h], 0
.text:6440D528	call	chk_env
.text:6440D52D	pop	ecx

³⁰ <http://www.farmanager.com/>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:6440D52E          pop     ecx
.text:6440D52F          push    offset byte_64443AF8
.text:6440D534          lea     ecx, [ebp+2108h+var_211C]

; demangled name: int ATL::CStringT::Compare(char const *)const
.text:6440D537          call    ds:mfc90_1603
.text:6440D53D          test    eax, eax
.text:6440D53F          jz     short loc_6440D55A
.text:6440D541          lea     ecx, [ebp+2108h+var_211C]

; demangled name: const char* ATL::CSimpleStringT::operator PCXSTR
.text:6440D544          call    ds:mfc90_910
.text:6440D54A          push    eax           ; Str
.text:6440D54B          call    ds:atoi
.text:6440D551          test    eax, eax
.text:6440D553          setnz   al
.text:6440D556          pop    ecx
.text:6440D557          mov     [edi+15h], al

```

The string returned by `chk_env()` via its second argument is then handled by the MFC string functions and then `atoi()`³¹ is called. After that, the numerical value is stored in `edi+15h`.

Also take a look at the `chk_env()` function (we gave this name to it manually):

```

.text:64413F20 ; int __cdecl chk_env(char *VarName, int)
.text:64413F20 chk_env           proc near
.text:64413F20
.text:64413F20 DstSize          = dword ptr -0Ch
.text:64413F20 var_8            = dword ptr -8
.text:64413F20 DstBuf           = dword ptr -4
.text:64413F20 VarName          = dword ptr 8
.text:64413F20 arg_4            = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:64413F20
.text:64413F20                 push    ebp
.text:64413F21                 mov     ebp, esp
.text:64413F23                 sub     esp, 0Ch
.text:64413F26                 mov     [ebp+DstSize], 0
.text:64413F2D                 mov     [ebp+DstBuf], 0
.text:64413F34                 push    offset unk_6444C88C
.text:64413F39                 mov     ecx, [ebp+arg_4]

; (demangled name) ATL::CStringT::operator=(char const *)
.text:64413F3C                 call    ds:mfc90_820
.text:64413F42                 mov     eax, [ebp+VarName]
.text:64413F45                 push    eax           ; VarName
.text:64413F46                 mov     ecx, [ebp+DstSize]
.text:64413F49                 push    ecx           ; DstSize
.text:64413F4A                 mov     edx, [ebp+DstBuf]
.text:64413F4D                 push    edx           ; DstBuf
.text:64413F4E                 lea     eax, [ebp+DstSize]
.text:64413F51                 push    eax           ; ReturnSize

```

³¹standard C library function that converts the digits in a string to a number

```

.text:64413F52          call   ds:getenv_s
.text:64413F58          add    esp, 10h
.text:64413F5B          mov    [ebp+var_8], eax
.text:64413F5E          cmp    [ebp+var_8], 0
.text:64413F62          jz    short loc_64413F68
.text:64413F64          xor    eax, eax
.text:64413F66          jmp    short loc_64413FBC
.text:64413F68
.text:64413F68 loc_64413F68:
.text:64413F68          cmp    [ebp+DstSize], 0
.text:64413F6C          jnz    short loc_64413F72
.text:64413F6E          xor    eax, eax
.text:64413F70          jmp    short loc_64413FBC
.text:64413F72
.text:64413F72 loc_64413F72:
.text:64413F72          mov    ecx, [ebp+DstSize]
.text:64413F75          push   ecx
.text:64413F76          mov    ecx, [ebp+arg_4]

; demangled name: ATL::CSimpleStringT<char, 1>::Preallocate(int)
.text:64413F79          call   ds:mfc90_2691
.text:64413F7F          mov    [ebp+DstBuf], eax
.text:64413F82          mov    edx, [ebp+VarName]
.text:64413F85          push   edx      ; VarName
.text:64413F86          mov    eax, [ebp+DstSize]
.text:64413F89          push   eax      ; DstSize
.text:64413F8A          mov    ecx, [ebp+DstBuf]
.text:64413F8D          push   ecx      ; DstBuf
.text:64413F8E          lea    edx, [ebp+DstSize]
.text:64413F91          push   edx      ; ReturnSize
.text:64413F92          call   ds:getenv_s
.text:64413F98          add    esp, 10h
.text:64413F9B          mov    [ebp+var_8], eax
.text:64413F9E          push   0FFFFFFFh
.text:64413FA0          mov    ecx, [ebp+arg_4]

; demangled name: ATL::CSimpleStringT::ReleaseBuffer(int)
.text:64413FA3          call   ds:mfc90_5835
.text:64413FA9          cmp    [ebp+var_8], 0
.text:64413FAD          jz    short loc_64413FB3
.text:64413FAF          xor    eax, eax
.text:64413FB1          jmp    short loc_64413FBC
.text:64413FB3
.text:64413FB3 loc_64413FB3:
.text:64413FB3          mov    ecx, [ebp+arg_4]

; demangled name: const char* ATL::CSimpleStringT::operator PCXSTR
.text:64413FB6          call   ds:mfc90_910
.text:64413FBC
.text:64413FBC loc_64413FBC:
.text:64413FBC          mov    esp, ebp
.text:64413FBE          pop    ebp

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

.text:64413FBF	retn
.text:64413FBF chk_env	endp

Yes. The `getenv_s()`³²

function is a Microsoft security-enhanced version of `getenv()`³³.

There are also some MFC string manipulations.

Lots of other environment variables are checked as well. Here is a list of all variables that are being checked and what SAPGUI would write to its trace log when logging is turned on:

DPTRACE	“GUI-OPTION: Trace set to %d”
TDW_HEXDUMP	“GUI-OPTION: Hexdump enabled”
TDW_WORKDIR	“GUI-OPTION: working directory ‘%s’”
TDW_SPLASHSRCEENOFF	“GUI-OPTION: Splash Screen Off”
TDW_SPLASHSRCEENON	“GUI-OPTION: Splash Screen On”
TDW_REPLYTIMEOUT	“GUI-OPTION: reply timeout %d milliseconds”
TDW_PLAYBACKTIMEOUT	“GUI-OPTION: PlaybackTimeout set to %d milliseconds”
TDW_NOCOMPRESS	“GUI-OPTION: no compression read”
TDW_EXPERT	“GUI-OPTION: expert mode”
TDW_PLAYBACKPROGRESS	“GUI-OPTION: PlaybackProgress”
TDW_PLAYBACKNETTRAFFIC	“GUI-OPTION: PlaybackNetTraffic”
TDW_PLAYLOG	“GUI-OPTION: /PlayLog is YES, file %s”
TDW_PLAYTIME	“GUI-OPTION: /PlayTime set to %d milliseconds”
TDW_LOGFILE	“GUI-OPTION: TDW_LOGFILE ‘%s’”
TDW_WAN	“GUI-OPTION: WAN - low speed connection enabled”
TDW_FULLSCREEN	“GUI-OPTION: FullMenu enabled”
SAP_CP / SAP_CODEPAGE	“GUI-OPTION: SAP_CODEPAGE ‘%d’”
UPDOWNLOAD_CP	“GUI-OPTION: UPDOWNLOAD_CP ‘%d’”
SNC_PARTNERNAME	“GUI-OPTION: SNC name ‘%s’”
SNC_QOP	“GUI-OPTION: SNC_QOP ‘%s’”
SNC_LIB	“GUI-OPTION: SNC is set to: %s”
SAPGUI_INPLACE	“GUI-OPTION: environment variable SAPGUI_INPLACE is on”

The settings for each variable are written in the array via a pointer in the EDI register. EDI is set before the function call:

.text:6440EE00	lea	edi, [ebp+2884h+var_2884] ; options
here like +0x15...	lea	ecx, [esi+24h]
.text:6440EE03	call	load_command_line
.text:6440EE06	mov	edi, eax
.text:6440EE0B	xor	ebx, ebx
.text:6440EE0D	cmp	edi, ebx
.text:6440EE0F	jz	short loc_6440EE42
.text:6440EE11	push	edi
.text:6440EE13	push	offset aSapguiStoppedA ; "Sapgui
.text:6440EE14	push	stopped after commandline interp..."
.text:6440EE19	push	dword_644F93E8
.text:6440EE1F	call	FEWTraceError

³²[MSDN](#)

³³Standard C library returning environment variable

Now, can we find the *data record mode switched on* string?

Yes, and the only reference is in

`CDwsGui::PrepareInfoWindow()`.

How do we get know the class/method names? There are a lot of special debugging calls that write to the log files, like:

```
.text:64405160      push    dword ptr [esi+2854h]
.text:64405166      push    offset aCdwsguiPrepare ;
"\nCDwsGui::PrepareInfoWindow: sapgui env"...
.text:6440516B      push    dword ptr [esi+2848h]
.text:64405171      call    dbg
.text:64405176      add     esp, 0Ch
```

...or:

```
.text:6440237A      push    eax
.text:6440237B      push    offset aCClientStart_6 ;
"CClient::Start: set shortcut user to '%'"...
.text:64402380      push    dword ptr [edi+4]
.text:64402383      call    dbg
.text:64402388      add     esp, 0Ch
```

It is *very* useful.

So let's see the contents of this pesky annoying pop-up window's function:

```
.text:64404F4F CDwsGui__PrepareInfoWindow proc near
.text:64404F4F
.text:64404F4F pvParam          = byte ptr -3Ch
.text:64404F4F var_38           = dword ptr -38h
.text:64404F4F var_34           = dword ptr -34h
.text:64404F4F rc               = tagRECT ptr -2Ch
.text:64404F4F cy               = dword ptr -1Ch
.text:64404F4F h                = dword ptr -18h
.text:64404F4F var_14           = dword ptr -14h
.text:64404F4F var_10           = dword ptr -10h
.text:64404F4F var_4            = dword ptr -4
.text:64404F4F
.text:64404F4F                 push    30h
.text:64404F51                 mov     eax, offset loc_64438E00
.text:64404F56                 call   __EH_prolog3
.text:64404F5B                 mov     esi, ecx      ; ECX is pointer to
object
.text:64404F5D                 xor    ebx, ebx
.text:64404F5F                 lea    ecx, [ebp+var_14]
.text:64404F62                 mov    [ebp+var_10], ebx

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT(void)
.text:64404F65                 call   ds:mfc90_316
.text:64404F6B                 mov    [ebp+var_4], ebx
.text:64404F6E                 lea    edi, [esi+2854h]
.text:64404F74                 push   offset aEnvironmentInf ;
"Environment information:\n"
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:64404F79          mov     ecx, edi
;
; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator=(char const *)
.text:64404F7B          call    ds:mfc90_820
.text:64404F81          cmp     [esi+38h], ebx
.text:64404F84          mov     ebx, ds:mfc90_2539
.text:64404F8A          jbe     short loc_64404FA9
.text:64404F8C          push    dword ptr [esi+34h]
.text:64404F8F          lea     eax, [ebp+var_14]
.text:64404F92          push    offset aWorkingDirecto ;
    "working directory: '%s'\n"
.text:64404F97          push    eax
;
; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::Format(char const *,...)
.text:64404F98          call    ebx ; mfc90_2539
.text:64404F9A          add    esp, 0Ch
.text:64404F9D          lea     eax, [ebp+var_14]
.text:64404FA0          push    eax
.text:64404FA1          mov     ecx, edi
;
; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(class ATL::CSimpleStringT<char, 1> const &)
.text:64404FA3          call    ds:mfc90_941
.text:64404FA9
.loc_64404FA9:
.text:64404FA9          mov     eax, [esi+38h]
.text:64404FAC          test   eax, eax
.text:64404FAE          jbe     short loc_64404FD3
.text:64404FB0          push    eax
.text:64404FB1          lea     eax, [ebp+var_14]
.text:64404FB4          push    offset aTraceLevelDAct ;
    "trace level %d activated\n"
.text:64404FB9          push    eax
;
; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::Format(char const *,...)
.text:64404FBA          call    ebx ; mfc90_2539
.text:64404FBC          add    esp, 0Ch
.text:64404FBF          lea     eax, [ebp+var_14]
.text:64404FC2          push    eax
.text:64404FC3          mov     ecx, edi
;
; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(class ATL::CSimpleStringT<char, 1> const &)
.text:64404FC5          call    ds:mfc90_941
.text:64404FCB          xor    ebx, ebx
.text:64404FCD          inc    ebx
.text:64404FCE          mov    [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:64404FD1          jmp    short loc_64404FD6
.text:64404FD3
.loc_64404FD3:
.text:64404FD3          xor    ebx, ebx
.text:64404FD5          inc    ebx
.text:64404FD6
.loc_64404FD6:

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:64404FD6          cmp    [esi+38h], ebx
.text:64404FD9          jbe    short loc_64404FF1
.text:64404FDB          cmp    dword ptr [esi+2978h], 0
.text:64404FE2          jz     short loc_64404FF1
.text:64404FE4          push   offset aHexdumpInTrace ;
    "hexdump in trace activated\n"
.text:64404FE9          mov    ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64404FEB          call   ds:mfc90_945
.text:64404FF1          loc_64404FF1:
.text:64404FF1          cmp    byte ptr [esi+78h], 0
.text:64404FF5          jz     short loc_64405007
.text:64404FF7          push   offset aLoggingActivat ;
    "logging activated\n"
.text:64404FFC          mov    ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64404FFE          call   ds:mfc90_945
.text:64405004          mov    [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:64405007          loc_64405007:
.text:64405007          cmp    byte ptr [esi+3Dh], 0
.text:6440500B          jz     short bypass
.text:6440500D          push   offset aDataCompressio ;
    "data compression switched off\n"
.text:64405012          mov    ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64405014          call   ds:mfc90_945
.text:6440501A          mov    [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:6440501D          .bypass:
.text:6440501D          mov    eax, [esi+20h]
.text:64405020          test   eax, eax
.text:64405022          jz     short loc_6440503A
.text:64405024          cmp    dword ptr [eax+28h], 0
.text:64405028          jz     short loc_6440503A
.text:6440502A          push   offset aDataRecordMode ;
    "data record mode switched on\n"
.text:6440502F          mov    ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64405031          call   ds:mfc90_945
.text:64405037          mov    [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:6440503A          loc_6440503A:
.text:6440503A          mov    ecx, edi
.text:6440503A          cmp    [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:6440503C          jnz   loc_64405142
.text:6440503F          push   offset aForMaximumData ;

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

"\nFor maximum data security delete\nthe s"...

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:6440504A          call    ds:mfc90_945
.text:64405050          xor     edi, edi
.text:64405052          push    edi           ; fWinIni
.text:64405053          lea     eax, [ebp+pvParam]
.text:64405056          push    eax           ; pvParam
.text:64405057          push    edi           ; uiParam
.text:64405058          push    30h          ; uiAction
.text:6440505A          call    ds:SystemParametersInfoA
.text:64405060          mov    eax, [ebp+var_34]
.text:64405063          cmp    eax, 1600
.text:64405068          jle    short loc_64405072
.text:6440506A          cdq
.text:6440506B          sub    eax, edx
.text:6440506D          sar    eax, 1
.text:6440506F          mov    [ebp+var_34], eax
.text:64405072

.loc_64405072:
.text:64405072          push    edi           ; hWnd
.text:64405073          mov    [ebp+cy], 0A0h
.text:6440507A          call    ds:GetDC
.text:64405080          mov    [ebp+var_10], eax
.text:64405083          mov    ebx, 12Ch
.text:64405088          cmp    eax, edi
.text:6440508A          jz    loc_64405113
.text:64405090          push    11h          ; i
.text:64405092          call    ds:GetStockObject
.text:64405098          mov    edi, ds:SelectObject
.text:6440509E          push    eax           ; h
.text:6440509F          push    [ebp+var_10] ; hdc
.text:644050A2          call    edi ; SelectObject
.text:644050A4          and    [ebp+rc.left], 0
.text:644050A8          and    [ebp+rc.top], 0
.text:644050AC          mov    [ebp+h], eax
.text:644050AF          push    401h          ; format
.text:644050B4          lea    eax, [ebp+rc]
.text:644050B7          push    eax           ; lprc
.text:644050B8          lea    ecx, [esi+2854h]
.text:644050BE          mov    [ebp+rc.right], ebx
.text:644050C1          mov    [ebp+rc.bottom], 0B4h

; demangled name: ATL::CSimpleStringT::GetLength(void)
.text:644050C8          call    ds:mfc90_3178
.text:644050CE          push    eax           ; cchText
.text:644050CF          lea    ecx, [esi+2854h]

; demangled name: const char* ATL::CSimpleStringT::operator PCXSTR
.text:644050D5          call    ds:mfc90_910
.text:644050DB          push    eax           ; lpchText
.text:644050DC          push    [ebp+var_10] ; hdc
.text:644050DF          call    ds:DrawTextA

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:644050E5          push   4           ; nIndex
.text:644050E7          call    ds:GetSystemMetrics
.text:644050ED          mov    ecx, [ebp+rc.bottom]
.text:644050F0          sub    ecx, [ebp+rc.top]
.text:644050F3          cmp    [ebp+h], 0
.text:644050F7          lea    eax, [eax+ecx+28h]
.text:644050FB          mov    [ebp+cy], eax
.text:644050FE          jz    short loc_64405108
.text:64405100          push   [ebp+h]      ; h
.text:64405103          push   [ebp+var_10] ; hdc
.text:64405106          call    edi ; SelectObject
.text:64405108          loc_64405108:
.text:64405108          push   [ebp+var_10] ; hDC
.text:6440510B          push   0           ; hWnd
.text:6440510D          call    ds:ReleaseDC
.text:64405113          loc_64405113:
.text:64405113          mov    eax, [ebp+var_38]
.text:64405116          push   80h         ; uFlags
.text:64405118          push   [ebp+cy]     ; cy
.text:6440511E          inc    eax
.text:6440511F          push   ebx         ; cx
.text:64405120          push   eax         ; Y
.text:64405121          mov    eax, [ebp+var_34]
.text:64405124          add    eax, 0FFFFFED4h
.text:64405129          cdq
.text:6440512A          sub    eax, edx
.text:6440512C          sar    eax, 1
.text:6440512E          push   eax         ; X
.text:6440512F          push   0           ; hWndInsertAfter
.text:64405131          push   dword ptr [esi+285Ch] ; hWnd
.text:64405137          call    ds:SetWindowPos
.text:6440513D          xor    ebx, ebx
.text:6440513F          inc    ebx
.text:64405140          jmp    short loc_6440514D
.text:64405142          loc_64405142:
.text:64405142          push   offset byte_64443AF8

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator=(char const *)
.text:64405147          call    ds:mfc90_820
.text:6440514D          loc_6440514D:
.text:6440514D          cmp    dword_6450B970, ebx
.text:64405153          jl    short loc_64405188
.text:64405155          call    sub_6441C910
.text:6440515A          mov    dword_644F858C, ebx
.text:64405160          push   dword ptr [esi+2854h]
.text:64405166          push   offset aCdwsguiPrepare ;
    "\nCdwsGui::PrepareInfoWindow: sapgui env"...
.text:6440516B          push   dword ptr [esi+2848h]
.text:64405171          call    dbg
.text:64405176          add    esp, 0Ch

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:64405179          mov     dword_644F858C, 2
.text:64405183          call    sub_6441C920
.text:64405188
.text:64405188 loc_64405188:
.text:64405188          or      [ebp+var_4], 0FFFFFFFh
.text:6440518C          lea    ecx, [ebp+var_14]

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT:: CStringT()
.text:6440518F          call    ds:mfc90_601
.text:64405195          call    __EH_epilog3
.text:6440519A          retn
.text:6440519A CDwsGui__PrepareInfoWindow endp

```

At the start of the function ECX has a pointer to the object (since it is a `thiscall` ([3.21.1 on page 698](#))-type of function). In our case, the object obviously has class type of `CDwsGui`. Depending on the option turned on in the object, a specific message part is to be concatenated with the resulting message.

If the value at address `this+0x3D` is not zero, the compression is off:

```

.text:64405007 loc_64405007:
.text:64405007          cmp     byte ptr [esi+3Dh], 0
.text:6440500B          jz      short bypass
.text:6440500D          push    offset aDataCompressio ;
    "data compression switched off\n"
.text:64405012          mov     ecx, edi

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64405014          call    ds:mfc90_945
.text:6440501A          mov     [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:6440501D          bypass:

```

It is interesting that finally the `var_10` variable state defines whether the message is to be shown at all:

```

.text:6440503C          cmp     [ebp+var_10], ebx
.text:6440503F          jnz    exit ; bypass drawing

; add strings "For maximum data security delete" / "the setting(s) as soon as
possible !":

.text:64405045          push    offset aForMaximumData ;
    "\nFor maximum data security delete\nthe s"...
.text:6440504A          call    ds:mfc90_945 ;
    ATL::CStringT::operator+=(char const *)
.text:64405050          xor    edi, edi
.text:64405052          push    edi           ; fWinIni
.text:64405053          lea     eax, [ebp+pvParam]
.text:64405056          push    eax           ; pvParam
.text:64405057          push    edi           ; uiParam
.text:64405058          push    30h          ; uiAction
.text:6440505A          call    ds:SystemParametersInfoA

```

```

.text:64405060          mov     eax, [ebp+var_34]
.text:64405063          cmp     eax, 1600
.text:64405068          jle     short loc_64405072
.text:6440506A          cdq
.text:6440506B          sub     eax, edx
.text:6440506D          sar     eax, 1
.text:6440506F          mov     [ebp+var_34], eax
.text:64405072 loc_64405072:
.start drawing:
.text:64405072          push    edi           ; hWnd
.text:64405073          mov     [ebp+cy], 0A0h
.text:6440507A          call    ds:GetDC

```

Let's check our theory on practice.

JNZ at this line ...

```
.text:6440503F          jnz     exit ; bypass drawing
```

...replace it with just JMP, and we get SAPGUI working without the pesky annoying pop-up window appearing!

Now let's dig deeper and find a connection between the `0x15` offset in the `load_command_line()` (we gave it this name) function and the `this+0x3D` variable in `CDwsGui::PrepareInfoWindow`. Are we sure the value is the same?

We are starting to search for all occurrences of the `0x15` value in code. For a small programs like SAPGUI, it sometimes works. Here is the first occurrence we've got:

```

.text:64404C19 sub_64404C19      proc near
.text:64404C19
.text:64404C19 arg_0           = dword ptr 4
.text:64404C19
.text:64404C19          push    ebx
.text:64404C1A          push    ebp
.text:64404C1B          push    esi
.text:64404C1C          push    edi
.text:64404C1D          mov     edi, [esp+10h+arg_0]
.text:64404C21          mov     eax, [edi]
.text:64404C23          mov     esi, ecx ; ESI/ECX are pointers to
some unknown object.
.text:64404C25          mov     [esi], eax
.text:64404C27          mov     eax, [edi+4]
.text:64404C2A          mov     [esi+4], eax
.text:64404C2D          mov     eax, [edi+8]
.text:64404C30          mov     [esi+8], eax
.text:64404C33          lea    eax, [edi+0Ch]
.text:64404C36          push   eax
.text:64404C37          lea    ecx, [esi+0Ch]

```

```

; demangled name: ATL::CStringT::operator=(class ATL::CStringT ... &)
.text:64404C3A          call    ds:mfc90_817
.text:64404C40          mov     eax, [edi+10h]
.text:64404C43          mov     [esi+10h], eax
.text:64404C46          mov     al, [edi+14h]
.text:64404C49          mov     [esi+14h], al
.text:64404C4C          mov     al, [edi+15h] ; copy byte from 0x15
.offset
| .text:64404C4F          mov     [esi+15h], al ; to 0x15 offset in
| CDwsGui object

```

The function has been called from the function named *CDwsGui::CopyOptions!* And thanks again for debugging information.

But the real answer is in *CDwsGui::Init()*:

```

.text:6440B0BF loc_6440B0BF:
.text:6440B0BF          mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:6440B0C2          push   [ebp+arg_4]
.text:6440B0C5          mov     [esi+2844h], eax
.text:6440B0CB          lea    eax, [esi+28h] ; ESI is pointer to
| CDwsGui object
| .text:6440B0CE          push   eax
| .text:6440B0CF          call   CDwsGui__CopyOptions

```

Finally, we understand: the array filled in the *load_command_line()* function is actually placed in the *CDwsGui* class, but at address *this+0x28*. *0x15 + 0x28* is exactly *0x3D*. OK, we found the point where the value is copied to.

Let's also find the rest of the places where the *0x3D* offset is used. Here is one of them in the *CDwsGui::SapguiRun* function (again, thanks to the debugging calls):

```

.text:64409D58          cmp    [esi+3Dh], bl ; ESI is pointer to
| CDwsGui object
| .text:64409D5B          lea    ecx, [esi+2B8h]
| .text:64409D61          setz   al
| .text:64409D64          push   eax ; arg_10 of
| CConnectionContext::CreateNetwork
| .text:64409D65          push   dword ptr [esi+64h]

; demangled name: const char* ATL::CSimpleStringT::operator PCXSTR
| .text:64409D68          call   ds:mfc90_910
| .text:64409D68          ; no arguments
| .text:64409D6E          push   eax
| .text:64409D6F          lea    ecx, [esi+2BCh]

; demangled name: const char* ATL::CSimpleStringT::operator PCXSTR
| .text:64409D75          call   ds:mfc90_910
| .text:64409D75          ; no arguments
| .text:64409D7B          push   eax
| .text:64409D7C          push   esi
| .text:64409D7D          lea    ecx, [esi+8]
| .text:64409D80          call   CConnectionContext__CreateNetwork

```

Let's check our findings.

Replace the `setz al` here with the `xor eax, eax` / `nop` instructions, clear the `TDW_NOCOMPRESS` environment variable and run SAPGUI. Wow! There pesky annoying window is no more (just as expected, because the variable is not set) but in Wireshark we can see that the network packets are not compressed anymore! Obviously, this is the point where the compression flag is to be set in the `CConnectionContext` object.

So, the compression flag is passed in the 5th argument of `CConnectionContext::CreateNetwork`. Inside the function, another one is called:

```
...
.text:64403476      push    [ebp+compression]
.text:64403479      push    [ebp+arg_C]
.text:6440347C      push    [ebp+arg_8]
.text:6440347F      push    [ebp+arg_4]
.text:64403482      push    [ebp+arg_0]
.text:64403485      call    CNetwork__CNetwork
```

The compression flag is passed here in the 5th argument to the `CNetwork::CNetwork` constructor.

And here is how the `CNetwork` constructor sets the flag in the `CNetwork` object according to its 5th argument *and* another variable which probably could also affect network packets compression.

```
.text:64411DF1      cmp     [ebp+compression], esi
.text:64411DF7      jz      short set_EAX_to_0
.text:64411DF9      mov     al, [ebx+78h] ; another value may
                        affect compression?
.text:64411DFC      cmp     al, '3'
.text:64411DFE      jz      short set_EAX_to_1
.text:64411E00      cmp     al, '4'
.text:64411E02      jnz    short set_EAX_to_0
.text:64411E04
.text:64411E04      set_EAX_to_1:
.text:64411E04      xor    eax, eax
.text:64411E06      inc    eax      ; EAX -> 1
.text:64411E07      jmp    short loc_64411E0B
.text:64411E09
.text:64411E09      set_EAX_to_0:
.text:64411E09      xor    eax, eax      ; EAX -> 0
.text:64411E0B
.text:64411E0B      loc_64411E0B:
.text:64411E0B      mov    [ebx+3A4h], eax ; EBX is pointer to
                        CNetwork object
```

At this point we know the compression flag is stored in the `CNetwork` class at address `this+0x3A4`.

Now let's dig through SAPguilib.dll for the `0x3A4` value. And here is the second occurrence in `CDwsGui::OnClientMessageWrite` (endless thanks for the debugging information):

```

.text:64406F76 loc_64406F76:
.text:64406F76          mov     ecx, [ebp+7728h+var_7794]
.text:64406F79          cmp     dword ptr [ecx+3A4h], 1
.text:64406F80          jnz    compression_flag_is_zero
.text:64406F86          mov     byte ptr [ebx+7], 1
.text:64406F8A          mov     eax, [esi+18h]
.text:64406F8D          mov     ecx, eax
.text:64406F8F          test   eax, eax
.text:64406F91          ja    short loc_64406FFF
.text:64406F93          mov     ecx, [esi+14h]
.text:64406F96          mov     eax, [esi+20h]
.text:64406F99 loc_64406F99:
.text:64406F99          push    dword ptr [edi+2868h] ; int
.text:64406F9F          lea    edx, [ebp+7728h+var_77A4]
.text:64406FA2          push    edx      ; int
.text:64406FA3          push    30000  ; int
.text:64406FA8          lea    edx, [ebp+7728h+Dst]
.text:64406FAB          push    edx      ; Dst
.text:64406FAC          push    ecx      ; int
.text:64406FAD          push    eax      ; Src
.text:64406FAE          push    dword ptr [edi+28C0h] ; int
.text:64406FB4          call    sub_644055C5      ; actual
compression routine
.text:64406FB9          add    esp, 1Ch
.text:64406FBC          cmp    eax, 0FFFFFFF6h
.text:64406FBF          jz    short loc_64407004
.text:64406FC1          cmp    eax, 1
.text:64406FC4          jz    loc_6440708C
.text:64406FCA          cmp    eax, 2
.text:64406FCD          jz    short loc_64407004
.text:64406FCF          push    eax
.text:64406FD0          push    offset aCompressionErr ;
"compression error [rc = %d]- program wi"..
.text:64406FD5          push    offset aGui_err_compre ;
"GUI_ERR_COMPRESS"
.text:64406FDA          push    dword ptr [edi+28D0h]
.text:64406FE0          call    SapPcTxtRead

```

Let's take a look in `sub_644055C5`. In it we can only see the call to `memcpy()` and another function named (by IDA) `sub_64417440`.

And, let's take a look inside `sub_64417440`. What we see is:

```

.text:6441747C          push    offset aErrorCsrcompre ;
"\nERROR: CsRCompress: invalid handle"
.text:64417481          call    eax ; dword_644F94C8
.text:64417483          add    esp, 4

```

Voilà! We've found the function that actually compresses the data. As it was shown in past ³⁴,

³⁴http://conus.info/utils/SAP_pkt_decompr.txt

this function is used in SAP and also the open-source MaxDB project. So it is available in source form.

Doing the last check here:

.text:64406F79	cmp	dword ptr [ecx+3A4h], 1
.text:64406F80	jnz	compression_flag_is_zero

Replace JNZ here for an unconditional JMP. Remove the environment variable TDW_NOCOMPRESS. Voilà!

In Wireshark we see that the client messages are not compressed. The server responses, however, are compressed.

So we found exact connection between the environment variable and the point where data compression routine can be called or bypassed.

8.12.2 SAP 6.0 password checking functions

One time when the author of this book have returned again to his SAP 6.0 IDES installed in a VMWare box, he figured out that he forgot the password for the SAP* account, then he have recalled it, but then he got this error message «*Password logon no longer possible - too many failed attempts*», since he've made all these attempts in attempt to recall it.

The first extremely good news was that the full *disp+work.pdb* PDB file is supplied with SAP, and it contain almost everything: function names, structures, types, local variable and argument names, etc. What a lavish gift!

There is TYPEINFOODUMP³⁵ utility for converting PDB files into something readable and grepable.

Here is an example of a function information + its arguments + its local variables:

```
FUNCTION ThVmcSysEvent
  Address: 10143190  Size: 675 bytes  Index: 60483 ↴
    ↳ TypeIndex: 60484
  Type: int NEAR_C ThVmcSysEvent (unsigned int, unsigned char, unsigned ↴
    ↳ short*)
Flags: 0
PARAMETER events
  Address: Reg335+288  Size: 4 bytes  Index: 60488  TypeIndex: ↴
    ↳ 60489
  Type: unsigned int
Flags: d0
PARAMETER opcode
  Address: Reg335+296  Size: 1 bytes  Index: 60490  TypeIndex: ↴
    ↳ 60491
  Type: unsigned char
Flags: d0
PARAMETER serverName
  Address: Reg335+304  Size: 8 bytes  Index: 60492  TypeIndex: ↴
    ↳ 60493
```

³⁵ <http://www.debuginfo.com/tools/typeinfodump.html>

```

Type: unsigned short*
Flags: d0
STATIC_LOCAL_VAR func
  Address: 12274af0 Size: 8 bytes Index: 60495 ↴
    ↳ TypeIndex: 60496
  Type: wchar_t*
Flags: 80
LOCAL_VAR admhead
  Address: Reg335+304 Size: 8 bytes Index: 60498 TypeIndex: ↴
    ↳ 60499
  Type: unsigned char*
Flags: 90
LOCAL_VAR record
  Address: Reg335+64 Size: 204 bytes Index: 60501 TypeIndex: ↴
    ↳ 60502
  Type: AD_RECORD
Flags: 90
LOCAL_VAR adlen
  Address: Reg335+296 Size: 4 bytes Index: 60508 TypeIndex: ↴
    ↳ 60509
  Type: int
Flags: 90

```

And here is an example of some structure:

```

STRUCT DBSL_STMTID
Size: 120 Variables: 4 Functions: 0 Base classes: 0
MEMBER moduletype
  Type: DBSL_MODULETYPE
  Offset: 0 Index: 3 TypeIndex: 38653
MEMBER module
  Type: wchar_t module[40]
  Offset: 4 Index: 3 TypeIndex: 831
MEMBER stmtnum
  Type: long
  Offset: 84 Index: 3 TypeIndex: 440
MEMBER timestamp
  Type: wchar_t timestamp[15]
  Offset: 88 Index: 3 TypeIndex: 6612

```

Wow!

Another good news: *debugging calls* (there are plenty of them) are very useful.

Here you can also notice the *ct_level* global variable³⁶, that reflects the current trace level.

There are a lot of debugging inserts in the *disp+work.exe* file:

```

cmp    cs:ct_level, 1
jl     short loc_1400375DA
call   DpLock

```

³⁶More about trace level: http://help.sap.com/saphelp_nwpi71/helpdata/en/46/962416a5a613e8e10000000a155369/content.htm

```

lea    rcx, aDpxxtool4_c ; "dpxxtool4.c"
mov    edx, 4Eh           ; line
call   CTrcSaveLocation
mov    r8, cs:func_48
mov    rcx, cs:hd़       ; hd़
lea    rdx, aSDpreadmemvalu ; "%s: DpReadMemValue (%d)"
mov    r9d, ebx
call   DpTrcErr
call   DpUnlock

```

If the current trace level is bigger or equal to threshold defined in the code here, a debugging message is to be written to the log files like *dev_w0*, *dev_disp*, and other *dev** files.

Let's try grepping in the file that we have got with the help of the TYPEINFO.DUMP utility:

```
cat "disp+work.pdb.d" | grep FUNCTION | grep -i password
```

We have got:

```

FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::DiagISelection
FUNCTION ssf_password_encrypt
FUNCTION ssf_password_decrypt
FUNCTION password_logon_disabled
FUNCTION dySignSkipUserPassword
FUNCTION migrate_password_history
FUNCTION password_is_initial
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::IsVisible
FUNCTION password_distance_ok
FUNCTION get_password_downwards_compatibility
FUNCTION dySignUnSkipUserPassword
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::GetTypeName
FUNCTION `rcui::AgiPassword::AgiPassword'::`1'::dtor$2
FUNCTION `rcui::AgiPassword::AgiPassword'::`1'::dtor$0
FUNCTION `rcui::AgiPassword::AgiPassword'::`1'::dtor$1
FUNCTION usm_set_password
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::TraceTo
FUNCTION days_since_last_password_change
FUNCTION rsecgrp_generate_random_password
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::`scalar deleting destructor'
FUNCTION password_attempt_limit_exceeded
FUNCTION handle_incorrect_password
FUNCTION `rcui::AgiPassword::`scalar deleting destructor'::`1'::dtor$1
FUNCTION calculate_new_password_hash
FUNCTION shift_password_to_history
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::GetType
FUNCTION found_password_in_history
FUNCTION `rcui::AgiPassword::`scalar deleting destructor'::`1'::dtor$0
FUNCTION rcui::AgiObj::IsaPassword
FUNCTION password_idle_check
FUNCTION SlicHwPasswordForDay
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::IsaPassword
FUNCTION rcui::AgiPassword::AgiPassword

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
FUNCTION delete_user_password
FUNCTION usm_set_user_password
FUNCTION Password_API
FUNCTION get_password_change_for_SSO
FUNCTION password_in_USR40
FUNCTION rsec_agrp_abap_generate_random_password
```

Let's also try to search for debug messages which contain the words «password» and «locked». One of them is the string «*user was locked by subsequently failed password logon attempts*», referenced in function *password_attempt_limit_exceeded()*.

Other strings that this function can write to a log file are: «*password logon attempt will be rejected immediately (preventing dictionary attacks)*», «*failed-logon lock: expired (but not removed due to 'read-only' operation)*», «*failed-logon lock: expired => removed*».

After playing for a little with this function, we noticed that the problem is exactly in it. It is called from the *chckpass()* function —one of the password checking functions.

First, we would like to make sure that we are at the correct point:

Run [tracer](#):

```
tracer64.exe -a:disp+work.exe bpf=disp+work.exe!chckpass,args:3,unicode
```

```
PID=2236|TID=2248|(0) disp+work.exe!chckpass (0x202c770, L"Brewered1
    ↴
    ↴ ", 0x41) (called from 0x1402f1060 (disp+work.
    ↴
    ↴ exe!usrexist+0x3c0))
PID=2236|TID=2248|(0) disp+work.exe!chckpass -> 0x35
```

The call path is: *syssigni() -> DylSigni() -> dychkusr() -> usrexist() -> chckpass()*.

The number 0x35 is an error returned in *chckpass()* at that point:

.text:00000001402ED567 loc_1402ED567:	; CODE XREF:
↴	
↴ chckpass+B4	
.text:00000001402ED567	mov rcx, rbx ; usr02
.text:00000001402ED56A	call password_idle_check
.text:00000001402ED56F	cmp eax, 33h
.text:00000001402ED572	jz loc_1402EDB4E
.text:00000001402ED578	cmp eax, 36h
.text:00000001402ED57B	jz loc_1402EDB3D
.text:00000001402ED581	xor edx, edx ;
↴	
↴ usr02_READONLY	
.text:00000001402ED583	mov rcx, rbx ; usr02
.text:00000001402ED586	call ↴
↴ password_attempt_limit_exceeded	
.text:00000001402ED58B	test al, al
.text:00000001402ED58D	jz short loc_1402ED5A0
.text:00000001402ED58F	mov eax, 35h
.text:00000001402ED594	add rsp, 60h
.text:00000001402ED598	pop r14
.text:00000001402ED59A	pop r12
.text:00000001402ED59C	pop rdi

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

.text:00000001402ED59D	pop rsi
.text:00000001402ED59E	pop rbx
.text:00000001402ED59F	retn

Fine, let's check:

```
tracer64.exe -a:disp+work.exe bpf=disp+work.exe! ↴
↳ password_attempt_limit_exceeded,args:4,unicode,rt:0
```

```
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!password_attempt_limit_exceeded (0 ↴
↳ x202c770, 0, 0x257758, 0) (called from 0x1402ed58b (disp+work.exe! ↴
↳ chckpass+0xeb))
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!password_attempt_limit_exceeded -> 1
PID=2744|TID=360|We modify return value (EAX/RAX) of this function to 0
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!password_attempt_limit_exceeded (0 ↴
↳ x202c770, 0, 0, 0) (called from 0x1402e9794 (disp+work.exe!chngpass+0 ↴
↳ xe4))
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!password_attempt_limit_exceeded -> 1
PID=2744|TID=360|We modify return value (EAX/RAX) of this function to 0
```

Excellent! We can successfully login now.

By the way, we can pretend we forgot the password, fixing the *chckpass()* function to return a value of 0 is enough to bypass the check:

```
tracer64.exe -a:disp+work.exe bpf=disp+work.exe!chckpass,args:3,unicode,rt ↴
↳ :0
```

```
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!chckpass (0x202c770, L"bogus" ↴
↳ ", 0x41) (called from 0x1402f1060 (disp+work.exe!usexist+0x3c0))
PID=2744|TID=360|(0) disp+work.exe!chckpass -> 0x35
PID=2744|TID=360|We modify return value (EAX/RAX) of this function to 0
```

What also can be said while analyzing the *password_attempt_limit_exceeded()* function is that at the very beginning of it, this call can be seen:

```
lea    rcx, aLoginFailed_us ; "login/failed_user_auto_unlock"
call   sapgparam
test   rax, rax
jz    short loc_1402E19DE
movzx eax, word ptr [rax]
cmp    ax, 'N'
jz    short loc_1402E19D4
cmp    ax, 'n'
jz    short loc_1402E19D4
cmp    ax, '0'
jnz   short loc_1402E19DE
```

Obviously, function *sapgparam()* is used to query the value of some configuration parameter. This function can be called from 1768 different places. It seems that

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

with the help of this information, we can easily find the places in code, the control flow of which can be affected by specific configuration parameters.

It is really sweet. The function names are very clear, much clearer than in the Oracle RDBMS.

It seems that the *disp+work* process is written in C++. Has it been rewritten some time ago?

8.13 Oracle RDBMS

8.13.1 V\$VERSION table in the Oracle RDBMS

Oracle RDBMS 11.2 is a huge program, its main module `oracle.exe` contain approx. 124,000 functions. For comparison, the Windows 7 x86 kernel (`ntoskrnl.exe`) contains approx. 11,000 functions and the Linux 3.9.8 kernel (with default drivers compiled)—31,000 functions.

Let's start with an easy question. Where does Oracle RDBMS get all this information, when we execute this simple statement in SQL*Plus:

```
SQL> select * from V$VERSION;
```

And we get:

```
BANNER
-----
Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production
PL/SQL Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production
CORE    11.2.0.1.0      Production
TNS for 32-bit Windows: Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production
NLSRTL Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production
```

Let's start. Where in the Oracle RDBMS can we find the string V\$VERSION?

In the win32-version, `oracle.exe` file contains the string, it's easy to see. But we can also use the object (.o) files from the Linux version of Oracle RDBMS since, unlike the win32 version `oracle.exe`, the function names (and global variables as well) are preserved there.

So, the `kqf.o` file contains the V\$VERSION string. The object file is in the main Oracle-library `libserver11.a`.

A reference to this text string can find in the `kqfviw` table stored in the same file, `kqf.o`:

Listing 8.10: `kqf.o`

```
.rodata:0800C4A0 kqfviw dd 0Bh      ; DATA XREF: kqfchk:loc_8003A6D
.rodata:0800C4A0                 ; kqfgbn+34
.rodata:0800C4A4      dd offset _2__STRING_10102_0 ; "GV$WAITSTAT"
.rodata:0800C4A8      dd 4
.rodata:0800C4AC      dd offset _2__STRING_10103_0 ; "NULL"
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

.rodata:0800C4B0	dd 3
.rodata:0800C4B4	dd 0
.rodata:0800C4B8	dd 195h
.rodata:0800C4BC	dd 4
.rodata:0800C4C0	dd 0
.rodata:0800C4C4	dd 0FFFFC1CBh
.rodata:0800C4C8	dd 3
.rodata:0800C4CC	dd 0
.rodata:0800C4D0	dd 0Ah
.rodata:0800C4D4	dd offset _2__STRING_10104_0 ; "V\$WAITSTAT"
.rodata:0800C4D8	dd 4
.rodata:0800C4DC	dd offset _2__STRING_10103_0 ; "NULL"
.rodata:0800C4E0	dd 3
.rodata:0800C4E4	dd 0
.rodata:0800C4E8	dd 4Eh
.rodata:0800C4EC	dd 3
.rodata:0800C4F0	dd 0
.rodata:0800C4F4	dd 0FFFFC003h
.rodata:0800C4F8	dd 4
.rodata:0800C4FC	dd 0
.rodata:0800C500	dd 5
.rodata:0800C504	dd offset _2__STRING_10105_0 ; "GV\$BH"
.rodata:0800C508	dd 4
.rodata:0800C50C	dd offset _2__STRING_10103_0 ; "NULL"
.rodata:0800C510	dd 3
.rodata:0800C514	dd 0
.rodata:0800C518	dd 269h
.rodata:0800C51C	dd 15h
.rodata:0800C520	dd 0
.rodata:0800C524	dd 0FFFFC1EDh
.rodata:0800C528	dd 8
.rodata:0800C52C	dd 0
.rodata:0800C530	dd 4
.rodata:0800C534	dd offset _2__STRING_10106_0 ; "V\$BH"
.rodata:0800C538	dd 4
.rodata:0800C53C	dd offset _2__STRING_10103_0 ; "NULL"
.rodata:0800C540	dd 3
.rodata:0800C544	dd 0
.rodata:0800C548	dd 0F5h
.rodata:0800C54C	dd 14h
.rodata:0800C550	dd 0
.rodata:0800C554	dd 0FFFFC1EEh
.rodata:0800C558	dd 5
.rodata:0800C55C	dd 0

By the way, often, while analyzing Oracle RDBMS's internals, you may ask yourself, why are the names of the functions and global variable so weird.

Probably, because Oracle RDBMS is a very old product and was developed in C in the 1980s.

And that was a time when the C standard guaranteed that the function names/variables can support only up to 6 characters inclusive: <6 significant initial characters

in an external identifier>³⁷

Probably, the table kqfviw contains most (maybe even all) views prefixed with V\$, these are *fixed views*, present all the time. Superficially, by noticing the cyclic recurrence of data, we can easily see that each kqfviw table element has 12 32-bit fields. It is very simple to create a 12-elements structure in [IDA](#) and apply it to all table elements. As of Oracle RDBMS version 11.2, there are 1023 table elements, i.e., in it are described 1023 of all possible *fixed views*.

We are going to return to this number later.

As we can see, there is not much information in these numbers in the fields. The first field is always equals to the name of the view (without the terminating zero). This is correct for each element. But this information is not very useful.

We also know that the information about all fixed views can be retrieved from a *fixed view* named V\$FIXED_VIEW_DEFINITION (by the way, the information for this view is also taken from the kqfviw and kqfvip tables.) Incidentally, there are 1023 elements in those too. Coincidence? No.

```
SQL> select * from V$FIXED_VIEW_DEFINITION where view_name='V$VERSION';

VIEW_NAME
-----
VIEW_DEFINITION
-----

V$VERSION
select BANNER from GV$VERSION where inst_id = USERENV('Instance')
```

So, V\$VERSION is some kind of a *thunk view* for another view, named GV\$VERSION, which is, in turn:

```
SQL> select * from V$FIXED_VIEW_DEFINITION where view_name='GV$VERSION';

VIEW_NAME
-----
VIEW_DEFINITION
-----

GV$VERSION
select inst_id, banner from x$version
```

The tables prefixed with X\$ in the Oracle RDBMS are service tables too, undocumented, cannot be changed by the user and are refreshed dynamically.

If we search for the text

```
select BANNER from GV$VERSION where inst_id =
USERENV('Instance')
```

... in the kqf.o file, we find it in the kqfvip table:

³⁷ [Draft ANSI C Standard \(ANSI X3J11/88-090\) \(May 13, 1988\) \(yurichev.com\)](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Listing 8.11: kqf.o

```
.rodata:080185A0 kqfvip dd offset _2__STRING_11126_0 ; DATA XREF: kqfgvcn+18
.rodata:080185A0 ; kqfgvt+F
.rodata:080185A0 ;
    "select inst_id,decode(indx,1,'data bloc'...
.rodata:080185A4      dd offset kqfv459_c_0
.rodata:080185A8      dd 0
.rodata:080185AC      dd 0

...
.rodata:08019570      dd offset _2__STRING_11378_0 ;
    "select BANNER from GV$VERSION where in"...
.rodata:08019574      dd offset kqfv133_c_0
.rodata:08019578      dd 0
.rodata:0801957C      dd 0
.rodata:08019580      dd offset _2__STRING_11379_0 ;
    "select inst_id,decode(bitandcfflg,1),0"...
.rodata:08019584      dd offset kqfv403_c_0
.rodata:08019588      dd 0
.rodata:0801958C      dd 0
.rodata:08019590      dd offset _2__STRING_11380_0 ;
    "select STATUS , NAME, IS_RECOVERY DEST"...
.rodata:08019594      dd offset kqfv199_c_0
```

The table appear to have 4 fields in each element. By the way, there are 1023 elements in it, again, the number we already know.

The second field points to another table that contains the table fields for this *fixed view*. As for V\$VERSION, this table has only two elements, the first is 6 and the second is the BANNER string (the number 6 is this string's length) and after, a *terminating element* that contains 0 and a *null C string*:

Listing 8.12: kqf.o

```
.rodata:080BBAC4 kqfv133_c_0 dd 6      ; DATA XREF: .rodata:08019574
.rodata:080BBAC8      dd offset _2__STRING_5017_0 ; "BANNER"
.rodata:080BBACC     dd 0
.rodata:080BBAD0     dd offset _2__STRING_0_0
```

By joining data from both kqfviw and kqfvip tables, we can get the SQL statements which are executed when the user wants to query information from a specific *fixed view*.

So we can write an oracle tables³⁸ program, to gather all this information from Oracle RDBMS for Linux's object files. For V\$VERSION, we find this:

Listing 8.13: Result of oracle tables

```
kqfviw_element.viewname: [V$VERSION] ?: 0x3 0x43 0x1 0xfffffc085 0x4
kqfvip_element.statement: [select BANNER from GV$VERSION where inst_id = ↴
    ↴ USERENV('Instance')]
kqfvip_element.params:
```

³⁸yurichev.com

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

[BANNER]

And:

Listing 8.14: Result of oracle tables

<pre>kqfviw_element.viewname: [GV\$VERSION] ?: 0x3 0x26 0x2 0xfffffc192 0x1 kqfvip_element.statement: [select inst_id, banner from x\$version] kqfvip_element.params: [INST_ID] [BANNER]</pre>
--

The GV\$VERSION *fixed view* is different from V\$VERSION only in that it has one more field with the identifier *instance*.

Anyway, we are going to stick with the X\$VERSION table. Just like any other X\$-table, it is undocumented, however, we can query it:

<pre>SQL> select * from x\$version; ADDR INDX INST_ID ----- BANNER ----- 0DBAF574 0 1 Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production ... </pre>

This table has some additional fields, like ADDR and INDX.

While scrolling kqf.o in [IDA](#) we can spot another table that contains a pointer to the X\$VERSION string, this is kqftab:

Listing 8.15: kqf.o

<pre>.rodata:0803CAC0 dd 9 ; element number 0x1f6 .rodata:0803CAC4 dd offset _2__STRING_13113_0 ; "X\$VERSION" .rodata:0803CAC8 dd 4 .rodata:0803CACC dd offset _2__STRING_13114_0 ; "kqvt" .rodata:0803CAD0 dd 4 .rodata:0803CAD4 dd 4 .rodata:0803CAD8 dd 0 .rodata:0803CADC dd 4 .rodata:0803CAE0 dd 0Ch .rodata:0803CAE4 dd 0FFFFC075h .rodata:0803CAE8 dd 3 .rodata:0803CAEC dd 0 .rodata:0803CAF0 dd 7 .rodata:0803CAF4 dd offset _2__STRING_13115_0 ; "X\$KQFSZ" .rodata:0803CAF8 dd 5 .rodata:0803CAF0C dd offset _2__STRING_13116_0 ; "kqfsz" .rodata:0803CB00 dd 1 .rodata:0803CB04 dd 38h .rodata:0803CB08 dd 0</pre>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
.rodata:0803CB0C      dd 7
.rodata:0803CB10      dd 0
.rodata:0803CB14      dd 0FFFFC09Dh
.rodata:0803CB18      dd 2
.rodata:0803CB1C      dd 0
```

There are a lot of references to the X\$-table names, apparently, to all Oracle RDBMS 11.2 X\$-tables. But again, we don't have enough information.

It's not clear what does the kqvt string stands for.

The kq prefix may mean *kernel* or *query*.

v apparently stands for *version* and t—*type*? Hard to say.

A table with a similar name can be found in kqf.o:

Listing 8.16: kqf.o

```
.rodata:0808C360 kqvt_c_0 kqftap_param <4, offset _2_STRING_19_0, 917h, 0,>
    ↴ 0, 0, 4, 0, 0>
.rodata:0808C360                                     ; DATA XREF:
    .rodata:08042680
.rodata:0808C360                                     ; "ADDR"
.rodata:0808C384 kqftap_param <4, offset _2_STRING_20_0, 0B02h, >
    ↴ 0, 0, 0, 4, 0, 0> ;
    "INDX"
.rodata:0808C3A8 kqftap_param <7, offset _2_STRING_21_0, 0B02h, >
    ↴ 0, 0, 0, 4, 0, 0> ;
    "INST_ID"
.rodata:0808C3CC kqftap_param <6, offset _2_STRING_5017_0, 601h, >
    ↴ 0, 0, 0, 50h, 0, 0> ;
    "BANNER"
.rodata:0808C3F0 kqftap_param <0, offset _2_STRING_0_0, 0, 0, 0, 0, >
    ↴ 0, 0, 0, 0>
```

It contains information about all fields in the X\$VERSION table. The only reference to this table is in the kqftap table:

Listing 8.17: kqf.o

```
.rodata:08042680           kqftap_element <0, offset kqvt_c_0, offset>
    ↴ kqvrow, 0> ; element 0x1f6
```

It is interesting that this element here is 0x1f6th (502nd), just like the pointer to the X\$VERSION string in the kqftab table.

Probably, the kqftap and kqftab tables complement each other, just like kqfvip and kqfviw.

We also see a pointer to the kqvrow() function. Finally, we got something useful!

So we will add these tables to our oracle tables³⁹ utility too. For X\$VERSION we get:

³⁹yurichev.com

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 8.18: Result of oracle tables

```
kqftab_element.name: [X$VERSION] ?: [kqvt] 0x4 0x4 0x4 0xc 0xfffffc075 0x3
kqftap_param.name=[ADDR] ?: 0x917 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[IDX] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INST_ID] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[BANNER] ?: 0x601 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x50 0x0 0x0
kqftab_element.fn1=kqvrow
kqftab_element.fn2=NULL
```

With the help of [tracer](#), it is easy to check that this function is called 6 times in row (from the qerfxFetch() function) while querying the X\$VERSION table.

Let's run [tracer](#) in cc mode (it comments each executed instruction):

```
tracer -a:oracle.exe bpf=oracle.exe!_kqvrow,trace:cc
```

```
_kqvrow_ proc near

var_7C      = byte ptr -7Ch
var_18      = dword ptr -18h
var_14      = dword ptr -14h
Dest        = dword ptr -10h
var_C       = dword ptr -0Ch
var_8       = dword ptr -8
var_4       = dword ptr -4
arg_8       = dword ptr 10h
arg_C       = dword ptr 14h
arg_14      = dword ptr 1Ch
arg_18      = dword ptr 20h

; FUNCTION CHUNK AT .text1:056C11A0 SIZE 00000049 BYTES

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 7Ch
    mov     eax, [ebp+arg_14] ; [EBP+1Ch]=1
    mov     ecx, TlsIndex ; [69AEB08h]=0
    mov     edx, large fs:2Ch
    mov     edx, [edx+ecx*4] ; [EDX+ECX*4]=0xc98c938
    cmp     eax, 2          ; EAX=1
    mov     eax, [ebp+arg_8] ; [EBP+10h]=0xcdfe554
    jz    loc_2CE1288
    mov     ecx, [eax]       ; [EAX]=0..5
    mov     [ebp+var_4], edi ; EDI=0xc98c938

loc_2CE10F6: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+10A
            ; _kqvrow_+1A9
    cmp     ecx, 5          ; ECX=0..5
    ja     loc_56C11C7
    mov     edi, [ebp+arg_18] ; [EBP+20h]=0
    mov     [ebp+var_14], edx ; EDX=0xc98c938
    mov     [ebp+var_8], ebx ; EBX=0
    mov     ebx, eax         ; EAX=0xcdfe554
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov      [ebp+var_C], esi ; ESI=0xcdfe248

loc_2CE110D: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+29E00E6
    mov      edx, ds:off_628B09C[ecx*4] ; [ECX*4+628B09Ch]=0x2ce1116,
    0x2ce11ac, 0x2ce11db, 0x2ce11f6, 0x2ce1236, 0x2ce127a
    jmp      edx ; EDX=0x2ce1116, 0x2ce11ac, 0x2ce11db,
    0x2ce11f6, 0x2ce1236, 0x2ce127a

loc_2CE1116: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:off_628B09C
    push     offset aXKqvvsnBuffer ; "x$kqvvsn buffer"
    mov      ecx, [ebp+arg_C] ; [EBP+14h]=0xa172b4
    xor      edx, edx
    mov      esi, [ebp+var_14] ; [EBP-14h]=0xc98c938
    push     edx ; EDX=0
    push     edx ; EDX=0
    push     50h
    push     ecx ; ECX=0xa172b4
    push     dword ptr [esi+10494h] ; [ESI+10494h]=0xc98cd58
    call    _kghalf ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached,
skipping this CALL
    mov      esi, ds:_imp_vsnum ; [59771A8h]=0x61bc49e0
    mov      [ebp+Dest], eax ; EAX=0xce2ffb0
    mov      [ebx+8], eax ; EAX=0xce2ffb0
    mov      [ebx+4], eax ; EAX=0xce2ffb0
    mov      edi, [esi] ; [ESI]=0xb200100
    mov      esi, ds:_imp_vsnstr ; [597D6D4h]=0x65852148, "-Production"
    push     esi ; ESI=0x65852148, "- Production"
    mov      ebx, edi ; EDI=0xb200100
    shr      ebx, 18h ; EBX=0xb200100
    mov      ecx, edi ; EDI=0xb200100
    shr      ecx, 14h ; ECX=0xb200100
    and     ecx, 0Fh ; ECX=0xb2
    mov      edx, edi ; EDI=0xb200100
    shr      edx, 0Ch ; EDX=0xb200100
    movzx   edx, dl ; DL=0
    mov      eax, edi ; EDI=0xb200100
    shr      eax, 8 ; EAX=0xb200100
    and     eax, 0Fh ; EAX=0xb2001
    and     edi, 0FFh ; EDI=0xb200100
    push     edi ; EDI=0
    mov      edi, [ebp+arg_18] ; [EBP+20h]=0
    push     eax ; EAX=1
    mov      eax, ds:_imp_vsnban ;
[597D6D8h]=0x65852100, "Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release %d.%d.%d.%d.%d %s"
    push     edx ; EDX=0
    push     ecx ; ECX=2
    push     ebx ; EBX=0xb
    mov      ebx, [ebp+arg_8] ; [EBP+10h]=0xcdfe554
    push     eax ;
EAX=0x65852100, "Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release %d.%d.%d.%d.%d %s"
    mov      eax, [ebp+Dest] ; [EBP-10h]=0xce2ffb0
    push     eax ; EAX=0xce2ffb0
    call    ds:_imp_sprintf ; opl=MSVCR80.dll!sprintf tracing nested
maximum level (1) reached, skipping this CALL

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    add    esp, 38h
    mov    dword ptr [ebx], 1

loc_2CE1192: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+FB
    ; _kqvrow_+128 ...
    test   edi, edi      ; EDI=0
    jnz    __VInfreq_kqvrow
    mov    esi, [ebp+var_C] ; [EBP-0Ch]=0xcdfe248
    mov    edi, [ebp+var_4] ; [EBP-4]=0xc98c938
    mov    eax, ebx       ; EBX=0xcdfe554
    mov    ebx, [ebp+var_8] ; [EBP-8]=0
    lea    eax, [eax+4]   ; [EAX+4]=0xce2ffb0, "NLSRTL Version
11.2.0.1.0 - Production", "Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release
11.2.0.1.0 - Production", "PL/SQL Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production", "TNS
for 32-bit Windows: Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"

loc_2CE11A8: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+29E00F6
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    retn           ; EAX=0xcdfe558

loc_2CE11AC: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:0628B0A0
    mov    edx, [ebx+8]   ; [EBX+8]=0xce2ffb0, "Oracle Database 11g
Enterprise Edition Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    mov    dword ptr [ebx], 2
    mov    [ebx+4], edx   ; EDX=0xce2ffb0, "Oracle Database 11g
Enterprise Edition Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    push   edx           ; EDX=0xce2ffb0, "Oracle Database 11g
Enterprise Edition Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    call   _kkxvsn        ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached,
skipping this CALL
    pop    ecx
    mov    edx, [ebx+4]   ; [EBX+4]=0xce2ffb0, "PL/SQL Release
11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    movzx  ecx, byte ptr [edx] ; [EDX]=0x50
    test   ecx, ecx      ; ECX=0x50
    jnz    short loc_2CE1192
    mov    edx, [ebp+var_14]
    mov    esi, [ebp+var_C]
    mov    eax, ebx
    mov    ebx, [ebp+var_8]
    mov    ecx, [eax]
    jmp    loc_2CE10F6

loc_2CE11DB: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:0628B0A4
    push   0
    push   50h
    mov    edx, [ebx+8]   ; [EBX+8]=0xce2ffb0, "PL/SQL Release
11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    mov    [ebx+4], edx   ; EDX=0xce2ffb0, "PL/SQL Release 11.2.0.1.0
- Production"
    push   edx           ; EDX=0xce2ffb0, "PL/SQL Release 11.2.0.1.0
- Production"
    call   _lmxver        ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached,
skipping this CALL
    add    esp, 0Ch
    mov    dword ptr [ebx], 3

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        jmp    short loc_2CE1192

loc_2CE11F6: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:0628B0A8
    mov    edx, [ebx+8]      ; [EBX+8]=0xce2ffb0
    mov    [ebp+var_18], 50h
    mov    [ebx+4], edx      ; EDX=0xce2ffb0
    push   0
    call   _npinli          ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached,
skipping this CALL
    pop    ecx
    test   eax, eax         ; EAX=0
    jnz   loc_56C11DA
    mov    ecx, [ebp+var_14]  ; [EBP-14h]=0xc98c938
    lea    edx, [ebp+var_18]  ; [EBP-18h]=0x50
    push   edx              ; EDX=0xd76c93c
    push   dword ptr [ebx+8] ; [EBX+8]=0xce2ffb0
    push   dword ptr [ecx+13278h]; [ECX+13278h]=0xacce190
    call   _nrtnsvrs        ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached,
skipping this CALL
    add    esp, 0Ch

loc_2CE122B: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+29E0118
    mov    dword ptr [ebx], 4
    jmp   loc_2CE1192

loc_2CE1236: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:0628B0AC
    lea    edx, [ebp+var_7C] ; [EBP-7Ch]=1
    push   edx              ; EDX=0xd76c8d8
    push   0
    mov    esi, [ebx+8]       ; [EBX+8]=0xce2ffb0, "TNS for 32-bit
Windows: Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    mov    [ebx+4], esi        ; ESI=0xce2ffb0, "TNS for 32-bit Windows:
Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    mov    ecx, 50h
    mov    [ebp+var_18], ecx  ; ECX=0x50
    push   ecx              ; ECX=0x50
    push   esi              ; ESI=0xce2ffb0, "TNS for 32-bit Windows:
Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    call   _lxvers           ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached,
skipping this CALL
    add    esp, 10h
    mov    edx, [ebp+var_18]  ; [EBP-18h]=0x50
    mov    dword ptr [ebx], 5
    test   edx, edx          ; EDX=0x50
    jnz   loc_2CE1192
    mov    edx, [ebp+var_14]
    mov    esi, [ebp+var_C]
    mov    eax, ebx
    mov    ebx, [ebp+var_8]
    mov    ecx, 5
    jmp   loc_2CE10F6

loc_2CE127A: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:0628B0B0
    mov    edx, [ebp+var_14]  ; [EBP-14h]=0xc98c938
    mov    esi, [ebp+var_C]  ; [EBP-0Ch]=0xcdfe248

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        mov    edi, [ebp+var_4] ; [EBP-4]=0xc98c938
        mov    eax, ebx          ; EBX=0xcdfe554
        mov    ebx, [ebp+var_8] ; [EBP-8]=0

loc_2CE1288: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+1F
    mov    eax, [eax+8]      ; [EAX+8]=0xce2ffb0, "NLSRTL Version
11.2.0.1.0 - Production"
    test   eax, eax         ; EAX=0xce2ffb0, "NLSRTL Version 11.2.0.1.0
- Production"
    jz    short loc_2CE12A7
    push   offset aXKqvvsnBuffer ; "x$kqvvsn buffer"
    push   eax               ; EAX=0xce2ffb0, "NLSRTL Version 11.2.0.1.0
- Production"
    mov    eax, [ebp+arg_C] ; [EBP+14h]=0x8a172b4
    push   eax               ; EAX=0x8a172b4
    push   dword ptr [edx+10494h] ; [EDX+10494h]=0xc98cd58
    call   _kghfrf           ; tracing nested maximum level (1) reached,
skipping this CALL
    add    esp, 10h

loc_2CE12A7: ; CODE XREF: _kqvrow_+1C1
    xor    eax, eax
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    retn             ; EAX=0
_kqvrow_ endp

```

Now it is easy to see that the row number is passed from outside. The function returns the string, constructing it as follows:

String 1	Using vsnstr, vsnnum, vsnban global variables. Calls sprintf().
String 2	Calls kkxvsn().
String 3	Calls lmxver().
String 4	Calls npinli(), nrtnsvrs().
String 5	Calls lxvers().

That's how the corresponding functions are called for determining each module's version.

8.13.2 X\$KSMLRU table in Oracle RDBMS

There is a mention of a special table in the *Diagnosing and Resolving Error ORA-04031 on the Shared Pool or Other Memory Pools [Video] [ID 146599.1]* note:

There is a fixed table called X\$KSMLRU that tracks allocations in the shared pool that cause other objects in the shared pool to be aged out. This fixed table can be used to identify what is causing the large allocation.

If many objects are being periodically flushed from the shared pool then this will cause response time problems and will likely cause library

cache latch contention problems when the objects are reloaded into the shared pool.

One unusual thing about the X\$KSMLRU fixed table is that the contents of the fixed table are erased whenever someone selects from the fixed table. This is done since the fixed table stores only the largest allocations that have occurred. The values are reset after being selected so that subsequent large allocations can be noted even if they were not quite as large as others that occurred previously. Because of this resetting, the output of selecting from this table should be carefully kept since it cannot be retrieved back after the query is issued.

However, as it can be easily checked, the contents of this table are cleared each time it's queried. Are we able to find why? Let's get back to tables we already know: kqftab and kqftap which were generated with oracle tables⁴⁰'s help, that has all information about the X\$-tables. We can see here that the ksmlrs() function is called to prepare this table's elements:

Listing 8.19: Result of oracle tables

```
kqftab_element.name: [X$KSMLRU] ?: [ksmlr] 0x4 0x64 0x11 0xc 0xfffffc0bb 0x5
kqftap_param.name=[ADDR] ?: 0x917 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INDX] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INST_ID] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRIDX] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRDUR] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x4 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRSHRPPOOL] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x8 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRCOM] ?: 0x501 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x14 0xc 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRSIZ] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x20 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRNUM] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x24 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRHON] ?: 0x501 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x20 0x28 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLROHV] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x48 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRSES] ?: 0x17 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x4c 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRADU] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x50 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRNID] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x54 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRNSD] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x58 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRNC] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x5c 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSMLRNED] ?: 0x2 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x60 0x0
kqftap_element.fn1=ksmlrs
kqftap_element.fn2=NULL
```

Indeed, with tracer's help it is easy to see that this function is called each time we query the X\$KSMLRU table.

Here we see a references to the ksmsplu_sp() and ksmsplu_jp() functions, each of them calls the ksmsplu() at the end. At the end of the ksmsplu() function we see a call to memset():

Listing 8.20: ksm.o

```
...
```

⁴⁰yurichev.com

```

.text:00434C50 loc_434C50: ; DATA XREF: .rdata:off_5E50EA8
.text:00434C50      mov     edx, [ebp-4]
.text:00434C53      mov     [eax], esi
.text:00434C55      mov     esi, [edi]
.text:00434C57      mov     [eax+4], esi
.text:00434C5A      mov     [edi], eax
.text:00434C5C      add     edx, 1
.text:00434C5F      mov     [ebp-4], edx
.text:00434C62      jnz    loc_434B7D
.text:00434C68      mov     ecx, [ebp+14h]
.text:00434C6B      mov     ebx, [ebp-10h]
.text:00434C6E      mov     esi, [ebp-0Ch]
.text:00434C71      mov     edi, [ebp-8]
.text:00434C74      lea     eax, [ecx+8Ch]
.text:00434C7A      push    370h          ; Size
.text:00434C7F      push    0              ; Val
.text:00434C81      push    eax            ; Dst
.text:00434C82      call    __intel_fast_memset
.text:00434C87      add     esp, 0Ch
.text:00434C8A      mov     esp, ebp
.text:00434C8C      pop    ebp
.text:00434C8D      retn
.text:00434C8D _ksmsplu endp

```

Constructions like `memset (block, 0, size)` are often used just to zero memory block. What if we take a risk, block the `memset()` call and see what happens?

Let's run `tracer` with the following options: set breakpoint at `0x434C7A` (the point where the arguments to `memset()` are to be passed), so that `tracer` will set program counter EIP to the point where the arguments passed to `memset()` are to be cleared (at `0x434C8A`). It can be said that we just simulate an unconditional jump from address `0x434C7A` to `0x434C8A`.

```
tracer -a:oracle.exe bpx=oracle.exe!0x00434C7A, set(eip,0x00434C8A)
```

(Important: all these addresses are valid only for the win32 version of Oracle RDBMS 11.2)

Indeed, now we can query the `X$KSMLRU` table as many times as we want and it is not being cleared anymore!

Just in case, do not try this on your production servers.

It is probably not a very useful or desired system behavior, but as an experiment for locating a piece of code that we need, it perfectly suits our needs!

8.13.3 V\$TIMER table in Oracle RDBMS

`V$TIMER` is another *fixed view* that reflects a rapidly changing value:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

V\$TIMER displays the elapsed time in hundredths of a second. Time is measured since the beginning of the epoch, which is operating system specific, and wraps around to 0 again whenever the value overflows four bytes (roughly 497 days).

(From Oracle RDBMS documentation ⁴¹)

It is interesting that the periods are different for Oracle for win32 and for Linux. Will we be able to find the function that generates this value?

As we can see, this information is finally taken from the X\$KSUTM table.

```
SQL> select * from V$FIXED_VIEW_DEFINITION where view_name='V$TIMER';

VIEW_NAME
-----
VIEW_DEFINITION
-----

V$TIMER
select HSECS from GV$TIMER where inst_id = USERENV('Instance')

SQL> select * from V$FIXED_VIEW_DEFINITION where view_name='GV$TIMER';

VIEW_NAME
-----
VIEW_DEFINITION
-----

GV$TIMER
select inst_id,ksutmtim from x$ksutm
```

Now we are stuck in a small problem, there are no references to value generating function(s) in the tables kqftab/kqftap:

Listing 8.21: Result of oracle tables

```
kqftab_element.name: [X$KSUTM] ?: [ksutm] 0x1 0x4 0x4 0x0 0xfffffc09b 0x3
kqftap_param.name=[ADDR] ?: 0x10917 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INDX] ?: 0x20b02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[INST_ID] ?: 0xb02 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x0
kqftap_param.name=[KSUTMTIM] ?: 0x1302 0x0 0x0 0x0 0x4 0x0 0x1e
kqftap_element.fn1=NULL
kqftap_element.fn2=NULL
```

When we try to find the string KSUTMTIM, we see it in this function:

```
kqfd_DRN_ksutm_c proc near ; DATA XREF: .rodata:0805B4E8
arg_0 = dword ptr 8
arg_8 = dword ptr 10h
```

⁴¹http://docs.oracle.com/cd/B28359_01/server.111/b28320/dynviews_3104.htm

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

arg_C = dword ptr 14h

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    [ebp+arg_C]
    push    offset ksugtm
    push    offset _2__STRING_1263_0 ; "KSUTMTIM"
    push    [ebp+arg_8]
    push    [ebp+arg_0]
    call    kqfd_cfui_drain
    add     esp, 14h
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    retn
kqfd_DRN_ksutm_c endp

```

The kqfd_DRN_ksutm_c() function is mentioned in the kqfd_tab_registry_0 table:

```

dd offset _2__STRING_62_0 ; "$KSUTM"
dd offset kqfd_OPN_ksutm_c
dd offset kqfd_tabl_fetch
dd 0
dd 0
dd offset kqfd_DRN_ksutm_c

```

There is a function ksugtm() referenced here. Let's see what's in it (Linux x86):

Listing 8.22: ksuo.o

```

ksugtm proc near

var_1C = byte ptr -1Ch
arg_4  = dword ptr 0Ch

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 1Ch
    lea     eax, [ebp+var_1C]
    push    eax
    call    slgcs
    pop     ecx
    mov     edx, [ebp+arg_4]
    mov     [edx], eax
    mov     eax, 4
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop     ebp
    retn
ksugtm endp

```

The code in the win32 version is almost the same.

Is this the function we are looking for? Let's see:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
tracer -a:oracle.exe bpf=oracle.exe!_ksugtm,args:2,dump_args:0x4
```

Let's try again:

```
SQL> select * from V$TIMER;

HSECS
-----
27294929

SQL> select * from V$TIMER;

HSECS
-----
27295006

SQL> select * from V$TIMER;

HSECS
-----
27295167
```

Listing 8.23: `tracer` output

```
TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm (0x0, 0xd76c5f0) (called from oracle.exe!_VInfreq_qerfxFetch+0xfad (0x56bb6d5))
Argument 2/2
0D76C5F0: 38 C9 "8.

TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm () -> 0x4 (0x4)
Argument 2/2 difference
00000000: D1 7C A0 01 ".|.."

TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm (0x0, 0xd76c5f0) (called from oracle.exe!_VInfreq_qerfxFetch+0xfad (0x56bb6d5))
Argument 2/2
0D76C5F0: 38 C9 "8.

TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm () -> 0x4 (0x4)
Argument 2/2 difference
00000000: 1E 7D A0 01 ".}.."

TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm (0x0, 0xd76c5f0) (called from oracle.exe!_VInfreq_qerfxFetch+0xfad (0x56bb6d5))
Argument 2/2
0D76C5F0: 38 C9 "8.

TID=2428|(0) oracle.exe!_ksugtm () -> 0x4 (0x4)
Argument 2/2 difference
00000000: BF 7D A0 01 ".}.."
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Indeed—the value is the same we see in SQL*Plus and it is returned via the second argument.

Let's see what is in slgcs() (Linux x86):

```
slgcs proc near

var_4 = dword ptr -4
arg_0 = dword ptr 8

    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    push    esi
    mov     [ebp+var_4], ebx
    mov     eax, [ebp+arg_0]
    call    $+5
    pop    ebx
    nop
    ; PIC mode
    mov     ebx, offset _GLOBAL_OFFSET_TABLE_
    mov     dword ptr [eax], 0
    call    sltrgatime64 ; PIC mode
    push    0
    push    0Ah
    push    edx
    push    eax
    call    __udivdi3 ; PIC mode
    mov     ebx, [ebp+var_4]
    add     esp, 10h
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    retn
slgcs endp
```

(it is just a call to sltrgatime64()

and division of its result by 10 ([3.12 on page 636](#))

And win32-version:

```
_slgcs proc near ; CODE XREF: _dbgefgHtElResetCount+15
                  ; _dbgerRunActions+1528
    db      66h
    nop
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    mov     eax, [ebp+8]
    mov     dword ptr [eax], 0
    call    ds:_imp__GetTickCount@0 ; GetTickCount()
    mov     edx, eax
    mov     eax, 0CCCCCCCCDh
    mul    edx
    shr    edx, 3
    mov     eax, edx
    mov     esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
    retn
_slgcs  endp
```

It is just the result of `GetTickCount()`⁴² divided by 10 ([3.12 on page 636](#)).

Voilà! That's why the win32 version and the Linux x86 version show different results, because they are generated by different `OS` functions.

Drain apparently implies *connecting* a specific table column to a specific function.

We will add support of the table `kqfd_tabl_registry_0` to oracle tables⁴³, now we can see how the table column's variables are *connected* to a specific functions:

```
[X$KSUTM] [kqfd_OPN_ksutm_c] [kqfd_tabl_fetch] [NULL] [NULL] [  
    ↴ kqfd_DRN_ksutm_c]  
[X$KSUSGIF] [kqfd_OPN_ksusg_c] [kqfd_tabl_fetch] [NULL] [NULL] [  
    ↴ kqfd_DRN_ksusg_c]
```

OPN, apparently stands for, *open*, and *DRN*, apparently, for *drain*.

8.14 Handwritten assembly code

8.14.1 EICAR test file

This .COM-file is intended for testing antivirus software, it is possible to run in MS-DOS and it prints this string: “EICAR-STANDARD-ANTIVIRUS-TEST-FILE!”.

Its important property is that it consists entirely of printable ASCII-symbols, which, in turn, makes it possible to create it in any text editor:

```
X50!P%@AP[4\PZX54(P^)7CC)7}{$EICAR-STANDARD-ANTIVIRUS-TEST-FILE!$H+H*
```

Let's decompile it:

```
; initial conditions: SP=0FFF Eh, SS:[SP]=0
0100 58          pop     ax
; AX=0, SP=0
0101 35 4F 21    xor     ax, 214Fh
; AX = 214Fh and SP = 0
0104 50          push    ax
; AX = 214Fh, SP = FFFF Eh and SS:[FFFF] = 214Fh
0105 25 40 41    and     ax, 4140h
; AX = 140h, SP = FFFF Eh and SS:[FFFF] = 214Fh
0108 50          push    ax
; AX = 140h, SP = FFFCh, SS:[FFFC] = 140h and SS:[FFFF] = 214Fh
0109 5B          pop     bx
; AX = 140h, BX = 140h, SP = FFFF Eh and SS:[FFFF] = 214Fh
010A 34 5C        xor     al, 5Ch
; AX = 11Ch, BX = 140h, SP = FFFF Eh and SS:[FFFF] = 214Fh
010C 50          push    ax
```

⁴²[MSDN](#)

⁴³[yurichev.com](#)

```

010D 5A          pop    dx
; AX = 11Ch, BX = 140h, DX = 11Ch, SP = FFFEh and SS:[FFFE] = 214Fh
010E 58          pop    ax
; AX = 214Fh, BX = 140h, DX = 11Ch and SP = 0
010F 35 34 28    xor    ax, 2834h
; AX = 97Bh, BX = 140h, DX = 11Ch and SP = 0
0112 50          push   ax
0113 5E          pop    si
; AX = 97Bh, BX = 140h, DX = 11Ch, SI = 97Bh and SP = 0
0114 29 37        sub    [bx], si
0116 43          inc    bx
0117 43          inc    bx
0118 29 37        sub    [bx], si
011A 7D 24        jge    short near ptr word_10140
011C 45 49 43 ... db 'EICAR-STANDARD-ANTIVIRUS-TEST-FILE!'
0140 48 2B    word_10140 dw 2B48h ; CD 21 (INT 21) will be here
0142 48 2A            dw 2A48h ; CD 20 (INT 20) will be here
0144 0D          db 0Dh
0145 0A          db 0Ah

```

We will add comments about the registers and stack after each instruction.

Essentially, all these instructions are here only to execute this code:

```

B4 09      MOV AH, 9
BA 1C 01    MOV DX, 11Ch
CD 21      INT 21h
CD 20      INT 20h

```

INT 21h with 9th function (passed in AH) just prints a string, the address of which is passed in DS:DX. By the way, the string has to be terminated with the '\$' sign. Apparently, it's inherited from [CP/M](#) and this function was left in DOS for compatibility. INT 20h exits to DOS.

But as we can see, these instruction's opcodes are not strictly printable. So the main part of EICAR file is:

- preparing the register (AH and DX) values that we need;
- preparing INT 21 and INT 20 opcodes in memory;
- executing INT 21 and INT 20.

By the way, this technique is widely used in shellcode construction, when one have to pass x86 code in string form.

Here is also a list of all x86 instructions which have printable opcodes: [.1.6 on page 1331](#).

8.15 Demos

Demos (or demomaking) were an excellent exercise in mathematics, computer graphics programming and very tight x86 hand coding.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

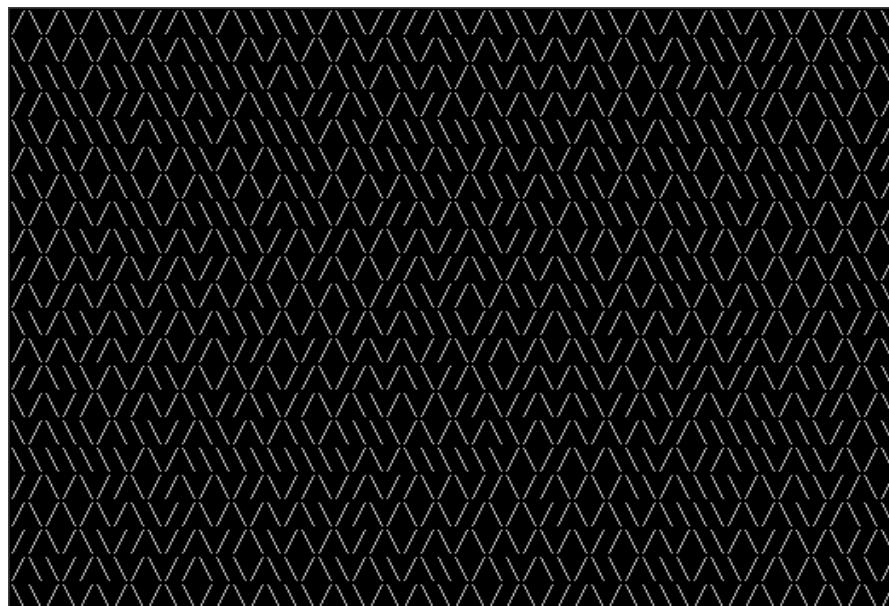
8.15.1 10 PRINT CHR\$(205.5+RND(1)); : GOTO 10

All examples here are MS-DOS .COM files.

In [Nick Montfort et al, *10 PRINT CHR\$(205.5+RND(1)); : GOTO 10*, (The MIT Press:2012)]
⁴⁴

we can read about one of the most simple possible random maze generators.

It just prints a slash or backslash characters randomly and endlessly, resulting in something like this:



There are a few known implementations for 16-bit x86.

Trixter's 42 byte version

The listing was taken from his website⁴⁵, but the comments are mine.

00000000: B001	mov	al,1	; set 40x25 video mode
00000002: CD10	int	010	
00000004: 30FF	xor	bh,bh	; set video page for int 10h
<code>call</code>			
00000006: B9D007	mov	cx,007D0	; 2000 characters to output
00000009: 31C0	xor	ax,ax	
0000000B: 9C	pushf		; push flags
; get random value from timer chip			
0000000C: FA	cli		; disable interrupts
0000000D: E643	out	043,al	; write 0 to port 43h
; read 16-bit value from port 40h			
0000000F: E440	in	al,040	

⁴⁴Also available as http://trope-tank.mit.edu/10_PRINT_121114.pdf

⁴⁵<http://trixter.oldskool.org/2012/12/17/maze-generation-in-thirteen-bytes/>

00000011: 88C4	mov	ah,al
00000013: E440	in	al,040
00000015: 9D	popf	
		; enable interrupts by
		restoring IF flag
00000016: 86C4	xchg	ah,al
; here we have 16-bit pseudorandom value		
00000018: D1E8	shr	ax,1
0000001A: D1E8	shr	ax,1
; CF currently have second bit from the value		
0000001C: B05C	mov	al,05C ;'
; if CF=1, skip the next instruction		
0000001E: 7202	jc	00000022
; if CF=0, reload AL register with another character		
00000020: B02F	mov	al,02F ;'/
; output character		
00000022: B40E	mov	ah,00E
00000024: CD10	int	010
00000026: E2E1	loop	00000009 ; loop 2000 times
00000028: CD20	int	020 ; exit to DOS

The pseudo-random value here is in fact the time that has passed from the system's boot, taken from the 8253 time chip, the value increases by one 18.2 times per second.

By writing zero to port 43h, we send the command "select counter 0", "counter latch", "binary counter" (not a **BCD** value).

The interrupts are enabled back with the POPF instruction, which restores the IF flag as well.

It is not possible to use the IN instruction with registers other than AL, hence the shuffling.

My attempt to reduce Trixter's version: 27 bytes

We can say that since we use the timer not to get a precise time value, but a pseudo-random one, we do not need to spend time (and code) to disable the interrupts.

Another thing we can say is that we need only one bit from the low 8-bit part, so let's read only it.

We can reduced the code slightly and we've got 27 bytes:

00000000: B9D007	mov	cx,007D0 ; limit output to 2000 characters
00000003: 31C0	xor	ax,ax ; command to timer chip
00000005: E643	out	043,al
00000007: E440	in	al,040 ; read 8-bit of timer
00000009: D1E8	shr	ax,1 ; get second bit to CF flag
0000000B: D1E8	shr	ax,1
0000000D: B05C	mov	al,05C ; prepare '\'
0000000F: 7202	jc	00000013
00000011: B02F	mov	al,02F ; prepare '/'
; output character to screen		
00000013: B40E	mov	ah,00E

00000015: CD10	int	010
00000017: E2EA	loop	000000003
; exit to DOS		
00000019: CD20	int	020

Taking random memory garbage as a source of randomness

Since it is MS-DOS, there is no memory protection at all, we can read from whatever address we want. Even more than that: a simple LODSB instruction reads a byte from the DS:SI address, but it's not a problem if the registers' values are not set up, let it read 1) random bytes; 2) from a random place in memory!

It is suggested in Trixter's webpage⁴⁶ to use LODSB without any setup.

It is also suggested that the SCASB instruction can be used instead, because it sets a flag according to the byte it reads.

Another idea to minimize the code is to use the INT 29h DOS syscall, which just prints the character stored in the AL register.

That is what Peter Ferrie did⁴⁷:

Listing 8.24: Peter Ferrie: 10 bytes

; AL is random at this point		
00000000: AE	scasb	
; CF is set according subtracting random memory byte from AL.		
; so it is somewhat random at this point		
00000001: D6	setalc	
; AL is set to 0xFF if CF=1 or to 0 if otherwise		
00000002: 242D	and	al,02D ;'-'
; AL here is 0x2D or 0		
00000004: 042F	add	al,02F ;'/'
; AL here is 0x5C or 0x2F		
00000006: CD29	int	029 ; output AL to screen
00000008: EBF6	jmps	00000000 ; loop endlessly

So it is possible to get rid of conditional jumps at all. The ASCII code of backslash ("\\") is 0x5C and 0x2F for slash ("//"). So we have to convert one (pseudo-random) bit in the CF flag to a value of 0x5C or 0x2F.

This is done easily: by AND-ing all bits in AL (where all 8 bits are set or cleared) with 0x2D we have just 0 or 0x2D.

By adding 0x2F to this value, we get 0x5C or 0x2F.

Then we just output it to the screen.

Conclusion

It is also worth mentioning that the result may be different in DOSBox, Windows NT and even MS-DOS,

⁴⁶ <http://trixter.oldskool.org/2012/12/17/maze-generation-in-thirteen-bytes/>

⁴⁷ <http://pferrie.host22.com/misc/10print.htm>

due to different conditions: the timer chip can be emulated differently and the initial register contents may be different as well.

8.15.2 Mandelbrot set

You know, if you magnify the coastline, it still looks like a coastline, and a lot of other things have this property. Nature has recursive algorithms that it uses to generate clouds and Swiss cheese and things like that.

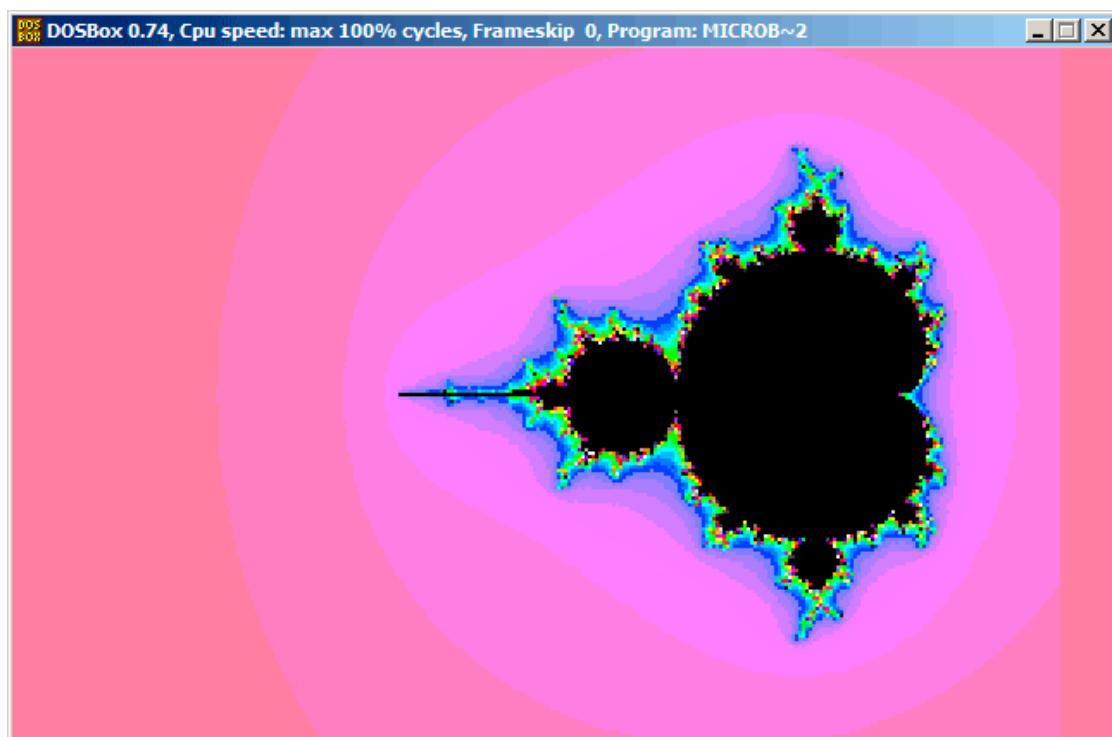
Donald Knuth, interview (1993)

Mandelbrot set is a fractal, which exhibits self-similarity.

When you increase scale, you see that this characteristic pattern repeating infinitely.

Here is a demo⁴⁸ written by “Sir_Lagsalot” in 2009, that draws the Mandelbrot set, which is just a x86 program with executable file size of only 64 bytes. There are only 30 16-bit x86 instructions.

Here it is what it draws:



Let's try to understand how it works.

Theory

A word about complex numbers

⁴⁸Download it [here](#),

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

A complex number is a number that consists of two parts—real (Re) and imaginary (Im).

The complex plane is a two-dimensional plane where any complex number can be placed: the real part is one coordinate and the imaginary part is the other.

Some basic rules we have to keep in mind:

- **Addition:** $(a + bi) + (c + di) = (a + c) + (b + d)i$

In other words:

$$\text{Re}(\text{sum}) = \text{Re}(a) + \text{Re}(b)$$

$$\text{Im}(\text{sum}) = \text{Im}(a) + \text{Im}(b)$$

- **Multiplication:** $(a + bi)(c + di) = (ac - bd) + (bc + ad)i$

In other words:

$$\text{Re}(\text{product}) = \text{Re}(a) \cdot \text{Re}(c) - \text{Re}(b) \cdot \text{Re}(d)$$

$$\text{Im}(\text{product}) = \text{Im}(b) \cdot \text{Im}(c) + \text{Im}(a) \cdot \text{Im}(d)$$

- **Square:** $(a + bi)^2 = (a + bi)(a + bi) = (a^2 - b^2) + (2ab)i$

In other words:

$$\text{Re}(\text{square}) = \text{Re}(a)^2 - \text{Im}(a)^2$$

$$\text{Im}(\text{square}) = 2 \cdot \text{Re}(a) \cdot \text{Im}(a)$$

How to draw the Mandelbrot set

The Mandelbrot set is a set of points for which the $z_{n+1} = z_n^2 + c$ recursive sequence (where z and c are complex numbers and c is the starting value) does not approach infinity.

In plain English language:

- Enumerate all points on screen.
- Check if the specific point is in the Mandelbrot set.
- Here is how to check it:
 - Represent the point as a complex number.
 - Calculate the square of it.
 - Add the starting value of the point to it.
 - Does it go off limits? If yes, break.
 - Move the point to the new place at the coordinates we just calculated.
 - Repeat all this for some reasonable number of iterations.
- The point is still in limits? Then draw the point.
- The point has eventually gone off limits?

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

- (For a black-white image) do not draw anything.
- (For a colored image) transform the number of iterations to some color. So the color shows the speed with which point has gone off limits.

Here is Pythonesque algorithm for both complex and integer number representations:

Listing 8.25: For complex numbers

```
def check_if_is_in_set(P):
    P_start=P
    iterations=0

    while True:
        if (P>bounds):
            break
        P=P^2+P_start
        if iterations > max_iterations:
            break
        iterations++

    return iterations

# black-white
for each point on screen P:
    if check_if_is_in_set (P) < max_iterations:
        draw point

# colored
for each point on screen P:
    iterations = if check_if_is_in_set (P)
    map iterations to color
    draw color point
```

The integer version is where the operations on complex numbers are replaced with integer operations according to the rules which were explained above.

Listing 8.26: For integer numbers

```
def check_if_is_in_set(X, Y):
    X_start=X
    Y_start=Y
    iterations=0

    while True:
        if (X^2 + Y^2 > bounds):
            break
        new_X=X^2 - Y^2 + X_start
        new_Y=2*X*Y + Y_start
        if iterations > max_iterations:
            break
        iterations++

    return iterations
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
# black-white
for X = min_X to max_X:
    for Y = min_Y to max_Y:
        if check_if_is_in_set (X,Y) < max_iterations:
            draw point at X, Y

# colored
for X = min_X to max_X:
    for Y = min_Y to max_Y:
        iterations = if check_if_is_in_set (X,Y)
        map iterations to color
        draw color point at X,Y
```

Here is also a C# source which is present in the Wikipedia article⁴⁹, but we'll modify it so it will print the iteration numbers instead of some symbol ⁵⁰:

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.Text;

namespace Mnoj
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            double realCoord, imagCoord;
            double realTemp, imagTemp, realTemp2, arg;
            int iterations;
            for (imagCoord = 1.2; imagCoord >= -1.2; imagCoord -= 0.05)
            {
                for (realCoord = -0.6; realCoord <= 1.77; realCoord += ↴
                    0.03)
                {
                    iterations = 0;
                    realTemp = realCoord;
                    imagTemp = imagCoord;
                    arg = (realCoord * realCoord) + (imagCoord * imagCoord) ↴
                    ;
                    while ((arg < 2*2) && (iterations < 40))
                    {
                        realTemp2 = (realTemp * realTemp) - (imagTemp * ↴
                            imagTemp) - realCoord;
                        imagTemp = (2 * realTemp * imagTemp) - imagCoord;
                        realTemp = realTemp2;
                        arg = (realTemp * realTemp) + (imagTemp * imagTemp) ↴
                        ;
                        iterations += 1;
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

⁴⁹[wikipedia](#)

⁵⁰Here is also the executable file: [beginners.re](#)

```
        Console.WriteLine("{0,2:D} ", iterations);
    }
    Console.WriteLine("\n");
}
Console.ReadKey();
}
}
```

Here is the resulting file, which is too wide to be included here:
[beginners.re](#).

The maximal number of iterations is 40, so when you see 40 in this dump, it means that this point has been wandering for 40 iterations but never got off limits.

A number n less than 40 means that point remained inside the bounds only for n iterations, then it went outside them.

There is a cool demo available at <http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/MandelbrotSetDoodle/>, which shows visually how the point moves on the plane at each iteration for some specific point. Here are two screenshots.

First, we've clicked inside the yellow area and saw that the trajectory (green line) eventually swirls at some point inside:

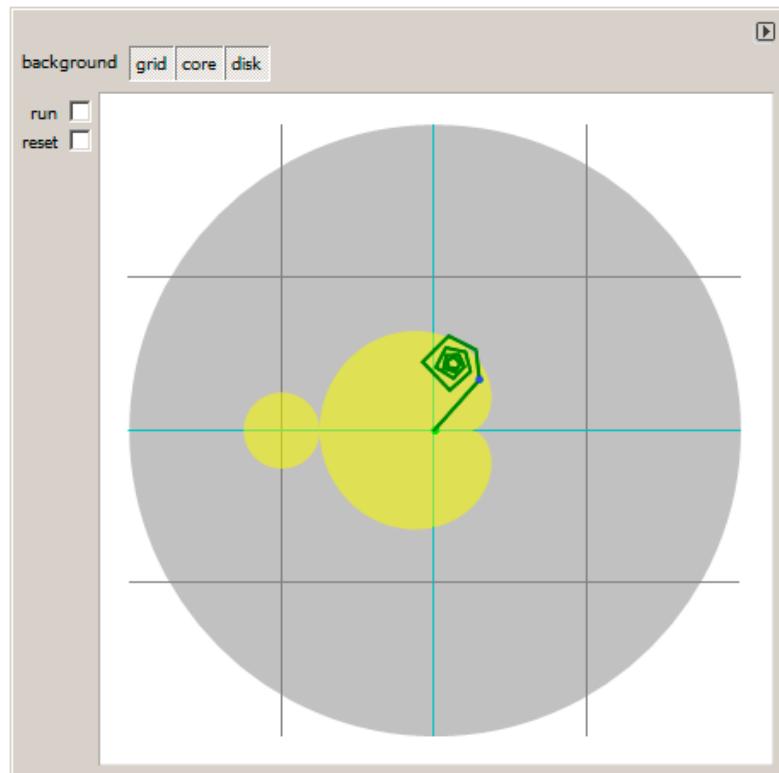


Figure 8.18: Click inside yellow area

This implies that the point we've clicked belongs to the Mandelbrot set.

Then we've clicked outside the yellow area and saw a much more chaotic point movement, which quickly went off bounds:

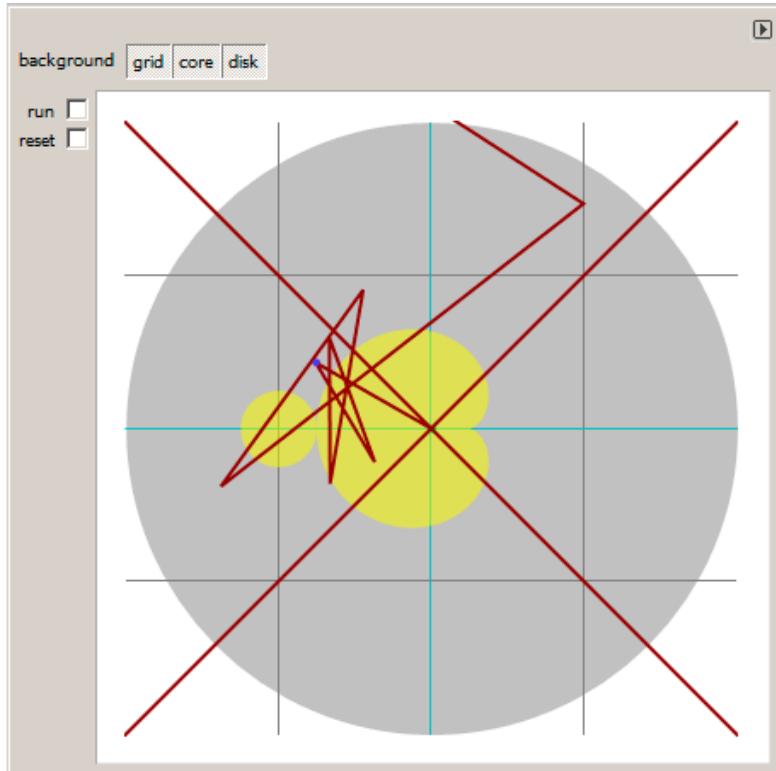


Figure 8.19: Click outside yellow area

This means the point doesn't belong to Mandelbrot set.

Another good demo is available here:

<http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/IteratesForTheMandelbrotSet/>.

Let's get back to the demo

The demo, although very tiny (just 64 bytes or 30 instructions), implements the common algorithm described here, but using some coding tricks.

The source code is easily downloadable, so here is it, but let's also add comments:

Listing 8.27: Commented source code

```

1 ; X is column on screen
2 ; Y is row on screen
3
4
5 ; X=0, Y=0 X=319, Y=0
6 ; +----->
7 ;
8 ;
9 ;
10 ;
11 ;
12 ;
13 ; V
14 ; X=0, Y=199 X=319, Y=199
15
16
17 ; switch to VGA 320*200*256 graphics mode
18 mov al,13h
19 int 10h
20 ; initial BX is 0
21 ; initial DI is 0xFFFF
22 ; DS:BX (or DS:0) is pointing to Program Segment Prefix at this moment
23 ; ... first 4 bytes of which are CD 20 FF 9F
24 les ax,[bx]
25 ; ES:AX=9FFF:20CD
26
27 FillLoop:
28 ; set DX to 0. CWD works as: DX:AX = sign_extend(AX).
29 ; AX here 0x20CD (at startup) or less then 320 (when getting back after
   ; loop),
30 ; so DX will always be 0.
31 cwd
32 mov ax,di
33 ; AX is current pointer within VGA buffer
34 ; divide current pointer by 320
35 mov cx,320
36 div cx
37 ; DX (start_X) - remainder (column: 0..319); AX - result (row: 0..199)
38 sub ax,100
39 ; AX=AX-100, so AX (start_Y) now is in range -100..99
40 ; DX is in range 0..319 or 0x0000..0x013F
41 dec dh
42 ; DX now is in range 0xFF00..0x003F (-256..63)
43
44 xor bx,bx
45 xor si,si

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

46 ; BX (temp_X)=0; SI (temp_Y)=0
47
48 ; get maximal number of iterations
49 ; CX is still 320 here, so this is also maximal number of iteration
50 MandelLoop:
51 mov bp,si      ; BP = temp_Y
52 imul si,bx    ; SI = temp_X*temp_Y
53 add si,si     ; SI = SI*2 = (temp_X*temp_Y)*2
54 imul bx,bx    ; BX = BX^2 = temp_X^2
55 jo MandelBreak ; overflow?
56 imul bp,bp    ; BP = BP^2 = temp_Y^2
57 jo MandelBreak ; overflow?
58 add bx,bp     ; BX = BX+BP = temp_X^2 + temp_Y^2
59 jo MandelBreak ; overflow?
60 sub bx,bp     ; BX = BX-BP = temp_X^2 + temp_Y^2 - temp_Y^2 = temp_X^2
61 sub bx,bp     ; BX = BX-BP = temp_X^2 - temp_Y^2
62
63 ; correct scale:
64 sar bx,6      ; BX=BX/64
65 add bx,dx     ; BX=BX+start_X
66 ; now temp_X = temp_X^2 - temp_Y^2 + start_X
67 sar si,6      ; SI=SI/64
68 add si,ax     ; SI=SI+start_Y
69 ; now temp_Y = (temp_X*temp_Y)*2 + start_Y
70
71 loop MandelLoop
72
73 MandelBreak:
74 ; CX=iterations
75 xchg ax,cx
76 ; AX=iterations. store AL to VGA buffer at ES:[DI]
77 stosb
78 ; stosb also increments DI, so DI now points to the next point in VGA buffer
79 ; jump always, so this is eternal loop here
80 jmp FillLoop

```

Algorithm:

- Switch to 320*200 VGA video mode, 256 colors. $320 \times 200 = 64000$ (0xFA00).
- Each pixel is encoded by one byte, so the buffer size is 0xFA00 bytes. It is addressed using the ES:DI registers pair.
- ES must be 0xA000 here, because this is the segment address of the VGA video buffer, but storing 0xA000 to ES requires at least 4 bytes (PUSH 0A000h / POP ES). You can read more about the 16-bit MS-DOS memory model here: [11.6 on page 1284](#).

Assuming that BX is zero here, and the Program Segment Prefix is at the zeroth address, the 2-byte LES AX, [BX] instruction stores 0x20CD to AX and 0xFFFF to ES.

So the program starts to draw 16 pixels (or bytes) before the actual video buffer. But this is MS-DOS,

there is no memory protection, so a write happens into the very end of conventional memory, and usually, there is nothing important. That's why you see a red strip 16 pixels wide at the right side. The whole picture is shifted left by 16 pixels. This is the price of saving 2 bytes.

- An infinite loop processes each pixel.

Probably, the most common way to enumerate all pixels on the screen is with two loops: one for the X coordinate, another for the Y coordinate. But then you'll need to multiply the coordinates to address a byte in the VGA video buffer.

The author of this demo decided to do it otherwise: enumerate all bytes in the video buffer by using one single loop instead of two, and get the coordinates of the current point using division. The resulting coordinates are: X in the range of -256..63 and Y in the range of -100..99. You can see on the screenshot that the picture is somewhat shifted to the right part of screen.

That's because the biggest heart-shaped black hole usually appears on coordinates 0,0 and these are shifted here to right. Could the author just subtract 160 from the value to get X in the range of -160..159? Yes, but the instruction SUB DX, 160 takes 4 bytes, while DEC DH—2 bytes (which subtracts 0x100 (256) from DX). So the whole picture is shifted for the cost of another 2 bytes of saved space.

- Check, if the current point is inside the Mandelbrot set. The algorithm is the one that has been described here.
- The loop is organized using the L00P instruction, which uses the CX register as counter.

The author could set the number of iterations to some specific number, but he didn't: 320 is already present in CX (has been set at line 35), and this is good maximal iteration number anyway. We save here some space by not the reloading CX register with another value.

- IMUL is used here instead of MUL, because we work with signed values: keep in mind that the 0,0 coordinates has to be somewhere near the center of the screen.

It's the same with SAR (arithmetic shift for signed values): it's used instead of SHR.

- Another idea is to simplify the bounds check. We must check a coordinate pair, i.e., two variables. What the author does is to checks thrice for overflow: two squaring operations and one addition.

Indeed, we use 16-bit registers, which hold signed values in the range of -32768..32767, so if any of the coordinates is greater than 32767 during the signed multiplication, this point is definitely out of bounds: we jump to the MandelBreak label.

- There is also a division by 64 (SAR instruction). 64 sets scale.

Try to increase the value and you can get a closer look, or to decrease it for a more distant look.

- We are at the MandelBreak label, there are two ways of getting here: the loop ended with CX=0 (the point is inside the Mandelbrot set); or because an overflow has happened (CX still holds some value). Now we write the low 8-bit part of CX (CL) to the video buffer.

The default palette is rough, nevertheless, 0 is black: hence we see black holes in the places where the points are in the Mandelbrot set. The palette can be initialized at the program's start, but keep in mind, this is only a 64 bytes program!

- The program runs in an infinite loop, because an additional check where to stop, or any user interface will result in additional instructions.

Some other optimization tricks:

- The 1-byte CWD is used here for clearing DX instead of the 2-byte XOR DX, DX or even the 3-byte MOV DX, 0.
- The 1-byte XCHG AX, CX is used instead of the 2-byte MOV AX,CX. The current value of AX is not needed here anyway.
- DI (position in video buffer) is not initialized, and it is 0xFFFF at the start ⁵¹.

That's OK, because the program works for all DI in the range of 0..0xFFFF eternally, and the user can't notice that it is started off the screen (the last pixel of a 320*200 video buffer is at address 0xF9FF). So some work is actually done off the limits of the screen.

Otherwise, you'll need an additional instructions to set DI to 0 and check for the video buffer's end.

My “fixed” version

Listing 8.28: My “fixed” version

```

1 org 100h
2 mov al,13h
3 int 10h
4
5 ; set palette
6 mov dx, 3c8h
7 mov al, 0
8 out dx, al
9 mov cx, 100h
10 inc dx
11 l00:
12 mov al, cl
13 shl ax, 2
14 out dx, al ; red
15 out dx, al ; green
16 out dx, al ; blue
17 loop l00
18

```

⁵¹More information about initial register values: <https://code.google.com/p/corkami/wiki/InitialValues#DOS>

```

19 push 0a000h
20 pop es
21
22 xor di, di
23
24 FillLoop:
25 cwd
26 mov ax,di
27 mov cx,320
28 div cx
29 sub ax,100
30 sub dx,160
31
32 xor bx,bx
33 xor si,si
34
35 MandelLoop:
36 mov bp,si
37 imul si,bx
38 add si,si
39 imul bx,bx
40 jo MandelBreak
41 imul bp,bp
42 jo MandelBreak
43 add bx,bp
44 jo MandelBreak
45 sub bx,bp
46 sub bx,bp
47
48 sar bx,6
49 add bx,dx
50 sar si,6
51 add si,ax
52
53 loop MandelLoop
54
55 MandelBreak:
56 xchg ax,cx
57 stosb
58 cmp di, 0FA00h
59 jb FillLoop
60
61 ; wait for keypress
62 xor ax,ax
63 int 16h
64 ; set text video mode
65 mov ax, 3
66 int 10h
67 ; exit
68 int 20h

```

The author of these lines made an attempt to fix all these oddities: now the palette is smooth grayscale, the video buffer is at the correct place (lines 19..20), the picture

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

is drawn on center of the screen (line 30), the program eventually ends and waits for the user's keypress (lines 58..68).

But now it's much bigger: 105 bytes (or 54 instructions) ⁵².

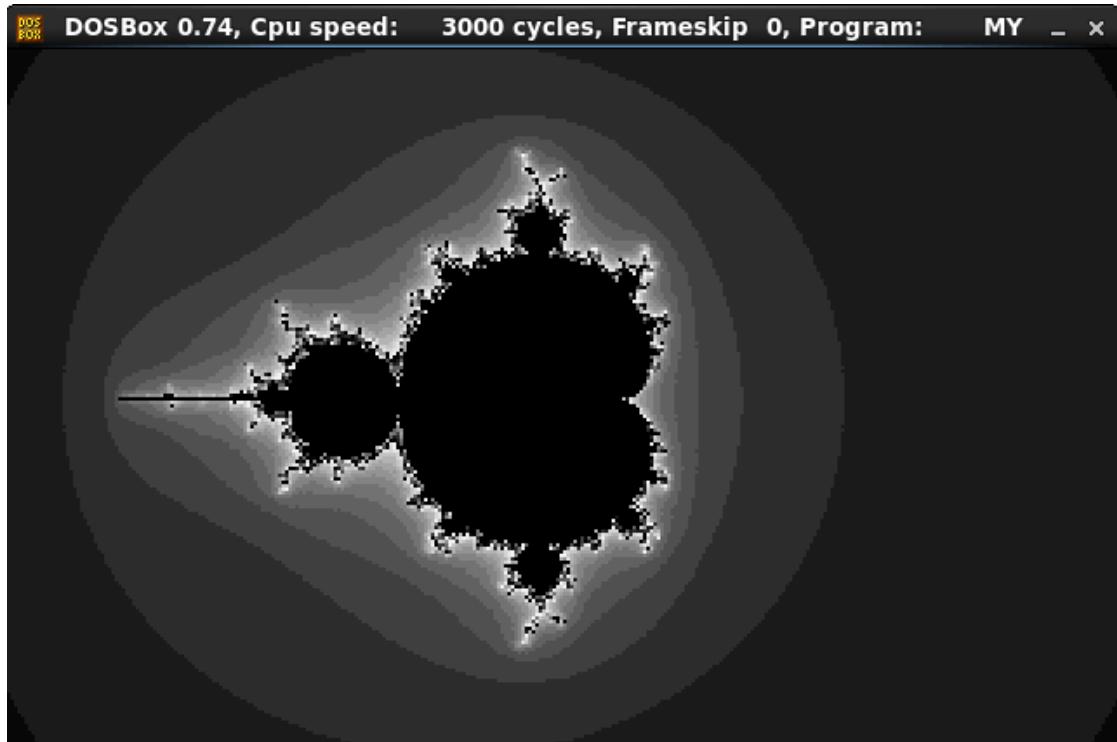


Figure 8.20: My “fixed” version

See also: small C program printing Mandelbrot set in ASCII: https://people.sc.fsu.edu/~jburkardt/c_src/mandelbrot_ascii/mandelbrot_ascii.html
<https://miyuki.github.io/2017/10/04/gcc-archaeology-1.html>.

8.16 A nasty bug in MSVCRT.DLL

This is the bug that costed me several hours of debugging.

In 2013 I was using MinGW, my C project seems to be very unstable and I saw the “Invalid parameter passed to C runtime function.” error message in debugger.

The error message was also visible using Sysinternals DebugView. And my project has no such error messages or strings. So I started to search it in the whole Windows and found in MSVCRT.DLL file. (Needless to say I was using Windows 7.)

⁵²You can experiment by yourself: get DosBox and NASM and compile it as: nasm file.asm -fbin -o file.com

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

So here it is, the error message in MSVCRT.DLL file supplied with Windows 7:

```
.text:6FFB69D0 OutputString    db 'Invalid parameter passed to C runtime ↵
    ↴ function.',0Ah,0
.text:6FFB69D0
; DATA XREF:
sub_6FFB6930+83
```

Where it is referenced?

```
.text:6FFB6930 sub_6FFB6930    proc near
    CODE XREF: _wfindfirst64+203FC
.text:6FFB6930
; sub_6FF62563+319AD
.text:6FFB6930 var_2D0        = dword ptr -2D0h
.text:6FFB6930 var_244        = word ptr -244h
.text:6FFB6930 var_240        = word ptr -240h
.text:6FFB6930 var_23C        = word ptr -23Ch
.text:6FFB6930 var_238        = word ptr -238h
.text:6FFB6930 var_234        = dword ptr -234h
.text:6FFB6930 var_230        = dword ptr -230h
.text:6FFB6930 var_22C        = dword ptr -22Ch
.text:6FFB6930 var_228        = dword ptr -228h
.text:6FFB6930 var_224        = dword ptr -224h
.text:6FFB6930 var_220        = dword ptr -220h
.text:6FFB6930 var_21C        = dword ptr -21Ch
.text:6FFB6930 var_218        = dword ptr -218h
.text:6FFB6930 var_214        = word ptr -214h
.text:6FFB6930 var_210        = dword ptr -210h
.text:6FFB6930 var_20C        = dword ptr -20Ch
.text:6FFB6930 var_208        = word ptr -208h
.text:6FFB6930 var_4          = dword ptr -4
.text:6FFB6930
    mov     edi, edi
    push    ebp
    mov     ebp, esp
    sub     esp, 2D0h
    mov     eax, __security_cookie
    xor     eax, ebp
    mov     [ebp+var_4], eax
    mov     [ebp+var_220], eax
    mov     [ebp+var_224], ecx
    mov     [ebp+var_228], edx
    mov     [ebp+var_22C], ebx
    mov     [ebp+var_230], esi
    mov     [ebp+var_234], edi
    mov     [ebp+var_208], ss
    mov     [ebp+var_214], cs
    mov     [ebp+var_238], ds
    mov     [ebp+var_23C], es
    mov     [ebp+var_240], fs
    mov     [ebp+var_244], gs
    pushf
    pop     [ebp+var_210]
    mov     eax, [ebp+4]
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:6FFB6997      mov    [ebp+var_218], eax
.text:6FFB699D      lea    eax, [ebp+4]
.text:6FFB69A0      mov    [ebp+var_2D0], 10001h
.text:6FFB69AA      mov    [ebp+var_20C], eax
.text:6FFB69B0      mov    eax, [eax-4]
.text:6FFB69B3      push   offset OutputString ; "Invalid
                     parameter passed to C runtime f"...
.text:6FFB69B8      mov    [ebp+var_21C], eax
.text:6FFB69BE      call   ds:OutputDebugStringA
.text:6FFB69C4      mov    ecx, [ebp+var_4]
.text:6FFB69C7      xor    ecx, ebp
.text:6FFB69C9      call   @_security_check_cookie@4 ;
                     security_check_cookie(x)
.text:6FFB69CE      leave 
.text:6FFB69CF      retn 
.text:6FFB69CF sub_6FFB6930 endp

```

The string it reported into debugger or DebugView utility using the standard `OutputDebugStringA()` function. How the `sub_6FFB6930` can be called? IDA shows at least 280 references.

Using my [tracer](#), I set a breakpoint at `sub_6FFB6930` to see, when it's called in my case:

```

tracer.exe -l:1.exe bpf=msvcrt.dll!0x6FFB6930 -s

...
PID=3560|New process 1.exe
(0) msvcrt.dll!0x6ffb6930() (called from msvcrt.dll!_ftol2_sse_excpt+0x
 ↴ x1b467 (0x759ed222))
Call stack:
return address=0x401010 (1.exe!.text+0x10), arguments in stack: 0x12ff14, 0x
 ↴ x401010, 0x403010("asd"), 0x0, 0x12ff88, 0x4010f8
return address=0x4010f8 (1.exe!0EP+0xe3), arguments in stack: 0x12ff88, 0x
 ↴ x4010f8, 0x1, 0x2e0ea8, 0x2e1640, 0x403000
return address=0x75b6ef3c (KERNEL32.dll!BaseThreadInitThunk+0x12), ↴
 ↴ arguments in stack: 0x12ff94, 0x75b6ef3c, 0x7ffd000, 0x12ffd4, 0x
 ↴ x77523688, 0x7ffd000
return address=0x77523688 (ntdll.dll!RtlInitializeExceptionChain+0xef), ↴
 ↴ arguments in stack: 0x12ffd4, 0x77523688, 0x7ffd000, 0x74117ec7, 0x0
 ↴ , 0x0
return address=0x7752365b (ntdll.dll!RtlInitializeExceptionChain+0xc2), ↴
 ↴ arguments in stack: 0x12ffec, 0x7752365b, 0x401015, 0x7ffd000, 0x0, ↴
 ↴ 0x0
(0) msvcrt.dll!0x6ffb6930() -> 0x12f94c
PID=3560|Process 1.exe exited. ExitCode=2147483647 (0xffffffff)

```

I found that my code was calling `strcmp()` function with NULL as one argument. In fact, I made up this example when writing this:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>

int main()

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
{
    stricmp ("asd", NULL);
}
```

If this piece of code is compiled using old MinGW or old MSVC 6.0, it is linked against MSVCRT.DLL file. Which, as of Windows 7, silently sends the “Invalid parameter passed to C runtime function.” error message to the debugger and then does nothing!

Let's see how stricmp() is implemented in MSVCRT.DLL:

```
.text:6FF5DB38 ; Exported entry 855. _strcmpli
.text:6FF5DB38 ; Exported entry 863. _stricmp
.text:6FF5DB38
.text:6FF5DB38 ; ===== S U B R O U T I N E =====
.text:6FF5DB38
.text:6FF5DB38 ; Attributes: bp-based frame
.text:6FF5DB38
.text:6FF5DB38 ; int __cdecl strcmpli(const char *, const char *)
.text:6FF5DB38 ; public _strcmpli
.text:6FF5DB38 _strcmpli proc near ; CODE XREF:
    LocaleEnumProc-2B
.text:6FF5DB38 ; LocaleEnumProc+5E
.text:6FF5DB38
.text:6FF5DB38 arg_0 = dword ptr 8
.text:6FF5DB38 arg_4 = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:6FF5DB38
.text:6FF5DB38 ; FUNCTION CHUNK AT .text:6FF68CFD SIZE 00000012 BYTES
.text:6FF5DB38 ; FUNCTION CHUNK AT .text:6FF9D20D SIZE 00000022 BYTES
.text:6FF5DB38
.text:6FF5DB38     mov edi, edi ; _strcmpli
.text:6FF5DB3A     push ebp
.text:6FF5DB3B     mov ebp, esp
.text:6FF5DB3D     push esi
.text:6FF5DB3E     xor esi, esi
.text:6FF5DB40     cmp dword_6FFF0000, esi
.text:6FF5DB46     jnz loc_6FF68CFD
.text:6FF5DB4C     cmp [ebp+arg_0], esi ; is arg_0==NULL?
.text:6FF5DB4F     jz loc_6FF9D20D
.text:6FF5DB55     cmp [ebp+arg_4], esi ; is arg_0==NULL?
.text:6FF5DB58     jz loc_6FF9D20D
.text:6FF5DB5E     pop esi
.text:6FF5DB5F     pop ebp
.text:6FF5DB5F _strcmpli endp ; sp-analysis failed
```

Actual strings comparison here:

```
.text:6FF5DB60 sub_6FF5DB60 proc near ; CODE XREF:
    _stricmp_l+16C7F
.text:6FF5DB60 ; sub_6FFD19CD+229
.text:6FF5DB60
.text:6FF5DB60 arg_0 = dword ptr 8
.text:6FF5DB60 arg_4 = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:6FF5DB60
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:6FF5DB60          push    ebp
.text:6FF5DB61          mov     ebp, esp
.text:6FF5DB63          push    edi
.text:6FF5DB64          push    esi
.text:6FF5DB65          push    ebx
.text:6FF5DB66          mov     esi, [ebp+arg_4]
.text:6FF5DB69          mov     edi, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:6FF5DB6C          mov     al, 0FFh
.text:6FF5DB6E          mov     edi, edi
.text:6FF5DB70
.text:6FF5DB70 loc_6FF5DB70:           ; CODE XREF:
    sub_6FF5DB60+20
.text:6FF5DB70          ; sub_6FF5DB60+40
.or      al, al
.jz      short loc_6FF5DBA6
.text:6FF5DB72          mov     al, [esi]
.text:6FF5DB74          add     esi, 1
.text:6FF5DB76          mov     ah, [edi]
.text:6FF5DB79          add     edi, 1
.text:6FF5DB7B          cmp     ah, al
.text:6FF5DB7E          jz     short loc_6FF5DB70
.text:6FF5DB80          sub     al, 41h
.text:6FF5DB82          cmp     al, 1Ah
.text:6FF5DB84          sbb     cl, cl
.text:6FF5DB86          and    cl, 20h
.text:6FF5DB88          add     al, cl
.text:6FF5DB8B          add     al, 41h
.text:6FF5DB8D          xchg   ah, al
.text:6FF5DB8F          sub     al, 41h
.text:6FF5DB91          cmp     al, 1Ah
.text:6FF5DB93          sbb     cl, cl
.text:6FF5DB95          and    cl, 20h
.text:6FF5DB97          add     al, cl
.text:6FF5DB9A          add     al, 41h
.text:6FF5DB9C          cmp     al, ah
.text:6FF5DB9E          jz     short loc_6FF5DB70
.text:6FF5DBA0          sbb     al, al
.text:6FF5DBA2          sbb     al, 0FFh
.text:6FF5DBA4
.text:6FF5DBA6 loc_6FF5DBA6:           ; CODE XREF:
    sub_6FF5DB60+12
.text:6FF5DBA6          movsx   eax, al
.text:6FF5DBA9          pop     ebx
.text:6FF5DBAA          pop     esi
.text:6FF5DBAB          pop     edi
.text:6FF5DBAC          leave
.text:6FF5DBAD          retn
.text:6FF5DBAD sub_6FF5DB60 endp

.text:6FF68D0C loc_6FF68D0C:           ; CODE XREF:
    _strcmpi+3F6F2
.text:6FF68D0C          pop     esi
.text:6FF68D0D          pop     ebp
.text:6FF68D0E          retn

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
.text:6FF9D20D loc_6FF9D20D: ; CODE XREF:
    _strcmpi+17
.text:6FF9D20D
.text:6FF9D20D     call    near ptr _errno ; _strcmpi+20
.text:6FF9D212     push    esi
.text:6FF9D213     push    esi
.text:6FF9D214     push    esi
.text:6FF9D215     push    esi
.text:6FF9D216     push    esi
.text:6FF9D217     mov     dword ptr [eax], 16h
.text:6FF9D21D     call    _invalid_parameter
.text:6FF9D222     add    esp, 14h
.text:6FF9D225     mov     eax, 7FFFFFFFh
.text:6FF9D22A     jmp    loc_6FF68D0C
```

Now the `invalid_parameter()` function:

```
.text:6FFB6A06          public _invalid_parameter
.text:6FFB6A06 _invalid_parameter proc near ; CODE XREF:
    sub 6FF5B494:loc_6FF5B618
|.text:6FFB6A06          ; sub 6FF5CCFD:loc_6FF5C8A2
|.text:6FFB6A06          mov     edi, edi
|.text:6FFB6A08          push    ebp
|.text:6FFB6A09          mov     ebp, esp
|.text:6FFB6A0B          pop    ebp
|.text:6FFB6A0C          jmp    sub_6FFB6930
|.text:6FFB6A0C _invalid_parameter endp
```

The `invalid_parameter()` function eventually calls the function with `OutputDebugString()`: [8.16 on page 1183](#).

You see, the `strcmp()` code is like:

```
int strcmp(const char *s1, const char *s2, size_t len)
{
    if (s1==NULL || s2==NULL)
    {
        // print error message AND exit:
        return 0x7FFFFFFF;
    };
    // do comparison
};
```

How come this error is rare? Because newer MSVC versions links against `MSVCR120.DLL` file, etc (where 120 is version number).

Let's peek inside the newer `MSVCR120.DLL` from Windows 7:

```
.text:1002A0D4          public _strcmp_l
.text:1002A0D4 _strcmp_l proc near ; CODE XREF:
    _strcmp+18
|.text:1002A0D4          ; _mbsicmp_l+47
|.text:1002A0D4          ; DATA XREF: ...
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:1002A0D4          = dword ptr -10h
.text:1002A0D4 var_10    = dword ptr -8
.text:1002A0D4 var_8     = dword ptr -4
.text:1002A0D4 var_4     = byte ptr -4
.text:1002A0D4 arg_0     = dword ptr 8
.text:1002A0D4 arg_4     = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:1002A0D4 arg_8     = dword ptr 10h
.text:1002A0D4
.text:1002A0D4 ; FUNCTION CHUNK AT .text:1005AA7B SIZE 0000002A BYTES
.text:1002A0D4
.text:1002A0D4          push    ebp
.text:1002A0D5          mov     ebp, esp
.text:1002A0D7          sub     esp, 10h
.text:1002A0DA          lea     ecx, [ebp+var_10]
.text:1002A0DD          push    ebx
.text:1002A0DE          push    esi
.text:1002A0DF          push    edi
.text:1002A0E0          push    [ebp+arg_8]
.text:1002A0E3          call    sub_1000F764
.text:1002A0E8          mov     edi, [ebp+arg_0] ; arg==NULL?
.text:1002A0EB          test   edi, edi
.text:1002A0ED          jz    loc_1005AA7B
.text:1002A0F3          mov     ebx, [ebp+arg_4] ; arg==NULL?
.text:1002A0F6          test   ebx, ebx
.text:1002A0F8          jz    loc_1005AA7B
.text:1002A0FE          mov     eax, [ebp+var_10]
.text:1002A101          cmp    dword ptr [eax+0A8h], 0
.text:1002A108          jz    loc_1005AA95
.text:1002A10E          sub    edi, ebx

...
.text:1005AA7B loc_1005AA7B:           ; CODE XREF:
    _strcmp_l+19
.text:1005AA7B          call    _errno
.text:1005AA80          mov     dword ptr [eax], 16h
.text:1005AA86          call    _invalid_parameter_noinfo
.text:1005AA8B          mov     esi, 7FFFFFFFh
.text:1005AA90          jmp    loc_1002A13B

...
.text:100A4670 _invalid_parameter_noinfo proc near ; CODE XREF:
    sub_10013BEC-10F
.text:100A4670          ; sub_10016C0F-10F
.text:100A4670          xor    eax, eax
.text:100A4672          push   eax
.text:100A4673          push   eax
.text:100A4674          push   eax
.text:100A4675          push   eax
.text:100A4676          push   eax
.text:100A4677          call    _invalid_parameter
.text:100A467C          add    esp, 14h

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:100A467F          retn
.text:100A467F _invalid_parameter_noinfo endp

...
.text:100A4645 _invalid_parameter proc near           ; CODE XREF:
    invalid_parameter(ushort const *, ushort const *, ushort const
    *, uint, uint)
.text:100A4645          ;
    _invalid_parameter_noinfo+7
.text:100A4645
.text:100A4645 arg_0      = dword ptr 8
.text:100A4645 arg_4      = dword ptr 0Ch
.text:100A4645 arg_8      = dword ptr 10h
.text:100A4645 arg_C      = dword ptr 14h
.text:100A4645 arg_10     = dword ptr 18h
.text:100A4645
.text:100A4645 push      ebp
.text:100A4646 mov       ebp, esp
.text:100A4648 push      dword_100E0ED8 ; Ptr
.text:100A464E call      ds:DecodePointer
.text:100A4654 test      eax, eax
.text:100A4656 jz       short loc_100A465B
.text:100A4658 pop       ebp
.text:100A4659 jmp      eax
.text:100A465B ;
.text:100A465B loc_100A465B:                      ; CODE XREF:
    _invalid_parameter+11
.text:100A465B push      [ebp+arg_10]
.text:100A465E push      [ebp+arg_C]
.text:100A4661 push      [ebp+arg_8]
.text:100A4664 push      [ebp+arg_4]
.text:100A4667 push      [ebp+arg_0]
.text:100A466A call      _invoke_watson
.text:100A466F int      3                         ; Trap to Debugger
.text:100A466F _invalid_parameter endp

.text:100A469B _invoke_watson proc near           ; CODE XREF:
    sub_1002CDB0+27068
.text:100A469B          ; sub_10029704+2A792
.text:100A469B push      17h                     ; ProcessorFeature
.text:100A469D call      IsProcessorFeaturePresent
.text:100A46A2 test      eax, eax
.text:100A46A4 jz       short loc_100A46AB
.text:100A46A6 push      5
.text:100A46A8 pop       ecx
.text:100A46A9 int      29h                     ; Win8:
    RtlFailFast(ecx)
.text:100A46AB ;
.text:100A46AB loc_100A46AB:                      ; CODE XREF:
    _invoke_watson+9
.text:100A46AB push      esi

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:100A46AC      push   1
.text:100A46AE      mov    esi, 0C0000417h
.text:100A46B3      push   esi
.text:100A46B4      push   2
.text:100A46B6      call   sub_100A4519
.text:100A46BB      push   esi          ; uExitCode
.text:100A46BC      call   __crtTerminateProcess
.text:100A46C1      add    esp, 10h
.text:100A46C4      pop    esi
.text:100A46C5      retn
.text:100A46C5 _invoke_watson endp

```

Now the `invalid_parameter()` function is rewritten in newer MSVCR*.DLL version, it shows the message box, if you want to kill the process or call debugger. Of course, this is much better than silently return. Perhaps, Microsoft forgot to fix MSVCRT.DLL since then.

But how it was working in the era of Windows XP? It wasn't: MSVCRT.DLL from Windows XP doesn't check arguments against NULL. So under Windows XP my `strcmp ("asd", NULL)` code will crash, and this is good.

My hypothesis: Microsoft upgraded MSVCR*.DLL files (including MSVCRT.DLL) for Windows 7 by adding sanitizing checks everywhere. However, since MSVCRT.DLL wasn't used much since MSVS .NET (year 2002), it wasn't properly tested and the bug left here. But compilers like MinGW can still use this DLL.

What would I do without my reverse engineering skills?

The MSVCRT.DLL from Windows 8.1 has the same bug.

8.17 Other examples

An example about Z3 and manual decompilation was here. It is moved there: <https://sat-smt.codes>.

Chapter 9

Examples of reversing proprietary file formats

9.1 Primitive XOR-encryption

9.1.1 Simplest ever XOR encryption

I once saw a software where all debugging messages has been encrypted using XOR by value of 3. In other words, two lowest bits of each character has been flipped.

“Hello, world” would become “Kfool/#tlqog”:

Listing 9.1: Python

```
#!/usr/bin/python
msg="Hello, world!"
print "".join(map(lambda x: chr(ord(x)^3), msg))
```

This is quite interesting encryption (or rather obfuscation), because it has two important properties: 1) single function for encryption/decryption, just apply it again; 2) resulting characters are also printable, so the whole string can be used in source code without escaping characters.

The second property exploits the fact that all printable characters organized in rows: 0x2x-0x7x, and when you flip two lowest bits, character *moving* 1 or 3 characters left or right, but never *moved* to another (maybe non-printable) row:

Characters in the coded character set ascii.															
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0x	C-@	C-a	C-b	C-c	C-d	C-e	C-f	C-g	C-h	TAB	C-j	C-k	C-l	RET	C-n
1x	C-p	C-q	C-r	C-s	C-t	C-u	C-v	C-w	C-x	C-y	C-z	ESC	C-\	C-]	C-^
2x	!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/
3x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>
4x	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
5x	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[\]	^
6x	~	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
7x	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	}		~
															DEL

Figure 9.1: 7-bit ASCII table in Emacs

...with a single exception of 0x7F character.

For example, let's encrypt characters in A-Z range:

```
#!/usr/bin/python

msg="@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO"

print "".join(map(lambda x: chr(ord(x)^3), msg))
```

Result: CBA@GFEDKJIHONML.

It's like "@" and "C" characters has been swapped, and so are "B" and "a".

Yet again, this is interesting example of exploiting XOR properties, rather than encryption: the very same effect of *preserving printability* can be achieved while flipping any of lowest 4 bits, in any combination.

9.1.2 Norton Guide: simplest possible 1-byte XOR encryption

Norton Guide was popular in the epoch of MS-DOS, it was a resident program that worked as a hypertext reference manual.

Norton Guide's databases are files with the extension .ng, the contents of which look encrypted:

U:\retrocomputing\MS-DOS\norton guide\X86.NG										866	372131		
1	2	3	4	5	Print	6	7	Prev	8	Goto	9	Video	10
0000000170:	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
0000000180:	02	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000190:	1A	1A	1A	1A	FF	18	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000001A0:	69	77	19	1A	B9	6B	19	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000001B0:	1A	1A	1A	1A	7E	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000001C0:	1A	1A	1A	1A	9E	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000001D0:	1A	1A	1A	1A	BA	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000001E0:	1A	1A	1A	1A	59	4A	4F	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000001F0:	73	75	74	3A	69	7F	6E	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000200:	69	1A	4A	68	75	6E	7F	79	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000210:	73	6C	73	76	7F	7D	7F	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000220:	74	69	1A	5B	7E	7E	68	7F	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000230:	7E	7F	69	1A	55	6A	79	75	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000240:	1A	19	1A	12	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000250:	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	21	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000260:	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	2E	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000270:	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	5C	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000280:	6F	79	6E	73	75	74	3A	69	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000290:	6E	7F	68	69	36	3A	7E	7B	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000002A0:	1A	1A	18	1A	33	1A	18	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000002B0:	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000002C0:	02	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000002D0:	57	57	42	1A	53	74	69	6E	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000002E0:	69	7F	6E	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	8B	1A	1A	1A	1A
00000002F0:	E5	E5	E5	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000300:	19	8A	0C	1A	1A	2E	19	62	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000310:	1A	63	19	72	3A	1A	1A	84	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A
0000000320:	33	1A	1A	A7	19	7F	37	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A	1A

Figure 9.2: Very typical look

Why did we think that it's encrypted but not compressed?

We see that the 0xA byte (looking like “→”) occurs often, it would not be possible in a compressed file.

We also see long parts that consist only of Latin letters, and they look like strings in an unknown language.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

Since the 0x1A byte occurs so often, we can try to decrypt the file, assuming that it's encrypted by the simplest XOR-encryption.

If we apply XOR with the 0x1A constant to each byte in Hiew, we can see familiar English text strings:

Address	Hex Value	Dec Value	Description
00000170	00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 02 00-A9 00 07 00	00000170	И
00000180	18 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00	00000180	х +н єш
00000190	00 00 00 00-E5 02 00 00-2B AF 02 00-F3 E8 02 00	00000190	х ѕи ѕ
000001A0	73 6D 03 00-A3 71 03 00-4F 80 03 00-54 00 00 00	000001A0	smq ОА Т
000001B0	00 00 00 00-64 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-6E 00 00 00	000001B0	d н
000001C0	00 00 00 00-84 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-8F 00 00 00	000001C0	Д П
000001D0	00 00 00 00-A0 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-A8 00 00 00	000001D0	а и
000001E0	00 00 00 00-43 50 55 00-49 6E 73 74-72 75 63 74	000001E0	CPU Instruct
000001F0	69 6F 6E 20-73 65 74 00-52 65 67 69-73 74 65 72	000001F0	ion set Register
00000200	73 00 50 72-6F 74 65 63-74 69 6F 6E-2C 20 70 72	00000200	s Protection, pr
00000210	69 76 69 6C-65 67 65 00-45 78 63 65-70 74 69 6F	00000210	ivilege Exceptio
00000220	6E 73 00 41-64 64 72 65-73 73 69 6E-67 20 6D 6F	00000220	ns Addressing mo
00000230	64 65 73 00-4F 70 63 6F-64 65 73 00-00 02 00 4B	00000230	des Opcodes К
00000240	00 03 00 08-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00	00000240	и
00000250	00 00 00 00-00 00 00 3B-BE 03 00 83-B2 04 00 24	00000250	; ; Г \$
00000260	00 00 00 00-00 00 00 34-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 4A	00000260	4 J
00000270	00 00 00 00-00 00 00 46-50 55 00 49-6E 73 74 72	00000270	FPU Instr
00000280	75 63 74 69-6F 6E 20 73-65 74 00 52-65 67 69 73	00000280	uction set Regis
00000290	74 65 72 73-2C 20 64 61-74 61 20 74-79 70 65 73	00000290	ters, data types
000002A0	00 00 02 00-29 00 02 00-04 00 00 00-00 00 00 00	000002A0	и) и
000002B0	00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-B6 DC 04 00	000002B0	
000002C0	18 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-28 00 00 00-00 00 00 00	000002C0	и (
000002D0	4D 4D 58 00-49 6E 73 74-72 75 63 74-69 6F 6E 20	000002D0	MMX Instruction
000002E0	73 65 74 00-00 00 00 91-13 83 00 00-00 FF FF FF	000002E0	set CBT
000002F0	FF FF FF 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 12	000002F0	и
00000300	03 90 16 00-00 34 03 78-1B 00 00 57-03 D6 1D 00	00000300	0Р 40x0 W0р
00000310	00 79 03 68-20 00 00 9E-03 23 24 00-00 B3 03 00	00000310	ybh 10#\$.
00000320	29 00 00 BD-03 65 2D 00-00 D1 03 7D-32 00 00 02	00000320) ие- =}2 и

Figure 9.3: Hiew XORing with 0x1A

XOR encryption with one single constant byte is the simplest possible encryption method, which is, nevertheless, encountered sometimes.

Now we understand why the 0x1A byte is occurring so often: because there are so many zero bytes and they were replaced by 0x1A in encrypted form.

But the constant might be different. In this case, we could try every constant in the 0..255 range and look for something familiar in the decrypted file. 256 is not so much.

More about Norton Guide's file format: <http://www.davep.org/norton-guides/file-format/>.

Entropy

A very important property of such primitive encryption systems is that the information entropy of the encrypted/decrypted block is the same.

Here is my analysis in Wolfram Mathematica 10.

Listing 9.2: Wolfram Mathematica 10

```
In[1]:= input = BinaryReadList["X86.NG"];
In[2]:= Entropy[2, input] // N
Out[2]= 5.62724

In[3]:= decrypted = Map[BitXor[#, 16^^1A] &, input];
In[4]:= Export["X86_decrypted.NG", decrypted, "Binary"];
In[5]:= Entropy[2, decrypted] // N
Out[5]= 5.62724

In[6]:= Entropy[2, ExampleData[{"Text", "ShakespearesSonnets"}]] // N
Out[6]= 4.42366
```

What we do here is load the file, get its entropy, decrypt it, save it and get the entropy again (the same!).

Mathematica also offers some well-known English language texts for analysis.

So we also get the entropy of Shakespeare's sonnets, and it is close to the entropy of the file we just analyzed.

The file we analyzed consists of English language sentences, which are close to the language of Shakespeare.

And the XOR-ed bitwise English language text has the same entropy.

However, this is not true when the file is XOR-ed with a pattern larger than one byte.

The file we analyzed can be downloaded here: http://beginners.re/examples/norton_guide/X86.NG.

One more word about base of entropy

Wolfram Mathematica calculates entropy with base of e (base of the natural logarithm), and the UNIX *ent* utility¹ uses base 2.

So we set base 2 explicitly in Entropy command, so Mathematica will give us the same results as the *ent* utility.

¹<http://www.fourmilab.ch/random/>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

9.1.3 Simplest possible 4-byte XOR encryption

If a longer pattern was used for XOR-encryption, for example a 4 byte pattern, it's easy to spot as well.

For example, here is the beginning of the kernel32.dll file (32-bit version from Windows Server 2008):

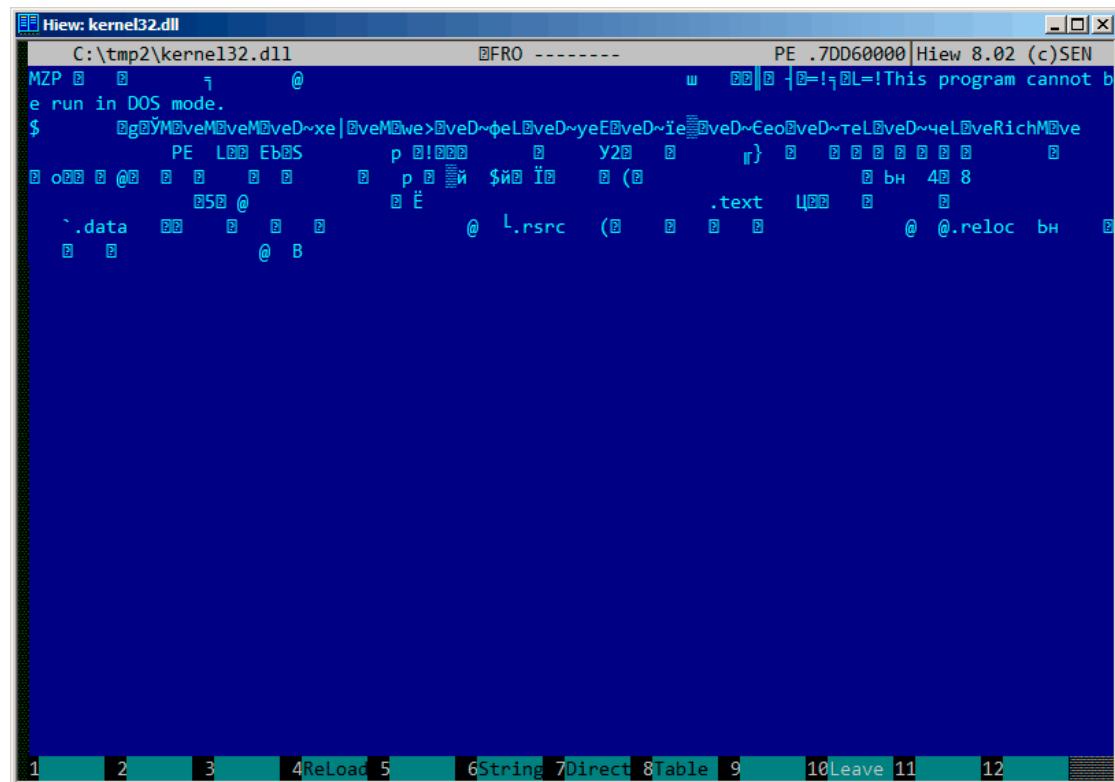


Figure 9.4: Original file

Here it is “encrypted” with a 4-byte key:

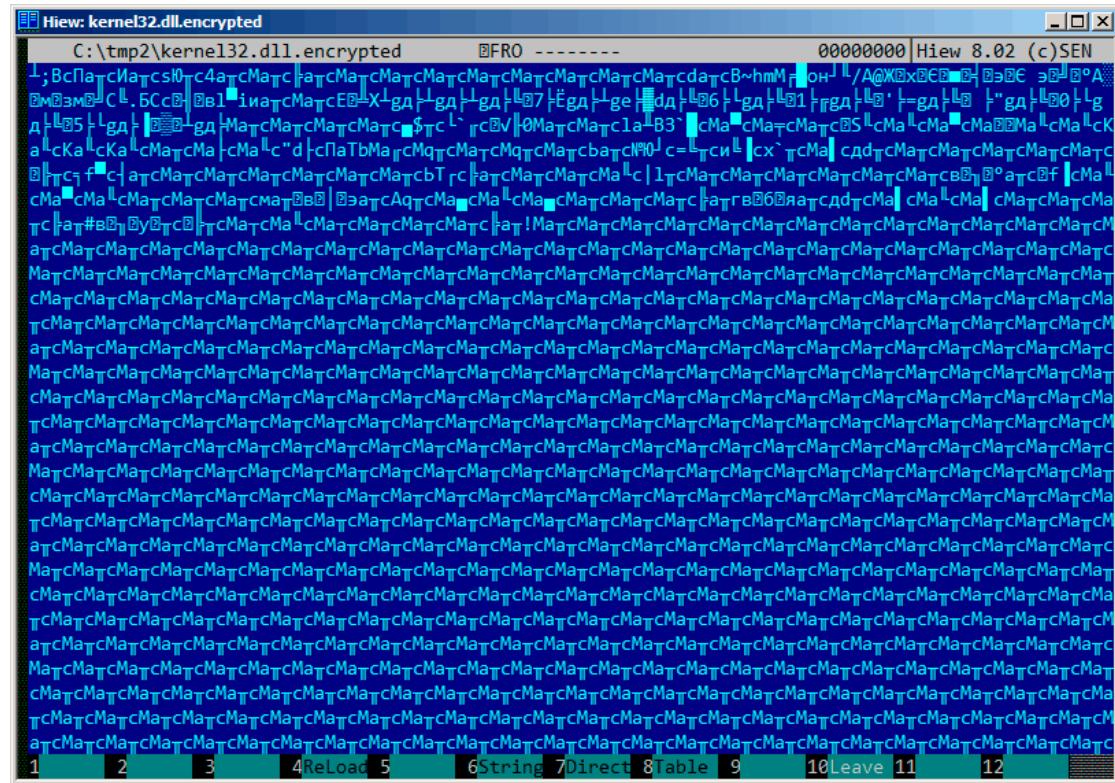


Figure 9.5: “Encrypted” file

It's very easy to spot the recurring 4 symbols.

Indeed, the header of a PE-file has a lot of long zero areas, which are the reason for the key to become visible.

Here is the beginning of a PE-header in hexadecimal form:

```

Hiew: kernel32.dll
C:\tmp2\kernel32.dll          EOF----- PE .7DD60290
.7DD600E0: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-50 45 00 00-4C 01 04 00      PE LDR
.7DD600F0: 85 9A 15 53-00 00 00 00-00 00 00-00-E0 00 02 21 EбS      p !
.7DD60100: 0B 01 09 00-00 00 0D 00-00 00 03 00-00 00 00 00      000      0
.7DD60110: 93 32 01 00-00 00 01 00-00 00 0D 00-00 00 D6 7D Y20      0      r}
.7DD60120: 00 00 01 00-00 00 01 00-06 00 01 00-06 00 01 00      0      0 0 0 0 0
.7DD60130: 06 00 01 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 11 00-00 00 01 00      0 0      0 0
.7DD60140: AE 05 11 00-03 00 40 01-00 00 04 00-00 10 00 00      000 0 @0 0 0
.7DD60150: 00 00 10 00-00 10 00 00-00 00 00 00-10 00 00 00      0 0      0
.7DD60160: 70 FF 0B 00-B1 A9 00 00-24 A9 0C 00-F4 01 00 00      p 0 0 $й0 0
.7DD60170: 00 00 0F 00-28 05 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00      0 (0
.7DD60180: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 10 00-9C AD 00 00      0 ын
.7DD60190: 34 07 0D 00-38 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00      40 8
.7DD601A0: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00
.7DD601B0: 10 35 08 00-40 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00      050 @
.7DD601C0: 00 00 01 00-F0 0D 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00      0 E
.7DD601D0: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00
.7DD601E0: 2E 74 65 78-74 00 00 00-96 07 0C 00-00 00 01 00      .text  Ц00 0
.7DD601F0: 00 00 0D 00-00 00 01 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00      0
.7DD60200: 00 00 00 00-20 00 00 60-2E 64 61 74-61 00 00 00      ` .data
.7DD60210: 0C 10 00 00-00 00 0E 00-00 00 01 00-00 00 0E 00      00 0 0 0
.7DD60220: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-40 00 00 C0      @ L
.7DD60230: 2E 72 73 72-63 00 00 00-28 05 00 00-00 00 0F 00      .rsrc (0 0
.7DD60240: 00 00 01 00-00 00 0F 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00      0 0
.7DD60250: 00 00 00 00-40 00 00 40-2E 72 65 6C-6F 63 00 00      @ @.reloc
.7DD60260: 9C AD 00 00-00 00 10 00-00 00 01 00-00 00 10 00      ын 0 0 0
.7DD60270: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-40 00 00 42      @ B
.7DD60280: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00      0 0
.7DD60290: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00      0 0

```

1Global 2FillBlk 3CryBlk 4ReLoad 5String 6Direct 7Table 8Leave 9 10Leave 11

Figure 9.6: PE-header

Here it is “encrypted”:

```

Hiew: kernel32.dll.encrypted
C:\tmp2\kernel32.dll.encrypted      FRO -----
000000E0: 8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-DC 24 D2 63-C0 60 D6 63 MaTCMaTC$TcLc
000000F0: 09 FB C7 30-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-6C 61 D0 42 Bv@MaTCMaTclaB
00000100: 87 60 DB 63-8C 61 DF 63-8C 61 D1 63-8C 61 D2 63 3'cMa cMa=cMaTc
00000110: 1F 53 D3 63-8C 61 D3 63-8C 61 DF 63-8C 61 04 1E BS[cMa cMa=cMaB
00000120: 8C 61 D3 63-8C 61 D3 63-8A 61 D3 63-8A 61 D3 63 MaLcMaLcKaLcKaLc
00000130: 8A 61 D3 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 C3 63-8C 61 D3 63 KaLcMaTcMaLcMaLc
00000140: 22 64 C3 63-8F 61 92 62-8C 61 D6 63-8C 71 D2 63 "d|cPlaTbMaTcMqTc
00000150: 8C 61 C2 63-8C 71 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-9C 61 D2 63 MaTCMqTcMaTcbaTc
00000160: FC 9E D9 63-3D C8 D2 63-A8 C8 DE 63-78 60 D2 63 NMOc=LTcIcx`Tc
00000170: 8C 61 DD 63-A4 64 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63 MaLcddTcMaTcMaTc
00000180: 8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 C2 63-10 CC D2 63 MaTCMaTcMaTcBHTc
00000190: B8 66 DF 63-B4 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63 f|c|aTcMaTcMaTc
000001A0: 8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63 MaTCMaTcMaTcMaTc
000001B0: 9C 54 DA 63-CC 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63 bTc|aTcMaTcMaTc
000001C0: 8C 61 D3 63-7C 6C D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63 MaLc|1TcMaTcMaTc
000001D0: 8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63 MaTCMaTcMaTcMaTc
000001E0: A2 15 B7 1B-F8 61 D2 63-1A 66 DE 63-8C 61 D3 63 v@|@o aTcBf|cMaLc
000001F0: 8C 61 DF 63-8C 61 D3 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63 MaLcMaLcMaTcMaTc
00000200: 8C 61 D2 63-AC 61 D2 03-A2 05 B3 17-ED 61 D2 63 MaTCMaTc@v@|@eaTc
00000210: 80 71 D2 63-8C 61 DC 63-8C 61 D3 63-8C 61 DC 63 AqTcMaLcMaLcMaLc
00000220: 8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-CC 61 D2 A3 MaTCMaTcMaTc|aTg
00000230: A2 13 A1 11-EF 61 D2 63-A4 64 D2 63-8C 61 DD 63 v@|@yaTcddTcMaLc
00000240: 8C 61 D3 63-8C 61 DD 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63 MaLcMaLcMaTcMaTc
00000250: 8C 61 D2 63-CC 61 D2 23-A2 13 B7 0F-E3 02 D2 63 MaTCMaTc#v@|@y@Tc
00000260: 10 CC D2 63-8C 61 C2 63-8C 61 D3 63-8C 61 C2 63 BHTcMaTcMaLcMaTc
00000270: 8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-CC 61 D2 21 MaTCMaTcMaTc|aT!
00000280: 8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63 MaTCMaTcMaTcMaTc
00000290: 8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63-8C 61 D2 63 MaTCMaTcMaTcMaTc

```

Figure 9.7: “Encrypted” PE-header

It's easy to spot that the key is the following 4 bytes: 8C 61 D2 63.

With this information, it's easy to decrypt the whole file.

So it is important to keep in mind these properties of PE-files: 1) PE-header has many zero-filled areas; 2) all PE-sections are padded with zeros at a page boundary (4096 bytes), so long zero areas are usually present after each section.

Some other file formats may contain long zero areas.

It's typical for files used by scientific and engineering software.

For those who want to inspect these files on their own, they are downloadable here:
http://beginners.re/examples/XOR_4byte/.

Exercise

- <http://challenges.re/re/50>

9.1.4 Simple encryption using XOR mask

I've found an old interactive fiction game while diving deep into *if-archive*²:

The New Castle v3.5 - Text/Adventure Game
in the style of the original Infocom (tm)
type games, Zork, Colossal Cave (Adventure),
etc. Can you solve the mystery of the
abandoned castle?
Shareware from Software Customization.
Software Customization [ASP] Version 3.5 Feb. 2000

It's downloadable here: https://beginners.re/current-tree/ff/XOR/mask_1/files/newcastle.tgz.

There is a file inside (named *castle.dbf*) which is clearly encrypted, but not by a real crypto algorithm, nor it's compressed, this is something rather simpler. I wouldn't even measure entropy level ([9.2 on page 1216](#)) of the file, because I'm sure it's low. Here is how it looks like in Midnight Commander:

```
/home/dennis/P/RE-book/decrypt_dat_file/castle.dbf
Pg.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.J1q18'\.\Qt>9P.(r$K8!L 78;0A-.<71'2.l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uPd.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.J:q-BV4[ @<<? .&;* 58MB&q&K.+T?e@+0@(9.[.wE(Tu a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.J1q.>X'GD.73$N01rf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uPd.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP..<003.7@V.<@*K7m=.8s)R<+=...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP..74#8.*\^.*$!35iy9'[u!..l.&.> [Z..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uPd.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.G"449uly...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.J1##M!M.d<</V4m>/K*). uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uPg.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.N8q69J*\ZX:4%^c$!f!..~...
.E1Kz+8: s...x..mc.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uPg.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.J"!f?JcI.\8C/\^&m&).42TLu\LU.0.0X'J.("YZ/w_".H!.a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uPg.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.G80>z..2255$K0m=(B s..yqz..siq.nm^3)[..>K&Ijh6L;.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uPg.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.G6#!1P-0.g&2.K" !fG*sY\;po
w0.36.<[V# Sh?M_g0(0[w\l-g457*zFn>"P.ltc^wf.z.uPg.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.L0q $V..D^ 5"!Wc9:#.-<RKu().P7Yz@F*KS8f.B):X$H/2a08H621!*~?S~[$;B[r/P.])c^wf.z.uP"!M&X3
V.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uPg.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uP.W05#8U: R..4%P0974.y$!H<%'IM4Yz#A)(@9jQ0082I?Ijk$K,12.0:7kvR;X,3_Hr:L.)c^wf.z.uP@N;02
:\{.k.,%&
"!)?.Y7<Z..)c^wf.z.uP8C $48,,N,C<8kN,?>".12L 69,KC:XvE J.("U..,"F*_%GaN"R9[=u_ "vG1H/>..r.01))c^wf.z.uP;W%f8V4.CW
J!nJK2c^wf.z.uP."J1q5K&!W^&k)"?9(K* ..u..!L60z5D/MW!+@0-&6Z>,+ 5L0[2R<9.>M;:15?CJ6nPL:3c^wf.z.uP$G55/8"y...t)k.cmrf.
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uPg.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
c.w.iubgv.^..az..rn..)j^wf.z.uPg.tqfv.c...t)k.cmrf.ys. uqo...ze.n..l.j..hw.m.j a
.^e..qm.rz.i.bg...hw.m.j a
```

Figure 9.8: Encrypted file in Midnight Commander

The encrypted file can be downloaded here: https://beginners.re/current-tree/ff/XOR/mask_1/files/castle.dbf.bz2.

²<http://www.ifarchive.org/>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Will it be possible to decrypt it without accessing to the program, using just this file?

There is a clearly visible pattern of repeating string. If a simple encryption by XOR mask was applied, such repeating strings is a prominent signature, because, probably, there were a long lacunas³ of zero bytes, which, in turn, are present in many executable files as well as in binary data files.

Here I'll dump the file's beginning using *xxd* UNIX utility:

```
...
0000030: 09 61 0d 63 0f 77 14 69 75 62 67 76 01 7e 1d 61 .a.c.w.iubgv.~.a
0000040: 7a 11 0f 72 6e 03 05 7d 7d 63 7e 77 66 1e 7a 02 z..rn..}}c~wf.z.
0000050: 75 50 02 4a 31 71 31 33 5c 27 08 5c 51 74 3e 39 uP.J1q13\'.\0t>9
0000060: 50 2e 28 72 24 4b 38 21 4c 09 37 38 3b 51 41 2d P.(r$K8!L.78;QA-
0000070: 1c 3c 37 5d 27 5a 1c 7c 6a 10 14 68 77 08 6d 1a .<]'Z.|j..hw.m.

0000080: 6a 09 61 0d 63 0f 77 14 69 75 62 67 76 01 7e 1d j.a.c.w.iubgv.~.
0000090: 61 7a 11 0f 72 6e 03 05 7d 7d 63 7e 77 66 1e 7a az..rn..}}c~wf.z
00000a0: 02 75 50 64 02 74 71 66 76 19 63 08 13 17 74 7d .uPd.tqfv.c...t}
00000b0: 6b 19 63 6d 72 66 0e 79 73 1f 09 75 71 6f 05 04 k.cmrf.ys..uqo..
00000c0: 7f 1c 7a 65 08 6e 0e 12 7c 6a 10 14 68 77 08 6d ..ze.n..|j..hw.m

00000d0: 1a 6a 09 61 0d 63 0f 77 14 69 75 62 67 76 01 7e .j.a.c.w.iubgv.~
00000e0: 1d 61 7a 11 0f 72 6e 03 05 7d 7d 63 7e 77 66 1e .az..rn..}}c~wf.
00000f0: 7a 02 75 50 01 4a 3b 71 2d 38 56 34 5b 13 40 3c z.uP.J;q-8V4[.@<
0000100: 3c 3f 19 26 3b 3b 2a 0e 35 26 4d 42 26 71 26 4b <?.&;;*.5&MB&q&K
0000110: 04 2b 54 3f 65 40 2b 4f 40 28 39 10 5b 2e 77 45 .+T?e@+0@(9.[.wE

0000120: 28 54 75 09 61 0d 63 0f 77 14 69 75 62 67 76 01 (Tu.a.c.w.iubgv.
0000130: 7e 1d 61 7a 11 0f 72 6e 03 05 7d 7d 63 7e 77 66 ~.az..rn..}}c~wf
0000140: 1e 7a 02 75 50 02 4a 31 71 15 3e 58 27 47 44 17 .z.uP.J1q.>X'GD.
0000150: 3f 33 24 4e 30 6c 72 66 0e 79 73 1f 09 75 71 6f ?3$N0lrf.ys..uqo
0000160: 05 04 7f 1c 7a 65 08 6e 0e 12 7c 6a 10 14 68 77 ....ze.n..|j..hw

...
...
```

Let's stick at visible repeating *iubgv* string. By looking at this dump, we can clearly see that the period of the string occurrence is 0x51 or 81. Probably, 81 is size of block? The size of the file is 1658961, and it can be divided evenly by 81 (and there are 20481 blocks then).

Now I'll use Mathematica to analyze, are there repeating 81-byte blocks in the file? I'll split input file by 81-byte blocks and then I'll use *Tally[]*⁴ function which just counts, how many times some item has been occurred in the input list. Tally's output is not sorted, so I also add *Sort[]* function to sort it by number of occurrences in descending order.

```
input = BinaryReadList["/home/dennis/.../castle.dbf"];
blocks = Partition[input, 81];
```

³As in [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lacuna_\(manuscripts\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lacuna_(manuscripts))

⁴<https://reference.wolfram.com/language/ref/Tally.html>

```
stat = Sort[Tally[blocks], #1[[2]] > #2[[2]] &]
```

And here is output:

```

{{80, 103, 2, 116, 113, 102, 118, 25, 99, 8, 19, 23, 116, 125, 107,
 25, 99, 109, 114, 102, 14, 121, 115, 31, 9, 117, 113, 111, 5, 4,
 127, 28, 122, 101, 8, 110, 14, 18, 124, 106, 16, 20, 104, 119, 8,
 109, 26, 106, 9, 97, 13, 99, 15, 119, 20, 105, 117, 98, 103, 118,
 1, 126, 29, 97, 122, 17, 15, 114, 110, 3, 5, 125, 125, 99, 126,
 119, 102, 30, 122, 2, 117}, 1739},
{{80, 100, 2, 116, 113, 102, 118, 25, 99, 8, 19, 23, 116,
 125, 107, 25, 99, 109, 114, 102, 14, 121, 115, 31, 9, 117, 113,
 111, 5, 4, 127, 28, 122, 101, 8, 110, 14, 18, 124, 106, 16, 20,
 104, 119, 8, 109, 26, 106, 9, 97, 13, 99, 15, 119, 20, 105, 117,
 98, 103, 118, 1, 126, 29, 97, 122, 17, 15, 114, 110, 3, 5, 125,
 125, 99, 126, 119, 102, 30, 122, 2, 117}, 1422},
{{80, 101, 2, 116, 113, 102, 118, 25, 99, 8, 19, 23, 116,
 125, 107, 25, 99, 109, 114, 102, 14, 121, 115, 31, 9, 117, 113,
 111, 5, 4, 127, 28, 122, 101, 8, 110, 14, 18, 124, 106, 16, 20,
 104, 119, 8, 109, 26, 106, 9, 97, 13, 99, 15, 119, 20, 105, 117,
 98, 103, 118, 1, 126, 29, 97, 122, 17, 15, 114, 110, 3, 5, 125,
 125, 99, 126, 119, 102, 30, 122, 2, 117}, 1012},
{{80, 120, 2, 116, 113, 102, 118, 25, 99, 8, 19, 23, 116,
 125, 107, 25, 99, 109, 114, 102, 14, 121, 115, 31, 9, 117, 113,
 111, 5, 4, 127, 28, 122, 101, 8, 110, 14, 18, 124, 106, 16, 20,
 104, 119, 8, 109, 26, 106, 9, 97, 13, 99, 15, 119, 20, 105, 117,
 98, 103, 118, 1, 126, 29, 97, 122, 17, 15, 114, 110, 3, 5, 125,
 125, 99, 126, 119, 102, 30, 122, 2, 117}, 377},
...
{{80, 2, 74, 49, 113, 21, 62, 88, 39, 71, 68, 23, 63, 51, 36, 78, 48,
 108, 114, 102, 14, 121, 115, 31, 9, 117, 113, 111, 5, 4, 127, 28,
 122, 101, 8, 110, 14, 18, 124, 106, 16, 20, 104, 119, 8, 109, 26,
 106, 9, 97, 13, 99, 15, 119, 20, 105, 117, 98, 103, 118, 1, 126,
 29, 97, 122, 17, 15, 114, 110, 3, 5, 125, 125, 99, 126, 119, 102,
 30, 122, 2, 117}, 1},
{{80, 1, 74, 59, 113, 45, 56, 86, 52, 91, 19, 64, 60, 60, 63,
 25, 38, 59, 59, 42, 14, 53, 38, 77, 66, 38, 113, 38, 75, 4, 43, 84,
 63, 101, 64, 43, 79, 64, 40, 57, 16, 91, 46, 119, 69, 40, 84, 117,
 9, 97, 13, 99, 15, 119, 20, 105, 117, 98, 103, 118, 1, 126, 29,
 97, 122, 17, 15, 114, 110, 3, 5, 125, 125, 99, 126, 119, 102, 30,
 122, 2, 117}, 1},
{{80, 2, 74, 49, 113, 49, 51, 92, 39, 8, 92, 81, 116, 62, 57,
 80, 46, 40, 114, 36, 75, 56, 33, 76, 9, 55, 56, 59, 81, 65, 45, 28,
 60, 55, 93, 39, 90, 28, 124, 106, 16, 20, 104, 119, 8, 109, 26,
 106, 9, 97, 13, 99, 15, 119, 20, 105, 117, 98, 103, 118, 1, 126,
 29, 97, 122, 17, 15, 114, 110, 3, 5, 125, 125, 99, 126, 119, 102,
 30, 122, 2, 117}, 1}}

```

Tally's output is a list of pairs, each pair has 81-byte block and number of times it has been occurred in the file. We see that the most frequent block is the first, it has

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

been occurred 1739 times. The second one has been occurred 1422 times. There are others: 1012 times, 377 times, etc. 81-byte blocks which has been occurred just once are at the end of output.

Let's try to compare these blocks. The first and the second. Is there a function in Mathematica which compares lists/arrays? Certainly is, but for educational purposes, I'll use XOR operation for comparison. Indeed: if bytes in two input arrays are identical, XOR result is 0. If they are non-equal, result will be non-zero.

Let's compare first block (occurred 1739 times) and the second (occurred 1422 times):

They differ only in the second byte.

Let's compare the second block (occurred 1422 times) and the third (occurred 1012 times):

They are also differ only in the second byte.

Anyway, let's try to use the most occurred block as a XOR key and try to decrypt four first 81-byte blocks in the file:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

```
In[]:= DecryptBlockASCII[blocks[[2]]]
Out[]= {" ", "e", "H", "E", " ", "W", "E", "D", " ", "O", \
"F", " ", "C", "R", "I", "M", "E", " ", "B", "E", "A", "R", "S", " ", \
"B", "I", "T", "T", "E", "R", " ", "F", "R", "U", "I", "T", "?", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " "}

In[]:= DecryptBlockASCII[blocks[[3]]]
Out[]= {" ", "?", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " "}

In[]:= DecryptBlockASCII[blocks[[4]]]
Out[]= {" ", "f", "H", "O", " ", "K", "N", "O", "W", "S", " ", \
"W", "H", "A", "T", " ", "E", "V", "I", "L", " ", "L", "U", "R", "K", \
"S", " ", "I", "N", " ", "T", "H", "E", " ", "H", "E", "A", "R", "T", \
"S", " ", "O", "F", " ", "M", "E", "N", "?", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", " ", \
" ", " "}
```

(I've replaced unprintable characters by "?".)

So we see that the first and the third blocks are empty (or almost empty), but the second and the fourth has clearly visible English language words/phrases. It seems that our assumption about key is correct (at least partially). This means that the most occurred 81-byte block in the file can be found at places of lacunas of zero bytes or something like that.

Let's try to decrypt the whole file:

```
DecryptBlock[blk_] := BitXor[key, blk]

decrypted = Map[DecryptBlock[#] &, blocks];

BinaryWrite["/home/dennis/.../tmp", Flatten[decrypted]]

Close["/home/dennis/.../tmp"]
```

1205

```
RE-book/decrypt_dat_file/tmp          4011/1620K      02
eHE.WEED.OF
BITTER.FRUIT....fHO.KNOWS.WHAT.EVIL.LURKS.IN.THE.HE
eHE.sHADOW.KNOWS.

x.HAVE.THE.HEART.OF.A.CHILD.
P.IT.IN.A.GLASS.JAR.ON.MY.DESK.        uEVERON.
                                         fHERE.THE.sHADOW.LIES.

pLL.POSITIONING.IS.relative.AND.NOT.absolute.

eHIS.IS.A.KLUDGE.TO.MAKE.THIS.STUPID.THING.WORK.       cELAX
Y.           cLOCK.tICKS.AWAY.           uDEBUGGING.pROGRAMS.IS.FUN..s
AD
K.WALLS..           bIDDENL
PND.FROM.WITHIN.THE.TOMB.OF.THE.UNDEAD..VAMPIRES.BEGAN.THEIR.FEA
EORTURED.CRIES.RANG.OUT....tASTES.GREAT..LESS.FILLING.        RAIHLIKE.FIGURE.APPEARS.BEFORE.YOU..SEEMING.TO.       WLOAT.IN.THE.AIR...
WFUL.VOICE.HE.SAYS...aLAS..THE.VERY....._ATURE.OF.THE.WORLD.HAS.CHANGED
DN.CANNOT.BE.FOUND...aLL.....\UST.NOW.PASS.AWAY....rAISING.HIS.OAKEN.STA
HE.FADES.INTO.....eHE.SPREADING.DARKNESS...in.HIS.PLACE.APPEARS.A.TASTEFU
GN.....CEADING...
```

Figure 9.9: Decrypted file in Midnight Commander, 1st attempt

Looks like some kind of English phrases from some game, but something wrong. First of all, cases are inverted: phrases and some words are started with lowercase characters, while other characters are in upper case. Also, some phrases started with wrong letters. Take a look at the very first phrase: “eHE WEED OF CRIME BEARS BITTER FRUIT”. What is “eHE”? Isn’t “tHE” have to be here? Is it possible that our decryption key has wrong byte at this place?

Let’s look again at the second block in the file, at key and at decryption result:

```
In[]:= blocks[[2]]
Out[]={80, 2, 74, 49, 113, 49, 51, 92, 39, 8, 92, 81, 116, 62, \
57, 80, 46, 40, 114, 36, 75, 56, 33, 76, 9, 55, 56, 59, 81, 65, 45, \
28, 60, 55, 93, 39, 90, 28, 124, 106, 16, 20, 104, 119, 8, 109, 26, \
106, 9, 97, 13, 99, 15, 119, 20, 105, 117, 98, 103, 118, 1, 126, 29, \
97, 122, 17, 15, 114, 110, 3, 5, 125, 125, 99, 126, 119, 102, 30, \
122, 2, 117}

In[]:= key
Out[]={80, 103, 2, 116, 113, 102, 118, 25, 99, 8, 19, 23, 116, \
125, 107, 25, 99, 109, 114, 102, 14, 121, 115, 31, 9, 117, 113, 111, \
5, 4, 127, 28, 122, 101, 8, 110, 14, 18, 124, 106, 16, 20, 104, 119, \
8, 109, 26, 106, 9, 97, 13, 99, 15, 119, 20, 105, 117, 98, 103, 118, \
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Encrypted byte is 2, the byte from the key is 103, $2 \oplus 103 = 101$ and 101 is ASCII code for “e” character. What byte of a key must be equal to, so the resulting ASCII code will be 116 (for “t” character)? $2 \oplus 116 = 118$. let’s put 118 in key at the second byte

```
key = {80, 118, 2, 116, 113, 102, 118, 25, 99, 8, 19, 23, 116, 125,
       107, 25, 99, 109, 114, 102, 14, 121, 115, 31, 9, 117, 113, 111, 5,
       4, 127, 28, 122, 101, 8, 110, 14, 18, 124, 106, 16, 20, 104, 119, 8,
       109, 26, 106, 9, 97, 13, 99, 15, 119, 20, 105, 117, 98, 103, 118,
       1, 126, 29, 97, 122, 17, 15, 114, 110, 3, 5, 125, 125, 99, 126, 119,
       102, 30, 122, 2, 117}
```

...and decrypt the whole file again.

```
home/dennis/P/RE-book/decrypt_dat_file/tmp 4011/1620K 0%
CRIME BEARS BITTER FRUIT..... THE WEED OF
ARTS OF MEN..... WHO KNOWS WHAT EVIL LURKS IN THE HE
..... I HAVE THE HEART OF A CHILD..... WHO KNOWS WHAT EVIL LURKS IN THE HE
..... I KEEP IT IN A GLASS JAR ON MY DESK..... dEVERON
..... WHERE THE SHADOW LIES.
..... aLL POSITIONING IS relative AND NOT absolute
..... THIS IS A KLUDGE TO MAKE THIS STUPID THING WORK..... rELAX
..... fRIDAY IS ONLY..... cLOCK ticks AWAY..... DEBUGGING pROGRAMS IS FUN... s
0 IS RUNNING HEAD
FIRST INTO BRICK WALLS...
..... AND FROM WITHIN THE TOMB OF THE UNDEAD VAMPIRES BEGAN THEIR FER
ST AS... TORTURED CRIES RANG OUT... TASTES GREAT... iESS FILLING...
..... SUDDENLY A SINISTER WRAITHLIKE FIGURE APPEARS BEFORE YOU SEEING TO... FLOAT IN THE AIR...
IN A LOW SORROWFUL VOICE HE SAYS... aLAS... THE VERY... NATURE OF THE WORLD HAS CHANGED
... AND THE DUNGEON CANNOT BE FOUND... aLL... MUST NOW PASS AWAY... rAISING HIS OAKEN STA
FF IN FAIRWELL... HE FADES INTO... THE SPREADING DARKNESS... IN HIS PLACE APPEARS A TASTEFU
LLY LETTERED SIGN... READING...
```

Figure 9.10: Decrypted file in Midnight Commander, 2nd attempt

Wow, now the grammar is correct, all phrases started with correct letters. But still,

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

case inversion is suspicious. Why would game's developer write them in such a manner? Maybe our key is still incorrect?

While observing ASCII table we can notice that uppercase and lowercase letter's ASCII codes are differ in just one bit (6th bit starting at 1st, 0b100000):

Characters in the coded character set ascii.															
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0x	C-@	C-a	C-b	C-c	C-d	C-e	C-f	C-g	C-h	TAB	C-j	C-k	C-l	RET	C-n
1x	C-p	C-q	C-r	C-s	C-t	C-u	C-v	C-w	C-x	C-y	C-z	ESC	C-\	C-]	C-^
2x	!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/
3x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>
4x	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
5x	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[\]	^
6x	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
7x	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	}	~	DEL

Figure 9.11: 7-bit ASCII table in Emacs

6th bit set in a zero byte has decimal form of 32. But 32 is ASCII code for space!

Indeed, one can switch case just by XOR-ing ASCII character code with 32 (more about it: [3.19.3 on page 689](#)).

It is possible that the empty lacunas in the file are not zero bytes, but rather spaces? Let's modify XOR key one more time (I'll XOR each byte of key by 32):

```
(* "32" is scalar and "key" is vector, but that's OK *)

In[]:= key3 = BitXor[32, key]
Out[]={112, 86, 34, 84, 81, 70, 86, 57, 67, 40, 51, 55, 84, 93, 75, \
57, 67, 77, 82, 70, 46, 89, 83, 63, 41, 85, 81, 79, 37, 36, 95, 60, \
90, 69, 40, 78, 46, 50, 92, 74, 48, 52, 72, 87, 40, 77, 58, 74, 41, \
65, 45, 67, 47, 87, 52, 73, 85, 66, 71, 86, 33, 94, 61, 65, 90, 49, \
47, 82, 78, 35, 37, 93, 93, 67, 94, 87, 70, 62, 90, 34, 85}

In[]:= DecryptBlock[blk_] := BitXor[key3, blk]
```

Let's decrypt the input file again:

```
/home/dennis/P/RE-book/decrypt_dat_file/tmp3
1
2
in the hearts of men?           The Shadow knows!
2
I keep it in a glass jar on my desk.
Deveron:
Where the Shadow lies.           1
All positioning is RELATIVE and not ABSOLUTE.
This is a kludge to make this
1
1
(So is running head-first into brick walls!!)      2
And from within the tomb of the undead, vampires began their feast as      to
g!"          10
hlike figure appears before you, seeming to      float in the air. In a low, s
nature of the world has changed, and the dungeon cannot be found. All      mu
well, he fades into      the spreading darkness. In his place appears a tasteful
INITIALIZATION FAILURE
The darkness becomes all encompassing, and your vision fa
Lick My User Port!!!
1
CRATCH Paper.           1
hem you were playing GAMES all day...           1
Keep it up and we'll both go out for a beer.           1
No, odd addresses don't occur on the South side of the si
Did you really expect me to re
1
1
```

Figure 9.12: Decrypted file in Midnight Commander, final attempt

(Decrypted file is available here: https://beginners.re/current-tree/ff/XOR/mask_1/files/decrypted.dat.bz2.)

This is undoubtedly a correct source file. Oh, and we see numbers at the start of each block. It has to be a source of our erroneous XOR key. As it seems, the most occurred 81-byte block in the file is a block filled with spaces and containing “1” character at the place of second byte. Indeed, somehow, many blocks here are interleaved with this one. Maybe it’s some kind of padding for short phrases/messages? Other frequently occurred 81-byte blocks are also space-filled blocks, but with different digit, hence, they are differ only at the second byte.

That’s all! Now we can write an utility to encrypt the file back, and maybe modify it before.

Mathematica notebook file is downloadable here:

https://beginners.re/current-tree/ff/XOR/mask_1/files/XOR_mask_1.nb.

Summary: XOR encryption like that is not robust at all. It has been intended by game’s developer(s), probably, just to prevent gamer(s) to peek into internals of game, nothing else more serious. Still, encryption like that is extremely popular due to its simplicity and many reverse engineers are usually familiar with it.

9.1.5 Simple encryption using XOR mask, case II

I've got another encrypted file, which is clearly encrypted by something simple, like XOR-ing:

home/dennis/tmp/cipher.txt		0x00000000
00000000	D0 D2 0F 70	1C E7 9E 8D
00000010	5C F5 D3 0D	70 38 E7 94
00000020	98 5D FC D9	01 26 2A FD
00000030	14 D9 45 F8	C5 01 3D 20
00000040	61 1B 8F 54	9D AA 54 20
00000050	61 7C 15 8D	11 F9 CE 47
00000060	39 22 71 1B	8A 58 FF CE
00000070	AA 76 36 73	52 70 38 E7
00000080	EB BB 7A 61	80 40 3C 23
00000090	E4 F7 EF 22	65 1B 8A 11
000000A0	DF F1 E2 RD	E3 C5 40 24
000000B0	8E 8F EA ED	43 F5 C1 4R
000000C0	FD 8E 98 A5	B0 11 E3 D4
000000D0	3F AF 8F 97	5A 91 54 F1
000000E0	33 27 AF 94	62 13 9A 5A
000000F0	40 34 6F E3	35 7B 19 92
00000100	C9 4C 70 3B	8A F7 A3 B9
00000110	FF D2 44 7E	3F 32 7B 0E
00000120	58 FE C5 0D	RD 33 29 7B
00000130	D9 5E F6 80	35 7B 19 92
00000140	09 D4 59 F5	A3 DB 90 E3
00000150	32 09 96 43	26 EC 93 DF
00000160	2F 7D 0D 97	5A 2E AF D9
00000170	38 26 32 16	53 7E 6D AF
00000180	EF 23 2F 76	C8 44 70 27
00000190	F4 RE 25 61	73 5A 9B 43
000001A0	E0 F1 EF 34	FF C1 45 70
000001B0	9E EB A3 R6	5F F5 C1 53
000001C0	D9 RB EA R3	98 52 E2 CF
000001D0	EA 89 D3 R5	09 D9 7C FF
000001E0	20 E2 DB 97	51 54 AA 1F
000001F0	36 6F FB 93	33 7B 1F 97
	9A 88 89 8C	78 02 3C 32

Figure 9.13: Encrypted file in Midnight Commander

The encrypted file can be downloaded [here](#).

ent Linux utility reports about ~7.5 bits per byte, and this is high level of entropy ([9.2 on page 1216](#)), close to compressed or properly encrypted file. But still, we clearly see some pattern, there are some blocks with size of 17 bytes, and you can see some kind of ladder, shifting by 1 byte at each 16-byte line.

It's also known that the plain text is just English language text.

Now let's assume that this piece of text is encrypted by simple XOR-ing with 17-byte key.

I tried to find some repeating 17-byte blocks using Mathematica, like I did before in my previous example ([9.1.4 on page 1200](#)):

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Listing 9.3: Mathematica

```
In[]:=input = BinaryReadList["/home/dennis/tmp/cipher.txt"];
In[]:=blocks = Partition[input, 17];
In[]:=Sort[Tally[blocks], #1[[2]] > #2[[2]] &]

Out[]:={{ {248,128,88,63,58,175,159,154,232,226,161,50,97,127,3,217,80},1},
{ {226,207,67,60,42,226,219,150,246,163,166,56,97,101,18,144,82},1},
{ {228,128,79,49,59,250,137,154,165,236,169,118,53,122,31,217,65},1},
{ {252,217,1,39,39,238,143,223,241,235,170,91,75,119,2,152,82},1},
{ {244,204,88,112,59,234,151,147,165,238,170,118,49,126,27,144,95},1},
{ {241,196,78,112,54,224,142,223,242,236,186,58,37,50,17,144,95},1},
{ {176,201,71,112,56,230,143,151,234,246,187,118,44,125,8,156,17},1},
...
{ {255,206,82,112,56,231,158,145,165,235,170,118,54,115,9,217,68},1},
{ {249,206,71,34,42,254,142,154,235,247,239,57,34,113,27,138,88},1},
{ {157,170,84,32,32,225,219,139,237,236,188,51,97,124,21,141,17},1},
{ {248,197,1,61,32,253,149,150,235,228,188,122,97,97,27,143,84},1},
{ {252,217,1,38,42,253,130,223,233,226,187,51,97,123,20,217,69},1},
{ {245,211,13,112,56,231,148,223,242,226,188,118,52,97,15,152,93},1},
{ {221,210,15,112,28,231,158,141,233,236,172,61,97,90,21,149,92},1}}
```

No luck, each 17-byte block is unique within the file and occurred only once. Perhaps, there are no 17-byte zero lacunas, or lacunas containing only spaces. It is possible indeed: such long space indentation and padding may be absent in tightly typeset text.

The first idea is to try all possible 17-byte keys and find those, which will result in readable text after decryption. Bruteforce is not an option, because there are 256^{17} possible keys ($\sim 10^{40}$), that's too much. But there are good news: who said we have to test 17-byte key as a whole, why can't we test each byte of key separately? It is possible indeed.

Now the algorithm is:

- try all 256 bytes for 1st byte of key;
- decrypt 1st byte of each 17-byte blocks in the file;
- are all decrypted bytes we got are printable? keep tabs on it;
- do so for all 17 bytes of key.

I've written the following Python script to check this idea:

Listing 9.4: Python script

```
each_Nth_byte=[""]*KEY_LEN

content=read_file(sys.argv[1])
# split input by 17-byte chunks:
all_chunks=chunks(content, KEY_LEN)
for c in all_chunks:
    for i in range(KEY_LEN):
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

each_Nth_byte[i]=each_Nth_byte[i] + c[i]

# try each byte of key
for N in range(KEY_LEN):
    print "N=", N
    possible_keys=[]
    for i in range(256):
        tmp_key=chr(i)*len(each_Nth_byte[N])
        tmp=xor_strings(tmp_key,each_Nth_byte[N])
        # are all characters in tmp[] are printable?
        if is_string_printable(tmp)==False:
            continue
        possible_keys.append(i)
    print possible_keys, "len=", len(possible_keys)

```

(Full version of the source code is [here](#).)

Here is its output:

```

N= 0
[144, 145, 151] len= 3
N= 1
[160, 161] len= 2
N= 2
[32, 33, 38] len= 3
N= 3
[80, 81, 87] len= 3
N= 4
[78, 79] len= 2
N= 5
[142, 143] len= 2
N= 6
[250, 251] len= 2
N= 7
[254, 255] len= 2
N= 8
[130, 132, 133] len= 3
N= 9
[130, 131] len= 2
N= 10
[206, 207] len= 2
N= 11
[81, 86, 87] len= 3
N= 12
[64, 65] len= 2
N= 13
[18, 19] len= 2
N= 14
[122, 123] len= 2
N= 15
[248, 249] len= 2
N= 16
[48, 49] len= 2

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

So there are 2 or 3 possible bytes for each byte of 17-byte key. This is much better than 256 possible bytes for each byte, but still too much. There are up to 1 million of possible keys:

Listing 9.5: Mathematica

```
In[]:= 3*2*3*3*2*2*2*3*2*2*3*2*2*2*2*2
Out[]= 995328
```

It's possible to check all of them, but then we must check visually, if the decrypted text is looks like English language text.

Let's also take into consideration the fact that we deal with 1) natural language; 2) English language. Natural languages has some prominent statistical features. First of all, punctuation and word lengths. What is average word length in English language? Let's just count spaces in some well-known English language texts using Mathematica.

Here is "[The Complete Works of William Shakespeare](#)" text file from Gutenberg Library:

Listing 9.6: Mathematica

```
In[]:= input = BinaryReadList["/home/dennis/tmp/pg100.txt"];
In[]:= Tally[input]
Out[]={{ {239, 1}, {187, 1}, {191, 1}, {84, 39878}, {104, 218875}, {101, 406157}, {32, 1285884}, {80, 12038}, {114, 209907}, {111, 282560}, {106, 2788}, {99, 67194}, {116, 291243}, {71, 11261}, {117, 115225}, {110, 216805}, {98, 46768}, {103, 57328}, {69, 42703}, {66, 15450}, {107, 29345}, {102, 69103}, {67, 21526}, {109, 95890}, {112, 46849}, {108, 146532}, {87, 16508}, {115, 215605}, {105, 199130}, {97, 245509}, {83, 34082}, {44, 83315}, {121, 85549}, {13, 124787}, {10, 124787}, {119, 73155}, {100, 134216}, {118, 34077}, {46, 78216}, {89, 9128}, {45, 8150}, {76, 23919}, {42, 73}, {79, 33268}, {82, 29040}, {73, 55893}, {72, 18486}, {68, 15726}, {58, 1843}, {65, 44560}, {49, 982}, {50, 373}, {48, 325}, {91, 2076}, {35, 3}, {93, 2068}, {74, 2071}, {57, 966}, {52, 107}, {70, 11770}, {85, 14169}, {78, 27393}, {75, 6206}, {77, 15887}, {120, 4681}, {33, 8840}, {60, 468}, {86, 3587}, {51, 343}, {88, 608}, {40, 643}, {41, 644}, {62, 440}, {39, 31077}, {34, 488}, {59, 17199}, {126, 1}, {95, 71}, {113, 2414}, {81, 1179}, {63, 10476}, {47, 48}, {55, 45}, {54, 73}, {64, 3}, {53, 94}, {56, 47}, {122, 1098}, {90, 532}, {124, 33}, {38, 21}, {96, 1}, {125, 2}, {37, 1}, {36, 2}}
In[]:= Length[input]/1285884 // N
Out[]= 4.34712
```

There are 1285884 spaces in the whole file, and the frequency of space occurrence is 1 space per ~4.3 characters.

Now here is [Alice's Adventures in Wonderland, by Lewis Carroll](#) from the same library:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

Listing 9.7: Mathematica

```
In[]:= input = BinaryReadList["/home/dennis/tmp/pg11.txt"];

In[]:= Tally[input]
Out[]={{239, 1}, {187, 1}, {191, 1}, {80, 172}, {114, 6398}, {111,
 9243}, {106, 222}, {101, 15082}, {99, 2815}, {116, 11629}, {32,
 27964}, {71, 193}, {117, 3867}, {110, 7869}, {98, 1621}, {103,
 2750}, {39, 2885}, {115, 6980}, {65, 721}, {108, 5053}, {105,
 7802}, {100, 5227}, {118, 911}, {87, 256}, {97, 9081}, {44,
 2566}, {121, 2442}, {76, 158}, {119, 2696}, {67, 185}, {13,
 3735}, {10, 3735}, {84, 571}, {104, 7580}, {66, 125}, {107,
 1202}, {102, 2248}, {109, 2245}, {46, 1206}, {89, 142}, {112,
 1796}, {45, 744}, {58, 255}, {68, 242}, {74, 13}, {50, 12}, {53,
 13}, {48, 22}, {56, 10}, {91, 4}, {69, 313}, {35, 1}, {49, 68}, {93,
 4}, {82, 212}, {77, 222}, {57, 11}, {52, 10}, {42, 88}, {83,
 288}, {79, 234}, {70, 134}, {72, 309}, {73, 831}, {85, 111}, {78,
 182}, {75, 88}, {86, 52}, {51, 13}, {63, 202}, {40, 76}, {41,
 76}, {59, 194}, {33, 451}, {113, 135}, {120, 170}, {90, 1}, {122,
 79}, {34, 135}, {95, 4}, {81, 85}, {88, 6}, {47, 24}, {55, 6}, {54,
 7}, {37, 1}, {64, 2}, {36, 2}}
```

```
In[]:= Length[input]/27964 // N
Out[]= 5.99049
```

The result is different probably because of different formatting of these texts (maybe indentation and/or padding).

OK, so let's assume the average frequency of space in English language is 1 space per 4..7 characters.

Now the good news again: we can measure frequency of spaces while decrypting our file gradually. Now I count spaces in each *slice* and throw away 1-byte keys which produce results with too small number of spaces (or too large, but this is almost impossible given so short key):

Listing 9.8: Python script

```
each_Nth_byte=[""]*KEY_LEN

content=read_file(sys.argv[1])
# split input by 17-byte chunks:
all_chunks=chunks(content, KEY_LEN)
for c in all_chunks:
    for i in range(KEY_LEN):
        each_Nth_byte[i]=each_Nth_byte[i] + c[i]

# try each byte of key
for N in range(KEY_LEN):
    print "N=", N
    possible_keys=[]
    for i in range(256):
        tmp_key=chr(i)*len(each_Nth_byte[N])
        tmp=xor_strings(tmp_key,each_Nth_byte[N])
        # are all characters in tmp[] are printable?
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

if is_string_printable(tmp)==False:
    continue
# count spaces in decrypted buffer:
spaces=tmp.count(' ')
if spaces==0:
    continue
spaces_ratio=len(tmp)/spaces
if spaces_ratio<4:
    continue
if spaces_ratio>7:
    continue
possible_keys.append(i)
print possible_keys, "len=", len(possible_keys)

```

(Full version of the source code is [here](#).)

This reports just one single possible byte for each byte of key:

```

N= 0
[144] len= 1
N= 1
[160] len= 1
N= 2
[33] len= 1
N= 3
[80] len= 1
N= 4
[79] len= 1
N= 5
[143] len= 1
N= 6
[251] len= 1
N= 7
[255] len= 1
N= 8
[133] len= 1
N= 9
[131] len= 1
N= 10
[207] len= 1
N= 11
[86] len= 1
N= 12
[65] len= 1
N= 13
[18] len= 1
N= 14
[122] len= 1
N= 15
[249] len= 1
N= 16
[49] len= 1

```

Let's check this key in Mathematica:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Listing 9.9: Mathematica

```
In[]:= input = BinaryReadList["/home/dennis/tmp/cipher.txt"];
In[]:= blocks = Partition[input, 17];
In[]:= key = {144, 160, 33, 80, 79, 143, 251, 255, 133, 131, 207, 86, 65, ↴
    ↴ 18, 122, 249, 49};
In[]:= EncryptBlock[blk_] := BitXor[key, blk]
In[]:= encrypted = Map[EncryptBlock[#] &, blocks];
In[]:= BinaryWrite["/home/dennis/tmp/plain2.txt", Flatten[encrypted]]
In[]:= Close["/home/dennis/tmp/plain2.txt"]
```

And the plain text is:

Mr. Sherlock Holmes, who was usually very late in the mornings, save upon those not infrequent occasions when he was up all night, was seated at the breakfast table. I stood upon the hearth-rug and picked up the stick which our visitor had left behind him the night before. It was a fine, thick piece of wood, bulbous-headed, of the sort which is known as a "Penang lawyer." Just under the head was a broad silver band nearly an inch across. "To James Mortimer, M.R.C.S., from his friends of the C.C.H.," was engraved upon it, with the date "1884." It was just such a stick as the old-fashioned family practitioner used to carry--dignified, solid, and reassuring.

"Well, Watson, what do you make of it?"

Holmes was sitting with his back to me, and I had given him no sign of my occupation.

...

(Full version of the text is [here](#).)

The text looks correct. Yes, I made up this example and choose well-known text of Conan Doyle, but it's very close to what I had in my practice some time ago.

Other ideas to consider

If we would fail with space counting, there are other ideas to try:

- Take into consideration the fact that lowercase letters are much more frequent than uppercase ones.
- Frequency analysis.
- There is also a good technique to detect language of a text: trigrams. Each language has some very frequent letter triplets, these may be "the" and "tha" for English. Read more about it: [N-Gram-Based Text Categorization](#), [http:](http://)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

[//code.activestate.com/recipes/326576/](http://code.activestate.com/recipes/326576/). Interestingly enough, trigrams detection can be used when you decrypt a ciphertext gradually, like in this example (you just have to test 3 adjacent decrypted characters).

For non-Latin writing systems encoded in UTF-8, things may be easier. For example, Russian text encoded in UTF-8 has each byte interleaved with 0xD0/0xD1 byte. It is because Cyrillic characters are placed in 4th block of Unicode table. Other writing systems has their own blocks.

9.1.6 Homework

An ancient text adventure for MS-DOS, developed in the end of 1980's. To conceal game information from player, data files, most likely, XOR-ed with something: https://beginners.re/homework/XOR_crypto_1/destiny.zip. Try to get into...

9.2 Information entropy

Entropy: The quantitative measure of disorder, which in turn relates to the thermodynamic functions, temperature, and heat.

Dictionary of Applied Math for Engineers and Scientists

For the sake of simplification, I would say, information entropy is a measure, how tightly some piece of data can be compressed. For example, it is usually not possible to compress already compressed archive file, so it has high entropy. On the other hand, 1MiB of zero bytes can be compressed to a tiny output file. Indeed, in plain English language, one million of zeros can be described just as “resulting file is one million zero bytes”. Compressed files are usually a list of instructions to decompressor, like this: “put 1000 zeros, then 0x23 byte, then 0x45 byte, then put a block of size 10 bytes which we’ve seen 500 bytes back, etc.”

Texts written in natural languages are also can be compressed tightly, because natural languages has a lot of redundancy (otherwise, a tiny typo will always lead to misunderstanding, like any toggled bit in compressed archive make decompression nearly impossible), some words are used very often, etc. In everyday speech, it’s possible to drop up to half of words and it still be recognizable.

Code for CPUs is also can be compressed, because some [ISA](#) instructions are used much more often than others. In x86, most used instructions are MOV/PUSH/CALL ([5.11.2 on page 945](#)).

Data compressors and ciphers tend to produce very high entropy results. Good [PRNG](#) also produce data which cannot be compressed (it is possible to measure their quality by this sign).

So, in other words, entropy is a measure which can help to probe contents of unknown data block.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

9.2.1 Analyzing entropy in Mathematica

(This part has been first appeared in my blog at 13-May-2015. Some discussion: <https://news.ycombinator.com/item?id=9545276>.)

It is possible to slice a file by blocks, calculate entropy of each and draw a graph. I did this in Wolfram Mathematica for demonstration and here is a source code (Mathematica 10):

```
(* loading the file *)
input=BinaryReadList["file.bin"];

(* setting block sizes *)
BlockSize=4096;BlockSizeToShow=256;

(* slice blocks by 4k *)
blocks=Partition[input,BlockSize];

(* how many blocks we've got? *)
Length[blocks]

(* calculate entropy for each block. 2 in Entropy[] (base) is set with the ↴
   intention so Entropy[]
function will produce the same results as Linux ent utility does *)
entropies=Map[N[Entropy[2,#]]&,blocks];

(* helper functions *)
fBlockToShow[input_,offset_]:=Take[input,{1+offset,1+offset+BlockSizeToShow}]  
↳
fToASCII[val_]:=FromCharacterCode[val,"PrintableASCII"]
fToHex[val_]:=IntegerString[val,16]
fPutASCIIWindow[data_]:=Framed[Grid[Partition[Map[fToASCII,data],16]]]
fPutHexWindow[data_]:=Framed[Grid[Partition[Map[fToHex,data],16]],Alignment  
↳ ->Right]

(* that will be the main knob here *)
{Slider[Dynamic[offset],{0,Length[input]-BlockSize,BlockSize}],Dynamic[  
↳ BaseForm[offset,16]]}

(* main UI part *)
Dynamic[{ListLinePlot[entropies,GridLines->{{-1,offset/BlockSize,1}},  
↳ Filling->Axis,AxesLabel->{"offset","entropy"}],
CurrentBlock=fBlockToShow[input,offset];
fPutHexWindow[CurrentBlock],
fPutASCIIWindow[CurrentBlock]}]
```

GeolP ISP database

Let's start with the [GeolP](#) file (which assigns ISP to the block of IP addresses). This binary file *GeoPISP.dat* has some tables (which are IP address ranges perhaps) plus some text blob at the end of the file (containing ISP names).

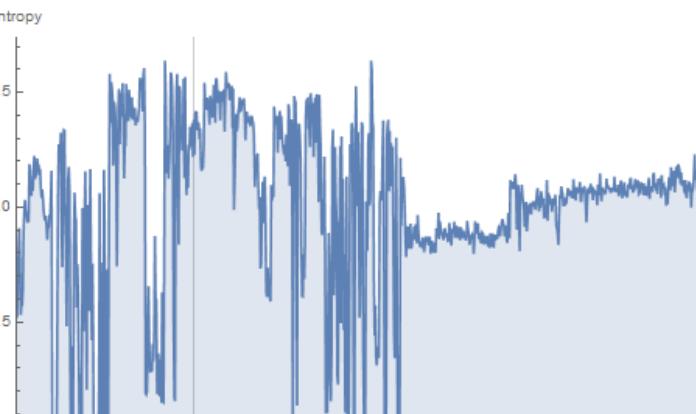
When I load it to Mathematica, I see this:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
In[68]:= (* that will be the main knob here *)
Slider[Dynamic[offset], {0, Length[input] - BlockSize, BlockSize}]

Out[68]= {, f700016}

In[59]:= (* main UI part *)
Dynamic[{ListLinePlot[entropies, GridLines -> {{-1, offset/BlockSize},
CurrentBlock = fBlockToShow[input, offset];
fPutHexWindow[CurrentBlock], fPutASCIIWindow[CurrentBlock]}]

entropy

offset

Out[59]= {
```

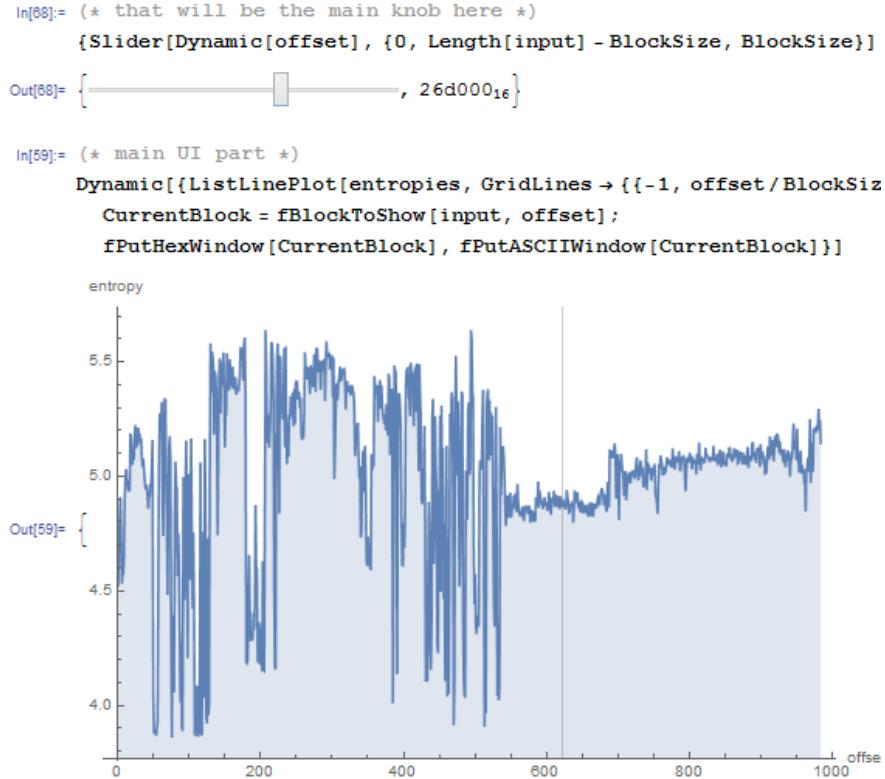
1 ee	1 0 76 eb	5 0 17 c0	5 0 f3 de	5 0
76 eb	5 0 3 ee	1 0 4 ee	1 0 5 ee	1 0
76 eb	5 0 aa 6 c	6 0 fd 2c	4 0 64 59	14 0
7 ee	1 0 a ee	1 0 64 59	14 0 8 ee	1 0
64 59	14 0 9 ee	1 0 f0 3d	6 0 4c d3	6 0
b ee	1 0 e ee	1 0 c ee	1 0 d ee	1 0
4e bc	6 0 17 45	6 0 fd 2c	4 0 b6 ed	4 0
f ee	1 0 10 ee	1 0 fd 2c	4 0 f3 a3	5 0
8d df	5 0 2 dc	6 0 12 ee	1 0 2c ee	1 0
13 ee	1 0 1d ee	1 0 40 14	6 0 14 ee	1 0
15 ee	1 0 19 ee	1 0 40 14	6 0 16 ee	1 0
17 ee	1 0 18 ee	1 0 6 45	6 0 30 35	6 0
c 2f	6 0 d 44	6 0 1a ee	1 0 54 52	14 0
1b ee	1 0 1c ee	1 0 e2 f8	6 0 fd 2c	4 0
28 c4	6 0 ee e0	5 0 1e ee	1 0 6b dc	e 0
1f ee	1 0 25 ee	1 0 20 ee	1 0 22 ee	1 0

There are two parts in graph: first is somewhat chaotic, second is more steady.

0 in vertical axis in graph means lowest entropy (the data which can be compressed very tightly, *ordered* in other words) and 8 is highest (cannot be compressed at all, *chaotic* or *random* in other words). Why 0 and 8? 0 means 0 bits per byte (byte as a container is not filled at all) and 8 means 8 bits per byte, i.e., the whole byte container is filled with the information tightly.

So I put slider to point in the middle of the first block, and I clearly see some array of 32-bit integers. Now I put slider in the middle of the second block and I see English text:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!



6c 69 73 68 69 6e 67 20 43 6f 6d 70 61 6e 79 0	l i s h i n g C o m p a n y □
43 61 6e 76 61 73 20 54 65 63 68 6e 6f 6c 6f 67	C a n v a s T e c h n o l o g y □
79 0 43 6f 6c 75 6d 62 75 73 20 4d 69 64 64 6c	C o l u m b u s M i d d l e S c h o o l □
65 20 53 63 68 6f 6f 6c 0 43 6f 61 73 74 61 6c	C o a s t a l W i r e & C a b l e □
20 57 69 72 65 20 26 20 43 61 62 6c 65 0 43 75	C u r r e n e x □ A u g u s t S o f t w a r e C o r p o r a t i o n □
72 72 65 6e 65 78 0 41 75 67 75 73 74 20 53 6f	A m e r i c a n A u t o m o b i l e A s s o c i a t i o n □
66 74 77 61 72 65 20 43 6f 72 70 6f 72 61 74 69	N a t i o n a l O f f i c e □
6f 6e 0 41 6d 65 72 69 63 61 6e 20 41 75 74 6f	A c u r e x E n v i r o n m e n t a l C o r p . □
6d 6f 62 69 6c 65 20 41 73 73 6f 63 69 61 71 74 69	P r i n c e C o r p o r a t i o n □
6f 6e 20 4e 61 74 6f 69 6e 61 6c 20 4f 66 66 69	G o 2 t e l . c o m □ E m p l o y m e n t S e c u r i t y □
63 65 0 41 63 75 72 65 78 20 45 6e 76 69 72 6f	C o m m i s s i o n G l o b a l
6e 6d 65 6e 74 61 6c 20 43 6f 72 70 2e 0 50 72	
69 6e 63 65 20 43 6f 72 70 6f 72 61 74 69 6f 6e	
0 47 6f 32 74 65 6c 2e 63 6f 6d 0 45 6d 70 6c	
6f 79 6d 65 6e 74 20 53 65 63 75 72 69 74 79 20	
43 6f 6d 6d 69 73 73 69 6f 6e 0 47 6c 6f 62 61	

Indeed, this are names of ISPs. So, entropy of English text is 4.5-5.5 bits per byte? Yes, something like this. Wolfram Mathematica has some well-known English literature corpus embedded, and we can see entropy of Shakespeare's sonnets:

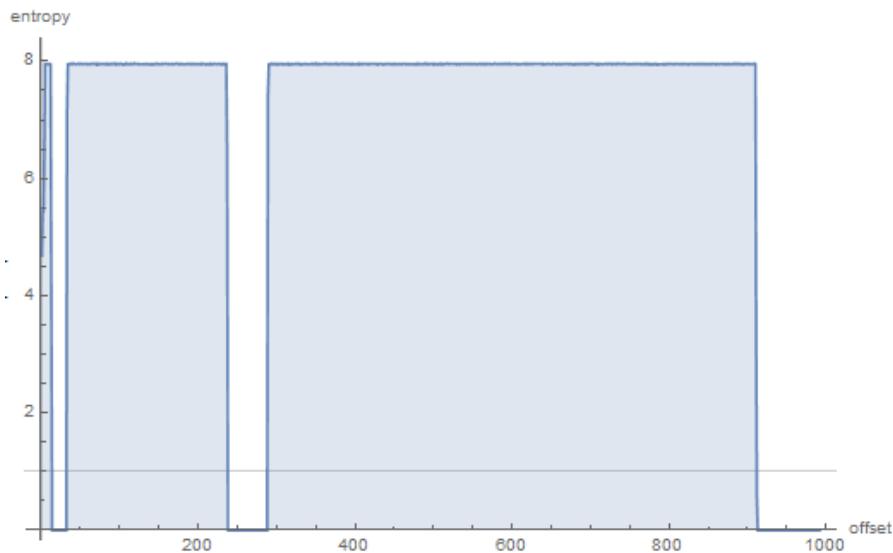
```
In[]:= Entropy[2, ExampleData[{"Text", "ShakespearesSonnets"}]]//N
Out[] = 4.42366
```

4.4 is close to what we've got (4.7-5.3). Of course, classic English literature texts are somewhat different from ISP names and other English texts we can find in binary files (debugging/logging/error messages), but this value is close.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

TP-Link WR941 firmware

Next example. I've got firmware for TP-Link WR941 router:



We see here 3 blocks with empty lacunas. Then the first block with high entropy (started at address 0) is small, second (address somewhere at 0x22000) is bigger and third (address 0x123000) is biggest. I can't be sure about exact entropy of the first block, but 2nd and 3rd has very high entropy, meaning that these blocks are either compressed and/or encrypted.

I tried [binwalk](#) for this firmware file:

DECIMAL	HEXADECIMAL	DESCRIPTION
0	0x0	TP-Link firmware header, firmware version: ↵ ↳ 0.-15221.3, image version: "", product ID: 0x0, product version: ↵ ↳ 155254789, kernel load address: 0x0, kernel entry point: 0x-7FFE000, ↵ ↳ kernel offset: 4063744, kernel length: 512, rootfs offset: 837431, ↵ ↳ rootfs length: 1048576, bootloader offset: 2883584, bootloader length: ↵ ↳ : 0
14832	0x39F0	U-Boot version string, "U-Boot 1.1.4 (Jun 27 ↵ ↳ 2014 - 14:56:49)"
14880	0x3A20	CRC32 polynomial table, big endian
16176	0x3F30	uImage header, header size: 64 bytes, header ↵ ↳ CRC: 0x3AC66E95, created: 2014-06-27 06:56:50, image size: 34587 ↵ ↳ bytes, Data Address: 0x80010000, Entry Point: 0x80010000, data CRC: 0x ↵ ↳ xDF2DBA0B, OS: Linux, CPU: MIPS, image type: Firmware Image, ↵ ↳ compression type: lzma, image name: "u-boot image"
16240	0x3F70	LZMA compressed data, properties: 0x5D, ↵ ↳ dictionary size: 33554432 bytes, uncompressed size: 90000 bytes
131584	0x20200	TP-Link firmware header, firmware version: ↵ ↳ 0.0.3, image version: "", product ID: 0x0, product version: ↵

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

↳ 155254789, kernel load address: 0x0, kernel entry point: 0x-7FFE000, ↳
↳ kernel offset: 3932160, kernel length: 512, rootfs offset: 837431, ↳
↳ rootfs length: 1048576, bootloader offset: 2883584, bootloader length ↳
↳ : 0
132096      0x20400      LZMA compressed data, properties: 0x5D, ↳
↳ dictionary size: 33554432 bytes, uncompressed size: 2388212 bytes
1180160      0x120200      Squashfs filesystem, little endian, version ↳
↳ 4.0, compression:lzma, size: 2548511 bytes, 536 inodes, blocksize: ↳
↳ 131072 bytes, created: 2014-06-27 07:06:52

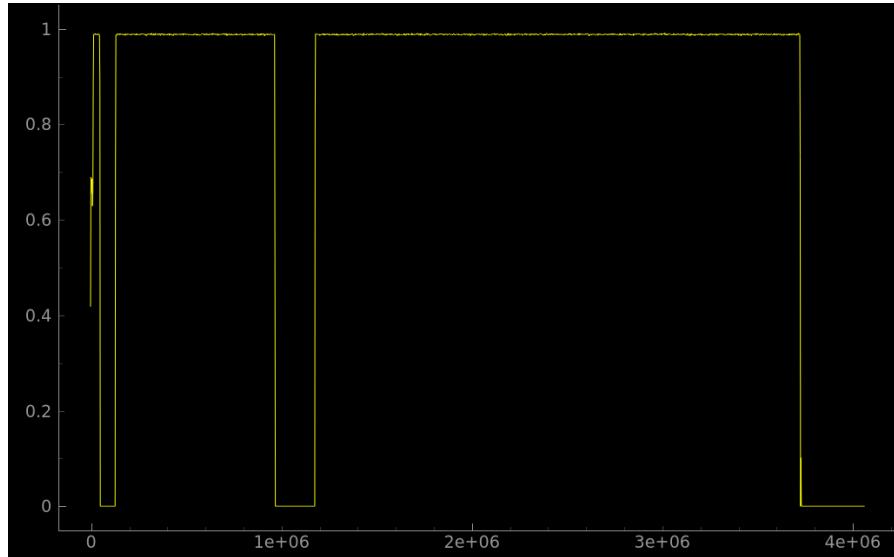
```

Indeed: there are some stuff at the beginning, but two large LZMA compressed blocks are started at 0x20400 and 0x120200. These are roughly addresses we have seen in Mathematica. Oh, and by the way, binwalk can show entropy information as well (-E option):

DECIMAL	HEXADECIMAL	ENTROPY
0	0x0	Falling entropy edge (0.419187)
16384	0x4000	Rising entropy edge (0.988639)
51200	0xC800	Falling entropy edge (0.000000)
133120	0x20800	Rising entropy edge (0.987596)
968704	0xEC800	Falling entropy edge (0.508720)
1181696	0x120800	Rising entropy edge (0.989615)
3727360	0x38E000	Falling entropy edge (0.732390)

Rising edges are corresponding to rising edges of block on our graph. Falling edges are the points where empty lacunas are started.

Binwalk can also generate PNG graphs (-E -J):



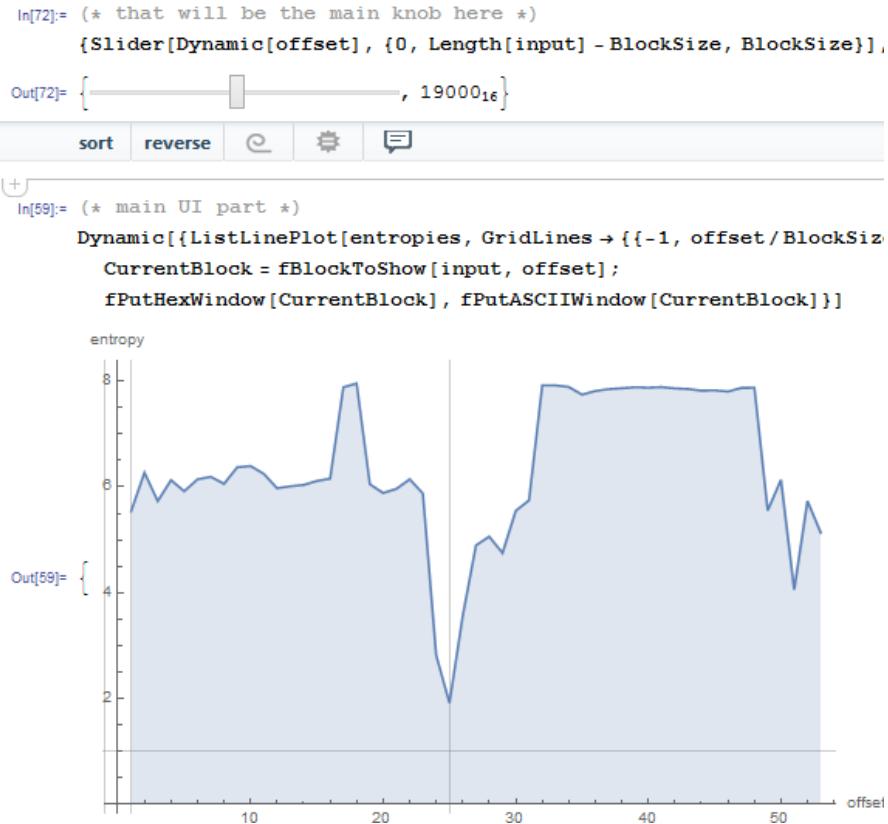
What can we say about lacunas? By looking in hex editor, we see that these are just

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

filled with 0xFF bytes. Why developers put them? Perhaps, because they weren't able to calculate precise compressed blocks sizes, so they allocated space for them with some reserve.

Notepad

Another example is notepad.exe I've picked in Windows 8.1:



60 7f 1 0 d0 69 0 0 24 6a 0 0 8c 7f 1 0	` 0 0 0 0 i 0 0 \$ j 0 0 0 0 0
24 6a 0 0 e0 6a 0 0 94 7f 1 0 e0 6a 0 0	\$ j 0 0 0 0 j 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 j 0 0
a5 6b 0 0 14 7d 1 0 c0 6b 0 0 c 6c 0 0	0 k 0 0 0 } 0 0 0 0 k 0 0 0 0 1 0 0
c 7d 1 0 c 6c 0 0 5b 6c 0 0 9c 7f 1 0	0 } 0 0 0 1 0 0 [1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
5b 6c 0 0 a4 6c 0 0 15 c1 1 0 a4 6c 0 0	[1 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0
5f 6d 0 0 bc 7f 1 0 5f 6d 0 0 c0 6d 0 0	- m 0 0 0 0 0 0 - m 0 0 0 0 m 0 0
9d c0 1 0 c0 6d 0 0 14 6e 0 0 28 7f 1 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 m 0 0 0 0 n 0 0 (0 0 0
80 78 0 0 9e 78 0 0 bd c1 1 0 9e 78 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 x 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 x 0 0 0
c4 78 0 0 f1 c0 1 0 c4 78 0 0 19 79 0 0	x 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
ed c1 1 0 19 79 0 0 d7 81 0 0 31 c0 1 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 y 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0
d7 81 0 0 d1 83 0 0 3d c0 1 0 d1 83 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 = 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
b2 86 0 0 d c0 1 0 b2 86 0 0 1f 87 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
69 c1 1 0 1f 87 0 0 3d 87 0 0 9 c1 1 0	i 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
3d 87 0 0 5a 87 0 0 15 c1 1 0 5a 87 0 0	= 0 0 0 0 2 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
83 87 0 0 85 c0 1 0 83 87 0 0 25 8a 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
61 c0 1 0 25 8a 0 0 36 8a 0 0 d5 c1 1 0	a 0 0 0 * 0 0 0 6 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

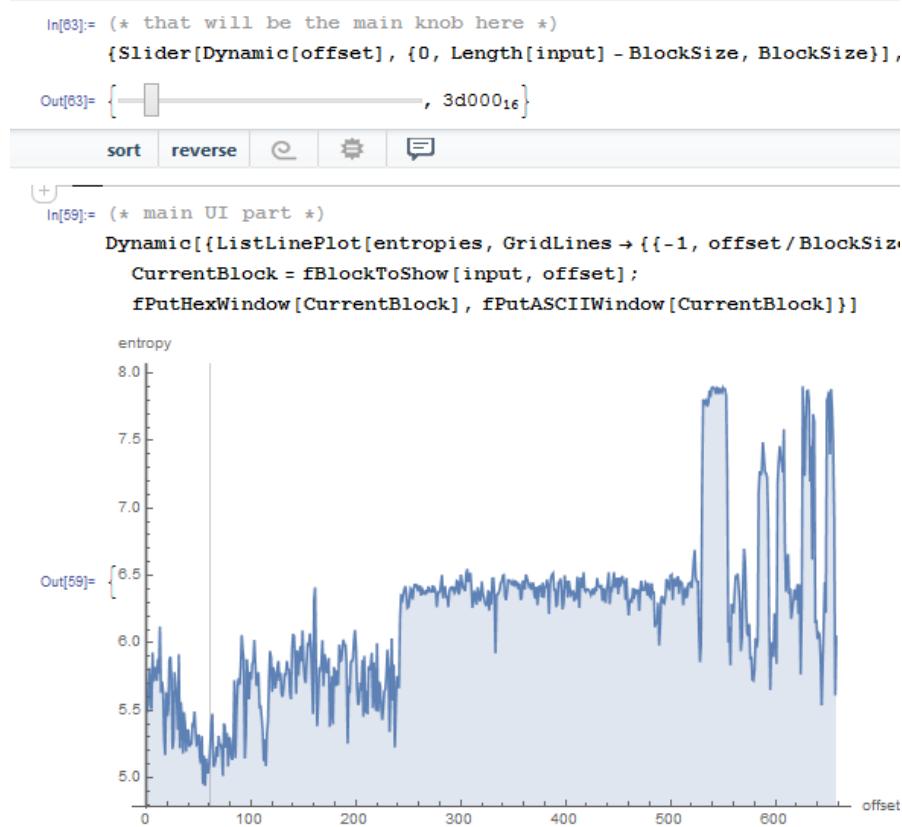
There is cavity at $\approx 0x19000$ (absolute file offset). I've opened the executable file in hex editor and found imports table there (which has lower entropy than x86-64 code in the first half of graph).

There are also high entropy block started at $\approx 0x20000$:



Unnamed dashcam

Now the most advanced example in this part is the firmware of some unnamed dashcam I've received from a friend:



44 5f 53 50 49 5f 46 57 32 0 0 0 53 45 4d 49	D - S P I - F W 2 □ □ □ S E M I
44 5f 53 50 49 5f 46 57 33 0 0 0 53 45 4d 49	D - S P I - F W 3 □ □ □ S E M I
44 5f 53 50 49 5f 50 53 0 0 0 53 45 4d 49	D - S P I - P S □ □ □ S E M I
44 5f 53 50 49 5f 50 53 32 0 0 0 53 45 4d 49	D - S P I - P S 2 □ □ □ S E M I
44 5f 53 50 49 5f 50 53 33 0 0 0 53 45 4d 49	D - S P I - P S 3 □ □ □ S E M I
44 5f 53 50 49 5f 46 41 54 0 0 0 53 45 4d 49	D - S P I - F A T □ □ □ S E M I
44 5f 53 50 49 5f 46 41 54 32 0 0 0 53 45 4d 49	D - S P I - F A T 2 □ □ □ S E M I
44 5f 53 50 49 5f 46 41 54 33 0 0 0 5e 52 25 73	D - S P I - F A T 3 □ □ □ ^ R % s
3a 3a 25 73 28 29 3a 25 64 2d 45 52 52 3a 20 25	: : % s () : % d - E R R : %
73 3a 20 53 65 6e 4d 6f 64 65 28 25 64 29 20 6f	s : S e n M o d e (% d) o
75 74 20 6f 66 20 72 61 6e 67 65 21 21 21 d a	u t : o f r a n g e : ! :
0 0 0 41 52 30 33 33 30 0 0 5e 52 25 73	□ □ □ □ A R 0 3 3 0 □ □ ^ R % s
3a 3a 25 73 28 29 3a 25 64 2d 45 52 52 3a 20 45	: : % s () : % d - E R R : E
72 72 6f 72 20 74 72 61 6e 73 6d 69 74 20 64 61	r r o r t r a n s m i t d a
74 61 20 28 77 72 69 74 65 20 61 64 64 72 29 21	t a (w r i t e a d d r) :
21 d a 0 5e 52 25 73 3a 3a 25 73 28 29 3a 25	! □ ^ R % s : : % s () : %

The cavity at the very beginning is an English text: debugging messages. I checked various [ISAs](#) and I found that the first third of the whole file (with the text segment inside) is in fact MIPS (little-endian) code.

For instance, this is very distinctive MIPS function epilogue:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

ROM:0000013B0	move	\$sp, \$fp
ROM:0000013B4	lw	\$ra, 0x1C(\$sp)
ROM:0000013B8	lw	\$fp, 0x18(\$sp)
ROM:0000013BC	lw	\$s1, 0x14(\$sp)
ROM:0000013C0	lw	\$s0, 0x10(\$sp)
ROM:0000013C4	jr	\$ra
ROM:0000013C8	addiu	\$sp, 0x20

From our graph we can see that MIPS code has entropy of 5-6 bits per byte. Indeed, I once measured various [ISAs](#) entropy and I've got these values:

- x86: .text section of ntoskrnl.exe file from Windows 2003: 6.6
- x64: .text section of ntoskrnl.exe file from Windows 7 x64: 6.5
- ARM (thumb mode), Angry Birds Classic: 7.05
- ARM (ARM mode) Linux Kernel 3.8.0: 6.03
- MIPS (little endian), .text section of user32.dll from Windows NT 4: 6.09

So the entropy of executable code is higher than of English text, but still can be compressed.

Now the second third is started at 0xF5000. I don't know what this is. I tried different [ISAs](#) but without success. The entropy of the block looks even steadier than for executable one. Maybe some kind of data?

There is also a spike at $\approx 0x213000$. I checked it in hex editor and I found JPEG file there (which, of course, compressed)! I also don't know what is at the end. Let's try Binwalk for this file:

```
% binwalk FW96650A.bin
```

DECIMAL	HEXADECIMAL	DESCRIPTION
167698	0x28F12	Unix path: /15/20/24/25/30/60/120/240fps can ↴ ↳ be served..
280286	0x446DE	Copyright string: "Copyright (c) 2012 Novatek ↳ Microelectronic Corp."
2169199	0x21196F	JPEG image data, JFIF standard 1.01
2300847	0x231BAF	MySQL MISAM compressed data file Version 3

```
% binwalk -E FW96650A.bin
```

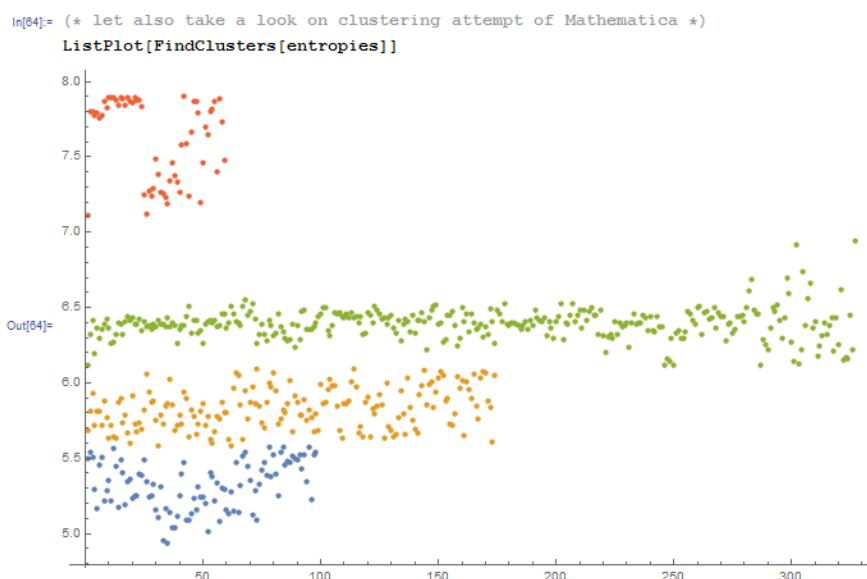
DECIMAL	HEXADECIMAL	ENTROPY
0	0x0	Falling entropy edge (0.579792)
2170880	0x212000	Rising entropy edge (0.967373)
2267136	0x229800	Falling entropy edge (0.802974)
2426880	0x250800	Falling entropy edge (0.846639)
2490368	0x260000	Falling entropy edge (0.849804)
2560000	0x271000	Rising entropy edge (0.974340)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

2574336	0x274800	Rising entropy edge (0.970958)
2588672	0x278000	Falling entropy edge (0.763507)
2592768	0x279000	Rising entropy edge (0.951883)
2596864	0x27A000	Falling entropy edge (0.712814)
2600960	0x27B000	Rising entropy edge (0.968167)
2607104	0x27C800	Rising entropy edge (0.958582)
2609152	0x27D000	Falling entropy edge (0.760989)
2654208	0x288000	Rising entropy edge (0.954127)
2670592	0x28C000	Rising entropy edge (0.967883)
2676736	0x28D800	Rising entropy edge (0.975779)
2684928	0x28F800	Falling entropy edge (0.744369)

Yes, it found JPEG file and even MySQL data! But I'm not sure if it's true—I didn't check it yet.

It's also interesting to try clusterization in Mathematica:



Here is an example of how Mathematica grouped various entropy values into distinctive groups. Indeed, there is something credible. Blue dots in range of 5.0-5.5 are supposedly related to English text. Yellow dots in 5.5-6 are MIPS code. A lot of green dots in 6.0-6.5 is the unknown second third. Orange dots close to 8.0 are related to compressed JPEG file. Other orange dots are supposedly related to the end of the firmware (unknown to us data).

Links

Binary files used in this part:

<https://beginners.re/current-tree/ff/entropy/files/>.

Wolfram Mathematica notebook file:

https://beginners.re/current-tree/ff/entropy/files/binary_file_entropy.wnb.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

nb

(all cells must be evaluated to start things working).

9.2.2 Conclusion

Information entropy can be used as a quick-n-dirty method for inspecting unknown binary files. In particular, it is a very quick way to find compressed/encrypted pieces of data. Someone say it's possible to find RSA⁵ (and other asymmetric cryptographic algorithms) public/private keys in executable code (keys has high entropy as well), but I didn't try this myself.

9.2.3 Tools

Handy Linux *ent* utility to measure entropy of a file⁶.

There is a great online entropy visualizer made by Aldo Cortesi, which I tried to mimic using Mathematica: <http://binvis.io>. His articles about entropy visualization are worth reading: <http://corte.si/posts/visualisation/entropy/index.html>, <http://corte.si/posts/visualisation/malware/index.html>, <http://corte.si/posts/visualisation/binvis/index.html>.

radare2 framework has #entropy command for this.

A tool for IDA: IDAtropy⁷.

9.2.4 A word about primitive encryption like XORing

It's interesting that simple XOR encryption doesn't affect entropy of data. I've shown this in *Norton Guide* example in the book ([9.1.2 on page 1193](#)).

Generalizing: encryption by substitution cipher also doesn't affect entropy of data (and XOR can be viewed as substitution cipher). The reason of that is because entropy calculation algorithm view data on byte-level. On the other hand, the data encrypted by 2 or 4-byte XOR pattern will result in another level of entropy.

Nevertheless, low entropy is usually a good sign of weak amateur cryptography (which is also used in license keys/files, etc.).

9.2.5 More about entropy of executable code

It is quickly noticeable that probably a biggest source of high-entropy in executable code are relative offsets encoded in opcodes. For example, these two consequent instructions will have different relative offsets in their opcodes, while they are in fact pointing to the same function:

```
function proc
...
function endp
```

⁵Rivest Shamir Adleman

⁶<http://www.fourmilab.ch/random/>

⁷<https://github.com/danigargu/IDAtropy>

```
...
CALL function
...
CALL function
```

Ideal executable code compressor would encode information like this: *there is a CALL to a “function” at address X and the same CALL at address Y without necessity to encode address of the function twice.*

To deal with this, executable compressors are sometimes able to reduce entropy here. One example is UPX: <http://sourceforge.net/p/upx/code/ci/default/tree/doc/filter.txt>.

9.2.6 PRNG

When I run GnuPG to generate new private (secret) key, it asking for some entropy

...
We need to generate a lot of random bytes. It is a good idea to perform some other action (type on the keyboard, move the mouse, utilize the disks) during the prime generation; this gives the random number generator a better chance to gain enough entropy.

Not enough random bytes available. Please do some other work to give the OS a chance to collect more entropy! (Need 169 more bytes)

This means that good a PRNG produces long high-entropy results, and this is what the secret asymmetrical cryptographical key needs. But CPRNG⁸ is tricky (because computer is highly deterministic device itself), so the GnuPG asking for some additional randomness from the user.

9.2.7 More examples

Here is a case where I try to calculate entropy of some blocks with unknown contents: [8.9 on page 1100](#).

9.2.8 Entropy of various files

Entropy of random data is close to 8:

```
% dd bs=1M count=1 if=/dev/urandom | ent
Entropy = 7.999803 bits per byte.
```

This means, almost all available space inside of byte is filled with information.

256 bytes in range of 0..255 gives exact value of 8:

⁸Cryptographically secure PseudoRandom Number Generator

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
import sys

for i in range(256):
    sys.stdout.write(chr(i))
```

```
% python 1.py | ent
Entropy = 8.000000 bits per byte.
```

Order of bytes doesn't matter. This means, all available space inside of byte is filled.

Entropy of any block filled with zero bytes is 0:

```
% dd bs=1M count=1 if=/dev/zero | ent
Entropy = 0.000000 bits per byte.
```

Entropy of a string consisting of a single (any) byte is 0:

```
% echo -n "aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa" | ent
Entropy = 0.000000 bits per byte.
```

Entropy of base64 string is the same as entropy of source data, but multiplied by $\frac{3}{4}$. This is because base64 encoding uses 64 symbols instead of 256.

```
% dd bs=1M count=1 if=/dev/urandom | base64 | ent
Entropy = 6.022068 bits per byte.
```

Perhaps, 6.02 is slightly bigger than 6 because padding symbols (=) spoils our statistics for a little.

Uuencode also uses 64 symbols:

```
% dd bs=1M count=1 if=/dev/urandom | uuencode - | ent
Entropy = 6.013162 bits per byte.
```

This means, any base64 and Uuencode strings can be transmitted using 6-bit bytes or characters.

Any random information in hexadecimal form has entropy of 4 bits per byte:

```
% openssl rand -hex $$(($$(( 2**16 )) | ent
Entropy = 4.000013 bits per byte.
```

Entropy of randomly picked English language text from Gutenberg library has entropy ≈ 4.5 . The reason of this is because English texts uses mostly 26 symbols, and $\log_2(26) \approx 4.7$, i.e., you would need 5-bit bytes to transmit uncompressed English texts, that would be enough (it was indeed so in teletype era).

Randomly chosen Russian language text from <http://lib.ru> library is F.M.Dostoevsky "Idiot"⁹, internally encoded in CP1251 encoding.

⁹http://az.lib.ru/d/dostoevskij_f_m/text_0070.shtml

And this file has entropy of ≈ 4.98 . Russian language has 33 characters, and $\log_2(33) \approx 5.04$. But it has unpopular and rare “ë” character. And $\log_2(32) = 5$ (Russian alphabet without this rare character)—now this close to what we’ve got.

However, the text we studying uses “ë” letter, but, probably, it’s still rarely used there.

The very same file transcoded from CP1251 to UTF-8 gave entropy of ≈ 4.23 . Each Cyrillic character encoded in UTF-8 is usually encoded as a pair, and the first byte is always one of: 0xD0 or 0xD1. Perhaps, this caused bias.

Let’s generate random bits and output them as “T” and “F” characters:

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
import random, sys

rt=""
for i in range(102400):
    if random.randint(0,1)==1:
        rt=rt+"T"
    else:
        rt=rt+"F"
print rt
```

Sample: ...TTTFTFTTFFFFTTTFTTTTTFTFFFTTTFTTTFTTTTTFFF....

Entropy is very close to 1 (i.e., 1 bit per byte).

Let’s generate random decimal digits:

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
import random, sys

rt=""
for i in range(102400):
    rt=rt+"%d" % random.randint(0,9)
print rt
```

Sample: ...52203466119390328807552582367031963888032....

Entropy will be close to 3.32, indeed, this is $\log_2(10)$.

9.2.9 Making lower level of entropy

The author of these lines once saw a software which stored each byte of encrypted data in 3 bytes: each has $\approx \frac{byte}{3}$ value, so reconstructing encrypted byte back involving summing up 3 consecutive bytes. Looks absurdly.

But some people say this was done in order to conceal the very fact the data has something encrypted inside: measuring entropy of such block will show much lower level of it.

9.3 Millenium game save file

The “Millenium Return to Earth” is an ancient DOS game (1991), that allows you to mine resources, build ships, equip them and send them on other planets, and so on¹⁰.

Like many other games, it allows you to save all game state into a file.

Let's see if we can find something in it.

¹⁰It can be downloaded for free [here](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

So there is a mine in the game. Mines at some planets work faster, or slower on others. The set of resources is also different.

Here we can see what resources are mined at the time:



Figure 9.14: Mine: state 1

Let's save a game state. This is a file of size 9538 bytes.

Let's wait some "days" here in the game, and now we've got more resources from the mine:



Figure 9.15: Mine: state 2

Let's save game state again.

Now let's try to just do binary comparison of the save files using the simple DOS/Windows FC utility:

```
...> FC /b 2200save.i.v1 2200SAVE.I.V2
Comparing files 2200save.i.v1 and 2200SAVE.I.V2
00000016: 0D 04
00000017: 03 04
0000001C: 1F 1E
00000146: 27 3B
00000BDA: 0E 16
00000BDC: 66 9B
00000BDE: 0E 16
00000BE0: 0E 16
00000BE6: DB 4C
00000BE7: 00 01
00000BE8: 99 E8
00000BEC: A1 F3
00000BEE: 83 C7
00000BFB: A8 28
00000BFD: 98 18
00000BFF: A8 28
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
00000C01: A8 28  
00000C07: D8 58  
00000C09: E4 A4  
00000C0D: 38 B8  
00000C0F: E8 68  
...
```

The output is incomplete here, there are more differences, but we will cut result to show the most interesting.

In the first state, we have 14 “units” of hydrogen and 102 “units” of oxygen.

We have 22 and 155 “units” respectively in the second state. If these values are saved into the save file, we would see this in the difference. And indeed we do. There is 0x0E (14) at position 0xBDA and this value is 0x16 (22) in the new version of the file. This is probably hydrogen. There is 0x66 (102) at position 0xBDC in the old version and 0x9B (155) in the new version of the file. This seems to be the oxygen.

Both files are available on the website for those who wants to inspect them (or experiment) more: [beginners.re](#).

Here is the new version of file opened in Hiew, we marked the values related to the resources mined in the game:

	C:\tmp\2200save.i.v2	00000BDA
00000BDA:	16 00 9B 00-16 00 16 00-00 00 00 00-4C 01 E8 00	Люш
00000BEA:	00 00 F3 00-C7 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00	е
00000BFA:	10 28 70 18-10 28 10 28-00 00 00 00-F0 58 A8 A4	ЁХид
00000C0A:	00 00 B0 B8-90 68 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00	Ph
00000C1A:	00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00	

Figure 9.16: Hiew: state 1

Let's check each of them.

These are clearly 16-bit values: not a strange thing for 16-bit DOS software where the *int* type has 16-bit width.

Let's check our assumptions. We will write the 1234 (0x4D2) value at the first position (this must be hydrogen):

```

Hiew: 2200save.i.v2
C:\tmp\2200save.i.v2          FWD EDITMODE      00000BDC
00000BDA: D2 04 9B 00-16 00 16 00-00 00 00 00-4C 01 E8 00 Тэы өө     Лөш
00000BEA: 00 00 F3 00-C7 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00     € |
00000BFA: 10 28 70 18-10 28 10 28-00 00 00 00-F0 58 A8 A4 Ө(рөө(ө(  ЁХид
00000C0A: 00 00 B0 B8-90 68 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00     1Ph
00000C1A: 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00

```

Figure 9.17: Hiew: let's write 1234 (0x4D2) there

Then we will load the changed file in the game and took a look at mine statistics:



Figure 9.18: Let's check for hydrogen value

So yes, this is it.

Now let's try to finish the game as soon as possible, set the maximal values everywhere:

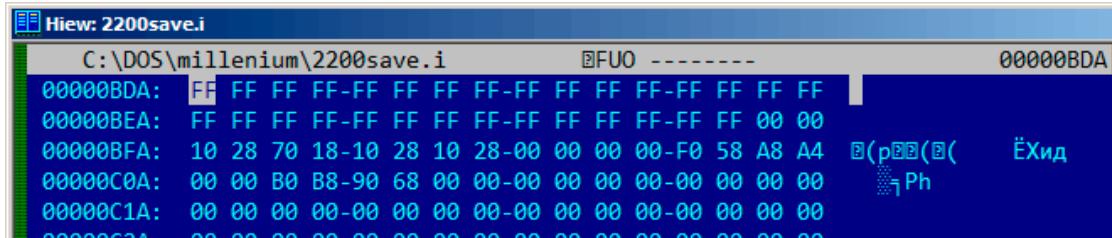


Figure 9.19: Hiew: let's set maximal values

0xFFFF is 65535, so yes, we now have a lot of resources:



Figure 9.20: All resources are 65535 (0xFFFF) indeed

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

Let's skip some "days" in the game and oops! We have a lower amount of some resources:



Figure 9.21: Resource variables overflow

That's just overflow.

The game's developer supposedly didn't think about such high amounts of resources, so there are probably no overflow checks, but the mine is "working" in the game, resources are added, hence the overflows. Apparently, it is a bad idea to be that greedy.

There are probably a lot of more values saved in this file.

So this is very simple method of cheating in games. High score files often can be easily patched like that.

More about files and memory snapshots comparing: [5.10.2 on page 937](#).

9.4 **fortune** program indexing file

(This part was first appeared in my blog at 25-Apr-2015.)

fortune is well-known UNIX program which shows random phrase from a collection. Some geeks are often set up their system in such way, so *fortune* can be called after

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

logging on. *fortune* takes phrases from the text files laying in */usr/share/games/fortunes* (as of Ubuntu Linux). Here is example (“fortunes” text file):

```
A day for firm decisions!!!!! Or is it?
%
A few hours grace before the madness begins again.
%
A gift of a flower will soon be made to you.
%
A long-forgotten loved one will appear soon.

Buy the negatives at any price.
%
A tall, dark stranger will have more fun than you.
%
...
```

So it is just phrases, sometimes multiline ones, divided by percent sign. The task of *fortune* program is to find random phrase and to print it. In order to achieve this, it must scan the whole text file, count phrases, choose random and print it. But the text file can get bigger, and even on modern computers, this naive algorithm is a bit uneconomical to computer resources. The straightforward way is to keep binary index file containing offset of each phrase in text file. With index file, *fortune* program can work much faster: just to choose random index element, take offset from there, set offset in text file and read phrase from it. This is actually done in *fortune* program. Let’s inspect what is in its index file inside (these are .dat files in the same directory) in hexadecimal editor. This program is open-source of course, but intentionally, I will not peek into its source code.

```
% od -t xl --address-radix=x fortunes.dat
000000 00 00 00 02 00 00 01 af 00 00 00 bb 00 00 00 0f
000010 00 00 00 00 25 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 2b
000020 00 00 00 60 00 00 00 8f 00 00 00 df 00 00 01 14
000030 00 00 01 48 00 00 01 7c 00 00 01 ab 00 00 01 e6
000040 00 00 02 20 00 00 02 3b 00 00 02 7a 00 00 02 c5
000050 00 00 03 04 00 00 03 3d 00 00 03 68 00 00 03 a7
000060 00 00 03 e1 00 00 04 19 00 00 04 2d 00 00 04 7f
000070 00 00 04 ad 00 00 04 d5 00 00 05 05 00 00 05 3b
000080 00 00 05 64 00 00 05 82 00 00 05 ad 00 00 05 ce
000090 00 00 05 f7 00 00 06 1c 00 00 06 61 00 00 06 7a
0000a0 00 00 06 d1 00 00 07 0a 00 00 07 53 00 00 07 9a
0000b0 00 00 07 f8 00 00 08 27 00 00 08 59 00 00 08 8b
0000c0 00 00 08 a0 00 00 08 c4 00 00 08 e1 00 00 08 f9
0000d0 00 00 09 27 00 00 09 43 00 00 09 79 00 00 09 a3
0000e0 00 00 09 e3 00 00 0a 15 00 00 0a 4d 00 00 0a 5e
0000f0 00 00 0a 8a 00 00 0a a6 00 00 0a bf 00 00 0a ef
000100 00 00 0b 18 00 00 0b 43 00 00 0b 61 00 00 0b 8e
000110 00 00 0b cf 00 00 0b fa 00 00 0c 3b 00 00 0c 66
000120 00 00 0c 85 00 00 0c b9 00 00 0c d2 00 00 0d 02
000130 00 00 0d 3b 00 00 0d 67 00 00 0d ac 00 00 0d e0
000140 00 00 0e 1e 00 00 0e 67 00 00 0e a5 00 00 0e da
000150 00 00 0e ff 00 00 0f 43 00 00 0f 8a 00 00 0f bc
000160 00 00 0f e5 00 00 10 1e 00 00 10 63 00 00 10 9d
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
000170 00 00 10 e3 00 00 11 10 00 00 11 46 00 00 11 6c
000180 00 00 11 99 00 00 11 cb 00 00 11 f5 00 00 12 32
000190 00 00 12 61 00 00 12 8c 00 00 12 ca 00 00 13 87
0001a0 00 00 13 c4 00 00 13 fc 00 00 14 1a 00 00 14 6f
0001b0 00 00 14 ae 00 00 14 de 00 00 15 1b 00 00 15 55
0001c0 00 00 15 a6 00 00 15 d8 00 00 16 0f 00 00 16 4e
...

```

Without any special aid we could see that there are four 4-byte elements on each 16-byte line. Perhaps, it's our index array. I'm trying to load the whole file in Wolfram Mathematica as 32-bit integer array:

```
In[]:= BinaryReadList["c:/tmp1/fortunes.dat", "UnsignedInteger32"]

Out[]= {33554432, 2936078336, 3137339392, 251658240, 0, 37, 0, \
721420288, 1610612736, 2399141888, 3741319168, 335609856, 1208025088, \
2080440320, 2868969472, 3858825216, 537001984, 989986816, 2046951424, \
3305242624, 67305472, 1023606784, 1745027072, 2801991680, 3775070208, \
419692544, 755236864, 2130968576, 2902720512, 3573809152, 84213760, \
990183424, 1678049280, 2181365760, 2902786048, 3456434176, \
4144300032, 470155264, 1627783168, 2047213568, 3506831360, 168230912, \
1392967680, 2584150016, 4161208320, 654835712, 1493696512, \
2332557312, 2684878848, 3288858624, 3775397888, 4178051072, \
...

```

Nope, something wrong. Numbers are suspiciously big. But let's back to *od* output: each 4-byte element has two zero bytes and two non-zero bytes, so the offsets (at least at the beginning of the file) are 16-bit at maximum. Probably different endianness is used in the file? Default endianness in Mathematica is little-endian, as used in Intel CPUs. Now I'm changing it to big-endian:

```
In[]:= BinaryReadList["c:/tmp1/fortunes.dat", "UnsignedInteger32",
ByteOrdering -> 1]

Out[]= {2, 431, 187, 15, 0, 620756992, 0, 43, 96, 143, 223, 276, \
328, 380, 427, 486, 544, 571, 634, 709, 772, 829, 872, 935, 993, \
1049, 1069, 1151, 1197, 1237, 1285, 1339, 1380, 1410, 1453, 1486, \
1527, 1564, 1633, 1658, 1745, 1802, 1875, 1946, 2040, 2087, 2137, \
2187, 2208, 2244, 2273, 2297, 2343, 2371, 2425, 2467, 2531, 2581, \
2637, 2654, 2698, 2726, 2751, 2799, 2840, 2883, 2913, 2958, 3023, \
3066, 3131, 3174, 3205, 3257, 3282, 3330, 3387, 3431, 3500, 3552, \
...

```

Yes, this is something readable. I choose random element (3066) which is 0xBFA in hexadecimal form. I'm opening 'fortunes' text file in hex editor, I'm setting 0xBFA as offset and I see this phrase:

```
% od -t xl -c --skip-bytes=0xbfa --address-radix=x fortunes
000bfa 44 6f 20 77 68 61 74 20 63 6f 6d 65 73 20 6e 61
      D   o     w   h   a   t       c   o   m   e   s       n   a
000c0a 74 75 72 61 6c 6c 79 2e 20 20 53 65 65 74 68 65
      t   u   r   a   l   l   y   .           S   e   e   t   h   e
000c1a 20 61 6e 64 20 66 75 6d 65 20 61 6e 64 20 74 68
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

a n d	f u m e	a n d	t h
....			

Or:

Do what comes naturally. Seethe and fume and throw a tantrum. %
--

Other offset are also can be checked, yes, they are valid offsets.

I can also check in Mathematica that each subsequent element is bigger than previous. I.e., elements of array are ascending. In mathematics lingo, this is called *strictly increasing monotonic function*.

<pre>In[]:= Differences[input] Out[]={429, -244, -172, -15, 620756992, -620756992, 43, 53, 47, \ 80, 53, 52, 52, 47, 59, 58, 27, 63, 75, 63, 57, 43, 63, 58, 56, 20, \ 82, 46, 40, 48, 54, 41, 30, 43, 33, 41, 37, 69, 25, 87, 57, 73, 71, \ 94, 47, 50, 50, 21, 36, 29, 24, 46, 28, 54, 42, 64, 50, 56, 17, 44, \ 28, 25, 48, 41, 43, 30, 45, 65, 43, 65, 43, 31, 52, 25, 48, 57, 44, \ 69, 52, 62, 73, 62, 53, 37, 68, 71, 50, 41, 57, 69, 58, 70, 45, 54, \ 38, 45, 50, 42, 61, 47, 43, 62, 189, 61, 56, 30, 85, 63, 48, 61, 58, \ 81, 50, 55, 63, 83, 80, 49, 42, 94, 54, 67, 81, 52, 57, 68, 43, 28, \ 120, 64, 53, 81, 33, 82, 88, 29, 61, 32, 75, 63, 70, 47, 101, 60, 79, \ 33, 48, 65, 35, 59, 47, 55, 22, 43, 35, 102, 53, 80, 65, 45, 31, 29, \ 69, 32, 25, 38, 34, 35, 49, 59, 39, 41, 18, 43, 41, 83, 37, 31, 34, \ 59, 72, 72, 81, 77, 53, 53, 50, 51, 45, 53, 39, 70, 54, 103, 33, 70, \ 51, 95, 67, 54, 55, 65, 61, 54, 54, 53, 45, 100, 63, 48, 65, 71, 23, \ 28, 43, 51, 61, 101, 65, 39, 78, 66, 43, 36, 56, 40, 67, 92, 65, 61, \ 31, 45, 52, 94, 82, 82, 91, 46, 76, 55, 19, 58, 68, 41, 75, 30, 67, \ 92, 54, 52, 108, 60, 56, 76, 41, 79, 54, 65, 74, 112, 76, 47, 53, 61, \ 66, 53, 28, 41, 81, 75, 69, 89, 63, 60, 18, 18, 50, 79, 92, 37, 63, \ 88, 52, 81, 60, 80, 26, 46, 80, 64, 78, 70, 75, 46, 91, 22, 63, 46, \ 34, 81, 75, 59, 62, 66, 74, 76, 111, 55, 73, 40, 61, 55, 38, 56, 47, \ 78, 81, 62, 37, 41, 60, 68, 40, 33, 54, 34, 41, 36, 49, 44, 68, 51, \ 50, 52, 36, 53, 66, 46, 41, 45, 51, 44, 44, 33, 72, 40, 71, 57, 55, \ 39, 66, 40, 56, 68, 43, 88, 78, 30, 54, 64, 36, 55, 35, 88, 45, 56, \ 76, 61, 66, 29, 76, 53, 96, 36, 46, 54, 28, 51, 82, 53, 60, 77, 21, \ 84, 53, 43, 104, 85, 50, 47, 39, 66, 78, 81, 94, 70, 49, 67, 61, 37, \ 51, 91, 99, 58, 51, 49, 46, 68, 72, 40, 56, 63, 65, 41, 62, 47, 41, \ 43, 30, 43, 67, 78, 80, 101, 61, 73, 70, 41, 82, 69, 45, 65, 38, 41, \ 57, 82, 66}</pre>

As we can see, except of the very first 6 values (which is probably belongs to index file header), all numbers are in fact length of all text phrases (offset of the next phrase minus offset of the current phrase is in fact length of the current phrase).

It's very important to keep in mind that bit-endiannes can be confused with incorrect array start. Indeed, from *od* output we see that each element started with two zeros. But when shifted by two bytes in either side, we can interpret this array as little-endian:

```
% od -t x1 --address-radix=x --skip-bytes=0x32 fortunes.dat
000032 01 48 00 00 01 7c 00 00 01 ab 00 00 01 e6 00 00
000042 02 20 00 00 02 3b 00 00 02 7a 00 00 02 c5 00 00
000052 03 04 00 00 03 3d 00 00 03 68 00 00 03 a7 00 00
000062 03 e1 00 00 04 19 00 00 04 2d 00 00 04 7f 00 00
000072 04 ad 00 00 04 d5 00 00 05 05 00 00 05 3b 00 00
000082 05 64 00 00 05 82 00 00 05 ad 00 00 05 ce 00 00
000092 05 f7 00 00 06 1c 00 00 06 61 00 00 06 7a 00 00
0000a2 06 d1 00 00 07 0a 00 00 07 53 00 00 07 9a 00 00
0000b2 07 f8 00 00 08 27 00 00 08 59 00 00 08 8b 00 00
0000c2 08 a0 00 00 08 c4 00 00 08 e1 00 00 08 f9 00 00
0000d2 09 27 00 00 09 43 00 00 09 79 00 00 09 a3 00 00
0000e2 09 e3 00 00 0a 15 00 00 0a 4d 00 00 0a 5e 00 00
...
...
```

If we would interpret this array as little-endian, the first element is 0x4801, second is 0x7C01, etc. High 8-bit part of each of these 16-bit values are seems random to us, and the lowest 8-bit part is seems ascending.

But I'm sure that this is big-endian array, because the very last 32-bit element of the file is big-endian (00 00 5f c4 here):

```
% od -t x1 --address-radix=x fortunes.dat
...
000660 00 00 59 0d 00 00 59 55 00 00 59 7d 00 00 59 b5
000670 00 00 59 f4 00 00 5a 35 00 00 5a 5e 00 00 5a 9c
000680 00 00 5a cb 00 00 5a f4 00 00 5b 1f 00 00 5b 3d
000690 00 00 5b 68 00 00 5b ab 00 00 5b f9 00 00 5c 49
0006a0 00 00 5c ae 00 00 5c eb 00 00 5d 34 00 00 5d 7a
0006b0 00 00 5d a3 00 00 5d f5 00 00 5e 3a 00 00 5e 67
0006c0 00 00 5e a8 00 00 5e ce 00 00 5e f7 00 00 5f 30
0006d0 00 00 5f 82 00 00 5f c4
0006d8
```

Perhaps, *fortune* program developer had big-endian computer or maybe it was ported from something like it.

OK, so the array is big-endian, and, judging by common sense, the very first phrase in the text file must be started at zeroth offset. So zero value should be present in the array somewhere at the very beginning. We've got couple of zero elements at the beginning. But the second is most appealing: 43 is going right after it and 43 is valid offset to valid English phrase in the text file.

The last array element is 0x5FC4, and there are no such byte at this offset in the text file. So the last array element is pointing behind the end of file. It's supposedly done because phrase length is calculated as difference between offset to the current phrase and offset to the next phrase. This can be faster than traversing phrase string for percent character. But this wouldn't work for the last element. So the *dummy* element is also added at the end of array.

So the first 6 32-bit integer values are supposedly some kind of header.

Oh, I forgot to count phrases in text file:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
% cat fortunes | grep % | wc -l
432
```

The number of phrases can be present in index, but may be not. In case of very simple index files, number of elements can be easily deduced from index file size. Anyway, there are 432 phrases in the text file. And we see something very familiar at the second element (value 431). I've checked other files (`literature.dat` and `riddles.dat` in Ubuntu Linux) and yes, the second 32-bit element is indeed number of phrases minus 1. Why *minus 1*? Perhaps, this is not number of phrases, but rather the number of the last phrase (starting at zero)?

And there are some other elements in the header. In Mathematica, I'm loading each of three available files and I'm taking a look on the header:

```
In[14]:= input = BinaryReadList["c:/tmp1/fortunes.dat", "UnsignedInteger32",
ByteOrdering → 1];
]
In[18]:= BaseForm[Take[input, {1, 6}], 16]
Out[18]/BaseForm=
{216, 1af16, bb16, f16, 016, 2500000016}}
```



```
In[19]:= input = BinaryReadList["c:/tmp1/literature.dat", "UnsignedInteger32",
ByteOrdering → 1];
]
In[20]:= BaseForm[Take[input, {1, 6}], 16]
Out[20]/BaseForm=
{216, 10616, 98316, 1a16, 016, 2500000016}}
```



```
In[21]:= input = BinaryReadList["c:/tmp1/riddles.dat", "UnsignedInteger32", ByteOrdering → 1];
]
In[22]:= BaseForm[Take[input, {1, 6}], 16]
Out[22]/BaseForm=
{216, 8016, 7f216, 2416, 016, 2500000016}}
```

I have no idea what other values mean, except the size of index file. Some fields are the same for all files, some are not. From my own experience, there could be:

- file signature;
- file version;
- checksum;
- some flags;
- maybe even text language identifier;
- text file timestamp, so the `fortune` program will regenerate index file if a user modified text file.

For example, Oracle .SYM files ([9.5 on page 1245](#)) which contain symbols table for DLL files, also contain timestamp of corresponding DLL file, so to be sure it is still valid.

On the other hand, text file and index file timestamps can gone out of sync after archiving/unarchiving/installing/deploying/etc.

But there are no timestamp, in my opinion. The most compact way of representing date and time is UNIX time value, which is big 32-bit number. We don't see any of such here. Other ways of representation are even less compact.

So here is algorithm, how *fortune* supposedly works:

- take number of last phrase from the second element;
- generate random number in range of 0..number_of_last_phrase;
- find corresponding element in array of offsets, take also following offset;
- output to *stdout* all characters from the text file starting at the offset until the next offset minus 2 (so to ignore terminating percent sign and character of the following phrase).

9.4.1 Hacking

Let's try to check some of our assumptions. I will create this text file under the path and name */usr/share/games/fortunes/fortunes*:

```
Phrase one.  
%  
Phrase two.  
%
```

Then this *fortunes.dat* file. I take header from the original *fortunes.dat*, I changed second field (count of all phrases) to zero and I left two elements in the array: 0 and 0x1c, because the whole length of the text *fortunes* file is 28 (0x1c) bytes:

```
% od -t xl --address-radix=x fortunes.dat  
000000 00 00 00 02 00 00 00 00 00 00 bb 00 00 00 0f  
000010 00 00 00 00 25 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 1c
```

Now I run it:

```
% /usr/games/fortune  
fortune: no fortune found
```

Something wrong. Let's change the second field to 1:

```
% od -t xl --address-radix=x fortunes.dat  
000000 00 00 00 02 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 bb 00 00 00 0f  
000010 00 00 00 00 25 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 1c
```

Now it works. It's always shows only the first phrase:

```
% /usr/games/fortune  
Phrase one.
```

Hmmm. Let's leave only one element in array (0) without terminating one:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
% od -t x1 --address-radix=x fortunes.dat
000000 00 00 00 02 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 bb 00 00 00 00 0f
000010 00 00 00 00 25 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00001c
```

Fortune program always shows only first phrase.

From this experiment we got to know that percent sign in text file is parsed and the size is not calculated as I deduced before, perhaps, even terminal array element is not used. However, it still can be used. And probably it was used in past?

9.4.2 The files

For the sake of demonstration, I still didn't take a look in *fortune* source code. If you want to try to understand meaning of other values in index file header, you may try to achieve it without looking into source code as well. Files I took from Ubuntu Linux 14.04 are here: <http://beginners.re/examples/fortune/>, hacked files are also here.

Oh, and I took the files from x64 version of Ubuntu, but array elements are still has size of 32 bit. It is because *fortune* text files are probably never exceeds 4GiB¹¹ size. But if it will, all elements must have size of 64 bit so to be able to store offset to the text file larger than 4GiB.

For impatient readers, the source code of *fortune* is here: <https://launchpad.net/ubuntu/+source/fortune-mod/1:1.99.1-3.1ubuntu4>.

9.5 Oracle RDBMS: .SYM-files

When an Oracle RDBMS process experiences some kind of crash, it writes a lot of information into log files, including stack trace, like this:

----- Call Stack Trace -----			
calling location	call type	entry point	argument values in hex (? means dubious value)
-----	-----	-----	----- ↴
↳ _kqvrow()		00000000	
_opifch2() +2729	CALLptr	00000000	23D4B914 E47F264 1F19AE2 EB1C8A8 1
_kpoal8() +2832	CALLrel	_opifch2()	89 5 EB1CC74
_opiindr() +1248	CALLreg	00000000	5E 1C EB1F0A0
_ttcpip() +1051	CALLreg	00000000	5E 1C EB1F0A0 0
_opitsk() +1404	CALL???	00000000	C96C040 5E EB1F0A0 0 ↴
↳ EB1ED30			
_opiino() +980	CALLrel	_opitsk()	EB1F1CC 53E52E 0 EB1F1F8 0 0
_opiindr() +1248	CALLreg	00000000	3C 4 EB1FBF4
_opidrv() +1201	CALLrel	_opiindr()	3C 4 EB1FBF4 0

¹¹Gibibyte

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

<code>_sou2o() +55</code>	<code>CALLrel</code>	<code>_opidrv()</code>	<code>3C 4 EB1FBF4</code>
<code>_opimai_real() +124</code>	<code>CALLrel</code>	<code>_sou2o()</code>	<code>EB1FC04 3C 4 EB1FBF4</code>
<code>_opimai() +125</code>	<code>CALLrel</code>	<code>_opimai_real()</code>	<code>2 EB1FC2C</code>
<code>_OracleThreadStart@</code>	<code>CALLrel</code>	<code>_opimai()</code>	<code>2 EB1FF6C 7C88A7F4 ↴</code>
↳ <code>EB1FC34 0</code>			
<code>4() +830</code>			<code>EB1FD04</code>
<code>77E6481C</code>	<code>CALLreg</code>	<code>00000000</code>	<code>E41FF9C 0 0 E41FF9C 0 ↴</code>
↳ <code>EB1FFC4</code>			
<code>00000000</code>	<code>CALL???</code>	<code>00000000</code>	

But of course, Oracle RDBMS's executables must have some kind of debug information or map files with symbol information included or something like that.

Windows NT Oracle RDBMS has symbol information in files with .SYM extension, but the format is proprietary. (Plain text files are good, but needs additional parsing, hence offer slower access.)

Let's see if we can understand its format.

We will pick the shortest `orawtc8.sym` file that comes with the `orawtc8.dll` file in Oracle 8.1.7 ¹².

¹²We can chose an ancient Oracle RDBMS version intentionally due to the smaller size of its modules

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Here is the file opened in Hiew:

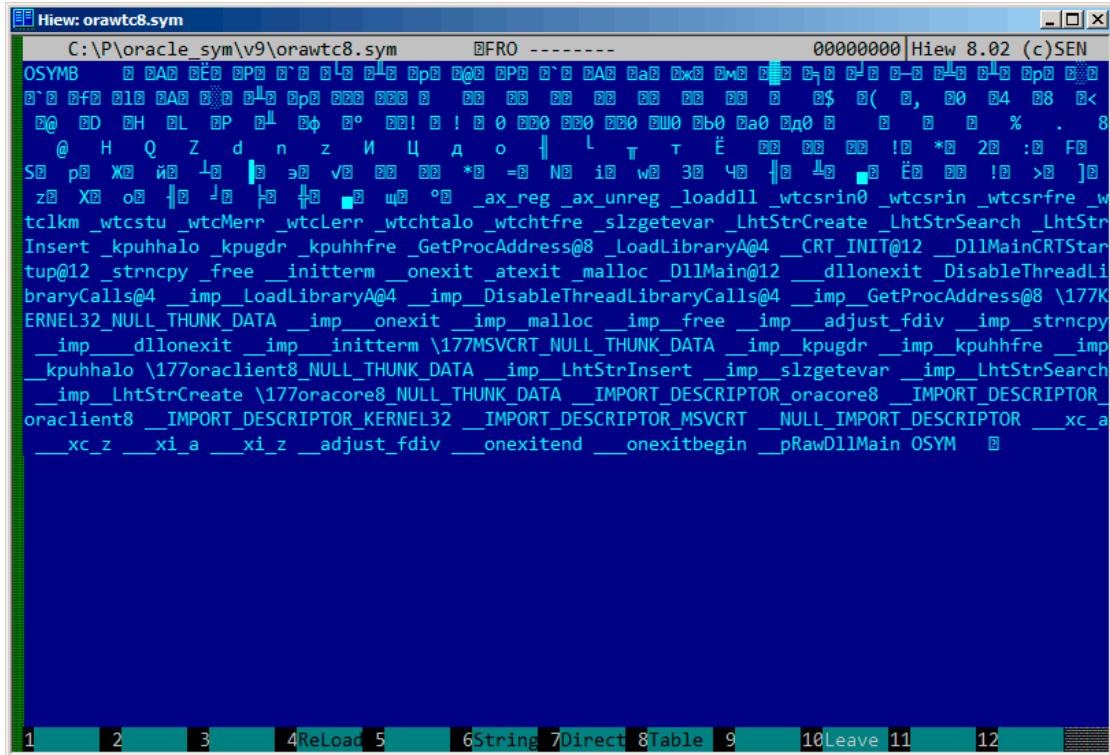


Figure 9.22: The whole file in Hiew

By comparing the file with other .SYM files, we can quickly see that OSYM is always header (and footer), so this is maybe the file's signature.

We also see that basically, the file format is: OSYM + some binary data + zero delimited text strings + OSYM. The strings are, obviously, function and global variable names.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

We will mark the OSYM signatures and strings here:

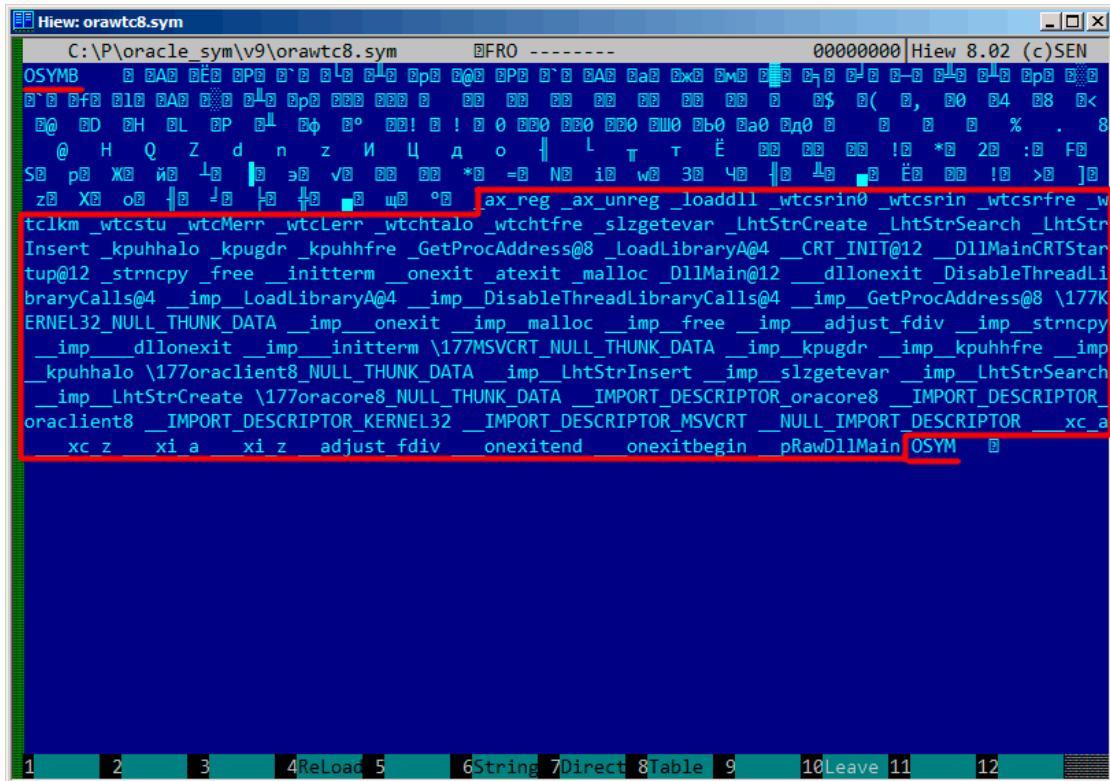


Figure 9.23: OSYM signature and text strings

Well, let's see. In Hiew, we will mark the whole strings block (except the trailing OSYM signatures) and put it into a separate file. Then we run UNIX *strings* and *wc* utilities to count the text strings:

```
strings strings_block | wc -l
66
```

So there are 66 text strings. Please note that number.

We can say, in general, as a rule, the number of *anything* is often stored separately in binary files.

It's indeed so, we can find the 66 value (0x42) at the file's start, right after the OSYM signature:

```
$ hexdump -C orawtc8.sym
00000000  4f 53 59 4d 42 00 00 00  00 10 00 10 80 10 00 10  |OSYMB|
          `.....`|_
00000010  f0 10 00 10 50 11 00 10  60 11 00 10 c0 11 00 10  |....P|
          `...`.....`|_
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

1249

```
00000020 d0 11 00 10 70 13 00 10 40 15 00 10 50 15 00 10 |....p...@...P<
    ↴ ... |
00000030 60 15 00 10 80 15 00 10 a0 15 00 10 a6 15 00 10 ↵
    ↴ |`.....|
```

Of course, 0x42 here is not a byte, but most likely a 32-bit value packed as little-endian, hence we see 0x42 and then at least 3 zero bytes.

Why do we believe it's 32-bit? Because, Oracle RDBMS's symbol files may be pretty big.

The oracle.sym file for the main oracle.exe (version 10.2.0.4) executable contains 0x3A38E (238478) symbols. A 16-bit value isn't enough here.

We can check other .SYM files like this and it proves our guess: the value after the 32-bit OSYM signature always reflects the number of text strings in the file.

It's a general feature of almost all binary files: a header with a signature plus some other information about the file.

Now let's investigate closer what this binary block is.

Using Hiew again, we put the block starting at address 8 (i.e., after the 32-bit *count* value) ending at the strings block, into a separate binary file.

Let's see the binary block in Hiew:

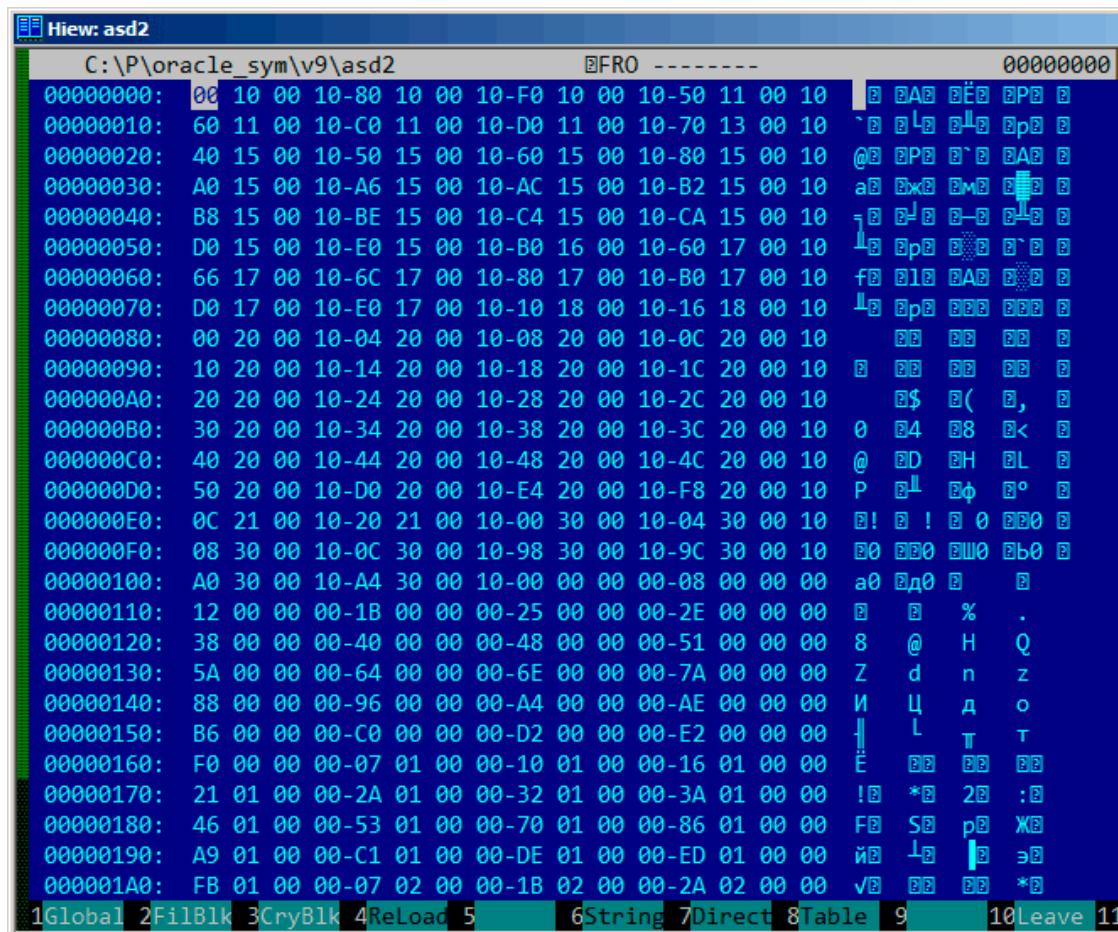


Figure 9.24: Binary block

There is a clear pattern in it.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

We will add red lines to divide the block:

Figure 9.25: Binary block patterns

Hiew, like almost any other hexadecimal editor, shows 16 bytes per line. So the pattern is clearly visible: there are 4 32-bit values per line.

The pattern is visually visible because some values here (till address 0x104) are always in 0x1000xxxx form, started with 0x10 and zero bytes.

Other values (starting at 0x108) are in 0x0000xxxx form, so always started with two zero bytes.

Let's dump the block as an array of 32-bit values:

Listing 9.10: first column is address

```
$ od -v -t x4 binary_block  
00000000 10001000 10001080 100010f0 10001150
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

0000020	10001160	100011c0	100011d0	10001370
0000040	10001540	10001550	10001560	10001580
0000060	100015a0	100015a6	100015ac	100015b2
0000100	100015b8	100015be	100015c4	100015ca
0000120	100015d0	100015e0	100016b0	10001760
0000140	10001766	1000176c	10001780	100017b0
0000160	100017d0	100017e0	10001810	10001816
0000200	10002000	10002004	10002008	1000200c
0000220	10002010	10002014	10002018	1000201c
0000240	10002020	10002024	10002028	1000202c
0000260	10002030	10002034	10002038	1000203c
0000300	10002040	10002044	10002048	1000204c
0000320	10002050	100020d0	100020e4	100020f8
0000340	1000210c	10002120	10003000	10003004
0000360	10003008	1000300c	10003098	1000309c
0000400	100030a0	100030a4	00000000	00000008
0000420	00000012	0000001b	00000025	0000002e
0000440	00000038	00000040	00000048	00000051
0000460	0000005a	00000064	0000006e	0000007a
0000500	00000088	00000096	000000a4	000000ae
0000520	000000b6	000000c0	000000d2	000000e2
0000540	000000f0	00000107	00000110	00000116
0000560	00000121	0000012a	00000132	0000013a
0000600	00000146	00000153	00000170	00000186
0000620	000001a9	000001c1	000001de	000001ed
0000640	000001fb	00000207	0000021b	0000022a
0000660	0000023d	0000024e	00000269	00000277
0000700	00000287	00000297	000002b6	000002ca
0000720	000002dc	000002f0	00000304	00000321
0000740	0000033e	0000035d	0000037a	00000395
0000760	000003ae	000003b6	000003be	000003c6
0001000	000003ce	000003dc	000003e9	000003f8
0001020				

There are 132 values, that's 66×2 . Probably, there are two 32-bit values for each symbol, but maybe there are two arrays? Let's see.

Values starting with 0x1000 may be addresses.

This is a .SYM file for a DLL after all, and the default base address of win32 DLLs is 0x10000000, and the code usually starts at 0x10001000.

When we open the orawtc8.dll file in [IDA](#), the base address is different, but nevertheless, the first function is:

```
.text:60351000 sub_60351000    proc near
.text:60351000
.text:60351000 arg_0     = dword ptr  8
.text:60351000 arg_4     = dword ptr  0Ch
.text:60351000 arg_8     = dword ptr  10h
.text:60351000
.text:60351000     push    ebp
.text:60351001     mov     ebp, esp
.text:60351003     mov     eax, dword_60353014
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

.text:60351008      cmp    eax, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:6035100B      jnz    short loc_6035104F
.text:6035100D      mov    ecx, hModule
.text:60351013      xor    eax, eax
.text:60351015      cmp    ecx, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:60351018      mov    dword_60353014, eax
.text:6035101D      jnz    short loc_60351031
.text:6035101F      call   sub_603510F0
.text:60351024      mov    ecx, eax
.text:60351026      mov    eax, dword_60353014
.text:6035102B      mov    hModule, ecx
.text:60351031
.text:60351031 loc_60351031: ; CODE XREF: sub_60351000+1D
.text:60351031      test   ecx, ecx
.text:60351033      jbe    short loc_6035104F
.text:60351035      push   offset ProcName ; "ax_reg"
.text:6035103A      push   ecx           ; hModule
.text:6035103B      call   ds:GetProcAddress
...

```

Wow, “ax_reg” string sounds familiar.

It’s indeed the first string in the strings block! So the name of this function seems to be “ax_reg”.

The second function is:

```

.text:60351080 sub_60351080     proc near
.text:60351080
.text:60351080 arg_0    = dword ptr  8
.text:60351080 arg_4    = dword ptr  0Ch
.text:60351080
.text:60351080      push   ebp
.text:60351081      mov    ebp, esp
.text:60351083      mov    eax, dword_60353018
.text:60351088      cmp    eax, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:6035108B      jnz    short loc_603510CF
.text:6035108D      mov    ecx, hModule
.text:60351093      xor    eax, eax
.text:60351095      cmp    ecx, 0FFFFFFFh
.text:60351098      mov    dword_60353018, eax
.text:6035109D      jnz    short loc_603510B1
.text:6035109F      call   sub_603510F0
.text:603510A4      mov    ecx, eax
.text:603510A6      mov    eax, dword_60353018
.text:603510AB      mov    hModule, ecx
.text:603510B1
.text:603510B1 loc_603510B1: ; CODE XREF: sub_60351080+1D
.text:603510B1      test   ecx, ecx
.text:603510B3      jbe    short loc_603510CF
.text:603510B5      push   offset aAx_unreg ; "ax_unreg"
.text:603510BA      push   ecx           ; hModule
.text:603510BB      call   ds:GetProcAddress
...

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

The “ax_unreg” string is also the second string in the strings block!

The starting address of the second function is 0x60351080, and the second value in the binary block is 10001080. So this is the address, but for a DLL with the default base address.

We can quickly check and be sure that the first 66 values in the array (i.e., the first half of the array) are just function addresses in the DLL, including some labels, etc. Well, what’s the other part of array then? The other 66 values that start with 0x0000? These seem to be in range [0...0x3F8]. And they do not look like bitfields: the series of numbers is increasing.

The last hexadecimal digit seems to be random, so, it’s unlikely the address of something (it would be divisible by 4 or maybe 8 or 0x10 otherwise).

Let’s ask ourselves: what else Oracle RDBMS’s developers would save here, in this file?

Quick wild guess: it could be the address of the text string (function name).

It can be quickly checked, and yes, each number is just the position of the first character in the strings block.

This is it! All done.

We will write an utility to convert these .SYM files into [IDA](#) script, so we can load the .idc script and it sets the function names:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdint.h>
#include <io.h>
#include <assert.h>
#include <malloc.h>
#include <fcntl.h>
#include <string.h>

int main (int argc, char *argv[])
{
    uint32_t sig, cnt, offset;
    uint32_t *d1, *d2;
    int     h, i, remain, file_len;
    char   *d3;
    uint32_t array_size_in_bytes;

    assert (argc[1]); // file name
    assert (argc[2]); // additional offset (if needed)

    // additional offset
    assert (sscanf (argv[2], "%X", &offset)==1);

    // get file length
    assert ((h=open (argv[1], _O_RDONLY | _O_BINARY, 0))!= -1);
    assert ((file_len=lseek (h, 0, SEEK_END))!= -1);
    assert (lseek (h, 0, SEEK_SET)!= -1);

    // read signature
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

assert (read (h, &sig, 4)==4);
// read count
assert (read (h, &cnt, 4)==4);

assert (sig==0x4D59534F); // OSYM

// skip timedatestamp (for 11g)
//_lseek (h, 4, 1);

array_size_in_bytes=cnt*sizeof(uint32_t);

// load symbol addresses array
d1=(uint32_t*)malloc (array_size_in_bytes);
assert (d1);
assert (read (h, d1, array_size_in_bytes)==array_size_in_bytes);

// load string offsets array
d2=(uint32_t*)malloc (array_size_in_bytes);
assert (d2);
assert (read (h, d2, array_size_in_bytes)==array_size_in_bytes);

// calculate strings block size
remain=file_len-(8+4)-(cnt*8);

// load strings block
assert (d3=(char*)malloc (remain));
assert (read (h, d3, remain)==remain);

printf ("#include <idc.idc>\n\n");
printf ("static main() {\n");

for (i=0; i<cnt; i++)
    printf ("\tMakeName(0x%08X, \"%s\");\n", offset + d1[i], &d3[d2[i]]);

printf ("}\n");

close (h);
free (d1); free (d2); free (d3);
};

```

Here is an example of its work:

```
#include <idc.idc>

static main() {
    MakeName(0x60351000, "_ax_reg");
    MakeName(0x60351080, "_ax_unreg");
    MakeName(0x603510F0, "_loaddll");
    MakeName(0x60351150, "_wtcsrin0");
    MakeName(0x60351160, "_wtcsrin");
    MakeName(0x603511C0, "_wtcsrfre");
    MakeName(0x603511D0, "_wtclkm");
    MakeName(0x60351370, "_wtcstu");
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
...  
}
```

The example files were used in this example are here: [beginners.re](#).

Oh, let's also try Oracle RDBMS for win64. There has to be 64-bit addresses instead, right?

The 8-byte pattern is visible even easier here:

	Hiew: oracle.sym										
	FRO -----										00000000
00000000:	4F	53	59	4D-41	4D	36	34-BD	6D	05	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000010:	CD	21	2A	47-00	00	00	00-00	00	00	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000020:	00	00	00	00-00	00	00	00-00	00	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000030:	00	10	40	00-00	00	00	00-6C	10	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000040:	04	11	40	00-00	00	00	00-80	13	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000050:	E3	13	40	00-00	00	00	00-01	14	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000060:	1F	14	40	00-00	00	00	00-3E	14	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000070:	54	14	40	00-00	00	00	00-1E	18	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000080:	97	1B	40	00-00	00	00	00-C1	1B	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000090:	0A	1C	40	00-00	00	00	00-4C	1C	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
000000A0:	7A	1C	40	00-00	00	00	00-98	1C	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
000000B0:	E7	25	40	00-00	00	00	00-11	26	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
000000C0:	80	26	40	00-00	00	00	00-C4	26	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
000000D0:	F4	26	40	00-00	00	00	00-24	27	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
000000E0:	50	27	40	00-00	00	00	00-78	27	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
000000F0:	A0	27	40	00-00	00	00	00-4E	28	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000100:	26	29	40	00-00	00	00	00-B4	2C	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000110:	66	2D	40	00-00	00	00	00-A6	2D	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000120:	30	2E	40	00-00	00	00	00-BA	2E	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000130:	F2	30	40	00-00	00	00	00-84	31	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000140:	F0	31	40	00-00	00	00	00-5E	32	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000150:	CC	32	40	00-00	00	00	00-3A	33	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000160:	A8	33	40	00-00	00	00	00-16	34	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000170:	84	34	40	00-00	00	00	00-F2	34	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000180:	60	35	40	00-00	00	00	00-CC	35	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
00000190:	3A	36	40	00-00	00	00	00-A8	36	40	00-00	00 00 00 00
000001A0:	16	37	40	00-00	00	00	00-84	37	40	00-00	00 00 00 00

1Global 2FilBlk 3CryBlk 4ReLoad 5 6String 7Direct 8Table 9 10Leave 11

Figure 9.26: .SYM-file example from Oracle RDBMS for win64

So yes, all tables now have 64-bit elements, even string offsets!

The signature is now 0SYMAM64, to distinguish the target platform, apparently.

This is it!

Here is also library which has functions to access Oracle RDBMS.SYM-files: [GitHub](#).

9.6 Oracle RDBMS: .MSB-files

When working toward the solution of a problem, it always helps if you know the answer.

Murphy's Laws, Rule of Accuracy

This is a binary file that contains error messages with their corresponding numbers. Let's try to understand its format and find a way to unpack it.

There are Oracle RDBMS error message files in text form, so we can compare the text and packed binary files ^{[13](#)}.

This is the beginning of the ORAUS.MSG text file with some irrelevant comments stripped:

Listing 9.11: Beginning of ORAUS.MSG file without comments

```
00000, 00000, "normal, successful completion"
00001, 00000, "unique constraint (%s.%s) violated"
00017, 00000, "session requested to set trace event"
00018, 00000, "maximum number of sessions exceeded"
00019, 00000, "maximum number of session licenses exceeded"
00020, 00000, "maximum number of processes (%s) exceeded"
00021, 00000, "session attached to some other process; cannot switch ↴
    ↴ session"
00022, 00000, "invalid session ID; access denied"
00023, 00000, "session references process private memory; cannot detach ↴
    ↴ session"
00024, 00000, "logins from more than one process not allowed in single- ↴
    ↴ process mode"
00025, 00000, "failed to allocate %s"
00026, 00000, "missing or invalid session ID"
00027, 00000, "cannot kill current session"
00028, 00000, "your session has been killed"
00029, 00000, "session is not a user session"
00030, 00000, "User session ID does not exist."
00031, 00000, "session marked for kill"
...

```

The first number is the error code. The second is perhaps maybe some additional flags.

¹³Open-source text files don't exist in Oracle RDBMS for every .MSB file, so that's why we will work on their file format

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Now let's open the ORAUS.MSG binary file and find these text strings. And there are:

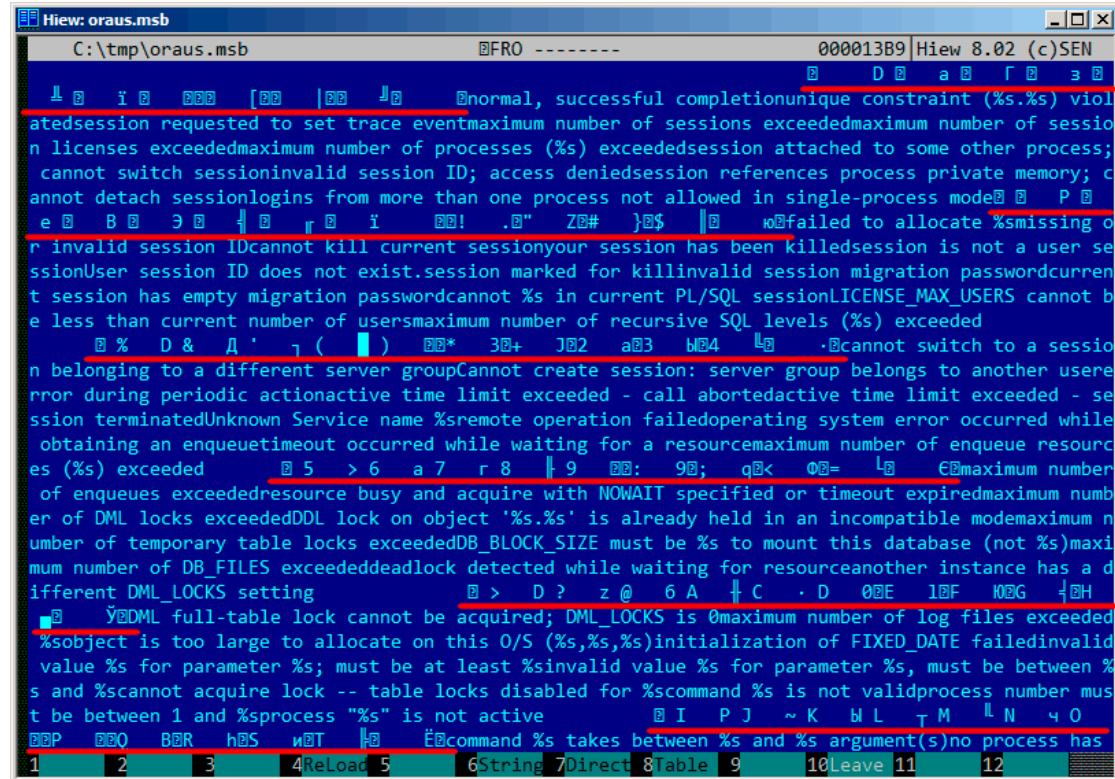


Figure 9.27: Hiew: first block

We see the text strings (including those from the beginning of the ORAUS.MSG file) interleaved with some binary values. By quick investigation, we can see that main part of the binary file is divided by blocks of size 0x200 (512) bytes.

Let's see the contents of the first block:

The screenshot shows the Hiew hex editor displaying the contents of the file 'oraus.msb' at address 00001400. The data consists of multiple error messages, each starting with a 16-bit error code followed by a string of characters. Red lines highlight specific bytes in the error codes and strings, likely indicating null-termination or specific byte values of interest. The bottom of the interface features a toolbar with various file operations.

Figure 9.28: Hiew: first block

Here we see the texts of the first messages errors. What we also see is that there are no zero bytes between the error messages. This implies that these are not null-terminated C strings. As a consequence, the length of each error message must be encoded somehow. Let's also try to find the error numbers. The ORAUS.MSG files starts with these: 0, 1, 17 (0x11), 18 (0x12), 19 (0x13), 20 (0x14), 21 (0x15), 22 (0x16), 23 (0x17), 24 (0x18)... We will find these numbers at the beginning of the block and mark them with red lines. The period between error codes is 6 bytes.

This implies that there are probably 6 bytes of information allocated for each error message.

The first 16-bit value (0xA here or 10) means the number of messages in each block: this can be checked by investigating other blocks. Indeed: the error messages have

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

arbitrary size. Some are longer, some are shorter. But block size is always fixed, hence, you never know how many text messages can be packed in each block.

As we already noted, since these are not null-terminated C strings, their size must be encoded somewhere. The size of the first string “normal, successful completion” is 29 (0x1D) bytes. The size of the second string “unique constraint (%s.%s) violated” is 34 (0x22) bytes. We can’t find these values (0x1D or/and 0x22) in the block.

There is also another thing. Oracle RDBMS has to determine the position of the string it needs to load in the block, right? The first string “normal, successful completion” starts at position 0x1444 (if we count starting at the beginning of the file) or at 0x44 (from the block’s start). The second string “unique constraint (%s.%s) violated” starts at position 0x1461 (from the file’s start) or at 0x61 (from the at the block’s start). These numbers (0x44 and 0x61) are familiar somehow! We can clearly see them at the start of the block.

So, each 6-byte block is:

- 16-bit error number;
- 16-bit zero (maybe additional flags);
- 16-bit starting position of the text string within the current block.

We can quickly check the other values and be sure our guess is correct. And there is also the last “dummy” 6-byte block with an error number of zero and starting position beyond the last error message’s last character. Probably that’s how text message length is determined? We just enumerate 6-byte blocks to find the error number we need, then we get the text string’s position, then we get the position of the text string by looking at the next 6-byte block! This way we determine the string’s boundaries! This method allows to save some space by not saving the text string’s size in the file!

It’s not possible to say it saves a lot of space, but it’s a clever trick.

Let's back to the header of .MSB-file:

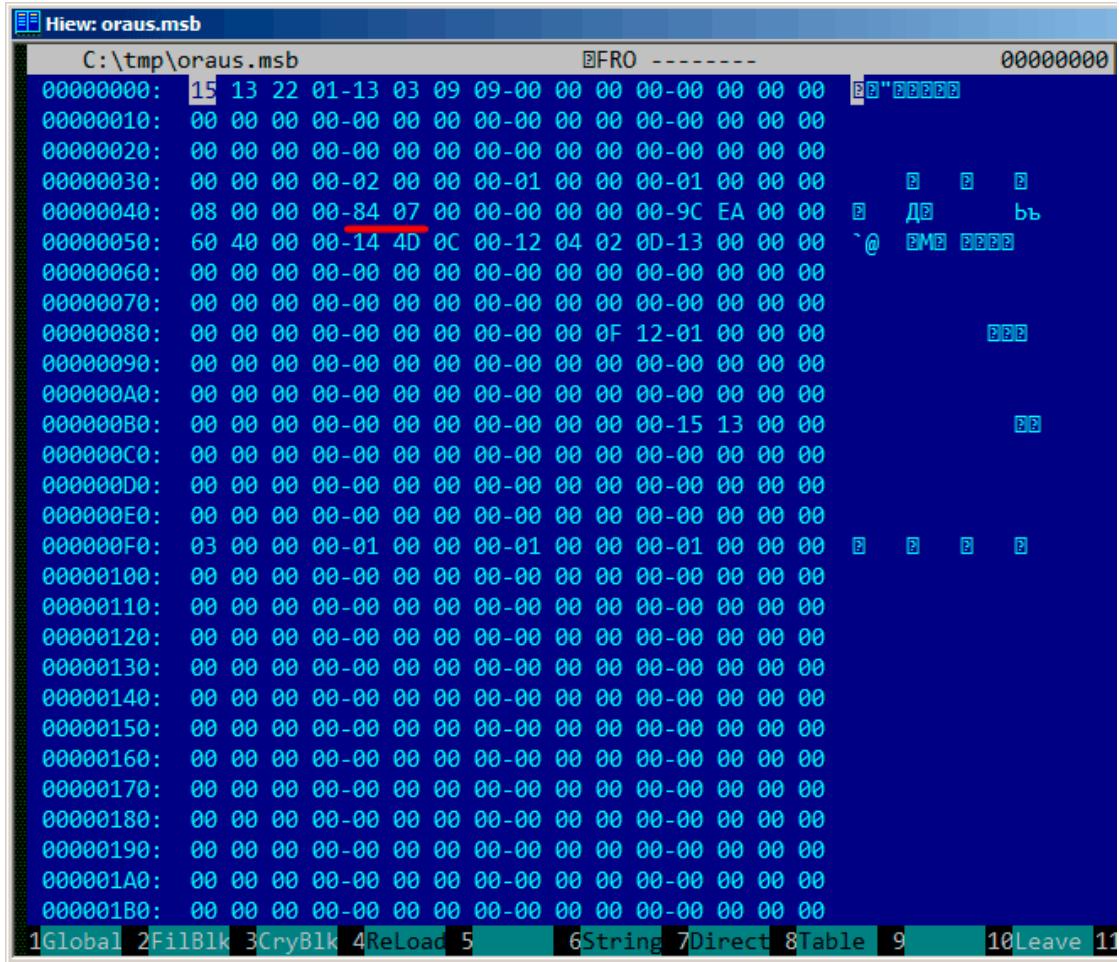


Figure 9.29: Hiew: file header

Now we can quickly find the number of blocks in the file (marked by red). We can checked other .MSB-files and we see that it's true for all of them.

There are a lot of other values, but we will not investigate them, since our job (an unpacking utility) is done.

If we have to write a .MSB file packer, we would probably have to understand the meaning of the other values.

There is also a table that came after the header which probably contains 16-bit values:

Figure 9.30: Hiew: last errnos table

Their size can be determined visually (red lines are drawn here).

While dumping these values, we have found that each 16-bit number is the last error code for each block.

So that's how Oracle RDBMS quickly finds the error message:

- load a table we will call `last_errnos` (that contains the last error number for each block);
 - find a block that contains the error code we need, assuming all error codes increase across each block and across the file as well;
 - load the specific block;

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

-
- enumerate the 6-byte structures until the specific error number is found;
 - get the position of the first character from the current 6-byte block;
 - get the position of the last character from the next 6-byte block;
 - load all characters of the message in this range.

This is C program that we wrote which unpacks .MSB-files: [beginners.re](#).

There are also the two files which were used in the example (Oracle RDBMS 11.1.0.6): [beginners.re](#), [beginners.re](#).

9.6.1 Summary

The method is probably too old-school for modern computers. Supposedly, this file format was developed in the mid-80's by someone who also coded for *big iron* with memory/disk space economy in mind. Nevertheless, it has been an interesting and yet easy task to understand a proprietary file format without looking into Oracle RDBMS's code.

9.7 Exercises

Try to reverse engineer of any binary files of your favorite game, including high-score files, resources, etc.

There are also binary files with known structure: utmp/wtmp files, try to understand its structure without documentation.

The EXIF header in JPEG file is documented, but you can try to understand its structure without help, just shoot photos at various date/time, places, and try to find date/time and GPS location in EXIF. Try to patch GPS location, upload JPEG file to Facebook and see, how it will put your picture on the map.

Try to patch any information in MP3 file and see how your favorite MP3-player will react.

9.8 Further reading

[Pierre Capillon – Black-box cryptanalysis of home-made encryption algorithms: a practical case study.](#)

[How to Hack an Expensive Camera and Not Get Killed by Your Wife.](#)

Chapter 10

Dynamic binary instrumentation

DBI tools can be viewed as highly advanced and fast debuggers.

10.1 Using PIN DBI for XOR interception

PIN from Intel is a DBI tool. That means, it takes compiled binary and inserts your instructions in it, where you want.

Let's try to intercept all XOR instructions. These are heavily used in cryptography, and we can try to run WinRAR archiver in encryption mode with a hope that some XOR instruction is indeed used while encryption.

Here is the source code of my PIN tool: https://beginners.re/current-tree/DBI/XOR/files//XOR_ins.cpp.

The code is almost self-explanatory: it scans input executable file for all XOR/PXOR instructions and inserts a call to our function before each. `log_info()` function first checks, if operands are different (since XOR is often used just to clear register, like `XOR EAX, EAX`), and if they are different, it increments a counter at this EIP/RIP, so the statistics will be gathered.

I have prepared two files for test: `test1.bin` (30720 bytes) and `test2.bin` (5547752 bytes), I'll compress them by RAR with password and see difference in statistics.

You'll also need to turn off ASLR¹, so the PIN tool will report the same RIPs as in RAR executable.

Now let's run it:

```
c:\pin-3.2-81205-msvc-windows\pin.exe -t XOR_ins.dll -- rar a -v  
↳ pLongPassword tmp.rar test1.bin
```

¹<https://stackoverflow.com/q/9560993>

```
c:\pin-3.2-81205-msvc-windows\pin.exe -t XOR_ins.dll -- rar a -r
↳ pLongPassword tmp.rar test2.bin
```

Now here is statistics for the test1.bin:

https://beginners.re/current-tree/DBI/XOR/files//XOR_ins.out.test1. ...
and for test2.bin:

https://beginners.re/current-tree/DBI/XOR/files//XOR_ins.out.test2. So far, you can ignore all addresses other than ip=0x1400xxxx, which are in other DLLs.

Now let's see a difference: https://beginners.re/current-tree/DBI/XOR/files//XOR_ins.diff.

Some XOR instructions are executed more often for test2.bin (which is bigger) than for test1.bin (which is smaller). So these are clearly related to file size!

The first block of differences is:

```
< ip=0x140017b21 count=0xd84
< ip=0x140017b48 count=0x81f
< ip=0x140017b59 count=0x858
< ip=0x140017b6a count=0xc13
< ip=0x140017b7b count=0xefc
< ip=0x140017b8a count=0xefd
< ip=0x140017b92 count=0xb86
< ip=0x140017ba1 count=0xf01
---
> ip=0x140017b21 count=0x9eab5
> ip=0x140017b48 count=0x79863
> ip=0x140017b59 count=0x862e8
> ip=0x140017b6a count=0x99495
> ip=0x140017b7b count=0xa891c
> ip=0x140017b8a count=0xa89f4
> ip=0x140017b92 count=0x8ed72
> ip=0x140017ba1 count=0xa8a8a
```

This is indeed some kind of loop inside of RAR.EXE:

```
.text:0000000140017B21 loc_140017B21:
.text:0000000140017B21 xor     r11d, [rbx]
.text:0000000140017B24 mov     r9d, [rbx+4]
.text:0000000140017B28 add     rbx, 8
.text:0000000140017B2C mov     eax, r9d
.text:0000000140017B2F shr     eax, 18h
.text:0000000140017B32 movzx  edx, al
.text:0000000140017B35 mov     eax, r9d
.text:0000000140017B38 shr     eax, 10h
.text:0000000140017B3B movzx  ecx, al
.text:0000000140017B3E mov     eax, r9d
.text:0000000140017B41 shr     eax, 8
.text:0000000140017B44 mov     r8d, [rsi+rdx*4]
.text:0000000140017B48 xor     r8d, [rsi+rcx*4+400h]
.text:0000000140017B50 movzx  ecx, al
.text:0000000140017B53 mov     eax, r11d
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

.text:0000000140017B56	shr	eax, 18h
.text:0000000140017B59	xor	r8d, [rsi+rcx*4+800h]
.text:0000000140017B61	movzx	ecx, al
.text:0000000140017B64	mov	eax, r11d
.text:0000000140017B67	shr	eax, 10h
.text:0000000140017B6A	xor	r8d, [rsi+rcx*4+1000h]
.text:0000000140017B72	movzx	ecx, al
.text:0000000140017B75	mov	eax, r11d
.text:0000000140017B78	shr	eax, 8
.text:0000000140017B7B	xor	r8d, [rsi+rcx*4+1400h]
.text:0000000140017B83	movzx	ecx, al
.text:0000000140017B86	movzx	eax, r9b
.text:0000000140017B8A	xor	r8d, [rsi+rcx*4+1800h]
.text:0000000140017B92	xor	r8d, [rsi+rax*4+0C00h]
.text:0000000140017B9A	movzx	eax, r11b
.text:0000000140017B9E	mov	r11d, r8d
.text:0000000140017BA1	xor	r11d, [rsi+rax*4+1C00h]
.text:0000000140017BA9	sub	rdi, 1
.text:0000000140017BAD	jnz	loc_140017B21

What does it do? No idea yet.

The next:

```
< ip=0x14002c4f1 count=0x4fce
---
> ip=0x14002c4f1 count=0x4463be
```

0x4fce is 20430, which is close to size of test1.bin (30720 bytes). 0x4463be is 4481982 which is close to size of test2.bin (5547752 bytes). Not equal, but close.

This is a piece of code with that XOR instruction:

.text:000000014002C4EA loc_14002C4EA:		
.text:000000014002C4EA	movzx	eax, byte ptr [r8]
.text:000000014002C4EE	shl	ecx, 5
.text:000000014002C4F1	xor	ecx, eax
.text:000000014002C4F3	and	ecx, 7FFFh
.text:000000014002C4F9	cmp	[r11+rcx*4], esi
.text:000000014002C4FD	jb	short loc_14002C507
.text:000000014002C4FF	cmp	[r11+rcx*4], r10d
.text:000000014002C503	ja	short loc_14002C507
.text:000000014002C505	inc	ebx

Loop body can be written as:

```
state = input_byte ^ (state<<5) & 0xFFFF.
```

state is then used as index in some table. Is this some kind of CRC²? I don't know, but this could be a checksumming routine. Or maybe optimized CRC routine? Any ideas?

The next block:

²Cyclic redundancy check

```
< ip=0x14004104a count=0x367
< ip=0x140041057 count=0x367
---
> ip=0x14004104a count=0x24193
> ip=0x140041057 count=0x24193
```

```
.text:0000000140041039 loc_140041039:
.text:0000000140041039          mov     rax, r10
.text:000000014004103C          add     r10, 10h
.text:0000000140041040          cmp     byte ptr [rcx+1], 0
.text:0000000140041044          movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [rax]
.text:0000000140041048          jz    short loc_14004104E
.text:000000014004104A          pxor   xmm0, xmm1
.text:000000014004104E
.text:000000014004104E loc_14004104E:
.text:000000014004104E          movdqu xmm1, xmmword ptr [rcx+18h]
.text:0000000140041053          movsxd r8, dword ptr [rcx+4]
.text:0000000140041057          pxor   xmm1, xmm0
.text:000000014004105B          cmp     r8d, 1
.text:000000014004105F          jle    short loc_14004107C
.text:0000000140041061          lea    rdx, [rcx+28h]
.text:0000000140041065          lea    r9d, [r8-1]
.text:0000000140041069
.text:0000000140041069 loc_140041069:
.text:0000000140041069          movdqu xmm0, xmmword ptr [rdx]
.text:000000014004106D          lea    rdx, [rdx+10h]
.text:0000000140041071          aesenc xmm1, xmm0
.text:0000000140041076          sub    r9, 1
.text:000000014004107A          jnz    short loc_140041069
.text:000000014004107C
```

This piece has both PXOR and AESENC instructions (the last is AES³ encryption instruction). So yes, we found encryption function, RAR uses AES.

There is also another big block of almost contiguous XOR instructions:

```
< ip=0x140043e10 count=0x23006
---
> ip=0x140043e10 count=0x23004
499c510
< ip=0x140043e56 count=0x22ffd
---
> ip=0x140043e56 count=0x23002
```

But, its count is not very different during compressing/encrypting test1.bin/test2.bin. What is on these addresses?

```
.text:0000000140043E07          xor    ecx, r9d
.text:0000000140043E0A          mov    r11d, eax
.text:0000000140043E0D          and    ecx, r10d
.text:0000000140043E10          xor    ecx, r8d
```

³Advanced Encryption Standard

.text:0000000140043E13	rol	eax, 8
.text:0000000140043E16	and	eax, esi
.text:0000000140043E18	ror	r11d, 8
.text:0000000140043E1C	add	edx, 5A827999h
.text:0000000140043E22	ror	r10d, 2
.text:0000000140043E26	add	r8d, 5A827999h
.text:0000000140043E2D	and	r11d, r12d
.text:0000000140043E30	or	r11d, eax
.text:0000000140043E33	mov	eax, ebx

Let's google 5A827999h constant... this looks like SHA-1! But why would RAR use SHA-1 during encryption?

Here is the answer:

In comparison, WinRAR uses its own key derivation scheme that requires ↴
 ↴ password length * 2 + 11)*4096 SHA-1 transformations. 'Thats why it ↴
 ↴ takes longer to brute-force attack encrypted WinRAR archives.

(http://www.tomshardware.com/reviews/password-recovery-gpu_2945-8.html)

This is key scheduling: input password hashed many times and the hash is then used as AES key. This is why we see the count of XOR instruction is almost unchanged during we switched to bigger test file.

This is it, it took couple of hours for me to write this tool and to get at least 3 points: 1) probably checksumming; 2) AES encryption; 3) SHA-1 calculation. The first function is still unknown for me.

Still, this is impressive, because I didn't dig into RAR code (which is proprietary, of course). I didn't even peek into UnRAR source code (which is available).

The files, including test files and RAR executable I've used (win64, 5.40):
<https://beginners.re/current-tree/DBI/XOR/files/>.

10.2 Cracking Minesweeper with PIN

In this book, I wrote about cracking Minesweeper for Windows XP: [8.4 on page 1036](#).

The Minesweeper in Windows Vista and 7 is different: probably it was (re)written to C++, and a cell information is now stored not in global array, but rather in malloc'ed heap blocks.

This is a case when we can try PIN DBI tool.

10.2.1 Intercepting all rand() calls

First, since Minesweeper places mines randomly, it has to call rand() or similar function. Let's intercept all rand() calls: <https://beginners.re/current-tree/DBI/minesweeper/minesweeper1.cpp>.

Now we can run it:

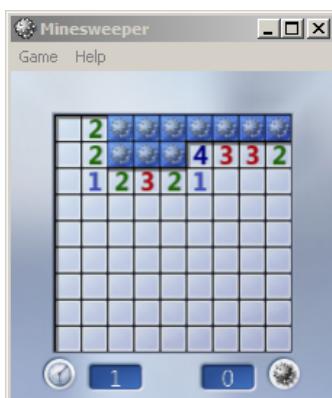
If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
c:\pin-3.2-81205-msvc-windows\pin.exe -t minesweeper1.dll -- C:\PATH\TO\ \
    ↴ MineSweeper.exe
```

During startup, PIN searches for all calls to rand() function and adds a hook right after each call. The hook is the RandAfter() function we defined: it is logging about return value and also about return address. Here is a log I got during run of standard 9*9 configuration (10 mines): <https://beginners.re/current-tree/DBI/minesweeper/minesweeper1.out.10mines>. The rand() function was called many times from several places, but was called from 0x10002770d just 10 times. I switched Minesweeper to 16*16 configuration (40 mines) and rand() was called from 0x10002770d 40 times. So yes, this is our point. When I load minesweeper.exe (from Windows 7) into IDA and PDB from Microsoft website is fetched, the function which calls rand() at 0x10002770d called Board::placeMines().

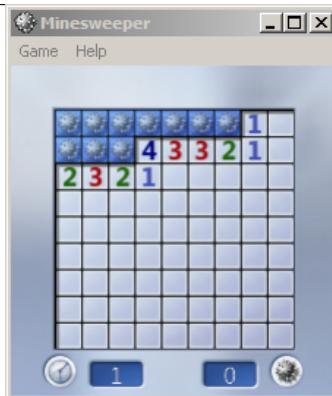
10.2.2 Replacing rand() calls with our function

Let's now try to replace rand() function with our version, let it always return zero: <https://beginners.re/current-tree/DBI/minesweeper/minesweeper2.cpp>. During startup, PIN replaces all calls to rand() to calls to our function, which writes to log and returns zero. OK, I run it, and clicked on leftmost/topmost cell:

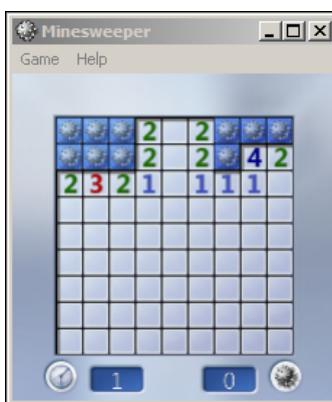


Yes, unlike Minesweeper from Windows XP, mines are placed randomly *after* user's click on cell, so to guarantee there is no mine at the cell user first clicked. So Minesweeper placed mines on cells other than leftmost/topmost (where I clicked).

Now I clicked on rightmost/topmost cell:



This can be some kind of practical joke? I don't know.
I clicked on 5th cell (right at the middle) at the 1st row:



This is nice, because Minesweeper can do some correct placement even with such a broken PRNG!

10.2.3 Peeking into placement of mines

How can we get information about where mines are placed? `rand()`'s result is seems to be useless: it returned zero all the time, but Minesweeper somehow managed to place mines in different cells, though, lined up.

This Minesweeper also written in C++ tradition, so it has no global arrays.

Let us put ourselves in the position of programmer. It has to be loop like:

```
for (int i; i<mines_total; i++)
{
    // get coordinates using rand()
    // put a cell: in other words, modify a block allocated in heap
};
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

How can we get information about heap block which gets modified at the 2nd step?
 What we need to do: 1) track all heap allocations by intercepting malloc()/realloc()/free().
 2) track all memory writes (slow). 3) intercept calls to rand().

Now the algorithm: 1) mark all heap blocks gets modified between 1st and 2nd call to rand() from 0x10002770d; 2) whenever heap block gets freed, dump its contents.

Tracking all memory writes is slow, but after 2nd call to rand(), we don't need to track it (since we've got already a list of blocks of interest at this point), so we turn it off.

Now the code: <https://beginners.re/current-tree/DBI/minesweeper/minesweeper3.cpp>.

As it turns out, only 4 heap blocks gets modified between first two rand() calls, this is how they looks like:

```
free(0x20aa6360)
free(): we have this block in our records, size=0x28
0x20AA6360: 36 00 00 00 4E 00 00 00-2D 00 00 00 29 00 00 00 "6...N...."
  ↴ ...
0x20AA6370: 06 00 00 00 37 00 00 00-35 00 00 00 19 00 00 00 ↵
  ↴ "...7...5...."
0x20AA6380: 46 00 00 00 0B 00 00 00-          "F.....
  ↴ ...
...
free(0x20af9d10)
free(): we have this block in our records, size=0x18
0x20AF9D10: 0A 00 00 00 0A 00 00 00-0A 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 ↵
  ↴ "....."
0x20AF9D20: 60 63 AA 20 00 00 00 00-          ``c. ....
  ↴ ...
...
free(0x20b28b20)
free(): we have this block in our records, size=0x140
0x20B28B20: 02 00 00 00 03 00 00 00-04 00 00 00 05 00 00 00 ↵
  ↴ "....."
0x20B28B30: 07 00 00 00 08 00 00 00-0C 00 00 00 0D 00 00 00 ↵
  ↴ "....."
0x20B28B40: 0E 00 00 00 0F 00 00 00-10 00 00 00 11 00 00 00 ↵
  ↴ "....."
0x20B28B50: 12 00 00 00 13 00 00 00-14 00 00 00 15 00 00 00 ↵
  ↴ "....."
0x20B28B60: 16 00 00 00 17 00 00 00-18 00 00 00 1A 00 00 00 ↵
  ↴ "....."
0x20B28B70: 1B 00 00 00 1C 00 00 00-1D 00 00 00 1E 00 00 00 ↵
  ↴ "....."
0x20B28B80: 1F 00 00 00 20 00 00 00-21 00 00 00 22 00 00 00 ".... ↵
  ↴ ...!... ...
0x20B28B90: 23 00 00 00 24 00 00 00-25 00 00 00 26 00 00 00 "#...$ ↵
  ↴ ...%...&..."
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

0x20B28BA0: 27 00 00 00 28 00 00 00-2A 00 00 00 00 2B 00 00 00 ↵
    ↴ "'...(*...+...""
0x20B28BB0: 2C 00 00 00 2E 00 00 00-2F 00 00 00 30 00 00 00 ↵
    ↴ ",...../...."
0x20B28BC0: 31 00 00 00 32 00 00 00-33 00 00 00 34 00 00 00 ↵
    ↴ "1...2...3...4..."
0x20B28BD0: 38 00 00 00 39 00 00 00-3A 00 00 00 3B 00 00 00 ↵
    ↴ "8...9.....;...."
0x20B28BE0: 3C 00 00 00 3D 00 00 00-3E 00 00 00 3F 00 00 00 ↵
    ↴ "<...=...>...?...."
0x20B28BF0: 40 00 00 00 41 00 00 00-42 00 00 00 43 00 00 00 "@...A...B...C"
    ↴ ...
0x20B28C00: 44 00 00 00 45 00 00 00-47 00 00 00 48 00 00 00 "D...E...G...H"
    ↴ ...
0x20B28C10: 49 00 00 00 4A 00 00 00-4B 00 00 00 4C 00 00 00 "I...J...K...L"
    ↴ ...
0x20B28C20: 4D 00 00 00 4F 00 00 00-50 00 00 00 50 00 00 00 "M...O...P...P"
    ↴ ...
0x20B28C30: 50 00 00 00 50 00 00 00-50 00 00 00 50 00 00 00 "P...P...P...P"
    ↴ ...
0x20B28C40: 50 00 00 00 50 00 00 00-50 00 00 00 50 00 00 00 "P...P...P...P"
    ↴ ...
0x20B28C50: 50 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 "P"
    ↴ ...
...
free(0x20af9cf0)
free(): we have this block in our records, size=0x18
0x20AF9CF0: 43 00 00 00 50 00 00 00-10 00 00 00 20 00 74 00 "C...P..... ."
    ↴ t."
0x20AF9D00: 20 8B B2 20 00 00 00 00-          " ... .... "
    ↴ "

```

We can easily see that the biggest blocks (with size 0x28 and 0x140) are just arrays of values up to $\approx 0x50$. Wait... 0x50 is 80 in decimal representation. And $9*9=81$ (standard minesweeper configuration).

After quick investigation, I've found that each 32-bit element is indeed cell coordinate. A cell is represented using a single number, it's a number inside of 2D-array. Row and column of each mine is decoded like that: $row=n / WIDTH$; $col=n \% HEIGHT$;

So when I tried to decode these two biggest blocks, I've got these cell maps:

```

try_to_dump_cells(). unique elements=0xa
....*..
.*.....
.....*.
....*..
*....*.
**.....
.....*.
.....*..

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

...
try_to_dump_cells(). unique elements=0x44
* .*****.**
. .*****
*****.*.
*****.*****
*****.***
.*****. .
..*****. *
*****. *
*****. **

```

It seems that the first block is just a list of mines placed, while the second block is a list of free cells, but, the second is somewhat out of sync with the first one, and it's negative version of the first one coincides only partially. Nevertheless, the first map is correct - we can peek into it in log file when Minesweeper is still loaded and almost all cells are hidden, and click safely on cells marked as dots here.

So it seems, when user first clicked somewhere, Minesweeper places 10 mines, than destroys the block with a list of it (perhaps, it copies all the data to another block before?), so we can see it during free() call.

Another fact: the method `Array<NodeType>::Add(NodeType)` modifies blocks we observed, and is called from various places, including `Board::placeMines()`. But what is cool: I never got into its details, everything has been resolved using just PIN.

The files: <https://beginners.re/current-tree/DBI/minesweeper>.

10.2.4 Exercise

Try to understand how `rand()`'s result being converted into coordinate(s). As a practical joke, make `rand()` to output such results, so mines will be placed in shape of some symbol or figure.

10.3 Building Pin

Building Pin for Windows may be tricky. This is my working recipe.

- Unpack latest Pin to, say, `C:\pin-3.7\`
- Install latest Cygwin, to, say, `c:\cygwin64`
- Install MSVC 2015 or newer.
- Open file `C:\pin-3.7\source\tools\Config\makefile.default.rules`, replace `mkdir -p $@` to `/bin/mkdir -p $@`
- (If needed) in `C:\pin-3.7\source\tools\SimpleExamples\makefile.rules`, add your pintool to the `TEST_TOOL_ROOTS` list.
- Open "VS2015 x86 Native Tools Command Prompt". Type:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
cd c:\pin-3.7\source\tools\SimpleExamples  
c:\cygwin64\bin\make all TARGET=ia32
```

Now pintools are in c:\pin-3.7\source\tools\SimpleExamples\obj-ia32

- For winx64, use "x64 Native Tools Command Prompt" and run:

```
c:\cygwin64\bin\make all TARGET=intel64
```

- Run pintool:

```
c:\pin-3.7\pin.exe -t C:\pin-3.7\source\tools\SimpleExamples\obj-ia32\↗  
    ↴ XOR_ins.dll -- program.exe arguments
```

10.4 Why “instrumentation”?

Perhaps, this is a term of code profiling. There are at least two methods: 1) "sampling": you break into running code as many times as possible (hundreds per second), and see, where it is executed at the moment; 2) "instrumentation": compiled code is interleaved with other code, which can increment counters, etc.

Perhaps, [DBI](#) tools inherited the term?

Chapter 11

Other things

11.1 Executable files patching

11.1.1 x86 code

Frequent patching tasks are:

- One of the most frequent jobs is to disable some instruction. It is often done by filling it using byte 0x90 ([NOP](#)).
- Conditional jumps, which have an opcode like 74 xx (JZ), can be filled with two [NOPs](#).

It is also possible to disable a conditional jump by writing 0 at the second byte (*jump offset*).

- Another frequent job is to make a conditional jump to always trigger: this can be done by writing 0xEB instead of the opcode, which stands for JMP.
- A function's execution can be disabled by writing RETN (0xC3) at its beginning. This is true for all functions excluding stdcall ([6.1.2 on page 947](#)). While patching stdcall functions, one has to determine the number of arguments (for example, by finding RETN in this function), and use RETN with a 16-bit argument (0xC2).
- Sometimes, a disabled function has to return 0 or 1. This can be done by MOV EAX, 0 or MOV EAX, 1, but it's slightly verbose.
A better way is XOR EAX, EAX (2 bytes 0x31 0xC0) or XOR EAX, EAX / INC EAX (3 bytes 0x31 0xC0 0x40).

A software may be protected against modifications.

This protection is often done by reading the executable code and calculating a checksum. Therefore, the code must be read before protection is triggered.

This can be determined by setting a breakpoint on reading memory.

[tracer](#) has the BPM option for this.

PE executable file relocations ([6.5.2 on page 982](#)) must not be touched while patching, because the Windows loader may overwrite your new code. (They are grayed in Hiew, for example: [fig.1.21](#)).

As a last resort, it is possible to write jumps that circumvent the relocations, or you will have to edit the relocations table.

11.2 Function arguments number statistics

I've always been interesting in what is average number of function arguments.

I've analyzed many Windows 7 32-bit DLLs (crypt32.dll, mfc71.dll, msxml6.dll, msxmlcr100.dll, shell32.dll, user32.dll, d3d11.dll, mshtml.dll, sqlncli11.dll, wininet.dll, mfc120.dll, msvbvm60.dll, ole32.dll, themeui.dll, wmp.dll) (because they use *stdcall* convention, and so it is easy to grep disassembly output just by RETN X).

- no arguments: $\approx 29\%$
 - 1 argument: $\approx 23\%$
 - 2 arguments: $\approx 20\%$
 - 3 arguments: $\approx 11\%$
 - 4 arguments: $\approx 7\%$
 - 5 arguments: $\approx 3\%$
 - 6 arguments: $\approx 2\%$
 - 7 arguments: $\approx 1\%$

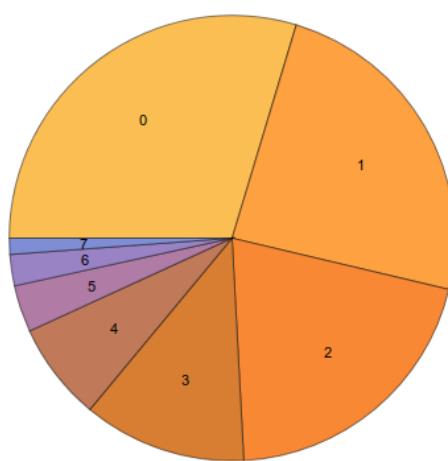


Figure 11.1: Function arguments number statistics

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

This is heavily dependent on programming style and may be very different for other software products.

11.3 Compiler intrinsic

A function specific to a compiler which is not an usual library function. The compiler generates a specific machine code instead of a call to it. It is often a pseudofunction for specific [CPU](#) instruction.

For example, there are no cyclic shift operations in C/C++ languages, but they are present in most [CPUs](#). For programmer's convenience, at least MSVC has pseudofunctions `_rotl()` and `_rotr()`¹ which are translated by the compiler directly to the ROL/ROR x86 instructions.

Another example are functions to generate SSE-instructions right in the code.

Full list of MSVC intrinsics: [MSDN](#).

11.4 Compiler's anomalies

11.4.1 Oracle RDBMS 11.2 and Intel C++ 10.1

Intel C++ 10.1, which was used for Oracle RDBMS 11.2 Linux86 compilation, may emit two JZ in row, and there are no references to the second JZ. The second JZ is thus meaningless.

Listing 11.1: kdli.o from libserver11.a

```
.text:08114CF1          loc_8114CF1: ;  
CODE XREF: __PGOSF539_kdlimemSer+89A  
.text:08114CF1 8B 45 08      mov    eax, [ebp+arg_0] ; __PGOSF539_kdlimemSer+3994  
.text:08114CF4 0F B6 50 14    movzx edx, byte ptr [eax+14h]  
.text:08114CF8 F6 C2 01      test   dl, 1  
.text:08114CFB 0F 85 17 08 00 00 jnz   loc_8115518  
.text:08114D01 85 C9      test   ecx, ecx  
.text:08114D03 0F 84 8A 00 00 00 jz    loc_8114D93  
.text:08114D09 0F 84 09 08 00 00 jz    loc_8115518  
.text:08114D0F 8B 53 08      mov    edx, [ebx+8]  
.text:08114D12 89 55 FC      mov    [ebp+var_4], edx  
.text:08114D15 31 C0      xor    eax, eax  
.text:08114D17 89 45 F4      mov    [ebp+var_C], eax  
.text:08114D1A 50      push   eax  
.text:08114D1B 52      push   edx  
.text:08114D1C E8 03 54 00 00 call   len2nbytes  
.text:08114D21 83 C4 08      add    esp, 8
```

¹ [MSDN](#)

Listing 11.2: from the same code

.text:0811A2A5	loc_811A2A5: ; CODE XREF: kdliSerLengths+11C
.text:0811A2A5	; kdliSerLengths+1C1
.text:0811A2A5 8B 7D 08	mov edi, [ebp+arg_0]
.text:0811A2A8 8B 7F 10	mov edi, [edi+10h]
.text:0811A2AB 0F B6 57 14	movzx edx, byte ptr [edi+14h]
.text:0811A2AF F6 C2 01	test dl, 1
.text:0811A2B2 75 3E	jnz short loc_811A2F2
.text:0811A2B4 83 E0 01	and eax, 1
.text:0811A2B7 74 1F	jz short loc_811A2D8
.text:0811A2B9 74 37	jz short loc_811A2F2
.text:0811A2BB 6A 00	push 0
.text:0811A2BD FF 71 08	push dword ptr [ecx+8]
.text:0811A2C0 E8 5F FE FF FF	call len2nbytes

It is supposedly a code generator bug that was not found by tests, because resulting code works correctly anyway.

Another example from Oracle RDBMS 11.1.0.6.0 for win32.

.text:0051FBF8 85 C0	test eax, eax
.text:0051FBFA 0F 84 8F 00 00 00	jz loc_51FC8F
.text:0051FC00 74 1D	jz short loc_51FC1F

11.4.2 MSVC 6.0

Just found in some old code:

fabs	
fild	[esp+50h+var_34]
fabs	
fxch	st(1) ; first instruction
fxch	st(1) ; second instruction
faddp	st(1), st
fcomp	[esp+50h+var_3C]
fnstsw	ax
test	ah, 41h
jz	short loc_100040B7

The first FXCH instruction swaps ST(0) and ST(1), the second do the same, so both do nothing. This is a program uses MFC42.dll, so it could be MSVC 6.0, 5.0 or maybe even MSVC 4.2 from 1990s.

This pair do nothing, so it probably wasn't caught by MSVC compiler tests. Or maybe I wrong?

11.4.3 ftol2() in MSVC 2012

Just found this in ftol2() standard C/C++ library function (float-to-long conversion routine) in Microsoft Visual Studio 2012.

```

_ftol2    public __ftol2
          proc near
          push   ebp
          mov    ebp, esp
          sub    esp, 20h
          and    esp, 0FFFFFFF0h
          fld    st
          fst    dword ptr [esp+18h]
          fistp  qword ptr [esp+10h]
          fild   qword ptr [esp+10h]
          mov    edx, [esp+18h]
          mov    eax, [esp+10h]
          test   eax, eax
          jz     short integer_QnaN_or_zero

arg_is_not_integer_QnaN:
          fsubp st(1), st
          test  edx, edx
          jns   short positive
          fstp  dword ptr [esp]
          mov   ecx, [esp]
          xor   ecx, 80000000h
          add   ecx, 7FFFFFFFh
          adc   eax, 0
          mov   edx, [esp+14h]
          adc   edx, 0
          jmp   short localexit

positive:
          fstp  dword ptr [esp]
          mov   ecx, [esp]
          add   ecx, 7FFFFFFFh
          sbb   eax, 0
          mov   edx, [esp+14h]
          sbb   edx, 0
          jmp   short localexit

integer_QnaN_or_zero:
          mov   edx, [esp+14h]
          test  edx, 7FFFFFFFh
          jnz   short arg_is_not_integer_QnaN
          fstp  dword ptr [esp+18h] ; first
          fstp  dword ptr [esp+18h] ; second

localexit:
          leave
          retn
_ftol2    endp

```

Note two identical FSTP-s (*float store with pop*) at the end. First I thought it was compiler anomaly (I'm collecting such cases just as someone do with butterflies), but it seems, it's handwritten assembler piece, in msvcrt.lib there is an object file

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

with this function in it, and we can find this string in it:

f:\dd\vctools\crt_bld\SELF_X86\crt\prebuild\tran\i386\ftol2.asm — that was probably a path to the file on developer's computer where mvcrt.lib was built.

So, bug, text editor-induced typo, or it was done by intent? The code working correctly, anyway.

11.4.4 Summary

Other compiler anomalies here in this book: [1.28.2 on page 395](#), [3.10.3 on page 631](#), [3.18.7 on page 682](#), [1.26.7 on page 376](#), [1.18.4 on page 185](#), [1.28.5 on page 416](#).

Such cases are demonstrated here in this book, to show that such compilers errors are possible and sometimes one should not to rack one's brain while thinking why did the compiler generate such strange code.

11.5 Itanium

Although almost failed, Intel Itanium ([IA64](#)) is a very interesting architecture.

While [OOE](#) CPUs decides how to rearrange their instructions and execute them in parallel, [EPIC](#)² was an attempt to shift these decisions to the compiler: to let it group the instructions at the compile stage.

This resulted in notoriously complex compilers.

Here is one sample of [IA64](#) code: simple cryptographic algorithm from the Linux kernel:

Listing 11.3: Linux kernel 3.2.0.4

```
#define TEA_ROUNDS          32
#define TEA_DELTA           0x9e3779b9

static void tea_encrypt(struct crypto_tfm *tfm, u8 *dst, const u8 *src)
{
    u32 y, z, n, sum = 0;
    u32 k0, k1, k2, k3;
    struct tea_ctx *ctx = crypto_tfm_ctx(tfm);
    const __le32 *in = (const __le32 *)src;
    __le32 *out = (__le32 *)dst;

    y = le32_to_cpu(in[0]);
    z = le32_to_cpu(in[1]);

    k0 = ctx->KEY[0];
    k1 = ctx->KEY[1];
    k2 = ctx->KEY[2];
    k3 = ctx->KEY[3];

    n = TEA_ROUNDS;
```

²Explicitly Parallel Instruction Computing

```

    while (n-- > 0) {
        sum += TEA_DELTA;
        y += ((z << 4) + k0) ^ (z + sum) ^ ((z >> 5) + k1);
        z += ((y << 4) + k2) ^ (y + sum) ^ ((y >> 5) + k3);
    }

    out[0] = cpu_to_le32(y);
    out[1] = cpu_to_le32(z);
}

```

Here is how it was compiled:

Listing 11.4: Linux Kernel 3.2.0.4 for Itanium 2 (McKinley)

0090	tea_encrypt:	
0090 08 80 80 41 00 21	adds r16 = 96, r32	// ptr to ctx->z
↳ KEY[2]		
0096 80 C0 82 00 42 00	adds r8 = 88, r32	// ptr to ctx->z
↳ KEY[0]		
009C 00 00 04 00	nop.i 0	
00A0 09 18 70 41 00 21	adds r3 = 92, r32	// ptr to ctx->z
↳ KEY[1]		
00A6 F0 20 88 20 28 00	ld4 r15 = [r34], 4	// load z
00AC 44 06 01 84	adds r32 = 100, r32;;	// ptr to ctx->z
↳ KEY[3]		
00B0 08 98 00 20 10 10	ld4 r19 = [r16]	// r19=k2
00B6 00 01 00 00 42 40	mov r16 = r0	// r0 always ↴
↳ contain zero		
00BC 00 08 CA 00	mov.i r2 = ar.lc	// save lc ↴
↳ register		
00C0 05 70 00 44 10 10		
9E FF FF FF 7F 20	ld4 r14 = [r34]	// load y
00CC 92 F3 CE 6B	movl r17 = 0xFFFFFFFF9E3779B9;;	// TEA_DELTA
00D0 08 00 00 00 01 00	nop.m 0	
00D6 50 01 20 20 20 00	ld4 r21 = [r8]	// r21=k0
00DC F0 09 2A 00	mov.i ar.lc = 31	// TEA_ROUNDS ↴
↳ is 32		
00E0 0A A0 00 06 10 10	ld4 r20 = [r3];;	// r20=k1
00E6 20 01 80 20 20 00	ld4 r18 = [r32]	// r18=k3
00EC 00 00 04 00	nop.i 0	
00F0		
00F0	loc_F0:	
00F0 09 80 40 22 00 20	add r16 = r16, r17	// r16=sum, r17=z
↳ =TEA_DELTA		
00F6 D0 71 54 26 40 80	shladd r29 = r14, 4, r21	// r14=y, r21=z
↳ k0		
00FC A3 70 68 52	extr.u r28 = r14, 5, 27;;	
0100 03 F0 40 1C 00 20	add r30 = r16, r14	
0106 B0 E1 50 00 40 40	add r27 = r28, r20;;	// r20=k1
010C D3 F1 3C 80	xor r26 = r29, r30;;	
0110 0B C8 6C 34 0F 20	xor r25 = r27, r26;;	
0116 F0 78 64 00 40 00	add r15 = r15, r25	// r15=z
011C 00 00 04 00	nop.i 0;;	

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

0120 00 00 00 00 01 00	nop.m 0
0126 80 51 3C 34 29 60	extr.u r24 = r15, 5, 27
012C F1 98 4C 80	shladd r11 = r15, 4, r19 // r19=k2
0130 0B B8 3C 20 00 20	add r23 = r15, r16;;
0136 A0 C0 48 00 40 00	add r10 = r24, r18 // r18=k3
013C 00 00 04 00	nop.i 0;;
0140 0B 48 28 16 0F 20	xor r9 = r10, r11;;
0146 60 B9 24 1E 40 00	xor r22 = r23, r9
014C 00 00 04 00	nop.i 0;;
0150 11 00 00 00 01 00	nop.m 0
0156 E0 70 58 00 40 A0	add r14 = r14, r22
015C A0 FF FF 48	br.cloop.sptk.few loc_F0;;
0160 09 20 3C 42 90 15	st4 [r33] = r15, 4 // store z
0166 00 00 00 02 00 00	nop.m 0
016C 20 08 AA 00	mov.i ar.lc = r2;; // restore lc ↴
↳ register	
0170 11 00 38 42 90 11	st4 [r33] = r14 // store y
0176 00 00 00 02 00 80	nop.i 0
017C 08 00 84 00	br.ret.sptk.many b0;;

First of all, all [IA64](#) instructions are grouped into 3-instruction bundles.

Each bundle has a size of 16 bytes (128 bits) and consists of template code (5 bits) + 3 instructions (41 bits for each).

[IDA](#) shows the bundles as 6+6+4 bytes —you can easily spot the pattern.

All 3 instructions from each bundle usually executes simultaneously, unless one of instructions has a “stop bit”.

Supposedly, Intel and HP engineers gathered statistics on most frequent instruction patterns and decided to bring bundle types ([AKA](#) “templates”): a bundle code defines the instruction types in the bundle. There are 12 of them.

For example, the zeroth bundle type is MII, which implies the first instruction is Memory (load or store), the second and third ones are I (integer instructions).

Another example is the bundle of type 0x1d: MFB: the first instruction is Memory (load or store), the second one is Float ([FPU](#) instruction), and the third is Branch (branch instruction).

If the compiler cannot pick a suitable instruction for the relevant bundle slot, it may insert a [NOP](#): you can see here the nop.i instructions ([NOP](#) at the place where the integer instruction might be) or nop.m (a memory instruction might be at this slot).

[NOPs](#) are inserted automatically when one uses assembly language manually.

And that is not all. Bundles are also grouped.

Each bundle may have a “stop bit”, so all the consecutive bundles with a terminating bundle which has the “stop bit” can be executed simultaneously.

In practice, Itanium 2 can execute 2 bundles at once, resulting in the execution of 6 instructions at once.

So all instructions inside a bundle and a bundle group cannot interfere with each other (i.e., must not have data hazards).

If they do, the results are to be undefined.

Each stop bit is marked in assembly language as two semicolons (;;) after the instruction.

So, the instructions at [90-ac] may be executed simultaneously: they do not interfere. The next group is [b0-cc].

We also see a stop bit at 10c. The next instruction at 110 has a stop bit too.

This implies that these instructions must be executed isolated from all others (as in [CISC](#)).

Indeed: the next instruction at 110 uses the result from the previous one (the value in register r26), so they cannot be executed at the same time.

Apparently, the compiler was not able to find a better way to parallelize the instructions, in other words, to load [CPU](#) as much as possible, hence too much stop bits and [NOPs](#).

Manual assembly programming is a tedious job as well: the programmer has to group the instructions manually.

The programmer is still able to add stop bits to each instructions, but this will degrade the performance that Itanium was made for.

An interesting examples of manual [IA64](#) assembly code can be found in the Linux kernel's sources:

<http://lxr.free-electrons.com/source/arch/ia64/lib/>.

Another introductory paper on Itanium assembly: [Mike Burrell, *Writing Efficient Itanium 2 Assembly Code* (2010)]³, [papasutra of haquebright, *WRITING SHELLCODE FOR IA-64* (2001)]⁴.

Another very interesting Itanium feature is the *speculative execution* and the NaT (“not a thing”) bit, somewhat resembling [NaN](#) numbers:
[MSDN](#).

11.6 8086 memory model

When dealing with 16-bit programs for MS-DOS or Win16 ([8.8.3 on page 1093](#) or [3.34.5 on page 842](#)), we can see that the pointers consist of two 16-bit values. What do they mean? Oh yes, that is another weird MS-DOS and 8086 artifact.

8086/8088 was a 16-bit CPU, but was able to address 20-bit address in RAM (thus being able to access 1MB of external memory).

The external memory address space was divided between [RAM](#) (640KB max), [ROM](#), windows for video memory, EMS cards, etc.

³Also available as <http://yurichev.com/mirrors/RE/itanium.pdf>

⁴Also available as <http://phrack.org/issues/57/5.html>

Let's also recall that 8086/8088 was in fact an inheritor of the 8-bit 8080 CPU.

The 8080 has a 16-bit memory space, i.e., it was able to address only 64KB.

And probably because of reason of old software porting⁵, 8086 can support many 64KB windows simultaneously, placed within the 1MB address space.

This is some kind of a toy-level virtualization.

All 8086 registers are 16-bit, so to address more, special segment registers (CS, DS, ES, SS) were introduced.

Each 20-bit pointer is calculated using the values from a segment register and an address register pair (e.g. DS:BX) as follows:

$$\text{real_address} = (\text{segment_register} \ll 4) + \text{address_register}$$

For example, the graphics (EGA⁶, VGA⁷) video RAM window on old IBM PC-compatibles has a size of 64KB.

To access it, a value of 0xA000 has to be stored in one of the segment registers, e.g. into DS.

Then DS:0 will address the first byte of video RAM and DS:0xFFFF — the last byte of RAM.

The real address on the 20-bit address bus, however, will range from 0xA0000 to 0xFFFFF.

The program may contain hard-coded addresses like 0x1234, but the OS may need to load the program at arbitrary addresses, so it recalculates the segment register values in a way that the program does not have to care where it's placed in the RAM.

So, any pointer in the old MS-DOS environment in fact consisted of the segment address and the address inside segment, i.e., two 16-bit values. 20-bit was enough for that, though, but we needed to recalculate the addresses very often: passing more information on the stack seemed a better space/convenience balance.

By the way, because of all this it was not possible to allocate a memory block larger than 64KB.

The segment registers were reused at 80286 as selectors, serving a different function.

When the 80386 CPU and computers with bigger RAM were introduced, MS-DOS was still popular, so the DOS extenders emerged: these were in fact a step toward a "serious" OS, switching the CPU in protected mode and providing much better memory APIs for the programs which still needed to run under MS-DOS.

Widely popular examples include DOS/4GW (the DOOM video game was compiled for it), Phar Lap, PMODE.

By the way, the same way of addressing memory was used in the 16-bit line of Windows 3.x, before Win32.

⁵The author is not 100% sure here

⁶Enhanced Graphics Adapter

⁷Video Graphics Array

11.7 Basic blocks reordering

11.7.1 Profile-guided optimization

This optimization method can move some [basic block](#)s to another section of the executable binary file.

Obviously, there are parts of a function which are executed more frequently (e.g., loop bodies) and less often (e.g., error reporting code, exception handlers).

The compiler adds instrumentation code into the executable, then the developer runs it with a lot of tests to collect statistics.

Then the compiler, with the help of the statistics gathered, prepares final the executable file with all infrequently executed code moved into another section.

As a result, all frequently executed function code is compacted, and that is very important for execution speed and cache usage.

An example from Oracle RDBMS code, which was compiled with Intel C++:

Listing 11.5: orageneric11.dll (win32)

```

public _skgfsync
proc near

; address 0x6030D86A

        db      66h
        nop
        push   ebp
        mov    ebp, esp
        mov    edx, [ebp+0Ch]
        test   edx, edx
        jz     short loc_6030D884
        mov    eax, [edx+30h]
        test   eax, 400h
        jnz    __VInfreq_skgfsync ; write to log
continue:
        mov    eax, [ebp+8]
        mov    edx, [ebp+10h]
        mov    dword ptr [eax], 0
        lea    eax, [edx+0Fh]
        and    eax, 0FFFFFFFCh
        mov    ecx, [eax]
        cmp    ecx, 45726963h
        jnz    error           ; exit with error
        mov    esp, ebp
        pop    ebp
        retn

_skgfsync endp

...
; address 0x60B953F0

```

```

__VInfreq__skgfsync:
    mov    eax, [edx]
    test   eax, eax
    jz     continue
    mov    ecx, [ebp+10h]
    push   ecx
    mov    ecx, [ebp+8]
    push   edx
    push   ecx
    push   offset ...
"skgfsync(se=0x%x, ctx=0x%x, iov=0x%x)\n"
    push   dword ptr [edx+4]
    call   dword ptr [eax] ; write to log
    add    esp, 14h
    jmp    continue

error:
    mov    edx, [ebp+8]
    mov    dword ptr [edx], 69AAh ; 27050 "function called with
invalid FIB/IOV structure"
    mov    eax, [eax]
    mov    [edx+4], eax
    mov    dword ptr [edx+8], 0FA4h ; 4004
    mov    esp, ebp
    pop    ebp
    retn

; END OF FUNCTION CHUNK FOR _skgfsync

```

The distance of addresses between these two code fragments is almost 9 MB.

All infrequently executed code was placed at the end of the code section of the DLL file, among all function parts.

This part of the function was marked by the Intel C++ compiler with the VInfreq prefix.

Here we see that a part of the function that writes to a log file (presumably in case of error or warning or something like that) which was probably not executed very often when Oracle's developers gathered statistics (if it was executed at all).

The writing to log basic block eventually returns the control flow to the “hot” part of the function.

Another “infrequent” part is the [basic block](#) returning error code 27050.

In Linux ELF files, all infrequently executed code is moved by Intel C++ into the separate `text.unlikely` section, leaving all “hot” code in the `text.hot` section.

From a reverse engineer’s perspective, this information may help to split the function into its core and error handling parts.

11.8 My experience with Hex-Rays 2.2.0

11.8.1 Bugs

There are couple of bugs.

First of all, Hex-Rays is getting lost when FPU instructions are interleaved (by compiler codegenerator) with others.

For example, this:

```
f          proc    near
           lea      eax, [esp+4]
           fild     dword ptr [eax]
           lea      eax, [esp+8]
           fild     dword ptr [eax]
           fabs
           fcompp
           fnstsw  ax
           test    ah, 1
           jz     l01
           mov     eax, 1
           retn
l01:
           mov     eax, 2
           retn
f          endp
```

...will be correctly decompiled to:

```
signed int __cdecl f(signed int a1, signed int a2)
{
    signed int result; // eax@2

    if ( fabs((double)a2) >= (double)a1 )
        result = 2;
    else
        result = 1;
    return result;
}
```

But let's comment one of the instructions at the end:

```
...
l01:
    ;mov eax, 2
    retn
...
```

...we're getting an obvious bug:

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
void __cdecl f(char a1, char a2)
{
    fabs((double)a2);
}
```

This is another bug:

```
extrn f1:dword
extrn f2:dword

f          proc    near
            fld     dword ptr [esp+4]
            fadd   dword ptr [esp+8]
            fst    dword ptr [esp+12]
            fcomp  ds:const_100
            fld     dword ptr [esp+16]      ; comment this instruction
            and it will be OK
            fnstsw ax
            test   ah, 1
            jnz    short l01
            call   f1
            retn
l01:
            call   f2
            retn
f          endp
...
const_100 dd 42C80000h           ; 100.0
```

Result:

```
int __cdecl f(float a1, float a2, float a3, float a4)
{
    double v5; // st7@1
    char v6; // c0@1
    int result; // eax@2

    v5 = a4;
    if ( v6 )
        result = f2(v5);
    else
        result = f1(v5);
    return result;
}
```

v6 variable has *char* type and if you'll try to compile this code, compiler will warn you about variable usage before assignment.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Another bug: FPATAN instruction is correctly decompiled into `atan2()`, but arguments are swapped.

11.8.2 Odd peculiarities

Hex-Rays too often promotes 32-bit *int* to 64-bit one. Here is example:

```
f          proc    near
           mov      eax, [esp+4]
           cdq
           xor      eax, edx
           sub      eax, edx
; EAX=abs(a1)

           sub      eax, [esp+8]
; EAX=EAX-a2

; EAX at this point somehow gets promoted to 64-bit (RAX)

           cdq
           xor      eax, edx
           sub      eax, edx
; EAX=abs(abs(a1)-a2)

           retn

f          endp
```

Result:

```
int __cdecl f(int a1, int a2)
{
    __int64 v2; // rax@1

    v2 = abs(a1) - a2;
    return (HIDWORD(v2) ^ v2) - HIDWORD(v2);
}
```

Perhaps, this is result of CDQ instruction? I'm not sure. Anyway, whenever you see `_int64` type in 32-bit code, pay attention.

This is also weird:

```
f          proc    near
           mov      esi, [esp+4]
           lea      ebx, [esi+10h]
           cmp      esi, ebx
           jge      short l00

           cmp      esi, 1000
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        jg      short l00
        mov     eax, 2
        retn

l00:
        mov     eax, 1
        retn

f      endp

```

Result:

```

signed int __cdecl f(signed int a1)
{
    signed int result; // eax@3

    if ( __OFSUB__(a1, a1 + 16) ^ 1 && a1 <= 1000 )
        result = 2;
    else
        result = 1;
    return result;
}

```

The code is correct, but needs manual intervention.

Sometimes, Hex-Rays doesn't fold (or reduce) division by multiplication code:

```

f      proc   near

        mov     eax, [esp+4]
        mov     edx, 2AAAAAAABh
        imul   edx
        mov     eax, edx

        retn

f      endp

```

Result:

```

int __cdecl f(int a1)
{
    return (unsigned __int64)(715827883i64 * a1) >> 32;
}

```

This can be folded (rewritten) manually.

Many of these peculiarities can be solved by manual reordering of instructions, re-compiling assembly code, and then feeding it to Hex-Rays again.

11.8.3 Silence

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
extrn some_func:dword

f          proc    near
            mov     ecx, [esp+4]
            mov     eax, [esp+8]
            push    eax
            call    some_func
            add    esp, 4

            ; use ECX
            mov     eax, ecx

            retn

f          endp
```

Result:

```
int __cdecl f(int a1, int a2)
{
    int v2; // ecx@1

    some_func(a2);
    return v2;
}
```

v2 variable (from ECX) is lost ...Yes, this code is incorrect (ECX value doesn't saved during call to another function), but it would be good for Hex-Rays to give a warning.

Another one:

```
extrn some_func:dword

f          proc    near
            call    some_func
            jnz    l01

            mov     eax, 1
            retn

l01:
            mov     eax, 2
            retn

f          endp
```

Result:

```
signed int f()
{
    char v0; // zf@1
    signed int result; // eax@2
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
[<book@beginners.re>](mailto:book@beginners.re). Thanks!

```

some_func();
if ( v0 )
    result = 1;
else
    result = 2;
return result;
}

```

Again, warning would be great.

Anyway, whenever you see variable of *char* type, or variable which is used without initialization, this is clear sign that something went wrong and needs manual intervention.

11.8.4 Comma

Comma in C/C++ has a bad fame, because it can lead to a confusing code.

Quick quiz, what does this C/C++ function return?

```

int f()
{
    return 1, 2;
}

```

It's 2: when compiler encounters comma-expression, it generates code which executes all sub-expressions, and *returns* value of the last sub-expression.

I've seen something like that in production code:

```

if (cond)
    return global_var=123, 456; // 456 is returned
else
    return global_var=789, 321; // 321 is returned

```

Apparently, programmer wanted to make code slightly shorter without additional curly brackets. In other words, comma allows to pack couple of expressions into one, without forming statement/code block inside of curly brackets.

Comma in C/C++ is close to begin in Scheme/Racket: <https://docs.racket-lang.org/guide/begin.html>.

Perhaps, the only widely accepted usage of comma is in *for()* statements:

```

char *s="hello, world";
for(int i=0; *s; s++, i++);
// i = string length

```

Both *s++* and *i++* are executed at each loop iteration.

Read more: <https://stackoverflow.com/q/52550>.

I'm writing all this because Hex-Rays produces (at least in my case) code which is rich with both commas and short-circuit expressions. For example, this is real output from Hex-Rays:

```
if ( a >= b || (c = a, (d[a] - e) >> 2 > f) )
{
    ...
}
```

This is correct, it compiles and works, and let god help you to understand it. Here is it rewritten:

```
if (cond1 || (comma_expr, cond2))
{
    ...
}
```

Short-circuit is effective here: first *cond1* is checked, if it's *true*, *if()* body is executed, the rest of *if()* expression is ignored completely. If *cond1* is *false*, *comma_expr* is executed (in the previous example, *a* gets copied to *c*), then *cond2* is checked. If *cond2* is *true*, *if()* body gets executed, or not. In other words, *if()* body gets executed if *cond1* is *true* or *cond2* is *true*, but if the latter is *true*, *comma_expr* is also executed.

Now you can see why comma is so notorious.

A word about short-circuit. A common beginner's misconception is that sub-conditions are checked in some unspecified order, which is not true. In a *a | b | c* expression, *a*, *b* and *c* gets evaluated in unspecified order, so that is why *||* has also been added to C/C++, to apply short-circuit explicitly.

11.8.5 Data types

Data types is a problem for decompilers.

Hex-Rays can be blind to arrays in local stack, if they weren't set correctly before decompilation. Same story about global arrays.

Another problem is too big functions, where a single slot in local stack can be used by several variables across function's execution. It's not a rare case when a slot is used for *int*-variable, then for pointer, then for *float*-variable. Hex-Rays correctly decompiles it: it creates a variable with some type, then cast it to another type in various parts of functions. This problem has been solved by me by manual splitting big function into several smaller. Just make local variables as global ones, etc, etc. And don't forget about tests.

11.8.6 Long and messed expressions

Sometimes, during rewriting, you can end up with long and hard to understand expressions in *if()* constructs, like:

```
if ((! (v38 && v30 <= 5 && v27 != -1)) && ((! (v38 && v30 <= 5) && v27 != -1) || (v24 >= 5 || v26)) && v25)
{
    ...
}
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
}
```

Wolfram Mathematica can minimize some of them, using BooleanMinimize[] function:

```
In[1]:= BooleanMinimize[(! (v38 && v30 <= 5 && v27 != -1)) && v38 && v30 <= 5 && v25 == 0]
Out[1]:= v38 && v25 == 0 && v27 == -1 && v30 <= 5
```

There is even better way, to find common subexpressions:

```
In[2]:= Experimental`OptimizeExpression[(! (v38 && v30 <= 5 &&
v27 != -1)) && ((! (v38 && v30 <= 5) &&
v27 != -1) || (v24 >= 5 || v26)) && v25]
Out[2]= Experimental`OptimizedExpression[
Block[{Compile`$1, Compile`$2}, Compile`$1 = v30 <= 5;
Compile`$2 =
v27 != -1; ! (v38 && Compile`$1 &&
Compile`$2) && ((! (v38 && Compile`$1) && Compile`$2) || v24 >= 5 || v26) && v25]]
```

Mathematica has added two new variables: Compile`\$1 and Compile`\$2, values of which are to be used several times in expression. So we can add two additional variables.

11.8.7 De Morgan's laws and decompilation

Sometimes a compiler's optimizer can use De Morgan's laws to make code shorter/-faster.

For example, this:

```
void f(int a, int b, int c, int d)
{
    if (a>0 && b>0)
        printf ("both a and b are positive\n");
    else if (c>0 && d>0)
        printf ("both c and d are positive\n");
    else
        printf ("something else\n");
}
```

... looks pretty innocent, when compiled by optimizing GCC 5.4.0 x64:

```
; int __fastcall f(int a, int b, int c, int d)
    public f
f
    proc near
        test    edi, edi
        jle     short loc_8
        test    esi, esi
        jg      short loc_30
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

loc_8:
        test    edx, edx
        jle     short loc_20
        test    ecx, ecx
        jle     short loc_20
        mov     edi, offset s ; "both c and d are positive"
        jmp     puts

loc_20:
        mov     edi, offset aSomethingElse ; "something else"
        jmp     puts

loc_30:
        mov     edi, offset aAAndBPositive ; "both a and b are
positive"
loc_35:
        jmp     puts
f           endp

```

... also looks innocent, but Hex-Rays 2.2.0 cannot clearly see that both AND operations were actually used in the source code:

```

int __fastcall f(int a, int b, int c, int d)
{
    int result;

    if ( a > 0 && b > 0 )
    {
        result = puts("both a and b are positive");
    }
    else if ( c <= 0 || d <= 0 )
    {
        result = puts("something else");
    }
    else
    {
        result = puts("both c and d are positive");
    }
    return result;
}

```

The $c \leq 0 \text{ || } d \leq 0$ expression is inversion of $c > 0 \text{ && } d > 0$ since $\overline{A \cup B} = \overline{A} \cap \overline{B}$ and $\overline{A \cap B} = \overline{A} \cup \overline{B}$, in other words, $!(\text{cond1} \text{ || } \text{cond2}) == !\text{cond1} \text{ && } !\text{cond2}$ and $!(\text{cond1} \text{ && } \text{cond2}) == !\text{cond1} \text{ || } !\text{cond2}$.

These rules are worth to be kept in mind, since this compiler optimization is used heavily almost everywhere.

Sometimes it's good idea to invert a condition, in order to understand a code better. This is a piece of a real code decompiled by Hex-Rays:

```
for (int i=0; i<12; i++)
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```
{
    if (v1[i-12] != 0.0 || v1[i] != 0.0)
    {
        v108=min(v108, (float)v0[i*24 -2]);
        v113=max(v113, (float)v0[i*24]);
    };
}
```

... it can be rewritten like:

```
for (int i=0; i<12; i++)
{
    if (v1[i-12] == 0.0 && v1[i] == 0.0)
        continue;

    v108=min(v108, (float)v0[i*24 -2]);
    v113=max(v113, (float)v0[i*24]);
}
```

Which is better? I don't know yet, but for better understanding, it's good to take a look on both versions.

11.8.8 My plan

- Split big functions (and don't forget about tests). Sometimes it's very helpful to form new functions out of big loop bodies.
- Check/set data type of variables, arrays, etc.
- If you see odd result, *dangling* variable (which used before initialization), try to swap instructions manually, recompile it and feed to Hex-Rays again.

11.8.9 Summary

Nevertheless, quality of Hex-Rays 2.2.0 is very, very good. It makes life way easier.

11.9 Cyclomatic complexity

The term is used to measure complexity of a function. Complex functions are usually evil, because they are hard to maintain, hard to test, etc.

There are several heuristics to measure it.

For example, we can find in Linux kernel coding style⁸:

Now, some people will claim that having 8-character indentations makes the code move too far to the right, and makes it hard to read on a 80-character terminal screen. The answer to that is that if you

⁸<https://www.kernel.org/doc/html/v4.10/process/coding-style.html>

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

need more than 3 levels of indentation, you're screwed anyway, and should fix your program.

...

Functions should be short and sweet, and do just one thing. They should fit on one or two screenfuls of text (the ISO/ANSI screen size is 80x24, as we all know), and do one thing and do that well.

The maximum length of a function is inversely proportional to the complexity and indentation level of that function. So, if you have a conceptually simple function that is just one long (but simple) case-statement, where you have to do lots of small things for a lot of different cases, it's OK to have a longer function.

However, if you have a complex function, and you suspect that a less-than-gifted first-year high-school student might not even understand what the function is all about, you should adhere to the maximum limits all the more closely. Use helper functions with descriptive names (you can ask the compiler to in-line them if you think it's performance-critical, and it will probably do a better job of it than you would have done).

Another measure of the function is the number of local variables. They shouldn't exceed 5-10, or you're doing something wrong. Rethink the function, and split it into smaller pieces. A human brain can generally easily keep track of about 7 different things, anything more and it gets confused. You know you're brilliant, but maybe you'd like to understand what you did 2 weeks from now.

In JPL Institutional Coding Standard for the C Programming Language ⁹:

Functions should be no longer than 60 lines of text and define no more than 6 parameters.

A function should not be longer than what can be printed on a single sheet of paper in a standard reference format with one line per statement and one line per declaration. Typically, this means no more than about 60 lines of code per function. Long lists of function parameters similarly compromise code clarity and should be avoided.

Each function should be a logical unit in the code that is understandable and verifiable as a unit. It is much harder to understand a logical unit that spans multiple screens on a computer display or multiple pages when printed. Excessively long functions are often a sign of poorly structured code.

Now let's back to cyclomatic complexity.

Without diving deep into graph theory: there are basic blocks and links between them. For example, this is how IDA shows BB¹⁰'s and links (as arrows). Just click space and you'll see this: [1.18 on page 115](#). Each BB is also called vertex or node

⁹https://yurichev.com/mirrors/C/JPL_Coding_Standard_C.pdf

¹⁰Basic Block

in graph theory. Each link - edge.

There are at least two popular ways to calculate cyclomatic complexity: 1) edges - nodes + 2 2) edges - nodes + number of exits (RET instructions)

As of IDA example below, there are 4 **BBs**, so that is 4 nodes. But there are also 4 links and 1 return instruction. By 1st rule, this is 2, by the second: 1.

The bigger the number, the more complex your function and things go from bad to worse. As you can see, additional exit (return instructions) make things even worse, as well as additional links between nodes (including additional goto's).

I wrote the simple IDAPython script (<https://beginners.re/current-tree/other/cyclomatic/cyclomatic.py>) to measure it. Here is result for Linux kernel 4.11 (most complex functions in it):

```
1829c0 do_check edges=937 nodes=574 rets=1 E-N+2=365 E-N+rets=364
2effe0 ext4_fill_super edges=862 nodes=568 rets=1 E-N+2=296 E-N+rets=295
5d92e0 wm5110_readable_register edges=661 nodes=369 rets=2 E-N+2=294 E-N+2
    ↴ rets=294
277650 do_blockdev_direct_IO edges=771 nodes=507 rets=1 E-N+2=266 E-N+rets=2
    ↴ =265
10f7c0 load_module edges=711 nodes=465 rets=1 E-N+2=248 E-N+rets=247
787730 dev_ethtool edges=559 nodes=315 rets=1 E-N+2=246 E-N+rets=245
84e440 do_ipv6_setsockopt edges=468 nodes=237 rets=1 E-N+2=233 E-N+rets=232
72c3c0 mmc_init_card edges=593 nodes=365 rets=1 E-N+2=230 E-N+rets=229
...
...
```

(Full list: https://beginners.re/current-tree/other/cyclomatic/linux_4.11_sorted.txt)

This is source code of some of them: [do_check\(\)](#), [ext4_fill_super\(\)](#), [do_blockdev_direct_IO\(\)](#), [do_jit\(\)](#).

Most complex functions in Windows 7 ntoskrnl.exe file:

```
140569400 sub_140569400 edges=3070 nodes=1889 rets=1 E-N+2=1183 E-N+rets=2
    ↴ =1182
14007c640 MmAccessFault edges=2256 nodes=1424 rets=1 E-N+2=834 E-N+rets=833
1401a0410 FsRtlMdlReadCompleteDevEx edges=1241 nodes=752 rets=1 E-N+2=491 E-
    ↴ -N+rets=490
14008c190 MmProbeAndLockPages edges=983 nodes=623 rets=1 E-N+2=362 E-N+rets=2
    ↴ =361
14037fd10 ExpQuerySystemInformation edges=995 nodes=671 rets=1 E-N+2=326 E-
    ↴ N+rets=325
140197260 MmProbeAndLockSelectedPages edges=875 nodes=551 rets=1 E-N+2=326 ↴
    ↴ E-N+rets=325
140362a50 NtSetInformationProcess edges=880 nodes=586 rets=1 E-N+2=296 E-N+
    ↴ rets=295
...
....
```

(Full list: https://beginners.re/current-tree/other/cyclomatic/win7_ntoskrnl_sorted.txt)

From a bug hunter's standpoint, complex functions are prone to have bugs, so an attention should be paid to them.

Read more about it: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyclomatic_complexity, <http://wiki.c2.com/?CyclomaticComplexityMetric>.

Measuring cyclomatic complexity in MSVS (C#): <https://blogs.msdn.microsoft.com/zainab/2011/05/17/code-metrics-cyclomatic-complexity/>.

Couple of other Python scripts for measuring cyclomatic complexity in IDA: http://www.openrce.org/articles/full_view/11, <https://github.com/mxmssh/IDAmetrics> (incl. other metrics).

GCC plugin: https://github.com/ephox-gcc-plugins/cyclomatic_complexity.

Chapter 12

Books/blogs worth reading

12.1 Books and other materials

12.1.1 Reverse Engineering

- Eldad Eilam, *Reversing: Secrets of Reverse Engineering*, (2005)
- Bruce Dang, Alexandre Gazet, Elias Bachaalany, Sébastien Josse, *Practical Reverse Engineering: x86, x64, ARM, Windows Kernel, Reversing Tools, and Obfuscation*, (2014)
- Michael Sikorski, Andrew Honig, *Practical Malware Analysis: The Hands-On Guide to Dissecting Malicious Software*, (2012)
- Chris Eagle, *IDA Pro Book*, (2011)
- Reginald Wong, *Mastering Reverse Engineering: Re-engineer your ethical hacking skills*, (2018)

(Outdated, but still interesting) Pavol Cerven, *Crackproof Your Software: Protect Your Software Against Crackers*, (2002).

Also, Kris Kaspersky's books.

12.1.2 Windows

- Mark Russinovich, *Microsoft Windows Internals*
- Peter Ferrie – The “Ultimate” Anti-Debugging Reference¹

Blogs:

- Microsoft: Raymond Chen
- nynaeve.net

¹<http://pferrie.host22.com/papers/antidebug.pdf>

12.1.3 C/C++

- Brian W. Kernighan, Dennis M. Ritchie, *The C Programming Language*, 2ed, (1988)
- ISO/IEC 9899:TC3 (C C99 standard), (2007)²
- Bjarne Stroustrup, *The C++ Programming Language*, 4th Edition, (2013)
- C++11 standard³
- Agner Fog, *Optimizing software in C++* (2015)⁴
- Marshall Cline, *C++ FAQ*⁵
- Dennis Yurichev, *C/C++ programming language notes*⁶
- JPL Institutional Coding Standard for the C Programming Language⁷

12.1.4 x86 / x86-64

- Intel manuals⁸
- AMD manuals⁹
- Agner Fog, *The microarchitecture of Intel, AMD and VIA CPUs*, (2016)¹⁰
- Agner Fog, *Calling conventions* (2015)¹¹
- *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Optimization Reference Manual*, (2014)
- *Software Optimization Guide for AMD Family 16h Processors*, (2013)

Somewhat outdated, but still interesting to read:

Michael Abrash, *Graphics Programming Black Book*, 1997¹² (he is known for his work on low-level optimization for such projects as Windows NT 3.1 and id Quake).

12.1.5 ARM

- ARM manuals¹³
- *ARM(R) Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R edition*, (2012)

²Also available as <http://www.open-std.org/jtc1/sc22/WG14/www/docs/n1256.pdf>

³Also available as <http://www.open-std.org/jtc1/sc22/wg21/docs/papers/2013/n3690.pdf>.

⁴Also available as http://agner.org/optimize/optimizing_cpp.pdf.

⁵Also available as <http://www.parashift.com/c++-faq-lite/index.html>

⁶Also available as <http://yurichev.com/C-book.html>

⁷Also available as https://yurichev.com/mirrors/C/JPL_Coding_Standard_C.pdf

⁸Also available as <http://www.intel.com/content/www/us/en/processors/architectures-software-developer-manuals.html>

⁹Also available as <http://developer.amd.com/resources/developer-guides-manuals/>

¹⁰Also available as <http://agner.org/optimize/microarchitecture.pdf>

¹¹Also available as http://www.agner.org/optimize/calling_conventions.pdf

¹²Also available as <https://github.com/jagregory/abrash-black-book>

¹³Also available as http://infocenter.arm.com/help/index.jsp?topic=/com.arm.doc_subset_architecture.reference/index.html

-
- [ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv8, for ARMv8-A architecture profile, (2013)]¹⁴
 - Advanced RISC Machines Ltd, *The ARM Cookbook*, (1994)¹⁵

12.1.6 Assembly language

Richard Blum — Professional Assembly Language.

12.1.7 Java

[Tim Lindholm, Frank Yellin, Gilad Bracha, Alex Buckley, *The Java(R) Virtual Machine Specification / Java SE 7 Edition*] ¹⁶.

12.1.8 UNIX

Eric S. Raymond, *The Art of UNIX Programming*, (2003)

12.1.9 Programming in general

- Brian W. Kernighan, Rob Pike, *Practice of Programming*, (1999)
- Henry S. Warren, *Hacker's Delight*, (2002). Some people say tricks and hacks from the book are not relevant today because they were good only for RISC CPUs, where branching instructions are expensive. Nevertheless, these can help immensely to understand boolean algebra and what all the mathematics near it.

12.1.10 Cryptography

- Bruce Schneier, *Applied Cryptography*, (John Wiley & Sons, 1994)
- (Free) Ivh, *Crypto 101*¹⁷
- (Free) Dan Boneh, Victor Shoup, *A Graduate Course in Applied Cryptography*¹⁸.

12.1.11 Something even easier

For those who find this book too hard and technical, this is even gentler introduction to low-level internals of computing devices: “Code: The Hidden Language of Computer Hardware and Software” by Charles Petzold.

Another is a comic book (from 1983) for kids¹⁹, devoted to 6502 and Z80 CPUs.

¹⁴Also available as [http://yurichev.com/mirrors/ARMv8-A_Architecture_Reference_Manual_\(Issue_A.a\).pdf](http://yurichev.com/mirrors/ARMv8-A_Architecture_Reference_Manual_(Issue_A.a).pdf)

¹⁵Also available as [https://yurichev.com/ref/ARM%20Cookbook%20\(1994\)/](https://yurichev.com/ref/ARM%20Cookbook%20(1994)/)

¹⁶Also available as <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/specs/jvms/se7/jvms7.pdf>; <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/specs/jvms/se7/html/>

¹⁷Also available as <https://www.crypto101.io/>

¹⁸Also available as <https://crypto.stanford.edu/~dabo/cryptobook/>

¹⁹<https://yurichev.com/mirrors/machine-code-for-beginners.pdf>

Chapter 13

Communities

There are two excellent RE¹-related subreddits on reddit.com: [reddit.com/r/ReverseEngineering/](https://www.reddit.com/r/ReverseEngineering/) and [reddit.com/r/remath](https://www.reddit.com/r/remath) (on the topics for the intersection of RE and mathematics).

There is also a RE part of the Stack Exchange website: reverseengineering.stackexchange.com.

On IRC there are ##re and ##asm channels on FreeNode².

¹Reverse Engineering
²freenode.net

Afterword

13.1 Questions?

Do not hesitate to mail any questions to the author:
`<book@beginners.re>`. Do you have any suggestion on new content for to the book?
Please do not hesitate to send any corrections (including grammar (you see how horrible my English is?)), etc.

The author is working on the book a lot, so the page and listing numbers, etc., are changing very rapidly. Please do not refer to page and listing numbers in your emails to me. There is a much simpler method: make a screenshot of the page, in a graphics editor underline the place where you see the error, and send it to the author. He'll fix it much faster. And if you familiar with git and \LaTeX you can fix the error right in the source code:

<https://beginners.re/src/>.

Do not worry to bother me while writing me about any petty mistakes you found, even if you are not very confident. I'm writing for beginners, after all, so beginners' opinions and comments are crucial for my job.

Appendix

.1 x86

.1.1 Terminology

Common for 16-bit (8086/80286), 32-bit (80386, etc.), 64-bit.

byte 8-bit. The DB assembly directive is used for defining variables and arrays of bytes. Bytes are passed in the 8-bit part of registers: AL/BL/CL/DL/AH/BH/CH/DH/SIL/DIL/R*L.

word 16-bit. DW assembly directive —”—. Words are passed in the 16-bit part of the registers:

AX/BX/CX/DX/SI/DI/R*W.

double word (“dword”) 32-bit. DD assembly directive —”—. Double words are passed in registers (x86) or in the 32-bit part of registers (x64). In 16-bit code, double words are passed in 16-bit register pairs.

quad word (“qword”) 64-bit. DQ assembly directive —”—. In 32-bit environment, quad words are passed in 32-bit register pairs.

tbyte (10 bytes) 80-bit or 10 bytes (used for IEEE 754 FPU registers).

paragraph (16 bytes)—term was popular in MS-DOS environment.

Data types of the same width (BYTE, WORD, DWORD) are also the same in Windows API.

.1.2 General purpose registers

It is possible to access many registers by byte or 16-bit word parts.

It is all inheritance from older Intel CPUs (up to the 8-bit 8080) still supported for backward compatibility. Older 8-bit CPUs (8080) had 16-bit registers divided by two.

Programs written for 8080 could access the low byte part of 16-bit registers, high byte part or the whole 16-bit register.

Perhaps, this feature was left in 8086 as a helper for easier porting.

This feature is usually not present in RISC CPUs.

Registers prefixed with R- appeared in x86-64, and those prefixed with E—in 80386.

Thus, R-registers are 64-bit, and E-registers—32-bit.

8 more GPR’s were added in x86-64: R8-R15.

N.B.: In the Intel manuals the byte parts of these registers are prefixed by L, e.g.: R8L, but IDA names these registers by adding the B suffix, e.g.: R8B.

RAX/EAX/AX/AL

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RAX ^{x64}							
EAX							
AX							
AH AL							

AKA accumulator. The result of a function is usually returned via this register.

RBX/EBX/BX/BL

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RBX ^{x64}							
EBX							
BX							
BH BL							

RCX/ECX/CX/CL

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RCX ^{x64}							
ECX							
CX							
CH CL							

AKA counter: in this role it is used in REP prefixed instructions and also in shift instructions (SHL/SHR/RxL/RxR).

RDX/EDX/DX/DL

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RDX ^{x64}							
EDX							
DX							
DH DL							

RSI/ESI/SI/SIL

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RSI ^{x64}							
ESI							
SI							
SIL ^{x64}							

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

AKA “source index”. Used as source in the instructions REP MOVSx, REP CMPSx.

RDI/EDI/DI/DIL

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RDI ^{x64}							
EDI							
DI							
DIL ^{x64}							

AKA “destination index”. Used as a pointer to the destination in the instructions REP MOVSx, REP STOSx.

R8/R8D/R8W/R8L

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R8							
R8D							
R8W							
R8L							

R9/R9D/R9W/R9L

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R9							
R9D							
R9W							
R9L							

R10/R10D/R10W/R10L

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R10							
R10D							
R10W							
R10L							

R11/R11D/R11W/R11L

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R11							
R11D							
R11W							
R11L							

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

R12/R12D/R12W/R12L

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R12							
R12D							
R12W							
R12L							

R13/R13D/R13W/R13L

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R13							
R13D							
R13W							
R13L							

R14/R14D/R14W/R14L

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R14							
R14D							
R14W							
R14L							

R15/R15D/R15W/R15L

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
R15							
R15D							
R15W							
R15L							

RSP/ESP/SP/SPL

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RSP							
ESP							
SP							
SPL							

AKA stack pointer. Usually points to the current stack except in those cases when it is not yet initialized.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

RBP/EBP/BP/BPL

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RBP							
EBP							
BP							
BPL							

AKA frame pointer. Usually used for local variables and accessing the arguments of the function. More about it: ([1.12.1 on page 89](#)).

RIP/EIP/IP

Byte number:							
7th	6th	5th	4th	3rd	2nd	1st	0th
RIP ^{x64}							
EIP							
IP							

AKA “instruction pointer” ³. Usually always points to the instruction to be executed right now. Cannot be modified, however, it is possible to do this (which is equivalent):

```
MOV EAX, ...
JMP EAX
```

Or:

```
PUSH value
RET
```

CS/DS/ES/SS/FS/GS

16-bit registers containing code selector (CS), data selector (DS), stack selector (SS).

FS in win32 points to [TLS](#), GS took this role in Linux. It is made so for faster access to the [TLS](#) and other structures like the [TIB](#).

In the past, these registers were used as segment registers ([11.6 on page 1284](#)).

Flags register

AKA EFLAGS.

³Sometimes also called “program counter”

Bit (mask)	Abbreviation (meaning)	Description
0 (1)	CF (Carry)	The CLC/STC/CMC instructions are used for setting/resetting/toggling this flag (1.25.7 on page 293).
2 (4)	PF (Parity)	
4 (0x10)	AF (Adjust)	Exist solely for work with BCD -numbers
6 (0x40)	ZF (Zero)	Setting to 0 if the last operation's result is equal to 0.
7 (0x80)	SF (Sign)	
8 (0x100)	TF (Trap)	Used for debugging. If turned on, an exception is to be generated after each instruction's execution.
9 (0x200)	IF (Interrupt enable)	Are interrupts enabled. The CLI/STI instructions are used for setting/resetting the flag
10 (0x400)	DF (Direction)	A direction is set for the REP MOV\$X/CMP\$X/LODS\$X/SCAS\$X instructions. The CLD/STD instructions are used for setting/resetting the flag See also: 3.26 on page 809 .
11 (0x800)	OF (Overflow)	Overflow flag
12, 13 (0x3000)	IOPL (I/O privilege level) ⁱ²⁸⁶	
14 (0x4000)	NT (Nested task) ⁱ²⁸⁶	
16 (0x10000)	RF (Resume) ⁱ³⁸⁶	Used for debugging. The CPU ignores the hardware breakpoint in DRx if the flag is set.
17 (0x20000)	VM (Virtual 8086 mode) ⁱ³⁸⁶	
18 (0x40000)	AC (Alignment check) ⁱ⁴⁸⁶	
19 (0x80000)	VIF (Virtual interrupt) ⁱ⁵⁸⁶	
20 (0x100000)	VIP (Virtual interrupt pending) ⁱ⁵⁸⁶	
21 (0x200000)	ID (Identification) ⁱ⁵⁸⁶	

All the rest flags are reserved.

.1.3 FPU registers

8 80-bit registers working as a stack: ST(0)-ST(7). N.B.: **IDA** calls ST(0) as just ST. Numbers are stored in the IEEE 754 format.

long double value format:



(S — sign, I — integer part)

Control Word

Register controlling the behavior of the **FPU**.

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Bit	Abbreviation (meaning)	Description
0	IM (Invalid operation Mask)	
1	DM (Denormalized operand Mask)	
2	ZM (Zero divide Mask)	
3	OM (Overflow Mask)	
4	UM (Underflow Mask)	
5	PM (Precision Mask)	
7	IEM (Interrupt Enable Mask)	Exceptions enabling, 1 by default (disabled)
8, 9	PC (Precision Control)	00 — 24 bits (REAL4) 10 — 53 bits (REAL8) 11 — 64 bits (REAL10)
10, 11	RC (Rounding Control)	00 — (by default) round to nearest 01 — round toward $-\infty$ 10 — round toward $+\infty$ 11 — round toward 0
12	IC (Infinity Control)	0 — (by default) treat $+\infty$ and $-\infty$ as unsigned 1 — respect both $+\infty$ and $-\infty$

The PM, UM, OM, ZM, DM, IM flags define if to generate exception in the case of a corresponding error.

Status Word

Read-only register.

Bit	Abbreviation (meaning)	Description
15	B (Busy)	Is FPU do something (1) or results are ready (0)
14	C3	
13, 12, 11	TOP	points to the currently zeroth register
10	C2	
9	C1	
8	C0	
7	IR (Interrupt Request)	
6	SF (Stack Fault)	
5	P (Precision)	
4	U (Underflow)	
3	O (Overflow)	
2	Z (Zero)	
1	D (Denormalized)	
0	I (Invalid operation)	

The SF, P, U, O, Z, D, I bits signal about exceptions.

About the C3, C2, C1, C0 you can read more here: ([1.25.7 on page 292](#)).

N.B.: When ST(x) is used, the FPU adds x to TOP (by modulo 8) and that is how it gets the internal register's number.

Tag Word

The register has current information about the usage of numbers registers.

Bit	Abbreviation (meaning)
15, 14	Tag(7)
13, 12	Tag(6)
11, 10	Tag(5)
9, 8	Tag(4)
7, 6	Tag(3)
5, 4	Tag(2)
3, 2	Tag(1)
1, 0	Tag(0)

Each tag contains information about a physical FPU register (R(x)), not logical (ST(x)).

For each tag:

- 00 — The register contains a non-zero value
- 01 — The register contains 0
- 10 — The register contains a special value ([NAN](#)⁴, ∞ , or denormal)
- 11 — The register is empty

.1.4 SIMD registers

MMX registers

8 64-bit registers: MM0..MM7.

SSE and AVX registers

SSE: 8 128-bit registers: XMM0..XMM7. In the x86-64 8 more registers were added: XMM8..XMM15.

AVX is the extension of all these registers to 256 bits.

.1.5 Debugging registers

Used for hardware breakpoints control.

- DR0 — address of breakpoint #1
- DR1 — address of breakpoint #2
- DR2 — address of breakpoint #3
- DR3 — address of breakpoint #4
- DR6 — a cause of break is reflected here
- DR7 — breakpoint types are set here

⁴Not a Number

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

DR6

Bit (mask)	Description
0 (1)	B0 — breakpoint #1 has been triggered
1 (2)	B1 — breakpoint #2 has been triggered
2 (4)	B2 — breakpoint #3 has been triggered
3 (8)	B3 — breakpoint #4 has been triggered
13 (0x2000)	BD — modification attempt of one of the DRx registers. may be raised if GD is enabled
14 (0x4000)	BS — single step breakpoint (TF flag has been set in EFLAGS). Highest priority. Other bits may also be set.
15 (0x8000)	BT (task switch flag)

N.B. A single step breakpoint is a breakpoint which occurs after each instruction. It can be enabled by setting TF in EFLAGS ([.1.2 on page 1312](#)).

DR7

Breakpoint types are set here.

Bit (mask)	Description
0 (1)	L0 — enable breakpoint #1 for the current task
1 (2)	G0 — enable breakpoint #1 for all tasks
2 (4)	L1 — enable breakpoint #2 for the current task
3 (8)	G1 — enable breakpoint #2 for all tasks
4 (0x10)	L2 — enable breakpoint #3 for the current task
5 (0x20)	G2 — enable breakpoint #3 for all tasks
6 (0x40)	L3 — enable breakpoint #4 for the current task
7 (0x80)	G3 — enable breakpoint #4 for all tasks
8 (0x100)	LE — not supported since P6
9 (0x200)	GE — not supported since P6
13 (0x2000)	GD — exception is to be raised if any MOV instruction tries to modify one of the DRx registers
16,17 (0x30000)	breakpoint #1: R/W — type
18,19 (0xC0000)	breakpoint #1: LEN — length
20,21 (0x300000)	breakpoint #2: R/W — type
22,23 (0xC00000)	breakpoint #2: LEN — length
24,25 (0x3000000)	breakpoint #3: R/W — type
26,27 (0xC000000)	breakpoint #3: LEN — length
28,29 (0x30000000)	breakpoint #4: R/W — type
30,31 (0xC0000000)	breakpoint #4: LEN — length

The breakpoint type is to be set as follows (R/W):

- 00 — instruction execution
- 01 — data writes
- 10 — I/O reads or writes (not available in user-mode)
- 11 — on data reads or writes

N.B.: breakpoint type for data reads is absent, indeed.

Breakpoint length is to be set as follows (LEN):

- 00 — one-byte
- 01 — two-byte
- 10 — undefined for 32-bit mode, eight-byte in 64-bit mode
- 11 — four-byte

.1.6 Instructions

Instructions marked as (M) are not usually generated by the compiler: if you see one of them, it is probably a hand-written piece of assembly code, or a compiler intrinsic ([11.3 on page 1278](#)).

Only the most frequently used instructions are listed here. You can read [12.1.4 on page 1302](#) for a full documentation.

Do you have to know all instruction's opcodes by heart? No, only those which are used for code patching ([11.1.1 on page 1276](#)). All the rest of the opcodes don't need to be memorized.

Prefixes

LOCK forces CPU to make exclusive access to the RAM in multiprocessor environment. For the sake of simplification, it can be said that when an instruction with this prefix is executed, all other CPUs in a multiprocessor system are stopped. Most often it is used for critical sections, semaphores, mutexes. Commonly used with ADD, AND, BTR, BTS, CMPXCHG, OR, XADD, XOR. You can read more about critical sections here ([6.5.4 on page 1017](#)).

REP is used with the MOVSx and STOSx instructions: execute the instruction in a loop, the counter is located in the CX/ECX/RCX register. For a detailed description, read more about the MOVSx ([.1.6 on page 1320](#)) and STOSx ([.1.6 on page 1323](#)) instructions.

The instructions prefixed by REP are sensitive to the DF flag, which is used to set the direction.

REPE/REPNE (AKA REPZ/REPNZ) used with CMPSx and SCASx instructions: execute the last instruction in a loop, the count is set in the CX/ECX/RCX register. It terminates prematurely if ZF is 0 (REPE) or if ZF is 1 (REPNE).

For a detailed description, you can read more about the CMPSx ([.1.6 on page 1324](#)) and SCASx ([.1.6 on page 1322](#)) instructions.

Instructions prefixed by REPE/REPNE are sensitive to the DF flag, which is used to set the direction.

Most frequently used instructions

These can be memorized in the first place.

ADC (*add with carry*) add values, [increment](#) the result if the CF flag is set. ADC is often used for the addition of large values, for example, to add two 64-bit values in a 32-bit environment using two ADD and ADC instructions. For example:

```
; work with 64-bit values: add val1 to val2.
; .lo means lowest 32 bits, .hi means highest.
ADD val1.lo, val2.lo
ADC val1.hi, val2.hi ; use CF that was set or cleared at the previous
instruction
```

One more example: [1.34 on page 497](#).

ADD add two values

AND logical “and”

CALL call another function:

PUSH address_after_CALL_instruction; JMP label

CMP compare values and set flags, the same as SUB but without writing the result

DEC [decrement](#). Unlike other arithmetic instructions, DEC doesn’t modify CF flag.

IMUL signed multiply IMUL often used instead of MUL, read more about it: [2.2.1 on page 574](#).

INC [increment](#). Unlike other arithmetic instructions, INC doesn’t modify CF flag.

JCXZ, JECXZ, JRCXZ (M) jump if CX/ECX/RCX=0

JMP jump to another address. The opcode has a [jump offset](#).

Jcc (where cc — condition code)

A lot of these instructions have synonyms (denoted with AKA), this was done for convenience. Synonymous instructions are translated into the same opcode. The opcode has a [jump offset](#).

JAE [AKA](#) JNC: jump if above or equal (unsigned): CF=0

JA [AKA](#) JNBE: jump if greater (unsigned): CF=0 and ZF=0

JBE jump if lesser or equal (unsigned): CF=1 or ZF=1

JB [AKA](#) JC: jump if below (unsigned): CF=1

JC [AKA](#) JB: jump if CF=1

JE [AKA](#) JZ: jump if equal or zero: ZF=1

JGE jump if greater or equal (signed): SF=OF

JG jump if greater (signed): ZF=0 and SF=OF

JLE jump if lesser or equal (signed): ZF=1 or SF≠OF

JL jump if lesser (signed): SF \neq OF

JNAE AKA JC: jump if not above or equal (unsigned) CF=1

JNA jump if not above (unsigned) CF=1 and ZF=1

JNBE jump if not below or equal (unsigned): CF=0 and ZF=0

JNB AKA JNC: jump if not below (unsigned): CF=0

JNC AKA JAE: jump CF=0 synonymous to JNB.

JNE AKA JNZ: jump if not equal or not zero: ZF=0

JNGE jump if not greater or equal (signed): SF \neq OF

JNG jump if not greater (signed): ZF=1 or SF \neq OF

JNLE jump if not lesser (signed): ZF=0 and SF=OF

JNL jump if not lesser (signed): SF=OF

JNO jump if not overflow: OF=0

JNS jump if SF flag is cleared

JNZ AKA JNE: jump if not equal or not zero: ZF=0

JO jump if overflow: OF=1

JPO jump if PF flag is cleared (Jump Parity Odd)

JP AKA JPE: jump if PF flag is set

JS jump if SF flag is set

JZ AKA JE: jump if equal or zero: ZF=1

LAHF copy some flag bits to AH:



This instruction is often used in FPU-related code.

LEAVE equivalent of the MOV ESP, EBP and POP EBP instruction pair — in other words, this instruction sets the [stack pointer](#) (ESP) back and restores the EBP register to its initial state.

LEA (*Load Effective Address*) form an address

This instruction was intended not for summing values and multiplication but for forming an address, e.g., for calculating the address of an array element by adding the array address, element index, with multiplication of element size⁵.

So, the difference between MOV and LEA is that MOV forms a memory address and loads a value from memory or stores it there, but LEA just forms an address.

But nevertheless, it is can be used for any other calculations.

⁵See also: [wikipedia](#)

LEA is convenient because the computations performed by it does not alter CPU flags. This may be very important for OOE processors (to create less data dependencies).

Aside from this, starting at least at Pentium, LEA instruction is executed in 1 cycle.

```
int f(int a, int b)
{
    return a*8+b;
};
```

Listing 1: Optimizing MSVC 2010

```
_a$ = 8          ; size = 4
_b$ = 12         ; size = 4
_f      PROC
    mov     eax, DWORD PTR _b$[esp-4]
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR _a$[esp-4]
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR [eax+ecx*8]
    ret     0
_f      ENDP
```

Intel C++ uses LEA even more:

```
int f1(int a)
{
    return a*13;
};
```

Listing 2: Intel C++ 2011

```
_f1      PROC NEAR
    mov     ecx, DWORD PTR [4+esp]           ; ecx = a
    lea     edx, DWORD PTR [ecx+ecx*8]        ; edx = a*9
    lea     eax, DWORD PTR [edx+ecx*4]        ; eax = a*9 + a*4 = a*13
    ret
```

These two instructions performs faster than one IMUL.

MOVSB/MOVSW/MOVSD/MOVSQ copy byte/ 16-bit word/ 32-bit word/ 64-bit word from the address which is in SI/ESI/RSI into the address which is in DI/EDI/RDI.

Together with the REP prefix, it is to be repeated in a loop, the count is to be stored in the CX/ECX/RCX register: it works like `memcpy()` in C. If the block size is known to the compiler in the compile stage, `memcpy()` is often inlined into a short code fragment using REP MOV_Sx, sometimes even as several instructions.

The `memcpy(EDI, ESI, 15)` equivalent is:

```
; copy 15 bytes from ESI to EDI
CLD          ; set direction to forward
MOV ECX, 3
REP MOVSD   ; copy 12 bytes
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

MOVSW	; copy 2 more bytes
MOVSB	; copy remaining byte

(Supposedly, it works faster than copying 15 bytes using just one REP MOVSB).

MOVSX load with sign extension see also: ([1.23.1 on page 254](#))

MOVZX load and clear all other bitsi see also: ([1.23.1 on page 255](#))

MOV load value. this instruction name is misnomer, resulting in some confusion (data is not moved but copied), in other architectures the same instructions is usually named “LOAD” and/or “STORE” or something like that.

One important thing: if you set the low 16-bit part of a 32-bit register in 32-bit mode, the high 16 bits remains as they were. But if you modify the low 32-bit part of the register in 64-bit mode, the high 32 bits of the register will be cleared.

Supposedly, it was done to simplify porting code to x86-64.

MUL unsigned multiply. IMUL often used instead of MUL, read more about it: [2.2.1 on page 574](#).

NEG negation: $op = -op$ Same as NOT op / ADD op, 1.

NOP **NOP**. Its opcode is 0x90, it is in fact the XCHG EAX,EAX idle instruction. This implies that x86 does not have a dedicated **NOP** instruction (as in many **RISC**). This book has at least one listing where GDB shows NOP as 16-bit XCHG instruction: [1.11.1 on page 63](#).

More examples of such operations: ([.1.7 on page 1333](#)).

NOP may be generated by the compiler for aligning labels on a 16-byte boundary. Another very popular usage of **NOP** is to replace manually (patch) some instruction like a conditional jump to **NOP** in order to disable its execution.

NOT op1: $op1 = \neg op1$. logical inversion Important feature—the instruction doesn’t change flags.

OR logical “or”

POP get a value from the stack: value=SS:[ESP]; ESP=ESP+4 (or 8)

PUSH push a value into the stack: ESP=ESP-4 (or 8); SS:[ESP]=value

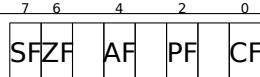
RET return from subroutine: POP tmp; JMP tmp.

In fact, RET is an assembly language macro, in Windows and *NIX environment it is translated into RETN (“return near”) or, in MS-DOS times, where the memory was addressed differently ([11.6 on page 1284](#)), into RETF (“return far”).

RET can have an operand. Then it works like this:

POP tmp; ADD ESP op1; JMP tmp. RET with an operand usually ends functions in the *stdcall* calling convention, see also: [6.1.2 on page 947](#).

SAHF copy bits from AH to CPU flags:



This instruction is often used in [FPU](#)-related code.

SBB (*subtraction with borrow*) subtract values, [decrement](#) the result if the CF flag is set. SBB is often used for subtraction of large values, for example, to subtract two 64-bit values in 32-bit environment using two SUB and SBB instructions. For example:

```
; work with 64-bit values: subtract val2 from val1.
; .lo means lowest 32 bits, .hi means highest.
SUB val1.lo, val2.lo
SBB val1.hi, val2.hi ; use CF that was set or cleared at the previous
instruction
```

One more example: [1.34 on page 497](#).

SCASB/SCASW/SCASD/SCASQ (M) compare byte/ 16-bit word/ 32-bit word/ 64-bit word that's stored in AX/EAX/RAX with a variable whose address is in DI/EDI/RDI. Set flags as CMP does.

This instruction is often used with the REPNE prefix: continue to scan the buffer until a special value stored in AX/EAX/RAX is found. Hence “NE” in REPNE: continue to scan while the compared values are not equal and stop when equal.

It is often used like the `strlen()` C standard function, to determine an [ASCII](#) string's length:

Example:

```
lea    edi, string
mov    ecx, 0xFFFFFFFFh ; scan  $2^{32} - 1$  bytes, i.e., almost infinitely
xor    eax, eax        ; 0 is the terminator
repne scasb
add    edi, 0xFFFFFFFFh ; correct it

; now EDI points to the last character of the ASCII string.

; lets determine string length
; current ECX = -1-strlen

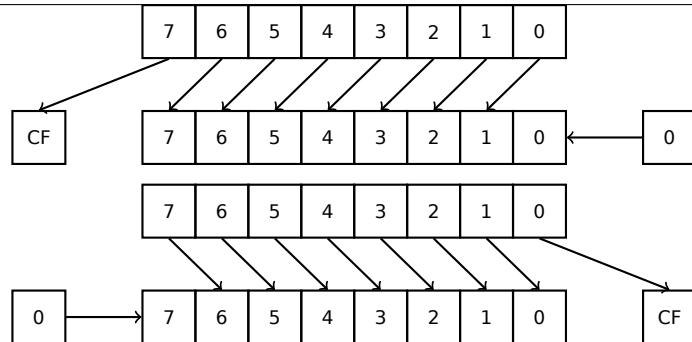
not    ecx
dec    ecx

; now ECX contain string length
```

If we use a different AX/EAX/RAX value, the function acts like the `memchr()` standard C function, i.e., it finds a specific byte.

SHL shift value left

SHR shift value right:



These instructions are frequently used for multiplication and division by 2^n . Another very frequent application is processing bit fields: [1.28 on page 382](#).

SHRD op1, op2, op3: shift value in op2 right by op3 bits, taking bits from op1.

Example: [1.34 on page 497](#).

STOSB/STOSW/STOSD/STOSQ store byte/ 16-bit word/ 32-bit word/ 64-bit word from AX/EAX/RAX into the address which is in DI/EDI/RDI.

Together with the REP prefix, it is to be repeated in a loop, the counter is in the CX/ECX/RCX register: it works like `memset()` in C. If the block size is known to the compiler on compile stage, `memset()` is often inlined into a short code fragment using REP MOVSx, sometimes even as several instructions.

`memset(EDI, 0xAA, 15)` equivalent is:

```
; store 15 0xAA bytes to EDI
CLD           ; set direction to forward
MOV EAX, 0AAAAAAAh
MOV ECX, 3
REP STOSD     ; write 12 bytes
STOSW         ; write 2 more bytes
STOSB         ; write remaining byte
```

(Supposedly, it works faster than storing 15 bytes using just one REP STOSB).

SUB subtract values. A frequently occurring pattern is SUB reg, reg, which implies zeroing of reg.

TEST same as AND but without saving the result, see also: [1.28 on page 382](#)

XOR op1, op2: XOR⁶ values. $op1 = op1 \oplus op2$. A frequently occurring pattern is XOR reg, reg, which implies zeroing of reg. See also: [2.6 on page 582](#).

Less frequently used instructions

BSF bit scan forward, see also: [1.36.2 on page 531](#)

BSR bit scan reverse

BSWAP (byte swap), change value [endianness](#).

⁶eXclusive OR

BTC bit test and complement

BTR bit test and reset

BTS bit test and set

BT bit test

CBW/CWD/CWDE/CDQ/CDQE Sign-extend value:

CBW convert byte in AL to word in AX

CWD convert word in AX to doubleword in DX:AX

CWDE convert word in AX to doubleword in EAX

CDQ convert doubleword in EAX to quadword in EDX:EAX

CDQE (x64) convert doubleword in EAX to quadword in RAX

These instructions consider the value's sign, extending it to high part of the newly constructed value. See also: [1.34.5 on page 508](#).

Interestingly to know these instructions was initially named as SEX (*Sign Extend*), as Stephen P. Morse (one of Intel 8086 CPU designers) wrote in [Stephen P. Morse, *The 8086 Primer*, (1980)]⁷:

The process of stretching numbers by extending the sign bit is called sign extension. The 8086 provides instructions (Fig. 3.29) to facilitate the task of sign extension. These instructions were initially named SEX (sign extend) but were later renamed to the more conservative CBW (convert byte to word) and CWD (convert word to double word).

CLD clear DF flag.

CLI (M) clear IF flag.

CLC (M) clear CF flag

CMC (M) toggle CF flag

CMOVcc conditional MOV: load if the condition is true. The condition codes are the same as in the Jcc instructions ([1.6 on page 1318](#)).

CMPSB/CMPSW/CMPSD/CMPSQ (M) compare byte/ 16-bit word/ 32-bit word/ 64-bit word from the address which is in SI/ESI/RSI with the variable at the address stored in DI/EDI/RDI. Set flags as CMP does.

Together with the REP prefix, it is to be repeated in a loop, the counter is stored in the CX/ECX/RCX register, the process will run until the ZF flag is zero (e.g., until the compared values are equal to each other, hence "E" in REPE).

It works like memcmp() in C.

Example from the Windows NT kernel ([WRK v1.2](#)):

⁷Also available as <https://archive.org/details/The8086Primer>

Listing 3: base\ntos\rtl\i386\movemem.asm

```

; ULONG
; RtlCompareMemory (
; IN PVOID Source1,
; IN PVOID Source2,
; IN ULONG Length
; )
;
; Routine Description:
;
; This function compares two blocks of memory and returns the number
; of bytes that compared equal.
;
; Arguments:
;
; Source1 (esp+4) - Supplies a pointer to the first block of memory to
; compare.
;
; Source2 (esp+8) - Supplies a pointer to the second block of memory to
; compare.
;
; Length (esp+12) - Supplies the Length, in bytes, of the memory to be
; compared.
;
; Return Value:
;
; The number of bytes that compared equal is returned as the function
; value. If all bytes compared equal, then the length of the original
; block of memory is returned.
;
;--
;

RcmSource1    equ      [esp+12]
RcmSource2    equ      [esp+16]
RcmLength     equ      [esp+20]

CODE_ALIGNMENT
cPublicProc _RtlCompareMemory,3
cPublicFpo 3,0

    push    esi          ; save registers
    push    edi          ;
    cld
    mov     esi,RcmSource1 ; (esi) -> first block to
    compare
    mov     edi,RcmSource2 ; (edi) -> second block to
    compare

    ;
    ; Compare dwords, if any.
    ;

rcm10:   mov     ecx,RcmLength      ; (ecx) = length in bytes
        shr     ecx,2           ; (ecx) = length in dwords

```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

        jz      rcm20           ; no dwords, try bytes
        repe   cmpsd            ; compare dwords
        jnz    rcm40           ; mismatch, go find byte

;

; Compare residual bytes, if any.
;

rcm20:  mov     ecx,RcmLength          ; (ecx) = length in bytes
        and    ecx,3             ; (ecx) = length mod 4
        jz     rcm30            ; 0 odd bytes, go do dwords
        repe   cmpsb            ; compare odd bytes
        jnz    rcm50           ; mismatch, go report how far we
got

;

; All bytes in the block match.
;

rcm30:  mov     eax,RcmLength          ; set number of matching bytes
        pop    edi              ; restore registers
        pop    esi              ;
        stdRET _RtlCompareMemory

;

; When we come to rcm40, esi (and edi) points to the dword after the
; one which caused the mismatch. Back up 1 dword and find the byte.
; Since we know the dword didn't match, we can assume one byte won't.
;

rcm40:  sub    esi,4               ; back up
        sub    edi,4               ; back up
        mov    ecx,5               ; ensure that ecx doesn't count
out    repe   cmpsb            ; find mismatch byte

;

; When we come to rcm50, esi points to the byte after the one that
; did not match, which is TWO after the last byte that did match.
;

rcm50:  dec    esi               ; back up
        sub    esi,RcmSource1       ; compute bytes that matched
        mov    eax,esi            ;
        pop    edi              ; restore registers
        pop    esi              ;
        stdRET _RtlCompareMemory

stdENDP _RtlCompareMemory

```

N.B.: this function uses a 32-bit word comparison (CMPSD) if the block size is a multiple of 4, or per-byte comparison (CMPSB) otherwise.

CPUID get information about the CPU's features. see also: ([1.30.6 on page 463](#)).

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

DIV unsigned division

IDIV signed division

INT (M): INT x is analogous to PUSHF; CALL dword ptr [x*4] in 16-bit environment. It was widely used in MS-DOS, functioning as a syscall vector. The registers AX/BX/CX/DX/SI/DI were filled with the arguments and then the flow jumped to the address in the Interrupt Vector Table (located at the beginning of the address space). It was popular because INT has a short opcode (2 bytes) and the program which needs some MS-DOS services is not bother to determine the address of the service's entry point. The interrupt handler returns the control flow to caller using the IRET instruction.

The most busy MS-DOS interrupt number was 0x21, serving a huge part of its [API](#). See also: [[Ralf Brown Ralf Brown's Interrupt List](#)], for the most comprehensive interrupt lists and other MS-DOS information.

In the post-MS-DOS era, this instruction was still used as syscall both in Linux and Windows ([6.3 on page 965](#)), but was later replaced by the SYSENTER or SYSCALL instructions.

INT 3 (M): this instruction is somewhat close to INT, it has its own 1-byte opcode (0xCC), and is actively used while debugging. Often, the debuggers just write the 0xCC byte at the address of the breakpoint to be set, and when an exception is raised, the original byte is restored and the original instruction at this address is re-executed.

As of [Windows NT](#), an EXCEPTION_BREAKPOINT exception is to be raised when the [CPU](#) executes this instruction. This debugging event may be intercepted and handled by a host debugger, if one is loaded. If it is not loaded, Windows offers to run one of the registered system debuggers. If [MSVS](#)⁸ is installed, its debugger may be loaded and connected to the process. In order to protect from [reverse engineering](#), a lot of anti-debugging methods check integrity of the loaded code.

[MSVC](#) has [compiler intrinsic](#) for the instruction: `__debugbreak()`⁹.

There is also a win32 function in kernel32.dll named `DebugBreak()`¹⁰, which also executes INT 3.

IN (M) input data from port. The instruction usually can be seen in OS drivers or in old MS-DOS code, for example ([8.8.3 on page 1093](#)).

IRET : was used in the MS-DOS environment for returning from an interrupt handler after it was called by the INT instruction. Equivalent to POP tmp; POPF; JMP tmp.

LOOP (M) [decrement](#) CX/ECX/RCX, jump if it is still not zero.

LOOP instruction was often used in DOS-code which works with external devices. To add small delay, this was done:

⁸Microsoft Visual Studio

⁹[MSDN](#)

¹⁰[MSDN](#)

LABEL:	MOV	CX, nnnn
	LOOP	LABEL

Drawback is obvious: length of delay depends on [CPU speed](#).

OUT (M) output data to port. The instruction usually can be seen in OS drivers or in old MS-DOS code, for example ([8.8.3 on page 1093](#)).

POPA (M) restores values of (R|E)DI, (R|E)SI, (R|E)BP, (R|E)BX, (R|E)DX, (R|E)CX, (R|E)AX registers from the stack.

POPCNT population count. Counts the number of 1 bits in the value.

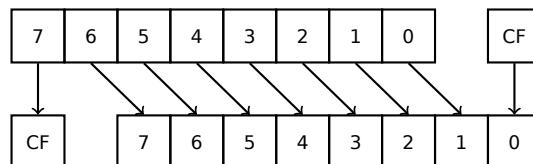
See: [2.7 on page 586](#).

POPF restore flags from the stack ([AKA EFLAGS register](#))

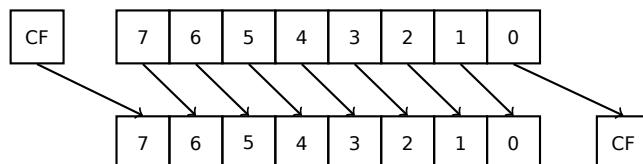
PUSHA (M) pushes the values of the (R|E)AX, (R|E)CX, (R|E)DX, (R|E)BX, (R|E)BP, (R|E)SI, (R|E)DI registers to the stack.

PUSHF push flags ([AKA EFLAGS register](#))

RCL (M) rotate left via CF flag:

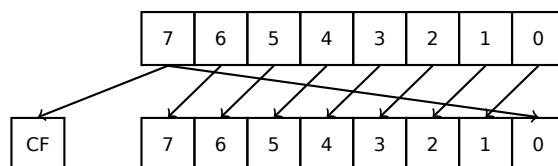


RCR (M) rotate right via CF flag:

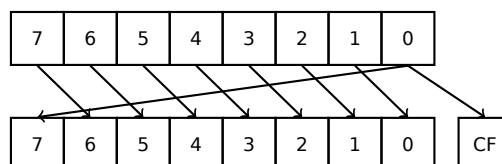


ROL/ROR (M) cyclic shift

ROL: rotate left:



ROR: rotate right:

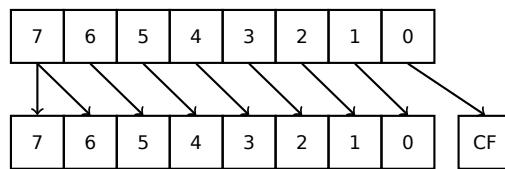


Despite the fact that almost all [CPUs](#) have these instructions, there are no corresponding operations in C/C++, so the compilers of these [PLs](#) usually do not generate these instructions.

For the programmer's convenience, at least [MSVC](#) has the pseudofunctions (compiler intrinsics) `_rotl()` and `_rotr()`¹¹, which are translated by the compiler directly to these instructions.

SAL Arithmetic shift left, synonymous to SHL

SAR Arithmetic shift right



Hence, the sign bit always stays at the place of the [MSB](#).

SETcc op: load 1 to operand (byte only) if the condition is true or zero otherwise.
The condition codes are the same as in the Jcc instructions ([.1.6 on page 1318](#)).

STC (M) set CF flag

STD (M) set DF flag. This instruction is not generated by compilers and generally rare. For example, it can be found in the `ntoskrnl.exe` Windows kernel file, in the hand-written memory copy routines.

STI (M) set IF flag

SYSCALL (AMD) call syscall ([6.3 on page 965](#))

SYSENTER (Intel) call syscall ([6.3 on page 965](#))

UD2 (M) undefined instruction, raises exception. Used for testing.

XCHG (M) exchange the values in the operands

This instruction is rare: compilers don't generate it, because starting at Pentium, XCHG with address in memory in operand executes as if it has LOCK prefix ([Michael Abrash, *Graphics Programming Black Book*, 1997 chapter 19]). Perhaps, Intel engineers did so for compatibility with synchronizing primitives. Hence, XCHG starting at Pentium can be slow. On the other hand, XCHG was very popular in assembly language programmers. So if you see XCHG in code, it can be a sign that this piece of code is written manually. However, at least Borland Delphi compiler generates this instruction.

FPU instructions

-R suffix in the mnemonic usually implies that the operands are reversed, -P suffix implies that one element is popped from the stack after the instruction's execution, -PP suffix implies that two elements are popped.

¹¹[MSDN](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

-P instructions are often useful when we do not need the value in the FPU stack to be present anymore after the operation.

FABS replace value in ST(0) by absolute value in ST(0)

FADD op: ST(0)=op+ST(0)

FADD ST(0), ST(i): ST(0)=ST(0)+ST(i)

FADDP ST(1)=ST(0)+ST(1); pop one element from the stack, i.e., the values in the stack are replaced by their sum

FCHS ST(0)=-ST(0)

FCOM compare ST(0) with ST(1)

FCOM op: compare ST(0) with op

FCOMP compare ST(0) with ST(1); pop one element from the stack

FCOMPP compare ST(0) with ST(1); pop two elements from the stack

FDIVR op: ST(0)=op/ST(0)

FDIVR ST(i), ST(j): ST(i)=ST(j)/ST(i)

FDIVRP op: ST(0)=op/ST(0); pop one element from the stack

FDIVRP ST(i), ST(j): ST(i)=ST(j)/ST(i); pop one element from the stack

FDIV op: ST(0)=ST(0)/op

FDIV ST(i), ST(j): ST(i)=ST(i)/ST(j)

FDIVP ST(1)=ST(0)/ST(1); pop one element from the stack, i.e., the dividend and divisor values in the stack are replaced by quotient

FILD op: convert integer and push it to the stack.

FIST op: convert ST(0) to integer op

FISTP op: convert ST(0) to integer op; pop one element from the stack

FLD1 push 1 to stack

FLDCW op: load FPU control word ([.1.3 on page 1313](#)) from 16-bit op.

FLDZ push zero to stack

FLD op: push op to the stack.

FMUL op: ST(0)=ST(0)*op

FMUL ST(i), ST(j): ST(i)=ST(i)*ST(j)

FMULP op: ST(0)=ST(0)*op; pop one element from the stack

FMULP ST(i), ST(j): ST(i)=ST(i)*ST(j); pop one element from the stack

FSINCOS : tmp=ST(0); ST(1)=sin(tmp); ST(0)=cos(tmp)

FSQRT : ST(0) = $\sqrt{ST(0)}$

FSTCW op: store FPU control word ([.1.3 on page 1313](#)) into 16-bit op after checking for pending exceptions.

FNSTCW op: store FPU control word ([.1.3 on page 1313](#)) into 16-bit op.

FSTSW op: store FPU status word ([.1.3 on page 1314](#)) into 16-bit op after checking for pending exceptions.

FNSTSW op: store FPU status word ([.1.3 on page 1314](#)) into 16-bit op.

FST op: copy ST(0) to op

FSTP op: copy ST(0) to op; pop one element from the stack

FSUBR op: ST(0)=op-ST(0)

FSUBR ST(0), ST(i): ST(0)=ST(i)-ST(0)

FSUBRP ST(1)=ST(0)-ST(1); pop one element from the stack, i.e., the value in the stack is replaced by the difference

FSUB op: ST(0)=ST(0)-op

FSUB ST(0), ST(i): ST(0)=ST(0)-ST(i)

FSUBP ST(1)=ST(1)-ST(0); pop one element from the stack, i.e., the value in the stack is replaced by the difference

FUCOM ST(i): compare ST(0) and ST(i)

FUCOM compare ST(0) and ST(1)

FUCOMP compare ST(0) and ST(1); pop one element from stack.

FUCOMPP compare ST(0) and ST(1); pop two elements from stack.

The instructions perform just like FCOM, but an exception is raised only if one of the operands is SNaN, while QNaN numbers are processed smoothly.

FXCH ST(i) exchange values in ST(0) and ST(i)

FXCH exchange values in ST(0) and ST(1)

Instructions having printable ASCII opcode

(In 32-bit mode.)

These can be suitable for shellcode construction. See also: [8.14.1 on page 1164](#).

ASCII character	hexadecimal code	x86 instruction
0	30	XOR
1	31	XOR
2	32	XOR
3	33	XOR
4	34	XOR
5	35	XOR
7	37	AAA
8	38	CMP

9	39	CMP
:	3a	CMP
:	3b	CMP
<	3c	CMP
=	3d	CMP
?	3f	AAS
@	40	INC
A	41	INC
B	42	INC
C	43	INC
D	44	INC
E	45	INC
F	46	INC
G	47	INC
H	48	DEC
I	49	DEC
J	4a	DEC
K	4b	DEC
L	4c	DEC
M	4d	DEC
N	4e	DEC
O	4f	DEC
P	50	PUSH
Q	51	PUSH
R	52	PUSH
S	53	PUSH
T	54	PUSH
U	55	PUSH
V	56	PUSH
W	57	PUSH
X	58	POP
Y	59	POP
Z	5a	POP
[5b	POP
\	5c	POP
]	5d	POP
^	5e	POP
-	5f	POP
a	60	PUSHA
h	61	POPA
i	68	PUSH
j	69	IMUL
k	6a	PUSH
p	6b	IMUL
q	70	JO
r	71	JNO
s	72	JB
t	73	JAE
	74	JE

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

u	75	JNE
v	76	JBE
w	77	JA
x	78	JS
y	79	JNS
z	7a	JP

Also:

ASCII character	hexadecimal code	x86 instruction
f	66	(in 32-bit mode) switch to 16-bit operand size
g	67	in 32-bit mode) switch to 16-bit address size

In summary: AAA, AAS, CMP, DEC, IMUL, INC, JA, JAE, JB, JBE, JE, JNE, JNO, JNS, JO, JP, JS, POP, POPA, PUSH, PUSHA, XOR.

.1.7 npad

It is an assembly language macro for aligning labels on a specific boundary.

That's often needed for the busy labels to where the control flow is often passed, e.g., loop body starts. So the CPU can load the data or code from the memory effectively, through the memory bus, cache lines, etc.

Taken from listing.inc (MSVC):

By the way, it is a curious example of the different NOP variations. All these instructions have no effects whatsoever, but have a different size.

Having a single idle instruction instead of couple of NOP-s, is accepted to be better for CPU performance.

```
;; LISTING.INC
;;
;; This file contains assembler macros and is included by the files created
;; with the -FA compiler switch to be assembled by MASM (Microsoft Macro
;; Assembler).
;;
;; Copyright (c) 1993-2003, Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

;; non destructive nops
npad macro size
if size eq 1
  nop
else
  if size eq 2
```

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

```

    mov edi, edi
else
if size eq 3
; lea ecx, [ecx+00]
DB 8DH, 49H, 00H
else
if size eq 4
; lea esp, [esp+00]
DB 8DH, 64H, 24H, 00H
else
if size eq 5
add eax, DWORD PTR 0
else
if size eq 6
; lea ebx, [ebx+00000000]
DB 8DH, 9BH, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H
else
if size eq 7
; lea esp, [esp+00000000]
DB 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H
else
if size eq 8
; jmp .+8; .npad 6
DB 0EBH, 06H, 8DH, 9BH, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H
else
if size eq 9
; jmp .+9; .npad 7
DB 0EBH, 07H, 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H
else
if size eq 10
; jmp .+A; .npad 7; .npad 1
DB 0EBH, 08H, 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 90H
else
if size eq 11
; jmp .+B; .npad 7; .npad 2
DB 0EBH, 09H, 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 8BH, 0FFH
else
if size eq 12
; jmp .+C; .npad 7; .npad 3
DB 0EBH, 0AH, 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 8DH, 49H, 00H
else
if size eq 13
; jmp .+D; .npad 7; .npad 4
DB 0EBH, 0BH, 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 8DH, 64H, 24H, 00H, 00H
else
if size eq 14
; jmp .+E; .npad 7; .npad 5
DB 0EBH, 0CH, 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 05H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H
else
if size eq 15
; jmp .+F; .npad 7; .npad 6

```

```

    DB 0EBH, 0DH, 8DH, 0A4H, 24H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 8DH, 9BH, ↴
    ↴ 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H
    else
        %out error: unsupported npad size
        .err
    endif
    endm

```

.2 ARM

.2.1 Terminology

ARM was initially developed as 32-bit **CPU**, so that's why a *word* here, unlike x86, is 32-bit.

byte 8-bit. The DB assembly directive is used for defining variables and arrays of bytes.

halfword 16-bit. DCW assembly directive —"__.

word 32-bit. DCD assembly directive —"__.

doubleword 64-bit.

quadword 128-bit.

.2.2 Versions

- ARMv4: Thumb mode introduced.
- ARMv6: used in iPhone 1st gen., iPhone 3G (Samsung 32-bit RISC ARM 1176JZ(F)-S that supports Thumb-2)
- ARMv7: Thumb-2 was added (2003). was used in iPhone 3GS, iPhone 4, iPad 1st gen. (ARM Cortex-A8), iPad 2 (Cortex-A9), iPad 3rd gen.
- ARMv7s: New instructions added. iPhone 5, iPhone 5c, iPad 4th gen. (Apple A6).

- ARMv8: 64-bit CPU, AKA ARM64 AKA AArch64. Was used in iPhone 5S, iPad Air (Apple A7). There is no Thumb mode in 64-bit mode, only ARM (4-byte instructions).

.2.3 32-bit ARM (AArch32)

General purpose registers

- R0 — function result is usually returned using R0
- R1...R12 — GPRs
- R13 — AKA SP (stack pointer)
- R14 — AKA LR (link register)
- R15 — AKA PC (program counter)

R0-R3 are also called “scratch registers”: the function’s arguments are usually passed in them, and the values in them are not required to be restored upon the function’s exit.

Current Program Status Register (CPSR)

Bit	Description
0..4	M — processor mode
5	T — Thumb state
6	F — FIQ disable
7	I — IRQ disable
8	A — imprecise data abort disable
9	E — data endianness
10..15, 25, 26	IT — if-then state
16..19	GE — greater-than-or-equal-to
20..23	DNM — do not modify
24	J — Java state
27	Q — sticky overflow
28	V — overflow
29	C — carry/borrow/extend
30	Z — zero bit
31	N — negative/less than

VFP (floating point) and NEON registers

0..31 ^{bits}	32..64	65..96	97..127
Q0 ^{128 bits}			
D0 ^{64 bits}		D1	
S0 ^{32 bits}	S1	S2	S3

S-registers are 32-bit, used for the storage of single precision numbers.

D-registers are 64-bit ones, used for the storage of double precision numbers.

D- and S-registers share the same physical space in the CPU—it is possible to access a D-register via the S-registers (it is senseless though).

Likewise, the **NEON** Q-registers are 128-bit ones and share the same physical space in the CPU with the other floating point registers.

In VFP 32 S-registers are present: S0..S31.

In VFPv2 there 16 D-registers are added, which in fact occupy the same space as S0..S31.

In VFPv3 (**NEON** or “Advanced SIMD”) there are 16 more D-registers, D0..D31, but the D16..D31 registers are not sharing space with any other S-registers.

In **NEON** or “Advanced SIMD” another 16 128-bit Q-registers were added, which share the same space as D0..D31.

.2.4 64-bit ARM (AArch64)

General purpose registers

The number of registers has been doubled since AArch32.

- X0 — function result is usually returned using X0
- X0...X7 — Function arguments are passed here.
- X8
- X9...X15 — are temporary registers, the callee function can use and not restore them.
- X16
- X17
- X18
- X19...X29 — callee function can use them, but must restore them upon exit.
- X29 — used as **FP** (at least GCC)
- X30 — “Procedure Link Register” **AKA LR (link register)**.
- X31—register always contains zero **AKA XZR or “Zero Register”**. It’s 32-bit part is called **WZR**.
- **SP**, not a general purpose register anymore.

See also: [*Procedure Call Standard for the ARM 64-bit Architecture (AArch64)*, (2013)]¹².

The 32-bit part of each X-register is also accessible via W-registers (W0, W1, etc.).

High 32-bit part	low 32-bit part
X0	
	W0

¹²Also available as http://infocenter.arm.com/help/topic/com.arm.doc.ihi0055b/IHI0055B_aapcs64.pdf

.2.5 Instructions

There is a *-S* suffix for some instructions in ARM, indicating that the instruction sets the flags according to the result. Instructions which lack this suffix do not modify flags. For example ADD unlike ADDS will add two numbers, but the flags will not be touched. Such instructions are convenient to use between CMP where the flags are set and, e.g. conditional jumps, where the flags are used. They are also better in terms of data dependency analysis (because less number of registers are modified during execution).

Conditional codes table

Code	Description	Flags
EQ	Equal	$Z == 1$
NE	Not equal	$Z == 0$
CS AKA HS (Higher or Same)	Carry set / Unsigned, Greater than, equal	$C == 1$
CC AKA LO (LOwer)	Carry clear / Unsigned, Less than	$C == 0$
MI	Minus, negative / Less than	$N == 1$
PL	Plus, positive or zero / Greater than, equal	$N == 0$
VS	Overflow	$V == 1$
VC	No overflow	$V == 0$
HI	Unsigned higher / Greater than	$C == 1$ and $Z == 0$
LS	Unsigned lower or same / Less than or equal	$C == 0$ or $Z == 1$
GE	Signed greater than or equal / Greater than or equal	$N == V$
LT	Signed less than / Less than	$N != V$
GT	Signed greater than / Greater than	$Z == 0$ and $N == V$
LE	Signed less than or equal / Less than, equal	$Z == 1$ or $N != V$
None / AL	Always	Any

3 MIPS

3.1 Registers

(O32 calling convention)

General purpose registers (GPR)

Number	Pseudoname	Description
\$0	\$ZERO	Always zero. Writing to this register is like NOP.
\$1	\$AT	Used as a temporary register for assembly macros and pseudo instructions.
\$2 ...\$3	\$V0 ...\$V1	Function result is returned here.
\$4 ...\$7	\$A0 ...\$A3	Function arguments.
\$8 ...\$15	\$T0 ...\$T7	Used for temporary data.
\$16 ...\$23	\$S0 ...\$S7	Used for temporary data*.
\$24 ...\$25	\$T8 ...\$T9	Used for temporary data.
\$26 ...\$27	\$K0 ...\$K1	Reserved for OS kernel.
\$28	\$GP	Global Pointer**.
\$29	\$SP	SP*.
\$30	\$FP	FP*.
\$31	\$RA	RA.
n/a	PC	PC.
n/a	HI	high 32 bit of multiplication or division remainder***.
n/a	LO	low 32 bit of multiplication and division remainder***.

Floating-point registers

Name	Description
\$F0..\$F1	Function result returned here.
\$F2..\$F3	Not used.
\$F4..\$F11	Used for temporary data.
\$F12..\$F15	First two function arguments.
\$F16..\$F19	Used for temporary data.
\$F20..\$F31	Used for temporary data*.

* — Callee must preserve the value.

** — Callee must preserve the value (except in PIC code).

*** — accessible using the MFHI and MFL0 instructions.

.3.2 Instructions

There are 3 kinds of instructions:

- R-type: those which have 3 registers. R-instruction usually have the following form:

instruction destination, source1, source2

One important thing to keep in mind is that when the first and second register are the same, IDA may show the instruction in its shorter form:

instruction destination/source1, source2
--

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

That somewhat reminds us of the Intel syntax for x86 assembly language.

- I-type: those which have 2 registers and a 16-bit immediate value.
- J-type: jump/branch instructions, have 26 bits for encoding the offset.

Jump instructions

What is the difference between B-instructions (BEQ, B, etc.) and J- ones (JAL, JALR, etc.)?

The B-instructions have an I-type, hence, the B-instructions' offset is encoded as a 16-bit immediate. JR and JALR are R-type and jump to an absolute address specified in a register. J and JAL are J-type, hence the offset is encoded as a 26-bit immediate.

In short, B-instructions can encode a condition (B is in fact pseudo instruction for BEQ \$ZERO0, \$ZERO0, LABEL), while J-instructions can't.

.4 Some GCC library functions

name	meaning
<code>__divdi3</code>	signed division
<code>__moddi3</code>	getting remainder (modulo) of signed division
<code>__udivdi3</code>	unsigned division
<code>__umoddi3</code>	getting remainder (modulo) of unsigned division

.5 Some MSVC library functions

ll in function name stands for “long long”, e.g., a 64-bit data type.

name	meaning
<code>__alldiv</code>	signed division
<code>__allmul</code>	multiplication
<code>__allrem</code>	remainder of signed division
<code>__allshl</code>	shift left
<code>__allshr</code>	signed shift right
<code>__aulldiv</code>	unsigned division
<code>__aullrem</code>	remainder of unsigned division
<code>__aullshr</code>	unsigned shift right

Multiplication and shift left procedures are the same for both signed and unsigned numbers, hence there is only one function for each operation here .

The source code of these function can be found in the installed [MSVS](#), in VC/crt/src/intel/*.asm.

.6 Cheatsheets

.6.1 IDA

Hot-keys cheatsheet:

key	meaning
Space	switch listing and graph view
C	convert to code
D	convert to data
A	convert to string
*	convert to array
U	undefine
O	make offset of operand
H	make decimal number
R	make char
B	make binary number
Q	make hexadecimal number
N	rename identifier
?	calculator
G	jump to address
:	add comment
Ctrl-X	show references to the current function, label, variable (incl. in local stack)
X	show references to the function, label, variable, etc.
Alt-I	search for constant
Ctrl-I	search for the next occurrence of constant
Alt-B	search for byte sequence
Ctrl-B	search for the next occurrence of byte sequence
Alt-T	search for text (including instructions, etc.)
Ctrl-T	search for the next occurrence of text
Alt-P	edit current function
Enter	jump to function, variable, etc.
Esc	get back
Num -	fold function or selected area
Num +	unhide function or area

Function/area folding may be useful for hiding function parts when you realize what they do. this is used in myscript¹³ for hiding some often used patterns of inline code.

.6.2 OllyDbg

Hot-keys cheatsheet:

hot-key	meaning
F7	trace into
F8	step over
F9	run
Ctrl-F2	restart

¹³[GitHub](#)

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

.6.3 MSVC

Some useful options which were used through this book. .

option	meaning
/O1	minimize space
/Ob0	no inline expansion
/Ox	maximum optimizations
/GS-	disable security checks (buffer overflows)
/Fa(file)	generate assembly listing
/Zi	enable debugging information
/Zp(n)	pack structs on <i>n</i> -byte boundary
/MD	produced executable will use MSVCR*.DLL

Some information about MSVC versions: [5.1.1 on page 904](#).

.6.4 GCC

Some useful options which were used through this book.

option	meaning
-Os	code size optimization
-O3	maximum optimization
-regparm=	how many arguments are to be passed in registers
-o file	set name of output file
-g	produce debugging information in resulting executable
-S	generate assembly listing file
-masm=intel	produce listing in Intel syntax
-fno-inline	do not inline functions

.6.5 GDB

Some of commands we used in this book:

option	meaning
break filename.c:number	set a breakpoint on line number in source code
break function	set a breakpoint on function
break *address	set a breakpoint on address
b	—”—
p variable	print value of variable
run	run
r	—”—
cont	continue execution
c	—”—
bt	print stack
set disassembly-flavor intel	set Intel syntax
disas	disassemble current function
disas function	disassemble function
disas function,+50	disassemble portion
disas \$eip,+0x10	—”—
disas/r	disassemble with opcodes
info registers	print all registers
info float	print FPU-registers
info locals	dump local variables (if known)
x/w ...	dump memory as 32-bit word
x/w \$rdi	dump memory as 32-bit word at address in RDI
x/10w ...	dump 10 memory words
x/s ...	dump memory as string
x/i ...	dump memory as code
x/10c ...	dump 10 characters
x/b ...	dump bytes
x/h ...	dump 16-bit halfwords
x/g ...	dump giant (64-bit) words
finish	execute till the end of function
next	next instruction (don't dive into functions)
step	next instruction (dive into functions)
set step-mode on	do not use line number information while stepping
frame n	switch stack frame
info break	list of breakpoints
del n	delete breakpoint
set args ...	set command-line arguments

Acronyms Used

OS Operating System.....	xx
OOP Object-Oriented Programming	698
PL Programming Language	xvii
PRNG Pseudorandom Number Generator.....	x
ROM Read-Only Memory	105
ALU Arithmetic Logic Unit.....	35
PID Program/process ID	1043
LF Line Feed (10 or '\n' in C/C++)	674
CR Carriage Return (13 or '\r' in C/C++).....	674
LIFO Last In First Out.....	40
MSB Most Significant Bit.....	397
LSB Least Significant Bit	
NSA National Security Agency	586
CFB Cipher Feedback.....	1107
CSPRNG Cryptographically Secure Pseudorandom Number Generator.....	1108
ABI Application Binary Interface.....	21
PC Program Counter. IP/EIP/RIP in x86/64. PC in ARM.....	25
SP stack pointer . SP/ESP/RSP in x86/x64. SP in ARM.....	25
RA Return Address.....	29

PE Portable Executable	7
DLL Dynamic-Link Library	978
LR Link Register	8
IDA Interactive Disassembler and Debugger developed by Hex-Rays	8
IAT Import Address Table	979
INT Import Name Table	979
RVA Relative Virtual Address	978
VA Virtual Address	978
OEP Original Entry Point	964
MSVC Microsoft Visual C++	
MSVS Microsoft Visual Studio	1327
ASLR Address Space Layout Randomization	787
MFC Microsoft Foundation Classes	983
TLS Thread Local Storage	351
AKA Also Known As	40
CRT C Runtime library	14
CPU Central Processing Unit	xx
GPU Graphics Processing Unit	1120
FPU Floating-Point Unit	v

	1347
CISC Complex Instruction Set Computing	26
RISC Reduced Instruction Set Computing.....	3
GUI Graphical User Interface.....	974
RTTI Run-Time Type Information.....	718
BSS Block Started by Symbol.....	33
SIMD Single Instruction, Multiple Data	246
BSOD Blue Screen of Death.....	965
DBMS Database Management Systems	xvii
ISA Instruction Set Architecture.....	xi
HPC High-Performance Computing	663
SEH Structured Exception Handling.....	50
ELF Executable and Linkable Format: Executable File format widely used in *NIX systems including Linux	103
TIB Thread Information Block	351
PIC Position Independent Code	691
NAN Not a Number	1315
NOP No Operation	8
BEQ (PowerPC, ARM) Branch if Equal.....	122
BNE (PowerPC, ARM) Branch if Not Equal.....	263
BLR (PowerPC) Branch to Link Register.....	1071

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

	1348
XOR eXclusive OR	1323
MCU Microcontroller Unit	634
RAM Random-Access Memory	4
GCC GNU Compiler Collection	5
EGA Enhanced Graphics Adapter	1285
VGA Video Graphics Array	1285
API Application Programming Interface	802
ASCII American Standard Code for Information Interchange	363
ASCIIZ ASCII Zero (null-terminated ASCII string)	119
IA64 Intel Architecture 64 (Itanium)	588
EPIC Explicitly Parallel Instruction Computing	1281
OOE Out-of-Order Execution	590
MSDN Microsoft Developer Network	792
STL (C++) Standard Template Library	727
PODT (C++) Plain Old Data Type	743
HDD Hard Disk Drive	759
VM Virtual Memory	926
WRK Windows Research Kernel	2
GPR General Purpose Registers	2

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

	1349
SSDT System Service Dispatch Table.....	966
RE Reverse Engineering.....	1304
RAID Redundant Array of Independent Disks.....	vii
BCD Binary-Coded Decimal	565
BOM Byte Order Mark	912
GDB GNU Debugger.....	63
FP Frame Pointer.....	32
MBR Master Boot Record	920
JPE Jump Parity Even (x86 instruction)	298
CIDR Classless Inter-Domain Routing.....	620
STMFD Store Multiple Full Descending (ARM instruction)	
LDMFD Load Multiple Full Descending (ARM instruction)	
STMED Store Multiple Empty Descending (ARM instruction)	41
LDMED Load Multiple Empty Descending (ARM instruction).....	41
STMFA Store Multiple Full Ascending (ARM instruction).....	41
LDMFA Load Multiple Full Ascending (ARM instruction)	41
STMEA Store Multiple Empty Ascending (ARM instruction).....	41
LDMEA Load Multiple Empty Ascending (ARM instruction)	41
APSR (ARM) Application Program Status Register.....	323

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

	1350
FPSCR (ARM) Floating-Point Status and Control Register	323
RFC Request for Comments	918
TOS Top of Stack	853
LVA (Java) Local Variable Array	861
JVM Java Virtual Machine	x
JIT Just-In-Time compilation	851
CDFS Compact Disc File System	934
CD Compact Disc	
ADC Analog-to-Digital Converter	930
EOF End of File	111
DIY Do It Yourself	796
MMU Memory Management Unit	784
DES Data Encryption Standard	566
MIME Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions	566
DBI Dynamic Binary Instrumentation	672
XML Extensible Markup Language	808
JSON JavaScript Object Notation	808
URL Uniform Resource Locator	5
IV Initialization Vector	xiii

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

	1351
RSA Rivest Shamir Adleman.....	1227
CPRNG Cryptographically secure PseudoRandom Number Generator.....	1228
GiB Gibibyte.....	1245
CRC Cyclic redundancy check	1267
AES Advanced Encryption Standard	1268
GC Garbage Collector.....	794
IDE Integrated development environment.....	473
BB Basic Block.....	1298

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
<book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Glossary

anti-pattern Generally considered as bad practice. [43](#), [100](#), [588](#)

arithmetic mean a sum of all values divided by their count. [664](#)

atomic operation “*ατομός*” stands for “indivisible” in Greek, so an atomic operation is guaranteed not to be interrupted by other threads. [822](#), [1017](#)

basic block a group of instructions that do not have jump/branch instructions, and also don't have jumps inside the block from the outside. In **IDA** it looks just like as a list of instructions without empty lines. [890](#), [1285](#), [1286](#)

callee A function being called by another. [44](#), [61](#), [88](#), [112](#), [125](#), [128](#), [131](#), [531](#), [588](#), [700](#), [836](#), [946](#), [948–950](#), [953](#), [954](#), [1338](#)

caller A function calling another. [8](#), [10](#), [11](#), [14](#), [39](#), [61](#), [112](#), [125](#), [126](#), [130](#), [139](#), [198](#), [531](#), [600](#), [700](#), [946](#), [947](#), [949](#), [950](#), [954](#)

compiler intrinsic A function specific to a compiler which is not an usual library function. The compiler generates a specific machine code instead of a call to it. Often, it's a pseudofunction for a specific **CPU** instruction. Read more: ([11.3 on page 1278](#)). [1326](#)

CP/M Control Program for Microcomputers: a very basic disk **OS** used before MS-DOS. [1164](#)

decrement Decrease by 1. [25](#), [231](#), [232](#), [255](#), [555](#), [936](#), [1317](#), [1320](#), [1326](#)

dongle Dongle is a small piece of hardware connected to LPT printer port (in past) or to USB. [1069](#)

endianness Byte order. [29](#), [102](#), [432](#), [1322](#)

GiB Gibibyte: 2^{30} or 1024 mebibytes or 1073741824 bytes. [21](#)

heap usually, a big chunk of memory provided by the **OS** so that applications can divide it by themselves as they wish. `malloc()`/`free()` work with the heap. [41](#), [434](#), [721](#), [724](#), [725](#), [742](#), [744](#), [765](#), [766](#), [808](#), [976](#), [977](#)

increment Increase by 1. [22](#), [26](#), [232](#), [236](#), [255](#), [261](#), [408](#), [411](#), [555](#), [1317](#)

integral data type usual numbers, but not real ones. may be used for passing variables of boolean data type and enumerations. [290](#)

jump offset a part of the JMP or Jcc instruction's opcode, to be added to the address of the next instruction, and this is how the new **PC** is calculated. May be negative as well. [120](#), [166](#), [167](#), [1317](#)

kernel mode A restrictions-free CPU mode in which the OS kernel and drivers execute. cf. [user mode](#). [1353](#)

leaf function A function which does not call any other function. [38](#), [43](#)

link register (RISC) A register where the return address is usually stored. This makes it possible to call leaf functions without using the stack, i.e., faster. [43](#), [1070](#), [1335](#), [1336](#)

loop unwinding It is when a compiler, instead of generating loop code for n iterations, generates just n copies of the loop body, in order to get rid of the instructions for loop maintenance. [235](#)

name mangling used at least in C++, where the compiler needs to encode the name of class, method and argument types in one string, which will become the internal name of the function. You can read more about it here: [3.21.1 on page 698](#). [697](#), [903](#), [904](#)

NaN not a number: a special case for floating point numbers, usually signaling about errors. [293](#), [315](#), [1283](#)

NEON AKA "Advanced SIMD"—SIMD from ARM. [1335](#), [1336](#)

NOP "no operation", idle instruction. [936](#)

NTAPI API available only in the Windows NT line. Largely not documented by Microsoft. [1027](#)

padding *Padding* in English language means to stuff a pillow with something to give it a desired (bigger) form. In computer science, padding means to add more bytes to a block so it will have desired size, like 2^n bytes.. [914](#), [915](#)

PDB (Win32) Debugging information file, usually just function names, but sometimes also function arguments and local variables names. [903](#), [980](#), [1027](#), [1029](#), [1035](#), [1036](#), [1141](#)

POKE BASIC language instruction for writing a byte at a specific address. [936](#)

product Multiplication result. [126](#), [281](#), [285](#), [514](#), [545](#), [573](#)

quotient Division result. [273](#), [276](#), [279](#), [280](#), [285](#), [544](#), [635](#), [666](#)

real number numbers which may contain a dot. this is *float* and *double* in C/C++.
[273](#)

register allocator The part of the compiler that assigns CPU registers to local variables. [253](#), [384](#), [531](#)

reverse engineering act of understanding how the thing works, sometimes in order to clone it. [iv](#), [1326](#)

security cookie A random value, different at each execution. You can read more about it here: [1.26.3 on page 348](#). [1005](#)

stack frame A part of the stack that contains information specific to the current function: local variables, function arguments, RA, etc.. [89](#), [126](#), [610](#), [611](#), [1005](#)

stack pointer A register pointing to a place in the stack. [13](#), [15](#), [26](#), [41](#), [47](#), [57](#), [71](#), [73](#), [96](#), [128](#), [700](#), [836](#), [946](#), [948-950](#), [1310](#), [1318](#), [1335](#), [1344](#)

stdout standard output. [28](#), [48](#), [198](#)

tail call It is when the compiler (or interpreter) transforms the recursion (*tail recursion*) into an iteration for efficiency. [615](#)

thunk function Tiny function with a single role: call another function. [30](#), [56](#), [491](#), [1070](#), [1082](#)

tracer My own simple debugging tool. You can read more about it here: [7.2.1 on page 1022](#). [237-239](#), [695](#), [790](#), [908](#), [922](#), [926](#), [999](#), [1063-1065](#), [1144](#), [1152](#), [1157](#), [1158](#), [1161](#), [1183](#), [1275](#)

user mode A restricted CPU mode in which all application software code is executed. cf. **kernel mode**. [1092](#), [1352](#)

Windows NT Windows NT, 2000, XP, Vista, 7, 8, 10. [361](#), [528](#), [835](#), [912](#), [965](#), [978](#), [1016](#), [1167](#), [1326](#)

word data type fitting in **GPR**. In the computers older than PCs, the memory size was often measured in words rather than bytes.. [563](#), [565-568](#), [574](#), [729](#), [809](#)

xoring often used in the English language, which implying applying the **XOR** operation. [1005](#), [1085](#), [1090](#)

Index

.NET, 986
0x0BADF00D, 99
0xFFFFFFFF, 99

Ada, 136
AES, 1103
Alpha AXP, 3
AMD, 953
Angband, 378
Angry Birds, 323, 324
Apollo Guidance Computer, 265
ARM, 261, 941, 1069, 1334
 Addressing modes, 554
 ARM mode, 3
 ARM1, 568
 armel, 285
 armhf, 285
 Condition codes, 170
 D-registers, 284, 1335
 Data processing instructions, 638
 DCB, 26
 hard float, 285
 if-then block, 323
 Instructions
 ADC, 500
 ADD, 28, 135, 170, 240, 401, 416, 638, 1337
 ADDAL, 170
 ADDC, 219
 ADDS, 133, 500, 1337
 ADR, 25, 170
 ADRcc, 170, 171, 206, 207, 588
 ADRP/ADD pair, 32, 72, 106, 357, 376, 558
 ANDcc, 687
 ASR, 420
 ASRS, 394, 638
 B, 71, 170, 172
 Bcc, 123, 124, 186
 BCS, 172, 325
 BEQ, 122, 207
 BGE, 172
 BIC, 393, 394, 400, 422
 BL, 25, 27, 29, 30, 32, 171, 559
 BLcc, 171
 BLE, 172
 BLS, 172
 BLT, 240
 BLX, 29
 BNE, 172
 BX, 133, 221
 CMP, 122, 123, 170, 207, 219, 240, 416, 1337
 CSEL, 183, 189, 191, 417
 EOR, 400
 FCMPE, 326
 FCSEL, 326
 FMOV, 557
 FMRS, 401
 IT, 192, 323, 352
 LDMccFD, 171
 LDMEA, 41
 LDMED, 41
 LDMFA, 41
 LDMFD, 26, 41, 171
 LDP, 33
 LDR, 74, 96, 105, 335, 356, 554
 LDRB, 457
 LDRB.W, 262
 LDRSB, 261
 LEA, 589
 LSL, 416, 420
 LSL.W, 416
 LSLR, 687
 LSLS, 336, 400, 687
 LSR, 420
 LSRS, 400

MADD, 133	LSR, 416, 638
MLA, 132, 133	ROR, 416
MOV, 10, 26, 27, 416, 638	RRX, 416
MOVcc, 186, 191	Pipeline, 219
MOVK, 557	Registers
MOVT, 28, 638	APSR, 322
MOVT.W, 29	FPSCR, 322
MOVW, 29	Link Register, 25, 26, 43, 71, 221, 1335
MUL, 135	R0, 137, 1335
MULS, 133	scratch registers, 262, 1335
MVNS, 262	X0, 1336
NEG, 647	Z, 122, 1335
ORR, 393	S-registers, 284, 1335
POP, 25-27, 40, 43	soft float, 285
PUSH, 27, 40, 43	Thumb mode, 3, 172, 221
RET, 33	Thumb-2 mode, 3, 221, 323, 324
RSB, 178, 370, 416, 647	ARM64
SBC, 500	lo12, 72
SMMUL, 638	ASLR, 978
STMEA, 41	AT&T syntax, 16, 49
STMED, 41	AWK, 924
STMFA, 41, 75	
STMFD, 25, 41	Base address, 977
STMIA, 73	base32, 915
STMIB, 75	Base64, 914
STP, 31, 72	base64, 918, 1099, 1228
STR, 73, 335	base64scanner, 585, 915
SUB, 73, 370, 416	bash, 138
SUBC, 687	BASIC
SUBEQ, 263	POKE, 936
SUBS, 500	BeagleBone, 1114
SXTB, 457	binary grep, 922, 1019
SXTW, 376	Binary Ninja, 1020
TEST, 253	Binary tree, 751
TST, 386, 416	BIND.EXE, 985
VADD, 285	BinNavi, 1020
VDIV, 285	binutils, 476
VLDR, 284	Binwalk, 1219
VMOV, 284, 322	Bitcoin, 817, 1114
VMOVG, 322	Boehm garbage collector, 793
VMRS, 322	Boolector, 55
VMUL, 285	Booth's multiplication algorithm, 272
XOR, 179, 401	Borland C++, 781
Leaf function, 43	Borland C++Builder, 904
Mode switching, 133, 221	Borland Delphi, 19, 904, 910, 1328
mode switching, 29	BSoD, 964
Optional operators	BSS, 979
ASR, 416, 638	Buffer Overflow, 339, 346, 1004
LSL, 335, 370, 416, 557	

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

C language elements	setjmp, 810 srand(), 1062 strcat(), 658 strcmp(), 571, 600, 649, 970 strcpy(), 16, 652, 1098 strlen(), 252, 526, 652, 675, 1321 strstr(), 599 strtok, 266 time(), 847, 1062 toupper(), 684 va_arg, 665 va_list, 669 vprintf, 669 write(), 804
C99	140
bool	381
restrict	659
variable length arrays	352
Comma	1292
const	12, 106, 596
for	232, 617
if	156, 197
Pointers	87, 96, 141, 482, 530, 770
Post-decrement	554
Post-increment	554
Pre-decrement	554
Pre-increment	554
ptrdiff_t	794
return	13, 112, 139
Short-circuit	673, 677, 1292
switch	195, 197, 206
while	252
C standard library	
alloca()	47, 352, 588, 993
assert()	360, 918
atexit()	728
atoi()	639, 1128
close()	970
exit()	600
fread()	804
free()	588, 766
fwrite()	804
getenv()	1130
localtime()	847
localtime_r()	444
longjmp	810
longjmp()	198
malloc()	435, 588, 766
memchr()	1321
memcmp()	571, 657, 920, 1323
memcpy()	16, 88, 654, 808, 1319
memmove()	808
memset()	328, 653, 1157, 1322
open()	970
pow()	287
puts()	28
qsort()	482, 600
rand()	423, 907, 1033, 1035, 1062, 1097
read()	804, 970
realloc()	588
scanf()	87
C++	1146
C++11	742, 958
exceptions	993
ostream	717
References	719
RTTI	717
STL	902
std::forward_list	741
std::list	729
std::map	751
std::set	751
std::string	720
std::vector	742
C11	958
Callbacks	482
Canary	347
cdecl	57, 946
Chess	584
Cipher Feedback mode	1106
clusterization	1225
COFF	1079
column-major order	363
Compiler intrinsic	48, 573, 1277
Compiler's anomalies	185, 375, 394, 415, 630, 681, 1277
Core dump	784
Cray	513, 568, 581, 586
CRC32	589, 615
CRT	972, 1000
CryptoMiniSat	540
CryptoPP	945, 1103
Cygwin	904, 908, 986, 1022
Data general Nova	272
De Morgan's laws	1294

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

DEC Alpha, 511	Hash functions, 589
DES, 513, 531	HASP, 920
dlopen(), 970	Heartbleed, 808, 1113
dlsym(), 970	Heisenbug, 817, 828
dmalloc, 784	Hex-Rays, 138, 249, 371, 377, 794, 826, 1287
Donald E. Knuth, 567	Hiew, 119, 166, 195, 909, 916, 980, 982, 986, 1019, 1276
DOSBox, 1167	Honeywell 6070, 565
DosBox, 926	ICQ, 936
double, 275, 953	IDA, 113, 195, 476, 659, 895, 913, 1020, 1253, 1340
Doubly linked list, 583, 729	var_?, 73, 96
dtruss, 1021	IEEE 754, 274, 396, 473, 540, 1307
Duff's device, 631	Inline code, 241, 393, 648, 705, 747
Dynamically loaded libraries, 29	Integer overflow, 136
Edsger W. Dijkstra, 767	Intel
EICAR, 1163	8080, 261
ELF, 103	8086, 261, 392, 1092
Entropy, 1194, 1215	Memory model, 845, 1283
Error messages, 917	8253, 1166
fastcall, 19, 45, 87, 383, 948	80286, 1092, 1284
fetchmail, 565	80386, 392, 1284
FidoNet, 915	80486, 274
FILETIME, 509	FPU, 274
FIXUP, 1066	Intel 4004, 564
float, 275, 953	Intel C++, 13, 514, 1277, 1285, 1319
Forth, 880	Intel syntax, 16, 24
FORTRAN, 31	iPod/iPhone/iPad, 24
Fortran, 363, 659, 767, 904	Itanium, 511, 1280
FreeBSD, 920	Function epilogue, 39, 71, 74, 171, 457, 925
Function prologue, 14, 39, 43, 73, 347, 925	JAD, 6
Fused multiply-add, 133	Java, 566, 850
Fuzzing, 648	John Carmack, 672
Garbage collector, 793, 881	JPEG, 1224
GCC, 903, 1339, 1341	jumptable, 212, 221
GDB, 38, 63, 67, 347, 492, 493, 1020, 1341	Keil, 24
GeoIP, 1216	kernel panic, 964
GHex, 1019	kernel space, 964
Glibc, 492, 809, 964	LAPACK, 31
Global variables, 100	LARGE_INTEGER, 508
GNU Scientific Library, 449	LD_PRELOAD, 969
GnuPG, 1227	Linker, 105, 697
GraphViz, 792	Linux, 384, 966, 1146
grep usage, 239, 324, 902, 922, 926, 1143	libc.so.6, 383, 491
	LISP, 775
	LLDB, 1020

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

LLVM, 24	SB, 248
long double, 275	SLL, 223, 268, 419
Loop unwinding, 235	SLLV, 419
LZMA, 1220	SLT, 174
Mac OS Classic, 1069	SLTIU, 223
Mac OS X, 1022	SLTU, 174, 176, 223
Mathematica, 767, 1048	SRL, 273
MD5, 589, 919	SUBU, 179
memfrob(), 1101	SW, 81
Memoization, 1050	Load delay slot, 210
MFC, 982, 1130	O32, 81, 86, 87, 1337
Microsoft, 508	Pseudoinstructions
Microsoft Word, 808	B, 244
MIDI, 920	BEQZ, 176
MinGW, 904, 1181	LA, 37
minifloat, 557	LI, 11
MIPS, 3, 930, 943, 979, 1069, 1223	MOVE, 35, 109
Branch delay slot, 11	NEGU, 179
Global Pointer, 33, 370	NOP, 38, 109
Instructions	NOT, 265
ADD, 136	Registers
ADDIU, 34, 110, 111	FCCR, 328
ADDU, 136	HI, 639
AND, 395	LO, 639
BC1F, 328	MS-DOS, 19, 45, 350, 781, 840, 920, 926,
BC1T, 328	936, 977, 1092, 1163, 1165, 1230,
BEQ, 124, 174	1283, 1307, 1320, 1325, 1326
BLTZ, 179	DOS extenders, 1284
BNE, 174	MSVC, 1339, 1341
BNEZ, 223	MSVCRT.DLL, 1181
BREAK, 639	Name mangling, 697
C.LT.D, 328	Native API, 978
J, 8, 11, 35	Non-a-numbers (NaNs), 315
JAL, 137	Notepad, 1221
JALR, 34, 137	NSA, 586
JR, 210	objdump, 476, 968, 986, 1020
LB, 248	octet, 565
LBU, 248	OEP, 977, 986
LI, 560	OllyDbg, 59, 91, 102, 126, 142, 160, 213,
LUI, 34, 110, 111, 399, 560	236, 256, 278, 294, 305, 332, 341,
LW, 34, 97, 111, 210, 561	344, 364, 406, 432, 455, 456, 462,
MFHI, 136, 639, 1338	466, 486, 982, 1020, 1340
MFLO, 136, 639, 1338	OOP
MTC1, 479	Polymorphism, 697
MULT, 136	opaque predicate, 692
NOR, 265	OpenMP, 817, 906
OR, 38	OpenSSL, 808, 1113
ORI, 395, 560	OpenWatcom, 904, 949

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Oracle RDBMS, 13, 513, 917, 989, 1146, 1156, 1158, 1244, 1257, 1277, 1285	Security through obscurity, 918 SHA1, 589 SHA512, 818 Shadow space, 129, 131, 542 Shellcode, 690, 965, 978, 1164, 1330 Signed numbers, 158, 571 SIMD, 540, 657 Software cracking, 18, 192, 789 SQLite, 791 SSE, 540 SSE2, 540 Stack, 40, 125, 198 Stack frame, 89 Stack overflow, 42 stdcall, 946, 1275 strace, 969, 1021 strtoll(), 1117 Stuxnet, 920 Syntactic Sugar, 197 syscall, 383, 964, 1021 Sysinternals, 916, 1022
Page (memory), 528	
Pascal, 910	
PDP-11, 555	
PGP, 915	
Phrack, 915	
Pin, 671	
PNG, 1222	
position-independent code, 25, 966	
PowerPC, 3, 33, 1069	
Propagating Cipher Block Chaining, 1120	
Punched card, 329	
puts() instead of printf(), 28, 94, 138, 168	
Python, 671, 766	
ctypes, 957	
Qt, 18	
Quake, 672	
Quake III Arena, 482	
Racket, 1292	
rada.re, 17	
Radare, 1020	
radare2, 1226	
rafind2, 1019	
RAID4, 581	
RAM, 105	
Raspberry Pi, 24	
ReactOS, 996	
Recursion, 40, 42, 614	
Tail recursion, 615	
Register allocation, 531	
Relocation, 29	
Resource Hacker, 1025	
Reverse Polish notation, 329	
RISC pipeline, 171	
ROM, 105, 106	
ROT13, 1101	
row-major order, 363	
RSA, 7	
RVA, 977	
SAP, 902, 1141	
Scheme, 1292	
SCO OpenServer, 1079	
Scratch space, 951	
Security cookie, 347, 1004	
uClibc, 809	
UCS-2, 565	
UFS2, 920	
Unicode, 910	
UNIX	
chmod, 6	
diff, 937	
fork, 810	
getopt, 1117	
grep, 916, 1276	
mmap(), 781	
od, 1019	
strings, 915, 1019	
xxd, 1019, 1200	

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
 <book@beginners.re>. Thanks!

Unrolled loop, 241 , 352 , 631 , 635 , 653	Windows Vista, 977 , 1027
uptime, 969	Windows XP, 979 , 986 , 1035
UPX, 1227	Windows 2000, 510
USB, 1072	Windows 98, 194
UseNet, 915	Windows File Protection, 194
user space, 964	Windows Research Kernel, 511
user32.dll, 194	Wine, 996
UTF-16, 565	Wolfram Mathematica, 1194
UTF-16LE, 910 , 912	x86
UTF-8, 910 , 1229	AVX, 513
Uuencode, 1228	Flags
Uuencoding, 915	CF, 46 , 1316 , 1317 , 1320 , 1323 , 1327 , 1328
VA, 977	DF, 1323 , 1328
Valgrind, 828	IF, 1323 , 1328
Variance, 1100	FPU, 1312
Watcom, 904	Instructions
win32	AAA, 1332
FindResource(), 775	AAS, 1332
GetOpenFileName, 265	ADC, 498 , 841 , 1316
GetProcAddress(), 790	ADD, 13 , 57 , 126 , 641 , 841 , 1317
HINSTANCE, 791	ADDSD, 541
HMODULE, 791	ADDSS, 554
LoadLibrary(), 790	ADRcc, 181
MAKEINTRESOURCE(), 775	AESDEC, 1103
WinDbg, 1020	AESENC, 1103
Windows, 1016	AESKEYGENASSIST, 1107
API, 1307	AND, 14 , 382 , 387 , 404 , 421 , 465 , 1317 , 1322
EnableMenuItem, 1026	BSF, 530 , 1322
IAT, 977	BSR, 1322
INT, 977	BSWAP, 587 , 1322
KERNEL32.DLL, 382	BT, 1322
MSVCR80.DLL, 484	BTC, 398 , 1322
NTAPI, 1027	BTR, 398 , 1017 , 1322
ntoskrnl.exe, 1146	BTS, 398 , 1322
PDB, 902 , 980 , 1027 , 1035 , 1141	CALL, 13 , 42 , 939 , 984 , 1121 , 1215 , 1317
Structured Exception Handling, 50 , 987	CBW, 572 , 1323
TIB, 350 , 987 , 1311	CDQ, 508 , 572 , 1323
Win32, 381 , 912 , 969 , 977 , 1284	CDQE, 572 , 1323
GetProcAddress, 985	CLC, 1323
LoadLibrary, 985	CLD, 1323
MulDiv(), 573 , 1047	CLI, 1323
Ordinal, 982	CMC, 1323
RaiseException(), 987	CMOVcc, 171 , 181 , 183 , 186 , 191 , 588 , 1323
SetUnhandledExceptionFilter(), 989	CMP, 112 , 113 , 600 , 1317 , 1332
Windows 2000, 979	
Windows 3.x, 835 , 1284	
Windows NT4, 979	

If you noticed a typo, error or have any suggestions, do not hesitate to drop me a note:
book@beginners.re. Thanks!

CMPSB, 920, 1323	FUCOMI, 318
CMPSD, 1323	FUCOMP, 1330
CMPSQ, 1323	FUCOMPP, 315, 1330
CMPSW, 1323	FWAIT, 274
COMISD, 550	FXCH, 1278, 1330
COMISS, 554	IDIV, 572, 635, 1325
CPUID, 462, 1325	IMUL, 126, 374, 572, 573, 775, 1317, 1332
CWD, 572, 841, 1179, 1323	IN, 939, 1092, 1166, 1326
CWDE, 572, 1323	INC, 255, 1275, 1317, 1332
DEC, 255, 1317, 1332	INT, 45, 1164, 1325
DIV, 572, 1325	INT3, 908
DIVSD, 541, 924	IRET, 1326
FABS, 1328	JA, 158, 317, 571, 1317, 1332
FADD, 1328	JAE, 158, 1317, 1332
FADDP, 276, 283, 1328	JB, 158, 571, 1317, 1332
FATRET, 414, 415	JBE, 158, 1317, 1332
FCHS, 1329	JC, 1317
FCMOVcc, 318	JCC, 124, 185
FCOM, 304, 315, 1329	JCXZ, 1317
FCOMP, 291, 1329	JE, 197, 1317, 1332
FCOMPP, 1329	JECXZ, 1317
FDIV, 276, 922, 923, 1329	JG, 158, 571, 1317
FDIVP, 276, 1329	JGE, 157, 1317
FDIVR, 283, 1329	JL, 158, 571, 1317
FDIVRP, 1329	JLE, 157, 1317
FDUP, 880	JMP, 42, 55, 71, 984, 1275, 1317
FILD, 1329	JNA, 1317
FIST, 1329	JNAE, 1317
FISTP, 1329	JNB, 1317
FLD, 288, 291, 1329	JNBE, 316, 1317
FLD1, 1329	JNC, 1317
FLDCW, 1329	JNE, 112, 113, 157, 1317, 1332
FLDZ, 1329	JNG, 1317
FMUL, 276, 1329	JNGE, 1317
FMULP, 1329	JNL, 1317
FNSTCW, 1329	JNLE, 1317
FNSTSW, 292, 316, 1329	JNO, 1317, 1332
FSCALE, 479	JNS, 1317, 1332
FSINCOS, 1329	JNZ, 1317
FSQRT, 1329	JO, 1317, 1332
FST, 1330	JP, 292, 1317, 1332
FSTCW, 1329	JPO, 1317
FSTP, 288, 1330	JRCXZ, 1317
FSTSW, 1329	JS, 1317, 1332
FSUB, 1330	JZ, 122, 197, 1277, 1317
FSUBP, 1330	LAHF, 1318
FSUBR, 1330	LEA, 90, 129, 438, 602, 619, 641, 952, 1031, 1121, 1318
FUCOM, 315, 1330	

LEAVE, 14, 1318
 LES, 1098, 1177
 LOCK, 1017
 LODSB, 1167
 LOOP, 231, 251, 925, 1178, 1326
 MAXSD, 550
 MOV, 10, 13, 16, 653, 654, 939, 981,
 1120, 1215, 1275, 1320
 MOVDQA, 517
 MOVDQU, 517
 MOVSB, 1319
 MOVSD, 548, 655, 1319
 MOVSDX, 548
 MOVSQ, 1319
 MOVSS, 554
 MOVSW, 1319
 MOVSX, 253, 261, 455, 457, 572,
 1319
 MOVSDX, 354
 MOVZX, 254, 435, 1070, 1319
 MUL, 572, 573, 775, 1320
 MULSD, 541
 NEG, 646, 1320
 NOP, 619, 1275, 1320, 1332
 NOT, 260, 262, 1320
 OR, 387, 675, 1320
 OUT, 939, 1092, 1326
 PADD, 517
 PCMPEQB, 529
 PLMULHW, 513
 PLMULLD, 513
 PMOVMSKB, 529
 POP, 13, 40, 42, 1320, 1332
 POPA, 1327, 1332
 POPCNT, 1327
 POPF, 1166, 1327
 PUSH, 13, 14, 40, 42, 89, 939, 1121,
 1215, 1320, 1332
 PUSHA, 1327, 1332
 PUSHF, 1327
 PXOR, 529
 RCL, 925, 1327
 RCR, 1327
 RET, 8, 10, 14, 42, 347, 699, 836,
 1275, 1320
 ROL, 414, 1277, 1327
 ROR, 1277, 1327
 SAHF, 315, 1320
 SAL, 825, 1328
 SAR, 420, 572, 663, 825, 1178, 1328
 SBB, 498, 1320
 SCASB, 1167, 1321
 SCASD, 1321
 SCASQ, 1321
 SCASW, 1321
 SET, 595
 SETcc, 174, 254, 316, 1328
 SHL, 267, 331, 420, 825, 1321
 SHR, 273, 420, 465, 825, 1321
 SHRD, 506, 1322
 STC, 1328
 STD, 1328
 STI, 1328
 STOSB, 634, 1322
 STOSD, 1322
 STOSQ, 654, 1322
 STOSW, 1322
 SUB, 13, 14, 113, 197, 600, 641,
 1317, 1322
 SYSCALL, 1326, 1328
 SYSENTER, 965, 1326, 1328
 TEST, 253, 382, 386, 421, 1322
 UD2, 1328
 XADD, 1018
 XCHG, 1320, 1328
 XOR, 13, 112, 260, 663, 924, 1085,
 1275, 1322, 1332
 MMX, 512
 Prefixes
 LOCK, 1017, 1316
 REP, 1316, 1319, 1322
 REPE/REPNE, 1316
 REPNE, 1321
 Registers
 AF, 564
 AH, 1318, 1320
 CS, 1284
 DF, 809
 DR6, 1315
 DR7, 1315
 DS, 1284
 EAX, 112, 137
 EBP, 89, 126
 ECX, 697
 ES, 1177, 1284
 ESP, 57, 89
 Flags, 113, 160, 1311
 FS, 960

GS, [349](#), [960](#), [964](#)
JMP, [217](#)
RIP, [968](#)
SS, [1284](#)
ZF, [113](#), [382](#)
SSE, [513](#)
SSE2, [513](#)
x86-64, [19](#), [20](#), [66](#), [88](#), [94](#), [121](#), [128](#), [530](#),
 [540](#), [940](#), [950](#), [968](#), [1307](#), [1314](#)
Xcode, [24](#)
XML, [915](#), [1099](#)
XOR, [1106](#)

Z80, [564](#)
zlib, [810](#), [1102](#)
Zobrist hashing, [584](#)
ZX Spectrum, [578](#)